

Run-Time Library (RTL) :  
Reference guide.

---

Reference guide for RTL units.  
Document version 2.0  
December 2005

Michaël Van Canneyt

---

# Contents

0.1	Overview	69
<b>1</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'BaseUnix'</b>	<b>70</b>
1.1	Used units	70
1.2	Overview	70
1.3	Constants, types and variables	70
1.3.1	Constants	70
1.3.2	Types	89
1.4	Procedures and functions	102
1.4.1	FpAccess	102
1.4.2	FpAlarm	103
1.4.3	FpChdir	103
1.4.4	FpChmod	104
1.4.5	FpChown	105
1.4.6	FpClose	106
1.4.7	FpClosedir	106
1.4.8	FpDup	107
1.4.9	FpDup2	107
1.4.10	FpExecv	108
1.4.11	FpExecve	109
1.4.12	FpExit	110
1.4.13	FpFcntl	111
1.4.14	fpfdfillset	111
1.4.15	fpFD_CLR	111
1.4.16	fpFD_ISSET	112
1.4.17	fpFD_SET	112
1.4.18	fpFD_ZERO	112
1.4.19	FpFork	112
1.4.20	FpFStat	113
1.4.21	FpFtruncate	114
1.4.22	FpGetcwd	114

1.4.23	FpGetegid	114
1.4.24	FpGetEnv	115
1.4.25	fpgeterrno	115
1.4.26	FpGeteuid	116
1.4.27	FpGetgid	116
1.4.28	FpGetgroups	117
1.4.29	FpGetpgrp	117
1.4.30	FpGetpid	117
1.4.31	FpGetppid	118
1.4.32	fpGetPriority	118
1.4.33	FpGetuid	118
1.4.34	FpIOctl	119
1.4.35	FpKill	119
1.4.36	FpLink	120
1.4.37	FpLseek	121
1.4.38	fpLstat	122
1.4.39	FpMkdir	123
1.4.40	FpMkfifo	123
1.4.41	Fpmmap	124
1.4.42	Fpmunmap	125
1.4.43	FpNanoSleep	125
1.4.44	fpNice	126
1.4.45	FpOpen	127
1.4.46	FpOpendir	128
1.4.47	FpPause	129
1.4.48	FpPipe	130
1.4.49	FpRead	130
1.4.50	FpReaddir	132
1.4.51	fpReadLink	132
1.4.52	FpRename	133
1.4.53	FpRmdir	134
1.4.54	fpSelect	134
1.4.55	fpseterrno	135
1.4.56	FpSetgid	136
1.4.57	fpSetPriority	136
1.4.58	FpSetsid	137
1.4.59	fpsettimeofday	137
1.4.60	FpSetuid	137
1.4.61	FPSigaction	137
1.4.62	FpSigAddSet	139

1.4.63	FpSigDelSet	139
1.4.64	FpSigEmptySet	139
1.4.65	FpSigFillSet	140
1.4.66	FpSigIsMember	140
1.4.67	FpSignal	140
1.4.68	FpSigPending	141
1.4.69	FpSigProcMask	141
1.4.70	FpSigSuspend	142
1.4.71	FpSleep	142
1.4.72	FpStat	142
1.4.73	fpSymlink	143
1.4.74	fpS_ISBLK	145
1.4.75	fpS_ISCHR	145
1.4.76	fpS_ISDIR	145
1.4.77	fpS_ISFIFO	145
1.4.78	fpS_ISLNK	146
1.4.79	fpS_ISREG	146
1.4.80	fpS_ISSOCK	147
1.4.81	fptime	147
1.4.82	FpTimes	147
1.4.83	FpUmask	148
1.4.84	FpUname	148
1.4.85	FpUnlink	148
1.4.86	FpUtime	149
1.4.87	FpWait	150
1.4.88	FpWaitPid	150
1.4.89	FpWrite	151
1.4.90	wexitStatus	151
1.4.91	wifexited	151
1.4.92	wifsignaled	151
1.4.93	wstopsig	152
1.4.94	wtermSIG	152
<b>2</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Classes'</b>	<b>153</b>
2.1	Used units	153
2.2	Overview	153
2.3	Constants, types and variables	153
2.3.1	Constants	153
2.3.2	Types	155
2.3.3	Variables	165



---

2.4	Procedures and functions	166
2.4.1	ActivateClassGroup	166
2.4.2	BeginGlobalLoading	166
2.4.3	BinToHex	166
2.4.4	Bounds	167
2.4.5	CheckSynchronize	167
2.4.6	ClassGroupOf	167
2.4.7	CollectionsEqual	167
2.4.8	EndGlobalLoading	168
2.4.9	FindClass	168
2.4.10	FindGlobalComponent	168
2.4.11	FindNestedComponent	168
2.4.12	GetClass	169
2.4.13	GetFixupInstanceNames	169
2.4.14	GetFixupReferenceNames	169
2.4.15	GlobalFixupReferences	169
2.4.16	GroupDescendentsWith	170
2.4.17	HexToBin	170
2.4.18	IdentToInt	170
2.4.19	InitComponentRes	170
2.4.20	InitInheritedComponent	171
2.4.21	IntToIdent	171
2.4.22	LineStart	171
2.4.23	NotifyGlobalLoading	171
2.4.24	ObjectBinaryToText	172
2.4.25	ObjectResourceToText	172
2.4.26	ObjectTextToBinary	172
2.4.27	ObjectTextToResource	172
2.4.28	Point	173
2.4.29	ReadComponentRes	173
2.4.30	ReadComponentResEx	173
2.4.31	ReadComponentResFile	173
2.4.32	Rect	173
2.4.33	RedirectFixupReferences	174
2.4.34	RegisterClass	174
2.4.35	RegisterClassAlias	174
2.4.36	RegisterClasses	175
2.4.37	RegisterComponents	175
2.4.38	RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc	175
2.4.39	RegisterInitComponentHandler	175

---

2.4.40	RegisterIntegerConsts	176
2.4.41	RegisterNoIcon	176
2.4.42	RegisterNonActiveX	176
2.4.43	RemoveFixupReferences	177
2.4.44	RemoveFixups	177
2.4.45	SmallPoint	177
2.4.46	StartClassGroup	177
2.4.47	UnRegisterClass	178
2.4.48	UnRegisterClasses	178
2.4.49	UnregisterFindGlobalComponentProc	178
2.4.50	UnRegisterModuleClasses	178
2.4.51	WriteComponentResFile	179
2.5	EBitsError	179
2.5.1	Description	179
2.6	EClassNotFound	179
2.6.1	Description	179
2.7	EComponentError	179
2.7.1	Description	179
2.8	EFCREATEError	179
2.8.1	Description	179
2.9	EFilerError	180
2.9.1	Description	180
2.10	EFOpenError	180
2.10.1	Description	180
2.11	EInvalidImage	180
2.11.1	Description	180
2.12	EInvalidOperation	180
2.12.1	Description	180
2.13	EListError	180
2.13.1	Description	180
2.14	EMethodNotFound	180
2.14.1	Description	180
2.15	EOutOfResources	181
2.15.1	Description	181
2.16	EParseError	181
2.16.1	Description	181
2.17	EReadError	181
2.17.1	Description	181
2.18	EResNotFound	181
2.18.1	Description	181

2.19	EStreamError	181
2.19.1	Description	181
2.20	EStringListError	182
2.20.1	Description	182
2.21	EThread	182
2.21.1	Description	182
2.22	EThreadDestroyCalled	182
2.22.1	Description	182
2.23	EWriteError	182
2.23.1	Description	182
2.24	IStringsAdapter	182
2.24.1	Description	182
2.25	TAbstractObjectReader	182
2.25.1	Description	182
2.25.2	Method overview	183
2.25.3	TAbstractObjectReader.NextValue	183
2.25.4	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue	183
2.25.5	TAbstractObjectReader.BeginRootComponent	184
2.25.6	TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent	184
2.25.7	TAbstractObjectReader.BeginProperty	184
2.25.8	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadBinary	184
2.25.9	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat	185
2.25.10	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle	185
2.25.11	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate	185
2.25.12	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent	186
2.25.13	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8	186
2.25.14	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16	187
2.25.15	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32	187
2.25.16	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64	187
2.25.17	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSet	188
2.25.18	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadStr	188
2.25.19	TAbstractObjectReader.ReadString	188
2.25.20	TAbstractObjectReader.SkipComponent	189
2.25.21	TAbstractObjectReader.SkipValue	189
2.26	TAbstractObjectWriter	189
2.26.1	Description	189
2.26.2	Method overview	189
2.26.3	TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginCollection	190
2.26.4	TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginComponent	190
2.26.5	TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginList	190

2.26.6	TAbstractObjectWriter.EndList	190
2.26.7	TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginProperty	190
2.26.8	TAbstractObjectWriter.EndProperty	190
2.26.9	TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBinary	191
2.26.10	TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBoolean	191
2.26.11	TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteFloat	191
2.26.12	TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSingle	191
2.26.13	TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteDate	191
2.26.14	TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteIdent	191
2.26.15	TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteInteger	192
2.26.16	TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteMethodName	192
2.26.17	TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSet	192
2.26.18	TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString	192
2.27	TBasicAction	192
2.27.1	Description	192
2.27.2	Method overview	193
2.27.3	Property overview	193
2.27.4	TBasicAction.Create	193
2.27.5	TBasicAction.Destroy	193
2.27.6	TBasicAction.HandlesTarget	193
2.27.7	TBasicAction.UpdateTarget	194
2.27.8	TBasicAction.ExecuteTarget	194
2.27.9	TBasicAction.Execute	194
2.27.10	TBasicAction.RegisterChanges	195
2.27.11	TBasicAction.UnRegisterChanges	195
2.27.12	TBasicAction.Update	195
2.27.13	TBasicAction.ActionComponent	195
2.27.14	TBasicAction.OnExecute	196
2.27.15	TBasicAction.OnUpdate	196
2.28	TBasicActionLink	196
2.28.1	Description	196
2.28.2	Method overview	196
2.28.3	Property overview	197
2.28.4	TBasicActionLink.Create	197
2.28.5	TBasicActionLink.Destroy	197
2.28.6	TBasicActionLink.Execute	197
2.28.7	TBasicActionLink.Update	198
2.28.8	TBasicActionLink.Action	198
2.28.9	TBasicActionLink.OnChange	198
2.29	TBinaryObjectReader	198

2.29.1	Description	198
2.29.2	Method overview	199
2.29.3	TBinaryObjectReader.Create	199
2.29.4	TBinaryObjectReader.Destroy	199
2.29.5	TBinaryObjectReader.NextValue	200
2.29.6	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadValue	200
2.29.7	TBinaryObjectReader.BeginRootComponent	200
2.29.8	TBinaryObjectReader.BeginComponent	200
2.29.9	TBinaryObjectReader.BeginProperty	200
2.29.10	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadBinary	201
2.29.11	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadFloat	201
2.29.12	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSingle	201
2.29.13	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadDate	201
2.29.14	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadIdent	201
2.29.15	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt8	202
2.29.16	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt16	202
2.29.17	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt32	202
2.29.18	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt64	202
2.29.19	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSet	203
2.29.20	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadStr	203
2.29.21	TBinaryObjectReader.ReadString	203
2.29.22	TBinaryObjectReader.SkipComponent	203
2.29.23	TBinaryObjectReader.SkipValue	203
2.30	TBinaryObjectWriter	204
2.30.1	Description	204
2.30.2	Method overview	204
2.30.3	TBinaryObjectWriter.Create	204
2.30.4	TBinaryObjectWriter.Destroy	204
2.30.5	TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginCollection	205
2.30.6	TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginComponent	205
2.30.7	TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginList	205
2.30.8	TBinaryObjectWriter.EndList	205
2.30.9	TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginProperty	205
2.30.10	TBinaryObjectWriter.EndProperty	205
2.30.11	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBinary	205
2.30.12	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBoolean	206
2.30.13	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteFloat	206
2.30.14	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSingle	206
2.30.15	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteDate	206
2.30.16	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteIdent	206

2.30.17	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteInteger	206
2.30.18	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteMethodName	206
2.30.19	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSet	207
2.30.20	TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString	207
2.31	TBits	207
2.31.1	Description	207
2.31.2	Method overview	207
2.31.3	Property overview	207
2.31.4	TBits.Create	208
2.31.5	TBits.Destroy	208
2.31.6	TBits.GetFSize	208
2.31.7	TBits.SetOn	208
2.31.8	TBits.Clear	209
2.31.9	TBits.Clearall	209
2.31.10	TBits.AndBits	209
2.31.11	TBits.OrBits	209
2.31.12	TBits.XorBits	210
2.31.13	TBits.NotBits	210
2.31.14	TBits.Get	210
2.31.15	TBits.Grow	211
2.31.16	TBits.Equals	211
2.31.17	TBits.SetIndex	211
2.31.18	TBits.FindFirstBit	211
2.31.19	TBits.FindNextBit	212
2.31.20	TBits.FindPrevBit	212
2.31.21	TBits.OpenBit	212
2.31.22	TBits.Bits	213
2.31.23	TBits.Size	213
2.32	TCollection	213
2.32.1	Description	213
2.32.2	Method overview	214
2.32.3	Property overview	214
2.32.4	TCollection.Create	214
2.32.5	TCollection.Destroy	214
2.32.6	TCollection.Owner	214
2.32.7	TCollection.Add	215
2.32.8	TCollection.Assign	215
2.32.9	TCollection.BeginUpdate	215
2.32.10	TCollection.Clear	216
2.32.11	TCollection.EndUpdate	216

2.32.12	<a href="#">TCollection.Delete</a>	216
2.32.13	<a href="#">TCollection.Insert</a>	216
2.32.14	<a href="#">TCollection.FindItemID</a>	217
2.32.15	<a href="#">TCollection.Count</a>	217
2.32.16	<a href="#">TCollection.ItemClass</a>	217
2.32.17	<a href="#">TCollection.Items</a>	218
2.33	<a href="#">TCollectionItem</a>	218
2.33.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	218
2.33.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	218
2.33.3	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	218
2.33.4	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.Create</a>	219
2.33.5	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.Destroy</a>	219
2.33.6	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.Collection</a>	219
2.33.7	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.ID</a>	219
2.33.8	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.Index</a>	220
2.33.9	<a href="#">TCollectionItem.DisplayName</a>	220
2.34	<a href="#">TComponent</a>	220
2.34.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	220
2.34.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	221
2.34.3	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	221
2.34.4	<a href="#">TComponent.WriteState</a>	221
2.34.5	<a href="#">TComponent.Create</a>	222
2.34.6	<a href="#">TComponent.BeforeDestruction</a>	222
2.34.7	<a href="#">TComponent.Destroy</a>	222
2.34.8	<a href="#">TComponent.DestroyComponents</a>	222
2.34.9	<a href="#">TComponent.Destroying</a>	223
2.34.10	<a href="#">TComponent.ExecuteAction</a>	223
2.34.11	<a href="#">TComponent.FindComponent</a>	223
2.34.12	<a href="#">TComponent.FreeNotification</a>	223
2.34.13	<a href="#">TComponent.RemoveFreeNotification</a>	224
2.34.14	<a href="#">TComponent.FreeOnRelease</a>	224
2.34.15	<a href="#">TComponent.GetParentComponent</a>	224
2.34.16	<a href="#">TComponent.HasParent</a>	224
2.34.17	<a href="#">TComponent.InsertComponent</a>	225
2.34.18	<a href="#">TComponent.RemoveComponent</a>	225
2.34.19	<a href="#">TComponent.SafeCallException</a>	225
2.34.20	<a href="#">TComponent.SetSubComponent</a>	225
2.34.21	<a href="#">TComponent.UpdateAction</a>	226
2.34.22	<a href="#">TComponent.Components</a>	226
2.34.23	<a href="#">TComponent.ComponentCount</a>	226

2.34.24	TComponent.ComponentIndex	226
2.34.25	TComponent.ComponentState	227
2.34.26	TComponent.ComponentStyle	227
2.34.27	TComponent.DesignInfo	227
2.34.28	TComponent.Owner	228
2.34.29	TComponent.VCLComObject	228
2.34.30	TComponent.Name	228
2.34.31	TComponent.Tag	228
2.35	TCustomMemoryStream	229
2.35.1	Description	229
2.35.2	Method overview	229
2.35.3	Property overview	229
2.35.4	TCustomMemoryStream.GetSize	229
2.35.5	TCustomMemoryStream.Read	229
2.35.6	TCustomMemoryStream.Seek	230
2.35.7	TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream	230
2.35.8	TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToFile	231
2.35.9	TCustomMemoryStream.Memory	231
2.36	TDataModule	231
2.36.1	Description	231
2.36.2	Method overview	232
2.36.3	Property overview	232
2.36.4	TDataModule.Create	232
2.36.5	TDataModule.CreateNew	232
2.36.6	TDataModule.Destroy	232
2.36.7	TDataModule.AfterConstruction	233
2.36.8	TDataModule.BeforeDestruction	233
2.36.9	TDataModule.DesignOffset	233
2.36.10	TDataModule.DesignSize	234
2.36.11	TDataModule.OnCreate	234
2.36.12	TDataModule.OnDestroy	234
2.36.13	TDataModule.OldCreateOrder	234
2.37	TFiler	235
2.37.1	Description	235
2.37.2	Method overview	235
2.37.3	Property overview	235
2.37.4	TFiler.DefineProperty	235
2.37.5	TFiler.DefineBinaryProperty	235
2.37.6	TFiler.Root	235
2.37.7	TFiler.LookupRoot	236



2.37.8	TFiler.Ancestor	236
2.37.9	TFiler.IgnoreChildren	236
2.38	TFileStream	236
2.38.1	Description	236
2.38.2	Method overview	237
2.38.3	Property overview	237
2.38.4	TFileStream.Create	237
2.38.5	TFileStream.Destroy	237
2.38.6	TFileStream.FileName	238
2.39	TFPList	238
2.39.1	Description	238
2.39.2	Method overview	238
2.39.3	Property overview	239
2.39.4	TFPList.Destroy	239
2.39.5	TFPList.Add	239
2.39.6	TFPList.Clear	239
2.39.7	TFPList.Delete	239
2.39.8	TFPList.Error	240
2.39.9	TFPList.Exchange	240
2.39.10	TFPList.Expand	240
2.39.11	TFPList.Extract	240
2.39.12	TFPList.First	241
2.39.13	TFPList.IndexOf	241
2.39.14	TFPList.Insert	241
2.39.15	TFPList.Last	241
2.39.16	TFPList.Move	242
2.39.17	TFPList.Assign	242
2.39.18	TFPList.Remove	242
2.39.19	TFPList.Pack	242
2.39.20	TFPList.Sort	243
2.39.21	TFPList.Capacity	243
2.39.22	TFPList.Count	243
2.39.23	TFPList.Items	244
2.39.24	TFPList.List	244
2.40	THandleStream	244
2.40.1	Description	244
2.40.2	Method overview	244
2.40.3	Property overview	244
2.40.4	THandleStream.Create	245
2.40.5	THandleStream.Read	245

2.40.6	<a href="#">THandleStream.Write</a>	245
2.40.7	<a href="#">THandleStream.Seek</a>	245
2.40.8	<a href="#">THandleStream.Handle</a>	246
2.41	<a href="#">TList</a>	246
2.41.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	246
2.41.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	246
2.41.3	<a href="#">Property overview</a>	247
2.41.4	<a href="#">TList.Create</a>	247
2.41.5	<a href="#">TList.Destroy</a>	247
2.41.6	<a href="#">TList.Add</a>	247
2.41.7	<a href="#">TList.Clear</a>	247
2.41.8	<a href="#">TList.Delete</a>	248
2.41.9	<a href="#">TList.Error</a>	248
2.41.10	<a href="#">TList.Exchange</a>	248
2.41.11	<a href="#">TList.Expand</a>	248
2.41.12	<a href="#">TList.Extract</a>	249
2.41.13	<a href="#">TList.First</a>	249
2.41.14	<a href="#">TList.IndexOf</a>	249
2.41.15	<a href="#">TList.Insert</a>	249
2.41.16	<a href="#">TList.Last</a>	250
2.41.17	<a href="#">TList.Move</a>	250
2.41.18	<a href="#">TList.Assign</a>	250
2.41.19	<a href="#">TList.Remove</a>	250
2.41.20	<a href="#">TList.Pack</a>	251
2.41.21	<a href="#">TList.Sort</a>	251
2.41.22	<a href="#">TList.Capacity</a>	251
2.41.23	<a href="#">TList.Count</a>	252
2.41.24	<a href="#">TList.Items</a>	252
2.41.25	<a href="#">TList.List</a>	252
2.42	<a href="#">TMemoryStream</a>	252
2.42.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	252
2.42.2	<a href="#">Method overview</a>	253
2.42.3	<a href="#">TMemoryStream.Destroy</a>	253
2.42.4	<a href="#">TMemoryStream.Clear</a>	253
2.42.5	<a href="#">TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream</a>	253
2.42.6	<a href="#">TMemoryStream.LoadFromFile</a>	254
2.42.7	<a href="#">TMemoryStream.SetSize</a>	254
2.42.8	<a href="#">TMemoryStream.Write</a>	254
2.43	<a href="#">TOwnedCollection</a>	254
2.43.1	<a href="#">Description</a>	254

2.43.2	Method overview	255
2.43.3	TOwnedCollection.Create	255
2.44	TOwnerStream	255
2.44.1	Description	255
2.44.2	Method overview	255
2.44.3	Property overview	255
2.44.4	TOwnerStream.Create	255
2.44.5	TOwnerStream.Destroy	256
2.44.6	TOwnerStream.Source	256
2.44.7	TOwnerStream.SourceOwner	256
2.45	TParser	256
2.45.1	Description	256
2.45.2	Method overview	257
2.45.3	Property overview	257
2.45.4	TParser.Create	257
2.45.5	TParser.Destroy	257
2.45.6	TParser.CheckToken	257
2.45.7	TParser.CheckTokenSymbol	258
2.45.8	TParser.Error	258
2.45.9	TParser.ErrorFmt	258
2.45.10	TParser.ErrorStr	258
2.45.11	TParser.HexToBinary	258
2.45.12	TParser.NextToken	258
2.45.13	TParser.SourcePos	259
2.45.14	TParser.TokenComponentIdent	259
2.45.15	TParser.TokenFloat	259
2.45.16	TParser.TokenInt	259
2.45.17	TParser.TokenString	259
2.45.18	TParser.TokenSymbolIs	259
2.45.19	TParser.SourceLine	260
2.45.20	TParser.Token	260
2.46	TPersistent	260
2.46.1	Description	260
2.46.2	Method overview	260
2.46.3	TPersistent.Destroy	260
2.46.4	TPersistent.Assign	261
2.46.5	TPersistent.GetNamePath	261
2.47	TReader	261
2.47.1	Description	261
2.47.2	Method overview	262

2.47.3	Property overview	262
2.47.4	TReader.Create	263
2.47.5	TReader.Destroy	263
2.47.6	TReader.BeginReferences	263
2.47.7	TReader.CheckValue	263
2.47.8	TReader.DefineProperty	263
2.47.9	TReader.DefineBinaryProperty	264
2.47.10	TReader.EndOfList	264
2.47.11	TReader.EndReferences	264
2.47.12	TReader.FixupReferences	264
2.47.13	TReader.NextValue	264
2.47.14	TReader.ReadBoolean	265
2.47.15	TReader.ReadChar	265
2.47.16	TReader.ReadCollection	265
2.47.17	TReader.ReadComponent	265
2.47.18	TReader.ReadComponents	265
2.47.19	TReader.ReadFloat	265
2.47.20	TReader.ReadSingle	266
2.47.21	TReader.ReadDate	266
2.47.22	TReader.ReadIdent	266
2.47.23	TReader.ReadInteger	266
2.47.24	TReader.ReadInt64	266
2.47.25	TReader.ReadListBegin	266
2.47.26	TReader.ReadListEnd	267
2.47.27	TReader.ReadRootComponent	267
2.47.28	TReader.ReadString	267
2.47.29	TReader.ReadValue	267
2.47.30	TReader.CopyValue	267
2.47.31	TReader.Driver	267
2.47.32	TReader.Owner	268
2.47.33	TReader.Parent	268
2.47.34	TReader.OnError	268
2.47.35	TReader.OnPropertyNotFound	268
2.47.36	TReader.OnFindMethod	269
2.47.37	TReader.OnSetMethodProperty	269
2.47.38	TReader.OnSetName	269
2.47.39	TReader.OnReferenceName	269
2.47.40	TReader.OnAncestorNotFound	269
2.47.41	TReader.OnCreateComponent	270
2.47.42	TReader.OnFindComponentClass	270

2.47.43	TReader.OnReadStringProperty	270
2.48	TRecall	270
2.48.1	Description	270
2.48.2	Method overview	271
2.48.3	Property overview	271
2.48.4	TRecall.Create	271
2.48.5	TRecall.Destroy	271
2.48.6	TRecall.Store	271
2.48.7	TRecall.Forget	272
2.48.8	TRecall.Reference	272
2.49	TResourceStream	272
2.49.1	Description	272
2.49.2	Method overview	272
2.49.3	TResourceStream.Create	272
2.49.4	TResourceStream.CreateFromID	273
2.49.5	TResourceStream.Destroy	273
2.49.6	TResourceStream.Write	273
2.50	TStream	273
2.50.1	Description	273
2.50.2	Method overview	274
2.50.3	Property overview	274
2.50.4	TStream.Read	274
2.50.5	TStream.Write	275
2.50.6	TStream.Seek	275
2.50.7	TStream.ReadBuffer	276
2.50.8	TStream.WriteBuffer	276
2.50.9	TStream.CopyFrom	276
2.50.10	TStream.ReadComponent	277
2.50.11	TStream.ReadComponentRes	277
2.50.12	TStream.WriteComponent	277
2.50.13	TStream.WriteComponentRes	278
2.50.14	TStream.WriteDescendent	278
2.50.15	TStream.WriteDescendentRes	278
2.50.16	TStream.WriteResourceHeader	278
2.50.17	TStream.FixupResourceHeader	279
2.50.18	TStream.ReadResHeader	279
2.50.19	TStream.ReadByte	279
2.50.20	TStream.ReadWord	279
2.50.21	TStream.ReadDWord	280
2.50.22	TStream.ReadAnsiString	280

2.50.23 TStream.WriteByte	280
2.50.24 TStream.WriteWord	281
2.50.25 TStream.WriteDWord	281
2.50.26 TStream.WriteAnsiString	281
2.50.27 TStream.Position	282
2.50.28 TStream.Size	282
2.51 TStringList	282
2.51.1 Description	282
2.51.2 Method overview	283
2.51.3 Property overview	283
2.51.4 TStringList.Destroy	283
2.51.5 TStringList.Add	283
2.51.6 TStringList.Clear	284
2.51.7 TStringList.Delete	284
2.51.8 TStringList.Exchange	284
2.51.9 TStringList.Find	284
2.51.10 TStringList.IndexOf	285
2.51.11 TStringList.Insert	285
2.51.12 TStringList.Sort	285
2.51.13 TStringList.CustomSort	285
2.51.14 TStringList.Duplicates	286
2.51.15 TStringList.Sorted	286
2.51.16 TStringList.CaseSensitive	286
2.51.17 TStringList.OnChange	287
2.51.18 TStringList.OnChanging	287
2.52 TStrings	287
2.52.1 Description	287
2.52.2 Method overview	288
2.52.3 Property overview	288
2.52.4 TStrings.Destroy	288
2.52.5 TStrings.Add	289
2.52.6 TStrings.AddObject	289
2.52.7 TStrings.Append	289
2.52.8 TStrings.AddStrings	289
2.52.9 TStrings.Assign	290
2.52.10 TStrings.BeginUpdate	290
2.52.11 TStrings.Clear	290
2.52.12 TStrings.Delete	291
2.52.13 TStrings.EndUpdate	291
2.52.14 TStrings.Equals	291

2.52.15	TStrings.Exchange	292
2.52.16	TStrings.GetText	292
2.52.17	TStrings.IndexOf	292
2.52.18	TStrings.IndexOfName	292
2.52.19	TStrings.IndexOfObject	293
2.52.20	TStrings.Insert	293
2.52.21	TStrings.InsertObject	293
2.52.22	TStrings.LoadFromFile	294
2.52.23	TStrings.LoadFromStream	294
2.52.24	TStrings.Move	294
2.52.25	TStrings.SaveToFile	295
2.52.26	TStrings.SaveToStream	295
2.52.27	TStrings.SetText	295
2.52.28	TStrings.GetNameValue	296
2.52.29	TStrings.Delimiter	296
2.52.30	TStrings.DelimitedText	296
2.52.31	TStrings.QuoteChar	296
2.52.32	TStrings.NameValueSeparator	296
2.52.33	TStrings.ValueFromIndex	297
2.52.34	TStrings.Capacity	297
2.52.35	TStrings.CommaText	297
2.52.36	TStrings.Count	298
2.52.37	TStrings.Names	298
2.52.38	TStrings.Objects	299
2.52.39	TStrings.Values	299
2.52.40	TStrings.Strings	299
2.52.41	TStrings.Text	300
2.52.42	TStrings.StringsAdapter	300
2.53	TStringStream	300
2.53.1	Description	300
2.53.2	Method overview	301
2.53.3	Property overview	301
2.53.4	TStringStream.Create	301
2.53.5	TStringStream.Read	301
2.53.6	TStringStream.ReadString	301
2.53.7	TStringStream.Seek	302
2.53.8	TStringStream.Write	302
2.53.9	TStringStream.WriteString	302
2.53.10	TStringStream.DataString	302
2.54	TTextObjectWriter	302

2.54.1	Description	302
2.55	TThread	303
2.55.1	Description	303
2.55.2	Method overview	303
2.55.3	Property overview	303
2.55.4	TThread.Create	303
2.55.5	TThread.Destroy	303
2.55.6	TThread.Resume	304
2.55.7	TThread.Suspend	304
2.55.8	TThread.Terminate	304
2.55.9	TThread.WaitFor	304
2.55.10	TThread.FreeOnTerminate	304
2.55.11	TThread.Handle	305
2.55.12	TThread.Priority	305
2.55.13	TThread.Suspended	305
2.55.14	TThread.ThreadID	305
2.55.15	TThread.OnTerminate	305
2.55.16	TThread.FatalException	306
2.56	TThreadList	306
2.56.1	Description	306
2.56.2	Method overview	306
2.56.3	TThreadList.Create	306
2.56.4	TThreadList.Destroy	306
2.56.5	TThreadList.Add	307
2.56.6	TThreadList.Clear	307
2.56.7	TThreadList.LockList	307
2.56.8	TThreadList.Remove	307
2.56.9	TThreadList.UnlockList	307
2.57	TWriter	308
2.57.1	Description	308
2.57.2	Method overview	308
2.57.3	Property overview	308
2.57.4	TWriter.Create	308
2.57.5	TWriter.Destroy	308
2.57.6	TWriter.DefineProperty	309
2.57.7	TWriter.DefineBinaryProperty	309
2.57.8	TWriter.WriteBoolean	309
2.57.9	TWriter.WriteCollection	309
2.57.10	TWriter.WriteComponent	309
2.57.11	TWriter.WriteChar	310



2.57.12	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteDescendent</a>	310
2.57.13	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteFloat</a>	310
2.57.14	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteSingle</a>	310
2.57.15	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteDate</a>	310
2.57.16	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteIdent</a>	310
2.57.17	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteInteger</a>	311
2.57.18	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteListBegin</a>	311
2.57.19	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteListEnd</a>	311
2.57.20	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteRootComponent</a>	311
2.57.21	<a href="#">TWriter.WriteString</a>	311
2.57.22	<a href="#">TWriter.RootAncestor</a>	312
2.57.23	<a href="#">TWriter.OnFindAncestor</a>	312
2.57.24	<a href="#">TWriter.OnWriteMethodProperty</a>	312
2.57.25	<a href="#">TWriter.OnWriteStringProperty</a>	312
2.57.26	<a href="#">TWriter.Driver</a>	313
<b>3</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Crt'</b>	<b>314</b>
3.1	<a href="#">Overview</a>	314
3.2	<a href="#">Constants, types and variables</a>	314
3.2.1	<a href="#">Constants</a>	314
3.2.2	<a href="#">Types</a>	317
3.2.3	<a href="#">Variables</a>	317
3.3	<a href="#">Procedures and functions</a>	318
3.3.1	<a href="#">AssignCrt</a>	318
3.3.2	<a href="#">ClrEol</a>	319
3.3.3	<a href="#">ClrScr</a>	319
3.3.4	<a href="#">cursorbig</a>	320
3.3.5	<a href="#">cursoroff</a>	320
3.3.6	<a href="#">cursoron</a>	320
3.3.7	<a href="#">Delay</a>	321
3.3.8	<a href="#">DelLine</a>	321
3.3.9	<a href="#">GotoXY</a>	322
3.3.10	<a href="#">HighVideo</a>	322
3.3.11	<a href="#">InsLine</a>	323
3.3.12	<a href="#">KeyPressed</a>	323
3.3.13	<a href="#">LowVideo</a>	324
3.3.14	<a href="#">NormVideo</a>	324
3.3.15	<a href="#">NoSound</a>	325
3.3.16	<a href="#">ReadKey</a>	325
3.3.17	<a href="#">Sound</a>	326

3.3.18	TextBackground	326
3.3.19	TextColor	327
3.3.20	TextMode	327
3.3.21	WhereX	328
3.3.22	WhereY	328
3.3.23	Window	329
<b>4</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'dateutils'</b>	<b>330</b>
4.1	Used units	330
4.2	Overview	330
4.3	Constants, types and variables	330
4.3.1	Constants	330
4.4	Procedures and functions	332
4.4.1	CompareDate	332
4.4.2	CompareDateTime	333
4.4.3	CompareTime	334
4.4.4	DateOf	335
4.4.5	DateTimeToJulianDate	336
4.4.6	DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate	336
4.4.7	DateTimeToUnix	336
4.4.8	DayOf	337
4.4.9	DayOfTheMonth	337
4.4.10	DayOfTheWeek	337
4.4.11	DayOfTheYear	338
4.4.12	DaysBetween	338
4.4.13	DaysInAMonth	339
4.4.14	DaysInAYear	339
4.4.15	DaysInMonth	340
4.4.16	DaysInYear	341
4.4.17	DaySpan	341
4.4.18	DecodeDateDay	342
4.4.19	DecodeDateMonthWeek	342
4.4.20	DecodeDateTime	343
4.4.21	DecodeDateWeek	344
4.4.22	DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth	344
4.4.23	EncodeDateDay	345
4.4.24	EncodeDateMonthWeek	345
4.4.25	EncodeDateTime	346
4.4.26	EncodeDateWeek	346
4.4.27	EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth	346

4.4.28 EndOfADay . . . . .	347
4.4.29 EndOfAMonth . . . . .	347
4.4.30 EndOfAWeek . . . . .	348
4.4.31 EndOfAYear . . . . .	349
4.4.32 EndOfTheDay . . . . .	349
4.4.33 EndOfTheMonth . . . . .	350
4.4.34 EndOfTheWeek . . . . .	350
4.4.35 EndOfTheYear . . . . .	351
4.4.36 HourOf . . . . .	351
4.4.37 HourOfTheDay . . . . .	352
4.4.38 HourOfTheMonth . . . . .	352
4.4.39 HourOfTheWeek . . . . .	352
4.4.40 HourOfTheYear . . . . .	353
4.4.41 HoursBetween . . . . .	353
4.4.42 HourSpan . . . . .	354
4.4.43 IncDay . . . . .	355
4.4.44 IncHour . . . . .	355
4.4.45 IncMilliSecond . . . . .	356
4.4.46 IncMinute . . . . .	356
4.4.47 IncSecond . . . . .	357
4.4.48 IncWeek . . . . .	357
4.4.49 IncYear . . . . .	358
4.4.50 InvalidDateDayError . . . . .	358
4.4.51 InvalidDateMonthWeekError . . . . .	359
4.4.52 InvalidDateTimeError . . . . .	359
4.4.53 InvalidDateWeekError . . . . .	359
4.4.54 InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError . . . . .	360
4.4.55 IsInLeapYear . . . . .	360
4.4.56 IsPM . . . . .	361
4.4.57 IsSameDay . . . . .	361
4.4.58 IsToday . . . . .	362
4.4.59 IsValidDate . . . . .	362
4.4.60 IsValidDateDay . . . . .	363
4.4.61 IsValidDateMonthWeek . . . . .	363
4.4.62 IsValidDateTime . . . . .	364
4.4.63 IsValidDateWeek . . . . .	365
4.4.64 IsValidTime . . . . .	366
4.4.65 JulianDateToDateTime . . . . .	366
4.4.66 MilliSecondOf . . . . .	366
4.4.67 MilliSecondOfTheDay . . . . .	367

4.4.68 MilliSecondOfTheHour . . . . .	367
4.4.69 MilliSecondOfTheMinute . . . . .	367
4.4.70 MilliSecondOfTheMonth . . . . .	368
4.4.71 MilliSecondOfTheSecond . . . . .	368
4.4.72 MilliSecondOfTheWeek . . . . .	368
4.4.73 MilliSecondOfTheYear . . . . .	369
4.4.74 MilliSecondsBetween . . . . .	369
4.4.75 MilliSecondSpan . . . . .	370
4.4.76 MinuteOf . . . . .	371
4.4.77 MinuteOfTheDay . . . . .	371
4.4.78 MinuteOfTheHour . . . . .	371
4.4.79 MinuteOfTheMonth . . . . .	372
4.4.80 MinuteOfTheWeek . . . . .	372
4.4.81 MinuteOfTheYear . . . . .	372
4.4.82 MinutesBetween . . . . .	373
4.4.83 MinuteSpan . . . . .	374
4.4.84 ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime . . . . .	374
4.4.85 MonthOf . . . . .	375
4.4.86 MonthOfTheYear . . . . .	375
4.4.87 MonthsBetween . . . . .	375
4.4.88 MonthSpan . . . . .	376
4.4.89 NthDayOfWeek . . . . .	377
4.4.90 PreviousDayOfWeek . . . . .	378
4.4.91 RecodeDate . . . . .	378
4.4.92 RecodeDateTime . . . . .	379
4.4.93 RecodeDay . . . . .	380
4.4.94 RecodeHour . . . . .	380
4.4.95 RecodeMilliSecond . . . . .	381
4.4.96 RecodeMinute . . . . .	381
4.4.97 RecodeMonth . . . . .	382
4.4.98 RecodeSecond . . . . .	383
4.4.99 RecodeTime . . . . .	383
4.4.100 RecodeYear . . . . .	384
4.4.101 SameDate . . . . .	385
4.4.102 SameDateTime . . . . .	386
4.4.103 SameTime . . . . .	386
4.4.104 SecondOf . . . . .	387
4.4.105 SecondOfTheDay . . . . .	387
4.4.106 SecondOfTheHour . . . . .	388
4.4.107 SecondOfTheMinute . . . . .	388

4.4.108 SecondOfTheMonth . . . . .	389
4.4.109 SecondOfTheWeek . . . . .	389
4.4.110 SecondOfTheYear . . . . .	389
4.4.111 SecondsBetween . . . . .	389
4.4.112 SecondSpan . . . . .	390
4.4.113 StartOfADay . . . . .	391
4.4.114 StartOfAMonth . . . . .	392
4.4.115 StartOfAWeek . . . . .	392
4.4.116 StartOfAYear . . . . .	393
4.4.117 StartOfTheDay . . . . .	394
4.4.118 StartOfTheMonth . . . . .	394
4.4.119 StartOfTheWeek . . . . .	395
4.4.120 StartOfTheYear . . . . .	395
4.4.121 TimeOf . . . . .	396
4.4.122 Today . . . . .	396
4.4.123 Tomorrow . . . . .	397
4.4.124 TryEncodeDateDay . . . . .	397
4.4.125 TryEncodeDateMonthWeek . . . . .	398
4.4.126 TryEncodeDateTime . . . . .	398
4.4.127 TryEncodeDateWeek . . . . .	399
4.4.128 TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth . . . . .	400
4.4.129 TryJulianDateToDateTime . . . . .	401
4.4.130 TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime . . . . .	401
4.4.131 TryRecodeDateTime . . . . .	401
4.4.132 UnixToDateTime . . . . .	402
4.4.133 WeekOf . . . . .	402
4.4.134 WeekOfTheMonth . . . . .	403
4.4.135 WeekOfTheYear . . . . .	403
4.4.136 WeeksBetween . . . . .	404
4.4.137 WeeksInAYear . . . . .	405
4.4.138 WeeksInYear . . . . .	405
4.4.139 WeekSpan . . . . .	406
4.4.140 WithinPastDays . . . . .	407
4.4.141 WithinPastHours . . . . .	408
4.4.142 WithinPastMilliseconds . . . . .	409
4.4.143 WithinPastMinutes . . . . .	410
4.4.144 WithinPastMonths . . . . .	411
4.4.145 WithinPastSeconds . . . . .	412
4.4.146 WithinPastWeeks . . . . .	413
4.4.147 WithinPastYears . . . . .	414

4.4.148 YearOf . . . . .	415
4.4.149 YearsBetween . . . . .	415
4.4.150 YearSpan . . . . .	416
4.4.151 Yesterday . . . . .	417
<b>5 Reference for unit 'Dos'</b>	<b>418</b>
5.1 System information . . . . .	418
5.2 Process handling . . . . .	418
5.3 Directory and disk handling . . . . .	418
5.4 File handling . . . . .	419
5.5 File open mode constants. . . . .	419
5.6 File attributes . . . . .	419
5.7 Overview . . . . .	420
5.8 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	420
5.8.1 Constants . . . . .	420
5.8.2 Types . . . . .	422
5.8.3 Variables . . . . .	424
5.9 Procedures and functions . . . . .	424
5.9.1 AddDisk . . . . .	424
5.9.2 DiskFree . . . . .	425
5.9.3 DiskSize . . . . .	426
5.9.4 DosExitCode . . . . .	426
5.9.5 DosVersion . . . . .	427
5.9.6 DTToUnixDate . . . . .	427
5.9.7 EnvCount . . . . .	428
5.9.8 EnvStr . . . . .	428
5.9.9 Exec . . . . .	429
5.9.10 FExpand . . . . .	429
5.9.11 FindClose . . . . .	430
5.9.12 FindFirst . . . . .	430
5.9.13 FindNext . . . . .	431
5.9.14 FSearch . . . . .	431
5.9.15 FSplit . . . . .	432
5.9.16 GetCBreak . . . . .	432
5.9.17 GetDate . . . . .	433
5.9.18 GetEnv . . . . .	433
5.9.19 GetFAttr . . . . .	434
5.9.20 GetFTime . . . . .	435
5.9.21 GetIntVec . . . . .	435
5.9.22 GetLongName . . . . .	436

5.9.23	GetMsCount	436
5.9.24	GetShortName	436
5.9.25	GetTime	437
5.9.26	GetVerify	437
5.9.27	Intr	438
5.9.28	Keep	438
5.9.29	MSDos	438
5.9.30	PackTime	439
5.9.31	SetCBreak	439
5.9.32	SetDate	440
5.9.33	SetFAttr	440
5.9.34	SetFTime	441
5.9.35	SetIntVec	441
5.9.36	SetTime	441
5.9.37	SetVerify	441
5.9.38	SwapVectors	442
5.9.39	UnixDateToDt	442
5.9.40	UnpackTime	442
5.9.41	weekday	443
<b>6</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'dxeload'</b>	<b>444</b>
6.1	Overview	444
6.2	Procedures and functions	444
6.2.1	dxeload	444
<b>7</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'dynlibs'</b>	<b>445</b>
7.1	Overview	445
7.2	Constants, types and variables	445
7.2.1	Constants	445
7.2.2	Types	445
7.3	Procedures and functions	445
7.3.1	FreeLibrary	445
7.3.2	GetProcAddress	446
7.3.3	GetProcedureAddress	446
7.3.4	LoadLibrary	446
7.3.5	UnloadLibrary	447
<b>8</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'emu387'</b>	<b>448</b>
8.1	Overview	448
8.2	Procedures and functions	448
8.2.1	npxsetup	448

<b>9</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'getopts'</b>	<b>449</b>
9.1	Overview	449
9.2	Constants, types and variables	449
9.2.1	Constants	449
9.2.2	Types	450
9.2.3	Variables	450
9.3	Procedures and functions	451
9.3.1	GetLongOpts	451
9.3.2	GetOpt	451
<b>10</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'go32'</b>	<b>454</b>
10.1	Real mode callbacks	454
10.2	Executing software interrupts	455
10.3	Software interrupts	455
10.4	Hardware interrupts	455
10.5	Disabling interrupts	455
10.6	Creating your own interrupt handlers	455
10.7	Protected mode interrupts vs. Real mode interrupts	456
10.8	Handling interrupts with DPMI	456
10.9	Interrupt redirection	456
10.10	Processor access	456
10.11	I/O port access	456
10.12	dos memory access	456
10.13	FPC specialities	457
10.14	Selectors and descriptors	457
10.15	What is DPMI	457
10.16	Overview	457
10.17	Constants, types and variables	458
10.17.1	Constants	458
10.17.2	Types	460
10.17.3	Variables	461
10.18	Procedures and functions	461
10.18.1	allocate_ldt_descriptors	461
10.18.2	allocate_memory_block	464
10.18.3	copyfromdos	464
10.18.4	copytodos	464
10.18.5	create_code_segment_alias_descriptor	465
10.18.6	disable	465
10.18.7	dpmi_dosmemfillchar	465
10.18.8	dpmi_dosmemfillword	466



10.18.9 dpmi_dosmemget . . . . .	466
10.18.10 dpmi_dosmemmove . . . . .	466
10.18.11 dpmi_dosmempur . . . . .	466
10.18.12 enable . . . . .	467
10.18.13 free_ldt_descriptor . . . . .	467
10.18.14 free_memory_block . . . . .	467
10.18.15 free_rm_callback . . . . .	468
10.18.16 get_cs . . . . .	468
10.18.17 get_descriptor_access_right . . . . .	468
10.18.18 get_ds . . . . .	469
10.18.19 get_exception_handler . . . . .	469
10.18.20 get_linear_addr . . . . .	469
10.18.21 get_meminfo . . . . .	470
10.18.22 get_next_selector_increment_value . . . . .	471
10.18.23 get_page_size . . . . .	471
10.18.24 get_pm_exception_handler . . . . .	472
10.18.25 get_pm_interrupt . . . . .	472
10.18.26 get_rm_callback . . . . .	472
10.18.27 get_rm_interrupt . . . . .	475
10.18.28 get_run_mode . . . . .	476
10.18.29 get_segment_base_address . . . . .	476
10.18.30 get_segment_limit . . . . .	477
10.18.31 get_ss . . . . .	477
10.18.32 global_dos_alloc . . . . .	477
10.18.33 global_dos_free . . . . .	479
10.18.34 inportb . . . . .	479
10.18.35 inportl . . . . .	480
10.18.36 inportw . . . . .	480
10.18.37 lock_code . . . . .	480
10.18.38 lock_data . . . . .	481
10.18.39 lock_linear_region . . . . .	481
10.18.40 map_device_in_memory_block . . . . .	481
10.18.41 outportb . . . . .	482
10.18.42 outportl . . . . .	482
10.18.43 outportw . . . . .	483
10.18.44 realintr . . . . .	483
10.18.45 request_linear_region . . . . .	484
10.18.46 segment_to_descriptor . . . . .	484
10.18.47 seg_fillchar . . . . .	484
10.18.48 seg_fillword . . . . .	485

10.18.49	eg_move . . . . .	486
10.18.50	et_descriptor_access_right . . . . .	486
10.18.51	et_exception_handler . . . . .	486
10.18.52	et_pm_exception_handler . . . . .	487
10.18.53	et_pm_interrupt . . . . .	487
10.18.54	et_rm_interrupt . . . . .	488
10.18.55	et_segment_base_address . . . . .	488
10.18.56	et_segment_limit . . . . .	489
10.18.57	b_offset . . . . .	489
10.18.58	b_segment . . . . .	489
10.18.59	b_size . . . . .	490
10.18.60	ransfer_buffer . . . . .	490
10.18.61	unlock_code . . . . .	490
10.18.62	unlock_data . . . . .	491
10.18.63	unlock_linear_region . . . . .	491
<b>11</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'gpm' . . . . .</b>	<b>492</b>
11.1	Used units . . . . .	492
11.2	Overview . . . . .	492
11.3	Constants, types and variables . . . . .	492
11.3.1	Constants . . . . .	492
11.3.2	Types . . . . .	494
11.3.3	Variables . . . . .	496
11.4	Procedures and functions . . . . .	497
11.4.1	Gpm_AnyDouble . . . . .	497
11.4.2	Gpm_AnySingle . . . . .	497
11.4.3	Gpm_AnyTriple . . . . .	497
11.4.4	gpm_close . . . . .	498
11.4.5	gpm_fitvalues . . . . .	498
11.4.6	gpm_fitvaluesM . . . . .	498
11.4.7	gpm_getevent . . . . .	498
11.4.8	gpm_getsnapshot . . . . .	500
11.4.9	gpm_lowerroi . . . . .	500
11.4.10	gpm_open . . . . .	500
11.4.11	gpm_poproi . . . . .	501
11.4.12	gpm_pushroi . . . . .	501
11.4.13	gpm_raiseroi . . . . .	501
11.4.14	gpm_repeat . . . . .	501
11.4.15	Gpm_StrictDouble . . . . .	502
11.4.16	Gpm_StrictSingle . . . . .	502

11.4.17 Gpm_StrictTriple . . . . .	502
<b>12 Reference for unit 'Graph' . . . . .</b>	<b>503</b>
12.1 Categorized functions: Text and font handling . . . . .	503
12.2 Categorized functions: Filled drawings . . . . .	503
12.3 Categorized functions: Drawing primitives . . . . .	503
12.4 Categorized functions: Color management . . . . .	503
12.5 Categorized functions: Screen management . . . . .	504
12.6 Categorized functions: Initialization . . . . .	504
12.7 Target specific issues: Linux . . . . .	504
12.8 Target specific issues: DOS . . . . .	506
12.9 A word about mode selection . . . . .	506
12.10 Requirements . . . . .	508
12.11 Overview . . . . .	508
12.12 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	508
12.12.1 Constants . . . . .	508
12.12.2 Types . . . . .	523
12.12.3 Variables . . . . .	528
12.13 Procedures and functions . . . . .	530
12.13.1 Arc . . . . .	530
12.13.2 Bar . . . . .	531
12.13.3 Bar3D . . . . .	531
12.13.4 ClearDevice . . . . .	531
12.13.5 Closegraph . . . . .	531
12.13.6 DetectGraph . . . . .	532
12.13.7 DrawPoly . . . . .	532
12.13.8 Ellipse . . . . .	532
12.13.9 FillEllipse . . . . .	532
12.13.10 FillPoly . . . . .	533
12.13.11 FloodFill . . . . .	533
12.13.12 GetArcCoords . . . . .	533
12.13.13 GetAspectRatio . . . . .	534
12.13.14 GetBkColor . . . . .	534
12.13.15 GetColor . . . . .	534
12.13.16 GetDefaultPalette . . . . .	534
12.13.17 GetDirectVideo . . . . .	535
12.13.18 GetDriverName . . . . .	535
12.13.19 GetFillPattern . . . . .	535
12.13.20 GetFillSettings . . . . .	535
12.13.21 GetGraphMode . . . . .	536

12.13.2	GetLineSettings	536
12.13.2	GetMaxColor	536
12.13.2	GetMaxMode	536
12.13.2	GetMaxX	537
12.13.2	GetMaxY	537
12.13.2	GetModeName	537
12.13.2	GetModeRange	537
12.13.2	GetPalette	538
12.13.3	GetPaletteSize	538
12.13.3	GetTextSettings	538
12.13.3	GetViewSettings	538
12.13.3	GetX	539
12.13.3	GetY	539
12.13.3	GraphDefaults	539
12.13.3	GraphErrorMsg	539
12.13.3	GraphResult	540
12.13.3	InitGraph	540
12.13.3	InstallUserDriver	541
12.13.4	InstallUserFont	541
12.13.4	LineRel	541
12.13.4	LineTo	542
12.13.4	MoveRel	542
12.13.4	MoveTo	542
12.13.4	OutText	542
12.13.4	PieSlice	543
12.13.4	QueryAdapterInfo	543
12.13.4	Rectangle	543
12.13.4	RegisterBGIDriver	543
12.13.5	RegisterBGIfont	544
12.13.5	RestoreCrtMode	544
12.13.5	Sector	544
12.13.5	SetAspectRatio	544
12.13.5	SetBkColor	545
12.13.5	SetColor	545
12.13.5	SetDirectVideo	545
12.13.5	SetFillPattern	545
12.13.5	SetFillStyle	546
12.13.5	SetGraphMode	546
12.13.6	SetLineStyle	546
12.13.6	SetPalette	547

12.13.6	SetTextJustify	547
12.13.6	SetTextStyle	548
12.13.6	SetUserCharSize	548
12.13.6	SetViewPort	549
12.13.6	SetWriteMode	549
12.13.6	TextHeight	549
12.13.6	TextWidth	549
<b>13</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'heaptrc'</b>	<b>551</b>
13.1	Controlling HeapTrc with environment variables	551
13.2	HeapTrc Usage	551
13.3	Overview	552
13.4	Constants, types and variables	552
13.4.1	Constants	552
13.4.2	Types	553
13.5	Procedures and functions	553
13.5.1	DumpHeap	553
13.5.2	MarkHeap	554
13.5.3	SetHeapExtraInfo	554
13.5.4	SetHeapTraceOutput	555
<b>14</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'ipc'</b>	<b>557</b>
14.1	Used units	557
14.2	Overview	557
14.3	Constants, types and variables	557
14.3.1	Constants	557
14.3.2	Types	560
14.4	Procedures and functions	564
14.4.1	ftok	564
14.4.2	msgctl	564
14.4.3	msgget	567
14.4.4	msgrcv	567
14.4.5	msgsnd	568
14.4.6	semctl	568
14.4.7	semget	573
14.4.8	semop	573
14.4.9	shmat	574
14.4.10	shmctl	575
14.4.11	shmdt	577
14.4.12	shmget	577

<b>15 Reference for unit 'Keyboard'</b>	<b>578</b>
15.1 Writing a keyboard driver	578
15.2 Keyboard scan codes	579
15.3 Overview	579
15.4 Constants, types and variables	579
15.4.1 Constants	579
15.4.2 Types	584
15.5 Procedures and functions	585
15.5.1 AddSequence	585
15.5.2 DoneKeyboard	585
15.5.3 FindSequence	585
15.5.4 FunctionKeyName	585
15.5.5 GetKeyboardDriver	586
15.5.6 GetKeyEvent	586
15.5.7 GetKeyEventChar	587
15.5.8 GetKeyEventCode	587
15.5.9 GetKeyEventFlags	588
15.5.10 GetKeyEventShiftState	589
15.5.11 GetKeyEventUniCode	589
15.5.12 InitKeyboard	590
15.5.13 IsFunctionKey	590
15.5.14 KeyEventToString	591
15.5.15 KeyPressed	591
15.5.16 PollKeyEvent	591
15.5.17 PollShiftStateEvent	592
15.5.18 PutKeyEvent	593
15.5.19 RawReadKey	594
15.5.20 RawReadString	594
15.5.21 RestoreStartMode	594
15.5.22 SetKeyboardDriver	594
15.5.23 ShiftStateToString	594
15.5.24 TranslateKeyEvent	595
15.5.25 TranslateKeyEventUniCode	595
<b>16 Reference for unit 'Linux'</b>	<b>598</b>
16.1 Overview	598
16.2 Constants, types and variables	598
16.2.1 Constants	598
16.2.2 Types	599
16.3 Procedures and functions	599

16.3.1 Clone . . . . .	599
16.3.2 Sysinfo . . . . .	601
<b>17 Reference for unit 'math'</b>	<b>603</b>
17.1 Geometrical functions . . . . .	603
17.2 Statistical functions . . . . .	603
17.3 Number converting . . . . .	604
17.4 Exponential and logarithmic functions . . . . .	604
17.5 Hyperbolic functions . . . . .	604
17.6 Trigonometric functions . . . . .	604
17.7 Angle unit conversion . . . . .	604
17.8 Min/max determination . . . . .	605
17.9 Used units . . . . .	605
17.10 Overview . . . . .	605
17.11 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	606
17.11.1 Constants . . . . .	606
17.11.2 Types . . . . .	607
17.12 Procedures and functions . . . . .	608
17.12.1 arccos . . . . .	608
17.12.2 arccosh . . . . .	609
17.12.3 arcosh . . . . .	609
17.12.4 arcsin . . . . .	610
17.12.5 arcsinh . . . . .	611
17.12.6 arctan2 . . . . .	611
17.12.7 arctanh . . . . .	611
17.12.8 arsinh . . . . .	612
17.12.9 artanh . . . . .	612
17.12.10 ceil . . . . .	613
17.12.11 ClearExceptions . . . . .	613
17.12.12 cosh . . . . .	613
17.12.13 cotan . . . . .	614
17.12.14 cycletorad . . . . .	614
17.12.15 degtograd . . . . .	615
17.12.16 degtorad . . . . .	615
17.12.17 DivMod . . . . .	616
17.12.18 EnsureRange . . . . .	616
17.12.19 floor . . . . .	616
17.12.20 frexp . . . . .	617
17.12.21 GetExceptionMask . . . . .	618
17.12.22 GetPrecisionMode . . . . .	618

17.12.23	GetRoundMode	618
17.12.24	GetSSECSR	618
17.12.25	gradtodeg	618
17.12.26	gradtorad	619
17.12.27	hypot	619
17.12.28	ifthen	620
17.12.29	InRange	620
17.12.30	ntpower	620
17.12.31	IsInfinite	621
17.12.32	IsNan	621
17.12.33	IsZero	621
17.12.34	dexp	622
17.12.35	lnxp1	622
17.12.36	log10	623
17.12.37	log2	623
17.12.38	ogn	624
17.12.39	Max	624
17.12.40	MaxIntValue	625
17.12.41	maxvalue	626
17.12.42	mean	627
17.12.43	meanandstddev	627
17.12.44	Min	628
17.12.45	MinIntValue	629
17.12.46	minvalue	629
17.12.47	momentskewkurtosis	630
17.12.48	norm	631
17.12.49	popnstddev	632
17.12.50	popnvariance	633
17.12.51	power	633
17.12.52	radtocycle	634
17.12.53	radtodeg	634
17.12.54	radtograd	635
17.12.55	randg	635
17.12.56	SameValue	636
17.12.57	SetExceptionMask	636
17.12.58	SetPrecisionMode	637
17.12.59	SetRoundMode	637
17.12.60	SetSSECSR	637
17.12.61	Sign	637
17.12.62	sincos	638



17.12.63inh	638
17.12.64stddev	639
17.12.65sum	640
17.12.66sumofsquares	640
17.12.67sumsandsquares	641
17.12.68an	642
17.12.69anh	642
17.12.70totalvariance	643
17.12.71variance	644
17.13invalidargument	645
17.13.1 Description	645
<b>18 Reference for unit 'mmx'</b>	<b>646</b>
18.1 Overview	646
18.2 Constants, types and variables	646
18.2.1 Constants	646
18.2.2 Types	647
18.3 Procedures and functions	648
18.3.1 emms	648
18.3.2 femms	648
<b>19 Reference for unit 'Mouse'</b>	<b>649</b>
19.1 Writing a custom mouse driver	649
19.2 Overview	649
19.3 Constants, types and variables	649
19.3.1 Constants	649
19.3.2 Types	650
19.3.3 Variables	651
19.4 Procedures and functions	651
19.4.1 DetectMouse	651
19.4.2 DoneMouse	652
19.4.3 GetMouseButtons	652
19.4.4 GetMouseDriver	653
19.4.5 GetMouseEvent	653
19.4.6 GetMouseX	653
19.4.7 GetMouseY	654
19.4.8 HideMouse	654
19.4.9 InitMouse	655
19.4.10 PollMouseEvent	656
19.4.11 PutMouseEvent	656
19.4.12 SetMouseDriver	656

19.4.13 SetMouseXY . . . . .	657
19.4.14 ShowMouse . . . . .	657
<b>20 Reference for unit 'Objects' . . . . .</b>	<b>658</b>
20.1 Overview . . . . .	658
20.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	658
20.2.1 Constants . . . . .	658
20.2.2 Types . . . . .	660
20.2.3 Variables . . . . .	664
20.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .	664
20.3.1 Abstract . . . . .	664
20.3.2 CallPointerConstructor . . . . .	664
20.3.3 CallPointerLocal . . . . .	665
20.3.4 CallPointerMethod . . . . .	665
20.3.5 CallPointerMethodLocal . . . . .	665
20.3.6 CallVoidConstructor . . . . .	666
20.3.7 CallVoidLocal . . . . .	666
20.3.8 CallVoidMethod . . . . .	666
20.3.9 CallVoidMethodLocal . . . . .	667
20.3.10 DisposeStr . . . . .	667
20.3.11 LongDiv . . . . .	667
20.3.12 LongMul . . . . .	667
20.3.13 NewStr . . . . .	668
20.3.14 RegisterObjects . . . . .	668
20.3.15 RegisterType . . . . .	669
20.3.16 SetStr . . . . .	670
20.4 TBufStream . . . . .	671
20.4.1 Description . . . . .	671
20.4.2 Method overview . . . . .	671
20.4.3 TBufStream.Init . . . . .	671
20.4.4 TBufStream.Done . . . . .	672
20.4.5 TBufStream.Close . . . . .	672
20.4.6 TBufStream.Flush . . . . .	672
20.4.7 TBufStream.Truncate . . . . .	673
20.4.8 TBufStream.Seek . . . . .	673
20.4.9 TBufStream.Open . . . . .	674
20.4.10 TBufStream.Read . . . . .	674
20.4.11 TBufStream.Write . . . . .	674
20.5 TCollection . . . . .	675
20.5.1 Description . . . . .	675

20.5.2	Method overview	675
20.5.3	TCollection.Init	675
20.5.4	TCollection.Load	676
20.5.5	TCollection.Done	676
20.5.6	TCollection.At	677
20.5.7	TCollection.IndexOf	677
20.5.8	TCollection.GetItem	678
20.5.9	TCollection.LastThat	679
20.5.10	TCollection.FirstThat	679
20.5.11	TCollection.Pack	680
20.5.12	TCollection.FreeAll	681
20.5.13	TCollection.DeleteAll	682
20.5.14	TCollection.Free	683
20.5.15	TCollection.Insert	684
20.5.16	TCollection.Delete	684
20.5.17	TCollection.AtFree	685
20.5.18	TCollection.FreeItem	686
20.5.19	TCollection.AtDelete	686
20.5.20	TCollection.ForEach	687
20.5.21	TCollection.SetLimit	688
20.5.22	TCollection.Error	688
20.5.23	TCollection.AtPut	688
20.5.24	TCollection.AtInsert	689
20.5.25	TCollection.Store	689
20.5.26	TCollection.PutItem	690
20.6	TDosStream	690
20.6.1	Description	690
20.6.2	Method overview	690
20.6.3	TDosStream.Init	691
20.6.4	TDosStream.Done	691
20.6.5	TDosStream.Close	691
20.6.6	TDosStream.Truncate	692
20.6.7	TDosStream.Seek	692
20.6.8	TDosStream.Open	693
20.6.9	TDosStream.Read	694
20.6.10	TDosStream.Write	694
20.7	TMemoryStream	695
20.7.1	Description	695
20.7.2	Method overview	695
20.7.3	TMemoryStream.Init	695

20.7.4	TMemoryStream.Done	695
20.7.5	TMemoryStream.Truncate	696
20.7.6	TMemoryStream.Read	696
20.7.7	TMemoryStream.Write	697
20.8	TObject	697
20.8.1	Description	697
20.8.2	Method overview	697
20.8.3	TObject.Init	697
20.8.4	TObject.Free	697
20.8.5	TObject.Is_Object	698
20.8.6	TObject.Done	698
20.9	TPoint	699
20.9.1	Description	699
20.10	TRect	699
20.10.1	Description	699
20.10.2	Method overview	699
20.10.3	TRect.Empty	699
20.10.4	TRect.Equals	700
20.10.5	TRect.Contains	701
20.10.6	TRect.Copy	701
20.10.7	TRect.Union	702
20.10.8	TRect.Intersect	702
20.10.9	TRect.Move	703
20.10.10	TRect.Grow	704
20.10.11	TRect.Assign	704
20.11	TResourceCollection	705
20.11.1	Description	705
20.11.2	Method overview	705
20.11.3	TResourceCollection.KeyOf	705
20.11.4	TResourceCollection.GetItem	706
20.11.5	TResourceCollection.FreeItem	706
20.11.6	TResourceCollection.PutItem	706
20.12	TResourceFile	706
20.12.1	Description	706
20.12.2	Method overview	707
20.12.3	TResourceFile.Init	707
20.12.4	TResourceFile.Done	707
20.12.5	TResourceFile.Count	707
20.12.6	TResourceFile.KeyAt	708
20.12.7	TResourceFile.Get	708

---

20.12.8 TResourceFile.SwitchTo . . . . .	708
20.12.9 TResourceFile.Flush . . . . .	708
20.12.10 TResourceFile.Delete . . . . .	709
20.12.11 TResourceFile.Put . . . . .	709
20.13 TSortedCollection . . . . .	709
20.13.1 Description . . . . .	709
20.13.2 Method overview . . . . .	710
20.13.3 TSortedCollection.Init . . . . .	710
20.13.4 TSortedCollection.Load . . . . .	710
20.13.5 TSortedCollection.KeyOf . . . . .	710
20.13.6 TSortedCollection.IndexOf . . . . .	711
20.13.7 TSortedCollection.Compare . . . . .	711
20.13.8 TSortedCollection.Search . . . . .	712
20.13.9 TSortedCollection.Insert . . . . .	713
20.13.10 TSortedCollection.Store . . . . .	714
20.14 TStrCollection . . . . .	715
20.14.1 Description . . . . .	715
20.14.2 Method overview . . . . .	715
20.14.3 TStrCollection.Compare . . . . .	715
20.14.4 TStrCollection.GetItem . . . . .	716
20.14.5 TStrCollection.FreeItem . . . . .	716
20.14.6 TStrCollection.PutItem . . . . .	716
20.15 TStream . . . . .	717
20.15.1 Description . . . . .	717
20.15.2 Method overview . . . . .	717
20.15.3 TStream.Init . . . . .	717
20.15.4 TStream.Get . . . . .	717
20.15.5 TStream.StrRead . . . . .	718
20.15.6 TStream.GetPos . . . . .	719
20.15.7 TStream.GetSize . . . . .	719
20.15.8 TStream.ReadStr . . . . .	720
20.15.9 TStream.Open . . . . .	721
20.15.10 TStream.Close . . . . .	721
20.15.11 TStream.Reset . . . . .	721
20.15.12 TStream.Flush . . . . .	722
20.15.13 TStream.Truncate . . . . .	722
20.15.14 TStream.Put . . . . .	722
20.15.15 TStream.StrWrite . . . . .	723
20.15.16 TStream.WriteStr . . . . .	723
20.15.17 TStream.Seek . . . . .	723

20.15.18 TStream.Error	723
20.15.19 TStream.Read	724
20.15.20 TStream.Write	724
20.15.21 TStream.CopyFrom	725
20.16 TStringCollection	725
20.16.1 Description	725
20.16.2 Method overview	726
20.16.3 TStringCollection.GetItem	726
20.16.4 TStringCollection.Compare	726
20.16.5 TStringCollection.FreeItem	727
20.16.6 TStringCollection.PutItem	727
20.17 TStringList	727
20.17.1 Description	727
20.17.2 Method overview	728
20.17.3 TStringList.Load	728
20.17.4 TStringList.Done	728
20.17.5 TStringList.Get	728
20.18 TStrListMaker	729
20.18.1 Description	729
20.18.2 Method overview	729
20.18.3 TStrListMaker.Init	729
20.18.4 TStrListMaker.Done	729
20.18.5 TStrListMaker.Put	729
20.18.6 TStrListMaker.Store	730
20.19 TUnSortedStrCollection	730
20.19.1 Description	730
20.19.2 Method overview	730
20.19.3 TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert	730
<b>21 Reference for unit 'objpas'</b>	<b>732</b>
21.1 Overview	732
21.2 Constants, types and variables	732
21.2.1 Constants	732
21.2.2 Types	732
21.3 Procedures and functions	733
21.3.1 AssignFile	733
21.3.2 CloseFile	734
21.3.3 GetResourceStringCurrentValue	734
21.3.4 GetResourceStringDefaultValue	735
21.3.5 GetResourceStringHash	736

21.3.6	GetStringName	736
21.3.7	Hash	737
21.3.8	LoadResString	738
21.3.9	ParamStr	738
21.3.10	ResetResourceTables	738
21.3.11	ResourceStringCount	739
21.3.12	ResourceStringTableCount	739
21.3.13	SetResourceStrings	739
21.3.14	SetResourceStringValue	740
<b>22</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'oldlinux'</b>	<b>742</b>
22.1	Utility routines	742
22.2	Terminal functions	742
22.3	System information	742
22.4	Signals	743
22.5	Process handling	743
22.6	Directory handling routines	743
22.7	Pipes, FIFOs and streams	744
22.8	General File handling routines	744
22.9	File Input/Output routines	744
22.10	Overview	744
22.11	Constants, types and variables	744
22.11.1	Constants	744
22.11.2	Types	784
22.11.3	Variables	793
22.12	Procedures and functions	793
22.12.1	Access	793
22.12.2	Alarm	794
22.12.3	AssignPipe	795
22.12.4	AssignStream	796
22.12.5	Basename	797
22.12.6	CFMakeRaw	798
22.12.7	CFSetISpeed	798
22.12.8	CFSetOSpeed	798
22.12.9	Chmod	799
22.12.10	Chown	800
22.12.11	Clone	801
22.12.12	CloseDir	803
22.12.13	CreateShellArgV	803
22.12.14	Dirname	804

22.12.1	<del>D</del> up	805
22.12.1	<del>D</del> up2	805
22.12.1	<del>E</del> poChToLocal	806
22.12.1	<del>E</del> xecl	807
22.12.1	<del>E</del> xecle	808
22.12.2	<del>E</del> xeclp	808
22.12.2	<del>E</del> xecv	809
22.12.2	<del>E</del> xecve	810
22.12.2	<del>E</del> xecvp	811
22.12.2	<del>E</del> xitProcess	812
22.12.2	<del>F</del> cntl	812
22.12.2	<del>f</del> dClose	813
22.12.2	<del>f</del> dFlush	813
22.12.2	<del>f</del> dOpen	814
22.12.2	<del>f</del> dRead	815
22.12.3	<del>f</del> dSeek	816
22.12.3	<del>f</del> dTruncate	816
22.12.3	<del>f</del> dWrite	817
22.12.3	<del>F</del> D_Clr	817
22.12.3	<del>F</del> D_IsSet	817
22.12.3	<del>F</del> D_Set	817
22.12.3	<del>F</del> D_Zero	818
22.12.3	<del>F</del> Expand	818
22.12.3	<del>F</del> lock	818
22.12.3	<del>F</del> NMatch	819
22.12.4	<del>F</del> ork	820
22.12.4	<del>F</del> ReName	820
22.12.4	<del>F</del> Search	821
22.12.4	<del>F</del> Split	821
22.12.4	<del>F</del> SStat	822
22.12.4	<del>F</del> Stat	823
22.12.4	<del>G</del> etDate	824
22.12.4	<del>G</del> etDateTime	824
22.12.4	<del>G</del> etDomainName	825
22.12.4	<del>G</del> etEGid	825
22.12.5	<del>G</del> etEnv	826
22.12.5	<del>G</del> etEpochTime	826
22.12.5	<del>G</del> etEUid	827
22.12.5	<del>G</del> etFS	827
22.12.5	<del>G</del> etGid	828



22.12.5	<del>Get</del> HostName . . . . .	828
22.12.5	<del>Get</del> LocalTimezone . . . . .	829
22.12.5	<del>Get</del> Pid . . . . .	829
22.12.5	<del>Get</del> PPid . . . . .	830
22.12.5	<del>Get</del> Priority . . . . .	830
22.12.6	<del>Get</del> Time . . . . .	831
22.12.6	<del>Get</del> TimeOfDay . . . . .	831
22.12.6	<del>Get</del> TimezoneFile . . . . .	832
22.12.6	<del>Get</del> Uid . . . . .	832
22.12.6	<del>Glob</del> . . . . .	832
22.12.6	<del>Glob</del> free . . . . .	833
22.12.6	<del>IO</del> ctl . . . . .	833
22.12.6	<del>IO</del> perm . . . . .	834
22.12.6	<del>IO</del> PL . . . . .	834
22.12.6	<del>IO</del> sATTY . . . . .	835
22.12.7	<del>Kill</del> . . . . .	835
22.12.7	<del>Link</del> . . . . .	835
22.12.7	<del>Local</del> ToEpoch . . . . .	836
22.12.7	<del>Link</del> stat . . . . .	837
22.12.7	<del>Link</del> mkFifo . . . . .	839
22.12.7	<del>MM</del> ap . . . . .	839
22.12.7	<del>MU</del> nMap . . . . .	840
22.12.7	<del>Nano</del> Sleep . . . . .	841
22.12.7	<del>Nice</del> . . . . .	842
22.12.7	<del>Octal</del> . . . . .	842
22.12.8	<del>Open</del> Dir . . . . .	843
22.12.8	<del>Pause</del> . . . . .	844
22.12.8	<del>P</del> Close . . . . .	844
22.12.8	<del>P</del> Open . . . . .	844
22.12.8	<del>Read</del> Dir . . . . .	845
22.12.8	<del>Read</del> Link . . . . .	846
22.12.8	<del>Read</del> TimezoneFile . . . . .	847
22.12.8	<del>Seek</del> Dir . . . . .	847
22.12.8	<del>Select</del> . . . . .	847
22.12.8	<del>Select</del> Text . . . . .	849
22.12.9	<del>Set</del> Date . . . . .	849
22.12.9	<del>Set</del> DateTime . . . . .	849
22.12.9	<del>Set</del> Priority . . . . .	850
22.12.9	<del>Set</del> Time . . . . .	850
22.12.9	<del>Shell</del> . . . . .	850

22.12.9	<del>S</del> igAction	851
22.12.9	<del>S</del> ignal	852
22.12.9	<del>S</del> igPending	853
22.12.9	<del>S</del> igProcMask	853
22.12.9	<del>S</del> igRaise	854
22.12.10	<del>S</del> igSuspend	855
22.12.10	<del>S</del> tringToPPChar	855
22.12.10	<del>S</del> ymLink	856
22.12.10	<del>S</del> ysCall	857
22.12.10	<del>S</del> ysinfo	857
22.12.10	<del>S</del> _ISBLK	858
22.12.10	<del>S</del> _ISCHR	859
22.12.10	<del>S</del> _ISDIR	859
22.12.10	<del>S</del> _ISFIFO	859
22.12.10	<del>S</del> _ISLNK	859
22.12.10	<del>S</del> _ISREG	860
22.12.10	<del>S</del> _ISSOCK	860
22.12.10	<del>S</del> CDrain	861
22.12.10	<del>S</del> CFlow	861
22.12.10	<del>S</del> CFlush	861
22.12.10	<del>S</del> CGetAttr	862
22.12.10	<del>S</del> CGetPGrp	862
22.12.10	<del>S</del> CSendBreak	863
22.12.10	<del>S</del> CSetAttr	863
22.12.10	<del>S</del> CSetPGrp	864
22.12.12	<del>T</del> ellDir	864
22.12.12	<del>T</del> ITYname	864
22.12.12	<del>T</del> mask	865
22.12.12	<del>T</del> name	865
22.12.12	<del>T</del> nLink	865
22.12.12	<del>T</del> ime	866
22.12.12	<del>W</del> aitPid	867
22.12.12	<del>W</del> aitProcess	867
22.12.12	<del>W</del> EXITSTATUS	868
22.12.12	<del>W</del> IFEXITED	868
22.12.12	<del>W</del> IFSIGNALED	868
22.12.12	<del>W</del> IFSTOPPED	868
22.12.12	<del>W</del> STOPSIG	869
22.12.12	<del>W</del> TERMSIG	869
22.12.12	<del>W</del> _EXITCODE	869

22.12.13	<b>STOPCODE</b>	869
<b>23</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'ports'</b>	<b>870</b>
23.1	Overview	870
23.2	Constants, types and variables	870
23.2.1	Variables	870
23.3	tport	871
23.3.1	Description	871
23.3.2	Property overview	871
23.3.3	tport.pp	871
23.4	tportl	871
23.4.1	Description	871
23.4.2	Property overview	872
23.4.3	tportl.pp	872
23.5	tportw	872
23.5.1	Description	872
23.5.2	Property overview	872
23.5.3	tportw.pp	872
<b>24</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'printer'</b>	<b>873</b>
24.1	Overview	873
24.2	Constants, types and variables	873
24.2.1	Variables	873
24.3	Procedures and functions	873
24.3.1	AssignLst	873
24.3.2	InitPrinter	874
24.3.3	IsLstAvailable	874
<b>25</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Sockets'</b>	<b>875</b>
25.1	Used units	875
25.2	Overview	875
25.3	Constants, types and variables	875
25.3.1	Constants	875
25.3.2	Types	886
25.3.3	Variables	888
25.4	Procedures and functions	888
25.4.1	Accept	888
25.4.2	Bind	889
25.4.3	CloseSocket	890
25.4.4	Connect	890
25.4.5	fpaccept	892

---

25.4.6	<code>fpbind</code>	892
25.4.7	<code>fpconnect</code>	892
25.4.8	<code>fpgetpeername</code>	893
25.4.9	<code>fpgetsockname</code>	893
25.4.10	<code>fpgetsockopt</code>	893
25.4.11	<code>fplisten</code>	893
25.4.12	<code>fprecv</code>	893
25.4.13	<code>fprecvfrom</code>	893
25.4.14	<code>fp send</code>	893
25.4.15	<code>fp sendto</code>	894
25.4.16	<code>fpsetsockopt</code>	894
25.4.17	<code>fpshutdown</code>	894
25.4.18	<code>fpsocket</code>	894
25.4.19	<code>fpsocketpair</code>	894
25.4.20	<code>GetPeerName</code>	894
25.4.21	<code>GetSocketName</code>	895
25.4.22	<code>GetSocketOptions</code>	895
25.4.23	<code>HostAddrToStr</code>	896
25.4.24	<code>HostAddrToStr6</code>	896
25.4.25	<code>HostToNet</code>	896
25.4.26	<code>htonl</code>	896
25.4.27	<code>htons</code>	897
25.4.28	<code>Listen</code>	897
25.4.29	<code>NetAddrToStr</code>	897
25.4.30	<code>NetAddrToStr6</code>	897
25.4.31	<code>NetToHost</code>	898
25.4.32	<code>NToHl</code>	898
25.4.33	<code>NToHs</code>	898
25.4.34	<code>Recv</code>	898
25.4.35	<code>RecvFrom</code>	899
25.4.36	<code>Send</code>	899
25.4.37	<code>SendTo</code>	900
25.4.38	<code>SetSocketOptions</code>	900
25.4.39	<code>ShortHostToNet</code>	901
25.4.40	<code>ShortNetToHost</code>	901
25.4.41	<code>Shutdown</code>	901
25.4.42	<code>Sock2File</code>	902
25.4.43	<code>Sock2Text</code>	902
25.4.44	<code>Socket</code>	902
25.4.45	<code>SocketPair</code>	903

25.4.46 Str2UnixSockAddr . . . . .	903
25.4.47 StrToHostAddr . . . . .	903
25.4.48 StrToHostAddr6 . . . . .	903
25.4.49 StrToNetAddr . . . . .	904
25.4.50 StrToNetAddr6 . . . . .	904
<b>26 Reference for unit 'strings'</b>	<b>905</b>
26.1 Overview . . . . .	905
26.2 Procedures and functions . . . . .	905
26.2.1 stralloc . . . . .	905
26.2.2 strcat . . . . .	905
26.2.3 strcmp . . . . .	906
26.2.4 strcpy . . . . .	906
26.2.5 strdispose . . . . .	907
26.2.6 strecopy . . . . .	908
26.2.7 strend . . . . .	908
26.2.8 stricmp . . . . .	909
26.2.9 strlcat . . . . .	909
26.2.10 strlcomp . . . . .	910
26.2.11 strlcopy . . . . .	911
26.2.12 strlen . . . . .	911
26.2.13 strlicomp . . . . .	912
26.2.14 strlower . . . . .	912
26.2.15 strmove . . . . .	913
26.2.16 strnew . . . . .	913
26.2.17 strpas . . . . .	914
26.2.18 strpcopy . . . . .	914
26.2.19 strpos . . . . .	915
26.2.20 strstrcan . . . . .	916
26.2.21 strstrcan . . . . .	916
26.2.22 strupper . . . . .	916
<b>27 Reference for unit 'strutils'</b>	<b>917</b>
27.1 Used units . . . . .	917
27.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	917
27.2.1 Constants . . . . .	917
27.2.2 Types . . . . .	918
27.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .	918
27.3.1 AddChar . . . . .	918
27.3.2 AddCharR . . . . .	919
27.3.3 AnsiContainsStr . . . . .	919

27.3.4	AnsiContainsText	919
27.3.5	AnsiEndsStr	919
27.3.6	AnsiEndsText	920
27.3.7	AnsiIndexStr	920
27.3.8	AnsiIndexText	920
27.3.9	AnsiLeftStr	921
27.3.10	AnsiMatchStr	921
27.3.11	AnsiMatchText	921
27.3.12	AnsiMidStr	921
27.3.13	AnsiProperCase	922
27.3.14	AnsiReplaceStr	922
27.3.15	AnsiReplaceText	922
27.3.16	AnsiResemblesText	923
27.3.17	AnsiReverseString	923
27.3.18	AnsiRightStr	923
27.3.19	AnsiStartsStr	923
27.3.20	AnsiStartsText	924
27.3.21	BinToHex	924
27.3.22	Copy2Space	924
27.3.23	Copy2SpaceDel	925
27.3.24	Copy2Symb	925
27.3.25	Copy2SymbDel	925
27.3.26	Dec2Numb	926
27.3.27	DecodeSoundexInt	926
27.3.28	DecodeSoundexWord	926
27.3.29	DelChars	926
27.3.30	DelSpace	927
27.3.31	DelSpace1	927
27.3.32	DupeString	927
27.3.33	ExtractDelimited	927
27.3.34	ExtractSubstr	928
27.3.35	ExtractWord	928
27.3.36	ExtractWordPos	929
27.3.37	FindPart	929
27.3.38	GetCmdLineArg	929
27.3.39	Hex2Dec	930
27.3.40	HexToBin	930
27.3.41	IfThen	930
27.3.42	IntToBin	931
27.3.43	IntToRoman	931

27.3.44 IsEmptyStr . . . . .	931
27.3.45 IsWild . . . . .	931
27.3.46 IsWordPresent . . . . .	932
27.3.47 LeftBStr . . . . .	932
27.3.48 LeftStr . . . . .	932
27.3.49 MidBStr . . . . .	933
27.3.50 MidStr . . . . .	933
27.3.51 NPos . . . . .	933
27.3.52 Numb2Dec . . . . .	934
27.3.53 Numb2USA . . . . .	934
27.3.54 PadCenter . . . . .	934
27.3.55 PadLeft . . . . .	935
27.3.56 PadRight . . . . .	935
27.3.57 PosEx . . . . .	935
27.3.58 RandomFrom . . . . .	935
27.3.59 ReverseString . . . . .	936
27.3.60 RightBStr . . . . .	936
27.3.61 RightStr . . . . .	936
27.3.62 RomanToInt . . . . .	937
27.3.63 RPos . . . . .	937
27.3.64 RPosex . . . . .	937
27.3.65 SearchBuf . . . . .	937
27.3.66 Soundex . . . . .	938
27.3.67 SoundexCompare . . . . .	938
27.3.68 SoundexInt . . . . .	939
27.3.69 SoundexProc . . . . .	939
27.3.70 SoundexSimilar . . . . .	939
27.3.71 SoundexWord . . . . .	940
27.3.72 StuffString . . . . .	940
27.3.73 Tab2Space . . . . .	940
27.3.74 WordCount . . . . .	940
27.3.75 WordPosition . . . . .	941
27.3.76 XorDecode . . . . .	941
27.3.77 XorEncode . . . . .	941
27.3.78 XorString . . . . .	942
<b>28 Reference for unit 'System'</b>	<b>943</b>
28.1 Miscellaneous functions . . . . .	943
28.2 Operating System functions . . . . .	943
28.3 String handling . . . . .	943

28.4	Mathematical routines	943
28.5	Memory management functions	944
28.6	File handling functions	944
28.7	Overview	944
28.8	Constants, types and variables	945
28.8.1	Constants	945
28.8.2	Types	963
28.8.3	Variables	980
28.9	Procedures and functions	982
28.9.1	abs	982
28.9.2	AbstractError	983
28.9.3	AcquireExceptionObject	983
28.9.4	AddExitProc	984
28.9.5	Addr	984
28.9.6	Align	984
28.9.7	AllocMem	985
28.9.8	Append	985
28.9.9	arctan	985
28.9.10	ArrayStringToPPchar	986
28.9.11	AsmFreemem	986
28.9.12	AsmGetmem	987
28.9.13	Assert	987
28.9.14	Assign	987
28.9.15	Assigned	988
28.9.16	BasicEventCreate	989
28.9.17	basiceventdestroy	989
28.9.18	basiceventResetEvent	989
28.9.19	basiceventSetEvent	989
28.9.20	basiceventWaitFor	989
28.9.21	BeginThread	990
28.9.22	binStr	990
28.9.23	BlockRead	991
28.9.24	BlockWrite	991
28.9.25	Break	992
28.9.26	chdir	993
28.9.27	Chr	993
28.9.28	Close	994
28.9.29	CompareByte	994
28.9.30	CompareChar	995
28.9.31	CompareChar0	997



28.9.32 CompareDWord . . . . .	997
28.9.33 CompareWord . . . . .	998
28.9.34 Concat . . . . .	999
28.9.35 Continue . . . . .	1000
28.9.36 copy . . . . .	1001
28.9.37 cos . . . . .	1001
28.9.38 Cseg . . . . .	1002
28.9.39 Dec . . . . .	1002
28.9.40 Delete . . . . .	1003
28.9.41 Dispose . . . . .	1004
28.9.42 DoneCriticalsection . . . . .	1005
28.9.43 Dseg . . . . .	1005
28.9.44 Dump_Stack . . . . .	1005
28.9.45 EndThread . . . . .	1006
28.9.46 EnterCriticalsection . . . . .	1006
28.9.47 EOF . . . . .	1006
28.9.48 EOLn . . . . .	1007
28.9.49 Erase . . . . .	1008
28.9.50 Exclude . . . . .	1008
28.9.51 Exit . . . . .	1010
28.9.52 exp . . . . .	1011
28.9.53 FilePos . . . . .	1011
28.9.54 FileSize . . . . .	1012
28.9.55 FillByte . . . . .	1012
28.9.56 FillChar . . . . .	1013
28.9.57 FillDWord . . . . .	1014
28.9.58 FillWord . . . . .	1015
28.9.59 Flush . . . . .	1015
28.9.60 frac . . . . .	1016
28.9.61 Freemem . . . . .	1016
28.9.62 Freememory . . . . .	1017
28.9.63 GetCurrentThreadId . . . . .	1017
28.9.64 getdir . . . . .	1018
28.9.65 GetHeapStatus . . . . .	1018
28.9.66 GetMem . . . . .	1018
28.9.67 GetMemory . . . . .	1019
28.9.68 GetMemoryManager . . . . .	1019
28.9.69 GetProcessID . . . . .	1019
28.9.70 GetThreadID . . . . .	1019
28.9.71 GetThreadManager . . . . .	1020

28.9.72 GetVariantManager . . . . .	1020
28.9.73 get_caller_addr . . . . .	1020
28.9.74 get_caller_frame . . . . .	1020
28.9.75 get_frame . . . . .	1020
28.9.76 halt . . . . .	1021
28.9.77 hexStr . . . . .	1021
28.9.78 hi . . . . .	1022
28.9.79 High . . . . .	1022
28.9.80 Inc . . . . .	1023
28.9.81 Include . . . . .	1024
28.9.82 IndexByte . . . . .	1025
28.9.83 IndexChar . . . . .	1025
28.9.84 IndexChar0 . . . . .	1026
28.9.85 IndexDWord . . . . .	1026
28.9.86 Indexword . . . . .	1027
28.9.87 InitCriticalSection . . . . .	1028
28.9.88 InitThread . . . . .	1028
28.9.89 Insert . . . . .	1028
28.9.90 int . . . . .	1029
28.9.91 IOResult . . . . .	1029
28.9.92 IsMemoryManagerSet . . . . .	1031
28.9.93 IsVariantManagerSet . . . . .	1031
28.9.94 KillThread . . . . .	1031
28.9.95 LeaveCriticalsection . . . . .	1032
28.9.96 length . . . . .	1032
28.9.97 ln . . . . .	1033
28.9.98 lo . . . . .	1033
28.9.99 longjmp . . . . .	1034
28.9.100Low . . . . .	1034
28.9.101lowerCase . . . . .	1034
28.9.102MemSize . . . . .	1035
28.9.103mkdir . . . . .	1035
28.9.104Move . . . . .	1036
28.9.105MoveChar0 . . . . .	1036
28.9.106New . . . . .	1037
28.9.107OctStr . . . . .	1037
28.9.108odd . . . . .	1038
28.9.109Ofs . . . . .	1038
28.9.110Ord . . . . .	1039
28.9.111Paramcount . . . . .	1039

28.9.11	<del>P</del> ParamStr	1040
28.9.11	<del>p</del> i	1040
28.9.11	<del>P</del> os	1041
28.9.11	<del>P</del> red	1041
28.9.11	<del>p</del> refetch	1042
28.9.11	<del>p</del> tr	1042
28.9.11	<del>R</del> aiseList	1042
28.9.11	<del>R</del> andom	1043
28.9.12	<del>R</del> andomize	1043
28.9.12	<del>R</del> ead	1044
28.9.12	<del>R</del> eadLn	1045
28.9.12	<del>R</del> eal2Double	1045
28.9.12	<del>R</del> eAllocMem	1046
28.9.12	<del>R</del> eAllocMemory	1046
28.9.12	<del>R</del> eleaseExceptionObject	1046
28.9.12	<del>R</del> ename	1047
28.9.12	<del>R</del> eset	1047
28.9.12	<del>R</del> esumeThread	1048
28.9.13	<del>R</del> ewrite	1048
28.9.13	<del>r</del> mdir	1049
28.9.13	<del>r</del> ound	1050
28.9.13	<del>R</del> TLEventCreate	1050
28.9.13	<del>R</del> TLeventdestroy	1050
28.9.13	<del>R</del> TLeventResetEvent	1051
28.9.13	<del>R</del> TLeventSetEvent	1051
28.9.13	<del>R</del> TLeventStartWait	1051
28.9.13	<del>R</del> TLeventsync	1051
28.9.13	<del>R</del> TLeventWaitFor	1052
28.9.14	<del>R</del> unError	1052
28.9.14	<del>S</del> seek	1052
28.9.14	<del>S</del> seekEOF	1053
28.9.14	<del>S</del> seekEOLn	1054
28.9.14	<del>S</del> eg	1054
28.9.14	<del>S</del> etjmp	1055
28.9.14	<del>S</del> etLength	1056
28.9.14	<del>S</del> etMemoryManager	1056
28.9.14	<del>S</del> etMemoryMutexManager	1056
28.9.14	<del>S</del> etNoThreadManager	1057
28.9.15	<del>S</del> etString	1057
28.9.15	<del>S</del> etTextBuf	1057

28.9.15	SetTextLineEnding	1058
28.9.15	SetThreadManager	1058
28.9.15	SetVariantManager	1059
28.9.15	sin	1059
28.9.15	SizeOf	1059
28.9.15	Space	1060
28.9.15	Sptr	1060
28.9.15	qr	1061
28.9.16	qqr	1061
28.9.16	Sseg	1062
28.9.16	Str	1062
28.9.16	StringOfChar	1063
28.9.16	StringToPPChar	1063
28.9.16	strlen	1064
28.9.16	trpas	1064
28.9.16	Succ	1064
28.9.16	SuspendThread	1064
28.9.16	Swap	1065
28.9.17	SysAllocMem	1065
28.9.17	SysAssert	1065
28.9.17	SysBackTraceStr	1066
28.9.17	SysFreemem	1066
28.9.17	SysFreememSize	1066
28.9.17	SysGetHeapStatus	1066
28.9.17	SysGetmem	1067
28.9.17	SysInitExceptions	1067
28.9.17	SysInitStdIO	1067
28.9.17	SysMemSize	1067
28.9.18	SysReAllocMem	1067
28.9.18	SysResetFPU	1068
28.9.18	SysTryResizeMem	1068
28.9.18	ThreadGetPriority	1068
28.9.18	ThreadSetPriority	1068
28.9.18	ThreadSwitch	1069
28.9.18	trunc	1069
28.9.18	Truncate	1069
28.9.18	UniqueString	1070
28.9.18	upCase	1070
28.9.19	Val	1071
28.9.19	NarArrayRedim	1071

28.9.192WaitForThreadTerminate . . . . .	1072
28.9.193Write . . . . .	1072
28.9.194WriteLn . . . . .	1072
28.10TObject . . . . .	1073
28.10.1 Description . . . . .	1073
28.10.2 Method overview . . . . .	1074
28.10.3 TObject.Create . . . . .	1074
28.10.4 TObject.Destroy . . . . .	1074
28.10.5 TObject.newInstance . . . . .	1075
28.10.6 TObject.FreeInstance . . . . .	1075
28.10.7 TObject.SafeCallException . . . . .	1075
28.10.8 TObject.DefaultHandler . . . . .	1075
28.10.9 TObject.Free . . . . .	1076
28.10.10TObject.InitInstance . . . . .	1076
28.10.11TObject.CleanupInstance . . . . .	1076
28.10.12TObject.ClassType . . . . .	1077
28.10.13TObject.ClassInfo . . . . .	1077
28.10.14TObject.ClassName . . . . .	1077
28.10.15TObject.ClassNameIs . . . . .	1077
28.10.16TObject.ClassParent . . . . .	1078
28.10.17TObject.InstanceSize . . . . .	1078
28.10.18TObject.InheritsFrom . . . . .	1078
28.10.19TObject.StringMessageTable . . . . .	1078
28.10.20TObject.Dispatch . . . . .	1079
28.10.21TObject.DispatchStr . . . . .	1079
28.10.22TObject.MethodAddress . . . . .	1079
28.10.23TObject.MethodName . . . . .	1079
28.10.24TObject.FieldAddress . . . . .	1080
28.10.25TObject.AfterConstruction . . . . .	1080
28.10.26TObject.BeforeDestruction . . . . .	1080
28.10.27TObject.DefaultHandlerStr . . . . .	1080
<b>29 Reference for unit 'sysutils' . . . . .</b>	<b>1082</b>
29.1 Miscellaneous conversion routines . . . . .	1082
29.2 Date/time routines . . . . .	1082
29.3 FileName handling routines . . . . .	1082
29.4 File input/output routines . . . . .	1082
29.5 PChar related functions . . . . .	1083
29.6 Date and time formatting characters . . . . .	1085
29.7 Formatting strings . . . . .	1086

---

29.8 String functions . . . . .	1086
29.9 Used units . . . . .	1086
29.10 Overview . . . . .	1086
29.11 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	1086
29.11.1 Constants . . . . .	1086
29.11.2 Types . . . . .	1094
29.11.3 Variables . . . . .	1099
29.12 Procedures and functions . . . . .	1100
29.12.1 Abort . . . . .	1100
29.12.2 AddDisk . . . . .	1100
29.12.3 AddTerminateProc . . . . .	1100
29.12.4 AdjustLineBreaks . . . . .	1101
29.12.5 AnsiCompareFileName . . . . .	1101
29.12.6 AnsiCompareStr . . . . .	1102
29.12.7 AnsiCompareText . . . . .	1103
29.12.8 AnsiExtractQuotedStr . . . . .	1104
29.12.9 AnsiLastChar . . . . .	1104
29.12.10 AnsiLowerCase . . . . .	1105
29.12.11 AnsiLowerCaseFileName . . . . .	1105
29.12.12 AnsiPos . . . . .	1106
29.12.13 AnsiQuotedStr . . . . .	1106
29.12.14 AnsiSameStr . . . . .	1106
29.12.15 AnsiSameText . . . . .	1106
29.12.16 AnsiStrComp . . . . .	1107
29.12.17 AnsiStrIComp . . . . .	1107
29.12.18 AnsiStrLastChar . . . . .	1108
29.12.19 AnsiStrLComp . . . . .	1109
29.12.20 AnsiStrLIComp . . . . .	1109
29.12.21 AnsiStrLower . . . . .	1110
29.12.22 AnsiStrPos . . . . .	1111
29.12.23 AnsiStrRScan . . . . .	1111
29.12.24 AnsiStrScan . . . . .	1112
29.12.25 AnsiStrUpper . . . . .	1112
29.12.26 AnsiUpperCase . . . . .	1113
29.12.27 AnsiUpperCaseFileName . . . . .	1113
29.12.28 AppendStr . . . . .	1113
29.12.29 ApplicationName . . . . .	1114
29.12.30 AssignStr . . . . .	1114
29.12.31 BCDToInt . . . . .	1115
29.12.32 Beep . . . . .	1115

29.12.3	BoolToStr	1116
29.12.3	ByteToCharIndex	1116
29.12.3	ByteToCharLen	1116
29.12.3	ByteType	1116
29.12.3	CallTerminateProc	1117
29.12.3	ChangeFileExt	1117
29.12.3	CharToByteLen	1117
29.12.4	CompareMem	1117
29.12.4	CompareMemRange	1118
29.12.4	CompareStr	1118
29.12.4	CompareText	1119
29.12.4	CreateDir	1120
29.12.4	CurrToStr	1121
29.12.4	Date	1121
29.12.4	DateTimeToFileDate	1122
29.12.4	DateTimeToStr	1122
29.12.4	DateTimeToString	1123
29.12.5	DateTimeToSystemTime	1123
29.12.5	DateTimeToTimeStamp	1124
29.12.5	DateToStr	1125
29.12.5	DayOfWeek	1125
29.12.5	DecodeDate	1126
29.12.5	DecodeDateFully	1126
29.12.5	DecodeTime	1126
29.12.5	DeleteFile	1127
29.12.5	DirectoryExists	1128
29.12.5	DiskFree	1128
29.12.6	DiskSize	1129
29.12.6	DisposeStr	1129
29.12.6	DoDirSeparators	1129
29.12.6	EncodeDate	1130
29.12.6	EncodeTime	1131
29.12.6	ExceptAddr	1131
29.12.6	ExceptionErrorMessage	1132
29.12.6	ExceptObject	1132
29.12.6	ExcludeTrailingBackslash	1132
29.12.6	ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter	1132
29.12.7	ExecuteProcess	1133
29.12.7	ExpandFileName	1133
29.12.7	ExpandUNCFileName	1134

29.12.7	ExtractFileDir	1134
29.12.7	ExtractFileDrive	1135
29.12.7	ExtractFileExt	1135
29.12.7	ExtractFileName	1135
29.12.7	ExtractFilePath	1136
29.12.7	ExtractRelativepath	1136
29.12.7	FileAge	1137
29.12.8	FileClose	1137
29.12.8	FileCreate	1137
29.12.8	FileDateToDateTime	1138
29.12.8	FileExists	1139
29.12.8	FileGetAttr	1139
29.12.8	FileGetDate	1141
29.12.8	FileIsReadOnly	1141
29.12.8	FileOpen	1141
29.12.8	FileRead	1142
29.12.8	FileSearch	1142
29.12.9	FileSeek	1143
29.12.9	FileSetAttr	1144
29.12.9	FileSetDate	1144
29.12.9	FileTruncate	1144
29.12.9	FileWrite	1144
29.12.9	FindClose	1145
29.12.9	FindCmdLineSwitch	1145
29.12.9	FindFirst	1145
29.12.9	FindNext	1146
29.12.9	FloattoCurr	1147
29.12.10	FloatToDateTime	1147
29.12.10	FloatToDecimal	1147
29.12.10	FloatToStr	1148
29.12.10	FloatToStrF	1148
29.12.10	FloatToText	1150
29.12.10	FloatToTextFmt	1151
29.12.10	FmtStr	1151
29.12.10	ForceDirectories	1152
29.12.10	Format	1152
29.12.10	FormatBuf	1157
29.12.10	FormatCurr	1158
29.12.10	FormatDateTime	1158
29.12.10	FormatFloat	1159



29.12.1	<del>FreeAndNil</del>	1160
29.12.1	<del>GetAppConfigDir</del>	1160
29.12.1	<del>GetAppConfigFile</del>	1161
29.12.1	<del>GetCurrentDir</del>	1161
29.12.1	<del>GetDirs</del>	1162
29.12.1	<del>GetEnvironmentString</del>	1163
29.12.1	<del>GetEnvironmentVariable</del>	1163
29.12.1	<del>GetEnvironmentVariableCount</del>	1163
29.12.1	<del>GetFileHandle</del>	1164
29.12.1	<del>GetLastError</del>	1164
29.12.1	<del>GetLocalTime</del>	1164
29.12.1	<del>GetTempDir</del>	1164
29.12.1	<del>GetTempFileName</del>	1165
29.12.1	<del>IncludeTrailingBackslash</del>	1165
29.12.1	<del>IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter</del>	1165
29.12.1	<del>IsMonth</del>	1166
29.12.1	<del>InterLockedDecrement</del>	1166
29.12.1	<del>InterLockedExchange</del>	1166
29.12.1	<del>InterLockedExchangeAdd</del>	1167
29.12.1	<del>InterLockedIncrement</del>	1167
29.12.1	<del>IntToHex</del>	1167
29.12.1	<del>IntToStr</del>	1168
29.12.1	<del>IsDelimiter</del>	1168
29.12.1	<del>IsLeapYear</del>	1169
29.12.1	<del>IsPathDelimiter</del>	1169
29.12.1	<del>IsValidIdent</del>	1170
29.12.1	<del>IsFastDelimiter</del>	1170
29.12.1	<del>LeftStr</del>	1171
29.12.1	<del>LoadStr</del>	1171
29.12.1	<del>LowerCase</del>	1172
29.12.1	<del>MSecsToTimeStamp</del>	1172
29.12.1	<del>NewStr</del>	1173
29.12.1	<del>Now</del>	1173
29.12.1	<del>OutOfMemoryError</del>	1174
29.12.1	<del>QuotedStr</del>	1174
29.12.1	<del>RaiseLastError</del>	1174
29.12.1	<del>RemoveDir</del>	1175
29.12.1	<del>RenameFile</del>	1175
29.12.1	<del>RightStr</del>	1176
29.12.1	<del>SameFileName</del>	1176

29.12.15	SameText	1176
29.12.15	SetCurrentDir	1177
29.12.15	SetDirSeparators	1177
29.12.15	ShowException	1177
29.12.15	Sleep	1178
29.12.15	StrAlloc	1178
29.12.15	StrBufSize	1178
29.12.16	StrByteType	1179
29.12.16	Strcat	1179
29.12.16	StrCharLength	1180
29.12.16	Strcomp	1180
29.12.16	Strcopy	1180
29.12.16	StrDispose	1181
29.12.16	Strncpy	1181
29.12.16	Strrend	1182
29.12.16	StrFmt	1182
29.12.16	Stricmp	1183
29.12.17	StrngReplace	1183
29.12.17	Strlcat	1184
29.12.17	Strlcomp	1184
29.12.17	Strlcopy	1185
29.12.17	Strlen	1186
29.12.17	StrLFmt	1186
29.12.17	Strlicomp	1187
29.12.17	Strlower	1187
29.12.17	Strmove	1188
29.12.17	Strnew	1188
29.12.18	StrPas	1189
29.12.18	StrPCopy	1189
29.12.18	StrPLCopy	1189
29.12.18	Strpos	1190
29.12.18	Strscan	1190
29.12.18	Strscan	1190
29.12.18	StrToBool	1191
29.12.18	StrToCurr	1191
29.12.18	StrToCurrDef	1191
29.12.18	StrToDate	1192
29.12.19	StrToDateTime	1192
29.12.19	StrToFloat	1193
29.12.19	StrToFloatDef	1194

29.12.19StrToInt	1194
29.12.19StrToInt64	1195
29.12.19StrToInt64Def	1195
29.12.19StrToIntDef	1196
29.12.19StrToTime	1196
29.12.19StrUpper	1197
29.12.19SysErrorMessage	1197
29.12.20SystemTimeToDateTime	1198
29.12.20TextToFloat	1198
29.12.20Time	1199
29.12.20TimeStampToDateTime	1200
29.12.20TimeStampToMsecs	1200
29.12.20TimeToStr	1201
29.12.20Trim	1201
29.12.20TrimLeft	1202
29.12.20TrimRight	1202
29.12.20TryEncodeDate	1203
29.12.20TryEncodeTime	1203
29.12.20TryFloatToCurr	1204
29.12.20TryStrToCurr	1204
29.12.20TryStrToDate	1204
29.12.20TryStrToDateTime	1204
29.12.20TryStrToFloat	1204
29.12.20TryStrToInt	1205
29.12.20TryStrToInt64	1205
29.12.20TryStrToTime	1205
29.12.20UpperCase	1205
29.12.20WideCompareStr	1206
29.12.20WideCompareText	1206
29.12.20WideFmtStr	1207
29.12.20WideFormat	1207
29.12.20WideFormatBuf	1207
29.12.20WideLowerCase	1208
29.12.20WideSameStr	1208
29.12.20WideSameText	1208
29.12.20WideUpperCase	1208
29.12.20WrapText	1209
29.13EAbort	1209
29.13.1 Description	1209
29.14EAbstractError	1209

29.14.1 Description . . . . .	1209
29.15EAccessViolation . . . . .	1209
29.15.1 Description . . . . .	1209
29.16EAssertionFailed . . . . .	1209
29.16.1 Description . . . . .	1209
29.17EControlC . . . . .	1209
29.17.1 Description . . . . .	1209
29.18EConvertError . . . . .	1210
29.18.1 Description . . . . .	1210
29.19EDivByZero . . . . .	1210
29.19.1 Description . . . . .	1210
29.20EExternal . . . . .	1210
29.20.1 Description . . . . .	1210
29.21EExternalException . . . . .	1210
29.21.1 Description . . . . .	1210
29.22EHeapMemoryError . . . . .	1210
29.22.1 Description . . . . .	1210
29.23EInOutError . . . . .	1210
29.23.1 Description . . . . .	1210
29.24EInterror . . . . .	1210
29.24.1 Description . . . . .	1210
29.25EIntfCastError . . . . .	1211
29.25.1 Description . . . . .	1211
29.26EIntOverflow . . . . .	1211
29.26.1 Description . . . . .	1211
29.27EInvalidCast . . . . .	1211
29.27.1 Description . . . . .	1211
29.28EInvalidContainer . . . . .	1211
29.28.1 Description . . . . .	1211
29.29EInvalidInsert . . . . .	1211
29.29.1 Description . . . . .	1211
29.30EInvalidOp . . . . .	1211
29.30.1 Description . . . . .	1211
29.31EInvalidPointer . . . . .	1211
29.31.1 Description . . . . .	1211
29.32EMathError . . . . .	1212
29.32.1 Description . . . . .	1212
29.33ENoThreadSupport . . . . .	1212
29.33.1 Description . . . . .	1212
29.34EOSError . . . . .	1212

---

29.34.1 Description . . . . .	1212
29.35EOutOfMemory . . . . .	1212
29.35.1 Description . . . . .	1212
29.36EOverflow . . . . .	1212
29.36.1 Description . . . . .	1212
29.37EPackageError . . . . .	1212
29.37.1 Description . . . . .	1212
29.38EPrivilege . . . . .	1212
29.38.1 Description . . . . .	1212
29.39EPropReadOnly . . . . .	1213
29.39.1 Description . . . . .	1213
29.40EPropWriteOnly . . . . .	1213
29.40.1 Description . . . . .	1213
29.41ERangeError . . . . .	1213
29.41.1 Description . . . . .	1213
29.42ESafecallException . . . . .	1213
29.42.1 Description . . . . .	1213
29.43EStackOverflow . . . . .	1213
29.43.1 Description . . . . .	1213
29.44EUnderflow . . . . .	1213
29.44.1 Description . . . . .	1213
29.45EVariantError . . . . .	1213
29.45.1 Description . . . . .	1213
29.46Exception . . . . .	1214
29.46.1 Description . . . . .	1214
29.46.2 Method overview . . . . .	1214
29.46.3 Property overview . . . . .	1214
29.46.4 Exception.Create . . . . .	1214
29.46.5 Exception.CreateFmt . . . . .	1214
29.46.6 Exception.CreateRes . . . . .	1215
29.46.7 Exception.CreateResFmt . . . . .	1215
29.46.8 Exception.CreateHelp . . . . .	1215
29.46.9 Exception.CreateFmtHelp . . . . .	1215
29.46.10Exception.CreateResHelp . . . . .	1216
29.46.11Exception.CreateResFmtHelp . . . . .	1216
29.46.12Exception.HelpContext . . . . .	1216
29.46.13Exception.Message . . . . .	1216
29.47EZeroDivide . . . . .	1217
29.47.1 Description . . . . .	1217

<b>30 Reference for unit 'typinfo'</b>	<b>1218</b>
30.1 Auxiliary functions	1218
30.2 Getting or setting property values	1218
30.3 Examining published property information	1218
30.4 Used units	1218
30.5 Overview	1218
30.6 Constants, types and variables	1219
30.6.1 Constants	1219
30.6.2 Types	1221
30.7 Procedures and functions	1224
30.7.1 FindPropInfo	1224
30.7.2 GetEnumName	1226
30.7.3 GetEnumProp	1227
30.7.4 GetEnumValue	1228
30.7.5 GetFloatProp	1228
30.7.6 GetInt64Prop	1229
30.7.7 GetMethodProp	1230
30.7.8 GetObjectProp	1232
30.7.9 GetObjectPropClass	1233
30.7.10 GetOrdProp	1233
30.7.11 GetPropInfo	1234
30.7.12 GetPropInfos	1235
30.7.13 GetPropList	1236
30.7.14 GetPropValue	1237
30.7.15 GetSetProp	1237
30.7.16 GetStrProp	1239
30.7.17 GetTypeData	1239
30.7.18 GetVariantProp	1240
30.7.19 IsPublishedProp	1240
30.7.20 IsStoredProp	1241
30.7.21 PropIsType	1242
30.7.22 PropType	1242
30.7.23 SetEnumProp	1243
30.7.24 SetFloatProp	1244
30.7.25 SetInt64Prop	1244
30.7.26 SetMethodProp	1244
30.7.27 SetObjectProp	1245
30.7.28 SetOrdProp	1245
30.7.29 SetPropValue	1246
30.7.30 SetSetProp	1246

30.7.31 SetStrProp . . . . .	1247
30.7.32 SetToString . . . . .	1247
30.7.33 SetVariantProp . . . . .	1248
30.7.34 StringToSet . . . . .	1248
30.8 EPropertyError . . . . .	1249
30.8.1 Description . . . . .	1249
<b>31 Reference for unit 'Unix' . . . . .</b>	<b>1250</b>
31.1 Used units . . . . .	1250
31.2 Constants, types and variables . . . . .	1250
31.2.1 Constants . . . . .	1250
31.2.2 Types . . . . .	1256
31.2.3 Variables . . . . .	1263
31.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .	1263
31.3.1 AssignPipe . . . . .	1263
31.3.2 AssignStream . . . . .	1264
31.3.3 FpExecL . . . . .	1266
31.3.4 FpExecLE . . . . .	1267
31.3.5 FpExecLP . . . . .	1268
31.3.6 FpExecV . . . . .	1268
31.3.7 FpExecVP . . . . .	1269
31.3.8 FpExecVPE . . . . .	1270
31.3.9 fpFlock . . . . .	1271
31.3.10 fpgettimeofday . . . . .	1272
31.3.11 fpSystem . . . . .	1272
31.3.12 FSearch . . . . .	1273
31.3.13 fStatFS . . . . .	1273
31.3.14 fsync . . . . .	1274
31.3.15 GetDomainName . . . . .	1275
31.3.16 GetHostName . . . . .	1275
31.3.17 GetLocalTimezone . . . . .	1276
31.3.18 GetTimezoneFile . . . . .	1276
31.3.19 PClose . . . . .	1277
31.3.20 POpen . . . . .	1277
31.3.21 ReadTimezoneFile . . . . .	1278
31.3.22 SeekDir . . . . .	1278
31.3.23 SelectText . . . . .	1279
31.3.24 Shell . . . . .	1279
31.3.25 SigRaise . . . . .	1279
31.3.26 StatFS . . . . .	1280

31.3.27	TellDir	1282
31.3.28	WaitProcess	1282
31.3.29	WIFSTOPPED	1282
31.3.30	W_EXITCODE	1283
31.3.31	W_STOPCODE	1283
<b>32</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'unixtype'</b>	<b>1284</b>
32.1	Overview	1284
32.2	Constants, types and variables	1284
32.2.1	Constants	1284
32.2.2	Types	1285
<b>33</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'unixutil'</b>	<b>1296</b>
33.1	Overview	1296
33.2	Constants, types and variables	1296
33.2.1	Types	1296
33.2.2	Variables	1296
33.3	Procedures and functions	1297
33.3.1	ArrayStringToPPchar	1297
33.3.2	Basename	1297
33.3.3	Dirname	1298
33.3.4	EpochToLocal	1298
33.3.5	FNMatch	1299
33.3.6	FSplit	1300
33.3.7	GetFS	1300
33.3.8	GregorianToJulian	1301
33.3.9	JulianToGregorian	1301
33.3.10	LocalToEpoch	1301
33.3.11	StringToPPChar	1302
<b>34</b>	<b>Reference for unit 'Video'</b>	<b>1304</b>
34.1	Examples utility unit	1304
34.2	Writing a custom video driver	1304
34.3	Overview	1305
34.4	Constants, types and variables	1306
34.4.1	Constants	1306
34.4.2	Types	1310
34.4.3	Variables	1311
34.5	Procedures and functions	1312
34.5.1	ClearScreen	1312
34.5.2	DefaultErrorHandler	1313



34.5.3 DoneVideo . . . . .	1313
34.5.4 GetCapabilities . . . . .	1313
34.5.5 GetCursorType . . . . .	1314
34.5.6 GetLockScreenCount . . . . .	1315
34.5.7 GetVideoDriver . . . . .	1316
34.5.8 GetVideoMode . . . . .	1317
34.5.9 GetVideoModeCount . . . . .	1317
34.5.10 GetVideoModeData . . . . .	1318
34.5.11 InitVideo . . . . .	1318
34.5.12 LockScreenUpdate . . . . .	1319
34.5.13 SetCursorPos . . . . .	1319
34.5.14 SetCursorType . . . . .	1320
34.5.15 SetVideoDriver . . . . .	1321
34.5.16 SetVideoMode . . . . .	1321
34.5.17 UnlockScreenUpdate . . . . .	1322
34.5.18 UpdateScreen . . . . .	1322
<b>35 Reference for unit 'x86'</b>	<b>1323</b>
35.1 Used units . . . . .	1323
35.2 Overview . . . . .	1323
35.3 Procedures and functions . . . . .	1323
35.3.1 fpIOperm . . . . .	1323
35.3.2 fpIoPL . . . . .	1324
35.3.3 ReadPort . . . . .	1324
35.3.4 ReadPortB . . . . .	1324
35.3.5 ReadPortL . . . . .	1325
35.3.6 ReadPortW . . . . .	1325
35.3.7 WritePort . . . . .	1325
35.3.8 WritePortB . . . . .	1326
35.3.9 WritePortl . . . . .	1326
35.3.10 WritePortW . . . . .	1326

## About this guide

This document describes all constants, types, variables, functions and procedures as they are declared in the units that come standard with the FCL (Free Component Library).

Throughout this document, we will refer to functions, types and variables with `typewriter` font. Functions and procedures have their own subsections, and for each function or procedure we have the following topics:

**Declaration** The exact declaration of the function.

**Description** What does the procedure exactly do ?

**Errors** What errors can occur.

**See Also** Cross references to other related functions/commands.

## 0.1 Overview

The Run-Time Library is the basis of all Free Pascal programs. It contains the basic units that most programs will use, and are made available on all platforms supported by Free pascal (well, more or less).

There are units for compatibility with the Turbo Pascal Run-Time library, and there are units for compatibility with Delphi.

On top of these two sets, there are also a series of units to handle keyboard/mouse and text screens in a cross-platform way.

Other units include platform specific units that implement the specifics of a platform, these are usually needed to support the Turbo Pascal or Delphi units.

Units that fall outside the above outline do not belong in the RTL, but should be included in the packages, or in the FCL.

# Chapter 1

## Reference for unit 'BaseUnix'

### 1.1 Used units

Table 1.1: Used units by unit 'BaseUnix'

Name	Page
unixtype	<a href="#">1284</a>

### 1.2 Overview

The **BaseUnix** unit was implemented by Marco Van de Voort. It contains basic unix functionality. It supersedes the **Linux** unit of version 1.0.X of the compiler, but does not implement all functionality of the **linux** unit.

People that have code which heavily uses the old **Linux** unit, can simply change **linux** by **oldlinux** in the **uses** clause of their projects, but they should really consider moving to the **Unix** and **BaseUnix** units.

For porting FPC to new unix-like platforms, it should be sufficient to implement the functionality in this unit for the new platform.

### 1.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 1.3.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX = UnixType.ARG_MAX`

Maximum number of arguments to a program.

`BITSINWORD = 8 * sizeof ( longint )`

Number of bits in a word.

`ESysE2BIG = 7`

System error: Argument list too long

ESysEACCES = 13

System error: Permission denied

ESysEADDRINUSE = 98

System error: Address already in use

ESysEADDRNOTAVAIL = 99

System error: Cannot assign requested address

ESysEADV = 68

System error: Advertise error

ESysEAFNOSUPPORT = 97

System error: Address family not supported by protocol

ESysEAGAIN = 11

System error: Try again

ESysEALREADY = 114

System error: Operation already in progress

ESysEBADE = 52

System error: Invalid exchange

ESysEBADF = 9

System error: Bad file number

ESysEBADFD = 77

System error: File descriptor in bad state

ESysEBADMSG = 74

System error: Not a data message

ESysEBADR = 53

System error: Invalid request descriptor

ESysEBADRQC = 56

System error: Invalid request code

ESysEBADSLT = 57

System error: Invalid slot

ESysEBFONT = 59

System error: Bad font file format

ESysEBUSY = 16

System error: Device or resource busy

ESysECHILD = 10

System error: No child processes

ESysECHRNG = 44

System error: Channel number out of range

ESysECOMM = 70

System error: Communication error on send

ESysECONNABORTED = 103

System error: Software caused connection abort

ESysECONNREFUSED = 111

System error: Connection refused

ESysECONNRESET = 104

System error: Connection reset by peer

ESysEDEADLK = 35

System error: Resource deadlock would occur

ESysEDEADLOCK = 58

System error: File locking deadlock error

ESysEDESTADDRREQ = 89

System error: Destination address required

ESysEDOM = 33

System error: Math argument out of domain of func

ESysEDOTDOT = 73

System error: RFS specific error

ESysEDQUOT = 122

System error: Quota exceeded

ESysEEXIST = 17

System error: File exists

ESysEFAULT = 14

System error: Bad address

ESysEFBIG = 27

System error: File too large

ESysEHOSTDOWN = 112

System error: Host is down

ESysEHOSTUNREACH = 113

System error: No route to host

ESysEIDRM = 43

System error: Identifier removed

ESysEILSEQ = 84

System error: Illegal byte sequence

ESysEINPROGRESS = 115

System error: Operation now in progress

ESysEINTR = 4

System error: Interrupted system call

ESysEINVAL = 22

System error: Invalid argument

ESysEIO = 5

System error: I/O error

ESysEISCONN = 106

System error: Transport endpoint is already connected

ESysEISDIR = 21

System error: Is a directory

ESysEISNAM = 120

System error: Is a named type file

ESysEL2HLT = 51

System error: Level 2 halted

ESysEL2NSYNC = 45

System error: Level 2 not synchronized

ESysEL3HLT = 46

System error: Level 3 halted

ESysEL3RST = 47

System error: Level 3 reset

ESysELIBACC = 79

System error: Can not access a needed shared library

ESysELIBBAD = 80

System error: Accessing a corrupted shared library

ESysELIBEXEC = 83

System error: Cannot exec a shared library directly

ESysELIBMAX = 82

System error: Attempting to link in too many shared libraries

ESysELIBSCN = 81

System error: .lib section in a.out corrupted

ESysELNRNG = 48

System error: Link number out of range

ESysELOOP = 40

System error: Too many symbolic links encountered

ESysEMFILE = 24

System error: Too many open files

ESysEMLINK = 31

System error: Too many links

ESysEMSGSIZE = 90

System error: Message too long

ESysEMULTIHOP = 72

System error: Multihop attempted

ESysENAMETOOLONG = 36

System error: File name too long

ESysENAVAIL = 119

System error: No XENIX semaphores available

ESysENETDOWN = 100

System error: Network is down

ESysENETRESET = 102

System error: Network dropped connection because of reset

ESysENETUNREACH = 101

System error: Network is unreachable

ESysENFILE = 23

System error: File table overflow

ESysENOANO = 55

System error: No anode

ESysENOBUFFS = 105



System error: No buffer space available

ESysENOC SI = 50

System error: No CSI structure available

ESysENODATA = 61

System error: No data available

ESysENODEV = 19

System error: No such device

ESysENOENT = 2

System error: No such file or directory

ESysENOEXEC = 8

System error: Exec format error

ESysENOLCK = 37

System error: No record locks available

ESysENOLINK = 67

System error: Link has been severed

ESysENOMEM = 12

System error: Out of memory

ESysENOMSG = 42

System error: No message of desired type

ESysENONET = 64

System error: Machine is not on the network

ESysENOPKG = 65

System error: Package not installed

ESysENOPROTOOPT = 92

System error: Protocol not available

ESysENOSPC = 28

System error: No space left on device

ESysENOSR = 63

System error: Out of streams resources

ESysENOSTR = 60

System error: Device not a stream

ESysENOSYS = 38

System error: Function not implemented

ESysENOTBLK = 15

System error: Block device required

ESysENOTCONN = 107

System error: Transport endpoint is not connected

ESysENOTDIR = 20

System error: Not a directory

ESysENOTEMPTY = 39

System error: Directory not empty

ESysENOTNAM = 118

System error: Not a XENIX named type file

ESysENOTSOCK = 88

System error: Socket operation on non-socket

ESysENOTTY = 25

System error: Not a typewriter

ESysENOTUNIQ = 76

System error: Name not unique on network

ESysENXIO = 6

System error: No such device or address

ESysEOPNOTSUPP = 95

System error: Operation not supported on transport endpoint

ESysEOVERFLOW = 75

System error: Value too large for defined data type

ESysEPERM = 1

System error: Operation not permitted.

ESysEPFNOSUPPORT = 96

System error: Protocol family not supported

ESysEPIPE = 32

System error: Broken pipe

ESysEPROTO = 71

System error: Protocol error

ESysEPROTONOSUPPORT = 93

System error: Protocol not supported

ESysEPROTOTYPE = 91

System error: Protocol wrong type for socket

ESysERANGE = 34

System error: Math result not representable

ESysEREMCHG = 78

System error: Remote address changed

ESysEREMOTE = 66

System error: Object is remote

ESysEREMOTEIO = 121

System error: Remote I/O error

ESysERESTART = 85

System error: Interrupted system call should be restarted

ESysEROFS = 30

System error: Read-only file system

ESysESHUTDOWN = 108

System error: Cannot send after transport endpoint shutdown

ESysESOCKTNOSUPPORT = 94

System error: Socket type not supported

ESysESPIPE = 29

System error: Illegal seek

ESysESRCH = 3

System error: No such process

ESysESRMNT = 69

System error: Srmount error

ESysESTALE = 116

System error: Stale NFS file handle

ESysESTRPIPE = 86

System error: Streams pipe error

ESysETIME = 62

System error: Timer expired

ESysETIMEDOUT = 110

System error: Connection timed out

ESysETOOMANYREFS = 109

System error: Too many references: cannot splice

ESysETXTBSY = 26

System error: Text (code segment) file busy

ESysEUCLEAN = 117

System error: Structure needs cleaning

ESysEUNATCH = 49

System error: Protocol driver not attached

ESysEUSERS = 87

System error: Too many users

ESysEWOULDBLOCK = ESysEAGAIN

System error: Operation would block

ESysEXDEV = 18

System error: Cross-device link

ESysEXFULL = 54

System error: Exchange full

FD\_MAXFDSET = 1024

Maximum elements in a TFDSet (97) array.

F\_GetFd = 1

fpFCntl (111) command: Get close-on-exec flag

F\_GetFl = 3

fpFCntl (111) command: Get filedescriptor flags

F\_GetLk = 5

fpFCntl (111) command: Get lock

F\_GetOwn = 9

fpFCntl (111) command: get owner of filedescriptor events

F\_OK = 0

fpAccess (102) call test: file exists.

F\_SetFd = 2

fpFCntl (111) command: Set close-on-exec flag

F\_SetFl = 4

fpFCntl (111) command: Set filedescriptor flags

F\_SetLk = 6

fpFCntl (111) command: Set lock

F\_SetLkW = 7

fpFCntl (111) command: Test lock

F\_SetOwn = 8

fpFCntl (111) command: Set owner of filedescriptor events

ln2bitmask = 1 shl ln2bitsinword - 1

Last bit in word.

ln2bitsinword = 5

Power of 2 number of bits in word.

MAP\_ANONYMOUS = \$20

FpMMap (124) map type: Don't use a file

MAP\_PRIVATE = 2

FpMMap (124) map type: Changes are private

NAME\_MAX = UnixType.NAME\_MAX

Maximum filename length.

O\_APPEND = \$400

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Append to file

O\_CREAT = \$40

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Create if file does not yet exist.

O\_DIRECT = \$4000

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Minimize caching effects

O\_DIRECTORY = \$10000

fpOpen (127) file open mode: File must be directory.

O\_EXCL = \$80

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Open exclusively

O\_LARGEFILE = \$8000

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Open for 64-bit I/O

O\_NDELAY = O\_NONBLOCK

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Alias for O\_NonBlock (82)

O\_NOCTTY = \$100

fpOpen (127) file open mode: No TTY control.

O\_NOFOLLOW = \$20000

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Fail if file is symbolic link.

O\_NONBLOCK = \$800

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Open in non-blocking mode

O\_RDONLY = 0

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Read only

O\_RDWR = 2

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Read/Write

O\_SYNC = \$1000

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Write to disc at once

O\_TRUNC = \$200

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Truncate file to length 0

O\_WRONLY = 1

fpOpen (127) file open mode: Write only

PATH\_MAX = UnixType.PATH\_MAX

Maximum pathname length.

R\_OK = 4

fpAccess (102) call test: read allowed

SA\_INTERRUPT = \$20000000

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_NOCLDSTOP = 1

Sigaction options: Do not receive notification when child processes stop

SA\_NOCLDWAIT = 2

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_NOMASK = \$40000000

Sigaction options: Do not prevent the signal from being received when it is handled.

SA\_ONESHOT = \$80000000

Sigaction options: Restore the signal action to the default state.

SA\_RESTART = \$10000000

Sigaction options: Provide behaviour compatible with BSD signal semantics

SA\_SHIRQ = \$04000000

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_SIGINFO = 4

Sigaction options: The signal handler takes 3 arguments, not one.

SA\_STACK = \$08000000

Sigaction options: Call the signal handler on an alternate signal stack.

SEEK\_CUR = 1

fpLSeek (121) option: Set position relative to current position.

SEEK\_END = 2

fpLSeek (121) option: Set position relative to end of file.

SEEK\_SET = 0

fpLSeek (121) option: Set absolute position.

SIGABRT = 6

Signal: ABRT (Abort)

SIGALRM = 14

Signal: ALRM (Alarm clock)

SIGBUS = 7



Signal: BUS (bus error)

SIGCHLD = 17

Signal: CHLD (child status changed)

SIGCONT = 18

Signal: CONT (Continue)

SIGFPE = 8

Signal: FPE (Floating point error)

SIGHUP = 1

Signal: HUP (Hangup)

SIGILL = 4

Signal: ILL (Illegal instruction)

SIGINT = 2

Signal: INT (Interrupt)

SIGIO = 29

Signal: IO (I/O operation possible)

SIGIOT = 6

Signal: IOT (IOT trap)

SIGKILL = 9

Signal: KILL (unblockable)

SIGPIPE = 13

Signal: PIPE (Broken pipe)

SIGPOLL = SIGIO

Signal: POLL (Pollable event)

SIGPROF = 27

Signal: PROF (Profiling alarm)

SIGPWR = 30

Signal: PWR (power failure restart)

SIGQUIT = 3

Signal: QUIT

SIGSEGV = 11

Signal: SEGV (Segmentation violation)

SIGSTKFLT = 16

Signal: STKFLT (Stack Fault)

SIGSTOP = 19

Signal: STOP (Stop, unblockable)

SIGTerm = 15

Signal: TERM (Terminate)

SIGTRAP = 5

Signal: TRAP (Trace trap)

SIGTSTP = 20

Signal: TSTP (keyboard stop)

SIGTTIN = 21

Signal: TTIN (Terminal input, background)

SIGTTOU = 22

Signal: TTOU (Terminal output, background)

SIGUNUSED = 31

Signal: Unused

SIGURG = 23

Signal: URG (Socket urgent condition)

SIGUSR1 = 10

Signal: USR1 (User-defined signal 1)

SIGUSR2 = 12

Signal: USR2 (User-defined signal 2)

`SIGVTALRM = 26`

Signal: VTALRM (Virtual alarm clock)

`SIGWINCH = 28`

Signal: WINCH (Window/Terminal size change)

`SIGXCPU = 24`

Signal: XCPU (CPU limit exceeded)

`SIGXFSZ = 25`

Signal: XFSZ (File size limit exceeded)

`SIG_BLOCK = 0`

Sigprocmask flags: Add signals to the set of blocked signals.

`SIG_DFL = 0`

Signal handler: Default signal handler

`SIG_ERR = -1`

Signal handler: error

`SIG_IGN = 1`

Signal handler: Ignore signal

`SIG_MAXSIG = UnixType.SIG_MAXSIG`

Maximum system signal number.

`SIG_SETMASK = 2`

Sigprocmask flags: Set of blocked signals is given.

`SIG_UNBLOCK = 1`

Sigprocmask flags: Remove signals from the set set of blocked signals.

`SI_PAD_SIZE = ( ( 128 div sizeof ( longint ) ) - 3 )`

Signal information pad size.

`SYS_NMLN = UnixType.SYS_NMLN`

Max system name length.

S\_IFBLK = 24576

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Block device

S\_IFCHR = 8192

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Character device

S\_IFDIR = 16384

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Directory

S\_IFIFO = 4096

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: FIFO

S\_IFLNK = 40960

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Link

S\_IFMT = 61440

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: File type bit mask

S\_IFREG = 32768

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Regular file

S\_IFSOCK = 49152

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Socket

S\_IRGRP = %0000100000

Mode flag: Read by group.

S\_IROTH = %0000000100

Mode flag: Read by others.

S\_IRUSR = %0100000000

Mode flag: Read by owner.

S\_IWGRP = %0000010000

Mode flag: Write by group.

S\_IWOTH = %0000000010

Mode flag: Write by others.

`S_IWUSR = %0010000000`

Mode flag: Write by owner.

`S_IXGRP = %0000001000`

Mode flag: Execute by group.

`S_IXOTH = %0000000001`

Mode flag: Execute by others.

`S_IXUSR = %0001000000`

Mode flag: Execute by owner.

`UTSNAME_DOMAIN_LENGTH = UTSNAME_LENGTH`

Max length of utsname (101) domain name.

`UTSNAME_LENGTH = SYS_NMLN`

Max length of utsname (101) system name, release, version, machine.

`UTSNAME_NODENAME_LENGTH = UTSNAME_LENGTH`

Max length of utsname (101) node name.

`WNOHANG = 1`

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitpid (150) option: Do not wait for processes to terminate.

`wordsinfdset = FD_MAXFDSET div BITSINWORD`

Number of words in a TFDSet (97) array

`wordsinsigset = SIG_MAXSIG div BITSINWORD`

Number of words in a signal set.

`WUNTRACED = 2`

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitpid (150) option: Also report children which were stopped but not yet reported

`W_OK = 2`

fpAccess (102) call test: write allowed

`X_OK = 1`

fpAccess (102) call test: execute allowed

### 1.3.2 Types

`Blkcnt_t = cUInt`

Block count type.

`Blksize_t = cUInt`

Block size type.

`cchar = UnixType.cchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.cchar` ([1285](#))

`cDouble = UnixType.cDouble`

Double precision real format.

`cFloat = UnixType.cFloat`

Floating-point real format

`cInt = UnixType.cInt`

C type: integer (natural size)

`cInt16 = UnixType.cInt16`

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

`cInt32 = UnixType.cInt32`

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

`cInt64 = UnixType.cInt64`

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

`cInt8 = UnixType.cInt8`

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

`clDouble = UnixType.clDouble`

Long double precision real format (Extended)

`clock_t = UnixType.clock_t`

Clock ticks type

`cLong = UnixType.cLong`

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

`cshort = UnixType.cshort`

C type: short signed integer (half sized)

`cuchar = UnixType.cuchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.cuchar` ([1286](#))

`cUInt = UnixType.cUInt`

C type: unsigned integer (natural size)

`cUInt16 = UnixType.cUInt16`

C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cUInt32 = UnixType.cUInt32`

C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cUInt64 = UnixType.cUInt64`

C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cUInt8 = UnixType.cUInt8`

C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuLong = UnixType.cuLong`

C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)

`cunsigned = UnixType.cunsigned`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.cunsigned` ([1287](#))

`cushort = UnixType.cushort`

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

`dev_t = UnixType.dev_t`

Device descriptor type.

```
Dir = record
  dd_fd : Integer;
  dd_loc : LongInt;
  dd_size : Integer;
  dd_buf : pDirent;
  dd_nextoff : LongInt;
  dd_max : Integer;
  dd_lock : pointer;
end
```

Record used in `fpOpenDir` (128) and `fpReadDir` (132) calls

```
Dirent = packed record
  d_fileno : ino_t;
  d_off : off_t;
  d_reclen : cushort;
  d_name : Array[0..(255+1)-1] of Char;
end
```

Record used in the `fpReadDir` (132) function to return files in a directory.

```
Flock = record
  l_type : cshort;
  l_whence : cshort;
  l_start : off_t;
  l_len : off_t;
  l_pid : pid_t;
end
```

Lock description type for `fpFCntl` (111) lock call.

```
gid_t = UnixType.gid_t
```

Group ID type.

```
Ino64_t = cInt64
```

64-bit inode type.

```
ino_t = UnixType.ino_t
```

Inode type.

```
mode_t = UnixType.mode_t
```

Inode mode type.

```
nlink_t = UnixType.nlink_t
```

Number of links type.

```
Off64_t = cInt64
```

64-bit offset type.

```
off_t = UnixType.off_t
```

Offset type.



PBlkCnt = ^Blkcnt\_t

pointer to TBlkCnt (97) type.

PBlkSize = ^Blksize\_t

Pointer to TBlkSize (97) type.

pcchar = UnixType.pcchar

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.pcchar (1288)

pcDouble = UnixType.pcDouble

Pointer to cdouble (89) type.

pcFloat = UnixType.pcFloat

Pointer to cfloat (89) type.

pcInt = UnixType.pcInt

Pointer to cInt (89) type.

pclDouble = UnixType.pclDouble

Pointer to cldouble (89) type.

pClock = UnixType.pClock

Pointer to TClock (97) type.

pcLong = UnixType.pcLong

Pointer to cLong (90) type.

pcshort = UnixType.pcsshort

Pointer to cShort (90) type.

pcuchar = UnixType.pcuchar

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.pcuchar (1288)

pcUInt = UnixType.pcUInt

Pointer to cUInt (90) type.

pculong = UnixType.pculong

Pointer to cuLong (90) type.

`pcunsigned = UnixType.punsigned`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.punsigned` (1289)

`pcushort = UnixType.pcushort`

Pointer to `cuShort` (90) type.

`pDev = UnixType.pDev`

Pointer to `TDev` (97) type.

`pDir = ^Dir`

Pointer to `TDir` (97) record

`pDirent = ^Dirent`

Pointer to `TDirent` (97) record.

`pFDSet = ^TFDSet`

Pointer to `TFDSet` (97) type.

`pFilDes = ^TFilDes`

Pointer to `TFilDes` (97) type.

`pfpstate = ^tfpstate`

Pointer to `tfpstate` (98) record.

`pGid = UnixType.pGid`

Pointer to `TGid` (98) type.

`pGrpArr = ^TGrpArr`

Pointer to `TGrpArr` (98) array.

`pid_t = UnixType.pid_t`

Process ID type.

`pIno = UnixType.pIno`

Pointer to `TIno` (98) type.

`pIno64 = ^Ino64_t`

Pointer to `TIno64` (98) type.

`pMode = UnixType.pMode`

Pointer to TMode (98) type.

`pnLink = UnixType.pnLink`

Pointer to TnLink (99) type.

`pOff = UnixType.pOff`

Pointer to TOff (99) type.

`pOff64 = ^Off64_t`

Pointer to TOff64 (99) type.

`pPid = UnixType.pPid`

Pointer to TPid (99) type.

`PSigActionRec = ^SigActionRec`

Pointer to SigActionRec (96) record type.

`PSigContext = ^TSigContext`

Pointer to #rtl.baseunix.TSigContext (100) record type.

`psiginfo = ^tsiginfo`

Pointer to #rtl.baseunix.TSigInfo (100) record type.

`PSignalHandler = ^SignalHandler`

Pointer to SignalHandler (96) type.

`PSignalRestorer = ^SignalRestorer`

Pointer to SignalRestorer (96) type

`PSigSet = ^SigSet`

Pointer to SigSet (96) type.

`psigset_t = PSigSet`

Pointer to sigset\_t (96) type.

`pSize = UnixType.pSize`

Pointer to TSize (100) type.

`pSocklen = UnixType.pSocklen`

Pointer to `TSockLen` (100) type.

`psSize = UnixType.psSize`

Pointer to `TsSize` (100) type

`PStat = ^Stat`

Pointer to `TStat` (100) type.

`pthread_cond_t = UnixType.pthread_cond_t`

Thread conditional variable type.

`pthread_mutex_t = UnixType.pthread_mutex_t`

Thread mutex type.

`pthread_t = UnixType.pthread_t`

Posix thread type.

`pTime = UnixType.pTime`

Pointer to `TTime` (100) type.

`ptimespec = UnixType.ptimespec`

Pointer to `timespec` (98) type.

`ptimeval = UnixType.ptimeval`

Pointer to `timeval` (98) type.

`ptimezone = ^timezone`

Pointer to `TimeZone` (98) record.

`ptime_t = UnixType.ptime_t`

Pointer to `time_t` (98) type.

`PTms = ^tms`

Pointer to `TTms` (101) type.

`pUId = UnixType.pUId`

Pointer to `TUId` (101) type.

`pUtimBuf = ^UTimBuf`

Pointer to `TUtimBuf` (101) type.

`PUtsName = TUtName`

Pointer to `TUtName` (101) type.

`SigActionHandler = procedure(sig: LongInt; SigInfo: psiginfo;  
SigContext: PSigContext)`

When installing a signal handler, the actual signal handler must be of type `SigActionHandler`.

`SigActionRec = packed record  
sa_handler : SigActionHandler;  
sa_mask : SigSet;  
sa_flags : LongInt;  
sa_restorer : SignalRestorer;  
end`

Record used in `fpSigAction` (137) call.

`SignalHandler = procedure(Sig: LongInt)`

Simple signal handler prototype

`SignalRestorer = procedure`

Signal restorer function prototype

`SigSet = Array[0..wordsinsigset-1] of cInt`

Signal set type

`sigset_t = SigSet`

Signal set type

`size_t = UnixType.size_t`

Size specification type.

`socklen_t = UnixType.socklen_t`

Socket address length type.

`ssize_t = UnixType.ssize_t`

Small size type.

```
Stat = packed record
end
```

Record describing an inode (file) in the FPFstat (113) call.

```
TBlkCnt = Blkcnt_t
```

Alias for Blkcnt\_t (89) type.

```
TBlkSize = Blksize_t
```

Alias for blksize\_t (89) type.

```
TClock = UnixType.TClock
```

Alias for clock\_t (89) type.

```
TDev = UnixType.TDev
```

Alias for dev\_t (90) type.

```
TDir = Dir
```

Alias for Dir (91) type.

```
TDirent = Dirent
```

Alias for Dirent (91) type.

```
TFDSet = Array[0..(FD_MAXFDSETdiv32)-1] of Cardinal
```

File descriptor set for fpSelect (134) call.

```
TFilDes = Array[0..1] of cInt
```

Array of file descriptors as used in fpPipe (130) call.

```
tfpreg = record
  significand : Array[0..3] of Word;
  exponent : Word;
end
```

Record describing floating point register in signal handler.

```
tfpstate = record
  cw : cardinal;
  sw : cardinal;
  tag : cardinal;
  ipoff : cardinal;
```

```

    cssel : cardinal;
    dataoff : cardinal;
    dataset : cardinal;
    st : Array[0..7] of tfpreg;
    status : cardinal;
end

```

Record describing floating point unit in signal handler.

TGid = UnixType.TGid

Alias for gid\_t (91) type.

TGrpArr = Array[0..0] of TGid

Array of gid\_t (91) IDs

timespec = UnixType.timespec

Short time specification type.

timeval = UnixType.timeval

Time specification type.

```

timezone = packed record
    tz_minuteswest : cInt;
    tz_dsttime : cInt;
end

```

Record describing a timezone

time\_t = UnixType.time\_t

Time span type

TIno = UnixType.TIno

Alias for ino\_t (91) type.

TIno64 = Ino64\_t

Alias for Ino64\_t (91) type.

TMode = UnixType.TMode

Alias for mode\_t (91) type.

```

tms = packed record
  tms_utime : clock_t;
  tms_stime : clock_t;
  tms_cutime : clock_t;
  tms_cstime : clock_t;
end

```

Record containing timings for `fpTimes` (147) call.

```
TnLink = UnixType.TnLink
```

Alias for `nlink_t` (91) type.

```
TOff = UnixType.TOff
```

Alias for `off_t` (91) type.

```
TOff64 = Off64_t
```

Alias for `Ino64_t` (91) type.

```
TPid = UnixType.TPid
```

Alias for `pid_t` (93) type.

```
TSigActionRec = SigActionRec
```

Alias for `SigActionRec` (96) record type.

```

TSigContext = record
  gs : Word;
  __gsh : Word;
  fs : Word;
  __fsh : Word;
  es : Word;
  __esh : Word;
  ds : Word;
  __dsh : Word;
  edi : cardinal;
  esi : cardinal;
  ebp : cardinal;
  esp : cardinal;
  ebx : cardinal;
  edx : cardinal;
  ecx : cardinal;
  eax : cardinal;
  trapno : cardinal;
  err : cardinal;
  eip : cardinal;
  cs : Word;
  __csh : Word;

```



```

eflags : cardinal;
esp_at_signal : cardinal;
ss : Word;
__ssh : Word;
fpstate : pfpstate;
oldmask : cardinal;
cr2 : cardinal;
end

```

This type is CPU dependent. Cross-platform code should not use the contents of this record.

```

tsiginfo = record
  si_signo : LongInt;
  si_errno : LongInt;
  si_code : LongInt;
  _sifields : record
  end;
end

```

This type describes the signal that occurred.

```
TSigSet = SigSet
```

Alias for SigSet (96) type.

```
TSize = UnixType.TSize
```

Alias for size\_t (96) type

```
TSocklen = UnixType.TSocklen
```

Alias for socklen\_t (96) type.

```
TsSize = UnixType.TsSize
```

Alias for ssize\_t (96) type

```
TStat = Stat
```

Alias for Stat (97) type.

```
tstatfs = UnixType.TStatFs
```

Record describing a file system in the baseunix.fpstatfs (70) call.

```
TTime = UnixType.TTime
```

Alias for TTime (100) type.

```
Ttimespec = UnixType.Ttimespec
```

Alias for TimeSpec (98) type.

```
TTimeVal = UnixType.TTimeVal
```

Alias for timeval (98) type.

```
TTimeZone = timezone
```

Alias for TimeZone (98) record.

```
TTms = tms
```

Alias for Tms (99) record type.

```
TUId = UnixType.TUId
```

Alias for uid\_t (101) type.

```
TUtimBuf = UtimBuf
```

Alias for UtimBuf (101) type.

```
TUtsName = UtsName
```

Alias for UtsName (101) type.

```
uid_t = UnixType.uid_t
```

User ID type

```
UtimBuf = record
  actime : time_t;
  modtime : time_t;
end
```

Record used in fpUtime (149) to set file access and modification times.

```
UtsName = record
  Sysname : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Nodename : Array[0..UTSNAME_NODENAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Release : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Version : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Machine : Array[0..UTSNAME_LENGTH-1] of Char;
  Domain : Array[0..UTSNAME_DOMAIN_LENGTH-1] of Char;
end
```

The elements of this record are null-terminated C style strings, you cannot access them directly.

## 1.4 Procedures and functions

### 1.4.1 FpAccess

Synopsis: Check file access

Declaration: `function FpAccess(pathname: pChar; aMode: cInt) : cInt`  
`function FpAccess(pathname: AnsiString; aMode: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpAccess` tests user's access rights on the specified file. Mode is a mask existing of one or more of the following:

**R\_OK**User has read rights.

**W\_OK**User has write rights.

**X\_OK**User has execute rights.

**F\_OK**File exists.

The test is done with the real user ID, instead of the effective user ID. If the user has the requested rights, zero is returned. If access is denied, or an error occurred, a nonzero value is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([115](#)).

**sys\_eaccess**The requested access is denied, either to the file or one of the directories in its path.

**sys\_einval**Mode was incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**A directory component in `Path` doesn't exist or is a dangling symbolic link.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory component in `Path` is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_eloop**`Path` has a circular symbolic link.

See also: `FpChown` ([105](#)), `FpChmod` ([104](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** `Example26`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Access function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**begin**

**if** `fpAccess ( '/etc/passwd', W_OK ) = 0` **then**

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Better check your system.' );

**Writeln** ( 'I can write to the /etc/passwd file !' );

**end**;

**end.**

---

### 1.4.2 FpAlarm

Synopsis: Schedule an alarm signal to be delivered

Declaration: `function FpAlarm(seconds: cUInt) : cUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpAlarm` schedules an alarm signal to be delivered to your process in `Seconds` seconds. When `Seconds` seconds have elapsed, the system will send a `SIGALRM` signal to the current process. If `Seconds` is zero, then no new alarm will be set. Whatever the value of `Seconds`, any previous alarm is cancelled.

The function returns the number of seconds till the previously scheduled alarm was due to be delivered, or zero if there was none. A negative value indicates an error.

See also: `fpSigAction` ([137](#)), `fpPause` ([129](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** `Example59`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Alarm function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**Procedure** `AlarmHandler(Sig : cint); cdecl`;

**begin**

`Writeln ('Got to alarm handler');`

**end**;

**begin**

`Writeln ('Setting alarm handler');`

`fpSignal(SIGALRM, SignalHandler(@AlarmHandler));`

`Writeln ('Scheduling Alarm in 10 seconds');`

`fpAlarm(10);`

`Writeln ('Pausing');`

`fpPause;`

`Writeln ('Pause returned');`

**end.**

---

### 1.4.3 FpChdir

Synopsis: Change current working directory.

Declaration: `function FpChdir(path: pChar) : cInt`  
               `function FpChdir(path: AnsiString) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpChDir` sets the current working directory to `Path`.

It returns zero if the call was succesful, -1 on error.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([115](#)).

See also: `fpGetCwd` ([114](#))

### 1.4.4 FpChmod

Synopsis: Change file permission bits

Declaration: `function FpChmod(path: pChar;Mode: TMode) : cInt`  
`function FpChmod(path: AnsiString;Mode: TMode) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpChmod` sets the Mode bits of the file in Path to Mode. Mode can be specified by 'or'-ing the following values:

**S\_ISUID**Set user ID on execution.

**S\_ISGID**Set Group ID on execution.

**S\_ISVTX**Set sticky bit.

**S\_IRUSR**Read by owner.

**S\_IWUSR**Write by owner.

**S\_IXUSR**Execute by owner.

**S\_IRGRP**Read by group.

**S\_IWGRP**Write by group.

**S\_IXGRP**Execute by group.

**S\_IROTH**Read by others.

**S\_IWOTH**Write by others.

**S\_IXOTH**Execute by others.

**S\_IRWXO**Read, write, execute by others.

**S\_IRWXG**Read, write, execute by groups.

**S\_IRWXU**Read, write, execute by user.

If the function is successful, zero is returned. A nonzero return value indicates an error.

Errors: The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in Path has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in Path does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The file is on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eloop**Path has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: `fpChown` ([105](#)), `fpAccess` ([102](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex23.pp`

---

```

Program Example23;

{ Program to demonstrate the Chmod function. }

Uses BaseUnix, Unix;

Var F : Text;

begin
  { Create a file }
  Assign (f, 'testex21');
  Rewrite (F);
  WriteLn (f, '#!/bin/sh');
  WriteLn (f, 'echo Some text for this file');
  Close (F);
  fpChmod ('testex21', &777);
  { File is now executable }
  execl ('./testex21');
end.

```

---

### 1.4.5 FpChown

Synopsis: Change owner of file

**Declaration:** function FpChown(path: pChar;owner: TUid;group: TGid) : cInt  
 function FpChown(path: AnsiString;owner: TUid;group: TGid) : cInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** fpChown sets the User ID and Group ID of the file in Path to Owner,Group.

The function returns zero if the call was succesfull, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

**Errors:** The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in Path has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in Path does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The file is on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eloop**Path has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: fpChmod ([104](#)), fpAccess ([102](#))

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex24.pp

---

```

Program Example24;

{ Program to demonstrate the Chown function. }

Uses BaseUnix;

```

---

```

Var UID : TUid;
      GID : TGid;
      F : Text;

begin

  Writeln ('This will only work if you are root. ');
  Write ('Enter a UID : '); readln(UID);
  Write ('Enter a GID : '); readln(GID);
  Assign (f, 'test.txt');
  Rewrite (f);
  Writeln (f, 'The owner of this file should become : ');
  Writeln (f, 'UID : ', UID);
  Writeln (f, 'GID : ', GID);
  Close (F);
  if fpChown ('test.txt', UID, GID) <> 0 then
    if fpgeterrno = ESysEPerm then
      Writeln ('You are not root !')
    else
      Writeln ('Chmod failed with exit code : ', fpgeterrno)
    else
      Writeln ('Changed owner successfully !');
end.

```

---

### 1.4.6 FpClose

Synopsis: Close file descriptor

Declaration: function FpClose(fd: cInt) : cInt

Visibility: default

Description: FpClose closes a file with file descriptor Fd. The function returns zero if the file was closed successfully, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

For an example, see FpOpen ([127](#)).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using fpGetErrno ([115](#)).

See also: FpOpen ([127](#)), FpRead ([130](#)), FpWrite ([151](#)), FpFTruncate ([114](#)), FpLSeek ([121](#))

### 1.4.7 FpClosedir

Synopsis: Close directory file descriptor

Declaration: function FpClosedir(var dirp: Dir) : cInt

Visibility: default

Description: FpCloseDir closes the directory pointed to by dirp. It returns zero if the directory was closed successfully, -1 otherwise.

For an example, see fpOpenDir ([128](#)).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using fpGetErrno ([115](#)).

See also: FpOpenDir ([128](#)), FpReadDir ([132](#))

### 1.4.8 FpDup

Synopsis: Duplicate a file handle

Declaration: `function FpDup(fildes: cInt) : cInt`  
`function FpDup(var oldfile: text;var newfile: text) : cInt`  
`function FpDup(var oldfile: file;var newfile: file) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: FpDup returns a file descriptor that is a duplicate of the file descriptor `fildes`.

The second and third forms make `NewFile` an exact copy of `OldFile`, after having flushed the buffer of `OldFile` in case it is a Text file or untyped file. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, these calls do not have the same functionality as the `dup` call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an `lseek` will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a `lseek` will change the fileposition in both files.

The function returns a negative value in case of an error, a positive value is a file handle, and indicates succes.

Errors: A negative value can be one of the following error codes:

`sys_ebadf` `OldFile` hasn't been assigned.

`sys_emfile` Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: `fpDup2` ([107](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex31.pp`

---

```

program Example31;

  { Program to demonstrate the Dup function. }

uses baseunix;

var f : text;

begin
  if fpdup (output,f)<>0 then
    Writeln ( 'Dup Failed !' );
    writeln ( 'This is written to stdout.' );
    writeln ( f, 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed' ); flush(f);
    writeln
  end.

```

---

### 1.4.9 FpDup2

Synopsis: Duplicate one filehandle to another

Declaration: `function FpDup2(fildes: cInt;fildes2: cInt) : cInt`  
`function FpDup2(var oldfile: text;var newfile: text) : cInt`  
`function FpDup2(var oldfile: file;var newfile: file) : cInt`

Visibility: default



**Description:** Makes `fildest2` or `NewFile` an exact copy of `fildest` or `OldFile`, after having flushed the buffer of `OldFile` in the case of text or untyped files.

`NewFile` can be an assigned file. If `newfile` was open, it is closed first. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, this has not the same functionality as the `dup2` call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an `lseek` will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a `lseek` will change the fileposition in both files.

The function returns zero if succesful, a nonzero return value means the call failed.

**Errors:** In case of error, the following error codes can be reported:

**sys\_ebadf**`OldFile` (or `fildest`) hasn't been assigned.

**sys\_emfile**Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: `fpDup` ([107](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex32.pp`

---

**program** Example31;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Dup function. }*

**uses** BaseUnix;

**var** f : text;  
i : longint;

**begin**

Assign (f, 'text.txt');

**Rewrite** (F);

**For** i:=1 **to** 10 **do** **writeln** (F, 'Line : ',i);

**if** `fpdup2` (output,f)<>0 **then**

**Writeln** ('Dup2 Failed !');

**writeln** ('This is written to stdout.');

**writeln** (f, 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed');

**flush**(f);

**writeln**;

*{ Remove file. Comment this if you want to check flushing. }*

`fpUnlink` ('text.txt');

**end.**

---

### 1.4.10 FpExecv

**Synopsis:** Execute process

**Declaration:** `function FpExecv(path: pChar;argv: ppChar) : cInt`  
`function FpExecv(path: AnsiString;argv: ppchar) : cInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. It gives the program the options in `argvp`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execv` does not return.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted \textit{noexec}.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `fpExecve` (109), `fpFork` (112)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execv function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/lS';  
           Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**

**GetMem** (PP, 3\* **SizeOf**(Pchar));  
     PP[0] := Arg0;  
     PP[1] := Arg1;  
     PP[3] := Nil;  
     *{ Execute '/bin/lS -l', with current environment }*  
     fpExecv ('/bin/lS', pp);

**end.**

---

### 1.4.11 FpExecve

Synopsis: Execute process using environment

**Declaration:** `function FpExecve(path: pChar; argv: ppChar; envp: ppChar) : cInt`  
                   `function FpExecve(path: AnsiString; argv: ppchar; envp: ppchar) : cInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. It gives the program the options in `argv`, and the environment in `envp`. They are pointers to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be `nil`. On success, `execve` does not return.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrno` (115), and includes the following:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted \textit{noexec}.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.  
**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.  
**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.  
**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.  
**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.  
**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `fpExecv` (108), `fpFork` (112)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex7.pp`

**Program** `Example7`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execve function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`, `strings`;

**Const** `Arg0` : `PChar` = `'/bin/lS'`;  
           `Arg1` : `Pchar` = `'-l'`;

**Var** `PP` : `PPchar`;

**begin**

`GetMem` (`PP`, `3*SizeOf(Pchar)`);  
  `PP[0]` := `Arg0`;  
  `PP[1]` := `Arg1`;  
  `PP[3]` := `Nil`;  
  *{ Execute '/bin/lS -l', with current environment }*  
  *{ Env is defined in system.inc }*  
  `fpExecVe` (`'/bin/lS'`, `pp`, `envp`);

**end.**

### 1.4.12 FpExit

Synopsis: Exit the current process

Declaration: `procedure FpExit(Status: cInt)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `FpExit` exits the currently running process, and report `Status` as the exit status.

**Remark:** If this call is executed, the normal unit finalization code will not be executed. This may lead to unexpected errors and stray files on your system. It is therefore recommended to use the `Halt` call instead.

Errors: `None`.

See also: `FpFork` (112), `FpExecve` (109)

### 1.4.13 FpFcntl

Synopsis: File control operations.

Declaration: `function FpFcntl(fildes: cInt;cmd: cInt) : cInt`  
`function FpFcntl(fildes: cInt;cmd: cInt;arg: cInt) : cInt`  
`function FpFcntl(fildes: cInt;cmd: cInt;var arg: FLock) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Read/set a file's attributes. `Fildes` a valid file descriptor. `Cmd` specifies what to do, and is one of the following:

**F\_GetFdRead** the `close_on_exec` flag. If the low-order bit is 0, then the file will remain open across `execve` calls.

**F\_GetFIRead** the descriptor's flags.

**F\_GetOwn**Get the Process ID of the owner of a socket.

**F\_SetFdSet** the `close_on_exec` flag of `fildes`. (only the least significant bit is used).

**F\_GetLk**Return the `flock` record that prevents this process from obtaining the lock, or set the `l_type` field of the lock of there is no obstruction. `Arg` is the `flock` record.

**F\_SetLk**Set the lock or clear it (depending on `l_type` in the `flock` structure). if the lock is held by another process, an error occurs.

**F\_GetLkw**Same as for **F\_Setlk**, but wait until the lock is released.

**F\_SetOwn**Set the Process or process group that owns a socket.

The function returns 0 if successful, -1 otherwise.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Use `fpGetErrno` (115) for extended error information.

**sys\_ebadf**`Fd` has a bad file descriptor.

**sys\_eagain or sys\_eaccess**For `\textbf{F_SetLk}`, if the lock is held by another process.

### 1.4.14 fpfdfillset

Synopsis: Set all filedescriptors in the set.

Declaration: `function fpfdfillset(var nset: TFDSet) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpfdfillset` sets all filedescriptors in `nset`.

See also: `FpSelect` (134), `FpFD_ZERO` (112), `FpFD_IsSet` (112), `FpFD_Clr` (111), `FpFD_Set` (112)

### 1.4.15 fpFD\_CLR

Synopsis: Clears a filedescriptor in a set

Declaration: `function fpFD_CLR(fdno: cInt;var nset: TFDSet) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Clr` clears file descriptor `fdno` in filedescriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (134).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (134), `FpFD_ZERO` (112), `FpFD_Set` (112), `FpFD_IsSet` (112)

### 1.4.16 fpFD\_ISSET

Synopsis: Check whether a filedescriptor is set

Declaration: `function fpFD_ISSET(fdno: cInt; const nset: TFDSet) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Set` Checks whether file descriptor `fdNo` in filedescriptor set `fds` is set. It returns zero if the descriptor is not set, 1 if it is set. If the number of the filedescriptor it wrong, -1 is returned.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (134).

Errors: If an invalid file descriptor number is passed, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSelect` (134), `FpFD_ZERO` (112), `FpFD_Clr` (111), `FpFD_Set` (112)

### 1.4.17 fpFD\_SET

Synopsis: Set a filedescriptor in a set

Declaration: `function fpFD_SET(fdno: cInt; var nset: TFDSet) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_Set` sets file descriptor `fdno` in filedescriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (134).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (134), `FpFD_ZERO` (112), `FpFD_Clr` (111), `FpFD_IsSet` (112)

### 1.4.18 fpFD\_ZERO

Synopsis: Clear all file descriptors in set

Declaration: `function fpFD_ZERO(var nset: TFDSet) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFD_ZERO` clears all the filedescriptors in the file descriptor set `nset`.

For an example, see `FpSelect` (134).

Errors: None.

See also: `FpSelect` (134), `FpFD_Clr` (111), `FpFD_Set` (112), `FpFD_IsSet` (112)

### 1.4.19 FpFork

Synopsis: Create child process

Declaration: `function FpFork : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFork` creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process. `FpFork` returns the process ID in the parent process, and zero in the child's process. (you can get the parent's PID with `fpGetPPid` (118)).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain** Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: `fpExecve` (109), `#rtl.linux.Clone` (599)

### 1.4.20 FPFStat

Synopsis: Retrieve file information about a file descriptor.

Declaration: `function FpFStat(fd: cInt; var sb: Stat) : cInt`  
`function FPFStat(var F: Text; var Info: Stat) : Boolean`  
`function FPFStat(var F: File; var Info: Stat) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFStat` gets information about the file specified in one of the following:

**Fd** a valid file descriptor.

**F** an opened text file or untyped file.

and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat` (97). The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115).

**sys\_enoent** Path does not exist.

See also: `FpStat` (142), `FpLStat` (122)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex28.pp`

---

```

program example28;

{ Program to demonstrate the FStat function. }

uses BaseUnix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
  close (f);
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if fpstat ('test.fil', info) <> 0 then
    begin
      writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ', fpgeterrno);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil''.');
  writeln ('Inode   : ', info.st_ino);
  writeln ('Mode    : ', info.st_mode);

```

---

```

writeln ( 'nlink    : ', info.st_nlink );
writeln ( 'uid      : ', info.st_uid );
writeln ( 'gid      : ', info.st_gid );
writeln ( 'rdev     : ', info.st_rdev );
writeln ( 'Size     : ', info.st_size );
writeln ( 'Blksize  : ', info.st_blksize );
writeln ( 'Blocks   : ', info.st_blocks );
writeln ( 'atime    : ', info.st_atime );
writeln ( 'mtime    : ', info.st_mtime );
writeln ( 'ctime    : ', info.st_ctime );
  { Remove file }
  erase ( f );
end.

```

---

### 1.4.21 FpFtruncate

Synopsis: Truncate file on certain size.

Declaration: `function FpFtruncate(fd: cInt; flength: TOff) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFtruncate` sets the length of a file in `fd` on `flength` bytes, where `flength` must be less than or equal to the current length of the file in `fd`.

The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates that an error occurred.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([115](#)).

See also: `FpOpen` ([127](#)), `FpClose` ([106](#)), `FpRead` ([130](#)), `FpWrite` ([151](#)), `FpLSeek` ([121](#))

### 1.4.22 FpGetcwd

Synopsis: Retrieve the current working directory.

Declaration: `function FpGetcwd(path: pChar; siz: TSize) : pChar`  
`function FpGetcwd : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpgetCWD` returns the current working directory of the running process. It is returned in `Path`, which points to a memory location of at least `siz` bytes.

If the function is succesful, a pointer to `Path` is returned, or a string with the result. On error `Nil` or an empty string are returned.

Errors: On error `Nil` or an empty string are returned.

See also: `FpGetPID` ([117](#)), `FpGetUID` ([118](#))

### 1.4.23 FpGetegid

Synopsis: Return effective group ID

Declaration: `function FpGetegid : TGid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetegid` returns the effective group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetGid` (116), `FpGetUid` (118), `FpGetEUid` (116), `FpGetPid` (117), `FpGetPPid` (118), `fpSetUID` (137), `FpSetGid` (136)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

```
begin
  writeLn ( 'Group Id = ',fpgetgid, ' Effective group Id = ',fpgetegid);
end.
```

---

#### 1.4.24 FpGetEnv

Synopsis: Return value of environment variable.

Declaration: `function FpGetEnv(name: pChar) : pChar`  
`function FpGetEnv(name: String) : pChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `FPGetEnv` returns the value of the environment variable in `Name`. If the variable is not defined, `nil` is returned. The value of the environment variable may be the empty string. A `PChar` is returned to accomodate for strings longer than 255 bytes, `TERMCAP` and `LS_COLORS`, for instance.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** `Example41;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

```
begin
  WriteLn ( 'Path is : ',fpGetenv( 'PATH' ));
end.
```

---

#### 1.4.25 fpgeterrno

Synopsis: Retrieve extended error information.

Declaration: `function fpgeterrno : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpgeterrno` returns extended information on the latest error. It is set by all functions that communicate with the kernel or C library.

Errors: None.

See also: `fpseterrno` (135)



### 1.4.26 FpGeteuid

Synopsis: Return effective user ID

Declaration: `function FpGeteuid : TUid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGeteuid` returns the effective user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetUid` (118), `FpGetGid` (116), `FpGetEGid` (114), `FpGetPid` (117), `FpGetPPid` (118), `fpSetUID` (137), `FpSetGid` (136)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEUid functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

`writeln ( 'User Id = ',fpgetuid , ' Effective user Id = ',fpgeteuid );`  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.27 FpGetgid

Synopsis: Return real group ID

Declaration: `function FpGetgid : TGid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetgid` returns the real group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetEGid` (114), `FpGetUid` (118), `FpGetEUid` (116), `FpGetPid` (117), `FpGetPPid` (118), `fpSetUID` (137), `FpSetGid` (136)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

`writeln ( 'Group Id = ',fpgetgid , ' Effective group Id = ',fpgetegid );`  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.28 FpGetgroups

Synopsis: Get the list of supplementary groups.

Declaration: `function FpGetgroups(gidsetsize: cInt; var grouplist: TGrpArr) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: FpGetgroups returns up to gidsetsize groups in GroupList

If the function is successful, then number of groups that were stored is returned. On error, -1 is returned.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved with fpGetErrNo (115)

See also: FpGetpgrp (117), FpGetGID (116), FpGetEGID (114)

### 1.4.29 FpGetpgrp

Synopsis: Get process group ID

Declaration: `function FpGetpgrp : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: FpGetpgrp returns the process group ID of the current process.

Errors: None.

See also: fpGetPID (117), fpGetPPID (118), FpGetGID (116), FpGetUID (118)

### 1.4.30 FpGetpid

Synopsis: Return current process ID

Declaration: `function FpGetpid : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: FpGetpid returns the Process ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: FpGetPPid (118)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex16.pp

---

**Program** Example16;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid , GetPPid function . }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Process Id = ',fpgetpid , ' Parent process Id = ',fpgetppid);

**end.**

---

### 1.4.31 FpGetppid

Synopsis: Return parent process ID

Declaration: `function FpGetppid : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetppid` returns the Process ID of the parent process.

Errors: None.

See also: `FpGetPid` ([117](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Process Id = ',fpgetpid, ' Parent process Id = ',fpgetppid);`  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.32 fpGetPriority

Synopsis: Return process priority

Declaration: `function fpGetPriority(Which: cInt;Who: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPriority` returns the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the `Which` and `Who` variables. `Which` can be one of the pre-defined `Prio_Process`, `Prio_PGrp`, `Prio_User`, in which case `Who` is the process ID, Process group ID or User ID, respectively.

For an example, see `FpNice` ([126](#)).

Errors: Error information is returned solely by the `FpGetErrno` ([115](#)) function: a priority can be a positive or negative value.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using `which` and `who`.

**sys\_einval**`Which` was not one of `Prio_Process`, `Prio_Grp` or `Prio_User`.

See also: `FpSetPriority` ([136](#)), `FpNice` ([126](#))

### 1.4.33 FpGetuid

Synopsis: Return current user ID

Declaration: `function FpGetuid : TUid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetuid` returns the real user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: [FpGetGid \(116\)](#), [FpGetEUid \(116\)](#), [FpGetEGid \(114\)](#), [FpGetPid \(117\)](#), [FpGetPPid \(118\)](#), [fpSetUID \(137\)](#)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex17.pp

---

**Program** Example17;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEUid functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

```
begin
  writeLn ( 'User Id = ',fpgetuid, ' Effective user Id = ',fpgeteuid);
end.
```

---

### 1.4.34 FpIOCtl

Synopsis: General kernel IOCTL call.

Declaration: function FpIOCtl(Handle: cInt;Ndx: cuLong;Data: Pointer) : cInt

Visibility: default

Description: This is a general interface to the Unix/ linux ioctl call. It performs various operations on the filedescriptor Handle. Ndx describes the operation to perform. Data points to data needed for the Ndx function. The structure of this data is function-dependent, so we don't elaborate on this here. For more information on this, see various manual pages under linux.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using [fpGetErrno \(115\)](#).

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex54.pp

---

**Program** Example54;

**uses** BaseUnix,Termio;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IOCtl function. }*

```
var
  tios : Termios;

begin
  {$ifdef FreeBSD}
    fpIOCtl(1,TIOCGETA,@tios); // these constants are very OS dependant.
                                // see the tcgetattr example for a better way
  {$endif}
  WriteLn( 'Input Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_iflag,8));
  WriteLn( 'Output Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_oflag,8));
  WriteLn( 'Line Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_lflag,8));
  WriteLn( 'Control Flags: $',hexstr(tios.c_cflag,8));
end.
```

---

### 1.4.35 FpKill

Synopsis: Send a signal to a process

**Declaration:** `function FpKill(pid: TPid;sig: cInt) : cInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpKill` sends a signal `Sig` to a process or process group. If `Pid>0` then the signal is sent to `Pid`, if it equals `-1`, then the signal is sent to all processes except process 1. If `Pid<-1` then the signal is sent to process group `-Pid`.

The return value is zero, except in case three, where the return value is the number of processes to which the signal was sent.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115):

**sys\_einval**An invalid signal is sent.

**sys\_esrch**The `Pid` or process group don't exist.

**sys\_eperm**The effective userid of the current process doesn't math the one of process `Pid`.

See also: `FpSigAction` (137), `FpSignal` (140)

### 1.4.36 FpLink

**Synopsis:** Create a hard link to a file

**Declaration:** `function FpLink(existing: pChar;newone: pChar) : cInt`  
`function FpLink(existing: AnsiString;newone: AnsiString) : cInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `fpLink` makes `NewOne` point to the same file als `Existing`. The two files then have the same inode number. This is known as a 'hard' link. The function returns zero if the call was succesfull, and returns a non-zero value if the call failed.

**Errors:** The following error codes are returned:

**sys\_exdev**`Existing` and `NewOne` are not on the same filesystem.

**sys\_eperm**The filesystem containing `Existing` and `NewOne` doesn't support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess**Write access for the directory containing `NewOne` is disallowed, or one of the directories in `Existing` or `NewOne` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `Existing` or `NewOne` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory entry in `Existing` or `NewOne` is nor a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The files are on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eexist**`NewOne` already exists.

**sys\_mlink**`Existing` has reached maximal link count.

**sys\_eloop**`existing` or `NewOne` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc**The device containing `NewOne` has no room for another entry.

**sys\_eperm**`Existing` points to `.` or `..` of a directory.

See also: `fpSymLink` (143), `fpUnLink` (148)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex21.pp`

---

```

Program Example21;

{ Program to demonstrate the Link and UnLink functions. }

Uses BaseUnix;

Var F : Text;
    S : String;
begin
    Assign (F, 'test.txt');
    Rewrite (F);
    WriteIn (F, 'This is written to test.txt');
    Close(f);
    { new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }
    if fpLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0 then
        writeln ('Error when linking !');
    { Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt }
    If fpUnlink ('test.txt') <> 0 then
        WriteIn ('Error when unlinking !');
    Assign (f, 'new.txt');
    Reset (F);
    While not EOF(f) do
        begin
            ReadIn(F,S);
            WriteIn ('> ',s);
        end;
    Close (f);
    { Remove new.txt also }
    If not FPUnlink ('new.txt') <> 0 then
        WriteIn ('Error when unlinking !');
end.

```

---

### 1.4.37 FpLseek

Synopsis: Set file pointer position.

Declaration: function FpLseek(fd: cInt; offset: TOff; whence: cInt) : TOff

Visibility: default

Description: FpLseek sets the current fileposition of file fd to Offset, starting from Whence, which can be one of the following:

**Seek\_SetOffset** is the absolute position in the file.

**Seek\_CurOffset** is relative to the current position.

**Seek\_endOffset** is relative to the end of the file.

The function returns the new fileposition, or -1 of an error occurred.

For an example, see FpOpen ([127](#)).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using fpGetErrno ([115](#)).

See also: FpOpen ([127](#)), FpWrite ([151](#)), FpClose ([106](#)), FpRead ([130](#)), FpFTruncate ([114](#))

### 1.4.38 fpLstat

Synopsis: Return information about symbolic link. Do not follow the link

Declaration: `function fpLstat(path: pchar;Info: PStat) : cInt`  
`function fpLstat(Filename: ansistring;Info: PStat) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpLstat` gets information about the link specified in `Path` (or `FileName`, and stores it in `Info`, which points to a record of type `TStat`. Contrary to `FpFstat` (113), it stores information about the link, not about the file the link points to. The function returns zero if the call was succesful, a nonzero return value indicates failure. failed.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function.

`sys_enoent`Path does not exist.

See also: `FpFStat` (113), `#rtl.unix.StatFS` (1280)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex29.pp`

---

```

program example29;

{ Program to demonstrate the LStat function. }

uses BaseUnix, Unix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
  close (f);
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if fpstat ('test.fil', info)<>0 then
    begin
      writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ', fpgeterrno);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of stat on file ''test.fil''.');
  writeln ('Inode   : ', info.st_ino);
  writeln ('Mode    : ', info.st_mode);
  writeln ('nlink   : ', info.st_nlink);
  writeln ('uid     : ', info.st_uid);
  writeln ('gid     : ', info.st_gid);
  writeln ('rdev    : ', info.st_rdev);
  writeln ('Size    : ', info.st_size);
  writeln ('Blksize : ', info.st_blksize);
  writeln ('Blocks  : ', info.st_blocks);
  writeln ('atime   : ', info.st_atime);
  writeln ('mtime   : ', info.st_mtime);
  writeln ('ctime   : ', info.st_ctime);

  if fpSymLink ('test.fil', 'test.lnk')<>0 then

```

---

```

    writeln ( 'Link failed ! Errno : ',fpgeterrno);

    if  fplstat ( 'test.lnk',@info)<>0 then
    begin
        writeln('LStat failed. Errno : ',fpgeterrno);
        halt (1);
    end;
    writeln;
    writeln ( 'Result of fstat on file ''test.lnk''.' );
    writeln ( 'Inode   : ',info.st_ino);
    writeln ( 'Mode    : ',info.st_mode);
    writeln ( 'nlink   : ',info.st_nlink);
    writeln ( 'uid     : ',info.st_uid);
    writeln ( 'gid     : ',info.st_gid);
    writeln ( 'rdev    : ',info.st_rdev);
    writeln ( 'Size    : ',info.st_size);
    writeln ( 'Blksize  : ',info.st_blksize);
    writeln ( 'Blocks   : ',info.st_blocks);
    writeln ( 'atime   : ',info.st_atime);
    writeln ( 'mtime   : ',info.st_mtime);
    writeln ( 'ctime   : ',info.st_ctime);
    { Remove file and link }
    erase (f);
    fpunlink ( 'test.lnk' );
end.

```

---

### 1.4.39 FpMkdir

Synopsis: Create a new directory

Declaration: `function FpMkdir(path: pChar;Mode: TMode) : cInt`  
`function FpMkdir(path: AnsiString;Mode: TMode) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpMkDir` creates a new directory `Path`, and sets the new directory's mode to `Mode`. `Path` can be an absolute path or a relative path. Note that only the last element of the directory will be created, higher level directories must already exist, and must be writeable by the current user.

On succes, 0 is returned. if the function fails, -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([115](#)).

See also: `fpGetCWD` ([114](#)), `fpChDir` ([103](#))

### 1.4.40 FpMkfifo

Synopsis: Create FIFO (named pipe) in file system

Declaration: `function FpMkfifo(path: pChar;Mode: TMode) : cInt`  
`function FpMkfifo(path: AnsiString;Mode: TMode) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpMkFifo` creates a named pipe in the filesystem, with name `Path` and mode `Mode`.

The function returns zero if the command was succesful, and nonzero if it failed.

Errors: The error codes include:



**sys\_emfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

### 1.4.41 Fpmmmap

Synopsis: Create memory map of a file

Declaration: `function Fpmmmap(start: pointer; len: size_t; prot: cInt; flags: cInt; fd: cInt; offst: off_t) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: FpMMap maps or unmaps files or devices into memory. The different arguments determine what and how the file is mapped:

**adr** Address where to mmap the device. This address is a hint, and may not be followed.

**len** Size (in bytes) of area to be mapped.

**prot** Protection of mapped memory. This is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**PROT\_EXEC** The memory can be executed.

**PROT\_READ** The memory can be read.

**PROT\_WRITE** The memory can be written.

**PROT\_NONE** The memory can not be accessed.

**flags** Contains some options for the mmap call. It is an OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**MAP\_FIXED** Do not map at another address than the given address. If the address cannot be used, MMap will fail.

**MAP\_SHARED** Share this map with other processes that map this object.

**MAP\_PRIVATE** Create a private map with copy-on-write semantics.

**MAP\_ANONYMOUS** fd does not have to be a file descriptor.

One of the options MAP\_SHARED and MAP\_PRIVATE must be present, but not both at the same time.

**fd** File descriptor from which to map.

**off** Offset to be used in file descriptor fd.

The function returns a pointer to the mapped memory, or a -1 in case of an error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned and extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (115) function.

**Sys\_EBADF** fd is not a valid file descriptor and MAP\_ANONYMOUS was not specified.

**Sys\_EACCES** MAP\_PRIVATE was specified, but fd is not open for reading. Or MAP\_SHARED was asked and PROT\_WRITE is set, fd is not open for writing

**Sys\_EINVAL** One of the record fields Start, length or offset is invalid.

**Sys\_ETXTBUSY** MAP\_DENYWRITE was set but the object specified by fd is open for writing.

**Sys\_EAGAIN** fd is locked, or too much memory is locked.

**Sys\_ENOMEM** Not enough memory for this operation.

See also: FpMUnMap (125)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex66.pp

---

**Program** Example66;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MMap function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

```

Var S      : String;
      fd     : cint;
      Len    : longint;
  //  args   : tmmmapargs;
      P      : PChar;

begin
  s:= 'This is the string';
  Len:=Length(S);
  fd:=fpOpen('testfile.txt',O_wrOnly or o_creat);
  If fd=-1 then
    Halt(1);
  If fpWrite(fd,S[1],Len)=-1 then
    Halt(2);
  fpClose(fd);
  fd:=fpOpen('testfile.txt',O_rdOnly);
  if fd=-1 then
    Halt(3);
  P:=Pchar(fpmmap(nil,len+1,PROT_READ or PROT_WRITE,MAP_PRIVATE,fd,0));

  If longint(P)=-1 then
    Halt(4);
  WriteIn('Read in memory :',P);
  fpclose(fd);
  if fpMUnMap(P,Len)<>0 Then
    Halt(fpgeterrno);
end.

```

---

#### 1.4.42 Fpmunmap

Synopsis: Unmap previously mapped memory block

Declaration: `function Fpmunmap(start: pointer;len: size_t) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpMUnMap` unmaps the memory block of size `Len`, pointed to by `Adr`, which was previously allocated with `FpMMap` (124).

The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `FpMMap` (124).

Errors: In case of error the function returns a nonzero value, extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function. See `FpMMap` (124) for possible error values.

See also: `FpMMap` (124)

#### 1.4.43 FpNanoSleep

Synopsis: Suspend process for a short time

**Declaration:** `function FpNanoSleep(req: ptimespec;rem: ptimespec) : cInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpNanoSleep` suspends the process till a time period as specified in `req` has passed. Then the function returns. If the call was interrupted (e.g. by some signal) then the function may return earlier, and `rem` will contain the remaining time till the end of the intended period. In this case the return value will be -1, and `LinuxError` will be set to `EINTR`.

If the function returns without error, the return value is zero.

**Errors:** If an error occurred or the call was interrupted, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115).

See also: `FpPause` (129), `FpAlarm` (103)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex72.pp`

---

```

program example72;

{ Program to demonstrate the NanoSleep function. }

uses BaseUnix;

Var
  Req,Rem : TimeSpec;
  Res : Longint;

begin
  With Req do
    begin
      tv_sec:=10;
      tv_nsec:=100;
    end;
  Write( 'NanoSleep returned : ');
  Flush(Output);
  Res:=(fpNanoSleep(@Req,@rem));
  WriteLn(res);
  If (res<>0) then
    With rem do
      begin
        WriteLn( 'Remaining seconds      : ',tv_sec);
        WriteLn( 'Remaining nanoseconds : ',tv_nsec);
      end;
  end.
```

---

#### 1.4.44 fpNice

**Synopsis:** Set process priority

**Declaration:** `function fpNice(N: cInt) : cInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Nice` adds `-N` to the priority of the running process. The lower the priority numerically, the less the process is favored. Only the superuser can specify a negative `N`, i.e. increase the rate at which the process is run.

If the function is succesful, zero is returned. On error, a nonzero value is returned.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function.

**sys\_eperm** A non-superuser tried to specify a negative N, i.e. do a priority increase.

See also: `FpGetPriority` (118), `FpSetPriority` (136)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex15.pp

**Program** Example15;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Nice and Get/SetPriority functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**begin**

```
writeln ('Setting priority to 5');
fpsetpriority (prio_process,fpgetpid,5);
writeln ('New priority = ',fpgetpriority (prio_process,fpgetpid));
writeln ('Doing nice 10');
fpnice (10);
writeln ('New Priority = ',fpgetpriority (prio_process,fpgetpid));
end.
```

### 1.4.45 FpOpen

Synopsis: Open file and return file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpOpen(path: pChar;flags: cInt;Mode: TMode) : cInt`  
`function FpOpen(path: pChar;flags: cInt) : cInt`  
`function FpOpen(path: AnsiString;flags: cInt) : cInt`  
`function FpOpen(path: AnsiString;flags: cInt;Mode: TMode) : cInt`  
`function FpOpen(path: String;flags: cInt) : cInt`  
`function FpOpen(path: String;flags: cInt;Mode: TMode) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpOpen` opens a file in `Path` with flags `flags` and mode `Mode` One of the following:

**O\_RdOnlyFile** is opened Read-only

**O\_WrOnlyFile** is opened Write-only

**O\_RdWrFile** is opened Read-Write

The flags may beOR-ed with one of the following constants:

**O\_CreatFile** is created if it doesn't exist.

**O\_Excl**If the file is opened with `O_Creat` and it already exists, the call will fail.

**O\_NoCtty**If the file is a terminal device, it will NOT become the process' controlling terminal.

**O\_Trunc**If the file exists, it will be truncated.

**O\_Append**the file is opened in append mode. *Before each write*, the file pointer is positioned at the end of the file.

**O\_NonBlock**The file is opened in non-blocking mode. No operation on the file descriptor will cause the calling process to wait till.

**O\_NDelay**Idem as `O_NonBlock`

**O\_Sync**The file is opened for synchronous IO. Any write operation on the file will not return until the data is physically written to disk.

**O\_NoFollow**if the file is a symbolic link, the open fails. (linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

**O\_Directory**if the file is not a directory, the open fails. (linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

Path can be of type PChar or String. The optional mode argument specifies the permissions to set when opening the file. This is modified by the umask setting. The real permissions are Mode and not umask. The return value of the function is the filedescriptor, or a negative value if there was an error.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using fpGetErrno (115).

See also: FpClose (106), FpRead (130), FpWrite (151), FpFTruncate (114), FpLSeek (121)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex19.pp

---

**Program** Example19;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fdOpen, fdwrite and fdClose functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**Const** Line : **String**[80] = 'This is easy writing !';

**Var** FD : CInt;

**begin**

FD:=fpOpen ( 'Test.dat',O\_WrOnly or O\_Creat);

if FD>0 then

begin

if length(Line)<>fpwrite (FD,Line[1],Length(Line)) then

Writeln ( 'Error when writing to file !');

fpClose(FD);

end;

end.

---

#### 1.4.46 FpOpendir

Synopsis: Open a directory for reading

Declaration: function FpOpendir(dirname: pChar) : pDir  
function FpOpendir(dirname: AnsiString) : pDir  
function FpOpendir(dirname: shortString) : pDir

Visibility: default

Description: FpOpenDir opens the directory DirName, and returns a pdir pointer to a Dir (91) record, which can be used to read the directory structure. If the directory cannot be opened, nil is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using fpGetErrno (115).

See also: FpCloseDir (106), FpReadDir (132)

**Listing:** ./bunixex/ex35.pp

---

**Program** Example35;

*{ Program to demonstrate the  
OpenDir, ReadDir, SeekDir and TellDir functions. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix;

**Var** TheDir : PDir;  
ADirent : PDirent;  
Entry : Longint;

**begin**

TheDir:=fpOpenDir(' ./ ');

**Repeat**

// Entry:=fpTellDir(TheDir);

ADirent:=fpReadDir(TheDir^);

**If** ADirent<>Nil **then**

**With** ADirent^ **do**

**begin**

**Writeln** ('Entry No : ',Entry);

**Writeln** ('Inode : ',d\_fileno);

// **Writeln** ('Offset : ',d\_off);

**Writeln** ('Reclen : ',d\_reclen);

**Writeln** ('Name : ',pchar(@d\_name[0]));

**end**;

**Until** ADirent=Nil;

**Repeat**

**Write** ('Entry No. you would like to see again (-1 to stop): ');

**ReadLn** (Entry);

**If** Entry<>-1 **then**

**begin**

// fpSeekDir(TheDir,Entry);

*// not implemented for various platforms*

ADirent:=fpReadDir(TheDir^);

**If** ADirent<>Nil **then**

**With** ADirent^ **do**

**begin**

**Writeln** ('Entry No : ',Entry);

**Writeln** ('Inode : ',d\_fileno);

// **Writeln** ('Offset : ',d\_off);

**Writeln** ('Reclen : ',d\_reclen);

**Writeln** ('Name : ',pchar(@d\_name[0]));

**end**;

**end**;

**Until** Entry=-1;

fpCloseDir(TheDir^);

**end**.

---

### 1.4.47 FpPause

Synopsis: Wait for a signal to arrive

Declaration: function FpPause : cInt

Visibility: default

Description: FpPause puts the process to sleep and waits until the application receives a signal. If a signal handler is installed for the received signal, the handler will be called and after that pause will return

control to the process.

For an example, see `fpAlarm` ([103](#)).

### 1.4.48 FpPipe

Synopsis: Create a set of pipe file handlers

Declaration: `function FpPipe(var fildes: TFilDes) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpPipe` creates a pipe, i.e. two file objects, one for input, one for output. The filehandles are returned in the array `fildes`. The input handle is in the 0-th element of the array, the output handle is in the 1-st element.

The function returns zero if everything went succesfully, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

Errors: In case the function fails, the following return values are possible:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: `#rtl.unix.POpen` ([1277](#)), `fpMkFifo` ([123](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex36.pp`

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignPipe function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** pipi, pipo : Text;  
s : String;

```
begin
  Writeln ('Assigning Pipes. ');
  If assignpipe(pipi, pipo) <> 0 then
    Writeln ('Error assigning pipes !', fpgeterrno);
  Writeln ('Writing to pipe, and flushing. ');
  Writeln (pipo, 'This is a textstring'); close(pipo);
  Writeln ('Reading from pipe. ');
  While not eof(pipi) do
    begin
      Readln (pipi, s);
      Writeln ('Read from pipe : ', s);
    end;
  close (pipi);
  writeln ('Closed pipes. ');
  writeln
end.
```

---

### 1.4.49 FpRead

Synopsis: Read data from file descriptor

**Declaration:** `function FpRead(fd: cInt;buf: pChar;nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`  
`function FpRead(fd: cInt;var buf;nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FpRead` reads at most `nbytes` bytes from the file descriptor `fd`, and stores them in `buf`.

The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 if an error occurred. No checking on the length of `buf` is done.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115).

**See also:** `FpOpen` (127), `FpClose` (106), `FpWrite` (151), `FpFTruncate` (114), `FpLSeek` (121)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `Example20`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fdRead and fdTruncate functions. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**Const** `Data : string[10] = '1234567890'`;

**Var** `FD : cint;`  
`l : longint;`

**begin**

`FD:=fpOpen('test.dat',o_wronly or o_creat,&666);`

`if fd>0 then`

`begin`

*{ Fill file with data }*

`for l:=1 to 10 do`

`if fpWrite (FD,Data[l],10)<>10 then`

`begin`

`writeln ('Error when writing !');`

`halt(1);`

`end;`

`fpClose(FD);`

`FD:=fpOpen('test.dat',o_rdonly);`

*{ Read data again }*

`If FD>0 then`

`begin`

`For l:=1 to 5 do`

`if fpRead (FD,Data[l],10)<>10 then`

`begin`

`Writeln ('Error when Reading !');`

`Halt(2);`

`end;`

`fpClose(FD);`

*{ Truncating file at 60 bytes }*

*{ For truncating , file must be open or write }*

`FD:=fpOpen('test.dat',o_wronly,&666);`

`if FD>0 then`

`begin`

`if fpfTruncate (FD,60)<>0 then`

`Writeln('Error when truncating !');`

`fpClose (FD);`

`end;`

`end;`



```

    end;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.50 FpReaddir

Synopsis: Read entry from directory

Declaration: `function FpReaddir(var dirp: Dir) : pDirent`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpReadDir` reads the next entry in the directory pointed to by `dirp`. It returns a `pdirent` pointer to a `dirent` (91) record describing the entry. If the next entry can't be read, `Nil` is returned.

For an example, see `FpOpenDir` (128).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115).

See also: `FpCloseDir` (106), `FpOpenDir` (128)

### 1.4.51 fpReadLink

Synopsis: Read destination of symbolic link

Declaration: `function fpReadLink(name: pchar; linkname: pchar; maxlen: size_t) : cInt`  
`function fpReadLink(Name: ansistring) : ansistring`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpReadLink` returns the file the symbolic link name is pointing to. The first form of this function accepts a buffer `linkname` of length `maxlen` where the filename will be stored. It returns the actual number of characters stored in the buffer.

The second form of the function returns simply the name of the file.

Errors: On error, the first form of the function returns -1; the second one returns an empty string. Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function.

**SYS\_ENOTDIR**A part of the path in `Name` is not a directory.

**SYS\_EINVAL**`maxlen` is not positive, or the file is not a symbolic link.

**SYS\_ENAMETOOLONG**A pathname, or a component of a pathname, was too long.

**SYS\_ENOENT**the link name does not exist.

**SYS\_EACCES**No permission to search a directory in the path

**SYS\_ELOOP**Too many symbolic links were encountered in translating the pathname.

**SYS\_EIO**An I/O error occurred while reading from the file system.

**SYS\_EFAULT**The buffer is not part of the process's memory space.

**SYS\_ENOMEM**Not enough kernel memory was available.

See also: `FpSymLink` (143)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex62.pp`

---

**Program** Example62;

*{ Program to demonstrate the ReadLink function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** F : Text;  
       S : **String**;

**begin**  
     Assign (F, 'test.txt');  
     **Rewrite** (F);  
     **WriteLn** (F, 'This is written to test.txt');  
     Close(f);  
     *{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*  
     **if** fpSymLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0 **then**  
         **writeln** ('Error when symlinking !');  
     S:=fpReadLink('new.txt');  
     **If** S='' **then**  
         **WriteLn** ('Error reading link !')  
     **Else**  
         **WriteLn** ('Link points to : ',S);  
     *{ Now remove links }*  
     **If** fpUnlink ('new.txt') <> 0 **then**  
         **WriteLn** ('Error when unlinking !');  
     **If** fpUnlink ('test.txt') <> 0 **then**  
         **WriteLn** ('Error when unlinking !');  
**end.**

---

### 1.4.52 FpRename

Synopsis: Rename file

**Declaration:** function FpRename(old: pChar; newpath: pChar) : cInt  
                   function FpRename(old: AnsiString; newpath: AnsiString) : cInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** FpRename renames the file Old to NewPath. NewPath can be in a different directory than Old, but it cannot be on another partition (device). Any existing file on the new location will be replaced.

If the operation fails, then the Old file will be preserved.

The function returns zero on succes, a nonzero value indicates failure.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using fpGetErrno ([115](#)).

**sys\_eisdir**NewPath exists and is a directory, but Old is not a directory.

**sys\_exdev**NewPath and Old are on different devices.

**sys\_enotempty** or **sys\_eexist**NewPath is an existing, non-empty directory.

**sys\_ebusy**Old or NewPath is a directory and is in use by another process.

**sys\_einval**NewPath is part of Old.

**sys\_emlink**OldPath or NewPath already have the maximum amount of links pointing to them.

**sys\_enotdir**part of Old or NewPath is not directory.

**sys\_efault**For the pchar case: One of the pointers points to an invalid address.

**sys\_eaccess** access is denied when attempting to move the file.

**sys\_enametoolong** Either Old or NewPath is too long.

**sys\_enoent** a directory component in Old or NewPath didn't exist.

**sys\_enomem** not enough kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** NewPath or Old is on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eloop** too many symbolic links were encountered trying to expand Old or NewPath

**sys\_enospc** the filesystem has no room for the new directory entry.

See also: [FpUnLink \(148\)](#)

### 1.4.53 FpRmdir

Synopsis: Remove a directory.

Declaration: `function FpRmdir(path: pChar) : cInt`  
`function FpRmdir(path: AnsiString) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpRmdir` removes the directory Path from the system. The directory must be empty for this call to succeed, and the user must have the necessary permissions in the parent directory. Only the last component of the directory is removed, i.e. higher-lying directories are not removed.

On success, zero is returned. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using [fpGetErrno \(115\)](#).

### 1.4.54 fpSelect

Synopsis: Wait for events on file descriptors

Declaration: `function FPSelect(N: cInt; readfds: pFDSet; writefds: pFDSet;`  
`exceptfds: pFDSet; Timeout: ptimeval) : cInt`  
`function fpSelect(N: cInt; readfds: pFDSet; writefds: pFDSet;`  
`exceptfds: pFDSet; Timeout: cInt) : cInt`  
`function fpSelect(var T: Text; Timeout: ptimeval) : cInt`  
`function fpSelect(var T: Text; Timeout: time_t) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSelect` checks one of the file descriptors in the `FDSet`s to see if its status changed.

`readfds`, `writefds` and `exceptfds` are pointers to arrays of 256 bits. If you want a file descriptor to be checked, you set the corresponding element in the array to 1. The other elements in the array must be set to zero. Three arrays are passed : The entries in `readfds` are checked to see if characters become available for reading. The entries in `writefds` are checked to see if it is OK to write to them, while entries in `exceptfds` are checked to see if an exception occurred on them.

You can use the functions [fpFD\\_ZERO \(112\)](#), [fpFD\\_Clr \(111\)](#), [fpFD\\_Set \(112\)](#) or [fpFD\\_IsSet \(112\)](#) to manipulate the individual elements of a set.

The pointers can be `Nil`.

`N` is the largest index of a nonzero entry plus 1. (= the largest file-descriptor + 1).

`Timeout` can be used to set a time limit. If `Timeout` can be two types :

1. `Timeout` is of type `ptimeval` and contains a zero time, the call returns immediately. If `Timeout` is `Nil`, the kernel will wait forever, or until a status changed.
2. `Timeout` is of type `cint`. If it is -1, this has the same effect as a `Timeout` of type `PTime` which is `Nil`. Otherwise, `Timeout` contains a time in milliseconds.

When the `Timeout` is reached, or one of the file descriptors has changed, the `Select` call returns. On return, it will have modified the entries in the array which have actually changed, and it returns the number of entries that have been changed. If the timeout was reached, and no descriptor changed, zero is returned; The arrays of indexes are undefined after that. On error, -1 is returned.

The variant with the text file will execute the `FpSelect` call on the file descriptor associated with the text file `T`

Errors: On error, the function returns -1. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115).

**SYS\_EBADF** An invalid descriptor was specified in one of the sets.

**SYS\_EINTR** A non blocked signal was caught.

**SYS\_EINVAL** `n` is negative or too big.

**SYS\_ENOMEM** `Select` was unable to allocate memory for its internal tables.

See also: `fpFD_ZERO` (112), `fpFD_Clr` (111), `fpFD_Set` (112), `fpFD_IsSet` (112)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex33.pp`

**Program** `Example33`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Select function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix`;

**Var** `FDS` : `Tfdset`;

**begin**

```

    fpfd_zero(FDS);
    fpfd_set(0,FDS);
    Writeln ( 'Press the <ENTER> to continue the program.' );
    { Wait until File descriptor 0 (=Input) changes }
    fpSelect (1,@FDS,nil , nil , nil );
    { Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }
    readln;
    Writeln ( 'Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds...' );
    Fpfd_zero(FDS);
    FpFd_set (0 ,FDS);
    if fpSelect (1 ,@FDS, nil , nil ,2000)>0 then
        Writeln ( 'Thank you ! ' )
        { FD_ISSET(0,FDS) would be true here. }
    else
        Writeln ( 'Too late ! ' );
end.
```

### 1.4.55 fpseterrno

Synopsis: Set extended error information.

Declaration: `procedure fpseterrno(err: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpseterrno` sets the extended information on the latest error. It is called by all functions that communicate with the kernel or C library.

Unless a direct kernel call is performed, there should never be any need to call this function.

Errors:

See also: `fpgeterrno` (115)

### 1.4.56 FpSetgid

Synopsis: Set the current group ID

Declaration: `function FpSetgid(gid: TGid) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetUID` sets the group ID of the current process. This call will only work if it is executed as root, or the program is `setgid` root.

On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` (115).

See also: `FpSetUid` (137), `FpGetGid` (116), `FpGetUid` (118), `FpGetEUid` (116), `FpGetEGid` (114), `FpGetPid` (117), `FpGetPPid` (118)

### 1.4.57 fpSetPriority

Synopsis: Set process priority

Declaration: `function fpSetPriority(Which: cInt;Who: cInt;What: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetPriority` sets the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the `Which` and `Who` variables. Which can be one of the pre-defined constants:

**Prio\_Process**Who is interpreted as process ID

**Prio\_PGrp**Who is interpreted as process group ID

**Prio\_User**Who is interpreted as user ID

`Prio` is a value in the range -20 to 20.

For an example, see `FpNice` (126).

The function returns zero on success, -1 on failure

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using which and who.

**sys\_einval**Which was not one of `Prio_Process`, `Prio_Grp` or `Prio_User`.

**sys\_eperm**A process was found, but neither its effective or real user ID match the effective user ID of the caller.

**sys\_eaccess**A non-superuser tried to a priority increase.

See also: `FpGetPriority` (118), `FpNice` (126)

### 1.4.58 FpSetsid

Synopsis: Create a new session.

Declaration: `function FpSetsid : TPid`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSetsid` creates a new session (process group). It returns the new process group id (as returned by `FpGetpgrp` (117)). This call will fail if the current process is already the process group leader.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` (115)

### 1.4.59 fpsettimeofday

Synopsis: Set kernel time

Declaration: `function fpsettimeofday(tp: ptimeval; tzp: ptimezone) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSetTimeOfDay` sets the kernel time to the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT specified in the `tp` record. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account time-zones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call.

See also: `#rtl.unix.FPGetTimeOfDay` (1272)

### 1.4.60 FpSetuid

Synopsis: Set the current user ID

Declaration: `function FpSetuid(uid: TUid) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSetUID` sets the user ID of the current process. This call will only work if it is executed as root, or the program is `setuid` root.

On success, zero is returned, on error -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrNo` (115).

See also: `FpGetGid` (116), `FpGetUid` (118), `FpGetEUid` (116), `FpGetEGid` (114), `FpGetPid` (117), `FpGetPPid` (118), `FpSetGid` (136)

### 1.4.61 FPSigaction

Synopsis: Install signal handler

Declaration: `function FPSigaction(sig: cInt; act: PSigActionRec; oact: PSigActionRec) : cInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpSigaction` changes the action to take upon receipt of a signal. `Act` and `Oact` are pointers to a `SigActionRec` (96) record. `Sig` specifies the signal, and can be any signal except **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

If `Act` is non-nil, then the new action for signal `Sig` is taken from it. If `Oact` is non-nil, the old action is stored there. `Sa_Handler` may be `SIG_DFL` for the default action or `SIG_IGN` to ignore the signal. `Sa_Mask` Specifies which signals should be ignored during the execution of the signal handler. `Sa_Flags` Specifies a series of flags which modify the behaviour of the signal handler. You can 'or' none or more of the following :

**SA\_NOCLDSTOP**If `sig` is **SIGCHLD** do not receive notification when child processes stop.

**SA\_ONESHOT** or **SA\_RESETHAND**Restore the signal action to the default state once the signal handler has been called.

**SA\_RESTART**For compatibility with BSD signals.

**SA\_NOMASK** or **SA\_NODEFER**Do not prevent the signal from being received from within its own signal handler.

**Errors:** Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115).

**sys\_einval**an invalid signal was specified, or it was **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

**sys\_efault**`Act` , `OldAct` point outside this process address space

**sys\_eintr**System call was interrupted.

See also: `FpSigProcMask` (141), `FpSigPending` (141), `FpSigSuspend` (142), `FpKill` (119)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex57.pp`

**Program** `example57`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SigAction function.}

{
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.
replace pid with the real pid of this program.
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.
}
```

**uses** `BaseUnix`;

**Var**

`oa,na : PSigActionRec;`

**Procedure** `DoSig(sig : cint); cdecl;`

**begin**

`writeln('Receiving signal: ',sig);`

**end;**

**begin**

`new(na);`

`new(oa);`

`na^.sa_Handler:=SigActionHandler(@DoSig);`

`fillchar(na^.Sa_Mask,sizeof(na^.sa_mask),#0);`

`na^.Sa_Flags:=0;`

`{ $ifdef Linux } // Linux specific`

`na^.Sa_Restorer:=Nil;`

---

```

    {$endif}
    if fpSigAction (SigUsr1 , na , oa) <> 0 then
        begin
            writeln ( 'Error: ', fpgeterrno , ' . ' );
            halt (1);
        end;
    Writeln ( 'Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit' );
    readln;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.62 FpSigAddSet

Synopsis: Set a signal in a signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigAddSet(var nset: TSigSet; signo: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigAddSet` adds signal `Signo` to the signal set `nset`. The function returns 0 on success.

Errors: If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` ([139](#)), `FpSigFillSet` ([140](#)), `FpSigDelSet` ([139](#)), `FpSigIsMember` ([140](#))

### 1.4.63 FpSigDelSet

Synopsis: Remove a signal from a signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigDelSet(var nset: TSigSet; signo: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigDelSet` removes signal `Signo` to the signal set `nset`. The function returns 0 on success.

Errors: If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` ([139](#)), `FpSigFillSet` ([140](#)), `FpSigAddSet` ([139](#)), `FpSigIsMember` ([140](#))

### 1.4.64 FpSigEmptySet

Synopsis: Clear all signals from signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigEmptySet(var nset: TSigSet) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigEmptySet` clears all signals from the signal set `nset`.

Errors: None. This function always returns zero.

See also: `FpSigFillSet` ([140](#)), `FpSigAddSet` ([139](#)), `FpSigDelSet` ([139](#)), `FpSigIsMember` ([140](#))



### 1.4.65 FpSigFillSet

Synopsis: Set all signals in signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigFillSet(var nset: TSigSet) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigFillSet` sets all signals in the signal set `nset`.

Errors: None. This function always returns zero.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` (139), `FpSigAddSet` (139), `FpSigDelSet` (139), `FpSigIsMember` (140)

### 1.4.66 FpSigIsMember

Synopsis: Check whether a signal appears in a signal set.

Declaration: `function FpSigIsMember(const nset: TSigSet; signo: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSigIsMember` checks whether `SigNo` appears in the set `nset`. If it is a member, then 1 is returned. If not, zero is returned.

Errors: If an invalid signal number is given, -1 is returned.

See also: `FpSigEmptySet` (139), `FpSigFillSet` (140), `FpSigAddSet` (139), `FpSigDelSet` (139)

### 1.4.67 FpSignal

Synopsis: Install signal handler (deprecated)

Declaration: `function FpSignal(signum: LongInt; Handler: SignalHandler)  
: SignalHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSignal` installs a new signal handler (specified by `Handler`) for signal `SigNum`.

This call has a subset of the functionality provided by the `FpSigAction` (137) call. The return value for `FpSignal` is the old signal handler, or nil on error.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115).

**SIG\_ERR** An error occurred.

See also: `FpSigAction` (137), `FpKill` (119)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex58.pp`

---

**Program** `example58;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Signal function. }

{
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.
replace pid with the real pid of this program.
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.
}
```

```

uses BaseUnix;

Procedure DoSig(sig : cint);cdecl;

begin
  writeln( 'Receiving signal: ',sig);
end;

begin
  if fpSignal( SigUstr1 , SignalHandler (@DoSig))= signalhandler(SIG_ERR) then
    begin
      writeln( 'Error: ',fpGetErrno , '. ');
      halt(1);
    end;
    WriteIn ( 'Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit ');
    readln;
  end.

```

---

### 1.4.68 FpSigPending

Synopsis: Return set of currently pending signals

Declaration: `function FpSigPending(var nset: TSigSet) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSigpending` allows the examination of pending signals (which have been raised while blocked.)  
The signal mask of pending signals is returned.

Errors: None

See also: `fpSigAction` ([137](#)), `fpSigProcMask` ([141](#)), `fpSigSuspend` ([142](#)), `fpSignal` ([140](#)), `fpKill` ([119](#))

### 1.4.69 FpSigProcMask

Synopsis: Set list of blocked signals

Declaration: `function FpSigProcMask(how: cInt;nset: PSigSet;oset: PSigSet) : cInt`  
`function FpSigProcMask(how: cInt;const nset: TSigSet;var oset: TSigSet)`  
`: cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Changes the list of currently blocked signals. The behaviour of the call depends on How :

**SIG\_BLOCK**The set of blocked signals is the union of the current set and the `nset` argument.

**SIG\_UNBLOCK**The signals in `nset` are removed from the set of currently blocked signals.

**SIG\_SETMASK**The list of blocked signals is set so `nset`.

If `oset` is non-nil, then the old set is stored in it.

Errors: `Errno` is used to report errors.

**sys\_efault**`oset` or `nset` point to an adress outside the range of the process.

**sys\_eintr**System call was interrupted.

See also: `fpSigAction` ([137](#)), `fpSigPending` ([141](#)), `fpSigSuspend` ([142](#)), `fpKill` ([119](#))

### 1.4.70 FpSigSuspend

Synopsis: Set signal mask and suspend process till signal is received

Declaration: `function FpSigSuspend(const sigmask: TSigSet) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpSigSuspend` temporarily replaces the signal mask for the process with the one given in `SigMask`, and then suspends the process until a signal is received.

Errors: None

See also: `fpSigAction` (137), `fpSigProcMask` (141), `fpSigPending` (141), `fpSignal` (140), `fpKill` (119)

### 1.4.71 FpSleep

Synopsis: Suspend process for several seconds

Declaration: `function FpSleep(seconds: cUInt) : cUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpSleep` suspends the process till a time period as specified in `seconds` has passed, then the function returns. If the call was interrupted (e.g. by some signal) then the function may return earlier, and the return value is the remaining time till the end of the intended period.

If the function returns without error, the return value is zero.

See also: `fpPause` (129), `fpAlarm` (103), `fpNanoSleep` (125)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex73.pp`

---

```

program example73;

{ Program to demonstrate the FpSleep function. }

uses BaseUnix;

Var
    Res : Longint;

begin
    Write( 'Sleep returned : ');
    Flush(Output);
    Res:=(fpSleep(10));
    WriteLn(res);
    If (res<>0) then
        WriteLn( 'Remaining seconds      : ',res);
end.

```

---

### 1.4.72 FpStat

Synopsis: Retrieve file information about a file descriptor.

Declaration: `function FpStat(path: pChar;var buf: Stat) : cInt`  
`function FpStat(path: AnsiString;var buf: Stat) : cInt`  
`function FpStat(path: String;var buf: Stat) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpFStat` gets information about the file specified in `Path`, and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat` (97). The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115).

`sys_enoent``Path` does not exist.

See also: `FpStat` (142), `FpLStat` (122)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex28.pp`

---

```

program example28;

  { Program to demonstrate the FStat function. }

uses BaseUnix;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil ');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
  close (f);
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if fpstat ('test.fil ', info) <> 0 then
    begin
      writeln ('Fstat failed. Errno : ', fpgeterrno);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil ''.');
  writeln ('Inode   : ', info.st_ino);
  writeln ('Mode    : ', info.st_mode);
  writeln ('nlink   : ', info.st_nlink);
  writeln ('uid     : ', info.st_uid);
  writeln ('gid     : ', info.st_gid);
  writeln ('rdev    : ', info.st_rdev);
  writeln ('Size    : ', info.st_size);
  writeln ('Blksize  : ', info.st_blksize);
  writeln ('Blocks  : ', info.st_blocks);
  writeln ('atime   : ', info.st_atime);
  writeln ('mtime   : ', info.st_mtime);
  writeln ('ctime   : ', info.st_ctime);
  { Remove file }
  erase (f);
end.

```

---

### 1.4.73 fpSymlink

Synopsis: Create a symbolic link

Declaration: `function fpSymlink(oldname: pchar; newname: pchar) : cInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SymLink` makes `NewName` point to the file in `OldName`, which doesn't necessarily exist. The two files DO NOT have the same inode number. This is known as a 'soft' link.

The permissions of the link are irrelevant, as they are not used when following the link. Ownership of the file is only checked in case of removal or renaming of the link.

The function returns zero if the call was succesful, a nonzero value if the call failed.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function.

**sys\_eperm**The filesystem containing oldpath and newpath does not support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess**Write access for the directory containing Newpath is disallowed, or one of the directories in OldPath or NewPath has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath is nor a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The files are on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eexist**NewPath already exists.

**sys\_eloop**OldPath or NewPath has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc**The device containing NewPath has no room for another entry.

See also: `FpLink` (120), `FpUnLink` (148), `FpReadLink` (132)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** `Example22`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SymLink and UnLink functions. }*

**Uses** `baseunix`, `Unix`;

**Var** `F` : `Text`;  
       `S` : **String**;

**begin**  
   Assign (`F`, 'test.txt');  
   **Rewrite** (`F`);  
   **Writeln** (`F`, 'This is written to test.txt');  
   Close(`f`);  
   *{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*  
   if `fpSymLink` ('test.txt', 'new.txt') <> 0 then  
     **writeln** ('Error when symlinking !');  
   *{ Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt }*  
   *Pointing now to a non-existent file ! }*  
   If `fpUnlink` ('test.txt') <> 0 then  
     **Writeln** ('Error when unlinking !');  
   Assign (`f`, 'new.txt');  
   *{ This should fail, since the symbolic link }*  
   *points to a non-existent file ! }*  
   { \$i- }  
   **Reset** (`F`);  
   { \$i+ }

---

```

If IOResult=0 then
  Writeln ( 'This shouldn''t happen' );
  { Now remove new.txt also }
  If fpUnlink ( 'new.txt ' ) <> 0 then
    Writeln ( 'Error when unlinking !' );
end .

```

---

#### 1.4.74 fpS\_ISBLK

Synopsis: Is file a block device

Declaration: `function fpS_ISBLK(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpS_ISBLK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a block device file. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` ([113](#)), `FpS_ISLNK` ([146](#)), `FpS_ISREG` ([146](#)), `FpS_ISDIR` ([145](#)), `FpS_ISCHR` ([145](#)), `FpS_ISFIFO` ([145](#)), `FpS_ISSOCK` ([147](#))

#### 1.4.75 fpS\_ISCHR

Synopsis: Is file a character device

Declaration: `function fpS_ISCHR(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpS_ISCHR` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a character device file. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` ([113](#)), `FpS_ISLNK` ([146](#)), `FpS_ISREG` ([146](#)), `FpS_ISDIR` ([145](#)), `FpS_ISBLK` ([145](#)), `FpS_ISFIFO` ([145](#)), `FpS_ISSOCK` ([147](#))

#### 1.4.76 fpS\_ISDIR

Synopsis: Is file a directory

Declaration: `function fpS_ISDIR(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpS_ISDIR` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a directory. If so, it returns `True`

See also: `FpFStat` ([113](#)), `FpS_ISLNK` ([146](#)), `FpS_ISREG` ([146](#)), `FpS_ISCHR` ([145](#)), `FpS_ISBLK` ([145](#)), `fpS_ISFIFO` ([145](#)), `FpS_ISSOCK` ([147](#))

#### 1.4.77 fpS\_ISFIFO

Synopsis: Is file a FIFO

Declaration: `function fpS_ISFIFO(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** FpS\_ISFIFO checks the file mode *m* to see whether the file is a fifo (a named pipe). If so it returns `True`.

See also: FpFStat ([113](#)), FpS\_ISLNK ([146](#)), FpS\_ISREG ([146](#)), FpS\_ISCHR ([145](#)), FpS\_ISBLK ([145](#)), FpS\_ISDIR ([145](#)), FpS\_ISSOCK ([147](#))

### 1.4.78 fpS\_ISLNK

**Synopsis:** Is file a symbolic link

**Declaration:** `function fpS_ISLNK(m: TMode) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** FpS\_ISLNK checks the file mode *m* to see whether the file is a symbolic link. If so it returns `True`

See also: FpFStat ([113](#)), FpS\_ISFIFO ([145](#)), FpS\_ISREG ([146](#)), FpS\_ISCHR ([145](#)), FpS\_ISBLK ([145](#)), FpS\_ISDIR ([145](#)), FpS\_ISSOCK ([147](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex53.pp`

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ Program to demonstrate the S\_ISLNK function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** Info : Stat;

**begin**

**if** fpLStat (paramstr(1), @info)=0 **then**

**begin**

**if** fpS\_ISLNK(info.st\_mode) **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is a link' );

**if** fpS\_ISREG(info.st\_mode) **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is a regular file' );

**if** fpS\_ISDIR(info.st\_mode) **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is a directory' );

**if** fpS\_ISCHR(info.st\_mode) **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is a character device file' );

**if** fpS\_ISBLK(info.st\_mode) **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is a block device file' );

**if** fpS\_ISFIFO(info.st\_mode) **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is a named pipe (FIFO)' );

**if** fpS\_ISSOCK(info.st\_mode) **then**

**Writeln** ( 'File is a socket' );

**end**;

**end.**

---

### 1.4.79 fpS\_ISREG

**Synopsis:** Is file a regular file

**Declaration:** `function fpS_ISREG(m: TMode) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

Description: `FpS_ISREG` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a regular file. If so it returns `True`

See also: `FpFStat` (113), `FpS_ISFIFO` (145), `FpS_ISLNK` (146), `FpS_ISCHR` (145), `FpS_ISBLK` (145), `FpS_ISDIR` (145), `FpS_ISSOCK` (147)

### 1.4.80 `fpS_ISSOCK`

Synopsis: Is file a unix socket

Declaration: `function fpS_ISSOCK(m: TMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpS_ISSOCK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a socket. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FpFStat` (113), `FpS_ISFIFO` (145), `FpS_ISLNK` (146), `FpS_ISCHR` (145), `FpS_ISBLK` (145), `FpS_ISDIR` (145), `FpS_ISREG` (146)

### 1.4.81 `fpTime`

Synopsis: Return the current unix time

Declaration: `function FpTime(var tloc: TTime) : TTime`  
`function fpTime : time_t`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpTime` returns the number of seconds since 00:00:00 GMT, january 1, 1970. it is adjusted to the local time zone, but not to DST. The result is also stored in `tloc`, if it is specified.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned. Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115).

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** Example1;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetEpochTime function. }*

**Uses** Unix;

**begin**

**Write** ( 'Secs past the start of the Epoch (00:00 1/1/1980) : ' );

**WriteLn** ( GetEpochTime );

**end.**

---

### 1.4.82 `FpTimes`

Synopsis: Return execution times for the current process

Declaration: `function FpTimes(var buffer: tms) : TClock`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpTimes` stores the execution time of the current process and child processes in `buffer`.

The return value (on linux) is the number of clock ticks since boot time. On error, -1 is returned, and extended error information can be retrieved with `fpGetErrno` (115).

See also: `fpUTime` (149)



### 1.4.83 FpUmask

Synopsis: Set file creation mask.

Declaration: `function FpUmask(cmask: TMode) : TMode`

Visibility: default

Description: `fpUmask` changes the file creation mask for the current user to `cmask`. The current mask is returned.

See also: `fpChmod` ([104](#))

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** `Example27;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Umask function. }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix;`

```
begin
  WriteLn ( 'Old Umask was : ',fpUmask(&111));
  WRitLn ( 'New Umask is   : ',&111);
end.
```

---

### 1.4.84 FpUname

Synopsis: Return system name.

Declaration: `function FpUname(var name: UtsName) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Uname` gets the name and configuration of the current linux kernel, and returns it in the name record.

On success, 0 is returned, on error, -1 is returned.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([115](#)).

See also: `FpUTime` ([149](#))

### 1.4.85 FpUnlink

Synopsis: Unlink (i.e. remove) a file.

Declaration: `function FpUnlink(path: pChar) : cInt`  
`function FpUnlink(path: AnsiString) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpUnLink` decreases the link count on file `Path`. `Path` can be of type `AnsiString` or `PChar`. If the link count is zero, the file is removed from the disk.

The function returns zero if the call was succesfull, a nonzero value indicates failure.

For an example, see `FpLink` ([120](#)).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` ([115](#)).

**sys\_eaccess**You have no write access right in the directory containing `Path`, or you have no search permission in one of the directory components of `Path`.

**sys\_eperm**The directory containing `pathname` has the sticky-bit set and the process's effective uid is neither the uid of the file to be deleted nor that of the directory containing it.

**sys\_enoent**A component of the path doesn't exist.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eisdir**`Path` refers to a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**`Path` is on a read-only filesystem.

See also: `FpLink` (120), `FpSymLink` (143)

### 1.4.86 FpUtime

Synopsis: Set access and modification times of a file (touch).

Declaration: `function FpUtime(path: pChar;times: pUtimBuf) : cInt`  
`function FpUtime(path: AnsiString;times: pUtimBuf) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpUtime` sets the access and modification times of the file specified in `Path`. the times record contains 2 fields, `actime`, and `modtime`, both of type `time_t` (commonly a longint). They should be filled with an epoch-like time, specifying, respectively, the last access time, and the last modification time. For some filesystem (most notably, FAT), these times are the same.

The function returns zero on success, a nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115).

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

Other errors may occur, but aren't documented.

See also: `FpTime` (147), `FpChown` (105), `FpAccess` (102)

**Listing:** `./bunixex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `Example25`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the UTime function . }*

**Uses** `BaseUnix` , `Unix` , `UnixUtil` ;

**Var** `utim` : `utimbuf` ;  
`year` , `month` , `day` , `hour` , `minute` , `second` : `Word` ;

**begin**  
*{ Set access and modification time of executable source }*  
`GetTime ( hour , minute , second ) ;`  
`GetDate ( year , month , day ) ;`  
`utim . actime := LocalToEpoch ( year , month , day , hour , minute , second ) ;`  
`utim . modtime := utim . actime ;`  
**if** `Fputime ( 'ex25.pp' , @utim ) <> 0` **then**

```

    writeln ( 'Call to UTime failed !' )
else
begin
    Write ( 'Set access and modification times to : ' );
    Write ( Hour:2, ':', minute:2, ':', second, ', ' );
    Writeln ( Day:2, '/', month:2, '/', year:4 );
end;
end.

```

---

### 1.4.87 FpWait

Synopsis: Wait for a child to exit.

Declaration: function FpWait(var stat\_loc: cInt) : TPid

Visibility: default

Description: fpWait suspends the current process and waits for any child to exit or stop due to a signal. It reports the exit status of the exited child in stat\_loc.

The return value of the function is the process ID of the child that exited, or -1 on error.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using fpgetErrno ([115](#)).

See also: fpFork ([112](#)), fpExecve ([109](#)), fpWaitPid ([150](#))

### 1.4.88 FpWaitPid

Synopsis: Wait for a process to terminate

Declaration: function FpWaitpid(pid: TPid; stat\_loc: pcInt; options: cInt) : TPid  
function FpWaitPid(pid: TPid; var Status: cInt; Options: cInt) : TPid

Visibility: default

Description: fpWaitPid waits for a child process with process ID Pid to exit. The value of Pid can be one of the following:

**Pid < -1** Causes fpWaitPid to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the absolute value of pid.

**Pid = -1** Causes fpWaitPid to wait for any child process.

**Pid = 0** Causes fpWaitPid to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the one of the calling process.

**Pid > 0** Causes fpWaitPid to wait for the child whose process ID equals the value of Pid.

The Options parameter can be used to specify further how fpWaitPid behaves:

**WNOHANG** Causes fpWaitpid to return immediately if no child has exited.

**WUNTRACED** Causes fpWaitPid to return also for children which are stopped, but whose status has not yet been reported.

**\_\_WCLONE** Causes fpWaitPid also to wait for threads created by the #rtl.linux.Clone ([599](#)) call.

The exit status of the process that caused fpWaitPID is reported in stat\_loc or Status.

Upon return, it returns the process id of the process that exited, 0 if no process exited, or -1 in case of failure.

For an example, see fpFork ([112](#)).

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpgetErrno` (115).

See also: `fpFork` (112), `fpExecve` (109), `fpWait` (150)

### 1.4.89 FpWrite

Synopsis: Write data to file descriptor

Declaration: `function FpWrite(fd: cInt;buf: pChar;nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`  
`function FpWrite(fd: cInt;const buf;nbytes: TSize) : TsSize`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpWrite` writes at most `nbytes` bytes from `buf` to file descriptor `fd`.

The function returns the number of bytes actually written, or -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved using `fpGetErrno` (115).

See also: `FpOpen` (127), `FpClose` (106), `FpRead` (130), `FpFTruncate` (114), `FpLSeek` (121)

### 1.4.90 wexitStatus

Synopsis: Extract the exit status from the `fpWaitPID` (150) result.

Declaration: `function wexitStatus(Status: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WEXITSTATUS` can be used to extract the exit status from `Status`, the result of the `FpWaitPID` (150) call.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (150), `WTERMSIG` (152), `WSTOPSIG` (152), `WIFEXITED` (151), `WIFSIGNALED` (151)

### 1.4.91 wifexited

Synopsis: Check whether the process exited normally

Declaration: `function wifexited(Status: cInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFEXITED` checks `Status` and returns `True` if the status indicates that the process terminated normally, i.e. was not stopped by a signal.

See also: `FpWaitPID` (150), `WTERMSIG` (152), `WSTOPSIG` (152), `WIFSIGNALED` (151), `WEXITSTATUS` (151)

### 1.4.92 wifsignaled

Synopsis: Check whether the process was exited by a signal.

Declaration: `function wifsignaled(Status: cInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFSIGNALED` returns `True` if `Status` indicates that the process exited because it received a signal.

See also: [FpWaitPID \(150\)](#), [WTERMSIG \(152\)](#), [WSTOPSIG \(152\)](#), [WIFEXITED \(151\)](#), [WEXITSTATUS \(151\)](#)

### 1.4.93 wstopsig

Synopsis: Return the exit code from the process.

Declaration: `function wstopsig(Status: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: WSTOPSIG is an alias for WEXITSTATUS ([151](#)).

See also: [FpWaitPID \(150\)](#), [WTERMSIG \(152\)](#), [WIFEXITED \(151\)](#), [WIFSIGNALED \(151\)](#), [WEXITSTATUS \(151\)](#)

### 1.4.94 wtermsig

Synopsis: Return the signal that caused a process to exit.

Declaration: `function wtermsig(Status: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: WTERMSIG extracts from Status the signal number which caused the process to exit.

See also: [FpWaitPID \(150\)](#), [WSTOPSIG \(152\)](#), [WIFEXITED \(151\)](#), [WIFSIGNALED \(151\)](#), [WEXITSTATUS \(151\)](#)

## Chapter 2

# Reference for unit 'Classes'

### 2.1 Used units

Table 2.1: Used units by unit 'Classes'

Name	Page
rtlconsts	<a href="#">153</a>
sysutils	<a href="#">1082</a>
types	<a href="#">153</a>
typinfo	<a href="#">1218</a>

### 2.2 Overview

This documentation describes the FPC `classes` unit. The `Classes` unit contains basic classes for the Free Component Library (FCL):

- a `TList` ([246](#)) class for maintaining lists of pointers,
- `TStringList` ([282](#)) for lists of strings,
- `TCollection` ([213](#)) to manage collections of objects
- `TStream` ([273](#)) classes to support streaming.

Furthermore it introduces methods for object persistence, and classes that understand an owner-owned relationship, with automatic memory management.

### 2.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 2.3.1 Constants

`BITSHIFT` = 5

Used to calculate the size of a bits array

`FilerSignature : Array[1..4] of Char = 'TPF0'`

Constant that is found at the start of a binary stream containing a streamed component.

`fmCreate = $FFFF`

`TFileStream.Create (237)` creates a new file if needed.

`fmOpenRead = 0`

`TFileStream.Create (237)` opens a file with read-only access.

`fmOpenReadWrite = 2`

`TFileStream.Create (237)` opens a file with read-write access.

`fmOpenWrite = 1`

`TFileStream.Create (237)` opens a file with write-only access.

`MASK = 31`

Bitmask with all bits on.

`MaxBitFlags = MaxBitRec * 32`

Maximum number of bits in TBits collection.

`MaxBitRec = $FFFF div ( SizeOf ( longint ) )`

Maximum number of bit records in TBits.

`MaxListSize = Maxint div 16`

This constant sets the maximum number of elements in a TList (246).

`scAlt = $8000`

Indicates ALT key in a keyboard shortcut.

`scCtrl = $4000`

indicates CTRL key in a keyboard shortcut.

`scNone = 0`

Indicates no special key is pressed in a keyboard shortcut.

`scShift = $2000`

Indicates Shift key in a keyboard shortcut.

`soFromBeginning = 0`

Seek (275) starts relative to the stream origin.

`soFromCurrent = 1`

Seek (275) starts relative to the current position in the stream.

`soFromEnd = 2`

Seek (275) starts relative to the stream end.

`toEOF = Char ( 0 )`

Value returned by `TParser.Token` (260) when the end of the input stream was reached.

`toFloat = Char ( 4 )`

Value returned by `TParser.Token` (260) when a floating point value was found in the input stream.

`toInteger = Char ( 3 )`

Value returned by `TParser.Token` (260) when an integer was found in the input stream.

`toString = Char ( 2 )`

Value returned by `TParser.Token` (260) when a string was found in the input stream.

`toSymbol = Char ( 1 )`

Value returned by `TParser.Token` (260) when a symbol was found in the input stream.

### 2.3.2 Types

`HModule = System.HModule`

FPC doesn't support modules yet, so this is a dummy type.

`HRSRC = LongInt`

This type is provided for Delphi compatibilty, it is used for resource streams.

`PPointerList = ^TPointerList`

Pointer to an array of pointers.

`PStringItem = ^TStringItem`

Pointer to a `TStringItem` (163) record.



Table 2.2: Enumeration values for type TActiveXRegType

Value	Explanation
axrComponentOnly	
axrIncludeDescendants	

Table 2.3: Enumeration values for type TAlignment

Value	Explanation
taCenter	Text is displayed centered.
taLeftJustify	Text is displayed aligned to the left
taRightJustify	Text is displayed aligned to the right.

PStringItemList = ^TStringItemList

Pointer to a TStringItemList ([163](#)).

TActiveXRegType = (axrComponentOnly, axrIncludeDescendants)

This type is provided for compatibility only, and is currently not used in Free Pascal.

TAlignment = (taLeftJustify, taRightJustify, taCenter)

The TAlignment type is used to specify the alignment of the text in controls that display a text.

```
TAncestorNotFoundEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;
                                     const ComponentName: String;
                                     ComponentClass: TPersistentClass;
                                     var Component: TComponent) of object
```

This event occurs when an ancestor component cannot be found.

TBasicActionClass = Class of TBasicAction

TBasicAction ([192](#)) class reference.

TBasicActionLinkClass = Class of TBasicActionLink

TBasicActionLink ([196](#)) class reference.

TBitArray = Array[0..MaxBitRec-1] of cardinal

Array to store bits.

TCollectionItemClass = Class of TCollectionItem

TCollectionItemClass is used by the TCollection.ItemClass ([217](#)) property of TCollection ([213](#)) to identify the descendent class of TCollectionItem ([218](#)) which should be created and managed.

Table 2.4: Enumeration values for type TCollectionNotification

Value	Explanation
cnAdded	An item is added to the collection.
cnDeleting	An item is deleted from the collection.
cnExtracting	An item is extracted from the collection.

`TCollectionNotification = (cnAdded, cnExtracting, cnDeleting)`

`TCollectionNotification` is used in the `TCollection` (213) class to send notifications about changes to the collection.

`TComponentClass = Class of TComponent`

The `TComponentClass` type is used when constructing `TComponent` (220) descendent instances and when registering components.

`TComponentName = String`

Names of components are of type `TComponentName`. By specifying a different type, the Object inspector can handle this property differently than a standard string property.

`TComponentState= Set of (csLoading, csReading, csWriting, csDestroying, csDesigning, csAncestor, csUpdating, csFixups, csFreeNotification, csInline, csDesignInstance)`

Indicates the state of the component during the streaming process.

`TComponentStyle= Set of (csInheritable, csCheckPropAvail, csSubComponent, csTransient)`

Describes the style of the component.

`TCreateComponentEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;  
ComponentClass: TComponentClass;  
var Component: TComponent) of object`

Event handler type, occurs when a component instance must be created when a component is read from a stream.

`TDuplicates = (dupIgnore, dupAccept, dupError)`

Type to describe what to do with duplicate values in a `TStringlist` (282).

`TFilerFlag = (ffInherited, ffChildPos, ffInline)`

The `TFiler` class uses this enumeration type to decide whether the streamed object was streamed as part of an inherited form or not.

`TFilerFlags= Set of (ffChildPos, ffInherited, ffInline)`

Table 2.5: Enumeration values for type TDuplicates

Value	Explanation
dupAccept	Duplicate values can be added to the list.
dupError	If an attempt is made to add a duplicate value to the list, an EStringListError (182) exception is raised.
dupIgnore	Duplicate values will not be added to the list, but no error will be triggered.

Table 2.6: Enumeration values for type TFilerFlag

Value	Explanation
ffChildPos	The position of the child on it's parent is included.
ffInherited	Stored object is an inherited object.
ffInline	Used for frames.

Set of TFilerFlag (157)

```
TFindAncestorEvent = procedure(Writer: TWriter;Component: TComponent;
                               const Name: String;
                               var Ancestor: TComponent;
                               var RootAncestor: TComponent) of object
```

Event that occurs w

```
TFindComponentClassEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;
                                     const ClassName: String;
                                     var ComponentClass: TComponentClass)
                                     of object
```

Event handler type, occurs when a component class pointer must be found when reading a component from a stream.

```
TFindGlobalComponent = function(const Name: String) : TComponent
```

TFindGlobalComponent is a callback used to find a component in a global scope. It is used when the streaming system needs to find a component which is not part of the component which is currently being streamed. It should return the component with name Name, or Nil if none is found.

The variable FindGlobalComponent (168) is a callback of type TFindGlobalComponent. It can be set by the IDE when an unknown reference is found, to offer the designer to redirect the link to a new component.

```
TFindMethodEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;const MethodName: String;
                             var Address: Pointer;var Error: Boolean)
                             of object
```

If a TReader (261) instance needs to locate a method and it doesn't find it in the streamed form, then the OnFindMethod (269) event handler will be called, if one is installed. This event can be assigned in order to use different locating methods. If a method is found, then its address should be returned in Address. The Error should be set to True if the reader should raise an exception after the event was handled. If it is set to False no exception will be raised, even if no method was found. On entry, Error will be set to True.

`TGetChildProc = procedure(Child: TComponent) of object`

Callback used when obtaining child components.

`TGetStrProc = procedure(const S: String) of object`

This event is used as a callback to retrieve string values. It is used, among other things, to pass along string properties in property editors.

`THandle = System.THandle`

This type is used as the handle for `THandleStream` (244) stream descendents

`THelpContext = -MaxLongint..MaxLongint`

Range type to specify help contexts.

`THelpEvent = function(Command: Word;Data: LongInt;var CallHelp: Boolean)  
: Boolean of object`

This event is used for display of online help.

`THelpType = (htKeyword,htContext)`

Table 2.7: Enumeration values for type `THelpType`

Value	Explanation
<code>htContext</code>	Help type: Context ID help.
<code>htKeyword</code>	Help type: Keyword help

Enumeration type specifying the kind of help requested.

`TIdentMapEntry = record  
  Value : Integer;  
  Name : String;  
end`

`TIdentMapEntry` is used internally by the `IdentToInt` (170) and `IntToIdent` (171) calls to store the mapping between the identifiers and the integers they represent.

`TIdentToInt = function(const Ident: String;var Int: LongInt) : Boolean`

`TIdentToInt` is a callback used to look up identifiers (`Ident`) and return an integer value corresponding to this identifier (`Int`). The callback should return `True` if a value corresponding to integer `Ident` was found, `False` if not.

A callback of type `TIdentToInt` should be specified when an integer is registered using the `RegisterIntegerConsts` (176) call.

```
TInitComponentHandler = function(Instance: TComponent;
                                RootAncestor: TClass) : Boolean
```

TInitComponentHandler is a callback type. It is used in the InitInheritedComponent (??) call to initialize a component. Callbacks of this type are registered with the RegisterInitComponentHandler (175) call.

```
TIntToIdent = function(Int: LongInt;var Ident: String) : Boolean
```

TIdentToInt is a callback used to look up integers (Ident) and return an identifier (Ident) that can be used to represent this integer value in an IDE. The callback should return True if a value corresponding to integer Ident was found, False if not.

A callback of type TIntToIdent should be specified when an integer is registered using the RegisterIntegerConsts (176) call.

```
TListNotification = (lnAdded,lnExtracted,lnDeleted)
```

Table 2.8: Enumeration values for type TListNotification

Value	Explanation
lnAdded	List change notification: Element added to the list.
lnDeleted	List change notification: Element deleted from the list.
lnExtracted	List change notification: Element extracted from the list.

Kind of list notification event.

```
TListSortCompare = function(Item1: Pointer;Item2: Pointer) : Integer
```

Callback type for the list sort algorithm.

```
TNotifyEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject) of object
```

Most event handlers are implemented as a property of type TNotifyEvent. When this is set to a certain method of a class, when the event occurs, the method will be called, and the class that generated the event will pass itself along as the Sender argument.

```
TOperation = (opInsert,opRemove)
```

Table 2.9: Enumeration values for type TOperation

Value	Explanation
opInsert	A new component is being inserted in the child component list.
opRemove	A component is being removed from the child component list.

Operation of which a component is notified.

```
TPersistentClass = Class of TPersistent
```

TPersistentClass is the class reference type for the TPersistent (260) class.

```
TPoint = Types.TPoint
```

This record describes a coordinate. It is used to handle the Top (220) and Left (220) properties of TComponent (220).

X represents the X-Coordinate of the point described by the record. Y represents the Y-Coordinate of the point described by the record.

```
TPointerList = Array[0..MaxListSize-1] of Pointer
```

Type for an Array of pointers.

```
TPropertyNotFoundEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;
                                   Instance: TPersistent;
                                   var PropName: String; IsPath: Boolean;
                                   var Handled: Boolean;
                                   var Skip: Boolean) of object
```

TPropertyNotFoundEvent is the prototype for the TReader.OnPropertyNotFound (268) event. Reader is the sender of the event, Instance is the instance that is being streamed. PropInfo is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being read. Handled should be set to True if the handler redirected the unknown property successfully, and Skip should be set to True if the value should be skipped. IsPath determines whether the property refers to a sub-property.

```
TReadComponentsProc = procedure(Component: TComponent) of object
```

Callback type when reading a component from a stream

```
TReaderError = procedure(Reader: TReader; const Message: String;
                        var Handled: Boolean) of object
```

Event handler type, called when an error occurs during the streaming.

```
TReaderProc = procedure(Reader: TReader) of object
```

The TReaderProc reader procedure is a callback procedure which will be used by a TPersistent (260) descendent to read user properties from a stream during the streaming process. The Reader argument is the writer object which can be used read properties from the stream.

```
TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent = procedure(Sender: TObject;
                                           const Instance: TPersistent;
                                           PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                                           var Content: String) of object
```

TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent is the prototype for the TReader.OnReadStringProperty (270) event handler. Reader is the sender of the event, Instance is the instance that is being streamed. PropInfo is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being read. Content is the string as it was read from the stream.

```
TRect = Types.TRect
```

TRect describes a rectangle in space with its upper-left (in (Top,Left>)) and lower-right (in (Bottom,Right)) corners.

TReferenceNameEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;var Name: String)  
of object

Occurs when a named object needs to be looked up.

TSeekOrigin = (soBeginning,soCurrent,soEnd)

Table 2.10: Enumeration values for type TSeekOrigin

Value	Explanation
soBeginning	Offset is interpreted relative to the start of the stream.
soCurrent	Offset is interpreted relative to the current position in the stream.
soEnd	Offset is interpreted relative to the end of the stream.

Specifies the origin of the TStream.Seek (275) method.

TSetMethodPropertyEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;  
Instance: TPersistent;  
PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const TheMethodName: String;  
var Handled: Boolean) of object

TSetMethodPropertyEvent is the prototype for the TReader.OnSetMethodProperty (269) event. Reader is the sender of the event, Instance is the instance that is being streamed. PropInfo is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being read, and TheMethodName is the name of the method that the property should be set to. Handled should be set to True if the handler set the property successfully.

TSetNameEvent = procedure(Reader: TReader;Component: TComponent;  
var Name: String) of object

Occurs when the reader needs to set a component's name.

TShiftState= Set of (ssShift,ssAlt,ssCtrl,ssLeft,ssRight,ssMiddle,  
ssDouble,ssMeta,ssSuper,ssHyper,ssAltGr,ssCaps,  
ssNum,ssScroll,ssTriple,ssQuad)

This type is used when describing a shortcut key or when describing what special keys are pressed on a keyboard when a key event is generated.

The set contains the special keys that can be used in combination with a 'normal' key.

TShiftStateEnum = (ssShift,ssAlt,ssCtrl,ssLeft,ssRight,ssMiddle,  
ssDouble,ssMeta,ssSuper,ssHyper,ssAltGr,ssCaps,ssNum,  
ssScroll,ssTriple,ssQuad)

Keyboard/Mouse shift state enumerator

Table 2.11: Enumeration values for type TShiftStateEnum

Value	Explanation
ssAlt	Alt key pressed
ssAltGr	Alt-GR key pressed.
ssCaps	Caps lock key pressed
ssCtrl	Ctrl key pressed
ssDouble	Double mouse click.
ssHyper	Hyper key pressed.
ssLeft	Left mouse button pressed.
ssMeta	Meta key pressed.
ssMiddle	Middle mouse button pressed.
ssNum	Num lock key pressed
ssQuad	Quadruple mouse click
ssRight	Right mouse button pressed.
ssScroll	Scroll lock key pressed
ssShift	Shift key pressed
ssSuper	Super key pressed.
ssTriple	Triple mouse click

```
TShortCut = ( Word )..High ( Word )
```

Enumeration type to identify shortcut key combinations.

```
TSmallPoint = Windows.TSmallPoint
```

Same as TPoint ([161](#)), only the X and Y ranges are limited to 2-byte integers instead of 4-byte integers.

```
TStreamProc = procedure(Stream: TStream) of object
```

Procedure type used in streaming.

```
TStringItem = record
  FString : String;
  FObject : TObject;
end
```

The TStringItem is used to store the string and object items in a TStringList ([282](#)) string list instance. It should never be used directly.

```
TStringItemList = Array[0..MaxListSize] of TStringItem
```

This declaration is provided for Delphi compatibility, it is not used in Free Pascal.

```
TStringListSortCompare = function(List: TStringList;Index1: Integer;
                                   Index2: Integer) : Integer
```

Callback type used in stringlist compares.



`TSynchronizeProcVar` = procedure

Synchronize callback type

`TThreadMethod` = procedure of object

Procedure variable used when synchronizing threads.

`TThreadPriority` = (tpIdle, tpLowest, tpLower, tpNormal, tpHigher, tpHighest, tpTimeCritical)

Table 2.12: Enumeration values for type `TThreadPriority`

Value	Explanation
tpHigher	Thread runs at high priority
tpHighest	Thread runs at highest possible priority.
tpIdle	Thread only runs when other processes are idle.
tpLower	Thread runs at a lower priority.
tpLowest	Thread runs at the lowest priority.
tpNormal	Thread runs at normal process priority.
tpTimeCritical	Thread runs at realtime priority.

Enumeration specifying the priority at which a thread runs.

`TValueType` = (vaNull, vaList, vaInt8, vaInt16, vaInt32, vaExtended, vaString, vaIdent, vaFalse, vaTrue, vaBinary, vaSet, vaLString, vaNil, vaCollection, vaSingle, vaCurrency, vaDate, vaWString, vaInt64, vaUTF8String)

Enumerated type used to identify the kind of streamed property

`TWriteMethodPropertyEvent` = procedure(Writer: TWriter;  
Instance: TPersistent;  
PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const MethodValue: TMethod;  
const DefMethodCodeValue: Pointer;  
var Handled: Boolean) of object

`TWriteMethodPropertyEvent` is the prototype for the `TWriter.OnWriteMethodProperty` (312) event. `Writer` is the sender of the event, `Instance` is the instance that is being streamed. `PropInfo` is a pointer to the RTTI information for the property being written, and `MethodValue` is the value of the method that the property was set to. `DefMethodCodeValue` is set to the default value of the property (Nil or the parent value). `Handled` should be set to `True` if the handler set the property successfully.

`TWriterProc` = procedure(Writer: TWriter) of object

The `TWriterProc` writer procedure is a callback procedure which will be used by a `TPersistent` (260) descendent to write user properties from a stream during the streaming process. The `Writer` argument is the writer object which can be used write properties to the stream.

Table 2.13: Enumeration values for type TValueType

Value	Explanation
vaBinary	Binary data follows.
vaCollection	Collection follows
vaCurrency	Currency value follows
vaDate	Date value follows
vaExtended	Extended value.
vaFalse	Boolean False value.
vaIdent	Identifier.
vaInt16	Integer value, 16 bits long.
vaInt32	Integer value, 32 bits long.
vaInt64	Integer value, 64 bits long.
vaInt8	Integer value, 8 bits long.
vaList	Identifies the start of a list of values
vaLString	Ansistring data follows.
vaNil	Nil pointer.
vaNull	Empty value. Ends a list.
vaSet	Set data follows.
vaSingle	Single type follows.
vaString	String value.
vaTrue	Boolean True value.
vaUTF8String	UTF8 encoded unicode string.
vaWString	Widestring value follows.

### 2.3.3 Variables

AddDataModule : procedure(DataModule: TDataModule) of object

AddDataModule can be set by an IDE or a streaming mechanism to receive notification when a new instance of a TDataModule (231) descendent is created.

ApplicationHandleException : procedure(Sender: TObject) of object

ApplicationHandleException can be set by an application object to handle any exceptions that may occur when a TDataModule (231) is created.

ApplicationShowException : procedure(E: Exception) of object

Unused.

MainThreadID : TThreadID

ID of main thread. Unused at this point.

RegisterComponentsProc : procedure(const Page: String;  
ComponentClasses: Array[] of TComponentClass)

RegisterComponentsProc can be set by an IDE to be notified when new components are being registered. Application programmers should never have to set RegisterComponentsProc

RegisterNoIconProc : procedure(ComponentClasses: Array[] of TComponentClass)

`RegisterNoIconProc` can be set by an IDE to be notified when new components are being registered, and which do not need an Icon in the component palette. Application programmers should never have to set `RegisterComponentsProc`

`RemoveDataModule` : `procedure(DataModule: TDataModule) of object`

`RemoveDataModule` can be set by an IDE or a streaming mechanism to receive notification when an instance of a `TDataModule` (231) descendent is freed.

`WakeMainThread` : `TNotifyEvent = nil`

`WakeMainThread` is called by the `TThread.synchronize` (303) call. It should alert the main program thread that a thread is waiting for synchronization. The call is executed by the thread, and should therefore NOT synchronize the thread, but should somehow signal the main thread that a thread is waiting for synchronization. For example, by sending a message.

## 2.4 Procedures and functions

### 2.4.1 ActivateClassGroup

Synopsis: Activates a class group

Declaration: `function ActivateClassGroup(AClass: TPersistentClass) : TPersistentClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `ActivateClassGroup` activates the group of classes to which `AClass` belongs. The function returns the class that was last used to activate the class group.

The class registration and streaming mechanism allows to organize the classes in groups. This allows an IDE to form groups of classes, which can be enabled or disabled. It is not needed at Run-Time.

Errors: If `AClass` does not belong to a class group, an exception is raised.

See also: `StartClassGroup` (177), `GroupDescendentsWith` (170), `ClassGroupOf` (167)

### 2.4.2 BeginGlobalLoading

Synopsis: Not yet implemented

Declaration: `procedure BeginGlobalLoading`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented

### 2.4.3 BinToHex

Synopsis: Convert a binary buffer to a hexadecimal string

Declaration: `procedure BinToHex(BinValue: PChar; HexValue: PChar; BinBufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `BinToHex` converts the byte values in `BinValue` to a string consisting of 2-character hexadecimal strings in `HexValue`. `BufSize` specifies the length of `BinValue`, which means that `HexValue` must have size  $2 * \text{BufSize}$ .

For example a buffer containing the byte values 255 and 0 will be converted to FF00.

**Errors:** No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `HexToBin` ([170](#))

## 2.4.4 Bounds

**Synopsis:** Returns a `TRect` structure with the bounding rect of the given location and size.

**Declaration:** `function Bounds(ALeft: Integer;ATop: Integer;AWidth: Integer;AHeight: Integer) : TRect`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Bounds` returns a `TRect` ([162](#)) record with the given origin (`ALeft`, `ATop`) and dimensions (`AWidth`, `AHeight`) filled in.

## 2.4.5 CheckSynchronize

**Synopsis:** Check whether there are any synchronize calls in the synchronize queue.

**Declaration:** `procedure CheckSynchronize(timeout: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CheckSynchronize` should be called regularly by the main application thread to handle any `TThread.synchronize` ([303](#)) calls that may be waiting for execution by the main thread.

See also: `TThread.synchronize` ([303](#))

## 2.4.6 ClassGroupOf

**Synopsis:** Returns the class group to which an instance or class belongs

**Declaration:** `function ClassGroupOf(AClass: TPersistentClass) : TPersistentClass`  
`function ClassGroupOf(Instance: TPersistent) : TPersistentClass`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ClassGroupOf` returns the class group to which `AClass` or `Instance` belongs.

**Errors:** The result is `Nil` if no matching class group is found.

See also: `StartClassGroup` ([177](#)), `ActivateClassGroup` ([166](#)), `GroupDescendentsWith` ([170](#))

## 2.4.7 CollectionsEqual

**Synopsis:** Returns `True` if two collections are equal.

**Declaration:** `function CollectionsEqual(C1: TCollection;C2: TCollection) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CollectionsEqual` is not yet implemented. It simply returns `False`

### 2.4.8 EndGlobalLoading

Synopsis: Not yet implemented.

Declaration: `procedure EndGlobalLoading`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Not yet implemented.

### 2.4.9 FindClass

Synopsis: Returns the class pointer of a class with given name.

Declaration: `function FindClass(const AClassName: String) : TPersistentClass`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `FindClass` searches for the class named `ClassName` in the list of registered classes and returns a class pointer to the definition. If no class with the given name could be found, an exception is raised.

The `GetClass` ([169](#)) function does not raise an exception when it does not find the class, but returns a `Nil` pointer instead.

See also: `RegisterClass` ([174](#)), `GetClass` ([169](#))

### 2.4.10 FindGlobalComponent

Synopsis: Callback used when a component must be found.

Declaration: `function FindGlobalComponent(const Name: String) : TComponent`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `FindGlobalComponent` is a callback of type `TFindGlobalComponent` ([158](#)). It can be set by the IDE when an unknown reference is found, to offer the user to redirect the link to a new component.

It is a callback used to find a component in a global scope. It is used when the streaming system needs to find a component which is not part of the component which is currently being streamed. It should return the component with name `Name`, or `Nil` if none is found.

See also: `TFindGlobalComponent` ([158](#))

### 2.4.11 FindNestedComponent

Synopsis: Finds the component with name path starting at the indicated root component.

Declaration: `function FindNestedComponent(Root: TComponent; const NamePath: String) : TComponent`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `FindNestedComponent` will descend through the list of owned components (starting at `Root`) and will return the component whose name path matches `NamePath`. As a path separator the characters `.` (dot), `-` (dash) and `>` (greater than) can be used

See also: `GlobalFixupReferences` ([169](#))

### 2.4.12 GetClass

Synopsis: Returns the class pointer of a class with given name.

Declaration: `function GetClass(const AClassName: String) : TPersistentClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetClass` searches for the class named `ClassName` in the list of registered classes and returns a class pointer to the definition. If no class with the given name could be found, `Nil` is returned.

The `FindClass` (168) function will raise an exception if it does not find the class.

See also: `RegisterClass` (174), `GetClass` (169)

### 2.4.13 GetFixupInstanceNames

Synopsis: Returns the names of elements that need to be resolved for the `root` component, whose reference contains `ReferenceRootName`

Declaration: `procedure GetFixupInstanceNames(Root: TComponent;  
const ReferenceRootName: String;  
Names: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFixupInstanceNames` examines the list of unresolved references and returns the names of classes that contain unresolved references to the `Root` component in the list `Names`. The list is not cleared prior to filling it.

See also: `GetFixupReferenceNames` (169), `GlobalFixupReferences` (169)

### 2.4.14 GetFixupReferenceNames

Synopsis: Returns the names of elements that need to be resolved for the `root` component.

Declaration: `procedure GetFixupReferenceNames(Root: TComponent; Names: TStrings)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFixupReferenceNames` examines the list of unresolved references and returns the names of properties that must be resolved for the component `Root` in the list `Names`. The list is not cleared prior to filling it.

See also: `GetFixupInstanceNames` (169), `GlobalFixupReferences` (169)

### 2.4.15 GlobalFixupReferences

Synopsis: Called to resolve unresolved references after forms are loaded.

Declaration: `procedure GlobalFixupReferences`

Visibility: default

Description: `GlobalFixupReferences` runs over the list of unresolved references and tries to resolve them. This routine should under normal circumstances not be called in an application programmer's code. It is called automatically by the streaming system after a component has been instantiated and its properties read from a stream. It will attempt to resolve references to other global components.

See also: `GetFixupReferenceNames` (169), `GetFixupInstanceNames` (169)

### 2.4.16 GroupDescendentsWith

Synopsis: Add class to the group of another class.

Declaration: `procedure GroupDescendentsWith(AClass: TPersistentClass;  
AClassGroup: TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GroupDescendentsWith` adds `AClass` to the group that `AClassGroup` belongs to. If `AClassGroup` belongs to more than 1 group, then it is added to the group which contains the nearest ancestor.

The class registration and streaming mechanism allows to organize the classes in groups. This allows an IDE to form groups of classes, which can be enabled or disabled. It is not needed at Run-Time.

Errors:

See also: `StartClassGroup` ([177](#)), `ActivateClassGroup` ([166](#)), `ClassGroupOf` ([167](#))

### 2.4.17 HexToBin

Synopsis: Convert a hexadecimal string to a binary buffer

Declaration: `function HexToBin(HexValue: PChar; BinValue: PChar; BinBufSize: Integer)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `HexToBin` scans the hexadecimal string representation in `HexValue` and transforms every 2 character hexadecimal number to a byte and stores it in `BinValue`. The buffer size is the size of the binary buffer. Scanning will stop if the size of the binary buffer is reached or when an invalid character is encountered. The return value is the number of stored bytes.

Errors: No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `BinToHex` ([166](#))

### 2.4.18 IdentToInt

Synopsis: Looks up an integer value in a integer-to-identifier map list.

Declaration: `function IdentToInt(const Ident: String; var Int: LongInt;  
const Map: Array[] of TIdentMapEntry) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IdentToInt` searches `Map` for an entry whose `Name` field matches `Ident` and returns the corresponding integer value in `Int`. If a match was found, the function returns `True`, otherwise, `False` is returned.

See also: `TIdentToInt` ([159](#)), `TIntToIdent` ([160](#)), `IntToIdent` ([171](#)), `TIdentMapEntry` ([159](#))

### 2.4.19 InitComponentRes

Synopsis: Provided for Delphi compatibility only

Declaration: `function InitComponentRes(const ResName: String; Instance: TComponent)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: This function is provided for Delphi compatibility. It always returns `false`.

See also: [ReadComponentRes \(173\)](#)

### 2.4.20 InitInheritedComponent

Synopsis: Initializes a component descending from `RootAncestor`

Declaration: `function InitInheritedComponent(Instance: TComponent;  
RootAncestor: TClass) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitInheritedComponent` should be called from a constructor to read properties of the component `Instance` from the streaming system. The `RootAncestor` class is the root class from which `Instance` is a descendent. This must be one of `TDataModule`, `TCustomForm` or `TFrame`. The function returns `True` if the properties were successfully read from a stream or `False` if some error occurred.

See also: [ReadComponentRes \(173\)](#), [ReadComponentResEx \(173\)](#), [ReadComponentResFile \(173\)](#)

### 2.4.21 IntToIdent

Synopsis: Looks up an identifier for an integer value in a identifier-to-integer map list.

Declaration: `function IntToIdent(Int: LongInt; var Ident: String;  
const Map: Array[] of TIdentMapEntry) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IdentToInt` searches `Map` for an entry whose `Value` field matches `Int` and returns the corresponding identifier in `Ident`. If a match was found, the function returns `True`, otherwise, `False` is returned.

See also: [TIdentToInt \(159\)](#), [TintToIdent \(160\)](#), [IdentToInt \(170\)](#), [TIdentMapEntry \(159\)](#)

### 2.4.22 LineStart

Synopsis: Finds the start of a line in `Buffer` before `BufPos`.

Declaration: `function LineStart(Buffer: PChar; BufPos: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `LineStart` reversely scans `Buffer` starting at `BufPos` for a linefeed character. It returns a pointer at the linefeed character.

### 2.4.23 NotifyGlobalLoading

Synopsis: Not yet implemented.

Declaration: `procedure NotifyGlobalLoading`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.



#### 2.4.24 ObjectBinaryToText

Synopsis: Converts an object stream from a binary to a text format.

Declaration: `procedure ObjectBinaryToText(Input: TStream;Output: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ObjectBinaryToText` reads an object stream in binary format from `Input` and writes the object stream in text format to `Output`. No components are instantiated during the process, this is a pure conversion routine.

See also: `ObjectTextToBinary` ([172](#))

#### 2.4.25 ObjectResourceToText

Synopsis: Converts an object stream from a (windows) resource to a text format.

Declaration: `procedure ObjectResourceToText(Input: TStream;Output: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ObjectResourceToText` reads the resource header from the `Input` stream and then passes the streams to `ObjectBinaryToText` ([172](#))

See also: `ObjectBinaryToText` ([172](#)), `ObjectTextToResource` ([172](#))

#### 2.4.26 ObjectTextToBinary

Synopsis: Converts an object stream from a text to a binary format.

Declaration: `procedure ObjectTextToBinary(Input: TStream;Output: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts an object stream from a text to a binary format.

#### 2.4.27 ObjectTextToResource

Synopsis: Converts an object stream from a text to a (windows) resource format.

Declaration: `procedure ObjectTextToResource(Input: TStream;Output: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ObjectTextToResource` reads an object stream in text format from `Input` and writes a resource stream to `Output`.

Note that for the current implementation of this method in Free Pascal, the output stream should support positioning. (e.g. it should not be a pipe)

See also: `ObjectBinaryToText` ([172](#)), `ObjectResourceToText` ([172](#))

### 2.4.28 Point

Synopsis: Returns a TPoint record with the given coordinates.

Declaration: `function Point(AX: Integer;AY: Integer) : TPoint`

Visibility: default

Description: Point returns a TPoint (161) record with the given coordinates AX and AY filled in.

See also: TPoint (161), SmallPoint (177), Rect (173), Bounds (167)

### 2.4.29 ReadComponentRes

Synopsis: Read component properties from a resource in the current module

Declaration: `function ReadComponentRes(const ResName: String;Instance: TComponent)  
: TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: This function is provided for Delphi compatibility. It always returns Nil.

### 2.4.30 ReadComponentResEx

Synopsis: Read component properties from a resource in the specified module

Declaration: `function ReadComponentResEx(HInstance: THandle;const ResName: String)  
: TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: This function is provided for Delphi compatibility. It always returns Nil.

### 2.4.31 ReadComponentResFile

Synopsis: Read component properties from a specified resource file

Declaration: `function ReadComponentResFile(const FileName: String;  
Instance: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: default

Description: ReadComponentResFile starts reading properties for Instance from the file FileName. It creates a filestream from FileName and then calls the TStream.ReadComponentRes (277) method to read the state of the component from the stream.

See also: TStream.ReadComponentRes (277), WriteComponentResFile (179)

### 2.4.32 Rect

Synopsis: Returns a TRect record with the given coordinates.

Declaration: `function Rect(ALeft: Integer;ATop: Integer;ARight: Integer;  
ABottom: Integer) : TRect`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Rect` returns a `TRect` (162) record with the given top-left (`ALeft`, `ATop`) and bottom-right (`ABottom`, `ARight`) corners filled in.

No checking is done to see whether the coordinates are valid.

See also: `TRect` (162), `Point` (173), `SmallPoint` (177), `Bounds` (167)

### 2.4.33 RedirectFixupReferences

**Synopsis:** Redirects references under the root object from `OldRootName` to `NewRootName`

**Declaration:** `procedure RedirectFixupReferences(Root: TComponent;  
const OldRootName: String;  
const NewRootName: String)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RedirectFixupReferences` examines the list of unresolved references and replaces references to a root object named `OldRootName` with references to root object `NewRootName`.

An application programmer should never need to call `RedirectFixupReferences`. This function can be used by an IDE to support redirection of broken component links.

See also: `RemoveFixupReferences` (177)

### 2.4.34 RegisterClass

**Synopsis:** Registers a class with the streaming system.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterClass(AClass: TPersistentClass)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterClass` registers the class `AClass` in the streaming system. After the class has been registered, it can be read from a stream when a reference to this class is encountered.

See also: `RegisterClasses` (175), `RegisterClassAlias` (174), `RegisterComponents` (175), `UnregisterClass` (178)

### 2.4.35 RegisterClassAlias

**Synopsis:** Registers a class alias with the streaming system.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterClassAlias(AClass: TPersistentClass;  
const Alias: String)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterClassAlias` registers a class alias in the streaming system. If a reference to a class `Alias` is encountered in a stream, then an instance of the class `AClass` will be created instead by the streaming code.

See also: `RegisterClass` (174), `RegisterClasses` (175), `RegisterComponents` (175), `UnregisterClass` (178)

### 2.4.36 RegisterClasses

Synopsis: Registers multiple classes with the streaming system.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterClasses(AClasses: Array[] of TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterClasses` registers the specified classes `AClass` in the streaming system. After the classes have been registered, they can be read from a stream when a reference to this class is encountered.

See also: `RegisterClass` ([174](#)), `RegisterClassAlias` ([174](#)), `RegisterComponents` ([175](#)), `UnregisterClass` ([178](#))

### 2.4.37 RegisterComponents

Synopsis: Registers components for the component palette.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterComponents(const Page: String;  
ComponentClasses: Array[] of TComponentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterComponents` registers the component on the appropriate component page. The component pages can be used by an IDE to display the known components so an application programmer may pick and use the components in his programs.

`Registercomponents` inserts the component class in the correct component page. If the `RegisterComponentsProc` procedure is set, this is called as well. Note that this behaviour is different from Delphi's behaviour where an exception will be raised if the procedural variable is not set.

See also: `RegisterClass` ([174](#)), `RegisterNoIcon` ([176](#))

### 2.4.38 RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc

Synopsis: Register a component searching handler

Declaration: `procedure RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc  
(AFindGlobalComponent: TFindGlobalComponent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc` registers a global component search callback `AFindGlobalComponent`. When `FindGlobalComponent` ([168](#)) is called, then this callback will be used to search for the component.

Errors: None.

See also: `FindGlobalComponent` ([168](#)), `UnRegisterFindGlobalComponentProc` ([178](#))

### 2.4.39 RegisterInitComponentHandler

Synopsis: Register a component initialization handler

Declaration: `procedure RegisterInitComponentHandler(ComponentClass: TComponentClass;  
Handler: TInitComponentHandler)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RegisterInitComponentHandler` registers a component initialization handler `Handler` for the component `ComponentClass`. This handler will be used to initialize descendents of `ComponentClass` in the `InitInheritedComponent` (171) call.

See also: `InitInheritedComponent` (171), `TInitComponentHandler` (160)

#### 2.4.40 RegisterIntegerConsts

**Synopsis:** Registers some integer-to-identifier mappings.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterIntegerConsts(IntegerType: Pointer;  
IdentToIntFn: TIdentToInt;  
IntToIdentFn: TIntToIdent)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterIntegerConsts` registers a pair of callbacks to be used when an integer of type `IntegerType` must be mapped to an identifier (using `IntToIdentFn`) or when an identifier must be mapped to an integer (using `IdentToIntFn`).

Component programmers can use `RegisterIntegerConsts` to associate a series of identifier strings with integer values for a property. A necessary condition is that the property should have a separate type declared using the `type integer` syntax. If a type of integer is defined in this way, an IDE can show symbolic names for the values of these properties.

The `IntegerType` should be a pointer to the type information of the integer type. The `IntToIdentFn` and `IdentToIntFn` are two callbacks that will be used when converting between the identifier and integer value and vice versa. The functions `IdentToInt` (170) and `IntToIdent` (171) can be used to implement these callback functions.

See also: `TIdentToInt` (159), `TIntToIdent` (160), `IdentToInt` (170), `IntToIdent` (171)

#### 2.4.41 RegisterNoIcon

**Synopsis:** Registers components that have no icon on the component palette.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterNoIcon(ComponentClasses: Array[] of TComponentClass)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RegisterNoIcon` performs the same function as `RegisterComponents` (175) except that it calls `RegisterNoIconProc` (166) instead of `RegisterComponentsProc` (165)

See also: `RegisterNoIconProc` (166), `RegisterComponents` (175)

#### 2.4.42 RegisterNonActiveX

**Synopsis:** Register non-activex component.

**Declaration:** `procedure RegisterNonActiveX  
(ComponentClasses: Array[] of TComponentClass;  
AxRegType: TActiveXRegType)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Not yet implemented in Free Pascal

### 2.4.43 RemoveFixupReferences

Synopsis: Removes references to rootname from the fixup list.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveFixupReferences(Root: TComponent; const RootName: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RemoveFixupReferences` examines the list of unresolved references and removes references to a root object pointing at `Root` or a root component named `RootName`.

An application programmer should never need to call `RemoveFixupReferences`. This function can be used by an IDE to support removal of broken component links.

See also: `RedirectFixupReferences` ([174](#))

### 2.4.44 RemoveFixups

Synopsis: Removes Instance from the fixup list.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveFixups(Instance: TPersistent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RemoveFixups` removes all entries for component `Instance` from the list of unresolved references.

See also: `RedirectFixupReferences` ([174](#)), `RemoveFixupReferences` ([177](#))

### 2.4.45 SmallPoint

Synopsis: Returns a `TSmallPoint` record with the given coordinates.

Declaration: `function SmallPoint(AX: SmallInt; AY: SmallInt) : TSmallPoint`

Visibility: default

Description: `SmallPoint` returns a `TSmallPoint` ([163](#)) record with the given coordinates `AX` and `AY` filled in.

See also: `TSmallPoint` ([163](#)), `Point` ([173](#)), `Rect` ([173](#)), `Bounds` ([167](#))

### 2.4.46 StartClassGroup

Synopsis: Start new class group.

Declaration: `procedure StartClassGroup(AClass: TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartClassGroup` starts a new class group and adds `AClass` to it.

The class registration and streaming mechanism allows to organize the classes in groups. This allows an IDE to form groups of classes, which can be enabled or disabled. It is not needed at Run-Time.

See also: `GroupDescendentsWith` ([170](#)), `ActivateClassGroup` ([166](#)), `ClassGroupOf` ([167](#))

### 2.4.47 UnRegisterClass

Synopsis: Unregisters a class from the streaming system.

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterClass(AClass: TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnregisterClass` removes the class `AClass` from the class definitions in the streaming system.

See also: `UnRegisterClasses` (178), `UnRegisterModuleClasses` (178), `RegisterClass` (174)

### 2.4.48 UnRegisterClasses

Synopsis: Unregisters multiple classes from the streaming system.

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterClasses(AClasses: Array[] of TPersistentClass)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnregisterClasses` removes the classes in `AClasses` from the class definitions in the streaming system.

### 2.4.49 UnregisterFindGlobalComponentProc

Synopsis: Remove a previously registered component searching handler.

Declaration: `procedure UnregisterFindGlobalComponentProc`  
`(AFindGlobalComponent: TFindGlobalComponent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnregisterFindGlobalComponentProc` unregisters the previously registered global component search callback `AFindGlobalComponent`. After this call, when `FindGlobalComponent` (168) is called, then this callback will be no longer be used to search for the component.

Errors: None.

See also: `FindGlobalComponent` (168), `RegisterFindGlobalComponentProc` (175)

### 2.4.50 UnRegisterModuleClasses

Synopsis: Unregisters classes registered by module.

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterModuleClasses(Module: HModule)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnRegisterModuleClasses` unregisters all classes which reside in the module `Module`. For each registered class, the definition pointer is checked to see whether it resides in the module, and if it does, the definition is removed.

See also: `UnRegisterClass` (178), `UnRegisterClasses` (178), `RegisterClasses` (175)

### 2.4.51 WriteComponentResFile

Synopsis: Write component properties to a specified resource file

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponentResFile(const FileName: String;  
Instance: TComponent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WriteComponentResFile` starts writing properties of `Instance` to the file `FileName`. It creates a filestream from `FileName` and then calls `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (278) method to write the state of the component to the stream.

See also: `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (278), `ReadComponentResFile` (173)

## 2.5 EBitsError

### 2.5.1 Description

When an index of a bit in a `TBits` (207) is out of the valid range (0 to `Count-1`) then a `EBitsError` exception is raised.

## 2.6 EClassNotFound

### 2.6.1 Description

When the streaming system needs to create a component, it looks for the class pointer (VMT) in the list of registered classes by its name. If this name is not found, then an `EClassNotFound` is raised.

## 2.7 EComponentError

### 2.7.1 Description

When an error occurs during the registration of a component, or when naming a component, then a `EComponentError` is raised. Possible causes are:

1. An name with an illegal character was assigned to a component.
2. A component with the same name and owner already exists.
3. The component registration system isn't set up properly.

## 2.8 EFCREATEError

### 2.8.1 Description

When the operating system reports an error during creation of a new file in the `Filestream Constructor` (237), a `EFCREATEError` is raised.



## 2.9 EFileError

### 2.9.1 Description

This class serves as an ancestor class for exceptions that are raised when an error occurs during component streaming. A `EFileError` exception is raised when a class is registered twice.

## 2.10 EOpenError

### 2.10.1 Description

When the operating system reports an error during the opening of a file in the `FileStream Constructor` (237), a `EOpenError` is raised.

## 2.11 EInvalidImage

### 2.11.1 Description

This exception is not used by Free Pascal but is provided for Delphi compatibility.

## 2.12 EInvalidOperation

### 2.12.1 Description

This exception is not used in Free Pascal, it is defined for Delphi compatibility purposes only.

## 2.13 EListError

### 2.13.1 Description

If an error occurs in one of the `TList` (246) or `TStrings` (287) methods, then a `EListError` exception is raised. This can occur in one of the following cases:

1. There is not enough memory to expand the list.
2. The list tried to grow beyond its maximal capacity.
3. An attempt was made to reduce the capacity of the list below the current element count.
4. An attempt was made to set the list count to a negative value.
5. A non-existent element of the list was referenced. (i.e. the list index was out of bounds)
6. An attempt was made to move an item to a position outside the list's bounds.

## 2.14 EMethodNotFound

### 2.14.1 Description

This exception is no longer used in the streaming system. This error is replaced by a `EReadError` (181).

## 2.15 EOutOfResources

### 2.15.1 Description

This exception is not used in Free Pascal, it is defined for Delphi compatibility purposes only.

## 2.16 EParserError

### 2.16.1 Description

When an error occurs during the parsing of a stream, an `EParserError` is raised. Usually this indicates that an invalid token was found on the input stream, or the token read from the stream wasn't the expected token.

## 2.17 EReadError

### 2.17.1 Description

If an error occurs when reading from a stream, a `EReadError` exception is raised. Possible causes for this are:

1. Not enough data is available when reading from a stream
2. The stream containing a component's data contains invalid data. this will occur only when reading a component from a stream.

## 2.18 EResNotFound

### 2.18.1 Description

This exception is not used by Free Pascal but is provided for Delphi compatibility.

## 2.19 EStreamError

### 2.19.1 Description

An `EStreamError` is raised when an error occurs during reading from or writing to a stream: Possible causes are

1. Not enough data is available in the stream.
2. Trying to seek beyond the beginning or end of the stream.
3. Trying to set the capacity of a memory stream and no memory is available.
4. Trying to write to a resource stream.

## 2.20 EStringListError

### 2.20.1 Description

When an error occurs in one of the methods of TStrings (287) then an EStringListError is raised. This can have one of the following causes:

1. There is not enough memory to expand the list.
2. The list tried to grow beyond its maximal capacity.
3. A non-existent element of the list was referenced. (i.e. the list index was out of bounds)
4. An attempt was made to add a duplicate entry to a TStringList (282) when TStringList.AllowDuplicates (282) is False.

## 2.21 EThread

### 2.21.1 Description

Thread error exception.

## 2.22 EThreadDestroyCalled

### 2.22.1 Description

Exception raised when a thread is destroyed illegally.

## 2.23 EWriteError

### 2.23.1 Description

If an error occurs when writing to a stream, a EWriteError exception is raised. Possible causes for this are:

1. The stream doesn't allow writing.
2. An error occurred when writing a property to a stream.

## 2.24 IStringsAdapter

### 2.24.1 Description

Is not yet supported in Free Pascal.

## 2.25 TAbstractObjectReader

### 2.25.1 Description

The Free Pascal streaming mechanism, while compatible with Delphi's mechanism, differs from it in the sense that the streaming mechanism uses a driver class when streaming components. The

`TAbstractObjectReader` class is the base driver class for reading property values from streams. It consists entirely of abstract methods, which must be implemented by descendent classes.

Different streaming mechanisms can be implemented by making a descendent from `TAbstractObjectReader`. The `TBinaryObjectReader` ([198](#)) class is such a descendent class, which streams data in binary (Delphi compatible) format.

All methods described in this class, mustbe implemented by descendent classes.

### 2.25.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">184</a>	<code>BeginComponent</code>	Marks the reading of a new component.
<a href="#">184</a>	<code>BeginProperty</code>	Marks the reading of a property value.
<a href="#">184</a>	<code>BeginRootComponent</code>	Starts the reading of the root component.
<a href="#">183</a>	<code>NextValue</code>	Returns the type of the next value in the stream.
<a href="#">184</a>	<code>ReadBinary</code>	Read binary data from the stream.
<a href="#">185</a>	<code>ReadDate</code>	Read a date value from the stream.
<a href="#">185</a>	<code>ReadFloat</code>	Read a float value from the stream.
<a href="#">186</a>	<code>ReadIdent</code>	Read an identifier from the stream.
<a href="#">187</a>	<code>ReadInt16</code>	Read a 16-bit integer from the stream.
<a href="#">187</a>	<code>ReadInt32</code>	Read a 32-bit integer from the stream.
<a href="#">187</a>	<code>ReadInt64</code>	Read a 64-bit integer from the stream.
<a href="#">186</a>	<code>ReadInt8</code>	Read an 8-bit integer from the stream.
<a href="#">188</a>	<code>ReadSet</code>	Reads a set from the stream.
<a href="#">185</a>	<code>ReadSingle</code>	Read a single (real-type) value from the stream.
<a href="#">188</a>	<code>ReadStr</code>	Read a shortstring from the stream
<a href="#">188</a>	<code>ReadString</code>	Read a string of type <code>StringType</code> from the stream.
<a href="#">183</a>	<code>ReadValue</code>	Reads the type of the next value.
<a href="#">189</a>	<code>SkipComponent</code>	Skip till the end of the component.
<a href="#">189</a>	<code>SkipValue</code>	Skip the current value.

### 2.25.3 `TAbstractObjectReader.NextValue`

Synopsis: Returns the type of the next value in the stream.

Declaration: `function NextValue : TValueType; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This function should return the type of the next value in the stream, but should not read it, i.e. the stream position should not be altered by this method. This is used to 'peek' in the stream what value is next.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue` ([183](#))

### 2.25.4 `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue`

Synopsis: Reads the type of the next value.

Declaration: `function ReadValue : TValueType; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This function returns the type of the next value in the stream and reads it. i.e. after the call to this method, the stream is positioned to read the value of the type returned by this function.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadValue` ([183](#))

### 2.25.5 `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginRootComponent`

Synopsis: Starts the reading of the root component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginRootComponent; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This function can be used to initialize the driver class for reading a component. It is called once at the beginning of the read process, and is immediately followed by a call to `BeginComponent` ([184](#)).

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent` ([184](#))

### 2.25.6 `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent`

Synopsis: Marks the reading of a new component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginComponent(var Flags: TFileFlags; var AChildPos: Integer;  
var CompClassName: String; var CompName: String)  
; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This method is called when the streaming process wants to start reading a new component.

Descendent classes should override this method to read the start of a component new component definition and return the needed arguments. `Flags` should be filled with any flags that were found at the component definition, as well as `AChildPos`. The `CompClassName` should be filled with the class name of the streamed component, and the `CompName` argument should be filled with the name of the component.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginRootComponent` ([184](#)), `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginProperty` ([184](#))

### 2.25.7 `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginProperty`

Synopsis: Marks the reading of a property value.

Declaration: `function BeginProperty : String; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeginProperty` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a new property. The return value of the function is the name of the property which can be read from the stream.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent` ([184](#))

### 2.25.8 `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadBinary`

Synopsis: Read binary data from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadBinary(const DestData: TMemoryStream); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `ReadBinary` is called when binary data should be read from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (183) returned a valuetype of `vaBinary`). The data should be stored in the `DestData` memory stream by descendent classes.

**See also:** `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (188)

### 2.25.9 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat

**Synopsis:** Read a float value from the stream.

**Declaration:** `function ReadFloat : Extended; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadFloat` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a float from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (183) returned a valuetype of `vaExtended`). The return value should be the value of the float.

**See also:** `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (188)

### 2.25.10 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle

**Synopsis:** Read a single (real-type) value from the stream.

**Declaration:** `function ReadSingle : Single; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadSingle` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a single-type float from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (183) returned a valuetype of `vaSingle`). The return value should be the value of the float.

**See also:** `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (188)

### 2.25.11 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate

**Synopsis:** Read a date value from the stream.

**Declaration:** `function ReadDate : TDateTime; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ReadDate` is called by the streaming system when it wants to read a date/time value from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (183) returned a valuetype of `vaDate`). The return value should be the date/time value. (This value can be stored as a float, since `TDateTime` is nothing but a float.)

See also: `TabstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (186), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (186), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (188)

### 2.25.12 `TabstractObjectReader.ReadIdent`

Synopsis: Read an identifier from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadIdent(ValueType: TValueType) : String; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadIdent` is called by the streaming system if it expects to read an identifier of type `ValueType` from the stream after a call to `ReadValue` (183) returned `vaIdent`. The identifier should be returned as a string. Note that in some cases the identifier does not actually have to be in the stream;

Table 2.14:

ValueType	Expected value
<code>vaIdent</code>	Read from stream.
<code>vaNil</code>	'Nil'. This does not have to be read from the stream.
<code>vaFalse</code>	'False'. This does not have to be read from the stream.
<code>vaTrue</code>	'True'. This does not have to be read from the stream.
<code>vaNull</code>	'Null'. This does not have to be read from the stream.

See also: `TabstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (185), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (186), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (188)

### 2.25.13 `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt8`

Synopsis: Read an 8-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt8 : ShortInt; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadInt8` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an integer value with a size of 8 bits (1 byte) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (183) returned a `valuetype` of `vaInt8`). The return value is the value if the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 1 byte.

See also: `TabstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (185), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (186), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (188)

### 2.25.14 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16

Synopsis: Read a 16-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt16 : SmallInt; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadInt16` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an integer value with a size of 16 bits (2 bytes) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (183) returned a valuetype of `vaInt16`). The return value is the value of the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 2 bytes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (188)

### 2.25.15 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32

Synopsis: Read a 32-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt32 : LongInt; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadInt32` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an integer value with a size of 32 bits (4 bytes) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (183) returned a valuetype of `vaInt32`). The return value is the value of the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 4 bytes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (188)

### 2.25.16 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64

Synopsis: Read a 64-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt64 : Int64; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadInt64` is called by the streaming process if it expects to read an `int64` value with a size of 64 bits (8 bytes) from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (183) returned a valuetype of `vaInt64`). The return value is the value of the integer. Note that the size of the value in the stream does not actually have to be 8 bytes.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (188)



### 2.25.17 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSet

Synopsis: Reads a set from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadSet(EnumType: Pointer) : Integer; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This method is called by the streaming system if it expects to read a set from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (183) returned a valuetype of `vaSet`). The return value is the contents of the set, encoded in a bitmask the following way:

For each (enumerated) value in the set, the bit corresponding to the ordinal value of the enumerated value should be set. i.e. as `1 shl ord(value)`.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (188)

### 2.25.18 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadStr

Synopsis: Read a shortstring from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadStr : String; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadStr` is called by the streaming system if it expects to read a shortstring from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (183) returned a valuetype of `vaLString`, `vaWstring` or `vaString`). The return value is the string.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadString` (188)

### 2.25.19 TAbstractObjectReader.ReadString

Synopsis: Read a string of type `StringType` from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadString(StringType: TValueType) : String; Virtual  
; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadStr` is called by the streaming system if it expects to read a string from the stream (i.e. after `ReadValue` (183) returned a valuetype of `vaLString`, `vaWstring` or `vaString`). The return value is the string.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadFloat` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadDate` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadSingle` (185), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadIdent` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt8` (186), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt16` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt32` (187), `TAbstractObjectReader.ReadInt64` (187), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadSet` (188), `TabstractObjectReader.ReadStr` (188)

### 2.25.20 TAbstractObjectReader.SkipComponent

Synopsis: Skip till the end of the component.

Declaration: `procedure SkipComponent(SkipComponentInfos: Boolean); Virtual  
; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: This method is used to skip the entire declaration of a component in the stream. Each descendent of `TAbstractObjectReader` should implement this in a way which is optimal for the implemented stream format.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.BeginComponent` ([184](#)), `TAbstractObjectReader.SkipValue` ([189](#))

### 2.25.21 TAbstractObjectReader.SkipValue

Synopsis: Skip the current value.

Declaration: `procedure SkipValue; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `SkipValue` should be used when skipping a value in the stream; The method should determine the type of the value which should be skipped by itself, if this is necessary.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader.SkipComponent` ([189](#))

## 2.26 TAbstractObjectWriter

### 2.26.1 Description

Abstract driver class for writing component data.

### 2.26.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">190</a>	<code>BeginCollection</code>	Start writing a collection.
<a href="#">190</a>	<code>BeginComponent</code>	Start writing a component
<a href="#">190</a>	<code>BeginList</code>	Start writing a list.
<a href="#">190</a>	<code>BeginProperty</code>	Start writing a property
<a href="#">190</a>	<code>EndList</code>	Mark the end of a list.
<a href="#">190</a>	<code>EndProperty</code>	Marks the end of writing of a property.
<a href="#">191</a>	<code>WriteBinary</code>	Writes binary data to the stream.
<a href="#">191</a>	<code>WriteBoolean</code>	Writes a boolean value to the stream.
<a href="#">191</a>	<code>WriteDate</code>	Writes a date type to the stream.
<a href="#">191</a>	<code>WriteFloat</code>	Writes a float value to the stream.
<a href="#">191</a>	<code>WriteIdent</code>	Writes an identifier to the stream.
<a href="#">192</a>	<code>WriteInteger</code>	Writes an integer value to the stream
<a href="#">192</a>	<code>WriteMethodName</code>	Writes a methodname to the stream.
<a href="#">192</a>	<code>WriteSet</code>	Writes a set value to the stream.
<a href="#">191</a>	<code>WriteSingle</code>	Writes a single-type real value to the stream.
<a href="#">192</a>	<code>WriteString</code>	Writes a string value to the stream.

### **2.26.3 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginCollection**

Synopsis: Start writing a collection.

Declaration: `procedure BeginCollection; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Start writing a collection.

### **2.26.4 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginComponent**

Synopsis: Start writing a component

Declaration: `procedure BeginComponent(Component: TComponent; Flags: TFilerFlags;  
ChildPos: Integer); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Start writing a component

### **2.26.5 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginList**

Synopsis: Start writing a list.

Declaration: `procedure BeginList; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Start writing a list.

### **2.26.6 TAbstractObjectWriter.EndList**

Synopsis: Mark the end of a list.

Declaration: `procedure EndList; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Mark the end of a list.

### **2.26.7 TAbstractObjectWriter.BeginProperty**

Synopsis: Start writing a property

Declaration: `procedure BeginProperty(const PropName: String); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Start writing a property

### **2.26.8 TAbstractObjectWriter.EndProperty**

Synopsis: Marks the end of writing of a property.

Declaration: `procedure EndProperty; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: Marks the end of writing of a property.

### **2.26.9 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBinary**

Synopsis: Writes binary data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBinary(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes binary data to the stream.

### **2.26.10 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteBoolean**

Synopsis: Writes a boolean value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBoolean(Value: Boolean); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a boolean value to the stream.

### **2.26.11 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteFloat**

Synopsis: Writes a float value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Value: Extended); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a float value to the stream.

### **2.26.12 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSingle**

Synopsis: Writes a single-type real value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSingle(const Value: Single); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a single-type real value to the stream.

### **2.26.13 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteDate**

Synopsis: Writes a date type to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Value: TDateTime); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a date type to the stream.

### **2.26.14 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteIdent**

Synopsis: Writes an identifier to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteIdent(const Ident: String); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes an identifier to the stream.

### **2.26.15 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteInteger**

Synopsis: Writes an integer value to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(Value: Int64); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes an integer value to the stream

### **2.26.16 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteMethodName**

Synopsis: Writes a methodname to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteMethodName(const Name: String); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a methodname to the stream.

### **2.26.17 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteSet**

Synopsis: Writes a set value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSet(Value: LongInt; SetType: Pointer); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a set value to the stream.

### **2.26.18 TAbstractObjectWriter.WriteString**

Synopsis: Writes a string value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Value: String); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Writes a string value to the stream.

## **2.27 TBasicAction**

### **2.27.1 Description**

`TBasicAction` implements a basic action class from which all actions are derived. It introduces all basic methods of an action, and implements functionality to maintain a list of clients, i.e. components that are connected with this action.

Do not create instances of `TBasicAction`. Instead, create a descendent class and create an instance of this class instead.

### 2.27.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">193</a>	Create	Creates a new instance of a TBasicAction ( <a href="#">192</a> ) class.
<a href="#">193</a>	Destroy	Destroys the action.
<a href="#">194</a>	Execute	Triggers the OnExecute ( <a href="#">196</a> ) event
<a href="#">194</a>	ExecuteTarget	Executes the action on the Target object
<a href="#">193</a>	HandlesTarget	Determines whether Target can be handled by this action
<a href="#">195</a>	RegisterChanges	Registers a new client with the action.
<a href="#">195</a>	UnRegisterChanges	Unregisters a client from the list of clients
<a href="#">195</a>	Update	Triggers the OnUpdate ( <a href="#">196</a> ) event
<a href="#">194</a>	UpdateTarget	Notify client controls when the action updates itself.

### 2.27.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">195</a>	ActionComponent	rw	Returns the component that initiated the action.
<a href="#">196</a>	OnExecute	rw	Event triggered when the action executes.
<a href="#">196</a>	OnUpdate	rw	Event triggered when the application is idle.

### 2.27.4 TBasicAction.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a TBasicAction ([192](#)) class.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Create calls the inherited constructor, and then initializes the list of clients controls (or action lists) by adding the AClient argument to the list of client controls.

Under normal circumstances it should not be necessary to create a TBasicAction descendent manually, actions are created in an IDE.

See also: TBasicAction.Destroy ([193](#)), TBasicAction.AssignClient ([192](#))

### 2.27.5 TBasicAction.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the action.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroy cleans up the list of client controls and then calls the inherited destructor.

An application programmer should not call Destroy directly; Instead Free should be called, if it needs to be called at all. Normally the controlling class (e.g. a TActionList) will destroy the action.

### 2.27.6 TBasicAction.HandlesTarget

Synopsis: Determines whether Target can be handled by this action

Declaration: `function HandlesTarget(Target: TObject) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `HandlesTarget` returns `True` if `Target` is a valid client for this action and if so, if it is in a suitable state to execute the action. An application programmer should never need to call `HandlesTarget` directly, it will be called by the action itself when needed.

In `TBasicAction` this method is empty; descendent classes should override this method to implement appropriate checks.

See also: `TBasicAction.UpdateTarget` ([194](#)), `TBasicAction.ExecuteTarget` ([194](#))

### 2.27.7 TBasicAction.UpdateTarget

**Synopsis:** Notify client controls when the action updates itself.

**Declaration:** `procedure UpdateTarget(Target: TObject); Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `UpdateTarget` should update the client control specified by `Target` when the action updates itself. In `TBasicAction`, the implementation of `UpdateTarget` is empty. Descendent classes should override and implement `UpdateTarget` to actually update the `Target` object.

An application programmer should never need to call `HandlesTarget` directly, it will be called by the action itself when needed.

See also: `TBasicAction.HandlesTarget` ([193](#)), `TBasicAction.ExecuteTarget` ([194](#))

### 2.27.8 TBasicAction.ExecuteTarget

**Synopsis:** Executes the action on the `Target` object

**Declaration:** `procedure ExecuteTarget(Target: TObject); Virtual`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `ExecuteTarget` performs the action on the `Target` object. In `TBasicAction` this method does nothing. Descendent classes should implement the action to be performed. For instance an action to post data in a dataset could call the `Post` method of the dataset.

An application programmer should never call `ExecuteTarget` directly.

See also: `TBasicAction.HandlesTarget` ([193](#)), `TBasicAction.ExecuteTarget` ([194](#)), `TBasicAction.Execute` ([194](#))

### 2.27.9 TBasicAction.Execute

**Synopsis:** Triggers the `OnExecute` ([196](#)) event

**Declaration:** `function Execute : Boolean; Dynamic`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Execute` triggers the `OnExecute` event, if one is assigned. It returns `True` if the event handler was called, `False` otherwise.

### 2.27.10 TBasicAction.RegisterChanges

Synopsis: Registers a new client with the action.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterChanges(Value: TBasicActionLink)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RegisterChanges` adds `Value` to the list of clients.

See also: `TBasicAction.UnregisterChanges` ([195](#))

### 2.27.11 TBasicAction.UnRegisterChanges

Synopsis: Unregisters a client from the list of clients

Declaration: `procedure UnRegisterChanges(Value: TBasicActionLink)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UnregisterChanges` removes `Value` from the list of clients. This is called for instance when the action is destroyed, or when the client is assigned a new action.

See also: `TBasicAction.UnregisterChanges` ([195](#)), `TBasicAction.Destroy` ([193](#))

### 2.27.12 TBasicAction.Update

Synopsis: Triggers the `OnUpdate` ([196](#)) event

Declaration: `function Update : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Update` triggers the `OnUpdate` event, if one is assigned. It returns `True` if the event was triggered, or `False` if no event was assigned.

Application programmers should never run `Update` directly. The `Update` method is called automatically by the action mechanism; Normally this is in the Idle time of an application. An application programmer should assign the `OnUpdate` ([196](#)) event, and perform any checks in that handler.

See also: `TBasicAction.OnUpdate` ([196](#)), `TBasicAction.Execute` ([194](#)), `TBasicAction.UpdateTarget` ([194](#))

### 2.27.13 TBasicAction.ActionComponent

Synopsis: Returns the component that initiated the action.

Declaration: `Property ActionComponent : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ActionComponent` is set to the component that caused the action to execute, e.g. a `toolbutton` or a `menu item`. The property is set just before the action executes, and is reset to `nil` after the action was executed.

See also: `TBasicAction.Execute` ([194](#)), `TBasicAction.OnExecute` ([196](#))



### 2.27.14 TBasicAction.OnExecute

Synopsis: Event triggered when the action executes.

Declaration: Property OnExecute : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnExecute is the event triggered when the action is activated (executed). The event is triggered e.g. when the user clicks e.g. on a menu item or a button associated to the action. The application programmer should provide a OnExecute event handler to execute whatever code is necessary when the button is pressed or the menu item is chosen.

Note that assigning an OnExecute handler will result in the Execute (194) method returning a True value. Predefined actions (such as dataset actions) will check the result of Execute and will not perform their normal task if the OnExecute handler was called.

See also: TBasicAction.Execute (194), TBasicAction.OnUpdate (196)

### 2.27.15 TBasicAction.OnUpdate

Synopsis: Event triggered when the application is idle.

Declaration: Property OnUpdate : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnUpdate is the event triggered when the application is idle, and the action is being updated. The OnUpdate event can be used to set the state of the action, for instance disable it if the action cannot be executed at this point in time.

See also: TBasicAction.Update (195), TBasicAction.OnExecute (196)

## 2.28 TBasicActionLink

### 2.28.1 Description

TBasicActionLink links an Action to its clients. With each client for an action, a TBasicActionLink class is instantiated to handle the communication between the action and the client. It passes events between the action and its clients, and thus presents the action with a uniform interface to the clients.

An application programmer should never use a TBasicActionLink instance directly; They are created automatically when an action is associated with a component. Component programmers should create specialized descendents of TBasicActionLink which communicate changes in the action to the component.

### 2.28.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">197</a>	Create	Creates a new instance of the TBasicActionLink class
<a href="#">197</a>	Destroy	Destroys the TBasicActionLink instance.
<a href="#">197</a>	Execute	Calls the action's Execute method.
<a href="#">198</a>	Update	Calls the action's Update method

### 2.28.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">198</a>	Action	rw	The action to which the link was assigned.
<a href="#">198</a>	OnChange	rw	Event handler triggered when the action's properties change

### 2.28.4 TBasicActionLink.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the TBasicActionLink class

Declaration: constructor `Create(AClient: TObject); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of a TBasicActionLink and assigns `AClient` as the client of the link.

Application programmers should never instantiate TBasicActionLink classes directly. An instance is created automatically when an action is assigned to a control (client).

Component programmers can override the create constructor to initialize further properties.

See also: TBasicActionLink.Destroy ([197](#))

### 2.28.5 TBasicActionLink.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TBasicActionLink instance.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` unregisters the TBasicActionLink with the action, and then calls the inherited destructor.

Application programmers should never call `Destroy` directly. If a link should be destroyed at all, the `Free` method should be called instead.

See also: TBasicActionLink.Create ([197](#))

### 2.28.6 TBasicActionLink.Execute

Synopsis: Calls the action's `Execute` method.

Declaration: function `Execute(AComponent: TComponent) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Execute` sets the `ActionComponent` ([195](#)) property of the associated Action ([198](#)) to `AComponent` and then calls the Action's `execute` ([194](#)) method. After the action has executed, the `ActionComponent` property is cleared again.

The return value of the function is the return value of the Action's `execute` method.

Application programmers should never call `Execute` directly. This method will be called automatically when the associated control is activated. (e.g. a button is clicked on)

Component programmers should call `Execute` whenever the action should be activated.

See also: TBasicActionLink.Action ([198](#)), TBasicAction.ActionComponent ([195](#)), TBasicAction.Execute ([194](#)), TBasicAction.onExecute ([196](#))

### 2.28.7 TBasicActionLink.Update

Synopsis: Calls the action's Update method

Declaration: `function Update : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Update calls the associated Action's Update ([195](#)) method.

Component programmers can override the Update method to provide additional processing when the Update method occurs.

### 2.28.8 TBasicActionLink.Action

Synopsis: The action to which the link was assigned.

Declaration: `Property Action : TBasicAction`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: Action represents the Action ([192](#)) which was assigned to the client. Setting this property will unregister the client at the old action (if one existed) and registers the client at the new action.

See also: TBasicAction ([192](#))

### 2.28.9 TBasicActionLink.OnChange

Synopsis: Event handler triggered when the action's properties change

Declaration: `Property OnChange : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnChange is the event triggered when the action's properties change.

Application programmers should never need to assign this event. Component programmers can assign this event to have a client control reflect any changes in an Action's properties.

See also: TBasicActionLink.Change ([196](#)), TBasicAction.Change ([192](#))

## 2.29 TBinaryObjectReader

### 2.29.1 Description

The TBinaryObjectReader class reads component data stored in binary form in a file. For this, it overrides or implements all abstract methods from TAbstractObjectReader ([182](#)). No new functionality is added by this class, it is a driver class for the streaming system.

**2.29.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">200</a>	<code>BeginComponent</code>	Start reading a component.
<a href="#">200</a>	<code>BeginProperty</code>	Start reading a property.
<a href="#">200</a>	<code>BeginRootComponent</code>	Start reading the root component.
<a href="#">199</a>	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new binary data reader instance.
<a href="#">199</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the binary data reader.
<a href="#">200</a>	<code>NextValue</code>	Return the type of the next value.
<a href="#">201</a>	<code>ReadBinary</code>	Start reading a binary value.
<a href="#">201</a>	<code>ReadDate</code>	Read a date.
<a href="#">201</a>	<code>ReadFloat</code>	Read a float value
<a href="#">201</a>	<code>ReadIdent</code>	Read an identifier
<a href="#">202</a>	<code>ReadInt16</code>	Read a 16-bits integer.
<a href="#">202</a>	<code>ReadInt32</code>	Read a 32-bits integer.
<a href="#">202</a>	<code>ReadInt64</code>	Read a 64-bits integer.
<a href="#">202</a>	<code>ReadInt8</code>	Read an 8-bits integer.
<a href="#">203</a>	<code>ReadSet</code>	Read a set
<a href="#">201</a>	<code>ReadSingle</code>	Read a single-size float value
<a href="#">203</a>	<code>ReadStr</code>	Read a short string
<a href="#">203</a>	<code>ReadString</code>	Read a string
<a href="#">200</a>	<code>ReadValue</code>	Read the next value in the stream
<a href="#">203</a>	<code>SkipComponent</code>	Skip a component's data
<a href="#">203</a>	<code>SkipValue</code>	Skip a value's data

**2.29.3 TBinaryObjectReader.Create**

Synopsis: Creates a new binary data reader instance.

Declaration: constructor `Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new binary component data reader. The `Stream` stream is the stream from which data will be read. The `BufSize` argument is the size of the internal buffer that will be used by the reader. This can be used to optimize the reading process.

See also: `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

**2.29.4 TBinaryObjectReader.Destroy**

Synopsis: Destroys the binary data reader.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` frees the buffer allocated when the instance was created. It also positions the stream on the last used position in the stream (the buffering may cause the reader to read more bytes than were actually used.)

See also: `TBinaryObjectReader.Create` ([199](#))

**2.29.5 TBinaryObjectReader.NextValue**

Synopsis: Return the type of the next value.

Declaration: `function NextValue : TValueType; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NextValue` returns the type of the next value in a binary stream, but does not read the value.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

**2.29.6 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadValue**

Synopsis: Read the next value in the stream

Declaration: `function ReadValue : TValueType; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `NextValue` reads the next value in a binary stream and returns the type of the read value.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

**2.29.7 TBinaryObjectReader.BeginRootComponent**

Synopsis: Start reading the root component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginRootComponent; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeginRootComponent` starts reading the root component in a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

**2.29.8 TBinaryObjectReader.BeginComponent**

Synopsis: Start reading a component.

Declaration: `procedure BeginComponent(var Flags: TFileFlags; var AChildPos: Integer;  
var CompClassName: String; var CompName: String)  
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

**2.29.9 TBinaryObjectReader.BeginProperty**

Synopsis: Start reading a property.

Declaration: `function BeginProperty : String; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### 2.29.10 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadBinary

Synopsis: Start reading a binary value.

Declaration: `procedure ReadBinary(const DestData: TMemoryStream); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadBinary` reads a binary value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### 2.29.11 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadFloat

Synopsis: Read a float value

Declaration: `function ReadFloat : Extended; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadFloat` reads a float value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### 2.29.12 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSingle

Synopsis: Read a single-size float value

Declaration: `function ReadSingle : Single; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadSingle` reads a single-sized float value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### 2.29.13 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadDate

Synopsis: Read a date.

Declaration: `function ReadDate : TDateTime; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadDate` reads a date value from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### 2.29.14 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadIdent

Synopsis: Read an identifier

Declaration: `function ReadIdent(ValueType: TValueType) : String; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadIdent` reads an identifier from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### **2.29.15 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt8**

Synopsis: Read an 8-bits integer.

Declaration: `function ReadInt8 : ShortInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read8Int` reads an 8-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### **2.29.16 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt16**

Synopsis: Read a 16-bits integer.

Declaration: `function ReadInt16 : SmallInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read16Int` reads a 16-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### **2.29.17 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt32**

Synopsis: Read a 32-bits integer.

Declaration: `function ReadInt32 : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read32Int` reads a 32-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### **2.29.18 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadInt64**

Synopsis: Read a 64-bits integer.

Declaration: `function ReadInt64 : Int64; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read64Int` reads a 64-bits signed integer from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### 2.29.19 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadSet

Synopsis: Read a set

Declaration: `function ReadSet(EnumType: Pointer) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadSet` reads a set from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### 2.29.20 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadStr

Synopsis: Read a short string

Declaration: `function ReadStr : String; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadStr` reads a short string from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### 2.29.21 TBinaryObjectReader.ReadString

Synopsis: Read a string

Declaration: `function ReadString(StringType: TValueType) : String; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadStr` reads a string of type `StringType` from a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

### 2.29.22 TBinaryObjectReader.SkipComponent

Synopsis: Skip a component's data

Declaration: `procedure SkipComponent(SkipComponentInfos: Boolean); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `SkipComponent` skips the data of a component in a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#)).

### 2.29.23 TBinaryObjectReader.SkipValue

Synopsis: Skip a value's data

Declaration: `procedure SkipValue; Override`

Visibility: public



Description: `SkipComponent` skips the data of the next value in a binary stream.

This method is simply the implementation for a binary stream of the abstract method introduced in `TAbstractObjectReader` ([182](#))

## 2.30 TBinaryObjectWriter

### 2.30.1 Description

Driver class which stores component data in binary form.

### 2.30.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">205</a>	<code>BeginCollection</code>	Start writing a collection.
<a href="#">205</a>	<code>BeginComponent</code>	Start writing a component
<a href="#">205</a>	<code>BeginList</code>	Start writing a list.
<a href="#">205</a>	<code>BeginProperty</code>	Start writing a property
<a href="#">204</a>	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new instance of a binary object writer.
<a href="#">204</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys an instance of the binary object writer.
<a href="#">205</a>	<code>EndList</code>	Mark the end of a list.
<a href="#">205</a>	<code>EndProperty</code>	Marks the end of writing of a property.
<a href="#">205</a>	<code>WriteBinary</code>	Writes binary data to the stream.
<a href="#">206</a>	<code>WriteBoolean</code>	Writes a boolean value to the stream.
<a href="#">206</a>	<code>WriteDate</code>	Writes a date type to the stream.
<a href="#">206</a>	<code>WriteFloat</code>	Writes a float value to the stream.
<a href="#">206</a>	<code>WriteIdent</code>	Writes an identifier to the stream.
<a href="#">206</a>	<code>WriteInteger</code>	Writes an integer value to the stream.
<a href="#">206</a>	<code>WriteMethodName</code>	Writes a methodname to the stream.
<a href="#">207</a>	<code>WriteSet</code>	Writes a set value to the stream.
<a href="#">206</a>	<code>WriteSingle</code>	Writes a single-type real value to the stream.
<a href="#">207</a>	<code>WriteString</code>	Writes a string value to the stream.

### 2.30.3 TBinaryObjectWriter.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a binary object writer.

Declaration: constructor `Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new instance of a binary object writer.

### 2.30.4 TBinaryObjectWriter.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys an instance of the binary object writer.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys an instance of the binary object writer.

### **2.30.5 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginCollection**

Synopsis: Start writing a collection.

Declaration: `procedure BeginCollection; Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.6 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginComponent**

Synopsis: Start writing a component

Declaration: `procedure BeginComponent(Component: TComponent; Flags: TFilerFlags;  
ChildPos: Integer); Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.7 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginList**

Synopsis: Start writing a list.

Declaration: `procedure BeginList; Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.8 TBinaryObjectWriter.EndList**

Synopsis: Mark the end of a list.

Declaration: `procedure EndList; Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.9 TBinaryObjectWriter.BeginProperty**

Synopsis: Start writing a property

Declaration: `procedure BeginProperty(const PropName: String); Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.10 TBinaryObjectWriter.EndProperty**

Synopsis: Marks the end of writing of a property.

Declaration: `procedure EndProperty; Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.11 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBinary**

Synopsis: Writes binary data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBinary(const Buffer; Count: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.12 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteBoolean**

Synopsis: Writes a boolean value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBoolean(Value: Boolean); Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.13 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteFloat**

Synopsis: Writes a float value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Value: Extended); Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.14 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSingle**

Synopsis: Writes a single-type real value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSingle(const Value: Single); Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.15 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteDate**

Synopsis: Writes a date type to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Value: TDateTime); Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.16 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteIdent**

Synopsis: Writes an identifier to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteIdent(const Ident: String); Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.17 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteInteger**

Synopsis: Writes an integer value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(Value: Int64); Override`

Visibility: `public`

### **2.30.18 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteMethodName**

Synopsis: Writes a methodname to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteMethodName(const Name: String); Override`

Visibility: `public`

### 2.30.19 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteSet

Synopsis: Writes a set value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSet(Value: LongInt; SetType: Pointer); Override`

Visibility: `public`

### 2.30.20 TBinaryObjectWriter.WriteString

Synopsis: Writes a string value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Value: String); Override`

Visibility: `public`

## 2.31 TBits

### 2.31.1 Description

`TBits` can be used to store collections of bits in an indexed array. This is especially useful for storing collections of booleans: Normally the size of a boolean is the size of the smallest enumerated type, i.e. 1 byte. Since a bit can take 2 values it can be used to store a boolean as well. Since `TBits` can store 8 bits in a byte, it takes 8 times less space to store an array of booleans in a `TBits` class then it would take to store them in a conventional array.

`TBits` introduces methods to store and retrieve bit values, apply masks, and search for bits.

### 2.31.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">209</a>	<code>AndBits</code>	Performs an <code>and</code> operation on the bits.
<a href="#">209</a>	<code>Clear</code>	Clears a particular bit.
<a href="#">209</a>	<code>Clearall</code>	Clears all bits in the array.
<a href="#">208</a>	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new bits collection.
<a href="#">208</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys a bit collection
<a href="#">211</a>	<code>Equals</code>	Determines whether the bits of 2 arrays are equal.
<a href="#">211</a>	<code>FindFirstBit</code>	Find first bit with a particular value
<a href="#">212</a>	<code>FindNextBit</code>	Searches the next bit with a particular value.
<a href="#">212</a>	<code>FindPrevBit</code>	Searches the previous bit with a particular value.
<a href="#">210</a>	<code>Get</code>	Retrieve the value of a particular bit
<a href="#">208</a>	<code>GetFSize</code>	Returns the number of records used to store the bits.
<a href="#">211</a>	<code>Grow</code>	Expands the bits array to the requested size.
<a href="#">210</a>	<code>NotBits</code>	Performs a <code>not</code> operation on the bits.
<a href="#">212</a>	<code>OpenBit</code>	Returns the position of the first bit that is set to <code>False</code> .
<a href="#">209</a>	<code>OrBits</code>	Performs an <code>or</code> operation on the bits.
<a href="#">211</a>	<code>SetIndex</code>	Sets the start position for <code>FindNextBit</code> ( <a href="#">212</a> ) and <code>FindPrevBit</code> ( <a href="#">212</a> )
<a href="#">208</a>	<code>SetOn</code>	Turn a particular bit on.
<a href="#">210</a>	<code>XorBits</code>	Performs a <code>xor</code> operation on the bits.

### 2.31.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">213</a>	<code>Bits</code>	<code>rw</code>	Access to all bits in the array.
<a href="#">213</a>	<code>Size</code>	<code>rw</code>	Current size of the array of bits.

### 2.31.4 TBits.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new bits collection.

Declaration: constructor `Create(TheSize: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new bit collection with initial size `TheSize`. The size of the collection can be changed later on.

All bits are initially set to zero.

See also: `TBits.Destroy` ([208](#))

### 2.31.5 TBits.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys a bit collection

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` destroys a previously created bit collection and releases all memory used to store the bit collection.

`Destroy` should never be called directly, `Free` should be used instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBits.Create` ([208](#))

### 2.31.6 TBits.GetFSize

Synopsis: Returns the number of records used to store the bits.

Declaration: function `GetFSize : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `GetFSize` returns the number of records used to store the current number of bits.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBits.Size` ([213](#))

### 2.31.7 TBits.SetOn

Synopsis: Turn a particular bit on.

Declaration: procedure `SetOn(Bit: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetOn` turns on the bit at position `bit`, i.e. sets it to 1. If `bit` is at a position bigger than the current size, the collection is expanded to the required size using `Grow` ([211](#)).

Errors: If `bit` is larger than the maximum allowed bits array size or is negative, an `EBitsError` ([179](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TBits.Bits` ([213](#)), `TBits.clear` ([209](#))

### 2.31.8 TBits.Clear

Synopsis: Clears a particular bit.

Declaration: `procedure Clear(Bit: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` clears the bit at position `bit`. If the array `bit` is at a position bigger than the current size, the collection is expanded to the required size using `Grow` (211).

Errors: If `bit` is larger than the maximum allowed bits array size or is negative, an `EBitsError` (179) exception is raised.

See also: `TBits.Bits` (213), `TBits.clear` (209)

### 2.31.9 TBits.Clearall

Synopsis: Clears all bits in the array.

Declaration: `procedure Clearall`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ClearAll` clears all bits in the array, i.e. sets them to zero. `ClearAll` works faster than clearing all individual bits, since it uses the packed nature of the bits.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBits.Bits` (213), `TBits.clear` (209)

### 2.31.10 TBits.AndBits

Synopsis: Performs an and operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure AndBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `andbits` performs an and operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `BitSet`. If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are cleared.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBits.clearall` (209), `TBits.orbits` (209), `TBits.xorbits` (210), `TBits.notbits` (210)

### 2.31.11 TBits.OrBits

Synopsis: Performs an or operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure OrBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `andbits` performs an or operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `BitSet`.

If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are left untouched.

If the current array contains less bits than `BitSet` then it is grown to the size of `BitSet` before the or operation is performed.

Errors: None.

See also: [TBits.clearall \(209\)](#), [TBits.andbits \(209\)](#), [TBits.xorbits \(210\)](#), [TBits.notbits \(210\)](#)

### 2.31.12 TBits.XorBits

Synopsis: Performs a xor operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure XorBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: public

Description: `XorBits` performs a xor operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `BitSet`.

If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are left untouched.

If the current array contains less bits than `BitSet` then it is grown to the size of `BitSet` before the xor operation is performed.

Errors: None.

See also: [TBits.clearall \(209\)](#), [TBits.andbits \(209\)](#), [TBits.orbits \(209\)](#), [TBits.notbits \(210\)](#)

### 2.31.13 TBits.NotBits

Synopsis: Performs a not operation on the bits.

Declaration: `procedure NotBits(BitSet: TBits)`

Visibility: public

Description: `NotBits` performs a not operation on the bits in the array with the bits of array `Bitset`.

If `BitSet` contains less bits than the current array, then all bits which have no counterpart in `BitSet` are left untouched.

Errors: None.

See also: [TBits.clearall \(209\)](#), [TBits.andbits \(209\)](#), [TBits.orbits \(209\)](#), [TBits.xorbits \(210\)](#)

### 2.31.14 TBits.Get

Synopsis: Retrieve the value of a particular bit

Declaration: `function Get(Bit: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `Get` returns `True` if the bit at position `bit` is set, or `False` if it is not set.

Errors: If `bit` is not a valid bit index then an `EBitsError (179)` exception is raised.

See also: [TBits.Bits \(213\)](#), [TBits.FindFirstBit \(211\)](#), [TBits.seton \(208\)](#)

**2.31.15 TBits.Grow**

Synopsis: Expands the bits array to the requested size.

Declaration: `procedure Grow(NBit: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Grow` expands the bit array so it can at least contain `nbit` bits. If `nbit` is less than the current size, nothing happens.

Errors: If there is not enough memory to complete the operation, then an `EBitsError` ([179](#)) is raised.

See also: `TBits.Size` ([213](#))

**2.31.16 TBits.Equals**

Synopsis: Determines whether the bits of 2 arrays are equal.

Declaration: `function Equals(BitSet: TBits) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `equals` returns `True` if all the bits in `BitSet` are the same as the ones in the current `BitSet`; if not, `False` is returned.

If the sizes of the two `BitSets` are different, the arrays are still reported equal when all the bits in the larger set, which are not present in the smaller set, are zero.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBits.clearall` ([209](#)), `TBits.andbits` ([209](#)), `TBits.orbits` ([209](#)), `TBits.xorbits` ([210](#))

**2.31.17 TBits.SetIndex**

Synopsis: Sets the start position for `FindNextBit` ([212](#)) and `FindPrevBit` ([212](#))

Declaration: `procedure SetIndex(Index: LongInt)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetIndex` sets the search start position for `FindNextBit` ([212](#)) and `FindPrevBit` ([212](#)) to `Index`. This means that these calls will start searching from position `Index`.

This mechanism provides an alternative to `FindFirstBit` ([211](#)) which can also be used to position for the `FindNextBit` and `FindPrevBit` calls.

Errors: None.

See also: `TBits.FindNextBit` ([212](#)), `TBits.FindPrevBit` ([212](#)), `TBits.FindFirstBit` ([211](#)), `TBits.OpenBit` ([212](#))

**2.31.18 TBits.FindFirstBit**

Synopsis: Find first bit with a particular value

Declaration: `function FindFirstBit(State: Boolean) : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`



**Description:** `FindFirstBit` searches for the first bit with value `State`. It returns the position of this bit, or `-1` if no such bit was found.

The search starts at position 0 in the array. If the first search returned a positive result, the found position is saved, and the `FindNextBit` (212) and `FindPrevBit` (212) will use this position to resume the search. To start a search from a certain position, the start position can be set with the `SetIndex` (211) instead.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TBits.FindNextBit` (212), `TBits.FindPrevBit` (212), `TBits.OpenBit` (212), `TBits.SetIndex` (211)

### 2.31.19 TBits.FindNextBit

**Synopsis:** Searches the next bit with a particular value.

**Declaration:** `function FindNextBit : LongInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `FindNextBit` resumes a previously started search. It searches for the next bit with the value specified in the `FindFirstBit` (211). The search is done towards the end of the array and starts at the position last reported by one of the `Find` calls or at the position set with `SetIndex` (211).

If another bit with the same value is found, its position is returned. If no more bits with the same value are present in the array, `-1` is returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TBits.FindFirstBit` (211), `TBits.FindPrevBit` (212), `TBits.OpenBit` (212), `TBits.SetIndex` (211)

### 2.31.20 TBits.FindPrevBit

**Synopsis:** Searches the previous bit with a particular value.

**Declaration:** `function FindPrevBit : LongInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `FindPrevBit` resumes a previously started search. It searches for the previous bit with the value specified in the `FindFirstBit` (211). The search is done towards the beginning of the array and starts at the position last reported by one of the `Find` calls or at the position set with `SetIndex` (211).

If another bit with the same value is found, its position is returned. If no more bits with the same value are present in the array, `-1` is returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TBits.FindFirstBit` (211), `TBits.FindNextBit` (212), `TBits.OpenBit` (212), `TBits.SetIndex` (211)

### 2.31.21 TBits.OpenBit

**Synopsis:** Returns the position of the first bit that is set to `False`.

**Declaration:** `function OpenBit : LongInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `OpenBit` returns the position of the first bit whose value is 0 (`False`), or `-1` if no open bit was found. This call is equivalent to `FindFirstBit(False)`, except that it doesn't set the position for the next searches.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TBits.FindFirstBit` (211), `TBits.FindPrevBit` (212), `TBits.FindFirstBit` (211), `TBits.SetIndex` (211)

### 2.31.22 TBits.Bits

**Synopsis:** Access to all bits in the array.

**Declaration:** `Property Bits[Bit: LongInt]: Boolean; default`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `Bits` allows indexed access to all of the bits in the array. It gives `True` if the bit is 1, `False` otherwise; Assigning to this property will set, respectively clear the bit.

**Errors:** If an index is specified which is out of the allowed range then an `EBitsError` (179) exception is raised.

**See also:** `TBits.Size` (213)

### 2.31.23 TBits.Size

**Synopsis:** Current size of the array of bits.

**Declaration:** `Property Size : LongInt`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read,Write`

**Description:** `Size` is the current size of the bit array. Setting this property will adjust the size; this is equivalent to calling `Grow(Value-1)`

**Errors:** If an invalid size (negative or too large) is specified, a `EBitsError` (179) exception is raised.

**See also:** `TBits.Bits` (213)

## 2.32 TCollection

### 2.32.1 Description

`TCollection` implements functionality to manage a collection of named objects. Each of these objects needs to be a descendent of the `TCollectionItem` (218) class. Exactly which type of object is managed can be seen from the `TCollection.ItemClass` (217) property.

Normally, no `TCollection` is created directly. Instead, a descendent of `TCollection` and `TCollectionItem` (218) are created as a pair.

### 2.32.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">215</a>	Add	Creates and adds a new item to the collection.
<a href="#">215</a>	Assign	Assigns one collection to another.
<a href="#">215</a>	BeginUpdate	Start an update batch.
<a href="#">216</a>	Clear	Removes all items from the collection.
<a href="#">214</a>	Create	Creates a new collection.
<a href="#">216</a>	Delete	Delete an item from the collection.
<a href="#">214</a>	Destroy	Destroys the collection and frees all the objects it manages.
<a href="#">216</a>	EndUpdate	Ends an update batch.
<a href="#">217</a>	FindItemID	Searches for an Item in the collection, based on its TCollectionItem.ID ( <a href="#">219</a> ) property.
<a href="#">216</a>	Insert	Insert an item in the collection.
<a href="#">214</a>	Owner	Owner of the collection.

### 2.32.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">217</a>	Count	r	Number of items in the collection.
<a href="#">217</a>	ItemClass	r	Class pointer for each item in the collection.
<a href="#">218</a>	Items	rw	Indexed array of items in the collection.

### 2.32.4 TCollection.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new collection.

Declaration: constructor `Create(AItemClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of the `TCollection` class which will manage objects of class `AItemClass`. It creates the list used to hold all objects, and stores the `AItemClass` for the adding of new objects to the collection.

See also: `TCollection.ItemClass` ([217](#)), `TCollection.Destroy` ([214](#))

### 2.32.5 TCollection.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the collection and frees all the objects it manages.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` first clears the collection, and then frees all memory allocated to this instance.

Don't call `Destroy` directly, call `Free` instead.

See also: `TCollection.Create` ([214](#))

### 2.32.6 TCollection.Owner

Synopsis: Owner of the collection.

Declaration: function `Owner : TPersistent`

Visibility: public

Description: Owner returns a reference to the owner of the collection. This property is required by the object inspector to be able to show the collection.

### 2.32.7 TCollection.Add

Synopsis: Creates and adds a new item to the collection.

Declaration: `function Add : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: public

Description: Add instantiates a new item of class `TCollection.ItemClass` (217) and adds it to the list. The newly created object is returned.

See also: `TCollection.ItemClass` (217), `TCollection.Clear` (216)

### 2.32.8 TCollection.Assign

Synopsis: Assigns one collection to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Assign assigns the contents of one collection to another. It does this by clearing the items list, and adding as much elements as there are in the Source collection; it assigns to each created element the contents of it's counterpart in the Source element.

Two collections cannot be assigned to each other if instances of the `ItemClass` classes cannot be assigned to each other.

Errors: If the objects in the collections cannot be assigned to one another, then an `EConvertError` is raised.

See also: `TPersistent.Assign` (261), `TCollectionItem` (218)

### 2.32.9 TCollection.BeginUpdate

Synopsis: Start an update batch.

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate`

Visibility: public

Description: `BeginUpdate` is called at the beginning of a batch update. It raises the update count with 1.

Call `BeginUpdate` at the beginning of a series of operations that will change the state of the collection. This will avoid the call to `TCollection.Update` (213) for each operation. At the end of the operations, a corresponding call to `EndUpdate` must be made. It is best to do this in the context of a `Try ... finally` block:

```
With MyCollection Do
  try
    BeginUpdate;
    // Some Lengthy operations
  finally
    EndUpdate;
  end;
```

This insures that the number of calls to `BeginUpdate` always matches the number of calls to `TCollection.EndUpdate` (216), even in case of an exception.

See also: `TCollection.EndUpdate` (216), `TCollection.Changed` (213), `TCollection.Update` (213)

### 2.32.10 `TCollection.Clear`

Synopsis: Removes all items from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` will clear the collection, i.e. each item in the collection is destroyed and removed from memory. After a call to `Clear`, `Count` is zero.

See also: `TCollection.Add` (215), `TCollectionItem.Destroy` (219), `TCollection.Destroy` (214)

### 2.32.11 `TCollection.EndUpdate`

Synopsis: Ends an update batch.

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndUpdate` signals the end of a series of operations that change the state of the collection, possibly triggering an update event. It does this by decreasing the update count with 1 and calling `TCollection.Changed` (213) it should always be used in conjunction with `TCollection.BeginUpdate` (215), preferably in the `Finally` section of a `Try ... Finally` block.

See also: `TCollection.BeginUpdate` (215), `TCollection.Changed` (213), `TCollection.Update` (213)

### 2.32.12 `TCollection.Delete`

Synopsis: Delete an item from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` deletes the item at (zero based) position `Index` from the collection. This will result in a `cnDeleted` notification.

Errors: If an invalid index is specified, an exception is raised.

See also: `TCollection.Items` (218), `TCollection.Insert` (216), `TCollection.Clear` (216)

### 2.32.13 `TCollection.Insert`

Synopsis: Insert an item in the collection.

Declaration: `function Insert(Index: Integer) : TCollectionItem`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Insert` creates a new item instance and inserts it in the collection at position `Index`, and returns the new instance.

In contrast, `TCollection.Add` (215) adds a new item at the end.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TCollection.Add` (215), `TCollection.Delete` (216), `TCollection.Items` (218)

### 2.32.14 `TCollection.FindItemID`

**Synopsis:** Searches for an Item in the collection, based on its `TCollectionItem.ID` (219) property.

**Declaration:** `function FindItemID(ID: Integer) : TCollectionItem`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `FindItemID` searches through the collection for the item that has a value of `ID` for its `TCollectionItem.ID` (219) property, and returns the found item. If no such item is found in the collection, `Nil` is returned.

The routine performs a linear search, so this can be slow on very large collections.

**See also:** `TCollection.Items` (218), `TCollectionItem.ID` (219)

### 2.32.15 `TCollection.Count`

**Synopsis:** Number of items in the collection.

**Declaration:** `Property Count : Integer`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `Count` contains the number of items in the collection.

**Remark:** The items in the collection are identified by their `TCollectionItem.Index` (220) property, which is a zero-based index, meaning that it can take values between 0 and `Count`.

**See also:** `TCollectionItem.Index` (220), `TCollection.Items` (218)

### 2.32.16 `TCollection.ItemClass`

**Synopsis:** Class pointer for each item in the collection.

**Declaration:** `Property ItemClass : TCollectionItemClass`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `ItemClass` is the class pointer with which each new item in the collection is created. It is the value that was passed to the collection's constructor when it was created, and does not change during the lifetime of the collection.

**See also:** `TCollectionItem` (218), `TCollection.Items` (218)

### 2.32.17 TCollection.Items

Synopsis: Indexed array of items in the collection.

Declaration: Property Items[Index: Integer]: TCollectionItem

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Items provides indexed access to the items in the collection. Since the array is zero-based, Index should be an integer between 0 and Count-1.

It is possible to set or retrieve an element in the array. When setting an element of the array, the object that is assigned should be compatible with the class of the objects in the collection, as given by the TCollection.ItemClass (217) property.

Adding an element to the array can be done with the TCollection.Add (215) method. The array can be cleared with the TCollection.Clear (216) method. Removing an element of the array should be done by freeing that element.

See also: TCollection.Count (217), TCollection.ItemClass (217), TCollection.Clear (216), TCollection.Add (215)

## 2.33 TCollectionItem

### 2.33.1 Description

TCollectionItem and TCollection (213) form a pair of base classes that manage a collection of named objects. The TCollectionItem is the named object that is managed, it represents one item in the collection. An item in the collection is represented by two properties: TCollectionItem.DisplayName (220), TCollection.Index (213) and TCollectionItem.ID (219).

A TCollectionItem object is never created directly. To manage a set of named items, it is necessary to make a descendant of TCollectionItem to which needed properties and methods are added. This descendant can then be managed with a TCollection (213) class. The managing collection will create and destroy it's items by itself, it should therefore never be necessary to create TCollectionItem descendants manually.

### 2.33.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">219</a>	Create	Creates a new instance of this collection item.
<a href="#">219</a>	Destroy	Destroys this collection item.

### 2.33.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">219</a>	Collection	rw	Pointer to the collection managing this item.
<a href="#">220</a>	DisplayName	rw	Name of the item, displayed in the object inspector.
<a href="#">219</a>	ID	r	Initial index of this item.
<a href="#">220</a>	Index	rw	Index of the item in its managing collection TCollection.Items (218) property.

### 2.33.4 TCollectionItem.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of this collection item.

Declaration: constructor Create(ACollection: TCollection); Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: Create instantiates a new item in a TCollection (213). It is called by the TCollection.Add (215) function and should under normal circumstances never be called directly. called

See also: TCollectionItem.Destroy (219)

### 2.33.5 TCollectionItem.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys this collection item.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy removes the item from the managing collection and Destroys the item instance.  
This is the only way to remove items from a collection;

See also: TCollectionItem.Create (219)

### 2.33.6 TCollectionItem.Collection

Synopsis: Pointer to the collection managing this item.

Declaration: Property Collection : TCollection

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Collection points to the collection managing this item. This property can be set to point to a new collection. If this is done, the old collection will be notified that the item should no longer be managed, and the new collection is notified that it should manage this item as well.

See also: TCollection (213)

### 2.33.7 TCollectionItem.ID

Synopsis: Initial index of this item.

Declaration: Property ID : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: ID is the initial value of TCollectionItem.Index (220); it doesn't change after the index changes. It can be used to uniquely identify the item. The ID property doesn't change as items are added and removed from the collection.

While the TCollectionItem.Index (220) property forms a continuous series, ID does not. If items are removed from the collection, their ID is not used again, leaving gaps. Only when the collection is initialiy created, the ID and Index properties will be equal.

See also: TCollection.Items (218), TCollectionItem.Index (220)



### 2.33.8 TCollectionItem.Index

Synopsis: Index of the item in its managing collection TCollection.Items (218) property.

Declaration: Property Index : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Index is the current index of the item in its managing collection's TCollection.Items (218) property. This property may change as items are added and removed from the collection.

The index of an item is zero-based, i.e. the first item has index zero. The last item has index Count-1 where Count is the number of items in the collection.

The Index property of the items in a collection form a continuous series ranging from 0 to Count-1. The TCollectionItem.ID (219) property does not form a continuous series, but can also be used to identify an item.

See also: TCollectionItem.ID (219), TCollection.Items (218)

### 2.33.9 TCollectionItem.DisplayName

Synopsis: Name of the item, displayed in the object inspector.

Declaration: Property DisplayName : String

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: DisplayName contains the name of this item as shown in the object inspector. For TCollectionItem this returns always the class name of the managing collection, followed by the index of the item.

TCollectionItem does not implement any functionality to store the DisplayName property. The property can be set, but this will have no effect other than that the managing collection is notified of a change. The actual displayname will remain unchanged. To store the DisplayName property, TCollectionItem descendants should override the TCollectionItem.SetDisplayName (218) and TCollectionItem.GetDisplayName (218) to add storage functionality.

See also: TCollectionItem.Index (220), TCollectionItem.ID (219), TCollectionItem.GetDisplayName (218), TCollectionItem.SetDisplayName (218)

## 2.34 TComponent

### 2.34.1 Description

TComponent is the base class for any set of classes that needs owner-owned functionality, and which needs support for property streaming. All classes that should be handled by an IDE (Integrated Development Environment) must descend from TComponent, as it includes all support for streaming all its published properties.

Components can 'own' other components. TComponent introduces methods for enumerating the child components. It also allows to name the owned components with a unique name. Furthermore, functionality for sending notifications when a component is removed from the list or removed from memory altogether is also introduced in TComponent

TComponent introduces a form of automatic memory management: When a component is destroyed, all its child components will be destroyed first.

**2.34.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">222</a>	BeforeDestruction	Overrides standard BeforeDestruction.
<a href="#">222</a>	Create	Creates a new instance of the component.
<a href="#">222</a>	Destroy	Destroys the instance of the component.
<a href="#">222</a>	DestroyComponents	Destroy child components.
<a href="#">223</a>	Destroying	Called when the component is being destroyed
<a href="#">223</a>	ExecuteAction	Standard action execution method.
<a href="#">223</a>	FindComponent	Finds and returns the named component in the owned components.
<a href="#">223</a>	FreeNotification	Ask the component to notify called when it is being destroyed.
<a href="#">224</a>	FreeOnRelease	Part of the <code>IVCLComObject</code> interface.
<a href="#">224</a>	GetParentComponent	Returns the parent component.
<a href="#">224</a>	HasParent	Does the component have a parent ?
<a href="#">225</a>	InsertComponent	Insert the given component in the list of owned components.
<a href="#">225</a>	RemoveComponent	Remove the given component from the list of owned components.
<a href="#">224</a>	RemoveFreeNotification	Remove a component from the Free Notification list.
<a href="#">225</a>	SafeCallException	Part of the <code>IVCLComObject</code> Interface.
<a href="#">225</a>	SetSubComponent	Sets the <code>csSubComponent</code> style.
<a href="#">226</a>	UpdateAction	Updates the state of an action.
<a href="#">221</a>	WriteState	Writes the component to a stream.

**2.34.3 Property overview**

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">226</a>	ComponentCount	r	Count of owned components
<a href="#">226</a>	ComponentIndex	rw	Index of component in it's owner's list.
<a href="#">226</a>	Components	r	Indexed list (zero-based) of all owned components.
<a href="#">227</a>	ComponentState	r	Current component's state.
<a href="#">227</a>	ComponentStyle	r	Current component's style.
<a href="#">227</a>	DesignInfo	rw	Information for IDE designer.
<a href="#">228</a>	Name	rws	Name of the component.
<a href="#">228</a>	Owner	r	Owner of this component.
<a href="#">228</a>	Tag	rw	Tag value of the component.
<a href="#">228</a>	VCLComObject	rw	Not implemented.

**2.34.4 TComponent.WriteState**

Synopsis: Writes the component to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteState(Writer: TWriter); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteState` writes the component's current state to a stream through the writer ([308](#)) object `writer`. Values for all published properties of the component can be written to the stream. Normally there is no need to call `WriteState` directly. The streaming system calls `WriteState` itself.

The `TComponent` ([220](#)) implementation of `WriteState` simply calls `TWriter.WriteData` ([308](#)). Descendent classes can, however, override `WriteState` to provide additional processing of stream data.

See also: `TComponent.ReadState` ([220](#)), `TStream.WriteComponent` ([277](#)), `TWriter.WriteData` ([308](#))

### 2.34.5 TComponent.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of the component.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of a `TComponent` class. If `AOwner` is not `Nil`, the new component attempts to insert itself in the list of owned components of the owner.

See also: `TComponent.Insert` (220), `TComponent.Owner` (228)

### 2.34.6 TComponent.BeforeDestruction

Synopsis: Overrides standard `BeforeDestruction`.

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeforeDestruction` is overridden by `TComponent` to set the `csDestroying` flag in `ComponentState` (153)

See also: `ComponentState` (153)

### 2.34.7 TComponent.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance of the component.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` sends a `opRemove` notification to all components in the free-notification list. After that, all owned components are destroyed by calling `DestroyComponents` (222) (and hence removed from the list of owned components). When this is done, the component removes itself from its owner's child component list. After that, the parent's destroy method is called.

See also: `TComponent.Notification` (220), `TComponent.Owner` (228), `TComponent.DestroyComponents` (222), `TComponent.Components` (226)

### 2.34.8 TComponent.DestroyComponents

Synopsis: Destroy child components.

Declaration: `procedure DestroyComponents`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `DestroyComponents` calls the destructor of all owned components, till no more components are left in the `Components` (226) array.

Calling the destructor of an owned component has as the effect that the component will remove itself from the list of owned components, if nothing has disrupted the sequence of destructors.

Errors: If an overridden 'destroy' method does not call it's inherited destructor or raises an exception, it's `TComponent.Destroy` (222) destructor will not be called, which may result in an endless loop.

See also: `TComponent.Destroy` (222), `TComponent.Components` (226)

### 2.34.9 TComponent.Destroying

Synopsis: Called when the component is being destroyed

Declaration: `procedure Destroying`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroying` sets the `csDestroying` flag in the component's state (220) property, and does the same for all owned components.

It is not necessary to call `Destroying` directly, the destructor `Destroy` (222) does this automatically.

See also: `TComponent.State` (220), `TComponent.Destroy` (222)

### 2.34.10 TComponent.ExecuteAction

Synopsis: Standard action execution method.

Declaration: `function ExecuteAction(Action: TBasicAction) : Boolean; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ExecuteAction` checks whether `Action` handles the current component, and if yes, calls the `ExecuteAction` method, passing itself as a parameter. The function returns `True` if the action handles the current component.

See also: `TBasicAction` (192), `TBasicAction.ExecuteAction` (192), `TBasicAction.HandlesTarget` (193), `UpdateAction` (153)

### 2.34.11 TComponent.FindComponent

Synopsis: Finds and returns the named component in the owned components.

Declaration: `function FindComponent(const AName: String) : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FindComponent` searches the component with name `AName` in the list of owned components. If `AName` is empty, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TComponent.Components` (226), `TComponent.Name` (228)

### 2.34.12 TComponent.FreeNotification

Synopsis: Ask the component to notify called when it is being destroyed.

Declaration: `procedure FreeNotification(AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FreeNotification` inserts `AComponent` in the freenotification list. When the component is destroyed, the `Notification` (220) method is called for all components in the freenotification list.

See also: `TComponent.Components` (226), `TComponent.Notification` (220)

### 2.34.13 TComponent.RemoveFreeNotification

Synopsis: Remove a component from the Free Notification list.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveFreeNotification(AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RemoveFreeNotification` removes `AComponent` from the `freenotification` list.

See also: `FreeNotification` ([153](#))

### 2.34.14 TComponent.FreeOnRelease

Synopsis: Part of the `IVCLComObject` interface.

Declaration: `procedure FreeOnRelease`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Provided for Delphi compatibility, but is not yet implemented.

### 2.34.15 TComponent.GetParentComponent

Synopsis: Returns the parent component.

Declaration: `function GetParentComponent : TComponent; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetParentComponent` can be implemented to return the parent component of this component. The implementation of this method in `TComponent` always returns `Nil`. Descendent classes must override this method to return the visual parent of the component.

See also: `TComponent.HasParent` ([224](#)), `TComponent.Owner` ([228](#))

### 2.34.16 TComponent.HasParent

Synopsis: Does the component have a parent ?

Declaration: `function HasParent : Boolean; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `HasParent` can be implemented to return whether the parent of the component exists. The implementation of this method in `TComponent` always returns `False`, and should be overridden by descendent classes to return `True` when a parent is available. If `HasParent` returns `True`, then `GetParentComponent` ([224](#)) will return the parent component.

See also: `TComponent.HasParent` ([224](#)), `TComponent.Owner` ([228](#))

**2.34.17 TComponent.InsertComponent**

Synopsis: Insert the given component in the list of owned components.

Declaration: `procedure InsertComponent (AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `InsertComponent` attempts to insert `AComponent` in the list with owned components. It first calls `ValidateComponent` (220) to see whether the component can be inserted. It then checks whether there are no name conflicts by calling `ValidateRename` (220). If neither of these checks have raised an exception the component is inserted, and notified of the insert.

See also: `TComponent.RemoveComponent` (225), `TComponent.Insert` (220), `TComponent.ValidateContainer` (220), `TComponent.ValidateRename` (220), `TComponent.Notification` (220)

**2.34.18 TComponent.RemoveComponent**

Synopsis: Remove the given component from the list of owned components.

Declaration: `procedure RemoveComponent (AComponent: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `RemoveComponent` will send an `opRemove` notification to `AComponent` and will then proceed to remove `AComponent` from the list of owned components.

See also: `TComponent.InsertComponent` (225), `TComponent.Remove` (220), `TComponent.ValidateRename` (220), `TComponent.Notification` (220)

**2.34.19 TComponent.SafeCallException**

Synopsis: Part of the `IVCLComObject` Interface.

Declaration: `function SafeCallException (ExceptObject: TObject; ExceptAddr: Pointer)  
: Integer; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Provided for Delphi compatibility, but not implemented.

**2.34.20 TComponent.SetSubComponent**

Synopsis: Sets the `csSubComponent` style.

Declaration: `procedure SetSubComponent (ASubComponent: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetSubComponent` includes `csSubComponent` in the `ComponentStyle` (227) property if `ASubComponent` is `True`, and excludes it again if `ASubComponent` is `False`.

See also: `TComponent.ComponentStyle` (227)

### 2.34.21 TComponent.UpdateAction

Synopsis: Updates the state of an action.

Declaration: `function UpdateAction(Action: TBasicAction) : Boolean; Dynamic`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `UpdateAction` checks whether `Action` handles the current component, and if yes, calls the `UpdateTarget` method, passing itself as a parameter. The function returns `True` if the action handles the current component.

See also: `TBasicAction` ([192](#)), `TBasicAction.UpdateTarget` ([194](#)), `TBasicAction.HandlesTarget` ([193](#)), `ExecuteAction` ([153](#))

### 2.34.22 TComponent.Components

Synopsis: Indexed list (zero-based) of all owned components.

Declaration: `Property Components[Index: Integer]: TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Components` provides indexed access to the list of owned components. `Index` can range from 0 to `ComponentCount-1` ([226](#)).

See also: `TComponent.ComponentCount` ([226](#)), `TComponent.Owner` ([228](#))

### 2.34.23 TComponent.ComponentCount

Synopsis: Count of owned components

Declaration: `Property ComponentCount : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `ComponentCount` returns the number of components that the current component owns. It can be used to determine the valid index range in the `Component` ([226](#)) array.

See also: `TComponent.Components` ([226](#)), `TComponent.Owner` ([228](#))

### 2.34.24 TComponent.ComponentIndex

Synopsis: Index of component in it's owner's list.

Declaration: `Property ComponentIndex : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `ComponentIndex` is the index of the current component in its owner's list of components. If the component has no owner, the value of this property is -1.

See also: `TComponent.Components` ([226](#)), `TComponent.ComponentCount` ([226](#)), `TComponent.Owner` ([228](#))

**2.34.25 TComponent.ComponentState**

Synopsis: Current component's state.

Declaration: Property ComponentState : TComponentState

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: ComponentState indicates the current state of the component. It is a set of flags which indicate the various stages in the lifetime of a component. The following values can occur in this set:

Table 2.15: Component states

Flag	Meaning
csLoading	The component is being loaded from stream
csReading	Component properties are being read from stream.
csWriting	Component properties are being written to stream.
csDestroying	The component or one of its owners is being destroyed.
csAncestor	The component is being streamed as part of a frame
csUpdating	The component is being updated
csFixups	References to other components are being resolved
csFreeNotification	The component has free notifications.
csInline	The component is being loaded as part of a frame
csDesignInstance	? not used.

The component state is set by various actions such as reading it from stream, destroying it etc.

See also: TComponent.SetAncestor (220), TComponent.SetDesigning (220), TComponent.SetInline (220), TComponent.SetDesignInstance (220), TComponent.Updating (220), TComponent.Updated (220), TComponent.Loaded (220)

**2.34.26 TComponent.ComponentStyle**

Synopsis: Current component's style.

Declaration: Property ComponentStyle : TComponentStyle

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Current component's style.

**2.34.27 TComponent.DesignInfo**

Synopsis: Information for IDE designer.

Declaration: Property DesignInfo : LongInt

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write

Description: DesignInformation can be used by an IDE to store design information in the component. It should not be used by an application programmer.

See also: TComponent.Tag (228)



### 2.34.28 TComponent.Owner

Synopsis: Owner of this component.

Declaration: Property Owner : TComponent

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Owner returns the owner of this component. The owner cannot be set except by explicitly inserting the component in another component's owned components list using that component's InsertComponent (225) method, or by removing the component from it's owner's owned component list using the RemoveComponent (225) method.

See also: TComponent.Components (226), TComponent.InsertComponent (225), TComponent.RemoveComponent (225)

### 2.34.29 TComponent.VCLComObject

Synopsis: Not implemented.

Declaration: Property VCLComObject : Pointer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: VCLComObject is not yet implemented in Free Pascal.

### 2.34.30 TComponent.Name

Synopsis: Name of the component.

Declaration: Property Name : TComponentName

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: Name is the name of the component. This name should be a valid identifier, i.e. must start with a letter, and can contain only letters, numbers and the underscore character. When attempting to set the name of a component, the name will be checked for validity. Furthermore, when a component is owned by another component, the name must be either empty or must be unique among the child component names.

Errors: Attempting to set the name to an invalid value will result in an exception being raised.

See also: TComponent.ValidateRename (220), TComponent.Owner (228)

### 2.34.31 TComponent.Tag

Synopsis: Tag value of the component.

Declaration: Property Tag : LongInt

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

**Description:** Tag can be used to store an integer value in the component. This value is streamed together with all other published properties. It can be used for instance to quickly identify a component in an event handler.

See also: TComponent.Name ([228](#))

## 2.35 TCustomMemoryStream

### 2.35.1 Description

TCustomMemoryStream is the parent class for streams that stored their data in memory. It introduces all needed functions to handle reading from and navigating through the memory, and introduces a Memory ([231](#)) property which points to the memory area where the stream data is kept.

The only thing which TCustomMemoryStream does not do is obtain memory to store data when writing data or the writing of data. This functionality is implemented in descendent streams such as TMemoryStream ([252](#)). The reason for this approach is that this way it is possible to create e.g. read-only descendents of TCustomMemoryStream that point to a fixed part in memory which can be read from, but not written to.

**Remark:** Since TCustomMemoryStream is an abstract class, do not create instances of TMemoryStream directly. Instead, create instances of descendents such as TMemoryStream ([252](#)).

### 2.35.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">229</a>	GetSize	return the size of the stream.
<a href="#">229</a>	Read	Reads Count bytes from the stream into buffer.
<a href="#">231</a>	SaveToFile	Writes the contents of the stream to a file.
<a href="#">230</a>	SaveToStream	Writes the contents of the memory stream to another stream.
<a href="#">230</a>	Seek	Sets a new position in the stream.

### 2.35.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">231</a>	Memory	r	Pointer to the data kept in the memory stream.

### 2.35.4 TCustomMemoryStream.GetSize

**Synopsis:** return the size of the stream.

**Declaration:** `function GetSize : Int64; Override`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** GetSize returns the size of the reserved memory. It should not be used directly.

See also: TStream.Size ([282](#))

### 2.35.5 TCustomMemoryStream.Read

**Synopsis:** Reads Count bytes from the stream into buffer.

**Declaration:** `function Read(var Buffer;Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

**Description:** Read reads Count bytes from the stream into the memory pointed to by buffer. It returns the number of bytes actually read.

This method overrides the abstract TStream.Read (274) method of TStream (273). It will read as much bytes as are still available in the memory area pointer to by Memory (231). After the bytes are read, the internal stream position is updated.

See also: TCustomMemoryStream.Memory (231), TStream.Read (274)

### 2.35.6 TCustomMemoryStream.Seek

**Synopsis:** Sets a new position in the stream.

**Declaration:** function Seek(Offset: LongInt;Origin: Word) : LongInt; Override

Visibility: public

**Description:** Seek overrides the abstract TStream.Seek (275) method. It simply updates the internal stream position, and returns the new position.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether the new position is still a valid position, i.e. whether the position is still within the range 0..Size. Attempting a seek outside the valid memory range of the stream may result in an exception at the next read or write operation.

See also: TStream.Position (282), TStream.Size (282), TCustomMemoryStream.Memory (231)

### 2.35.7 TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream

**Synopsis:** Writes the contents of the memory stream to another stream.

**Declaration:** procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream)

Visibility: public

**Description:** SaveToStream writes the contents of the memory stream to Stream. The content of Stream is not cleared first. The current position of the memory stream is not changed by this action.

**Remark:** This method will work much faster than the use of the TStream.CopyFrom (276) method:

```
Seek(0,soFromBeginning);
Stream.CopyFrom(Self,Size);
```

because the CopyFrom method copies the contents in blocks, while SaveToStream writes the contents of the memory as one big block.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when writing to Stream an EStreamError (181) exception will be raised.

See also: TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToFile (231), TStream.CopyFrom (276)

### 2.35.8 TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToFile

**Synopsis:** Writes the contents of the stream to a file.

**Declaration:** `procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: String)`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `SaveToFile` writes the contents of the stream to a file with name `FileName`. It simply creates a filestream and writes the contents of the memorystream to this file stream using `TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream` (230).

**Remark:** This method will work much faster than the use of the `TStream.CopyFrom` (276) method:

```
Stream:=TFileStream.Create(fmCreate,FileName);
Seek(0,soFromBeginning);
Stream.CopyFrom(Self,Size);
```

because the `CopyFrom` method copies the contents in blocks, while `SaveToFile` writes the contents of the memory as one big block.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when creating or writing to the file, an `EStreamError` (181) exception may occur.

**See also:** `TCustomMemoryStream.SaveToStream` (230), `TFileStream` (236), `TStream.CopyFrom` (276)

### 2.35.9 TCustomMemoryStream.Memory

**Synopsis:** Pointer to the data kept in the memory stream.

**Declaration:** `Property Memory : Pointer`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read

**Description:** `Memory` points to the memory area where stream keeps it's data. The property is read-only, so the pointer cannot be set this way.

**Remark:** Do not write to the memory pointed to by `Memory`, since the memory content may be read-only, and thus writing to it may cause errors.

**See also:** `TStream.Size` (282)

## 2.36 TDataModule

### 2.36.1 Description

`TDataModule` is a container for non-visual objects which can be used in an IDE to group non-visual objects which can be used by various other containers (forms) in a project. Notably, data access components are typically stored on a datamodule. Web components and services can also be implemented as descendents of datamodules.

`TDataModule` introduces some events which make it easier to program, and provides the needed streaming capabilities for persistent storage.

An IDE will typically allow to create a descendent of `TDataModule` which contains non-visual components in it's published property list.

### 2.36.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">233</a>	AfterConstruction	Overrides standard TObject ( <a href="#">153</a> ) behaviour.
<a href="#">233</a>	BeforeDestruction	
<a href="#">232</a>	Create	Create a new instance of a TDataModule.
<a href="#">232</a>	CreateNew	
<a href="#">232</a>	Destroy	Destroys the TDataModule instance.

### 2.36.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">233</a>	DesignOffset	rw	Position property needed for manipulation in an IDE.
<a href="#">234</a>	DesignSize	rw	Size property needed for manipulation in an IDE.
<a href="#">234</a>	OldCreateOrder	rw	Determines when OnCreate and OnDestroy are triggered.
<a href="#">234</a>	OnCreate	rw	Event handler, called when the datamodule is created.
<a href="#">234</a>	OnDestroy	rw	Event handler, called when the datamodule is destroyed.

### 2.36.4 TDataModule.Create

Synopsis: Create a new instance of a TDataModule.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AOwner: TComponent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Create creates a new instance of the TDataModule and calls TDataModule.CreateNew ([232](#)). After that it reads the published properties from a stream using InitInheritedComponent ([171](#)) if a descendent class is instantiated. If the OldCreateOrder ([234](#)) property is True, the OnCreate ([153](#)) event is called.

Errors: An exception can be raised during the streaming operation.

See also: TDataModule.CreateNew ([232](#))

### 2.36.5 TDataModule.CreateNew

Synopsis:

Declaration: `constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent)`  
`constructor CreateNew(AOwner: TComponent; CreateMode: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: CreateNew creates a new instance of the class, but bypasses the streaming mechanism. The CreateMode parameter (by default zero) is not used in TDataModule. If the AddDataModule ([165](#)) handler is set, then it is called, with the newly created instance as an argument.

See also: TDataModule.Create ([232](#)), AddDataModule ([165](#)), TDataModule.OnCreate ([234](#))

### 2.36.6 TDataModule.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TDataModule instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy destroys the TDataModule instance. If the OldCreateOrder (234) property is True the OnDestroy (234) event handler is called prior to destroying the data module.

Before calling the inherited destroy, the RemoveDataModule (166) handler is called if it is set, and Self is passed as a parameter.

Errors: An event can be raised during the OnDestroy event handler.

See also: TDataModule.OnDestroy (234), RemoveDataModule (166)

### 2.36.7 TDataModule.AfterConstruction

Synopsis: Overrides standard TObject (153) behaviour.

Declaration: procedure AfterConstruction; Override

Visibility: public

Description: AfterConstruction calls the OnCreate (234) handler if the OldCreateOrder (234) property is False.

See also: TDataModule.OldCreateOrder (234), TDataModule.OnCreate (234)

### 2.36.8 TDataModule.BeforeDestruction

Synopsis:

Declaration: procedure BeforeDestruction; Override

Visibility: public

Description: BeforeDestruction calls the OnDestroy (234) handler if the OldCreateOrder (234) property is False.

See also: TDataModule.OldCreateOrder (234), TDataModule.OnDestroy (234)

### 2.36.9 TDataModule.DesignOffset

Synopsis: Position property needed for manipulation in an IDE.

Declaration: Property DesignOffset : TPoint

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: DesignOffset is the position of the datamodule when displayed in an IDE. It is streamed to the form file, and should not be used at run-time.

See also: TDataModule.DesignSize (234)

### 2.36.10 TDataModule.DesignSize

Synopsis: Size property needed for manipulation in an IDE.

Declaration: Property DesignSize : TPoint

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: DesignSize is the size of the datamodule when displayed in an IDE. It is streamed to the form file, and should not be used at run-time.

See also: TDataModule.DesignOffset ([233](#))

### 2.36.11 TDataModule.OnCreate

Synopsis: Event handler, called when the datamodule is created.

Declaration: Property OnCreate : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The OnCreate event is triggered when the datamodule is created and streamed. The exact moment of triggering is dependent on the value of the OldCreateOrder ([234](#)) property.

See also: TDataModule.Create ([232](#)), TDataModule.CreateNew ([232](#)), TDataModule.OldCreateOrder ([234](#))

### 2.36.12 TDataModule.OnDestroy

Synopsis: Event handler, called when the datamodule is destroyed.

Declaration: Property OnDestroy : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: The OnDestroy event is triggered when the datamodule is destroyed. The exact moment of triggering is dependent on the value of the OldCreateOrder ([234](#)) property.

See also: TDataModule.Destroy ([232](#)), TDataModule.OnCreate ([234](#)), TDataModule.Create ([232](#)), TDataModule.CreateNew ([232](#)), TDataModule.OldCreateOrder ([234](#))

### 2.36.13 TDataModule.OldCreateOrder

Synopsis: Determines when OnCreate and OnDestroy are triggered.

Declaration: Property OldCreateOrder : Boolean

Visibility: published

Access: Read,Write

Description: OldCreateOrder determines when exactly the OnCreate ([234](#)) and OnDestroy ([234](#)) event handlers are called:

See also: TDataModule.OnDestroy ([234](#)), TDataModule.OnCreate ([234](#)), TDataModule.Destroy ([232](#)), TDataModule.Create ([232](#)), TDataModule.CreateNew ([232](#)), TDataModule.OldCreateOrder ([234](#))

## 2.37 TFiler

### 2.37.1 Description

Class responsible for streaming of components.

### 2.37.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">235</a>	DefineBinaryProperty	
<a href="#">235</a>	DefineProperty	

### 2.37.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">236</a>	Ancestor	rw	Ancestor component from which an inherited component is streamed.
<a href="#">236</a>	IgnoreChildren	rw	Determines whether children will be streamed as well.
<a href="#">236</a>	LookupRoot	r	Component used to look up ancestor components.
<a href="#">235</a>	Root	rw	The root component is the initial component which is being streamed.

### 2.37.4 TFiler.DefineProperty

Synopsis:

```
Declaration: procedure DefineProperty(const Name: String; ReadData: TReaderProc;
                                     WriteData: TWriterProc; HasData: Boolean)
                                     ; Virtual; Abstract
```

Visibility: public

Description:

### 2.37.5 TFiler.DefineBinaryProperty

Synopsis:

```
Declaration: procedure DefineBinaryProperty(const Name: String; ReadData: TStreamProc;
                                           WriteData: TStreamProc; HasData: Boolean)
                                           ; Virtual; Abstract
```

Visibility: public

Description:

### 2.37.6 TFiler.Root

Synopsis: The root component is the initial component which is being streamed.

```
Declaration: Property Root : TComponent
```

Visibility: public

Access: Read, Write



Description: The streaming process will stream a component and all the components which it owns. The `Root` component is the component which is initially streamed.

See also: `TFile.LookupRoot` ([236](#))

### 2.37.7 `TFile.LookupRoot`

Synopsis: Component used to look up ancestor components.

Declaration: `Property LookupRoot : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: When comparing inherited component's values against parent values, the values are compared with the component in `LookupRoot`. Initially, it is set to `Root` ([235](#)).

See also: `TFile.Root` ([235](#))

### 2.37.8 `TFile.Ancestor`

Synopsis: Ancestor component from which an inherited component is streamed.

Declaration: `Property Ancestor : TPersistent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: When streaming a component, this is the parent component. Only properties that differ from the parent's property value will be streamed.

See also: `TFile.Root` ([235](#)), `TFile.LookupRoot` ([236](#))

### 2.37.9 `TFile.IgnoreChildren`

Synopsis: Determines whether children will be streamed as well.

Declaration: `Property IgnoreChildren : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: By default, all children (i.e. owned objects) will also be streamed when streaming a component. This property can be used to prevent owned objects from being streamed.

## 2.38 `TFileStream`

### 2.38.1 Description

`TFileStream` is a `TStream` ([273](#)) descendent that stores or reads it's data from a named file in the filesystem of the operating system.

To this end, it overrides some of the abstract methods in `TStream` and implements them for the case of files on disk, and it adds the `FileName` ([238](#)) property to the list of public properties.

### 2.38.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">237</a>	Create	Creates a file stream.
<a href="#">237</a>	Destroy	Destroys the file stream.

### 2.38.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">238</a>	FileName	r	The filename of the stream.

### 2.38.4 TFileStream.Create

Synopsis: Creates a file stream.

Declaration: constructor `Create(const AFileName: String; Mode: Word)`  
 constructor `Create(const AFileName: String; Mode: Word; Rights: Cardinal)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of a `TFileStream` class. It opens the file `AFileName` with mode `Mode`, which can have one of the following values:

Table 2.16:

<code>fmCreate</code>	<code>TFileStream.Create</code> ( <a href="#">237</a> ) creates a new file if needed.
<code>fmOpenRead</code>	<code>TFileStream.Create</code> ( <a href="#">237</a> ) opens a file with read-only access.
<code>fmOpenWrite</code>	<code>TFileStream.Create</code> ( <a href="#">237</a> ) opens a file with write-only access.
<code>fmOpenReadWrite</code>	<code>TFileStream.Create</code> ( <a href="#">237</a> ) opens a file with read-write access.

After the file has been opened in the requested mode and a handle has been obtained from the operating system, the inherited constructor is called.

Errors: If the file could not be opened in the requested mode, an `EOpenError` ([180](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TStream` ([273](#)), `TFileStream.FileName` ([238](#)), `THandleStream.Create` ([245](#))

### 2.38.5 TFileStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the file stream.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy`; Override

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` closes the file (causing possible buffered data to be written to disk) and then calls the inherited destructor.

Do not call `destroy` directly, instead call the `Free` method. `Destroy` does not check whether `Self` is nil, while `Free` does.

See also: `TFileStream.Create` ([237](#))

### 2.38.6 TFileStream.FileName

Synopsis: The filename of the stream.

Declaration: Property FileName : String

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: FileName is the name of the file that the stream reads from or writes to. It is the name as passed in the constructor of the stream; it cannot be changed. To write to another file, the stream must be freed and created again with the new filename.

See also: TFileStream.Create ([237](#))

## 2.39 TFPList

### 2.39.1 Description

TFPList is a class that can be used to manage collections of pointers. It introduces methods and properties to store the pointers, search in the list of pointers, sort them. It manages its memory by itself, no intervention for that is needed. Contrary to TList ([246](#)), TFPList has no notification mechanism. If no notification mechanism is used, it is better to use TFPList instead of TList, as the performance of TFPList is much higher.

To manage collections of strings, it is better to use a TStringList ([287](#)) descendent such as TStringList ([282](#)). To manage general objects, a TCollection ([213](#)) class exists, from which a descendent can be made to manage collections of various kinds.

### 2.39.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">239</a>	Add	Adds a new pointer to the list.
<a href="#">242</a>	Assign	Assigns all items of a list to this list.
<a href="#">239</a>	Clear	Clears the pointer list.
<a href="#">239</a>	Delete	Removes a pointer from the list.
<a href="#">239</a>	Destroy	Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements.
<a href="#">240</a>	Error	Raises an EListError ( <a href="#">180</a> ) exception.
<a href="#">240</a>	Exchange	Exchanges two pointers in the list.
<a href="#">240</a>	Expand	Increases the capacity of the list if needed.
<a href="#">240</a>	Extract	Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.
<a href="#">241</a>	First	Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.
<a href="#">241</a>	IndexOf	Returns the index of a given pointer.
<a href="#">241</a>	Insert	Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.
<a href="#">241</a>	Last	Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.
<a href="#">242</a>	Move	Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.
<a href="#">242</a>	Pack	Removes Nil pointers from the list and frees unused memory.
<a href="#">242</a>	Remove	Removes a value from the list.
<a href="#">243</a>	Sort	Sorts the pointers in the list.

### 2.39.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">243</a>	Capacity	rw	Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list.
<a href="#">243</a>	Count	rw	Current number of pointers in the list.
<a href="#">244</a>	Items	rw	Prohibes access to the pointers in the list.
<a href="#">244</a>	List	r	Memory array where pointers are stored.

### 2.39.4 TFPList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements. The elements themselves are in no way touched, i.e. any memory they point to must be explicitly released before calling the destructor.

### 2.39.5 TFPList.Add

Synopsis: Adds a new pointer to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new pointer to the list after the last pointer (i.e. at position `Count`, thus increasing the item count with 1. If the list is at full capacity, the capacity of the list is expanded, using the `Grow` ([238](#)) method.

To insert a pointer at a certain position in the list, use the `Insert` ([241](#)) method instead.

See also: `TFPList.Delete` ([239](#)), `TFPList.Grow` ([238](#)), `TFPList.Insert` ([241](#))

### 2.39.6 TFPList.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the pointer list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all pointers from the list, and sets the capacity to 0, thus freeing any memory allocated to maintain the list.

See also: `TFPList.Destroy` ([239](#))

### 2.39.7 TFPList.Delete

Synopsis: Removes a pointer from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `Delete` removes the pointer at position `Index` from the list, shifting all following pointers one position up (or to the left).

The memory the pointer is pointing to is *not* deallocated.

### 2.39.8 TFPList.Error

**Synopsis:** Raises an `EListError` (180) exception.

**Declaration:** `procedure Error(const Msg: String;Data: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Error` raises an `EListError` (180) exception, with a message formatted with `Msg` and `Data`.

### 2.39.9 TFPList.Exchange

**Synopsis:** Exchanges two pointers in the list.

**Declaration:** `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer;Index2: Integer)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Exchange` exchanges the pointers at positions `Index1` and `Index2`. Both pointers must be within the current range of the list, or an `EListError` (180) exception will be raised.

### 2.39.10 TFPList.Expand

**Synopsis:** Increases the capacity of the list if needed.

**Declaration:** `function Expand : TFPList`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Expand` increases the capacity of the list if the current element count matches the current list capacity.

The capacity is increased according to the following algorithm:

- 1.If the capacity is less than 3, the capacity is increased with 4.
- 2.If the capacity is larger than 3 and less than 8, the capacity is increased with 8.
- 3.If the capacity is larger than 8, the capacity is increased with 16.

The return value is `Self`.

See also: `TFPList.Capacity` (243)

### 2.39.11 TFPList.Extract

**Synopsis:** Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.

**Declaration:** `function Extract(item: Pointer) : Pointer`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Extract` searches for the first occurrence of `Item` in the list and deletes it from the list. If `Item` was found, it's value is returned. If `Item` was not found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPList.Delete` (239)

### 2.39.12 TFPList.First

Synopsis: Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function First : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `First` returns the value of the first non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPList.Last` ([241](#))

### 2.39.13 TFPList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Returns the index of a given pointer.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IndexOf` searches for the pointer `Item` in the list of pointers, and returns the index of the pointer, if found.

If no pointer with the value `Item` was found, -1 is returned.

### 2.39.14 TFPList.Insert

Synopsis: Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Insert` inserts pointer `Item` at position `Index` in the list. All pointers starting from `Index` are shifted to the right.

If `Index` is not a valid position, then a `EListError` ([180](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPList.Add` ([239](#)), `TFPList.Delete` ([239](#))

### 2.39.15 TFPList.Last

Synopsis: Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : Pointer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Last` returns the value of the last non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TFPList.First` ([241](#))

### 2.39.16 TFPList.Move

Synopsis: Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move(CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Move` moves the pointer at position `CurIndex` to position `NewIndex`. This is done by storing the value at position `CurIndex`, deleting the pointer at position `CurIndex`, and reinserting the value at position `NewIndex`.

If `CurIndex` or `NewIndex` are not inside the valid range of indices, an `EListError` (180) exception is raised.

See also: `TFPList.Exchange` (240)

### 2.39.17 TFPList.Assign

Synopsis: Assigns all items of a list to this list.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Obj: TFPList)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` clears the list and adds all pointers in `Obj` to the list.

See also: `TFPList.Add` (239), `TFPList.Clear` (239)

### 2.39.18 TFPList.Remove

Synopsis: Removes a value from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Remove` searches `Item` in the list, and, if it finds it, deletes the item from the list. Only the first occurrence of `Item` is removed.

See also: `TFPList.Delete` (239), `TFPList.IndexOf` (241), `TFPList.Insert` (241)

### 2.39.19 TFPList.Pack

Synopsis: Removes `Nil` pointers from the list and frees unused memory.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pack` removes all `nil` pointers from the list. The capacity of the list is then set to the number of pointers in the list. This method can be used to free unused memory if the list has grown to very large sizes and has a lot of unneeded `nil` pointers in it.

See also: `TFPList.Clear` (239)

### 2.39.20 TFPList.Sort

Synopsis: Sorts the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Sort(Compare: TListSortCompare)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Sort` sorts the pointers in the list. Two pointers are compared by passing them to the `Compare` function. The result of this function determines how the pointers will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first pointer is assumed to be 'less' than the second and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second and will be moved after the second in the list.
- If the function result is zero, the pointers are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

The sort is done using a quicksort algorithm.

### 2.39.21 TFPList.Capacity

Synopsis: Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Capacity` contains the number of pointers the list can store before it starts to grow.

If a new pointer is added to the list using `add` (239) or `insert` (241), and there is not enough memory to store the new pointer, then the list will try to allocate more memory to store the new pointer. Since this is a time consuming operation, it is important that this operation be performed as little as possible. If it is known how many pointers there will be before filling the list, it is a good idea to set the capacity first before filling. This ensures that the list doesn't need to grow, and will speed up filling the list.

See also: `TFPList.SetCapacity` (238), `TFPList.Count` (243)

### 2.39.22 TFPList.Count

Synopsis: Current number of pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Count` is the current number of (possibly `Nil`) pointers in the list. Since the list is zero-based, the index of the largest pointer is `Count-1`.



### 2.39.23 TFPList.Items

Synopsis: Provides access to the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read, Write

Description: `Items` is used to access the pointers in the list. It is the default property of the `TFPList` class, so it can be omitted.

The list is zero-based, so `Index` must be in the range 0 to `Count-1`.

### 2.39.24 TFPList.List

Synopsis: Memory array where pointers are stored.

Declaration: `Property List : PPointerList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read

Description: `List` points to the memory space where the pointers are stored. This can be used to quickly copy the list of pointers to another location.

## 2.40 THandleStream

### 2.40.1 Description

`THandleStream` is an abstract descendent of the `TStream` (273) class that provides methods for a stream to handle all reading and writing to and from a handle, provided by the underlying OS. To this end, it overrides the `Read` (245) and `Write` (245) methods of `TStream`.

#### Remark:

- `THandleStream` does not obtain a handle from the OS by itself, it just handles reading and writing to such a handle by wrapping the system calls for reading and writing; Descendent classes should obtain a handle from the OS by themselves and pass it on in the inherited constructor.
- Contrary to Delphi, no seek is implemented for `THandleStream`, since pipes and sockets do not support this. The seek is implemented in descendent methods that support it.

### 2.40.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">245</a>	Create	Create a handlestream from an OS Handle.
<a href="#">245</a>	Read	Overrides standard read method.
<a href="#">245</a>	Seek	Overrides the Seek method.
<a href="#">245</a>	Write	Overrides standard write method.

### 2.40.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">246</a>	Handle	r	The OS handle of the stream.

#### 2.40.4 THandleStream.Create

Synopsis: Create a handlestream from an OS Handle.

Declaration: `constructor Create(AHandle: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of a `THandleStream` class. It stores `AHandle` in an internal variable and then calls the inherited constructor.

See also: `TStream` (273)

#### 2.40.5 THandleStream.Read

Synopsis: Overrides standard read method.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` implements the abstract `Read` (274) method of `TStream`. It uses the `Handle` (246) property to read the `Count` bytes into `Buffer`.

If no error occurs while reading, the number of bytes actually read will be returned.

Errors: If the operating system reports an error while reading from the handle, -1 is returned.

See also: `TStream.Read` (274), `THandleStream.Write` (245), `THandleStream.Handle` (246)

#### 2.40.6 THandleStream.Write

Synopsis: Overrides standard write method.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` implements the abstract `Write` (275) method of `TStream`. It uses the `Handle` (246) property to write the `Count` bytes from `Buffer`.

If no error occurs while writing, the number of bytes actually written will be returned.

Errors: If the operating system reports an error while writing to handle, -1 is returned.

See also: `TStream.Read` (274), `THandleStream.Write` (245), `THandleStream.Handle` (246)

#### 2.40.7 THandleStream.Seek

Synopsis: Overrides the `Seek` method.

Declaration: `function Seek(const Offset: Int64; Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `seek` uses the `FileSeek` (1143) method to position the stream on the desired position. Note that handle stream descendents (notably pipes) can override the method to prevent the seek.

### 2.40.8 THandleStream.Handle

Synopsis: The OS handle of the stream.

Declaration: `Property Handle : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Handle` represents the Operating system handle to which reading and writing is done. The handle can be read only, i.e. it cannot be set after the `THandleStream` instance was created. It should be passed to the constructor `THandleStream.Create` (245)

See also: `THandleStream` (244), `THandleStream.Create` (245)

## 2.41 TList

### 2.41.1 Description

`TList` is a class that can be used to manage collections of pointers. It introduces methods and properties to store the pointers, search in the list of pointers, sort them. It manages its memory by itself, no intervention for that is needed. It has an event notification mechanism which allows to notify of list changes. This slows down some of `TList` mechanisms, and if no notification is used, `TFPList` (238) may be used instead.

To manage collections of strings, it is better to use a `TStrings` (287) descendent such as `TStringList` (282). To manage general objects, a `TCollection` (213) class exists, from which a descendent can be made to manage collections of various kinds.

### 2.41.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
247	Add	Adds a new pointer to the list.
250	Assign	Copy the contents of another list.
247	Clear	Clears the pointer list.
247	Create	Class to manage collections of pointers.
248	Delete	Removes a pointer from the list.
247	Destroy	Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements.
248	Error	Raises an <code>EListError</code> (180) exception.
248	Exchange	Exchanges two pointers in the list.
248	Expand	Increases the capacity of the list if needed.
249	Extract	Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.
249	First	Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.
249	IndexOf	Returns the index of a given pointer.
249	Insert	Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.
250	Last	Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.
250	Move	Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.
251	Pack	Removes <code>Nil</code> pointers from the list and frees unused memory.
250	Remove	Removes a value from the list.
251	Sort	Sorts the pointers in the list.

### 2.41.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">251</a>	Capacity	rw	Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list.
<a href="#">252</a>	Count	rw	Current number of pointers in the list.
<a href="#">252</a>	Items	rw	Provides access to the pointers in the list.
<a href="#">252</a>	List	r	Memory array where pointers are stored.

### 2.41.4 TList.Create

Synopsis: Class to manage collections of pointers.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `TList.Create` creates a new instance of `TList`. It clears the list and prepares it for use.

See also: `TList` ([246](#)), `TList.Destroy` ([247](#))

### 2.41.5 TList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` destroys the list and releases the memory used to store the list elements. The elements themselves are in no way touched, i.e. any memory they point to must be explicitly released before calling the destructor.

### 2.41.6 TList.Add

Synopsis: Adds a new pointer to the list.

Declaration: `function Add(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` adds a new pointer to the list after the last pointer (i.e. at position `Count`, thus increasing the item count with 1. If the list is at full capacity, the capacity of the list is expanded, using the `Grow` ([246](#)) method.

To insert a pointer at a certain position in the list, use the `Insert` ([249](#)) method instead.

See also: `TList.Delete` ([248](#)), `TList.Grow` ([246](#)), `TList.Insert` ([249](#))

### 2.41.7 TList.Clear

Synopsis: Clears the pointer list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` removes all pointers from the list, and sets the capacity to 0, thus freeing any memory allocated to maintain the list.

See also: `TList.Destroy` ([247](#))

### 2.41.8 TList.Delete

Synopsis: Removes a pointer from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` removes the pointer at position `Index` from the list, shifting all following pointers one position up (or to the left).

The memory the pointer is pointing to is *not* deallocated.

### 2.41.9 TList.Error

Synopsis: Raises an `EListError` ([180](#)) exception.

Declaration: `procedure Error(const Msg: String; Data: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Error` raises an `EListError` ([180](#)) exception, with a message formatted with `Msg` and `Data`.

### 2.41.10 TList.Exchange

Synopsis: Exchanges two pointers in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exchange` exchanges the pointers at positions `Index1` and `Index2`. Both pointers must be within the current range of the list, or an `EListError` ([180](#)) exception will be raised.

### 2.41.11 TList.Expand

Synopsis: Increases the capacity of the list if needed.

Declaration: `function Expand : TList`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Expand` increases the capacity of the list if the current element count matches the current list capacity.

The capacity is increased according to the following algorithm:

- 1.If the capacity is less than 3, the capacity is increased with 4.
- 2.If the capacity is larger than 3 and less than 8, the capacity is increased with 8.
- 3.If the capacity is larger than 8, the capacity is increased with 16.

The return value is `Self`.

See also: `TList.Capacity` ([251](#))

### 2.41.12 TList.Extract

Synopsis: Remove the first occurrence of a pointer from the list.

Declaration: `function Extract(item: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Extract` searched for an occurrence of `item`, and if a match is found, the match is deleted from the list. If no match is found, nothing is deleted. If `Item` was found, the result is `Item`. If `Item` was not found, the result is `Nil`. A `lnExtracted` notification event is triggered if an element is extracted from the list. Note that a `lnDeleted` event will also occur.

See also: `TList.Delete` (248), `TList.IndexOf` (249), `TList.Remove` (250)

### 2.41.13 TList.First

Synopsis: Returns the first non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function First : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `First` returns the value of the first non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TList.Last` (250)

### 2.41.14 TList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Returns the index of a given pointer.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOf` searches for the pointer `Item` in the list of pointers, and returns the index of the pointer, if found.

If no pointer with the value `Item` was found, -1 is returned.

### 2.41.15 TList.Insert

Synopsis: Inserts a new pointer in the list at a given position.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts pointer `Item` at position `Index` in the list. All pointers starting from `Index` are shifted to the right.

If `Index` is not a valid position, then a `EListError` (180) exception is raised.

See also: `TList.Add` (247), `Tlist.Delete` (248)

### 2.41.16 TList.Last

Synopsis: Returns the last non-nil pointer in the list.

Declaration: `function Last : Pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Last` returns the value of the last non-nil pointer in the list.

If there are no pointers in the list or all pointers equal `Nil`, then `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TList.First` ([249](#))

### 2.41.17 TList.Move

Synopsis: Moves a pointer from one position in the list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move(CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Move` moves the pointer at position `CurIndex` to position `NewIndex`. This is done by storing the value at position `CurIndex`, deleting the pointer at position `CurIndex`, and reinserting the value at position `NewIndex`.

If `CurIndex` or `NewIndex` are not inside the valid range of indices, an `EListError` ([180](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TList.Exchange` ([248](#))

### 2.41.18 TList.Assign

Synopsis: Copy the contents of another list.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Obj: TList)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Assign` copies the pointers of the `Obj` list to the list. The list is cleared prior to copying.

See also: `TList.Clear` ([247](#))

### 2.41.19 TList.Remove

Synopsis: Removes a value from the list.

Declaration: `function Remove(Item: Pointer) : Integer`

Visibility: public

Description: `Remove` searches `Item` in the list, and, if it finds it, deletes the item from the list. Only the first occurrence of `Item` is removed.

See also: `TList.Delete` ([248](#)), `TList.IndexOf` ([249](#)), `TList.Insert` ([249](#))

### 2.41.20 TList.Pack

Synopsis: Removes Nil pointers from the list and frees unused memory.

Declaration: `procedure Pack`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Pack` removes all `nil` pointers from the list. The capacity of the list is then set to the number of pointers in the list. This method can be used to free unused memory if the list has grown to very large sizes and has a lot of unneeded `nil` pointers in it.

See also: `TList.Clear` ([247](#))

### 2.41.21 TList.Sort

Synopsis: Sorts the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Sort(Compare: TListSortCompare)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Sort`> sorts the pointers in the list. Two pointers are compared by passing them to the `Compare` function. The result of this function determines how the pointers will be sorted:

- If the result of this function is negative, the first pointer is assumed to be 'less' than the second and will be moved before the second in the list.
- If the function result is positive, the first pointer is assumed to be 'greater than' the second and will be moved after the second in the list.
- If the function result is zero, the pointers are assumed to be 'equal' and no moving will take place.

The sort is done using a quicksort algorithm.

### 2.41.22 TList.Capacity

Synopsis: Current capacity (i.e. number of pointers that can be stored) of the list.

Declaration: `Property Capacity : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read, Write`

Description: `Capacity` contains the number of pointers the list can store before it starts to grow.

If a new pointer is added to the list using `add` ([247](#)) or `insert` ([249](#)), and there is not enough memory to store the new pointer, then the list will try to allocate more memory to store the new pointer. Since this is a time consuming operation, it is important that this operation be performed as little as possible. If it is known how many pointers there will be before filling the list, it is a good idea to set the capacity first before filling. This ensures that the list doesn't need to grow, and will speed up filling the list.

See also: `TList.SetCapacity` ([246](#)), `TList.Count` ([252](#))



**2.41.23 TList.Count**

Synopsis: Current number of pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Count` is the current number of (possibly `Nil`) pointers in the list. Since the list is zero-based, the index of the largest pointer is `Count-1`.

**2.41.24 TList.Items**

Synopsis: Provides access to the pointers in the list.

Declaration: `Property Items[Index: Integer]: Pointer; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Items` is used to access the pointers in the list. It is the default property of the `TList` class, so it can be omitted.

The list is zero-based, so `Index` must be in the range 0 to `Count-1`.

**2.41.25 TList.List**

Synopsis: Memory array where pointers are stored.

Declaration: `Property List : PPointerList`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `List` points to the memory space where the pointers are stored. This can be used to quickly copy the list of pointers to another location.

**2.42 TMemoryStream****2.42.1 Description**

`TMemoryStream` is a `TStream` (273) descendent that stores its data in memory. It descends directly from `TCustomMemoryStream` (229) and implements the necessary to allocate and de-allocate memory directly from the heap. It implements the `Write` (254) method which is missing in `TCustomMemoryStream`.

`TMemoryStream` also introduces methods to load the contents of another stream or a file into the memory stream.

It is not necessary to do any memory management manually, as the stream will allocate or de-allocate memory as needed. When the stream is freed, all allocated memory will be freed as well.

### 2.42.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">253</a>	Clear	Zeroes the position, capacity and size of the stream.
<a href="#">253</a>	Destroy	Frees any allocated memory and destroys the memory stream.
<a href="#">254</a>	LoadFromFile	Loads the contents of a file into memory.
<a href="#">253</a>	LoadFromStream	Loads the contents of a stream into memory.
<a href="#">254</a>	SetSize	Sets the size for the memory stream.
<a href="#">254</a>	Write	Writes data to the stream's memory.

### 2.42.3 TMemoryStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Frees any allocated memory and destroys the memory stream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Free` clears the memory stream, thus in effect freeing any memory allocated for it, and then frees the memory stream.

### 2.42.4 TMemoryStream.Clear

Synopsis: Zeroes the position, capacity and size of the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` sets the position and size to 0, and sets the capacity of the stream to 0, thus freeing all memory allocated for the stream.

See also: `TStream.Size` ([282](#)), `TStream.Position` ([282](#)), `TCustomMemoryStream.Memory` ([231](#))

### 2.42.5 TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Loads the contents of a stream into memory.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromStream` loads the contents of `Stream` into the `memorybuffer` of the stream. Any previous contents of the memory stream are overwritten. Memory is allocated as needed.

**Remark:** The `LoadFromStream` uses the `Size` ([282](#)) property of `Stream` to determine how much memory must be allocated. Some streams do not allow the stream size to be determined, so care must be taken when using this method.

This method will work much faster than the use of the `TStream.CopyFrom` ([276](#)) method:

```
Seek(0, soFromBeginning);
CopyFrom(Stream, Stream.Size);
```

because the `CopyFrom` method copies the contents in blocks, while `LoadFromStream` reads the contents of the stream as one big block.

Errors: If an error occurs when reading from the stream, an `EStreamError` ([181](#)) may occur.

See also: `TStream.CopyFrom` ([276](#)), `TMemoryStream.LoadFromFile` ([254](#))

### 2.42.6 TMemoryStream.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Loads the contents of a file into memory.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: String)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `LoadFromFile` loads the contents of the file with name `FileName` into the memory stream. The current contents of the memory stream is replaced by the contents of the file. Memory is allocated as needed.

The `LoadFromFile` method simply creates a filestream and then calls the `TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream` (253) method.

See also: `TMemoryStream.LoadFromStream` (253)

### 2.42.7 TMemoryStream.SetSize

Synopsis: Sets the size for the memory stream.

Declaration: `procedure SetSize(NewSize: LongInt); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `SetSize` sets the size of the memory stream to `NewSize`. This will set the capacity of the stream to `NewSize` and correct the current position in the stream when needed.

See also: `TStream.Position` (282), `TStream.Size` (282)

### 2.42.8 TMemoryStream.Write

Synopsis: Writes data to the stream's memory.

Declaration: `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Write` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the stream's memory, starting at the current position in the stream. If more memory is needed than currently allocated, more memory will be allocated. Any contents in the memory stream at the current position will be overwritten. The function returns the number of bytes actually written (which should under normal circumstances always equal `Count`).

This method overrides the abstract `TStream.Write` (275) method.

Errors: If no more memory could be allocated, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TCustomMemoryStream.Read` (229)

## 2.43 TOwnedCollection

### 2.43.1 Description

`TOwnedCollection` automatically maintains owner information, so it can be displayed in an IDE. Collections that should be displayed in an IDE should descend from `TOwnedCollection` or must implement a `GetOwner` function.

### 2.43.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">255</a>	Create	Create a new <code>TOwnerCollection</code> instance.

### 2.43.3 `TOwnedCollection.Create`

Synopsis: Create a new `TOwnerCollection` instance.

Declaration: constructor `Create(AOwner: TPersistent; AItemClass: TCollectionItemClass)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of `TOwnedCollection` and stores the `AOwner` references. It will the value returned in the `TCollection.Owner` ([214](#)) property of the collection. The `ItemClass` class reference is passed on to the inherited constructor, and will be used to create new instances in the `Insert` ([216](#)) and `Add` ([215](#)) methods.

See also: `TCollection.Create` ([214](#)), `TCollection.Owner` ([214](#))

## 2.44 `TOwnerStream`

### 2.44.1 Description

`TOwnerStream` can be used when creating stream chains such as when using encryption and compression streams. It keeps a reference to the source stream and will automatically free the source stream when ready (if the `SourceOwner` ([256](#)) property is set to `True`).

### 2.44.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">255</a>	Create	Create a new instance of <code>TOwnerStream</code> .
<a href="#">256</a>	Destroy	Destroys the <code>TOwnerStream</code> instance and the source stream.

### 2.44.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">256</a>	Source	r	Reference to the source stream.
<a href="#">256</a>	SourceOwner	rw	Indicates whether the ownerstream owns it's source

### 2.44.4 `TOwnerStream.Create`

Synopsis: Create a new instance of `TOwnerStream`.

Declaration: constructor `Create(ASource: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` instantiates a new instance of `TOwnerStream` and stores the reference to `AStream`. If `SourceOwner` is `True`, the soure stream will also be freed when the instance is destroyed.

See also: `TOwnerStream.Destroy` ([256](#)), `TOwnerStream.Source` ([256](#)), `TOwnerStream.SourceOwner` ([256](#))

### 2.44.5 TOwnerStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TOwnerStream instance and the source stream.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroy frees the source stream if the SourceOwner property is True.

Errors:

See also: TOwnerStream.Create ([255](#)), TOwnerStream.Source ([256](#)), TOwnerStream.SourceOwner ([256](#))

### 2.44.6 TOwnerStream.Source

Synopsis: Reference to the source stream.

Declaration: `Property Source : TStream`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Source is the source stream. It should be uses by descendent streams to access the source stream to read from or write to.

Do not free the Source reference directly. Either the owner stream instance should free the source stream or

See also: TOwnerStream.Create ([255](#))

### 2.44.7 TOwnerStream.SourceOwner

Synopsis: Indicates whether the ownerstream owns it's source

Declaration: `Property SourceOwner : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: SourceOwner indicates whether the TOwnerStream owns it's Source stream or not. If this property is True then the Source stream is freed when the TOwnerStream instance is freed.

See also: TOwnerStream.Source ([256](#)), TOwnerStream.Destroy ([256](#))

## 2.45 TParser

### 2.45.1 Description

Class to parse the contents of a stream containing text data.

**2.45.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">257</a>	CheckToken	Checks whether the token if of the given type.
<a href="#">258</a>	CheckTokenSymbol	Checks whether the token equals the given symbol
<a href="#">257</a>	Create	Creates a new parser instance.
<a href="#">257</a>	Destroy	Destroys the parser instance.
<a href="#">258</a>	Error	Raises an EParserError ( <a href="#">181</a> ) exception with the given message
<a href="#">258</a>	ErrorFmt	Raises an EParserError ( <a href="#">181</a> ) exception and formats the message.
<a href="#">258</a>	ErrorStr	Raises an EParserError ( <a href="#">181</a> ) exception with the given message
<a href="#">258</a>	HexToBinary	Writes hexadecimal data to the stream.
<a href="#">258</a>	NextToken	Reads the next token and returns its type.
<a href="#">259</a>	SourcePos	Returns the current position in the stream.
<a href="#">259</a>	TokenComponentIdent	Checks whether the current token is a component identifier.
<a href="#">259</a>	TokenFloat	Returns the current token as a float.
<a href="#">259</a>	TokenInt	Returns the current token as an integer.
<a href="#">259</a>	TokenString	Returns the current token as a string.
<a href="#">259</a>	TokenSymbolIs	Returns <code>True</code> if the current token is a symbol.

**2.45.3 Property overview**

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">260</a>	SourceLine	r	Current source linenumber.
<a href="#">260</a>	Token	r	Contents of the current token.

**2.45.4 TParser.Create**

Synopsis: Creates a new parser instance.

Declaration: constructor `Create(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new parser instance.

**2.45.5 TParser.Destroy**

Synopsis: Destroys the parser instance.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys the parser instance.

**2.45.6 TParser.CheckToken**

Synopsis: Checks whether the token if of the given type.

Declaration: procedure `CheckToken(T: Char)`

Visibility: public

Description: Checks whether the token if of the given type.

### 2.45.7 TParser.CheckTokenSymbol

Synopsis: Checks whether the token equals the given symbol

Declaration: `procedure CheckTokenSymbol(const S: String)`

Visibility: public

Description: Checks whether the token equals the given symbol

### 2.45.8 TParser.Error

Synopsis: Raises an EParserError (181) exception with the given message

Declaration: `procedure Error(const Ident: String)`

Visibility: public

Description: Raises an EParserError (181) exception with the given message

### 2.45.9 TParser.ErrorFmt

Synopsis: Raises an EParserError (181) exception and formats the message.

Declaration: `procedure ErrorFmt(const Ident: String; const Args: Array[] of const)`

Visibility: public

Description: Raises an EParserError (181) exception and formats the message.

### 2.45.10 TParser.ErrorStr

Synopsis: Raises an EParserError (181) exception with the given message

Declaration: `procedure ErrorStr(const Message: String)`

Visibility: public

Description: Raises an EParserError (181) exception with the given message

### 2.45.11 TParser.HexToBinary

Synopsis: Writes hexadecimal data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure HexToBinary(Stream: TStream)`

Visibility: public

Description: Writes hexadecimal data to the stream.

### 2.45.12 TParser.NextToken

Synopsis: Reads the next token and returns its type.

Declaration: `function NextToken : Char`

Visibility: public

Description: Reads the next token and returns its type.

### 2.45.13 TParser.SourcePos

Synopsis: Returns the current position in the stream.

Declaration: `function SourcePos : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns the current position in the stream.

### 2.45.14 TParser.TokenComponentIdent

Synopsis: Checks whether the current token is a component identifier.

Declaration: `function TokenComponentIdent : String`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Checks whether the current token is a component identifier.

### 2.45.15 TParser.TokenFloat

Synopsis: Returns the current token as a float.

Declaration: `function TokenFloat : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns the current token as a float.

### 2.45.16 TParser.TokenInt

Synopsis: Returns the current token as an integer.

Declaration: `function TokenInt : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns the current token as an integer.

### 2.45.17 TParser.TokenString

Synopsis: Returns the current token as a string.

Declaration: `function TokenString : String`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns the current token as a string.

### 2.45.18 TParser.TokenSymbols

Synopsis: Returns `True` if the current token is a symbol.

Declaration: `function TokenSymbolIs(const S: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Returns `True` if the current token is a symbol.



### 2.45.19 TParser.SourceLine

Synopsis: Current source linenumber.

Declaration: Property SourceLine : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Current source linenumber.

### 2.45.20 TParser.Token

Synopsis: Contents of the current token.

Declaration: Property Token : Char

Visibility: public

Access: Read

Description: Contents of the current token.

## 2.46 TPersistent

### 2.46.1 Description

TPersistent is the basic class for the streaming system. Since it is compiled in the { \$M+ } state, the compiler generates RTTI (Run-Time Type Information) for it and all classes that descend from it. This information can be used to stream all properties of classes.

It also introduces functionality to assign the contents of 2 classes to each other.

### 2.46.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">261</a>	Assign	Assign the contents of one class to another.
<a href="#">260</a>	Destroy	Destroys the TPersistent instance.
<a href="#">261</a>	GetNamePath	Returns a string that can be used to identify the class instance.

### 2.46.3 TPersistent.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the TPersistent instance.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Override

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy disposes of the persistent object. This method should never be called directly. Instead the Free method should be used.

### 2.46.4 TPersistent.Assign

Synopsis: Assign the contents of one class to another.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` copies the contents of `Source` to `Self`, if the classes of the destination and source classes are compatible.

The `TPersistent` implementation of `Assign` does nothing but calling the `AssignTo` (260) method of source. This means that if the destination class does not know how to assign the contents of the source class, the source class instance is asked to assign itself to the destination class. This means that it is necessary to implement only one of the two methods so that two classes can be assigned to one another.

**Remark:** In general, a statement of the form

```
Destination := Source;
```

(where `Destination` and `Source` are classes) does not achieve the same as a statement of the form

```
Destination.Assign(Source);
```

After the former statement, both `Source` and `Destination` will point to the same object. The latter statement will copy the *contents* of the `Source` class to the `Destination` class.

See also: `TPersistent.AssignTo` (260)

### 2.46.5 TPersistent.GetNamePath

Synopsis: Returns a string that can be used to identify the class instance.

Declaration: `function GetNamePath : String; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetNamePath` returns a string that can be used to identify the class instance. This can be used to display a name for this instance in a Object designer.

`GetNamePath` constructs a name by recursively prepending the `Classname` of the Owner instance to the `Classname` of this instance, separated by a dot.

See also: `TPersistent.GetOwner` (260)

## 2.47 TReader

### 2.47.1 Description

The `TReader` class is a reader class that implements generic component streaming capabilities, independent of the format of the data in the stream. It uses a driver class `TAbstractObjectReader` (182) to do the actual reading of data. The interface of the `TReader` class should be identical to the interface in Delphi.

**2.47.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">263</a>	BeginReferences	Initializes the component referencing mechanism.
<a href="#">263</a>	CheckValue	Raises an exception if the next value in the stream is not of type Value
<a href="#">267</a>	CopyValue	Copy a value to a writer.
<a href="#">263</a>	Create	Creates a new reader class
<a href="#">264</a>	DefineBinaryProperty	Reads a user-defined binary property from the stream.
<a href="#">263</a>	DefineProperty	Reads a user-defined property from the stream.
<a href="#">263</a>	Destroy	Destroys a reader class.
<a href="#">264</a>	EndOfList	Returns true if the stream contains an end-of-list marker.
<a href="#">264</a>	EndReferences	Finalizes the component referencing mechanism.
<a href="#">264</a>	FixupReferences	Tries to resolve all unresolved component references.
<a href="#">264</a>	NextValue	Returns the type of the next value.
<a href="#">265</a>	ReadBoolean	Reads a boolean from the stream.
<a href="#">265</a>	ReadChar	Reads a character from the stream.
<a href="#">265</a>	ReadCollection	Reads a collection from the stream.
<a href="#">265</a>	ReadComponent	Starts reading a component from the stream.
<a href="#">265</a>	ReadComponents	Starts reading child components from the stream.
<a href="#">266</a>	ReadDate	Reads a date from the stream
<a href="#">265</a>	ReadFloat	Reads a float from the stream.
<a href="#">266</a>	ReadIdent	Reads an identifier from the stream.
<a href="#">266</a>	ReadInt64	Reads a 64-bit integer from the stream.
<a href="#">266</a>	ReadInteger	Reads an integer from the stream
<a href="#">266</a>	ReadListBegin	Checks for the beginning of a list.
<a href="#">267</a>	ReadListEnd	Checks for the end of a list.
<a href="#">267</a>	ReadRootComponent	Starts reading a root component.
<a href="#">266</a>	ReadSingle	Reads a single-type real from the stream.
<a href="#">267</a>	ReadString	Reads a string from the stream.
<a href="#">267</a>	ReadValue	Reads the next value type from the stream.

**2.47.3 Property overview**

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">267</a>	Driver	r	The driver in use for streaming the data.
<a href="#">269</a>	OnAncestorNotFound	rw	Handler called when the ancestor component cannot be found.
<a href="#">270</a>	OnCreateComponent	rw	Handler called when a component needs to be created.
<a href="#">268</a>	OnError	rw	Handler called when an error occurs.
<a href="#">270</a>	OnFindComponentClass	rw	Handler called when a component class reference needs to be found.
<a href="#">269</a>	OnFindMethod	rw	Handler to find or change a method address.
<a href="#">268</a>	OnPropertyNotFound	rw	Handler for treating missing properties.
<a href="#">270</a>	OnReadStringProperty	rw	Handler for translating strings when read from the stream.
<a href="#">269</a>	OnReferenceName	rw	Handler called when another component is referenced.
<a href="#">269</a>	OnSetMethodProperty	rw	Handler for setting method properties.
<a href="#">269</a>	OnSetName	rw	Handler called when setting a component name.
<a href="#">268</a>	Owner	rw	Owner of the component being read
<a href="#">268</a>	Parent	rw	Parent of the component being read.

#### 2.47.4 TReader.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new reader class

Declaration: constructor `Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new reader class

#### 2.47.5 TReader.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys a reader class.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys a reader class.

#### 2.47.6 TReader.BeginReferences

Synopsis: Initializes the component referencing mechanism.

Declaration: procedure `BeginReferences`

Visibility: public

Description: Initializes the component referencing mechanism.

#### 2.47.7 TReader.CheckValue

Synopsis: Raises an exception if the next value in the stream is not of type Value

Declaration: procedure `CheckValue(Value: TValueType)`

Visibility: public

Description: Raises an exception if the next value in the stream is not of type Value

#### 2.47.8 TReader.DefineProperty

Synopsis: Reads a user-defined property from the stream.

Declaration: procedure `DefineProperty(const Name: String; AReadData: TReaderProc;  
WriteData: TWriterProc; HasData: Boolean)  
; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Reads a user-defined property from the stream.

**2.47.9 TReader.DefineBinaryProperty**

Synopsis: Reads a user-defined binary property from the stream.

Declaration: 

```
procedure DefineBinaryProperty(const Name: String;
                                AReadData: TStreamProc;
                                WriteData: TStreamProc; HasData: Boolean)
                                ; Override
```

Visibility: public

Description: Reads a user-defined binary property from the stream.

**2.47.10 TReader.EndOfList**

Synopsis: Returns true if the stream contains an end-of-list marker.

Declaration: 

```
function EndOfList : Boolean
```

Visibility: public

Description: Returns true if the stream contains an end-of-list marker.

**2.47.11 TReader.EndReferences**

Synopsis: Finalizes the component referencing mechanism.

Declaration: 

```
procedure EndReferences
```

Visibility: public

Description: Finalizes the component referencing mechanism.

**2.47.12 TReader.FixupReferences**

Synopsis: Tries to resolve all unresolved component references.

Declaration: 

```
procedure FixupReferences
```

Visibility: public

Description: Tries to resolve all unresolved component references.

**2.47.13 TReader.NextValue**

Synopsis: Returns the type of the next value.

Declaration: 

```
function NextValue : TValueType
```

Visibility: public

Description: Returns the type of the next value.

#### **2.47.14 TReader.ReadBoolean**

Synopsis: Reads a boolean from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadBoolean : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a boolean from the stream.

#### **2.47.15 TReader.ReadChar**

Synopsis: Reads a character from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadChar : Char`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a character from the stream.

#### **2.47.16 TReader.ReadCollection**

Synopsis: Reads a collection from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadCollection(Collection: TCollection)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a collection from the stream.

#### **2.47.17 TReader.ReadComponent**

Synopsis: Starts reading a component from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadComponent(Component: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Starts reading a component from the stream.

#### **2.47.18 TReader.ReadComponents**

Synopsis: Starts reading child components from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadComponents(AOwner: TComponent; AParent: TComponent;  
Proc: TReadComponentsProc)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Starts reading child components from the stream.

#### **2.47.19 TReader.ReadFloat**

Synopsis: Reads a float from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadFloat : Extended`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a float from the stream.

### **2.47.20 TReader.ReadSingle**

Synopsis: Reads a single-type real from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadSingle : Single`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a single-type real from the stream.

### **2.47.21 TReader.ReadDate**

Synopsis: Reads a date from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadDate : TDateTime`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a date from the stream

### **2.47.22 TReader.ReadIdent**

Synopsis: Reads an identifier from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadIdent : String`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads an identifier from the stream.

### **2.47.23 TReader.ReadInteger**

Synopsis: Reads an integer from the stream

Declaration: `function ReadInteger : LongInt`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads an integer from the stream

### **2.47.24 TReader.ReadInt64**

Synopsis: Reads a 64-bit integer from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadInt64 : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a 64-bit integer from the stream.

### **2.47.25 TReader.ReadListBegin**

Synopsis: Checks for the beginning of a list.

Declaration: `procedure ReadListBegin`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Checks for the beginning of a list.

### **2.47.26 TReader.ReadListEnd**

Synopsis: Checks for the end of a list.

Declaration: `procedure ReadListEnd`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Checks for the end of a list.

### **2.47.27 TReader.ReadRootComponent**

Synopsis: Starts reading a root component.

Declaration: `function ReadRootComponent (ARoot: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Starts reading a root component.

### **2.47.28 TReader.ReadString**

Synopsis: Reads a string from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadString : String`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads a string from the stream.

### **2.47.29 TReader.ReadValue**

Synopsis: Reads the next value type from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadValue : TValueType`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Reads the next value type from the stream.

### **2.47.30 TReader.CopyValue**

Synopsis: Copy a value to a writer.

Declaration: `procedure CopyValue (Writer: TWriter)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Copy a value to a writer.

### **2.47.31 TReader.Driver**

Synopsis: The driver in use for streaming the data.

Declaration: `Property Driver : TAbstractObjectReader`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: The driver in use for streaming the data.



### 2.47.32 TReader.Owner

Synopsis: Owner of the component being read

Declaration: Property Owner : TComponent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Owner of the component being read

### 2.47.33 TReader.Parent

Synopsis: Parent of the component being read.

Declaration: Property Parent : TComponent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Parent of the component being read.

### 2.47.34 TReader.OnError

Synopsis: Handler called when an error occurs.

Declaration: Property OnError : TReaderError

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Handler called when an error occurs.

### 2.47.35 TReader.OnPropertyNotFound

Synopsis: Handler for treating missing properties.

Declaration: Property OnPropertyNotFound : TPropertyNotFoundEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnPropertyNotFound can be used to take appropriate action when a property is read from a stream and no such property is found in the RTTI information of the Instance that is being read from the stream. It can be set at runtime, or at design time by an IDE.

For more information about the meaning of the various arguments to the event handler, see TPropertyNotFoundEvent ([161](#)).

See also: TPropertyNotFoundEvent ([161](#)), TReader.OnSetMethodProperty ([269](#)), TReader.OnReadStringProperty ([270](#))

### 2.47.36 TReader.OnFindMethod

Synopsis: Handler to find or change a method address.

Declaration: Property OnFindMethod : TFindMethodEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Handler to find or change a method address.

### 2.47.37 TReader.OnSetMethodProperty

Synopsis: Handler for setting method properties.

Declaration: Property OnSetMethodProperty : TSetMethodPropertyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnSetMethodProperty can be set to handle the setting of method properties. This handler can be used by an IDE to prevent methods from actually being when an object is being streamed in the designer.

See also: TReader.OnReadStringProperty ([270](#)), TReader.OnPropertyNotFound ([268](#))

### 2.47.38 TReader.OnSetName

Synopsis: Handler called when setting a component name.

Declaration: Property OnSetName : TSetNameEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Handler called when setting a component name.

### 2.47.39 TReader.OnReferenceName

Synopsis: Handler called when another component is referenced.

Declaration: Property OnReferenceName : TReferenceNameEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Handler called when another component is referenced.

### 2.47.40 TReader.OnAncestorNotFound

Synopsis: Handler called when the ancestor component cannot be found.

Declaration: Property OnAncestorNotFound : TAncestorNotFoundEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Handler called when the ancestor component cannot be found.

**2.47.41 TReader.OnCreateComponent**

Synopsis: Handler called when a component needs to be created.

Declaration: Property OnCreateComponent : TCreateComponentEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Handler called when a component needs to be created.

**2.47.42 TReader.OnFindComponentClass**

Synopsis: Handler called when a component class reference needs to be found.

Declaration: Property OnFindComponentClass : TFindComponentClassEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Handler called when a component class reference needs to be found.

**2.47.43 TReader.OnReadStringProperty**

Synopsis: Handler for translating strings when read from the stream.

Declaration: Property OnReadStringProperty : TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnReadStringProperty is called whenever a string property is read from the stream. It can be used e.g. by a translation mechanism to translate the strings on the fly, when a form is loaded. See TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent ([161](#)) for a description of the various parameters.

See also: TReader.OnPropertyNotFound ([268](#)), TReader.OnSetMethodProperty ([269](#)), TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent ([161](#))

**2.48 TRecall****2.48.1 Description**

TRecall is a helper class used to copy published properties of a class (the reference object) in another class (the storage object). The reference object and storage object must be assignable to each other.

The TRecall can be used to store the state of a persistent class, and restore it at a later time.

When a TRecall object is created, it gets passed a reference instance and a storage instance. It immediately stores the properties of the reference object in the storage object.

The Store ([271](#)) method can be called throughout the lifetime of the reference object to update the stored properties.

When the TRecall instance is destroyed then the properties are copied from the storage object to the reference object. The storage object is freed automatically.

If the properties should not be copied back from the storage to the reference object, the Forget ([272](#)) can be called.

### 2.48.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">271</a>	Create	Creates a new instance of TRecall.
<a href="#">271</a>	Destroy	Copies the stored properties to the reference object and destroys the TRecall instance.
<a href="#">272</a>	Forget	Clear the reference property.
<a href="#">271</a>	Store	Assigns the reference instance to the storage instance.

### 2.48.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">272</a>	Reference	r	The reference object.

### 2.48.4 TRecall.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of TRecall.

Declaration: constructor `Create(AStorage: TPersistent; AReference: TPersistent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Create` creates a new instance of TRecall and initializes the Reference and Storage instances. It calls `Store` ([271](#)) to assign the reference object properties to the storage instance.

See also: TRecall.Store ([271](#)), TRecall.Destroy ([271](#))

### 2.48.5 TRecall.Destroy

Synopsis: Copies the stored properties to the reference object and destroys the TRecall instance.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Destroy` assigns the storage instance to the reference instance, if the latter is still valid. After this, it frees the storage and calls the inherited `destroy`.

Errors: `Destroy` does not check whether the reference ([272](#)) instance is still valid. If the reference pointer was invalidated, call TRecall.Forget ([272](#)) to clear the reference instance.

See also: TRecall.Store ([271](#)), TRecall.Forget ([272](#))

### 2.48.6 TRecall.Store

Synopsis: Assigns the reference instance to the storage instance.

Declaration: procedure `Store`

Visibility: public

Description: `Store` assigns the reference instance to the storage instance. This will only work if the two classes can be assigned to each other.

This method can be used to refresh the storage.

Errors: `Store` does not check whether the reference ([272](#)) instance is still valid. If the reference pointer was invalidated, call TRecall.Forget ([272](#)) to clear the reference instance.

### 2.48.7 TRecall.Forget

Synopsis: Clear the reference property.

Declaration: `procedure Forget`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Forget` sets the `Reference` (153) property to `Nil`. When the `TRecall` instance is destroyed, the reference instance will not be restored.

Note that after a call to `Forget`, a call to `Store` (271) has no effect.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRecall.Reference` (272), `TRecall.Store` (271), `TRecall.Destroy` (271)

### 2.48.8 TRecall.Reference

Synopsis: The reference object.

Declaration: `Property Reference : TPersistent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Reference` is the instance of the reference object. Do not free the reference directly. Call `Forget` (272) to clear the reference and then free the reference object.

See also: `TRecall.Forget` (272)

## 2.49 TResourceStream

### 2.49.1 Description

Stream that reads its data from a resource object.

### 2.49.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">272</a>	<code>Create</code>	Creates a new instance of a resource stream.
<a href="#">273</a>	<code>CreateFromID</code>	Creates a new instance of a resource stream with resource
<a href="#">273</a>	<code>Destroy</code>	Destroys the instance of the resource stream.
<a href="#">273</a>	<code>Write</code>	<code>Write</code> implements the abstract <code>TStream.Write</code> (275) method.

### 2.49.3 TResourceStream.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a resource stream.

Declaration: `constructor Create(Instance: THandle; const ResName: String;  
ResType: PChar)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new instance of a resource stream.

#### 2.49.4 TResourceStream.CreateFromID

Synopsis: Creates a new instance of a resource stream with resource

Declaration: constructor `CreateFromID(Instance: THandle; ResID: Integer;  
ResType: PChar)`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new instance of a resource stream with resource

#### 2.49.5 TResourceStream.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the instance of the resource stream.

Declaration: destructor `Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroys the instance of the resource stream.

#### 2.49.6 TResourceStream.Write

Synopsis: `Write` implements the abstract `TStream.Write` (275) method.

Declaration: function `Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: `Write` implements the abstract `TStream.Write` (275) method.

### 2.50 TStream

#### 2.50.1 Description

`TStream` is the base class for all streaming classes. It defines abstract methods for reading (274), writing (275) from and to streams, as well as functions to determine the size of the stream as well as the current position of the stream.

Descendent classes such as `TMemoryStream` (252) or `TFileStream` (236) then implement these abstract methods to write streams to memory or file.

### 2.50.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">276</a>	<code>CopyFrom</code>	Copy data from one stream to another
<a href="#">279</a>	<code>FixupResourceHeader</code>	Not implemented in FPC
<a href="#">274</a>	<code>Read</code>	Reads data from the stream to a buffer and returns the number of bytes read.
<a href="#">280</a>	<code>ReadAnsiString</code>	Read an ansistring from the stream and return its value.
<a href="#">276</a>	<code>ReadBuffer</code>	Reads data from the stream to a buffer
<a href="#">279</a>	<code>ReadByte</code>	Read a byte from the stream and return its value.
<a href="#">277</a>	<code>ReadComponent</code>	Reads component data from a stream
<a href="#">277</a>	<code>ReadComponentRes</code>	Reads component data and resource header from a stream
<a href="#">280</a>	<code>ReadDWord</code>	Read a DWord from the stream and return its value.
<a href="#">279</a>	<code>ReadResHeader</code>	Read a resource header from the stream.
<a href="#">279</a>	<code>ReadWord</code>	Read a word from the stream and return its value.
<a href="#">275</a>	<code>Seek</code>	Sets the current position in the stream
<a href="#">275</a>	<code>Write</code>	Writes data from a buffer to the stream and returns the number of bytes written.
<a href="#">281</a>	<code>WriteAnsiString</code>	Write an ansistring to the stream.
<a href="#">276</a>	<code>WriteBuffer</code>	Writes data from the stream to the buffer
<a href="#">280</a>	<code>WriteByte</code>	Write a byte to the stream.
<a href="#">277</a>	<code>WriteComponent</code>	Write component data to the stream
<a href="#">278</a>	<code>WriteComponentRes</code>	Write resource header and component data to a stream
<a href="#">278</a>	<code>WriteDescendent</code>	Write component data to a stream, relative to an ancestor
<a href="#">278</a>	<code>WriteDescendentRes</code>	Write resource header and component data to a stream, relative to an ancestor
<a href="#">281</a>	<code>WriteDWord</code>	Write a DWord to the stream.
<a href="#">278</a>	<code>WriteResourceHeader</code>	Write resource header to the stream
<a href="#">281</a>	<code>WriteWord</code>	Write a word to the stream.

### 2.50.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">282</a>	<code>Position</code>	rw	The current position in the stream.
<a href="#">282</a>	<code>Size</code>	rw	The current size of the stream.

### 2.50.4 TStream.Read

**Synopsis:** Reads data from the stream to a buffer and returns the number of bytes read.

**Declaration:** `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Virtual; Abstract`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Read` attempts to read `Count` from the stream to `Buffer` and returns the number of bytes actually read.

This method should be used when the number of bytes is not determined. If a specific number of bytes is expected, use `TStream.ReadBuffer` ([276](#)) instead.

`Read` is an abstract method that is overridden by descendent classes to do the actual reading.

**Errors:** Descendent classes that do not allow reading from the stream may raise an exception when the `Read` is used.

See also: `TStream.Write` ([275](#)), `TStream.ReadBuffer` ([276](#))

### 2.50.5 TStream.Write

**Synopsis:** Writes data from a buffer to the stream and returns the number of bytes written.

**Declaration:** `function Write(const Buffer;Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Virtual  
; Abstract`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Write` attempts to write `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the stream. It returns the actual number of bytes written to the stream.

This method should be used when the number of bytes that should be written is not determined. If a specific number of bytes should be written, use `TStream.WriteBuffer` (276) instead.

`Write` is an abstract method that is overridden by descendent classes to do the actual writing.

**Errors:** Descendent classes that do not allow writing to the stream may raise an exception when `Write` is used.

See also: `TStream.Read` (274), `TStream.WriteBuffer` (276)

### 2.50.6 TStream.Seek

**Synopsis:** Sets the current position in the stream

**Declaration:** `function Seek(Offset: LongInt;Origin: Word) : LongInt; Virtual  
; Overload  
function Seek(const Offset: Int64;Origin: TSeekOrigin) : Int64; Virtual  
; Overload`

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** `Seek` sets the position of the stream to `Offset` bytes from `Origin`. `Origin` can have one of the following values:

Table 2.17:

Constant	Meaning
<code>soFromBeginning</code>	Set the position relative to the start of the stream.
<code>soFromCurrent</code>	Set the position relative to the beginning of the stream.
<code>soFromEnd</code>	Set the position relative to the end of the stream.

`Offset` should be negative when the origin is `SoFromEnd`. It should be positive for `soFromBeginning` and can have both signs for `soFromCurrent`

This is an abstract method, which must be overridden by descendent classes. They may choose not to implement this method for all values of `Origin` and `Offset`.

**Errors:** An exception may be raised if this method is called with an invalid pair of `Offset,Origin` values. e.g. a negative offset for `soFromBeginning`.

See also: `TStream.Position` (282)



### 2.50.7 TStream.ReadBuffer

Synopsis: Reads data from the stream to a buffer

Declaration: `procedure ReadBuffer(var Buffer; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadBuffer` reads `Count` bytes of the stream into `Buffer`. If the stream does not contain `Count` bytes, then an exception is raised.

`ReadBuffer` should be used to read in a fixed number of bytes, such as when reading structures or the content of variables. If the number of bytes is not determined, use `TStream.Read` ([274](#)) instead. `ReadBuffer` uses `Read` internally to do the actual reading.

Errors: If the stream does not allow to read `Count` bytes, then an exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.Read` ([274](#)), `TStream.WriteBuffer` ([276](#))

### 2.50.8 TStream.WriteBuffer

Synopsis: Writes data from the stream to the buffer

Declaration: `procedure WriteBuffer(const Buffer; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteBuffer` writes `Count` bytes to the stream from `Buffer`. If the stream does not allow `Count` bytes to be written, then an exception is raised.

`WriteBuffer` should be used to read in a fixed number of bytes, such as when writing structures or the content of variables. If the number of bytes is not determined, use `TStream.Write` ([275](#)) instead. `WriteBuffer` uses `Write` internally to do the actual reading.

Errors: If the stream does not allow to write `Count` bytes, then an exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` ([275](#)), `TStream.ReadBuffer` ([276](#))

### 2.50.9 TStream.CopyFrom

Synopsis: Copy data from one stream to another

Declaration: `function CopyFrom(Source: TStream; Count: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: public

Description: `CopyFrom` reads `Count` bytes from `Source` and writes them to the current stream. This updates the current position in the stream. After the action is completed, the number of bytes copied is returned.

This can be used to quickly copy data from one stream to another or to copy the whole contents of the stream.

See also: `TStream.Read` ([274](#)), `TStream.Write` ([275](#))

### 2.50.10 TStream.ReadComponent

Synopsis: Reads component data from a stream

Declaration: `function ReadComponent(Instance: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadComponent` reads a component state from the stream and transfers this state to `Instance`. If `Instance` is `nil`, then it is created first based on the type stored in the stream. `ReadComponent` returns the component as it is read from the stream.

`ReadComponent` simply creates a `TReader` (261) object and calls its `ReadRootComponent` (267) method.

Errors: If an error occurs during the reading of the component, an `EFileError` (180) exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.WriteComponent` (277), `TStream.ReadComponentRes` (277), `TReader.ReadRootComponent` (267)

### 2.50.11 TStream.ReadComponentRes

Synopsis: Reads component data and resource header from a stream

Declaration: `function ReadComponentRes(Instance: TComponent) : TComponent`

Visibility: public

Description: `ReadComponentRes` reads a resource header from the stream, and then calls `ReadComponent` (277) to read the component state from the stream into `Instance`.

This method is usually called by the global streaming method when instantiating forms and datamodules as created by an IDE. It should be used mainly on Windows, to store components in Windows resources.

Errors: If an error occurs during the reading of the component, an `EFileError` (180) exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.ReadComponent` (277), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (278)

### 2.50.12 TStream.WriteComponent

Synopsis: Write component data to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponent(Instance: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteComponent` writes the published properties of `Instance` to the stream, so they can later be read with `TStream.ReadComponent` (277). This method is intended to be used by an IDE, to preserve the state of a form or datamodule as designed in the IDE.

`WriteComponent` simply calls `WriteDescendent` (278) with `Nil` ancestor.

See also: `TStream.ReadComponent` (277), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (278)

### 2.50.13 TStream.WriteComponentRes

Synopsis: Write resource header and component data to a stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponentRes(const ResName: String; Instance: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteComponentRes` writes a `ResName` resource header to the stream and then calls `WriteComponent` (277) to write the published properties of `Instance` to the stream.

This method is intended for use by an IDE that can use it to store forms or datamodules as designed in a Windows resource stream.

See also: `TStream.WriteComponent` (277), `TStream.ReadComponentRes` (277)

### 2.50.14 TStream.WriteDescendent

Synopsis: Write component data to a stream, relative to an ancestor

Declaration: `procedure WriteDescendent(Instance: TComponent; Ancestor: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDescendent` writes the state of `Instance` to the stream where it differs from `Ancestor`, i.e. only the changed properties are written to the stream.

`WriteDescendent` creates a `TWriter` (308) object and calls its `WriteDescendent` (310) object. The writer is passed a binary driver object (204) by default.

### 2.50.15 TStream.WriteDescendentRes

Synopsis: Write resource header and component data to a stream, relative to an ancestor

Declaration: `procedure WriteDescendentRes(const ResName: String; Instance: TComponent; Ancestor: TComponent)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteDescendentRes` writes a `ResName` resource header, and then calls `WriteDescendent` (278) to write the state of `Instance` to the stream where it differs from `Ancestor`, i.e. only the changed properties are written to the stream.

This method is intended for use by an IDE that can use it to store forms or datamodules as designed in a Windows resource stream.

### 2.50.16 TStream.WriteResourceHeader

Synopsis: Write resource header to the stream

Declaration: `procedure WriteResourceHeader(const ResName: String; var FixupInfo: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `WriteResourceHeader` writes a resource-file header for a resource called `ResName`. It returns in `FixupInfo` the argument that should be passed on to `TStream.FixupResourceHeader` (279).

`WriteResourceHeader` should not be used directly. It is called by the `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (278) and `TStream.WriteDescendentRes` (278) methods.

See also: `TStream.FixupResourceHeader` (279), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (278), `TStream.WriteDescendentRes` (278)

### 2.50.17 TStream.FixupResourceHeader

Synopsis: Not implemented in FPC

Declaration: `procedure FixupResourceHeader(FixupInfo: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `FixupResourceHeader` is used to write the size of the resource after a component was written to stream. The size is determined from the current position, and it is written at position `FixupInfo`. After that the current position is restored.

`FixupResourceHeader` should never be called directly; it is handled by the streaming system.

See also: `TStream.WriteResourceHeader` (278), `TStream.WriteComponentRes` (278), `TStream.WriteDescendentRes` (278)

### 2.50.18 TStream.ReadResHeader

Synopsis: Read a resource header from the stream.

Declaration: `procedure ReadResHeader`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadResourceHeader` reads a resource file header from the stream. It positions the stream just beyond the header.

`ReadResourceHeader` should not be called directly, it is called by the streaming system when needed.

Errors: If the resource header is invalid an `EInvalidImage` (180) exception is raised.

See also: `TStream.ReadComponentRes` (277), `EInvalidImage` (180)

### 2.50.19 TStream.ReadByte

Synopsis: Read a byte from the stream and return its value.

Declaration: `function ReadByte : Byte`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `ReadByte` reads one byte from the stream and returns its value.

Errors: If the byte cannot be read, a `EStreamError` (181) exception will be raised. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Read` (274) function.

See also: `TStream.Read` (274), `TStream.WriteByte` (280), `TStream.ReadWord` (279), `TStream.ReadDWord` (280), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (280)

### 2.50.20 TStream.ReadWord

Synopsis: Read a word from the stream and return its value.

Declaration: `function ReadWord : Word`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** ReadWord reads one Word (i.e. 2 bytes) from the stream and returns its value. This is a utility function which simply calls the Read (274) function.

**Errors:** If the word cannot be read, a EStreamError (181) exception will be raised.

**See also:** TStream.Read (274), TStream.WriteWord (281), TStream.ReadByte (279), TStream.ReadDWord (280), TStream.ReadAnsiString (280)

### 2.50.21 TStream.ReadDWord

**Synopsis:** Read a DWord from the stream and return its value.

**Declaration:** function ReadDWord : Cardinal

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** ReadDWord reads one DWord (i.e. 4 bytes) from the stream and returns its value. This is a utility function which simply calls the Read (274) function.

**Errors:** If the DWord cannot be read, a EStreamError (181) exception will be raised.

**See also:** TStream.Read (274), TStream.WriteDWord (281), TStream.ReadByte (279), TStream.ReadWord (279), TStream.ReadAnsiString (280)

### 2.50.22 TStream.ReadAnsiString

**Synopsis:** Read an ansistring from the stream and return its value.

**Declaration:** function ReadAnsiString : String

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** ReadAnsiString reads an ansistring from the stream and returns its value. This is a utility function which simply calls the read function several times. The Ansistring should be stored as 4 bytes (a DWord) representing the length of the string, and then the string value itself. The WriteAnsiString (281) function writes an ansistring in such a format.

**Errors:** If the AnsiString cannot be read, a EStreamError (181) exception will be raised.

**See also:** TStream.Read (274), TStream.WriteAnsiString (281), TStream.ReadByte (279), TStream.ReadWord (279), TStream.ReadDWord (280)

### 2.50.23 TStream.WriteByte

**Synopsis:** Write a byte to the stream.

**Declaration:** procedure WriteByte(b: Byte)

**Visibility:** public

**Description:** WriteByte writes the byte B to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the Write (275) function. The byte can be read from the stream using the ReadByte (279) function.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when attempting to write, an EStreamError (181) exception will be raised.

**See also:** TStream.Write (275), TStream.ReadByte (279), TStream.WriteWord (281), TStream.WriteDWord (281), TStream.WriteAnsiString (281)

### 2.50.24 TStream.WriteWord

Synopsis: Write a word to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteWord(w: Word)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteWord` writes the word `W` (i.e. 2 bytes) to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (275) function. The word can be read from the stream using the `ReadWord` (279) function.

Errors: If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (181) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` (275), `TStream.ReadWord` (279), `TStream.WriteByte` (280), `TStream.WriteDWord` (281), `TStream.WriteAnsiString` (281)

### 2.50.25 TStream.WriteDWord

Synopsis: Write a DWord to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDWord(d: Cardinal)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteDWord` writes the DWord `D` (i.e. 4 bytes) to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (275) function. The DWord can be read from the stream using the `ReadDWord` (280) function.

Errors: If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (181) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` (275), `TStream.ReadDWord` (280), `TStream.WriteByte` (280), `TStream.WriteWord` (281), `TStream.WriteAnsiString` (281)

### 2.50.26 TStream.WriteAnsiString

Synopsis: Write an ansistring to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteAnsiString(S: String)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `WriteAnsiString` writes the `AnsiString` `S` (i.e. 4 bytes) to the stream. This is a utility function which simply calls the `Write` (275) function. The ansistring is written as a 4 byte length specifier, followed by the ansistring's content. The ansistring can be read from the stream using the `ReadAnsiString` (280) function.

Errors: If an error occurs when attempting to write, an `EStreamError` (181) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStream.Write` (275), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (280), `TStream.WriteByte` (280), `TStream.WriteWord` (281), `TStream.WriteDWord` (281)

### 2.50.27 TStream.Position

Synopsis: The current position in the stream.

Declaration: `Property Position : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Position` can be read to determine the current position in the stream. It can be written to to set the (absolute) position in the stream. The position is zero-based, so to set the position at the beginning of the stream, the position must be set to zero.

**Remark:** Not all `TStream` descendants support setting the position in the stream, so this should be used with care.

Errors: Some descendents may raise an `EStreamError` (181) exception if they do not support setting the stream position.

See also: `TStream.Size` (282), `TStream.Seek` (275)

### 2.50.28 TStream.Size

Synopsis: The current size of the stream.

Declaration: `Property Size : Int64`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: `Size` can be read to determine the stream size or to set the stream size.

**Remark:** Not all descendents of `TStream` support getting or setting the stream size; they may raise an exception if the `Size` property is read or set.

See also: `TStream.Position` (282), `TStream.Seek` (275)

## 2.51 TStringList

### 2.51.1 Description

`TStringList` is a descendent class of `TStrings` (287) that implements all of the abstract methods introduced there. It also introduces some additional methods:

- Sort the list, or keep the list sorted at all times
- Special handling of duplicates in sorted lists
- Notification of changes in the list

### 2.51.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">283</a>	Add	Implements the TStrings.Add ( <a href="#">289</a> ) function.
<a href="#">284</a>	Clear	Implements the TStrings.Add ( <a href="#">289</a> ) function.
<a href="#">285</a>	CustomSort	
<a href="#">284</a>	Delete	Implements the TStrings.Delete ( <a href="#">291</a> ) function.
<a href="#">283</a>	Destroy	Destroys the stringlist.
<a href="#">284</a>	Exchange	Implements the TStrings.Exchange ( <a href="#">292</a> ) function.
<a href="#">284</a>	Find	Locates the index for a given string in sorted lists.
<a href="#">285</a>	IndexOf	Overrides the TStrings.IndexOf ( <a href="#">292</a> ) property.
<a href="#">285</a>	Insert	Overrides the TStrings.Insert ( <a href="#">293</a> ) method.
<a href="#">285</a>	Sort	Sorts the strings in the list.

### 2.51.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">286</a>	CaseSensitive	rw	
<a href="#">286</a>	Duplicates	rw	Describes the behaviour of a sorted list with respect to duplicate strings.
<a href="#">287</a>	OnChange	rw	Event triggered after the list was modified.
<a href="#">287</a>	OnChanging	rw	Event triggered when the list is about to be modified.
<a href="#">286</a>	Sorted	rw	Determines whether the list is sorted or not.

### 2.51.4 TStringList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the stringlist.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Destroy` clears the stringlist, release all memory allocated for the storage of the strings, and then calls the inherited destroy method.

**Remark:** Any objects associated to strings in the list will *not* be destroyed; it is the responsibility of the caller to destroy all objects associated with strings in the list.

### 2.51.5 TStringList.Add

Synopsis: Implements the TStrings.Add ([289](#)) function.

Declaration: `function Add(const S: String) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Add` will add `S` to the list. If the list is sorted and the string `S` is already present in the list and `TStringList.Duplicates` ([286](#)) is `dupError` then an `EStringListError` ([182](#)) exception is raised. If `Duplicates` is set to `dupIgnore` then the return value is undefined.

If the list is sorted, new strings will not necessarily be added to the end of the list, rather they will be inserted at their alphabetical position.

Errors: If the list is sorted and the string `S` is already present in the list and `TStringList.Duplicates` ([286](#)) is `dupError` then an `EStringListError` ([182](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TStringList.Insert` ([285](#)), `TStringList.Duplicates` ([286](#))



### 2.51.6 TStringList.Clear

Synopsis: Implements the TStringList.Add (289) function.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Implements the TStringList.Add (289) function.

### 2.51.7 TStringList.Delete

Synopsis: Implements the TStringList.Delete (291) function.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Implements the TStringList.Delete (291) function.

### 2.51.8 TStringList.Exchange

Synopsis: Implements the TStringList.Exchange (292) function.

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Exchange will exchange two items in the list as described in TStringList.Exchange (292).

**Remark:** Exchange will not check whether the list is sorted or not; if Exchange is called on a sorted list and the strings are not identical, the sort order of the list will be destroyed.

See also: TStringList.Sorted (286), TStringList.Exchange (292)

### 2.51.9 TStringList.Find

Synopsis: Locates the index for a given string in sorted lists.

Declaration: `function Find(const S: String; var Index: Integer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Find returns `True` if the string `S` is present in the list. Upon exit, the `Index` parameter will contain the position of the string in the list. If the string is not found, the function will return `False` and `Index` will contain the position where the string will be inserted if it is added to the list.

**Remark:**

1. Use this method only on sorted lists. For unsorted lists, use TStringList.IndexOf (285) instead.
2. Find uses a binary search method to locate the string

### 2.51.10 TStringList.IndexOf

Synopsis: Overrides the TStrings.IndexOf ([292](#)) property.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const S: String) : Integer; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: IndexOf overrides the ancestor method TStrings.indexOf ([292](#)). It tries to optimize the search by executing a binary search if the list is sorted. The function returns the position of S if it is found in the list, or -1 if the string is not found in the list.

See also: TStrings.IndexOf ([292](#)), TStringList.Find ([284](#))

### 2.51.11 TStringList.Insert

Synopsis: Overrides the TStrings.Insert ([293](#)) method.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer;const S: String); Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Insert will insert the string S at position Index in the list. If the list is sorted, an EStringListError ([182](#)) exception will be raised instead. Index is a zero-based position.

Errors: If Index contains an invalid value (less than zero or larger than Count, or the list is sorted, an EStringListError ([182](#)) exception will be raised.

See also: TStringList.Add ([283](#)), TStrings.Insert ([293](#)), TStringList.InsertObject ([282](#))

### 2.51.12 TStringList.Sort

Synopsis: Sorts the strings in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Sort; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Sort will sort the strings in the list using the quicksort algorithm. If the list has its TStringList.Sorted ([286](#)) property set to True then nothing will be done.

See also: TStringList.Sorted ([286](#))

### 2.51.13 TStringList.CustomSort

Synopsis:

Declaration: `procedure CustomSort(CompareFn: TStringListSortCompare)`

Visibility: public

Description:

### 2.51.14 TStringList.Duplicates

Synopsis: Describes the behaviour of a sorted list with respect to duplicate strings.

Declaration: Property `Duplicates` : `TDuplicates`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Duplicates` describes what to do in case a duplicate value is added to the list:

Table 2.18:

<code>dupIgnore</code>	Duplicate values will not be added to the list, but no error will be triggered.
<code>dupError</code>	If an attempt is made to add a duplicate value to the list, an <code>EStringListError</code> (182) exception is raised.
<code>dupAccept</code>	Duplicate values can be added to the list.

If the stringlist is not sorted, the `Duplicates` setting is ignored.

### 2.51.15 TStringList.Sorted

Synopsis: Determines whether the list is sorted or not.

Declaration: Property `Sorted` : `Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Sorted` can be set to `True` in order to cause the list of strings to be sorted. Further additions to the list will be inserted at the correct position so the list remains sorted at all times. Setting the property to `False` has no immediate effect, but will allow strings to be inserted at any position.

**Remark:**

1. When `Sorted` is `True`, `TStringList.Insert` (285) cannot be used. For sorted lists, `TStringList.Add` (283) should be used instead.
2. If `Sorted` is `True`, the `TStringList.Duplicates` (286) setting has effect. This setting is ignored when `Sorted` is `False`.

See also: `TStringList.Sort` (285), `TStringList.Duplicates` (286), `TStringList.Add` (283), `TstringList.Insert` (285)

### 2.51.16 TStringList.CaseSensitive

Synopsis:

Declaration: Property `CaseSensitive` : `Boolean`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Indicates whether locating strings happens in a case sensitive manner.

### 2.51.17 TStringList.OnChange

Synopsis: Event triggered after the list was modified.

Declaration: Property OnChange : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnChange can be assigned to respond to changes that have occurred in the list. The handler is called whenever strings are added, moved, modified or deleted from the list.

The Onchange event is triggered after the modification took place. When the modification is about to happen, an TStringList.OnChanging ([287](#)) event occurs.

See also: TStringList.OnChanging ([287](#))

### 2.51.18 TStringList.OnChanging

Synopsis: Event triggered when the list is about to be modified.

Declaration: Property OnChanging : TNotifyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnChanging can be assigned to respond to changes that will occurred in the list. The handler is called whenever strings will be added, moved, modified or deleted from the list.

The Onchanging event is triggered before the modification will take place. When the modification has happened, an TStringList.OnChange ([287](#)) event occurs.

See also: TStringList.OnChange ([287](#))

## 2.52 TStrings

### 2.52.1 Description

TStrings implements an abstract class to manage an array of strings. It introduces methods to set and retrieve strings in the array, searching for a particular string, concatenating the strings and so on. It also allows an arbitrary object to be associated with each string.

It also introduces methods to manage a series of name=value settings, as found in many configuration files.

An instance of TStrings is never created directly, instead a descendent class such as TStringList ([282](#)) should be created. This is because TStrings is an abstract class which does not implement all methods; TStrings also doesn't store any strings, this is the functionality introduced in descendents such as TStringList ([282](#)).

**2.52.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">289</a>	Add	Add a string to the list
<a href="#">289</a>	AddObject	Add a string and associated object to the list.
<a href="#">289</a>	AddStrings	Add contents of another stringlist to this list.
<a href="#">289</a>	Append	Add a string to the list.
<a href="#">290</a>	Assign	Assign the contents of another stringlist to this one.
<a href="#">290</a>	BeginUpdate	Mark the beginning of an update batch.
<a href="#">290</a>	Clear	Removes all strings and associated objects from the list.
<a href="#">291</a>	Delete	Delete a string from the list.
<a href="#">288</a>	Destroy	Frees all strings and objects, and removes the list from memory.
<a href="#">291</a>	EndUpdate	Mark the end of an update batch.
<a href="#">291</a>	Equals	Compares the contents of two stringlists.
<a href="#">292</a>	Exchange	Exchanges two strings in the list.
<a href="#">296</a>	GetNameValue	Return both name and value of a name,value pair based on it's index.
<a href="#">292</a>	GetText	Returns the contents as a PChar
<a href="#">292</a>	IndexOf	Find a string in the list and return its position.
<a href="#">292</a>	IndexOfName	Finds the index of a name in the name-value pairs.
<a href="#">293</a>	IndexOfObject	Finds an object in the list and returns its index.
<a href="#">293</a>	Insert	Insert a string in the list.
<a href="#">293</a>	InsertObject	Insert a string and associated object in the list.
<a href="#">294</a>	LoadFromFile	Load the contents of a file as a series of strings.
<a href="#">294</a>	LoadFromStream	Load the contents of a stream as a series of strings.
<a href="#">294</a>	Move	Move a string from one place in the list to another.
<a href="#">295</a>	SaveToFile	Save the contents of the list to a file.
<a href="#">295</a>	SaveToStream	Save the contents of the string to a stream.
<a href="#">295</a>	SetText	Set the contents of the list from a PChar.

**2.52.3 Property overview**

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">297</a>	Capacity	rw	Capacity of the list, i.e. number of strings that the list can currently hold before it tries to expand.
<a href="#">297</a>	CommaText	rw	Contents of the list as a comma-separated string.
<a href="#">298</a>	Count	r	Number of strings in the list.
<a href="#">296</a>	DelimitedText	rw	Get or set all strings in the list in a delimited form.
<a href="#">296</a>	Delimiter	rw	Delimiter character used in DelimitedText ( <a href="#">296</a> ).
<a href="#">298</a>	Names	r	Name parts of the name-value pairs in the list.
<a href="#">296</a>	NameValueSeparator	rw	Value of the character used to separate name,value pairs
<a href="#">299</a>	Objects	rw	Indexed access to the objects associated with the strings in the list.
<a href="#">296</a>	QuoteChar	rw	Quote character used in DelimitedText ( <a href="#">296</a> ).
<a href="#">299</a>	Strings	rw	Indexed access to teh strings in the list.
<a href="#">300</a>	StringsAdapter	rw	Not implemented in Free Pascal.
<a href="#">300</a>	Text	rw	Contents of the list as one big string.
<a href="#">297</a>	ValueFromIndex	rw	
<a href="#">299</a>	Values	rw	Value parts of the name-value pairs in the list.

**2.52.4 TStrings.Destroy**

Synopsis: Frees all strings and objects, and removes the list from memory.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy is the destructor of TStrings it does nothing except calling the inherited destructor.

### 2.52.5 TStrings.Add

Synopsis: Add a string to the list

Declaration: `function Add(const S: String) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: Add adds S at the end of the list and returns the index of S in the list (which should equal Tstrings.Count (298))

See also: TStrings.Items (287), TStrings.AddObject (289), TStrings.Insert (293), TStrings.Delete (291), TStrings.Strings (299), TStrings.Count (298)

### 2.52.6 TStrings.AddObject

Synopsis: Add a string and associated object to the list.

Declaration: `function AddObject(const S: String; AObject: TObject) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: AddObject adds S to the list of strings, and associates AObject with it. It returns the index of S.

**Remark:** An object added to the list is not automatically destroyed by the list of the list is destroyed or the string it is associated with is deleted. It is the responsibility of the application to destroy any objects associated with strings.

See also: TStrings.Add (289), Tstrings.Items (287), TStrings.Objects (299), Tstrings.InsertObject (293)

### 2.52.7 TStrings.Append

Synopsis: Add a string to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Append(const S: String)`

Visibility: public

Description: Append does the same as TStrings.Add (289), only it does not return the index of the inserted string.

See also: TStrings.Add (289)

### 2.52.8 TStrings.AddStrings

Synopsis: Add contents of another stringlist to this list.

Declaration: `procedure AddStrings(TheStrings: TStrings); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: AddStrings adds the contents of TheStrings to the stringlist. Any associated objects are added as well.

See also: TStrings.Add (289), TStrings.Assign (290)

### 2.52.9 TStrings.Assign

Synopsis: Assign the contents of another stringlist to this one.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(Source: TPersistent); Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Assign` replaces the contents of the stringlist with the contents of `Source` if `Source` is also of type `TStrings`. Any associated objects are copied as well.

See also: `TStrings.Add` (289), `TStrings.AddStrings` (289), `TPersistent.Assign` (261)

### 2.52.10 TStrings.BeginUpdate

Synopsis: Mark the beginning of an update batch.

Declaration: `procedure BeginUpdate`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `BeginUpdate` increases the update count by one. It is advisable to call `BeginUpdate` before lengthy operations on the stringlist. At the end of these operation, `TStrings.EndUpdate` (291) should be called to mark the end of the operation. Descendent classes may use this information to perform optimizations. e.g. updating the screen only once after many strings were added to the list.

All `TStrings` methods that modify the string list call `BeginUpdate` before the actual operation, and call `endUpdate` when the operation is finished. Descendent classes should also call these methods when modifying the string list.

**Remark:** Always put the corresponding call to `TStrings.EndUpdate` (291) in the context of a `Finally` block, to ensure that the update count is always decreased at the end of the operation, even if an exception occurred:

```
With MyStrings do
  try
    BeginUpdate;
    // Some lengthy operation.
  Finally
    EndUpdate
  end;
```

See also: `TStrings.EndUpdate` (291)

### 2.52.11 TStrings.Clear

Synopsis: Removes all strings and associated objects from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear; Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Clear` will remove all strings and their associated objects from the list. After a call to `clear`, `TStrings.Count` (298) is zero.

Since it is an abstract method, `TStrings` itself does not implement `Clear`. Descendent classes such as `TStringList` (282) implement this method.

See also: `TStrings.Items` (287), `TStrings.Delete` (291), `TStrings.Count` (298)

### 2.52.12 TStrings.Delete

Synopsis: Delete a string from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Index: Integer); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Delete` deletes the string at position `Index` from the list. The associated object is also removed from the list, but not destroyed. `Index` is zero-based, and should be in the range 0 to `Count-1`.

Since it is an abstract method, `TStrings` itself does not implement `Delete`. Descendent classes such as `TStringList` (282) implement this method.

Errors: If `Index` is not in the allowed range, an `EStringListError` (182) is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Insert` (293), `TStrings.Items` (287), `TStrings.Clear` (290)

### 2.52.13 TStrings.EndUpdate

Synopsis: Mark the end of an update batch.

Declaration: `procedure EndUpdate`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `EndUpdate` should be called at the end of a lengthy operation on the stringlist, but only if there was a call to `BeginUpdate` before the operation was started. It is best to put the call to `EndUpdate` in the context of a `Finally` block, so it will be called even if an exception occurs.

For more information, see `TStrings.BeginUpdate` (290).

See also: `TStrings.BeginUpdate` (290)

### 2.52.14 TStrings.Equals

Synopsis: Compares the contents of two stringlists.

Declaration: `function Equals(TheStrings: TStrings) : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Equals` compares the contents of the stringlist with the contents of `TheStrings`. If the contents match, i.e. the stringlist contain an equal amount of strings, and all strings match, then `True` is returned. If the number of strings in the lists is unequal, or they contain one or more different strings, `False` is returned.

**Remark:**

- 1.The strings are compared case-insensitively.
- 2.The associated objects are not compared

See also: `Tstrings.Items` (287), `TStrings.Count` (298), `TStrings.Assign` (290)



### 2.52.15 TStrings.Exchange

Synopsis: Exchanges two strings in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Exchange(Index1: Integer; Index2: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Exchange` exchanges the strings at positions `Index1` and `Index2`. The associated objects are also exchanged.

Both indexes must be in the range of valid indexes, i.e. must have a value between 0 and `Count-1`.

Errors: If either `Index1` or `Index2` is not in the range of valid indexes, an `EStringListError` (182) exception is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Move` (294), `TStrings.Strings` (299), `TStrings.Count` (298)

### 2.52.16 TStrings.GetText

Synopsis: Returns the contents as a `PChar`

Declaration: `function GetText : PChar; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `GetText` allocates a memory buffer and compies the contents of the stringlist to this buffer as a series of strings, separated by an end-of-line marker. The buffer is zero terminated.

**Remark:** The caller is responsible for freeing the returned memory buffer.

### 2.52.17 TStrings.IndexOf

Synopsis: Find a string in the list and return its position.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(const S: String) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IndexOf` searches the list for `S`. The search is case-insensitive. If a matching entry is found, its position is returned. if no matching string is found, `-1` is returned.

**Remark:**

1. Only the first occurrence of the string is returned.

2. The returned position is zero-based, i.e. 0 indicates the first string in the list.

See also: `TStrings.IndexOfObject` (293), `TStrings.IndexOfName` (292), `TStrings.Strings` (299)

### 2.52.18 TStrings.IndexOfName

Synopsis: Finds the index of a name in the name-value pairs.

Declaration: `function IndexOfName(const Name: String) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `IndexOfName` searches in the list of strings for a name-value pair with name part `Name`. If such a pair is found, it returns the index of the pair in the stringlist. If no such pair is found, the function returns `-1`. The search is done case-insensitive.

**Remark:**

1. Only the first occurrence of a matching name-value pair is returned.
2. The returned position is zero-based, i.e. 0 indicates the first string in the list.

See also: `TStrings.IndexOf` (292), `TStrings.IndexOfObject` (293), `TStrings.Strings` (299)

### 2.52.19 TStrings.IndexOfObject

Synopsis: Finds an object in the list and returns its index.

Declaration: `function IndexOfObject(AObject: TObject) : Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `IndexOfObject` searches through the list of strings till it find a string associated with `AObject`, and returns the index of this string. If no such string is found, -1 is returned.

**Remark:**

1. Only the first occurrence of a string with associated object `AObject` is returned; if more strings in the list can be associated with `AObject`, they will not be found by this routine.
2. The returned position is zero-based, i.e. 0 indicates the first string in the list.

### 2.52.20 TStrings.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a string in the list.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Index: Integer; const S: String); Virtual; Abstract`

Visibility: public

Description: `Insert` inserts the string `S` at position `Index` in the list. `Index` is a zero-based position, and can have values from 0 to `Count`. If `Index` equals `Count` then the string is appended to the list.

**Remark:**

1. All methods that add strings to the list use `Insert` to add a string to the list.
2. If the string has an associated object, use `TStrings.InsertObject` (293) instead.

Errors: If `Index` is less than zero or larger than `Count` then an `EStringListError` (182) exception is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Add` (289), `TStrings.InsertObject` (293), `TStrings.Append` (289), `TStrings.Delete` (291)

### 2.52.21 TStrings.InsertObject

Synopsis: Insert a string and associated object in the list.

Declaration: `procedure InsertObject(Index: Integer; const S: String; AObject: TObject)`

Visibility: public

Description: `InsertObject` inserts the string `S` and its associated object `AObject` at position `Index` in the list. `Index` is a zero-based position, and can have values from 0 to `Count`. If `Index` equals `Count` then the string is appended to the list.

Errors: If `Index` is less than zero or larger than `Count` then an `EStringListError` (182) exception is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Insert` (293), `TStrings.AddObject` (289), `TStrings.Append` (289), `TStrings.Delete` (291)

### 2.52.22 TStrings.LoadFromFile

Synopsis: Load the contents of a file as a series of strings.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromFile(const FileName: String); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromFile` loads the contents of a file into the stringlist. Each line in the file (as marked by the end-of-line marker of the particular OS the application runs on) becomes one string in the stringlist. This action replaces the contents of the stringlist, it does not append the strings to the current content.

`LoadFromFile` simply creates a file stream (236) with the given filename, and then executes `TStrings.LoadfromStream` (294); after that the file stream object is destroyed again.

See also: `TStrings.LoadFromStream` (294), `TStrings.SaveToFile` (295), `Tstrings.SaveToStream` (295)

### 2.52.23 TStrings.LoadFromStream

Synopsis: Load the contents of a stream as a series of strings.

Declaration: `procedure LoadFromStream(Stream: TStream); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `LoadFromStream` loads the contents of `Stream` into the stringlist. Each line in the stream (as marked by the end-of-line marker of the particular OS the application runs on) becomes one string in the stringlist. This action replaces the contents of the stringlist, it does not append the strings to the current content.

See also: `TStrings.LoadFromFile` (294), `TStrings.SaveToFile` (295), `Tstrings.SaveToStream` (295)

### 2.52.24 TStrings.Move

Synopsis: Move a string from one place in the list to another.

Declaration: `procedure Move(CurIndex: Integer; NewIndex: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `Move` moves the string at position `CurIndex` so it has position `NewIndex` after the move operation. The object associated to the string is also moved. `CurIndex` and `NewIndex` should be in the range of 0 to `Count-1`.

**Remark:** `NewIndex` is *not* the position in the stringlist before the move operation starts. The move operation

- 1.removes the string from position `CurIndex`
- 2.inserts the string at position `NewIndex`

This may not lead to the desired result if `NewIndex` is bigger than `CurIndex`. Consider the following example:

```
With MyStrings do
begin
  Clear;
  Add('String 0');
  Add('String 1');
```

```

Add('String 2');
Add('String 3');
Add('String 4');
Move(1,3);
end;

```

After the Move operation has completed, 'String 1' will be between 'String 3' and 'String 4'.

Errors: If either `CurIndex` or `NewIndex` is outside the allowed range, an `EStringListError` ([182](#)) is raised.

See also: `TStrings.Exchange` ([292](#))

### 2.52.25 TStrings.SaveToFile

Synopsis: Save the contents of the list to a file.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToFile(const FileName: String); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToFile` saves the contents of the stringlist to the file with name `FileName`. It writes the strings to the file, separated by end-of-line markers, so each line in the file will contain 1 string from the stringlist.

`SaveToFile` creates a file stream ([236](#)) with name `FileName`, calls `TStrings.SaveToStream` ([295](#)) and then destroys the file stream object.

Errors: An `EStreamError` ([181](#)) exception can be raised if the file `FileName` cannot be opened, or if it cannot be written to.

See also: `TStrings.SaveToStream` ([295](#)), `Tstrings.LoadFromStream` ([294](#)), `TStrings.LoadFromFile` ([294](#))

### 2.52.26 TStrings.SaveToStream

Synopsis: Save the contents of the string to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure SaveToStream(Stream: TStream); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SaveToStream` saves the contents of the stringlist to `Stream`. It writes the strings to the stream, separated by end-of-line markers, so each 'line' in the stream will contain 1 string from the stringlist.

Errors: An `EStreamError` ([181](#)) exception can be raised if the stream cannot be written to.

See also: `TStrings.SaveToFile` ([295](#)), `Tstrings.LoadFromStream` ([294](#)), `TStrings.LoadFromFile` ([294](#))

### 2.52.27 TStrings.SetText

Synopsis: Set the contents of the list from a PChar.

Declaration: `procedure SetText(TheText: PChar); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SetText` parses the contents of `TheText` and fills the stringlist based on the contents. It regards `TheText` as a series of strings, separated by end-of-line markers. Each of these strings is added to the stringlist.

See also: `TStrings.Text` ([300](#))

### 2.52.28 TStrings.GetNameValue

Synopsis: Return both name and value of a name,value pair based on it's index.

Declaration: `procedure GetNameValue(Index: Integer;var AName: String;  
var AValue: String)`

Visibility: public

Description: Return both name and value of a name,value pair based on it's index.

### 2.52.29 TStrings.Delimiter

Synopsis: Delimiter character used in DelimitedText ([296](#)).

Declaration: `Property Delimiter : Char`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Delimiter character used in DelimitedText ([296](#)).

### 2.52.30 TStrings.DelimitedText

Synopsis: Get or set all strings in the list in a delimited form.

Declaration: `Property DelimitedText : String`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Get or set all strings in the list in a delimited form.

### 2.52.31 TStrings QuoteChar

Synopsis: Quote character used in DelimitedText ([296](#)).

Declaration: `Property QuoteChar : Char`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Quote character used in DelimitedText ([296](#)).

### 2.52.32 TStrings.NameValueSeparator

Synopsis: Value of the character used to separate name,value pairs

Declaration: `Property NameValueSeparator : Char`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Value of the character used to separate name,value pairs

### 2.52.33 TStrings.ValueFromIndex

Synopsis:

Declaration: Property ValueFromIndex[Index: Integer]: String

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Return the value part of a string based on it's index.

### 2.52.34 TStrings.Capacity

Synopsis: Capacity of the list, i.e. number of strings that the list can currently hold before it tries to expand.

Declaration: Property Capacity : Integer

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Capacity is the number of strings that the list can hold before it tries to allocate more memory.

TStrings returns TStrings.Count (298) when read. Trying to set the capacity has no effect. Descendent classes such as TStringList (282) can override this property such that it actually sets the new capacity.

See also: TStringList (282), TStrings.Count (298)

### 2.52.35 TStrings.CommaText

Synopsis: Contents of the list as a comma-separated string.

Declaration: Property CommaText : String

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: CommaText represents the stringlist as a single string, consisting of a comma-separated concatenation of the strings in the list. If one of the strings contains spaces, comma's or quotes it will be enclosed by double quotes. Any double quotes in a string will be doubled. For instance the following strings:

```
Comma,string
Quote"string
Space string
NormalSttring
```

is converted to

```
"Comma,string","Quote"String","Space string",NormalString
```

Conversely, when setting the CommaText property, the text will be parsed according to the rules outlined above, and the strings will be set accordingly. Note that spaces will in this context be regarded as string separators, unless the string as a whole is contained in double quotes. Spaces that occur next to a delimiter will be ignored. The following string:

```
"Comma,string" , "Quote"String,Space string,, NormalString
```

Will be converted to

```
Comma,String
Quote"String
Space
String
```

```
NormalString
```

This is a special case of the `DelimitedText` (153) property where the quote character is always the double quote, and the delimiter is always the colon.

See also: `TStrings.Text` (300), `TStrings.SetText` (295)

### 2.52.36 TStrings.Count

Synopsis: Number of strings in the list.

Declaration: `Property Count : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Count` is the current number of strings in the list. `TStrings` does not implement this property; descendent classes should override the property read handler to return the correct value.

Strings in the list are always uniquely identified by their `Index`; the index of a string is zero-based, i.e. it's supported range is 0 to `Count-1`. trying to access a string with an index larger than or equal to `Count` will result in an error. Code that iterates over the list in a stringlist should always take into account the zero-based character of the list index.

See also: `TStrings.Strings` (299), `TStrings.Objects` (299), `TStrings.Capacity` (297)

### 2.52.37 TStrings.Names

Synopsis: Name parts of the name-value pairs in the list.

Declaration: `Property Names[Index: Integer]: String`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `Names` provides indexed access to the names of the name-value pairs in the list. It returns the name part of the `Index`-th string in the list.

**Remark:** The index is not an index based on the number of name-value pairs in the list. It is the name part of the name-value pair a string `Index` in the list. If the string at position `Index` is not a name-value pair (i.e. does not contain the equal sign (=)), then an empty name is returned.

See also: `TStrings.Values` (299), `TStrings.IndexOfName` (292)

### 2.52.38 TStrings.Objects

Synopsis: Indexed access to the objects associated with the strings in the list.

Declaration: `Property Objects[Index: Integer]: TObject`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Objects` provides indexed access to the objects associated to the strings in the list. `Index` is a zero-based index and must be in the range of 0 to `Count-1`.

Setting the `objects` property will not free the previously associated object, if there was one. The caller is responsible for freeing the object that was previously associated to the string.

`TStrings` does not implement any storage for objects. Reading the `Objects` property will always return `Nil`. Setting the property will have no effect. It is the responsibility of the descendent classes to provide storage for the associated objects.

Errors: If an `Index` outside the valid range is specified, an `EStringListError` (182) exception will be raised.

See also: `TStrings.Strings` (299), `TStrings.IndexOfObject` (293), `TStrings.Names` (298), `TStrings.Values` (299)

### 2.52.39 TStrings.Values

Synopsis: Value parts of the name-value pairs in the list.

Declaration: `Property Values[Name: String]: String`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Values` represents the value parts of the name-value pairs in the list.

When reading this property, if there is a name-value pair in the list of strings that has name part `Name`, then the corresponding value is returned. If there is no such pair, an empty string is returned.

When writing this value, first it is checked whether there exists a name-value pair in the list with name `Name`. If such a pair is found, its value part is overwritten with the specified value. If no such pair is found, a new name-value pair is added with the specified `Name` and value.

**Remark:**

1. Names are compared case-insensitively.
2. Any character, including whitespace, up till the first equal (=) sign in a string is considered part of the name.

See also: `TStrings.Names` (298), `TStrings.Strings` (299), `TStrings.Objects` (299)

### 2.52.40 TStrings.Strings

Synopsis: Indexed access to the strings in the list.

Declaration: `Property Strings[Index: Integer]: String; default`

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write



**Description:** `Strings` is the default property of `TStrings`. It provides indexed read-write access to the list of strings. Reading it will return the string at position `Index` in the list. Writing it will set the string at position `Index`.

`Index` is the position of the string in the list. It is zero-based, i.e. valid values range from 0 (the first string in the list) till `Count-1` (the last string in the list). When browsing through the strings in the list, this fact must be taken into account.

To access the objects associated with the strings in the list, use the `TStrings.Objects` (299) property. The name parts of name-value pairs can be accessed with the `TStrings.Names` (298) property, and the values can be set or read through the `TStrings.Values` (299) property.

Searching through the list can be done using the `TStrings.IndexOf` (292) method.

**Errors:** If `Index` is outside the allowed range, an `EStringListError` (182) exception is raised.

**See also:** `TStrings.Count` (298), `TStrings.Objects` (299), `TStrings.Names` (298), `TStrings.Values` (299), `TStrings.IndexOf` (292)

### 2.52.41 TStrings.Text

**Synopsis:** Contents of the list as one big string.

**Declaration:** `Property Text : String`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** `Text` returns, when read, the contents of the stringlist as one big string consisting of all strings in the list, separated by an end-of-line marker. When this property is set, the string will be cut into smaller strings, based on the positions of end-of-line markers in the string. Any previous content of the stringlist will be lost.

**Remark:** If any of the strings in the list contains an end-of-line marker, then the resulting string will appear to contain more strings than actually present in the list. To avoid this ambiguity, use the `TStrings.CommaText` (297) property instead.

**See also:** `TStrings.Strings` (299), `TStrings.Count` (298), `TStrings.CommaText` (297)

### 2.52.42 TStrings.StringsAdapter

**Synopsis:** Not implemented in Free Pascal.

**Declaration:** `Property StringsAdapter : IStringsAdapter`

**Visibility:** public

**Access:** Read,Write

**Description:** Not implemented in Free Pascal.

## 2.53 TStringStream

### 2.53.1 Description

`TStringStream` stores its data in an `ansistring`. The contents of this string is available as the `DataString` (302) property. It also introduces some methods to read or write parts of the stringstream's data as a string.

The main purpose of a `TStringStream` is to be able to treat a string as a stream from which can be read.

### 2.53.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">301</a>	Create	Creates a new stringstream and sets its initial content.
<a href="#">301</a>	Read	Reads from the stream.
<a href="#">301</a>	ReadString	Reads a string of length <code>Count</code>
<a href="#">302</a>	Seek	Sets the position in the stream.
<a href="#">302</a>	Write	<code>Write</code> implements the abstract <code>TStream.Write</code> ( <a href="#">275</a> ) method.
<a href="#">302</a>	WriteString	<code>WriteString</code> writes a string to the stream.

### 2.53.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">302</a>	<code>DataStream</code>	<code>r</code>	Contains the contents of the stream in string form

### 2.53.4 TStringStream.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new stringstream and sets its initial content.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const AString: String)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Create` creates a new `TStringStream` instance and sets its initial content to `AString`. The position is still 0 but the size of the stream will equal the length of the string.

See also: `TStringStream.DataString` ([302](#))

### 2.53.5 TStringStream.Read

Synopsis: Reads from the stream.

Declaration: `function Read(var Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Read` implements the abstract `Read` ([274](#)) from `TStream` ([273](#)). It tries to read `Count` bytes into `Buffer`. It returns the number of bytes actually read. The position of the stream is advanced with the number of bytes actually read; When the reading has reached the end of the `DataStream` ([302](#)), then the reading stops, i.e. it is not possible to read beyond the end of the datastring.

See also: `TStream.Read` ([274](#)), `TStringStream.Write` ([302](#)), `TStringStream.DataString` ([302](#))

### 2.53.6 TStringStream.ReadString

Synopsis: Reads a string of length `Count`

Declaration: `function ReadString(Count: LongInt) : String`

Visibility: `public`

**Description:** `ReadString` reads `Count` bytes from the stream and returns the read bytes as a string. If less than `Count` bytes were available, the string has as many characters as bytes could be read.

The `ReadString` method is a wrapper around the `Read` (301) method. It does not do the same string as the `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (280) method, which first reads a length integer to determine the length of the string to be read.

See also: `TStringStream.Read` (301), `TStream.ReadAnsiString` (280)

### 2.53.7 TStringStream.Seek

**Synopsis:** Sets the position in the stream.

**Declaration:** `function Seek(Offset: LongInt; Origin: Word) : LongInt; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Seek` implements the abstract `Seek` (275) method.

### 2.53.8 TStringStream.Write

**Synopsis:** `Write` implements the abstract `TStream.Write` (275) method.

**Declaration:** `function Write(const Buffer; Count: LongInt) : LongInt; Override`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `Write` implements the abstract `TStream.Write` (275) method.

### 2.53.9 TStringStream.WriteString

**Synopsis:** `WriteString` writes a string to the stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure WriteString(const AString: String)`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Description:** `WriteString` writes a string to the stream.

### 2.53.10 TStringStream.DataString

**Synopsis:** Contains the contents of the stream in string form

**Declaration:** `Property DataString : String`

**Visibility:** `public`

**Access:** `Read`

**Description:** Contains the contents of the stream in string form

## 2.54 TTextObjectWriter

### 2.54.1 Description

Not yet implemented.

## 2.55 TThread

### 2.55.1 Description

The `TThread` class encapsulates the native thread support of the operating system. To create a thread, declare a descendent of the `TThread` object and override the `Execute` (303) method. In this method, the thread's code should be executed. To run a thread, create an instance of the `tthread` descendent, and call its `execute` method.

### 2.55.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">303</a>	Create	Creates a new thread.
<a href="#">303</a>	Destroy	Destroys the thread object.
<a href="#">304</a>	Resume	Resumes the thread's execution.
<a href="#">304</a>	Suspend	Suspends the thread's execution.
<a href="#">304</a>	Terminate	Signals the thread it should terminate.
<a href="#">304</a>	WaitFor	Waits for the thread to terminate and returns the exit status.

### 2.55.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">306</a>	FatalException	r	Exception that occurred during thread execution
<a href="#">304</a>	FreeOnTerminate	rw	Indicates whether the thread should free itself when it stops executing.
<a href="#">305</a>	Handle	r	Returns the thread handle.
<a href="#">305</a>	OnTerminate	rw	Event called when the thread terminates.
<a href="#">305</a>	Priority	rw	Returns the thread priority.
<a href="#">305</a>	Suspended	rw	Indicates whether the thread is suspended.
<a href="#">305</a>	ThreadID	r	Returns the thread ID.

### 2.55.4 TThread.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new thread.

Declaration: `constructor Create(CreateSuspended: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Creates a new thread.

### 2.55.5 TThread.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the thread object.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys the thread object.

### **2.55.6 TThread.Resume**

Synopsis: Resumes the thread's execution.

Declaration: `procedure Resume`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Resumes the thread's execution.

### **2.55.7 TThread.Suspend**

Synopsis: Suspends the thread's execution.

Declaration: `procedure Suspend`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Suspends the thread's execution.

### **2.55.8 TThread.Terminate**

Synopsis: Signals the thread it should terminate.

Declaration: `procedure Terminate`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Signals the thread it should terminate.

### **2.55.9 TThread.WaitFor**

Synopsis: Waits for the thread to terminate and returns the exit status.

Declaration: `function WaitFor : Integer`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Waits for the thread to terminate and returns the exit status.

### **2.55.10 TThread.FreeOnTerminate**

Synopsis: Indicates whether the thread should free itself when it stops executing.

Declaration: `Property FreeOnTerminate : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: Indicates whether the thread should free itself when it stops executing.

### **2.55.11 TThread.Handle**

Synopsis: Returns the thread handle.

Declaration: `Property Handle : THandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Returns the thread handle.

### **2.55.12 TThread.Priority**

Synopsis: Returns the thread priority.

Declaration: `Property Priority : TThreadPriority`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Returns the thread priority.

### **2.55.13 TThread.Suspended**

Synopsis: Indicates whether the thread is suspended.

Declaration: `Property Suspended : Boolean`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Indicates whether the thread is suspended.

### **2.55.14 TThread.ThreadID**

Synopsis: Returns the thread ID.

Declaration: `Property ThreadID : THandle`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Returns the thread ID.

### **2.55.15 TThread.OnTerminate**

Synopsis: Event called when the thread terminates.

Declaration: `Property OnTerminate : TNotifyEvent`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read,Write`

Description: Event called when the thread terminates.

### 2.55.16 TThread.FatalException

Synopsis: Exception that occurred during thread execution

Declaration: `Property FatalException : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: `FatalException` contains the exception that occurred during the thread's execution.

## 2.56 TThreadList

### 2.56.1 Description

This class is not yet implemented in Free Pascal.

### 2.56.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">307</a>	Add	Adds an element to the list.
<a href="#">307</a>	Clear	Removes all emements from the list.
<a href="#">306</a>	Create	Creates a new thread-safe list.
<a href="#">306</a>	Destroy	Destroys the list instance.
<a href="#">307</a>	LockList	Locks the list for exclusive access.
<a href="#">307</a>	Remove	Removes an item from the list.
<a href="#">307</a>	UnlockList	Unlocks the list after it was locked.

### 2.56.3 TThreadList.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new thread-safe list.

Declaration: `constructor Create`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This class is not yet implemented in Free Pascal.

Errors:

### 2.56.4 TThreadList.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the list instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This class is not yet implemented in Free Pascal.

Errors:

### **2.56.5 TThreadList.Add**

Synopsis: Adds an element to the list.

Declaration: `procedure Add(Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This class is not yet implemented in Free Pascal.

Errors:

### **2.56.6 TThreadList.Clear**

Synopsis: Removes all emements from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Clear`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This class is not yet implemented in Free Pascal.

Errors:

### **2.56.7 TThreadList.LockList**

Synopsis: Locks the list for exclusive access.

Declaration: `function LockList : TList`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This class is not yet implemented in Free Pascal.

Errors:

### **2.56.8 TThreadList.Remove**

Synopsis: Removes an item from the list.

Declaration: `procedure Remove(Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This class is not yet implemented in Free Pascal.

Errors:

### **2.56.9 TThreadList.UnlockList**

Synopsis: Unlocks the list after it was locked.

Declaration: `procedure UnlockList`

Visibility: `public`

Description: This class is not yet implemented in Free Pascal.

Errors:



## 2.57 TWriter

### 2.57.1 Description

Object to write component data to an arbitrary format.

### 2.57.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">308</a>	Create	Creates a new Writer with a stream and bufsize.
<a href="#">309</a>	DefineBinaryProperty	Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.
<a href="#">309</a>	DefineProperty	Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.
<a href="#">308</a>	Destroy	Destroys the writer instance.
<a href="#">309</a>	WriteBoolean	Write boolean value to the stream.
<a href="#">310</a>	WriteChar	Write a character to the stream.
<a href="#">309</a>	WriteCollection	Write a collection to the stream.
<a href="#">309</a>	WriteComponent	Stream a component to the stream.
<a href="#">310</a>	WriteDate	Write a date to the stream.
<a href="#">310</a>	WriteDescendent	Write a descendent component to the stream.
<a href="#">310</a>	WriteFloat	Write a float to the stream.
<a href="#">310</a>	WriteIdent	Write an identifier to the stream.
<a href="#">311</a>	WriteInteger	Write an integer to the stream.
<a href="#">311</a>	WriteListBegin	Write a start-of-list marker to the stream.
<a href="#">311</a>	WriteListEnd	Write an end-of-list marker to the stream.
<a href="#">311</a>	WriteRootComponent	Write a root component to the stream.
<a href="#">310</a>	WriteSingle	Write a single-type real to the stream.
<a href="#">311</a>	WriteString	Write a string to the stream.

### 2.57.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">313</a>	Driver	r	Driver used when writing to the stream.
<a href="#">312</a>	OnFindAncestor	rw	Event occurring when an ancestor component must be found.
<a href="#">312</a>	OnWriteMethodProperty	rw	Handler from writing method properties.
<a href="#">312</a>	OnWriteStringProperty	rw	Event handler for translating strings written to stream.
<a href="#">312</a>	RootAncestor	rw	Ancestor of root component.

### 2.57.4 TWriter.Create

Synopsis: Creates a new Writer with a stream and bufsize.

Declaration: constructor `Create(ADriver: TAbstractObjectWriter)`  
 constructor `Create(Stream: TStream; BufSize: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: Creates a new Writer with a stream and bufsize.

### 2.57.5 TWriter.Destroy

Synopsis: Destroys the writer instance.

Declaration: `destructor Destroy; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Destroys the writer instance.

### 2.57.6 TWriter.DefineProperty

Synopsis: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

Declaration: `procedure DefineProperty(const Name: String; ReadData: TReaderProc;  
AWriteData: TWriterProc; HasData: Boolean)  
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

### 2.57.7 TWriter.DefineBinaryProperty

Synopsis: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

Declaration: `procedure DefineBinaryProperty(const Name: String; ReadData: TStreamProc;  
AWriteData: TStreamProc; HasData: Boolean)  
; Override`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Callback used when defining and streaming custom properties.

### 2.57.8 TWriter.WriteBoolean

Synopsis: Write boolean value to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteBoolean(Value: Boolean)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write boolean value to the stream.

### 2.57.9 TWriter.WriteCollection

Synopsis: Write a collection to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteCollection(Value: TCollection)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a collection to the stream.

### 2.57.10 TWriter.WriteComponent

Synopsis: Stream a component to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteComponent(Component: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Stream a component to the stream.

### **2.57.11 TWriter.WriteChar**

Synopsis: Write a character to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteChar(Value: Char)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a character to the stream.

### **2.57.12 TWriter.WriteDescendent**

Synopsis: Write a descendent component to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDescendent(ARoot: TComponent; AAncestor: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a descendent component to the stream.

### **2.57.13 TWriter.WriteFloat**

Synopsis: Write a float to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteFloat(const Value: Extended)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a float to the stream.

### **2.57.14 TWriter.WriteSingle**

Synopsis: Write a single-type real to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteSingle(const Value: Single)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a single-type real to the stream.

### **2.57.15 TWriter.WriteDate**

Synopsis: Write a date to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteDate(const Value: TDateTime)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a date to the stream.

### **2.57.16 TWriter.WriteIdent**

Synopsis: Write an identifier to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteIdent(const Ident: String)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write an identifier to the stream.

### **2.57.17 TWriter.WriteInteger**

Synopsis: Write an integer to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteInteger(Value: LongInt); Overload`  
`procedure WriteInteger(Value: Int64); Overload`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write an integer to the stream.

### **2.57.18 TWriter.WriteListBegin**

Synopsis: Write a start-of-list marker to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteListBegin`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a start-of-list marker to the stream.

### **2.57.19 TWriter.WriteListEnd**

Synopsis: Write an end-of-list marker to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteListEnd`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write an end-of-list marker to the stream.

### **2.57.20 TWriter.WriteRootComponent**

Synopsis: Write a root component to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteRootComponent(ARoot: TComponent)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a root component to the stream.

### **2.57.21 TWriter.WriteString**

Synopsis: Write a string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteString(const Value: String)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: Write a string to the stream.

### 2.57.22 TWriter.RootAncestor

Synopsis: Ancestor of root component.

Declaration: Property RootAncestor : TComponent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Ancestor of root component.

### 2.57.23 TWriter.OnFindAncestor

Synopsis: Event occurring when an ancestor component must be found.

Declaration: Property OnFindAncestor : TFindAncestorEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Event occurring when an ancestor component must be found.

### 2.57.24 TWriter.OnWriteMethodProperty

Synopsis: Handler from writing method properties.

Declaration: Property OnWriteMethodProperty : TWriteMethodPropertyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnWriteMethodProperty can be set by an IDE or some streaming mechanism which handles dummy values for method properties; It can be used to write a real value to the stream which will be interpreted correctly when the stream is read. See TWriteMethodPropertyEvent ([164](#)) for a description of the arguments.

See also: TWriteMethodPropertyEvent ([164](#)), TReader.OnSetMethodProperty ([269](#))

### 2.57.25 TWriter.OnWriteStringProperty

Synopsis: Event handler for translating strings written to stream.

Declaration: Property OnWriteStringProperty : TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: OnWriteStringProperty is called whenever a string property is written to the stream. It can be used e.g. by a translation mechanism to translate the strings on the fly, when a form is written. See TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent ([161](#)) for a description of the various parameters.

See also: TReader.OnPropertyNotFound ([268](#)), TReader.OnSetMethodProperty ([269](#)), TReadWriteStringPropertyEvent ([161](#))

### **2.57.26 TWriter.Driver**

Synopsis: Driver used when writing to the stream.

Declaration: `Property Driver : TAbstractObjectWriter`

Visibility: `public`

Access: `Read`

Description: Driver used when writing to the stream.

## Chapter 3

# Reference for unit 'Crt'

### 3.1 Overview

This chapter describes the CRT unit for Free Pascal, both under dos linux and Windows. The unit was first written for dos by Florian klaempfl. The unit was ported to linux by Mark May and enhanced by Michael Van Canneyt and Peter Vreman. It works on the linux console, and in xterm and rxvt windows under X-Windows. The functionality for both is the same, except that under linux the use of an early implementation (versions 0.9.1 and earlier of the compiler) the crt unit automatically cleared the screen at program startup.

There are some caveats when using the CRT unit:

- Programs using the CRT unit will *not* be usable when input/output is being redirected on the command-line.
- For similar reasons they are not usable as CGI-scripts for use with a webserver.
- The use of the CRT unit and the graph unit may not always be supported.
- On linux or other unix OSes , executing other programs that expect special terminal behaviour (using one of the special functions in the linux unit) will not work. The terminal is set in RAW mode, which will destroy most terminal emulation settings.

### 3.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 3.2.1 Constants

`Black = 0`

Black color attribute

`Blink = 128`

Blink attribute

`Blue = 1`

Blue color attribute

Brown = 6

Brown color attribute

BW40 = 0

40 columns black and white screen mode.

BW80 = 2

80 columns black and white screen mode.

C40 = CO40

40 columns color screen mode.

C80 = CO80

80 columns color screen mode.

CO40 = 1

40 columns color screen mode.

CO80 = 3

80 columns color screen mode.

ConsoleMaxX = 1024

ConsoleMaxY = 1024

Cyan = 3

Cyan color attribute

DarkGray = 8

Dark gray color attribute

Flushing = false

Font8x8 = 256

Internal ROM font mode

Green = 2

Green color attribute



LightBlue = 9

Light Blue color attribute

LightCyan = 11

Light cyan color attribute

LightGray = 7

Light gray color attribute

LightGreen = 10

Light green color attribute

LightMagenta = 13

Light magenta color attribute

LightRed = 12

Light red color attribute

Magenta = 5

Magenta color attribute

Mono = 7

Monochrome screen mode (hercules screens)

Red = 4

Red color attribute

ScreenHeight : LongInt = 25

Current screen height.

ScreenWidth : LongInt = 80

Current screen width

White = 15

White color attribute

Yellow = 14

Yellow color attribute

### 3.2.2 Types

`PConsoleBuf = ^TConsoleBuf`

```
TCharAttr = packed record
  ch : Char;
  attr : Byte;
end
```

`TConsoleBuf = Array[0..ConsoleMaxX*ConsoleMaxY-1] of TCharAttr`

### 3.2.3 Variables

`CheckBreak : Boolean`

Check for CTRL-Break keystroke. Not used.

`CheckEOF : Boolean`

Check for EOF on standard input. Not used.

`CheckSnow : Boolean`

Check snow on CGA screens. Not used.

`ConsoleBuf : PConsoleBuf`

`DirectVideo : Boolean`

The `DirectVideo` variable controls the writing to the screen. If it is `True`, the the cursor is set via direct port access. If `False`, then the BIOS is used. This is defined under dos only.

`LastMode : Word = 3`

The `Lastmode` variable tells you which mode was last selected for the screen. It is defined on DOS only.

`TextAttr : Byte = $07`

The `TextAttr` variable controls the attributes with which characters are written to screen.

`WindMax : Word = $184f`

Maximum window dimension

`WindMaxX : DWord`

Maximum window X size

WindMaxY : DWord

Maximum window Y size

WindMin : Word = \$0

Minimum window dimension

WindMinX : DWord

Minimum window X size

WindMinY : DWord

Minimum window Y size

### 3.3 Procedures and functions

#### 3.3.1 AssignCrt

Synopsis: Assign file to CRT.

Declaration: `procedure AssignCrt(var F: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignCrt` Assigns a file `F` to the console. Everything written to the file `F` goes to the console instead. If the console contains a window, everything is written to the window instead.

Errors: None.

See also: [Window \(329\)](#)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex1.pp`

---

```

Program Example1;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the AssignCrt function. }

var
  F : Text;
begin
  AssignCrt(F);
  Rewrite(F); { Don't forget to open for output! }
  WriteLn(F, 'This is written to the Assigned File');
  Close(F);
end.

```

---

### 3.3.2 ClrEol

Synopsis: Clear from cursor position till end of line.

Declaration: `procedure ClrEol`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClrEol` clears the current line, starting from the cursor position, to the end of the window. The cursor doesn't move

Errors: None.

See also: `DelLine` ([321](#)), `InsLine` ([323](#)), `ClrScr` ([319](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex9.pp`

---

```

Program Example9;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the ClrEol function. }
var
  I,J : integer;

begin
  For I:=1 to 15 do
    For J:=1 to 80 do
      begin
        gotoxy(j,i);
        Write(j mod 10);
      end;
  Window(5,5,75,12);
  Write('This line will be cleared from',
    ' here till the right of the window');
  GotoXY(27,WhereY);
  ReadKey;
  ClrEol;
  WriteLn;
end.
```

---

### 3.3.3 ClrScr

Synopsis: Clear current window.

Declaration: `procedure ClrScr`

Visibility: default

Description: `ClrScr` clears the current window (using the current colors), and sets the cursor in the top left corner of the current window.

Errors: None.

See also: `Window` ([329](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex8.pp`

---

```
Program Example8;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the ClrScr function. }  
  
begin  
  WriteLn( 'Press any key to clear the screen' );  
  ReadKey;  
  ClrScr;  
  WriteLn( 'Have fun with the cleared screen' );  
end.
```

---

### 3.3.4 cursorbig

Synopsis: Show big cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursorbig`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorBig` makes the cursor a big rectangle. Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorOn` ([320](#)), `CursorOff` ([320](#))

### 3.3.5 cursoroff

Synopsis: Hide cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursoroff`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorOff` switches the cursor off (i.e. the cursor is no longer visible). Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorOn` ([320](#)), `CursorBig` ([320](#))

### 3.3.6 cursoron

Synopsis: Display cursor

Declaration: `procedure cursoron`

Visibility: default

Description: `CursorOn` switches the cursor on. Not implemented on unixes.

Errors: None.

See also: `CursorBig` ([320](#)), `CursorOff` ([320](#))

### 3.3.7 Delay

Synopsis: Delay program execution.

Declaration: `procedure Delay(MS: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Delay waits a specified number of milliseconds. The number of specified seconds is an approximation, and may be off a lot, if system load is high.

Errors: None

See also: Sound ([326](#)), NoSound ([325](#))

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex15.pp

---

```

Program Example15;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Delay function. }
var
  i : longint;
begin
  WriteLn( 'Counting Down' );
  for i:=10 downto 1 do
    begin
      WriteLn(i);
      Delay(1000); {Wait one second}
    end;
  WriteLn( 'BOOM!!! ' );
end.
```

---

### 3.3.8 DelLine

Synopsis: Delete line at cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure DelLine`

Visibility: default

Description: DelLine removes the current line. Lines following the current line are scrolled 1 line up, and an empty line is inserted at the bottom of the current window. The cursor doesn't move.

Errors: None.

See also: ClrEol ([319](#)), InsLine ([323](#)), ClrScr ([319](#))

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex11.pp

---

```

Program Example10;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the InsLine function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn( 'Line 1 ' );
```

---

---

```

WriteLn('Line 2');
WriteLn('Line 2');
WriteLn('Line 3');
WriteLn;
WriteLn('Oops, Line 2 is listed twice,',
        ' let''s delete the line at the cursor postion');
GotoXY(1,3);
ReadKey;
DelLine;
GotoXY(1,10);
end.

```

---

### 3.3.9 GotoXY

Synopsis: Set cursor position on screen.

Declaration: `procedure GotoXY(X: Byte;Y: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GotoXY` positions the cursor at  $(X, Y)$ ,  $X$  in horizontal,  $Y$  in vertical direction relative to the origin of the current window. The origin is located at  $(1, 1)$ , the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: [WhereX \(328\)](#), [WhereY \(328\)](#), [Window \(329\)](#)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex6.pp`

---

```

Program Example6;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the GotoXY function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  GotoXY(10,10);
  Write('10,10');
  GotoXY(70,20);
  Write('70,20');
  GotoXY(1,22);
end.

```

---

### 3.3.10 HighVideo

Synopsis: Switch to highlighted text mode

Declaration: `procedure HighVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `HighVideo` switches the output to highlighted text. (It sets the high intensity bit of the video attribute)

Errors: None.

See also: [TextColor \(327\)](#), [TextBackground \(326\)](#), [LowVideo \(324\)](#), [NormVideo \(324\)](#)

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex14.pp

---

```

Program Example14;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the LowVideo, HighVideo, NormVideo functions. }

begin
  LowVideo;
  WriteLn( 'This is written with LowVideo' );
  HighVideo;
  WriteLn( 'This is written with HighVideo' );
  NormVideo;
  WriteLn( 'This is written with NormVideo' );
end.

```

---

### 3.3.11 InsLine

Synopsis: Insert an empty line at cursor position

Declaration: `procedure InsLine`

Visibility: default

Description: `InsLine` inserts an empty line at the current cursor position. Lines following the current line are scrolled 1 line down, causing the last line to disappear from the window. The cursor doesn't move.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClrEol` ([319](#)), `DelLine` ([321](#)), `ClrScr` ([319](#))

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex10.pp

---

```

Program Example10;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the InsLine function. }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn( 'Line 1 ' );
  WriteLn( 'Line 3 ' );
  WriteLn;
  WriteLn( 'Oops, forgot Line 2, let''s insert at the cursor postion' );
  GotoXY(1,3);
  ReadKey;
  InsLine;
  Write( 'Line 2 ' );
  GotoXY(1,10);
end.

```

---

### 3.3.12 KeyPressed

Synopsis: Check if there is a keypress in the keybuffer

Declaration: `function KeyPressed : Boolean`



Visibility: default

Description: `KeyPressed` scans the keyboard buffer and sees if a key has been pressed. If this is the case, `True` is returned. If not, `False` is returned. The `Shift`, `Alt`, `Ctrl` keys are not reported. The key is not removed from the buffer, and can hence still be read after the `KeyPressed` function has been called.

Errors: None.

See also: `ReadKey` ([325](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex2.pp`

---

```

Program Example2;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the KeyPressed function. }

begin
  WriteLn( 'Waiting until a key is pressed' );
  repeat
    until KeyPressed;
  { The key is not Read,
    so it should also be outputted at the commandline }
end.
```

---

### 3.3.13 LowVideo

Synopsis: Switch to low intensity colors.

Declaration: `procedure LowVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `LowVideo` switches the output to non-highlighted text. (It clears the high intensity bit of the video attribute)

For an example, see `HighVideo` ([322](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` ([327](#)), `TextBackground` ([326](#)), `HighVideo` ([322](#)), `NormVideo` ([324](#))

### 3.3.14 NormVideo

Synopsis: Return to normal (startup) modus

Declaration: `procedure NormVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `NormVideo` switches the output to the defaults, read at startup. (The defaults are read from the cursor position at startup)

For an example, see `HighVideo` ([322](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `TextColor` ([327](#)), `TextBackground` ([326](#)), `LowVideo` ([324](#)), `HighVideo` ([322](#))

### 3.3.15 NoSound

Synopsis: Stop system speaker

Declaration: `procedure NoSound`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `NoSound` stops the speaker sound. This call is not supported on all operating systems.

Errors: None.

See also: `Sound` ([326](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex16.pp`

---

```

Program Example16;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Sound and NoSound function . }

var
  i : longint;
begin
  WriteLn('You will hear some tones from your speaker');
  while (i < 15000) do
    begin
      inc(i, 500);
      Sound(i);
      Delay(100);
    end;
  WriteLn('Quiet now!');
  NoSound; { Stop noise }
end.
```

---

### 3.3.16 ReadKey

Synopsis: Read key from keybuffer

Declaration: `function ReadKey : Char`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `ReadKey` reads 1 key from the keyboard buffer, and returns this. If an extended or function key has been pressed, then the zero ASCII code is returned. You can then read the scan code of the key with a second `ReadKey` call.

Key mappings under Linux can cause the wrong key to be reported by `ReadKey`, so caution is needed when using `ReadKey`.

Errors: None.

See also: `KeyPressed` ([323](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex3.pp`

---

```

Program Example3;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the ReadKey function . }
```

---

---

```

var
  ch : char;
begin
  writeln('Press Left/Right, Esc=Quit');
  repeat
    ch:=ReadKey;
    case ch of
      #0 : begin
        ch:=ReadKey; {Read ScanCode}
        case ch of
          #75 : WriteLn('Left');
          #77 : WriteLn('Right');
        end;
      end;
      #27 : WriteLn('ESC');
    end;
  until ch=#27 {Esc}
end.

```

---

### 3.3.17 Sound

Synopsis: Sound system speaker

Declaration: `procedure Sound(Hz: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sound sounds the speaker at a frequency of hz. Under Windows, a system sound is played and the frequency parameter is ignored. On other operating systems, this routine may not be implemented.

Errors: None.

See also: NoSound ([325](#))

### 3.3.18 TextBackground

Synopsis: Set text background

Declaration: `procedure TextBackground(Color: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: TextBackground sets the background color to CL. CL can be one of the predefined color constants.

Errors: None.

See also: TextColor ([327](#)), HighVideo ([322](#)), LowVideo ([324](#)), NormVideo ([324](#))

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex13.pp

---

```

Program Example13;
uses Crt;

```

```

{ Program to demonstrate the TextBackground function. }

```

```

begin

```

---

```

    TextColor(White);
    WriteLn('This is written in with the default background color');
    TextBackground(Green);
    WriteLn('This is written in with a Green background');
    TextBackground(Brown);
    WriteLn('This is written in with a Brown background');
    TextBackground(Black);
    WriteLn('Back with a black background');
end.

```

---

### 3.3.19 TextColor

Synopsis: Set text color

Declaration: `procedure TextColor(Color: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextColor` sets the foreground color to CL. CL can be one of the predefined color constants.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextBackground` ([326](#)), `HighVideo` ([322](#)), `LowVideo` ([324](#)), `NormVideo` ([324](#))

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex12.pp`

---

```

Program Example12;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the TextColor function. }

begin
    WriteLn('This is written in the default color');
    TextColor(Red);
    WriteLn('This is written in Red');
    TextColor(White);
    WriteLn('This is written in White');
    TextColor(LightBlue);
    WriteLn('This is written in Light Blue');
end.

```

---

### 3.3.20 TextMode

Synopsis: Set screen mode.

Declaration: `procedure TextMode(Mode: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextMode` sets the textmode of the screen (i.e. the number of lines and columns of the screen). The lower byte is use to set the VGA text mode.

This procedure is only implemented on dos.

Errors: None.

See also: `Window` ([329](#))

### 3.3.21 WhereX

Synopsis: Return X (horizontal) cursor position

Declaration: `function WhereX : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `WhereX` returns the current X-coordinate of the cursor, relative to the current window. The origin is (1,1), in the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: [GotoXY \(322\)](#), [WhereY \(328\)](#), [Window \(329\)](#)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex7.pp`

---

```
Program Example7;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the WhereX and WhereY functions. }  
  
begin  
  WriteLn( 'Cursor position: X= ', WhereX, ' Y= ', WhereY );  
end.
```

---

### 3.3.22 WhereY

Synopsis: Return Y (vertical) cursor position

Declaration: `function WhereY : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `WhereY` returns the current Y-coordinate of the cursor, relative to the current window. The origin is (1,1), in the upper-left corner of the window.

Errors: None.

See also: [GotoXY \(322\)](#), [WhereX \(328\)](#), [Window \(329\)](#)

**Listing:** `./crtex/ex7.pp`

---

```
Program Example7;  
uses Crt;  
  
{ Program to demonstrate the WhereX and WhereY functions. }  
  
begin  
  WriteLn( 'Cursor position: X= ', WhereX, ' Y= ', WhereY );  
end.
```

---

### 3.3.23 Window

Synopsis: Create new window on screen.

Declaration: `procedure Window(X1: Byte;Y1: Byte;X2: Byte;Y2: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: Window creates a window on the screen, to which output will be sent. ( X1 , Y1 ) are the coordinates of the upper left corner of the window, ( X2 , Y2 ) are the coordinates of the bottom right corner of the window. These coordinates are relative to the entire screen, with the top left corner equal to ( 1 , 1 ). Further coordinate operations, except for the next Window call, are relative to the window's top left corner.

Errors: None.

See also: GotoXY ([322](#)), WhereX ([328](#)), WhereY ([328](#)), ClrScr ([319](#))

**Listing:** ./crtex/ex5.pp

---

```

Program Example5;
uses Crt;

{ Program to demonstrate the Window function . }

begin
  ClrScr;
  WriteLn('Creating a window from 30,10 to 50,20');
  Window(30,10,50,20);
  WriteLn('We are now writing in this small window we just created , we '+
    'can''t get outside it when writing long lines like this one');
  Write('Press any key to clear the window');
  ReadKey;
  ClrScr;
  Write('The window is cleared , press any key to restore to fullscreen');
  ReadKey;
  { Full Screen is 80x25 }
  Window(1,1,80,25);
  Clrscr;
  WriteLn('Back in Full Screen');
end.

```

---

## Chapter 4

# Reference for unit 'dateutils'

### 4.1 Used units

Table 4.1: Used units by unit 'dateutils'

Name	Page
math	<a href="#">603</a>
sysutils	<a href="#">1082</a>
Types	<a href="#">330</a>

### 4.2 Overview

`DateUtils` contains a large number of date/time manipulation routines, all based on the `TDateTime` type. There are routines for date/time math, for comparing dates and times, for composing dates and decomposing dates in their constituent parts.

### 4.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 4.3.1 Constants

`ApproxDaysPerMonth` : `Double` = 30.4375

Average number of days in a month, measured over a year. Used in `MonthsBetween` ([375](#)).

`ApproxDaysPerYear` : `Double` = 365.25

Average number of days in a year, measured over 4 years. Used in `YearsBetween` ([415](#)).

`DayFriday` = 5

ISO day number for Friday

`DayMonday` = 1

ISO day number for Monday

DaySaturday = 6

ISO day number for Saturday

DaysPerWeek = 7

Number of days in a week.

DaysPerYear : Array[Boolean] of Word = (365,366 )

Array with number of days in a year. The boolean index indicates whether it is a leap year or not.

DaySunday = 7

ISO day number for Sunday

DayThursday = 4

ISO day number for Thursday

DayTuesday = 2

ISO day number for Tuesday

DayWednesday = 3

ISO day number for Wednesday

MonthsPerYear = 12

Number of months in a year

OneHour = 1 / HoursPerDay

One hour as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneMillisecond = 1 / MSecsPerDay

One millisecond as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneMinute = 1 / MinsPerDay

One minute as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

OneSecond = 1 / SecsPerDay

One second as a fraction of a day (suitable for TDateTime)

RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs = High ( Word )



Bitmask deciding what to do with each TDateTime field in recode routines

WeeksPerFortnight = 2

Number of weeks in fortnight

YearsPerCentury = 100

Number of years in a century

YearsPerDecade = 10

Number of years in a decade

YearsPerMillennium = 1000

Number of years in a millenium

## 4.4 Procedures and functions

### 4.4.1 CompareDate

Synopsis: Compare 2 dates, disregarding the time of day

Declaration: `function CompareDate(const A: TDateTime;const B: TDateTime)  
: TValueRelationship`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareDate compares the date parts of two timestamps A and B and returns the following results:

< 0 if the day part of A is earlier than the day part of B.

0 if A and B are the on same day (times may differ) .

> 0 if the day part of A is later than the day part of B.

See also: CompareTime (334), CompareDateTime (333), SameDate (385), SameTime (386), SameDateTime (386)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex99.pp

---

**Program** Example99;

*{ This program demonstrates the CompareDate function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy ';

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**Var**

    Cmp : Integer;



---

```

Procedure Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

Var
  Cmp : Integer;

begin
  Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is ');
  Cmp:=CompareDateTime(D1,D2);
  If Cmp<0 then
    write('earlier than ')
  else if Cmp>0 then
    Write('later than ')
  else
    Write('equal to ');
  WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2));
end;

Var
  D,N : TDateTime;

Begin
  D:=Today;
  N:=Now;
  Test(D,D);
  Test(N,N);
  Test(D+1,D);
  Test(D-1,D);
  Test(D+OneSecond,D);
  Test(D-OneSecond,D);
  Test(N+OneSecond,N);
  Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

### 4.4.3 CompareTime

Synopsis: Compares two times of the day, disregarding the date part.

Declaration: `function CompareTime(const A: TDateTime;const B: TDateTime)  
: TValueRelationship`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareTime` compares the time parts of two timestamps A and B and returns the following results:

- < 0 if the time part of A is earlier than the time part of B.
- 0 if A and B have the same time part (dates may differ) .
- > 0 if the time part of A is later than the time part of B.

See also: `CompareDateTime` (333), `CompareDate` (332), `SameDate` (385), `SameTime` (386), `SameDateTime` (386)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex100.pp

---

```

Program Example100;

{ This program demonstrates the CompareTime function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Const
    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

Procedure Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

Var
    Cmp : Integer;

begin
    Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' has ');
    Cmp:=CompareDateTime(D1,D2);
    If Cmp<0 then
        write('earlier time than ')
    else if Cmp>0 then
        Write('later time than ')
    else
        Write('equal time with ');
    WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2));
end;

Var
    D,N : TDateTime;

Begin
    D:=Today;
    N:=Now;
    Test(D,D);
    Test(N,N);
    Test(N+1,N);
    Test(N-1,N);
    Test(N+OneSecond,N);
    Test(N-OneSecond,N);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.4 DateOf

Synopsis: Extract the date part from a DateTime indication.

Declaration: `function DateOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: DateOf extracts the date part from AValue and returns the result.

Since the TDateTime is actually a double with the date part encoded in the integer part, this operation corresponds to a call to Trunc.

See also: TimeOf (396), YearOf (415), MonthOf (375), DayOf (337), HourOf (351), MinuteOf (371), SecondOf (387), MilliSecondOf (366)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex1.pp

---

```

Program Example1;

{ This program demonstrates the DateOf function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Begin
    WriteLn( 'Date is: ', DateTimeToStr(DateOf(Now)));
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.5 DateTimeToJulianDate

Synopsis: Converts a TDateTime value to a Julian date representation

Declaration: `function DateTimeToJulianDate(const AValue: TDateTime) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [JulianDateToDateTime \(366\)](#), [TryJulianDateToDateTime \(401\)](#), [DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate \(336\)](#), [TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(401\)](#)

#### 4.4.6 DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate

Synopsis: Convert a TDateTime value to a modified Julian date representation

Declaration: `function DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate(const AValue: TDateTime) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [DateTimeToJulianDate \(336\)](#), [JulianDateToDateTime \(366\)](#), [TryJulianDateToDateTime \(401\)](#), [TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(401\)](#)

#### 4.4.7 DateTimeToUnix

Synopsis: Convert a TDateTime value to Unix epoch time

Declaration: `function DateTimeToUnix(const AValue: TDateTime) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [UnixToDateTime \(402\)](#)

#### 4.4.8 DayOf

Synopsis: Extract the day (of month) part from a DateTime value

Declaration: `function DayOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DayOf` returns the day of the month part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 31.

For an example, see `YearOf` (415)

See also: `YearOf` (415), `WeekOf` (402), `MonthOf` (375), `HourOf` (351), `MinuteOf` (371), `SecondOf` (387), `MilliSecondOf` (366)

#### 4.4.9 DayOfTheMonth

Synopsis: Extract the day (of month) part of a DateTime value

Declaration: `function DayOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DayOfTheMonth` returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the month till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a one-based number, i.e. the first day of the month will return 1.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (403) function.

See also: `DayOfTheYear` (338), `WeekOfTheMonth` (403), `HourOfTheMonth` (352), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (372), `SecondOfTheMonth` (389), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (368)

#### 4.4.10 DayOfTheWeek

Synopsis: Extracts the day of the week from a DateTime value

Declaration: `function DayOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DayOfTheWeek` returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the week till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a one-based number, i.e. the first day of the week will return 1.

See also: `DayOfTheYear` (338), `DayOfTheMonth` (337), `HourOfTheWeek` (352), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (372), `SecondOfTheWeek` (389), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (368)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex42.pp`

---

**Program** Example42;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

    N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

---

```

N:=Now;
WriteLn('Day of the Week      : ',DayOfTheWeek(N));
WriteLn('Hour of the Week     : ',HourOfTheWeek(N));
WriteLn('Minute of the Week   : ',MinuteOfTheWeek(N));
WriteLn('Second of the Week    : ',SecondOfTheWeek(N));
WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Week : ',
        MilliSecondOfTheWeek(N));
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.11 DayOfTheYear

Synopsis: Extracts the day of the year from a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function DayOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DayOfTheYear` returns the number of days that have passed since the start of the year till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a one-based number, i.e. January 1 will return 1.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (403) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (403), `HourOfTheYear` (353), `MinuteOfTheYear` (372), `SecondOfTheYear` (389), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (369)

#### 4.4.12 DaysBetween

Synopsis: Number of whole days between two DateTime values.

Declaration: `function DaysBetween(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaysBetween` returns the number of whole days between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a day (hours, minutes, etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (415), `MonthsBetween` (375), `WeeksBetween` (404), `HoursBetween` (353), `MinutesBetween` (373), `SecondsBetween` (389), `MillisecondsBetween` (369)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex58.pp`

---

**Program** `Example58;`

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysBetween function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);`

**begin**

```

Write('Number of days between ');
Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));
WriteLn(' : ', DaysBetween(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

**Var**

```

D1, D2 : TDateTime;

```

**Begin**

```
D1:=Now;
D2:=Today-23/24;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-1;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-25/24;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-26/24;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-5.4;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-2.5;
Test(D1,D2);
```

**End.**

---

### 4.4.13 DaysInAMonth

Synopsis: Number of days in a month of a certain year.

Declaration: `function DaysInAMonth(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaysInAMonth` returns the number of days in the month `AMonth` in the year `AYear`. The return value takes leap years into account.

See also: `WeeksInAYear` ([405](#)), `WeeksInYear` ([405](#)), `DaysInYear` ([341](#)), `DaysInAYear` ([339](#)), `DaysInMonth` ([340](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** Example17;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInAMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,M : Word;

**Begin**

**For** Y:=1992 **to** 2010 **do**

**For** M:=1 **to** 12 **do**

**WriteIn**(LongMonthNames[m], ' ', Y, ' has ', DaysInAMonth(Y,M), ' days. ');

**End.**

---

### 4.4.14 DaysInAYear

Synopsis: Number of days in a particular year.

Declaration: `function DaysInAYear(const AYear: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default



**Description:** `DaysInAYear` returns the number of weeks in the year `AYear`. The return value is either 365 or 366.

See also: `WeeksInAYear` ([405](#)), `WeeksInYear` ([405](#)), `DaysInYear` ([341](#)), `DaysInMonth` ([340](#)), `DaysInAMonth` ([339](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15;`

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInAYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`Y : Word;`

**Begin**

`For Y:=1992 to 2010 do`

`WriteLn(Y, ' has ', DaysInAYear(Y), ' days. ');`

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.15 DaysInMonth

**Synopsis:** Return the number of days in the month in which a date occurs.

**Declaration:** `function DaysInMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `DaysInMonth` returns the number of days in the month in which `AValue` falls. The return value takes leap years into account.

See also: `WeeksInAYear` ([405](#)), `WeeksInYear` ([405](#)), `DaysInYear` ([341](#)), `DaysInAYear` ([339](#)), `DaysInAMonth` ([339](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`Y,M : Word;`

**Begin**

`For Y:=1992 to 2010 do`

`For M:=1 to 12 do`

`WriteLn(LongMonthNames[M], ' ', Y, ' has ', DaysInMonth(EncodeDate(Y,M,1)), ' days. ');`

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.16 DaysInYear

Synopsis: Return the number of days in the year in which a date occurs.

Declaration: `function DaysInYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `daysInYear` returns the number of days in the year part of `AValue`. The return value is either 365 or 366.

See also: `WeeksInAYear` (405), `WeeksInYear` (405), `DaysInAYear` (339), `DaysInMonth` (340), `DaysInAMonth` (339)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** Example14;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaysInYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y : Word;

**Begin**

For Y:=1992 to 2010 do

WriteLn(Y, ' has ', DaysInYear(EncodeDate(Y,1,1)), ' days. ');

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.17 DaySpan

Synopsis: Calculate the approximate number of days between two `DateTime` values.

Declaration: `function DaySpan(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: `DaySpan` returns the number of Days between `ANow` and `AThen`, including any fractional parts of a Day.

See also: `YearSpan` (416), `MonthSpan` (376), `WeekSpan` (406), `HourSpan` (354), `MinuteSpan` (374), `SecondSpan` (390), `MilliSecondSpan` (370), `DaysBetween` (338)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex66.pp`

---

**Program** Example66;

*{ This program demonstrates the DaySpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

Write('Number of days between ');

Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));

WriteLn(' : ', DaySpan(ANow, AThen));

**end;**

---

```
Var
  D1,D2 : TDateTime;
```

```
Begin
  D1:=Now;
  D2:=Today-23/24;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-1;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-25/24;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-26/24;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-5.4;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-2.5;
  Test(D1,D2);
```

```
End.
```

---

#### 4.4.18 DecodeDateDay

Synopsis: Decode a DateTime value in year and year of day.

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDateDay(const AValue: TDateTime; var AYear: Word; var ADayOfYear: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeDateDay` decomposes the date indication in `AValue` and returns the various components in `AYear`, `ADayOfYear`.

See also: `EncodeDateTime` (346), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (345), `EncodeDateWeek` (346), `EncodeDateDay` (345), `DecodeDateTime` (343), `DecodeDateWeek` (344), `DecodeDateMonthWeek` (342)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex83.pp`

---

**Program** `Example83;`

```
{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateDay function }
```

```
Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;
```

```
Var
  Y,DoY : Word;
  TS : TDateTime;
```

```
Begin
  DecodeDateDay(Now,Y,DoY);
  TS:=EncodeDateDay(Y,DoY);
  WriteLn('Today is : ',DateToStr(TS));
End.
```

---

#### 4.4.19 DecodeDateMonthWeek

Synopsis: Decode a DateTime value in a month, week of month and day of week

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeDateMonthWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; var AYear: Word;  
var AMonth: Word; var AWeekOfMonth: Word;  
var ADayOfWeek: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DecodeDateMonthWeek decomposes the date indication in AValue and returns the various components in AYear, AMonth, AWeekOfMonth and ADayOfWeek.

**See also:** EncodeDateTime (346), EncodeDateMonthWeek (345), EncodeDateWeek (346), EncodeDateDay (345), DecodeDateTime (343), DecodeDateWeek (344), DecodeDateDay (342)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex85.pp

---

**Program** Example85;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateMonthWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y, M, WoM, Dow : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateMonthWeek(**Now**, Y, M, WoM, DoW);  
TS := EncodeDateMonthWeek(Y, M, WoM, Dow);  
**WriteLn**('Today is : ', **DateToStr**(TS));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.20 DecodeDateTime

**Synopsis:** Decode a datetime value in a date and time value

**Declaration:** `procedure DecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime; var AYear: Word;  
var AMonth: Word; var ADay: Word; var AHour: Word;  
var AMinute: Word; var ASecond: Word;  
var AMilliSecond: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** DecodeDateTime decomposes the date/time indication in AValue and returns the various components in AYear, AMonth, ADay, AHour, AMinute, ASecond, AMilliSecond

**See also:** EncodeDateTime (346), EncodeDateMonthWeek (345), EncodeDateWeek (346), EncodeDateDay (345), DecodeDateWeek (344), DecodeDateDay (342), DecodeDateMonthWeek (342)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex79.pp

---

**Program** Example79;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS : Word;

```
TS : TDateTime;
```

**Begin**

```
DecodeDateTime(Now, Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS);
TS:=EncodeDateTime(Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS);
WriteIn('Now is : ', DateTimeToStr(TS));
End.
```

---

**4.4.21 DecodeDateWeek**

Synopsis: Decode a DateTime value in a week of year and day of week.

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDateWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; var AYear: Word; var AWeekOfYear: Word; var ADayOfWeek: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: DecodeDateWeek decomposes the date indication in AValue and returns the various components in AYear, AWeekOfYear, ADayOfWeek.

See also: EncodeDateTime (346), EncodeDateMonthWeek (345), EncodeDateWeek (346), EncodeDateDay (345), DecodeDateTime (343), DecodeDateDay (342), DecodeDateMonthWeek (342)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex81.pp

---

**Program** Example81;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDateWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

```
Y, W, Dow : Word;
TS : TDateTime;
```

**Begin**

```
DecodeDateWeek(Now, Y, W, Dow);
TS:=EncodeDateWeek(Y, W, Dow);
WriteIn('Today is : ', DateToStr(TS));
End.
```

---

**4.4.22 DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth**

Synopsis: Decode a DateTime value in year, month, day of week parts

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AValue: TDateTime; var AYear: Word; var AMonth: Word; var ANthDayOfWeek: Word; var ADayOfWeek: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth decodes the date AValue in a AYear, AMonth, ADayOfWeek and ANthDayOfWeek. (This is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third saturday of the month.)

See also: [NthDayOfWeek \(377\)](#), [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(345\)](#), [#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek \(1125\)](#), [EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth \(346\)](#), [TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth \(400\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex105.pp

**Program** Example105;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,M,NDoW,DoW : Word;

D : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth( **Date**, Y, M, NDoW, DoW );

D := EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth( Y, M, NDoW, DoW );

**Write**( **DateToStr**(D), ' is the ', NDoW, '-th ' );

**WriteIn**( **formatdateTime**( 'dddd', D ), ' of the month. ' );

**End.**

#### 4.4.23 EncodeDateDay

Synopsis: Encodes a year and day of year to a DateTime value

**Declaration:** function EncodeDateDay(const AYear: Word;const ADayOfYear: Word)  
: TDateTime

Visibility: default

**Description:** EncodeDateDay encodes the values AYear and ADayOfYear to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see [DecodeDateDay \(342\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: [EncodeDateMonthWeek \(345\)](#), [DecodeDateDay \(342\)](#), [EncodeDateTime \(346\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(346\)](#), [TryEncodeDateTime \(398\)](#), [TryEncodeDateMonthWeek \(398\)](#), [TryEncodeDateWeek \(399\)](#)

#### 4.4.24 EncodeDateMonthWeek

Synopsis: Encodes a year, month, week of month and day of week to a DateTime value

**Declaration:** function EncodeDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;  
const AWeekOfMonth: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

**Description:** EncodeDateMonthWeek encodes the values AYear, AMonth, AWeekOfMonth, ADayOfWeek, to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see [DecodeDateMonthWeek \(342\)](#).

**Errors:** If any of the arguments is not valid, then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: [DecodeDateMonthWeek \(342\)](#), [EncodeDateTime \(346\)](#), [EncodeDateWeek \(346\)](#), [EncodeDateDay \(345\)](#), [TryEncodeDateTime \(398\)](#), [TryEncodeDateWeek \(399\)](#), [TryEncodeDateMonthWeek \(398\)](#), [TryEncodeDateDay \(397\)](#), [NthDayOfWeek \(377\)](#)

#### 4.4.25 EncodeDateTime

Synopsis: Encodes a `DateTime` value from all its parts

Declaration: 

```
function EncodeDateTime(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;
                        const ADay: Word;const AHour: Word;
                        const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word;
                        const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

Description: `EncodeDateTime` encodes the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond` to a date/time value and returns this value.

For an example, see `DecodeDateTime` (343).

Errors: If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `DecodeDateTime` (343), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (345), `EncodeDateWeek` (346), `EncodeDateDay` (345), `TryEncodeDateTime` (398), `TryEncodeDateWeek` (399), `TryEncodeDateDay` (397), `TryEncodeDateMonthWeek` (398)

#### 4.4.26 EncodeDateWeek

Synopsis: Encode a `TDateTime` value from a year, week and day of week triplet

Declaration: 

```
function EncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word;
                        const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime
function EncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word)
                        : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

Description: `EncodeDateWeek` encodes the values `AYear`, `AWeekOfYear` and `ADayOfWeek` to a date value and returns this value.

For an example, see `DecodeDateWeek` (344).

Errors: If any of the arguments is not valid, then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (345), `DecodeDateWeek` (344), `EncodeDateTime` (346), `EncodeDateDay` (345), `TryEncodeDateTime` (398), `TryEncodeDateWeek` (399), `TryEncodeDateMonthWeek` (398)

#### 4.4.27 EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth

Synopsis: Encodes a year, month, week, day of week specification to a `TDateTime` value

Declaration: 

```
function EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;
                                const ANthDayOfWeek: Word;
                                const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

Description: `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` encodes `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADayOfWeek` and `ANthDayOfWeek` to a valid date stamp and returns the result.

`ANthDayOfWeek` is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third saturday of the month.

For an example, see `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (344).

Errors: If any of the values is not in range, then an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

See also: `NthDayOfWeek` (377), `EncodeDateMonthWeek` (345), `#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek` (1125), `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (344), `TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` (400)

#### 4.4.28 EndOfDay

Synopsis: Calculates a `DateTime` value representing the end of a specified day

Declaration: 

```
function EndOfDay(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;
                  const ADay: Word) : TDateTime; Overload
function EndOfDay(const AYear: Word;const ADayOfYear: Word) : TDateTime
; Overload
```

Visibility: default

Description: `EndOfDay` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date/time indication of the last moment (23:59:59.999) of the day given by `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`.

The day may also be indicated with a `AYear`, `ADayOfYear` pair.

See also: `StartOfDay` (394), `StartOfDay` (391), `StartOfTheWeek` (395), `StartOfAWeek` (392), `StartOfAMonth` (392), `StartOfTheMonth` (394), `EndOfTheWeek` (350), `EndOfAWeek` (348), `EndOfTheYear` (351), `EndOfAYear` (349), `EndOfTheMonth` (350), `EndOfAMonth` (347), `EndOfTheDay` (349)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** `Example39`;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfDay function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils` , `DateUtils` ;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'End of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';`

**Var**

`Y,M,D : Word;`

**Begin**

`Y:=YearOf(Today);`

`M:=MonthOf(Today);`

`D:=DayOf(Today);`

`WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, EndOfDay(Y,M,D)));`

`DecodeDateDay(Today,Y,D);`

`WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, EndOfDay(Y,D)));`

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.29 EndOfAMonth

Synopsis: Calculate a `datetime` value representing the last day of the indicated month

Declaration: 

```
function EndOfAMonth(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word) : TDateTime
```

Visibility: default

Description: `EndOfAMonth` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last day of the month indicated by the `AYear`, `AMonth` pair.



See also: [StartOfTheMonth \(394\)](#), [StartOfAMonth \(392\)](#), [EndOfTheMonth \(350\)](#), [EndOfTheYear \(351\)](#), [EndOfAYear \(349\)](#), [StartOfAWeek \(392\)](#), [StartOfTheWeek \(395\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex31.pp

---

**Program** Example31;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfAMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = ' "Last day of this month : "dd mmmm yyyy ';

**Var**

Y,M : Word;

**Begin**

Y:=YearOf(Today);

M:=MonthOf(Today);

**WriteLn** (FormatDateTime(Fmt, EndOfAMonth(Y,M)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.30 EndOfAWeek

**Synopsis:** Return the last moment of day of the week, given a year and a week in the year.

**Declaration:** function EndOfAWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime  
function EndOfAWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word)  
: TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** EndOfAWeek returns a TDateTime value with the date of the last moment (23:59:59:999) on the indicated day of the week indicated by the AYear, AWeek, ADayOfWeek values.

The default value for ADayOfWeek is 7.

See also: [StartOfTheWeek \(395\)](#), [EndOfTheWeek \(350\)](#), [EndOfAWeek \(348\)](#), [StartOfAMonth \(392\)](#), [EndOfTheYear \(351\)](#), [EndOfAYear \(349\)](#), [EndOfTheMonth \(350\)](#), [EndOfAMonth \(347\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex35.pp

---

**Program** Example35;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfAWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = ' "Last day of this week : "dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ';

Fmt2 = ' "Last-1 day of this week : "dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ';

**Var**

Y,W : Word;

**Begin**

Y:=YearOf(Today);

```

W:=WeekOf( Today );
WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfAWeek(Y,W) ));
WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt2, EndOfAWeek(Y,W,6) ));
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.31 EndOfAYear

Synopsis: Calculate a DateTime value representing the last day of a year

Declaration: `function EndOfAYear(const AYear: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartOfAYear` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last day of the year `AYear` (December 31).

See also: `StartOfTheYear` (395), `EndOfTheYear` (351), `EndOfAYear` (349), `EndOfTheMonth` (350), `EndOfA-Month` (347), `StartOfAWeek` (392), `StartOfTheWeek` (395)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex27.pp

---

**Program** Example27;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfAYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'Last day of this year : " dd mmm yyyy ';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfAYear(YearOf(Today))));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.32 EndOfTheDay

Synopsis: Calculate a datetime value that represents the end of a given day.

Declaration: `function EndOfTheDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `EndOfTheDay` extracts the date part of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date/-time indication of the last moment (23:59:59.999) of this day.

See also: `StartOfTheDay` (394), `StartOfADay` (391), `StartOfTheWeek` (395), `StartOfAWeek` (392), `StartOfA-Month` (392), `StartOfTheMonth` (394), `EndOfTheWeek` (350), `EndOfAWeek` (348), `EndOfTheYear` (351), `EndOfAYear` (349), `EndOfTheMonth` (350), `EndOfAMonth` (347), `EndOfADay` (347)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex37.pp

---

**Program** Example37;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

```
Fmt = '"End of the day : "dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';
```

**Begin**

```
WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheDay (Today)));
```

```
End.
```

---

### 4.4.33 EndOfTheMonth

Synopsis: Calculate a DateTime value representing the last day of the month, given a day in that month.

Declaration: `function EndOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `EndOfTheMonth` extracts the year and month parts of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of that year and month as the `EndOfAMonth` (347) function.

See also: `StartOfAMonth` (392), `StartOfTheMonth` (394), `EndOfAMonth` (347), `EndOfTheYear` (351), `EndOfAYear` (349), `StartOfAWeek` (392), `StartOfTheWeek` (395)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex29.pp`

---

**Program** Example29;

```
{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheMonth function }
```

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

```
Fmt = '"last day of this month : "dd mmmm yyyy';
```

**Begin**

```
WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheMonth (Today)));
```

```
End.
```

---

### 4.4.34 EndOfTheWeek

Synopsis: Calculate a DateTime value which represents the end of a week, given a date in that week.

Declaration: `function EndOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `EndOfTheWeek` extracts the year and week parts of `AValue` and returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the last day of that week as the `EndOfAWeek` (348) function.

See also: `StartOfAWeek` (392), `StartOfTheWeek` (395), `EndOfAWeek` (348), `StartOfAMonth` (392), `EndOfTheYear` (351), `EndOfAYear` (349), `EndOfTheMonth` (350), `EndOfAMonth` (347)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** Example33;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = '"last day of this week : "dd mmmm yyyy ';

**Begin**

    WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheWeek (Today)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.35 EndOfTheYear

Synopsis: Calculate a DateTime value representing the last day of a year, given a date in that year.

Declaration: function EndOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: EndOfTheYear extracts the year part of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date of the last day of that year (December 31), as the EndOfAYear (349) function.

See also: StartOfAYear (393), StartOfTheYear (395), EndOfTheMonth (350), EndOfAMonth (347), StartOfAWeek (392), StartOfTheWeek (395), EndOfAYear (349)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex25.pp

---

**Program** Example25;

*{ This program demonstrates the EndOfTheYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = '"Last day of this year : "dd mmmm yyyy ';

**Begin**

    WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, EndOfTheYear (Today)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.36 HourOf

Synopsis: Extract the hour part from a DateTime value.

Declaration: function HourOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

Visibility: default

Description: HourOf returns the hour of the day part of the AValue date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 23.

For an example, see YearOf (415)

See also: YearOf (415), WeekOf (402), MonthOf (375), DayOf (337), MinuteOf (371), SecondOf (387), MilliSecondOf (366)

### 4.4.37 HourOfDay

Synopsis: Calculate the hour of a given `DateTime` value

Declaration: `function HourOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `HourOfDay` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the day till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 will return 0.

See also: `HourOfYear` (353), `HourOfMonth` (352), `HourOfWeek` (352), `MinuteOfDay` (371), `SecondOfDay` (387), `MillisecondOfDay` (367)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex43.pp`

---

**Program** `Example43;`

`{ This program demonstrates the HourOfDay function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`N : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`N:=Now;`

`WriteLn('Hour of the Day : ',HourOfDay(N));`

`WriteLn('Minute of the Day : ',MinuteOfDay(N));`

`WriteLn('Second of the Day : ',SecondOfDay(N));`

`WriteLn('Millisecond of the Day : ',`  
`MillisecondOfDay(N));`

**End.**

---

### 4.4.38 HourOfMonth

Synopsis: Calculate the number of hours passed since the start of the month.

Declaration: `function HourOfMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `HourOfMonth` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the month till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfMonth` (403) function.

See also: `WeekOfMonth` (403), `DayOfMonth` (337), `MinuteOfMonth` (372), `SecondOfMonth` (389), `MillisecondOfMonth` (368)

### 4.4.39 HourOfWeek

Synopsis: Calculate the number of hours elapsed since the start of the week.

Declaration: `function HourOfWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `HourOfTheWeek` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the Week till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:59:59 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the `DayOfTheWeek` (337) function.

See also: `HourOfTheYear` (353), `HourOfTheMonth` (352), `HourOfTheDay` (352), `DayOfTheWeek` (337), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (372), `SecondOfTheWeek` (389), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (368)

#### 4.4.40 HourOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of hours passed since the start of the year.

**Declaration:** `function HourOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HourOfTheYear` returns the number of hours that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:59:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (403) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (403), `DayOfTheYear` (338), `MinuteOfTheYear` (372), `SecondOfTheYear` (389), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (369)

#### 4.4.41 HoursBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole hours between two `DateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function HoursBetween(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `HoursBetween` returns the number of whole hours between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of an hour (minutes,seconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (415), `MonthsBetween` (375), `WeeksBetween` (404), `DaysBetween` (338), `MinutesBetween` (373), `SecondsBetween` (389), `MillisecondsBetween` (369)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** Example59;

*{ This program demonstrates the HoursBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**( 'Number of hours between ' );

**Write**( **DateTimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateTimeToStr**(ANow) );

**WriteLn**( ' : ', HoursBetween(ANow, AThen) );

**end**;

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(59*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(61*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(122*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(306*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(5.4*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2);

```

**End.****4.4.42 HourSpan**

Synopsis: Calculate the approximate number of hours between two DateTime values.

Declaration: `function HourSpan(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: HourSpan returns the number of Hours between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a Hour.

See also: YearSpan (416), MonthSpan (376), WeekSpan (406), DaySpan (341), MinuteSpan (374), SecondSpan (390), MilliSecondSpan (370), HoursBetween (353)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex67.pp

**Program** Example67;

*{ This program demonstrates the HourSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

```

Write('Number of hours between ');
Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));
WriteLn(' : ', HourSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

**Var**

D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(59*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(61*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(122*OneMinute);

```

---

```

Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(306*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(5.4*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.43 IncDay

Synopsis: Increase a DateTime value with a number of days.

Declaration: `function IncDay(const AValue: TDateTime;const ANumberOfDays: Integer) : TDateTime`  
`function IncDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: IncDay adds ANumberOfDays days to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfDays can be positive or negative.

See also: IncYear (358), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth (1166), IncWeek (357), IncHour (355), IncMinute (356), IncSecond (357), IncMilliSecond (356)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex74.pp

---

**Program** Example74;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

```

WriteLn('One Day from today is ',DateToStr(IncDay(Today,1)));
WriteLn('One Day ago from today is ',DateToStr(IncDay(Today,-1)));
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.44 IncHour

Synopsis: Increase a DateTime value with a number of hours.

Declaration: `function IncHour(const AValue: TDateTime;const ANumberOfHours: Int64) : TDateTime`  
`function IncHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: IncHour adds ANumberOfHours hours to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfHours can be positive or negative.

See also: IncYear (358), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth (1166), IncWeek (357), IncDay (355), IncMinute (356), IncSecond (357), IncMilliSecond (356)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex75.pp



---

**Program Example75**

;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncHour function }***Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;**Begin****WriteLn**( 'One Hour from now is ', **DateTimeToStr**(IncHour(**Now**, 1)));**WriteLn**( 'One Hour ago from now is ', **DateTimeToStr**(IncHour(**Now**, - 1)));**End.**

---

**4.4.45 IncMilliSecond**

Synopsis: Increase a DateTime value with a number of milliseconds.

Declaration: `function IncMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const ANumberOfMilliseconds: Int64) : TDateTime  
function IncMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: IncMilliSecond adds ANumberOfMilliseconds milliseconds to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfMilliseconds can be positive or negative.

See also: IncYear ([358](#)), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth ([1166](#)), IncWeek ([357](#)), IncDay ([355](#)), IncHour ([355](#)), IncSecond ([357](#)), IncMilliSecond ([356](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex78.pp

---

**Program Example78;***{ This program demonstrates the IncMilliSecond function }***Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;**Begin****WriteLn**( 'One MilliSecond from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMilliSecond(**Now**, 1)));**WriteLn**( 'One MilliSecond ago from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMilliSecond(**Now**, - 1)));**End.**

---

**4.4.46 IncMinute**

Synopsis: Increase a DateTime value with a number of minutes.

Declaration: `function IncMinute(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const ANumberOfMinutes: Int64) : TDateTime  
function IncMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: IncMinute adds ANumberOfMinutes minutes to AValue and returns the resulting date/-time. ANumberOfMinutes can be positive or negative.

See also: IncYear ([358](#)), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth ([1166](#)), IncWeek ([357](#)), IncDay ([355](#)), IncHour ([355](#)), IncSecond ([357](#)), IncMilliSecond ([356](#))

---

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex76.pp

---

**Program** Example76;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncMinute function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn**( 'One Minute from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMinute(**Time**, 1)));

**WriteIn**( 'One Minute ago from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncMinute(**Time**, -1)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.47 IncSecond

**Synopsis:** Increase a DateTime value with a number of seconds.

**Declaration:** function IncSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const ANumberOfSeconds: Int64) : TDateTime  
function IncSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IncSecond adds ANumberOfSeconds seconds to AValue and returns the resulting date/-time. ANumberOfSeconds can be positive or negative.

**See also:** IncYear ([358](#)), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth ([1166](#)), IncWeek ([357](#)), IncDay ([355](#)), IncHour ([355](#)), IncSecond ([357](#)), IncMilliSecond ([356](#))

---

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex77.pp

---

**Program** Example77;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn**( 'One Second from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncSecond(**Time**, 1)));

**WriteIn**( 'One Second ago from now is ', **TimeToStr**(IncSecond(**Time**, -1)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.48 IncWeek

**Synopsis:** Increase a DateTime value with a number of weeks.

**Declaration:** function IncWeek(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfWeeks: Integer)  
: TDateTime  
function IncWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IncWeek adds ANumberOfWeeks weeks to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfWeeks can be positive or negative.

**See also:** IncYear ([358](#)), #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth ([1166](#)), IncDay ([355](#)), IncHour ([355](#)), IncMinute ([356](#)), IncSecond ([357](#)), IncMilliSecond ([356](#))

---

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex73.pp

---

**Program** Example73;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** ('One Week from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncWeek(Today, 1)));

**WriteIn** ('One Week ago from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncWeek(Today, -1)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.49 IncYear

**Synopsis:** Increase a DateTime value with a number of years.

**Declaration:** function IncYear(const AValue: TDateTime; const ANumberOfYears: Integer)  
: TDateTime  
function IncYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IncYear adds ANumberOfYears years to AValue and returns the resulting date/time. ANumberOfYears can be positive or negative.

See also: #rtl.sysutils.IncMonth ([1166](#)), IncWeek ([357](#)), IncDay ([355](#)), IncHour ([355](#)), IncMinute ([356](#)), IncSecond ([357](#)), IncMilliSecond ([356](#))

---

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex71.pp

---

**Program** Example71;

*{ This program demonstrates the IncYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** ('One year from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncYear(Today, 1)));

**WriteIn** ('One year ago from today is ', **DateToStr**(IncYear(Today, -1)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.50 InvalidDateDayError

**Synopsis:** Raise an EConvertError exception when a day is not a valid day of a year.

**Declaration:** procedure InvalidDateDayError(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** InvalidDateDayError raises an EConvertError ([1210](#)) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts AYear and ADayOfYear.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: InvalidDateWeekError ([359](#)), InvalidDateTimeError ([359](#)), InvalidDateMonthWeekError ([359](#)), InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError ([360](#))

#### 4.4.51 InvalidDateMonthWeekError

Synopsis: Raise an EConvertError exception when a Year,Month,WeekOfMonth,DayOfWeek is invalid.

Declaration: 

```
procedure InvalidDateMonthWeekError(const AYear: Word;
                                     const AMonth: Word;
                                     const AWeekOfMonth: Word;
                                     const ADayOfWeek: Word)
```

Visibility: default

Description: InvalidDateMonthWeekError raises an EConvertError (1210) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts AYear, AMonth, AWeekOfMonth and ADayOfWeek.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: InvalidDateWeekError (359), InvalidDateTimeError (359), InvalidDateDayError (358), InvalidDay-Of-WeekInMonthError (360)

#### 4.4.52 InvalidDateTimeError

Synopsis: Raise an EConvertError about an invalid date-time specification.

Declaration: 

```
procedure InvalidDateTimeError(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;
                               const ADay: Word;const AHour: Word;
                               const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word;
                               const AMilliSecond: Word;
                               const ABaseDate: TDateTime)
procedure InvalidDateTimeError(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;
                               const ADay: Word;const AHour: Word;
                               const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word;
                               const AMilliSecond: Word)
```

Visibility: default

Description: InvalidDateTimeError raises an EConvertError (1210) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts AYear, AMonth, ADay, AHour, AMinute, ASecond and AMilliSecond.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

See also: InvalidDateWeekError (359), InvalidDateDayError (358), InvalidDateMonthWeekError (359), InvalidDayOf-WeekInMonthError (360)

#### 4.4.53 InvalidDateWeekError

Synopsis: Raise an EConvertError with an invalid Year, WeekOfyear and DayOfWeek specification

Declaration: 

```
procedure InvalidDateWeekError(const AYear: Word;
                               const AWeekOfYear: Word;
                               const ADayOfWeek: Word)
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `InvalidDateWeekError` raises an `EConvertError` (1210) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AWeek`, `ADayOfWeek`.  
Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

**See also:** `InvalidDateTimeError` (359), `InvalidDateDayError` (358), `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` (359), `InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError` (360)

#### 4.4.54 InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError

**Synopsis:** Raise an `EConvertError` exception when a `Year,Month,NthDayOfWeek,DayOfWeek` is invalid.

**Declaration:** `procedure InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError(const AYear: Word;  
const AMonth: Word;  
const ANthDayOfWeek: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `InvalidDayOfWeekInMonthError` raises an `EConvertError` (1210) exception and formats the error message with an appropriate description made up from the parts `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ANthDayOfWeek` and `ADayOfWeek`.

Normally this function should not be needed, the conversion routines call it when they have received invalid arguments.

**See also:** `InvalidDateWeekError` (359), `InvalidDateTimeError` (359), `InvalidDateDayError` (358), `InvalidDateMonthWeekError` (359)

#### 4.4.55 IsInLeapYear

**Synopsis:** Determine whether a date is in a leap year.

**Declaration:** `function IsInLeapYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `IsInLeapYear` returns `True` if the year part of `AValue` is leap year, or `False` if not.

**See also:** `YearOf` (415), `IsPM` (361), `IsToday` (362), `IsSameDay` (361)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3;`

*{ This program demonstrates the IsInLeapYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn('Current year is leap year: ',IsInLeapYear(Date));`

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.56 IsPM

Synopsis: Determine whether a time is PM or AM.

Declaration: `function IsPM(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsPM` returns `True` if the time part of `AValue` is later than 12:00 (PM, or afternoon).

See also: [YearOf \(415\)](#), [IsInLeapYear \(360\)](#), [IsToday \(362\)](#), [IsSameDay \(361\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsPM function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

`WriteLn('Current time is PM : ', IsPM(Now));`

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.57 IsSameDay

Synopsis: Check if two date/time indications are the same day.

Declaration: `function IsSameDay(const AValue: TDateTime; const ABasis: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsSameDay` checks whether `AValue` and `ABasis` have the same date part, and returns `True` if they do, `False` if not.

See also: [Today \(396\)](#), [Yesterday \(417\)](#), [Tomorrow \(397\)](#), [IsToday \(362\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex21.pp`

---

**Program** Example21;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsSameDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

`I : Integer;`

`D : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`For I:=1 to 3 do`

`begin`

`D:=Today+Random(3)-1;`

`Write(FormatDateTime('dd mmm yyyy' is today : '' ,D));`

`WriteLn(IsSameDay(D, Today));`

`end;`

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.58 IsToday

Synopsis: Check whether a given date is today.

Declaration: `function IsToday(const AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsToday` returns `True` if `AValue` is today's date, and `False` otherwise.

See also: `Today` ([396](#)), `Yesterday` ([417](#)), `Tomorrow` ([397](#)), `IsSameDay` ([361](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `Example20;`

`{ This program demonstrates the IsToday function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn( 'Today      : ', IsToday(Today));`

`WriteLn( 'Tomorrow   : ', IsToday(Tomorrow));`

`WriteLn( 'Yesterday  : ', IsToday(Yesterday));`

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.59 IsValidDate

Synopsis: Check whether a set of values is a valid date indication.

Declaration: `function IsValidDate(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
                                  const ADay: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsValidDate` returns `True` when the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay` form a valid date indication. If one of the values is not valid (e.g. the day is invalid or does not exist in that particular month), `False` is returned.

`AYear` must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

See also: `IsValidTime` ([366](#)), `IsValidDateTime` ([364](#)), `IsValidDateDay` ([363](#)), `IsValidDateWeek` ([365](#)), `IsValidDateMonthWeek` ([363](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** `Example5;`

`{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDate function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`Y, M, D : Word;`

**Begin**

`For Y:=2000 to 2004 do`

`For M:=1 to 12 do`

`For D:=1 to 31 do`

```

    If Not IsValidDate(Y,M,D) then
        WriteLn(D, ' is not a valid day in ',Y,'/',M);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.60 IsValidDateDay

Synopsis: Check whether a given year/day of year combination is a valid date.

Declaration: `function IsValidDateDay(const AYear: Word;const ADayOfYear: Word)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsValidDateDay` returns `True` if `AYear` and `ADayOfYear` form a valid date indication, or `False` otherwise.

`AYear` must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The `ADayOfYear` value is checked to see whether it falls within the valid range of dates for `AYear`.

See also: `IsValidDate` ([362](#)), `IsValidTime` ([366](#)), `IsValidDateTime` ([364](#)), `IsValidDateWeek` ([365](#)), `IsValidDateMonthWeek` ([363](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex9.pp`

---

**Program** `Example9`;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateDay function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils` , `DateUtils` ;

**Var**  
`Y : Word;`

**Begin**  
`For Y:=1996 to 2004 do`  
`if IsValidDateDay(Y,366) then`  
`WriteLn(Y, ' is a leap year');`  
**End.**

---

#### 4.4.61 IsValidDateMonthWeek

Synopsis: Check whether a given year/month/week/day of the week combination is a valid day

Declaration: `function IsValidDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;`  
`const AWeekOfMonth: Word;`  
`const ADayOfWeek: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsValidDateMonthWeek` returns `True` if `AYear`, `AMonth`, `AWeekOfMonth` and `ADayOfWeek` form a valid date indication, or `False` otherwise.

`AYear` must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The `AWeekOfMonth`, `ADayOfWeek` values are checked to see whether the combination falls within the valid range of weeks for the `AYear`, `AMonth` combination.



See also: [IsValidDate \(362\)](#), [IsValidTime \(366\)](#), [IsValidDateTime \(364\)](#), [IsValidDateDay \(363\)](#), [IsValidDate-Week \(365\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateMonthWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,W,D : Word;  
B : Boolean;

**Begin**

For Y:=2000 to 2004 do

begin

B:=True;

For W:=4 to 6 do

For D:=1 to 7 do

If B then

begin

B:=IsValidDateMonthWeek(Y,12,W,D);

If Not B then

if (D=1) then

WriteLn('December ',Y,' has exactly ',W,' weeks.')

else

WriteLn('December ',Y,' has ',W,' weeks and ',D-1,' days.');

end;

end;

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.62 IsValidDateTime

**Synopsis:** Check whether a set of values is a valid date and time indication.

**Declaration:** function IsValidDateTime(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;  
const ADay: Word;const AHour: Word;  
const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word;  
const AMilliSecond: Word) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IsValidTime returns True when the values AYear, AMonth, ADay, AHour, AMinute, ASecond and AMilliSecond form a valid date and time indication. If one of the values is not valid (e.g. the seconds are larger than 60), False is returned.

AYear must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

See also: [IsValidDate \(362\)](#), [IsValidTime \(366\)](#), [IsValidDateDay \(363\)](#), [IsValidDateWeek \(365\)](#), [IsValidDate-MonthWeek \(363\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex7.pp

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y, Mo, D : Word;  
H, M, S, MS : Word;  
I : Integer;

**Begin**

```
For I:=1 to 10 do
  begin
    Y:=2000+Random(5);
    Mo:=Random(15);
    D:=Random(40);
    H:=Random(32);
    M:=Random(90);
    S:=Random(90);
    MS:=Random(1500);
    If Not IsValidDateTime(Y, Mo, D, H, M, S, MS) then
      WriteLn(Y, '-', Mo, '-', D, ' ', H, ': ', M, ': ', S, '.', MS, ' is not a valid date/time. ');
  end;
```

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.63 IsValidDateWeek

Synopsis: Check whether a given year/week/day of the week combination is a valid day.

Declaration: function IsValidDateWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: IsValidDateWeek returns True if AYear, AWeekOfYear and ADayOfWeek form a valid date indication, or False otherwise.

AYear must be in the range 1..9999 to be valid.

The ADayOfWeek, ADayOfWeek values are checked to see whether the combination falls within the valid range of weeks for AYear.

See also: IsValidDate (362), IsValidTime (366), IsValidDateTime (364), IsValidDateDay (363), IsValidDateMonthWeek (363)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsValidDateWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y, W, D : Word;  
B : Boolean;

**Begin**

```
For Y:=2000 to 2004 do
  begin
```

---

```

B:=True;
For W:=51 to 54 do
  For D:=1 to 7 do
    If B then
      begin
        B:=IsValidDateWeek(Y,W,D);
        If Not B then
          if (D=1) then
            Writeln(Y, ' has exactly ',W, ' weeks. ');
          else
            Writeln(Y, ' has ',W, ' weeks and ',D-1, ' days. ');
          end;
        end;
      end;
    End.

```

---

#### 4.4.64 IsValidTime

Synopsis: Check whether a set of values is a valid time indication.

Declaration: `function IsValidTime(const AHour: Word;const AMinute: Word;  
const ASecond: Word;const AMilliSecond: Word)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Check whether a set of values is a valid time indication.

#### 4.4.65 JulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a Julian date representation to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function JulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [DateTimeToJulianDate \(336\)](#), [TryJulianDateToDateTime \(401\)](#), [DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate \(336\)](#), [TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(401\)](#)

#### 4.4.66 MilliSecondOf

Synopsis: Extract the millisecond part from a DateTime value.

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: MilliSecondOf returns the second of the minute part of the AValue date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 999.

For an example, see [YearOf \(415\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(415\)](#), [WeekOf \(402\)](#), [MonthOf \(375\)](#), [DayOf \(337\)](#), [HourOf \(351\)](#), [MinuteOf \(371\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(366\)](#)

#### 4.4.67 MilliSecondOfDay

Synopsis: Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the day

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondOfDay` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the `HourOfDay` (352) function.

See also: `MilliSecondOfYear` (369), `MilliSecondOfMonth` (368), `MilliSecondOfWeek` (368), `MilliSecondOfDay` (367), `MilliSecondOfMinute` (367), `MilliSecondOfSecond` (368), `HourOfDay` (352), `MinuteOfDay` (371), `SecondOfDay` (387)

#### 4.4.68 MilliSecondOfTheHour

Synopsis: Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the hour

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondOfTheHour` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the `MinuteOfTheHour` (371) function.

See also: `MilliSecondOfYear` (369), `MilliSecondOfMonth` (368), `MilliSecondOfWeek` (368), `MilliSecondOfDay` (367), `MilliSecondOfMinute` (367), `MilliSecondOfSecond` (368), `MinuteOfTheHour` (371), `SecondOfTheHour` (388)

#### 4.4.69 MilliSecondOfTheMinute

Synopsis: Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the minute

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOfTheMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Minute (HH:MM:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the `SecondOfTheMinute` (388) function.

See also: `MilliSecondOfYear` (369), `MilliSecondOfMonth` (368), `MilliSecondOfWeek` (368), `MilliSecondOfDay` (367), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (367), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (367), `MilliSecondOfTheSecond` (368), `SecondOfTheMinute` (388)

#### 4.4.70 MilliSecondOfTheMonth

Synopsis: Calculate number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the month.

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the month (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 on the first of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (403) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheMonth` (403), `DayOfTheMonth` (337), `HourOfTheMonth` (352), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (372), `SecondOfTheMonth` (389), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (368)

#### 4.4.71 MilliSecondOfTheSecond

Synopsis: Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the second

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOfTheSecond(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MilliSecondOfTheSecond` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the second (HH:MM:SS.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:SS.000 will return 0.

See also: `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (369), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (368), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (368), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (367), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (367), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (367), `SecondOfTheMinute` (388)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** Example46;

*{ This program demonstrates the MilliSecondOfTheSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Second : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheSecond(N));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.72 MilliSecondOfTheWeek

Synopsis: Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the week

Declaration: `function MilliSecondOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the Week (00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.000 on the first of the Week will return 0.

For an example, see the `DayOfTheWeek` (337) function.

See also: `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (369), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (368), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (367), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (367), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (367), `MilliSecondOfTheSecond` (368), `DayOfTheWeek` (337), `HourOfTheWeek` (352), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (372), `SecondOfTheWeek` (389)

#### 4.4.73 MilliSecondOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of milliseconds elapsed since the start of the year.

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondOfTheYear` returns the number of milliseconds that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00.000) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:00.000 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (403) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (403), `DayOfTheYear` (338), `HourOfTheYear` (353), `MinuteOfTheYear` (372), `SecondOfTheYear` (389), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (369)

#### 4.4.74 MilliSecondsBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole milliseconds between two `DateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function MilliSecondsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime;  
const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MilliSecondsBetween` returns the number of whole milliseconds between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means a fractional part of a millisecond is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (415), `MonthsBetween` (375), `WeeksBetween` (404), `DaysBetween` (338), `HoursBetween` (353), `MinutesBetween` (373), `SecondsBetween` (389)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex62.pp`

---

**Program** Example62;

*{ This program demonstrates the MilliSecondsBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**( 'Number of milliseconds between ' );  
    **Write**( **TimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **TimeToStr**(ANow) );  
    **WriteLn**( ' : ', MilliSecondsBetween(ANow, AThen) );  
**end**;

**Var**



---

```

D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.76 MinuteOf

Synopsis: Extract the minute part from a DateTime value.

Declaration: `function MinuteOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MinuteOf` returns the minute of the hour part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 59.

For an example, see `YearOf` ([415](#))

See also: `YearOf` ([415](#)), `WeekOf` ([402](#)), `MonthOf` ([375](#)), `DayOf` ([337](#)), `HourOf` ([351](#)), `SecondOf` ([387](#)), `MilliSecondOf` ([366](#))

#### 4.4.77 MinuteOfDay

Synopsis: Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the day

Declaration: `function MinuteOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MinuteOfDay` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the `HourOfDay` ([352](#)) function.

See also: `MinuteOfYear` ([372](#)), `MinuteOfMonth` ([372](#)), `MinuteOfWeek` ([372](#)), `MinuteOfTheHour` ([371](#)), `HourOfDay` ([352](#)), `SecondOfDay` ([387](#)), `MilliSecondOfDay` ([367](#))

#### 4.4.78 MinuteOfTheHour

Synopsis: Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the hour

Declaration: `function MinuteOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MinuteOfTheHour` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:59 will return 0.

See also: `MinuteOfYear` ([372](#)), `MinuteOfMonth` ([372](#)), `MinuteOfWeek` ([372](#)), `MinuteOfDay` ([371](#)), `SecondOfTheHour` ([388](#)), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` ([367](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex44.pp`



---

**Program** Example44;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinuteOfTheHour function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

WriteLn('Minute of the Hour : ',MinuteOfTheHour(N));

WriteLn('Second of the Hour : ',SecondOfTheHour(N));

WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Hour : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheHour(N));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.79 MinuteOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate number of minutes elapsed since the start of the month.

**Declaration:** function MinuteOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MinuteOfTheMonth returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the Month (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the WeekOfTheMonth (403) function.

See also: WeekOfTheMonth (403), DayOfTheMonth (337), HourOfTheMonth (352), MinuteOfTheMonth (372), SecondOfTheMonth (389), MilliSecondOfTheMonth (368)

#### 4.4.80 MinuteOfTheWeek

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the week

**Declaration:** function MinuteOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MinuteOfTheWeek returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the week (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by AValue. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:59 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the DayOfTheWeek (337) function.

See also: MinuteOfTheYear (372), MinuteOfTheMonth (372), MinuteOfTheDay (371), MinuteOfTheHour (371), DayOfTheWeek (337), HourOfTheWeek (352), SecondOfTheWeek (389), MilliSecondOfTheWeek (368)

#### 4.4.81 MinuteOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of minutes elapsed since the start of the year

**Declaration:** function MinuteOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MinuteOfTheYear` returns the number of minutes that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:59 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (403) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (403), `DayOfTheYear` (338), `HourOfTheYear` (353), `MinuteOfTheYear` (372), `SecondOfTheYear` (389), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (369)

#### 4.4.82 MinutesBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole minutes between two `DateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function MinutesBetween(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MinutesBetween` returns the number of whole minutes between `ANow` and `AThen`. This means the fractional part of a minute (seconds, milliseconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: `YearsBetween` (415), `MonthsBetween` (375), `WeeksBetween` (404), `DaysBetween` (338), `HoursBetween` (353), `SecondsBetween` (389), `MillisecondsBetween` (369)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex60.pp`

---

**Program** Example60;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinutesBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**( 'Number of minutes between ' );  
  **Write**( **TimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **TimeToStr**(ANow) );  
  **WriteLn**( ' : ', MinutesBetween(ANow, AThen) );  
**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1:=**Now**;  
  D2:=D1-(59\*OneSecond);  
  Test(D1,D2);  
  D2:=D1-(61\*OneSecond);  
  Test(D1,D2);  
  D2:=D1-(122\*OneSecond);  
  Test(D1,D2);  
  D2:=D1-(306\*OneSecond);  
  Test(D1,D2);  
  D2:=D1-(5.4\*OneMinute);  
  Test(D1,D2);  
  D2:=D1-(2.5\*OneMinute);  
  Test(D1,D2);

**End.**

---

### 4.4.83 MinuteSpan

Synopsis: Calculate the approximate number of minutes between two DateTime values.

Declaration: `function MinuteSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

Visibility: default

Description: MinuteSpan returns the number of minutes between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a minute.

See also: YearSpan (416), MonthSpan (376), WeekSpan (406), DaySpan (341), HourSpan (354), SecondSpan (390), MilliSecondSpan (370), MinutesBetween (373)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex68.pp

---

**Program** Example68;

*{ This program demonstrates the MinuteSpan function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

  Write('Number of minutes between ');

  Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));

  WriteLn(' : ', MinuteSpan(ANow, AThen));

**end;**

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1:=Now;

  D2:=D1-(59\*OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(61\*OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(122\*OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(306\*OneSecond);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(5.4\*OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2);

  D2:=D1-(2.5\*OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2);

**End.**

---

### 4.4.84 ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a modified Julian date representation to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [DateTimeToJulianDate \(336\)](#), [JulianDateToDateTime \(366\)](#), [TryJulianDateToDateTime \(401\)](#), [DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate \(336\)](#), [TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(401\)](#)

#### 4.4.85 MonthOf

Synopsis: Extract the month from a given date.

Declaration: `function MonthOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MonthOf` returns the month part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 12.

For an example, see [YearOf \(415\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(415\)](#), [DayOf \(337\)](#), [WeekOf \(402\)](#), [HourOf \(351\)](#), [MinuteOf \(371\)](#), [SecondOf \(387\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(366\)](#)

#### 4.4.86 MonthOfTheYear

Synopsis: Extract the month of a `DateTime` indication.

Declaration: `function MonthOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `MonthOfTheYear` extracts the month part of `AValue` and returns it. It is an alias for `MonthOf (375)`, and is provided for completeness only, corresponding to the other `PartOfTheYear` functions.

For an example, see the [WeekOfTheYear \(403\)](#) function.

See also: [MonthOf \(375\)](#), [WeekOfTheYear \(403\)](#), [DayOfTheYear \(338\)](#), [HourOfTheYear \(353\)](#), [MinuteOfTheYear \(372\)](#), [SecondOfTheYear \(389\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(369\)](#)

#### 4.4.87 MonthsBetween

Synopsis: Calculate the number of whole months between two `DateTime` values

Declaration: `function MonthsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `MonthsBetween` returns the number of whole months between `ANow` and `AThen`. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 30.4375 per month (average over 4 years). This means the fractional part of a month is dropped.

See also: [YearsBetween \(415\)](#), [WeeksBetween \(404\)](#), [DaysBetween \(338\)](#), [HoursBetween \(353\)](#), [MinutesBetween \(373\)](#), [SecondsBetween \(389\)](#), [MillisecondsBetween \(369\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex56.pp`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of months between two `DateTime` values.

Visibility: default

See also: [YearSpan \(416\)](#), [WeekSpan \(406\)](#), [DaySpan \(341\)](#), [HourSpan \(354\)](#), [MinuteSpan \(374\)](#), [SecondSpan \(390\)](#), [MilliSecondSpan \(370\)](#), [MonthsBetween \(375\)](#)

```

Procedure Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

begin
  Write('Number of months between ');
  Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn(' : ', MonthSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

Var
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

Begin
  D1 := Today;
  D2 := Today - 364;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 365;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 366;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 390;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 368;
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2 := Today - 1000;
  Test(D1, D2);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.89 NthDayOfWeek

Synopsis: Calculate which occurrence of weekday in the month a given day represents

Declaration: `function NthDayOfWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `NthDayOfWeek` returns the occurrence of the weekday of `AValue` in the month. This is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month (e.g. the third saturday of the month).

See also: `EncodeDateMonthWeek` ([345](#)), `#rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek` ([1125](#)), `DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth` ([344](#)), `EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` ([346](#)), `TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth` ([400](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex104.pp`

---

**Program** Example104;

*{ This program demonstrates the NthDayOfWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```

Begin
  Write('Today is the ', NthDayOfWeek(Today), '-th ');
  WriteLn(formatDateTime('dddd', Today), ' of the month. ');
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.90 PreviousDayOfWeek

Synopsis: Given a day of the week, return the previous day of the week.

Declaration: `function PreviousDayOfWeek(DayOfWeek: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `PreviousDayOfWeek` returns the previous day of the week. If the current day is the first day of the week (1) then the last day will be returned (7).

**Remark:** Note that the days of the week are in ISO notation, i.e. 1-based.

See also: Yesterday ([417](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ This program demonstrates the PreviousDayOfWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

D : Word;

**Begin**

For D:=1 to 7 do

WriteLn('Previous day of ',D,' is : ',PreviousDayOfWeek(D));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.91 RecodeDate

Synopsis: Replace date part of a `TDateTime` value with another date.

Declaration: `function RecodeDate(const AValue: TDateTime;const AYear: Word;  
const AMonth: Word;const ADay: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `RecodeDate` replaces the date part of the timestamp `AValue` with the date specified in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`. All other parts (the time part) of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If one of the `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay` values is not within a valid range then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `RecodeYear` ([384](#)), `RecodeMonth` ([382](#)), `RecodeDay` ([380](#)), `RecodeHour` ([380](#)), `RecodeMinute` ([381](#)), `RecodeSecond` ([383](#)), `RecodeDate` ([378](#)), `RecodeTime` ([383](#)), `RecodeDateTime` ([379](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex94.pp`

---

**Program** Example94;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDate function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

---

```

Var
  S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeDate(Now,2001,1,1));
  WriteLn('This moment on the first of the millenium : ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.92 RecodeDateTime

Synopsis: Replace selected parts of a TDateTime value with other values

Declaration: function RecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime;const AYear: Word;  
const AMonth: Word;const ADay: Word;  
const AHour: Word;const AMinute: Word;  
const ASecond: Word;const AMilliSecond: Word)  
: TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: RecodeDateTime replaces selected parts of the timestamp AValue with the date/time values specified in AYear, AMonth, ADay, AHour, AMinute, ASecond and AMilliSecond. If any of these values equals the pre-defined constant RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs (332), then the corresponding part of the date/time stamp is left untouched.

Errors: If one of the values AYear, AMonth, ADay, AHour, AMinute, ASecondAMilliSecond is not within a valid range (RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs excepted) then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: RecodeYear (384), RecodeMonth (382), RecodeDay (380), RecodeHour (380), RecodeMinute (381), RecodeSecond (383), RecodeMilliSecond (381), RecodeDate (378), RecodeTime (383), TryRecodeDateTime (401)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex96.pp

---

**Program** Example96;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss' ;

**Var**

S : AnsiString;

D : TDateTime ;

**Begin**

D:=**Now**;

D:=RecodeDateTime(D,2000,2,RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs,0,0,0,0);

S:=**FormatDateTime**(Fmt,D);

**WriteLn**('This moment in februari 2000 : ',S);

**End.**

---



### 4.4.93 RecodeDay

Synopsis: Replace day part of a TDateTime value with another day.

Declaration: `function RecodeDay(const AValue: TDateTime;const ADay: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: RecodeDay replaces the Day part of the timestamp AValue with ADay. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If the ADay value is not within a valid range (1..12) then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: RecodeYear (384), RecodeMonth (382), RecodeHour (380), RecodeMinute (381), RecodeSecond (383), RecodeMilliSecond (381), RecodeDate (378), RecodeTime (383), RecodeDateTime (379)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex89.pp

---

**Program** Example89;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeDay(Now,1));

WriteLn('This moment on the first of the month : ',S);

**End.**

---

### 4.4.94 RecodeHour

Synopsis: Replace hours part of a TDateTime value with another hour.

Declaration: `function RecodeHour(const AValue: TDateTime;const AHour: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: RecodeHour replaces the Hour part of the timestamp AValue with AHour. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If the AHour value is not within a valid range (0..23) then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: RecodeYear (384), RecodeMonth (382), RecodeDay (380), RecodeMinute (381), RecodeSecond (383), RecodeMilliSecond (381), RecodeDate (378), RecodeTime (383), RecodeDateTime (379)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex90.pp

---

**Program** Example90;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeHour function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

---

```

Const
  Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

Var
  S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeHour(Now,0));
  WriteIn('Today, in the first hour : ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.95 RecodeMilliSecond

Synopsis: Replace milliseconds part of a TDateTime value with another millisecond.

Declaration: `function RecodeMilliSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;  
const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: RecodeMilliSecond replaces the millisecond part of the timestamp AValue with AMilliSecond. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If the AMilliSecond value is not within a valid range (0..999) then an EConvertError exception is raised.

See also: RecodeYear ([384](#)), RecodeMonth ([382](#)), RecodeDay ([380](#)), RecodeHour ([380](#)), RecodeMinute ([381](#)), RecodeSecond ([383](#)), RecodeDate ([378](#)), RecodeTime ([383](#)), RecodeDateTime ([379](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex93.pp

---

**Program** Example93;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeMilliSecond function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```

Const
  Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

```

```

Var
  S : AnsiString;

```

```

Begin
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeMilliSecond(Now,0));
  WriteIn('This moment, milliseconds stripped : ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.96 RecodeMinute

Synopsis: Replace minutse part of a TDateTime value with another minute.

Declaration: `function RecodeMinute(const AValue: TDateTime;const AMinute: Word)  
: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RecodeMinute` replaces the Minute part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AMinute`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AMinute` value is not within a valid range (0..59) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `RecodeYear` (384), `RecodeMonth` (382), `RecodeDay` (380), `RecodeHour` (380), `RecodeSecond` (383), `RecodeMilliSecond` (381), `RecodeDate` (378), `RecodeTime` (383), `RecodeDateTime` (379)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex91.pp`

---

**Program** `Example91`;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeMinute function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';`

**Var**

`S : AnsiString;`

**Begin**

`S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeMinute(Now,0));`

`WriteLn('This moment in the first minute of the hour: ',S);`

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.97 RecodeMonth

**Synopsis:** Replace month part of a `TDateTime` value with another month.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeMonth(const AValue: TDateTime;const AMonth: Word)`  
`: TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RecodeMonth` replaces the Month part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AMonth`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AMonth` value is not within a valid range (1..12) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `RecodeYear` (384), `RecodeDay` (380), `RecodeHour` (380), `RecodeMinute` (381), `RecodeSecond` (383), `RecodeMilliSecond` (381), `RecodeDate` (378), `RecodeTime` (383), `RecodeDateTime` (379)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex88.pp`

---

**Program** `Example88`;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';`

---

```

Var
  S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeMonth(Now,5));
  WriteLn('This moment in May : ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.98 RecodeSecond

Synopsis: Replace seconds part of a `TDateTime` value with another second.

Declaration: `function RecodeSecond(const AValue: TDateTime;const ASecond: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `RecodeSecond` replaces the `Second` part of the timestamp `AValue` with `ASecond`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

Errors: If the `ASecond` value is not within a valid range (0..59) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `RecodeYear` (384), `RecodeMonth` (382), `RecodeDay` (380), `RecodeHour` (380), `RecodeMinute` (381), `RecodeMilliSecond` (381), `RecodeDate` (378), `RecodeTime` (383), `RecodeDateTime` (379)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex92.pp

---

```

Program Example92;

{ This program demonstrates the RecodeSecond function }

Uses SysUtils , DateUtils ;

Const
  Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

Var
  S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeSecond(Now,0));
  WriteLn('This moment, seconds stripped : ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.99 RecodeTime

Synopsis: Replace time part of a `TDateTime` value with another time.

Declaration: `function RecodeTime(const AValue: TDateTime;const AHour: Word; const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word; const AMilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RecodeTime` replaces the time part of the timestamp `AValue` with the date specified in `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`. All other parts (the date part) of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If one of the values `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` or `AMilliSecond` is not within a valid range then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `RecodeYear` (384), `RecodeMonth` (382), `RecodeDay` (380), `RecodeHour` (380), `RecodeMinute` (381), `RecodeSecond` (383), `RecodeMilliSecond` (381), `RecodeDate` (378), `RecodeDateTime` (379)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex95.pp`

---

**Program** `Example95`;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeTime function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ';`

**Var**

`S : AnsiString;`

**Begin**

`S := FormatDateTime(Fmt, RecodeTime(Now, 8, 0, 0, 0));`

`WriteLn('Today, 8 AM : ', S);`

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.100 RecodeYear

**Synopsis:** Replace year part of a `TDateTime` value with another year.

**Declaration:** `function RecodeYear(const AValue: TDateTime; const AYear: Word)`  
`: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `RecodeYear` replaces the year part of the timestamp `AValue` with `AYear`. All other parts of the date/time stamp are left untouched.

**Errors:** If the `AYear` value is not within a valid range (1..9999) then an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `RecodeMonth` (382), `RecodeDay` (380), `RecodeHour` (380), `RecodeMinute` (381), `RecodeSecond` (383), `RecodeMilliSecond` (381), `RecodeDate` (378), `RecodeTime` (383), `RecodeDateTime` (379)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex87.pp`

---

**Program** `Example87`;

*{ This program demonstrates the RecodeYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Const**

`Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss ';`

---

```

Var
  S : AnsiString;

Begin
  S:=FormatDateTime(Fmt,RecodeYear(Now,1999));
  WriteIn('This moment in 1999 : ',S);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.101 SameDate

Synopsis: Check whether two TDateTime values have the same date part.

Declaration: `function SameDate(const A: TDateTime;const B: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: SameDate compares the date parts of two timestamps A and B and returns True if they are equal, False if they are not.

The function simply checks whether CompareDate (332) returns zero.

See also: CompareDateTime (333), CompareDate (332), CompareTime (334), SameDateTime (386), SameTime (386)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex102.pp

---

**Program** Example102;

*{ This program demonstrates the SameDate function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = 'dddd dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**(**FormatDateTime**(Fmt,D1),' is the same date as ');

**WriteIn**(**FormatDateTime**(Fmt,D2),' : ',SameDate(D1,D2));

**end;**

**Var**

D,N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

D:=Today;

N:=**Now**;

Test(D,D);

Test(N,N);

Test(N+1,N);

Test(N-1,N);

Test(N+OneSecond,N);

Test(N-OneSecond,N);

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.102 SameDateTime

Synopsis: Check whether two TDateTime values have the same date and time parts.

Declaration: `function SameDateTime(const A: TDateTime;const B: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: SameDateTime compares the date/time parts of two timestamps A and B and returns True if they are equal, False if they are not.

The function simply checks whether CompareDateTime (333) returns zero.

See also: CompareDateTime (333), CompareDate (332), CompareTime (334), SameDate (385), SameTime (386)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex101.pp

---

**Program** Example101;

*{ This program demonstrates the SameDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz';

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**begin**

    Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1),' is the same datetime as ');

    WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2),' : ',SameDateTime(D1,D2));

**end;**

**Var**

    D,N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D:=Today;

    N:=Now;

    Test(D,D);

    Test(N,N);

    Test(N+1,N);

    Test(N-1,N);

    Test(N+OneSecond,N);

    Test(N-OneSecond,N);

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.103 SameTime

Synopsis: Check whether two TDateTime values have the same time part.

Declaration: `function SameTime(const A: TDateTime;const B: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: SameTime compares the time parts of two timestamps A and B and returns True if they are equal, False if they are not.

The function simply checks whether CompareTime (334) returns zero.

See also: [CompareDateTime \(333\)](#), [CompareDate \(332\)](#), [CompareTime \(334\)](#), [SameDateTime \(386\)](#), [SameDate \(385\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex103.pp

---

**Program** Example102;

*{ This program demonstrates the SameTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss.zzz' ;

**Procedure** Test(D1,D2 : TDateTime);

**begin**

    Write(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D1), ' is the same time as ');

    WriteLn(FormatDateTime(Fmt,D2), ' : ', SameTime(D1,D2));

**end**;

**Var**

    D,N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D:=Today;

    N:=Now;

    Test(D,D);

    Test(N,N);

    Test(N+1,N);

    Test(N-1,N);

    Test(N+OneSecond,N);

    Test(N-OneSecond,N);

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.104 SecondOf

Synopsis: Extract the second part from a DateTime value.

Declaration: function SecondOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

Visibility: default

Description: SecondOf returns the second of the minute part of the AValue date/time indication. It is a number between 0 and 59.

For an example, see [YearOf \(415\)](#)

See also: [YearOf \(415\)](#), [WeekOf \(402\)](#), [MonthOf \(375\)](#), [DayOf \(337\)](#), [HourOf \(351\)](#), [MinuteOf \(371\)](#), [MilliSecondOf \(366\)](#)

#### 4.4.105 SecondOfDay

Synopsis: Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the day

Declaration: function SecondOfDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord

Visibility: default



**Description:** `SecondOfDay` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the Day (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 return 0.

For an example, see the `HourOfDay` (352) function.

**See also:** `SecondOfYear` (389), `SecondOfMonth` (389), `SecondOfWeek` (389), `SecondOfTheHour` (388), `SecondOfTheMinute` (388), `HourOfDay` (352), `MinuteOfDay` (371), `MilliSecondOfTheDay` (367)

#### 4.4.106 `SecondOfTheHour`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the hour

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheHour(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheHour` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the Hour (HH:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:00:00.999 return 0.

For an example, see the `MinuteOfTheHour` (371) function.

**See also:** `SecondOfYear` (389), `SecondOfMonth` (389), `SecondOfWeek` (389), `SecondOfDay` (387), `SecondOfTheMinute` (388), `MinuteOfTheHour` (371), `MilliSecondOfTheHour` (367)

#### 4.4.107 `SecondOfTheMinute`

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the minute

**Declaration:** `function SecondOfTheMinute(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SecondOfTheMinute` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the minute (HH:MM:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. HH:MM:00.999 return 0.

**See also:** `SecondOfYear` (389), `SecondOfMonth` (389), `SecondOfWeek` (389), `SecondOfDay` (387), `SecondOfTheHour` (388), `MilliSecondOfTheMinute` (367)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex45.pp`

---

**Program** `Example45`;

*{ This program demonstrates the SecondOfTheMinute function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils` , `DateUtils` ;

**Var**

`N : TDateTime` ;

**Begin**

`N:=Now`;

`WriteLn('Second of the Minute : ',SecondOfTheMinute(N));`

`WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Minute : ',`  
`MilliSecondOfTheMinute(N));`

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.108 SecondOfTheMonth

Synopsis: Calculate number of seconds elapsed since the start of the month.

Declaration: `function SecondOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `SecondOfTheMonth` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the month (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 on the first day of the month will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheMonth` (403) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheMonth` (403), `DayOfTheMonth` (337), `HourOfTheMonth` (352), `MinuteOfTheMonth` (372), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` (368)

#### 4.4.109 SecondOfTheWeek

Synopsis: Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the week

Declaration: `function SecondOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `SecondOfTheWeek` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the week (00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. 00:00:00.999 on the first day of the week will return 0.

For an example, see the `DayOfTheWeek` (337) function.

See also: `SecondOfTheYear` (389), `SecondOfTheMonth` (389), `SecondOfTheDay` (387), `SecondOfTheHour` (388), `SecondOfTheMinute` (388), `DayOfTheWeek` (337), `HourOfTheWeek` (352), `MinuteOfTheWeek` (372), `MilliSecondOfTheWeek` (368)

#### 4.4.110 SecondOfTheYear

Synopsis: Calculate the number of seconds elapsed since the start of the year.

Declaration: `function SecondOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : LongWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `SecondOfTheYear` returns the number of seconds that have passed since the start of the year (January 1, 00:00:00) till the moment indicated by `AValue`. This is a zero-based number, i.e. January 1 00:00:00.999 will return 0.

For an example, see the `WeekOfTheYear` (403) function.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` (403), `DayOfTheYear` (338), `HourOfTheYear` (353), `MinuteOfTheYear` (372), `SecondOfTheYear` (389), `MilliSecondOfTheYear` (369)

#### 4.4.111 SecondsBetween

Synopsis: Calculate the number of whole seconds between two `DateTime` values.

Declaration: `function SecondsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Description:** SecondsBetween returns the number of whole seconds between ANow and AThen. This means the fractional part of a second (milliseconds etc.) is dropped.

See also: [YearsBetween](#) (415), [MonthsBetween](#) (375), [WeeksBetween](#) (404), [DaysBetween](#) (338), [HoursBetween](#) (353), [MinutesBetween](#) (373), [MilliSecondsBetween](#) (369)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex61.pp

**Program** Example61 ;

```
{ This program demonstrates the SecondsBetween function }
```

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

```
Procedure Test (ANow, AThen : TDateTime);
```

```
begin
  Write( 'Number of seconds between ');
  Write( TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn( ' : ', SecondsBetween(ANow, AThen));
end;
```

```
Var
    D1,D2 : TDateTime;
```

```

Begin
    D1:=Now;
    D2:=D1-(999*OneMilliSecond);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(1001*OneMilliSecond);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(2001*OneMilliSecond);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(5001*OneMilliSecond);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(5.4*OneSecond);
    Test(D1,D2);
    D2:=D1-(2.5*OneSecond);
    Test(D1,D2);
End

```

#### 4.4.112 SecondSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of seconds between two `DateTime` values.

```
Declaration: function SecondSpan(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime)
                : Double
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** SecondSpan returns the number of seconds between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a second.

See also: [YearSpan \(416\)](#), [MonthSpan \(376\)](#), [WeekSpan \(406\)](#), [DaySpan \(341\)](#), [HourSpan \(354\)](#), [MinuteSpan \(374\)](#), [MilliSecondSpan \(370\)](#), [SecondsBetween \(389\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex69.pp

---

```

Program Example69;

{ This program demonstrates the SecondSpan function }

Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;

Procedure Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

begin
  Write('Number of seconds between ');
  Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn(' : ', SecondSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

Var
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

Begin
  D1:=Now;
  D2:=D1-(999*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=D1-(1001*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=D1-(2001*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=D1-(5001*OneMilliSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=D1-(5.4*OneSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
  D2:=D1-(2.5*OneSecond);
  Test(D1, D2);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.113 StartOfDay

**Synopsis:** Return the start of a day as a DateTime value, given a day indication

**Declaration:** function StartOfDay(const AYear: Word; const AMonth: Word;  
                                   const ADay: Word) : TDateTime; Overload  
           function StartOfDay(const AYear: Word; const ADayOfYear: Word)  
                                   : TDateTime; Overload

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StartOfDay returns a TDateTime value with the date/time indication of the start (0:0:0.000) of the day given by AYear, AMonth, ADay.

The day may also be indicated with a AYear, ADayOfYear pair.

**See also:** StartOfDay (394), StartOfTheWeek (395), StartOfAWeek (392), StartOfAMonth (392), StartOfTheMonth (394), EndOfTheWeek (350), EndOfAWeek (348), EndOfTheYear (351), EndOfAYear (349), EndOfTheMonth (350), EndOfAMonth (347), EndOfTheDay (349), EndOfDay (347)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex38.pp

---

**Program** Example38;

```
{ This program demonstrates the StartOfDay function }
```

```
Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;
```

```
Const
```

```
  Fmt = '"Start of the day : " dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';
```

```
Var
```

```
  Y,M,D : Word;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  Y:=YearOf(Today);
```

```
  M:=MonthOf(Today);
```

```
  D:=DayOf(Today);
```

```
  WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfDay(Y,M,D)));
```

```
  DecodeDateDay(Today, Y,D);
```

```
  WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfDay(Y,D)));
```

```
End.
```

---

#### 4.4.114 StartOfMonth

Synopsis: Return first date of month, given a year/month pair.

Declaration: `function StartOfMonth(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `StartOfMonth` returns a `TDateTime` value with the date of the first day of the month indicated by the `AYear`, `AMonth` pair.

See also: [StartOfTheMonth \(394\)](#), [EndOfTheMonth \(350\)](#), [EndOfAMonth \(347\)](#), [EndOfTheYear \(351\)](#), [EndOfAYear \(349\)](#), [StartOfAWeek \(392\)](#), [StartOfTheWeek \(395\)](#)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex30.pp`

---

**Program** Example30;

```
{ This program demonstrates the StartOfMonth function }
```

```
Uses SysUtils, DateUtils;
```

```
Const
```

```
  Fmt = '"First day of this month : " dd mmm yyyy';
```

```
Var
```

```
  Y,M : Word;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  Y:=YearOf(Today);
```

```
  M:=MonthOf(Today);
```

```
  WriteIn(FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfMonth(Y,M)));
```

```
End.
```

---

#### 4.4.115 StartOfAWeek

Synopsis: Return a day of the week, given a year, week and day in the week.

**Declaration:** `function StartOfAWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word) : TDateTime  
function StartOfAWeek(const AYear: Word;const AWeekOfYear: Word)  
: TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StartOfAWeek returns a TDateTime value with the date of the indicated day of the week indicated by the AYear, AWeek, ADayOfWeek values.

The default value for ADayOfWeek is 1.

See also: StartOfTheWeek (395), EndOfTheWeek (350), EndOfAWeek (348), StartOfAMonth (392), EndOfTheYear (351), EndOfAYear (349), EndOfTheMonth (350), EndOfAMonth (347)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex34.pp

---

**Program** Example34;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfAWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Const**

Fmt = ' "First day of this week : "dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';  
Fmt2 = ' "Second day of this week : "dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

Y,W : Word;

**Begin**

Y:=YearOf(Today);  
W:=WeekOf(Today);  
**WriteIn** (FormatDateTime(Fmt, StartOfAWeek(Y,W)));  
**WriteIn** (FormatDateTime(Fmt2, StartOfAWeek(Y,W,2)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.116 StartOfAYear

**Synopsis:** Return the first day of a given year.

**Declaration:** `function StartOfAYear(const AYear: Word) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StartOfAYear returns a TDateTime value with the date of the first day of the year AYear (January 1).

See also: StartOfTheYear (395), EndOfTheYear (351), EndOfAYear (349), EndOfTheMonth (350), EndOfAMonth (347), StartOfAWeek (392), StartOfTheWeek (395)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex26.pp

---

**Program** Example26;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfAYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

---

```

Const
  Fmt = '"First day of this year : "dd mmm yyyy';

Begin
  WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfAYear (YearOf (Today))));
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.117 StartOfTheDay

**Synopsis:** Calculate the start of the day as a DateTime value, given a moment in the day.

**Declaration:** function StartOfTheDay(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StartOfTheDay extracts the date part of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date/time indication of the start (0:0:0.000) of this day.

See also: StartOfADay (391), StartOfTheWeek (395), StartOfAWeek (392), StartOfAMonth (392), StartOfTheMonth (394), EndOfTheWeek (350), EndOfAWeek (348), EndOfTheYear (351), EndOfAYear (349), EndOfTheMonth (350), EndOfAMonth (347), EndOftheDay (349), EndOfADay (347)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```

Const
  Fmt = '"Start of the day : "dd mmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

```

```

Begin
  WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheDay (Today)));
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.118 StartOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Calculate the first day of the month, given a date in that month.

**Declaration:** function StartOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StartOfTheMonth extracts the year and month parts of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date of the first day of that year and month as the StartOfAMonth (392) function.

See also: StartOfAMonth (392), EndOfTheYear (351), EndOfAYear (349), EndOfTheMonth (350), EndOfAMonth (347), StartOfAWeek (392), StartOfTheWeek (395)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex28.pp

---

**Program** Example28;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = ' "First day of this month : " dd mmmm yyyy ';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheMonth (Today)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.119 StartOfTheWeek

Synopsis: Return the first day of the week, given a date.

Declaration: function StartOfTheWeek(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: StartOfTheWeek extracts the year and week parts of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date of the first day of that week as the StartOfAWeek (392) function.

See also: StartOfAWeek (392), EndOfTheWeek (350), EndOfAWeek (348), StartOfAMonth (392), EndOfTheYear (351), EndOfAYear (349), EndOfTheMonth (350), EndOfAMonth (347)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex32.pp

---

**Program** Example32;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

Fmt = ' "First day of this week : " dd mmmm yyyy ';

**Begin**

WriteIn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheWeek (Today)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.120 StartOfTheYear

Synopsis: Return the first day of the year, given a date in this year.

Declaration: function StartOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: StartOfTheYear extracts the year part of AValue and returns a TDateTime value with the date of the first day of that year (January 1), as the StartOfAYear (393) function.

See also: StartOfAYear (393), EndOfTheYear (351), EndOfAYear (349)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex24.pp



---

**Program** Example24;

*{ This program demonstrates the StartOfTheYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = ' "First day of this year : " dd mmm yyyy ';

**Begin**

    WriteLn (FormatDateTime (Fmt, StartOfTheYear (Today)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.121 TimeOf

Synopsis: Extract the time part from a DateTime indication.

Declaration: function TimeOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: TimeOf extracts the time part from AValue and returns the result.

Since the TDateTime is actually a double with the time part encoded in the fractional part, this operation corresponds to a call to Frac.

See also: DateOf ([335](#)), YearOf ([415](#)), MonthOf ([375](#)), DayOf ([337](#)), HourOf ([351](#)), MinuteOf ([371](#)), SecondOf ([387](#)), MilliSecondOf ([366](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex2.pp

---

**Program** Example2;

*{ This program demonstrates the TimeOf function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

    WriteLn ( 'Time is : ', TimeToStr (TimeOf (Now)));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.122 Today

Synopsis: Return the current date

Declaration: function Today : TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: Today is an alias for the Date ([1121](#)) function in the sysutils ([1082](#)) unit.

For an example, see Yesterday ([417](#))

See also: #rtl.sysutils.Date ([1121](#)), Yesterday ([417](#)), Tomorrow ([397](#))

#### 4.4.123 Tomorrow

Synopsis: Return the next day

Declaration: `function Tomorrow : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: Tomorrow returns tomorrow's date. Tomorrow is determined from the system clock, i.e. it is Today (396) +1.

See also: Today (396), Yesterday (417)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex19.pp

---

**Program** Example19;

*{ This program demonstrates the Tomorrow function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn**(FormatDateTime('"Today is " dd mmm yyyy ', Today));

**WriteIn**(FormatDateTime('"Tomorrow will be " dd mmm yyyy ', Tomorrow));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.124 TryEncodeDateDay

Synopsis: Encode a year and day of year to a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function TryEncodeDateDay(const AYear: Word;const ADayOfYear: Word;  
var AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: TryEncodeDateDay encodes the values AYear and ADayOfYear to a date value and returns this value in AValue.

If the encoding was succesful, True is returned. False is returned if any of the arguments is not valid.

See also: EncodeDateDay (345), EncodeDateTime (346), EncodeDateMonthWeek (345), EncodeDateWeek (346), TryEncodeDateTime (398), TryEncodeDateMonthWeek (398), TryEncodeDateWeek (399)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex84.pp

---

**Program** Example84;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateDay function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y, DoY : Word;

TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateDay(**Now**, Y, DoY);

**If** TryEncodeDateDay(Y, DoY, TS) **then**

---

```

    WriteLn('Today is : ',DateToStr(TS))
  else
    WriteLn('Wrong year/day of year indication');
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.125 TryEncodeDateMonthWeek

Synopsis: Encode a year, month, week of month and day of week to a TDateTime value

Declaration: function TryEncodeDateMonthWeek(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;  
const AWeekOfMonth: Word;  
const ADayOfWeek: Word;  
var AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: TryEncodeDateMonthWeek encodes the values AYear, AMonth, AWeekOfMonth, ADayOfWeek, to a date value and returns this value in AValue.

If the encoding was successful, True is returned, False if any of the arguments is not valid.

See also: DecodeDateMonthWeek (342), EncodeDateTime (346), EncodeDateWeek (346), EncodeDateDay (345), EncodeDateMonthWeek (345), TryEncodeDateTime (398), TryEncodeDateWeek (399), TryEncodeDateDay (397), NthDayOfWeek (377)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex86.pp

---

**Program** Example86;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateMonthWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

Y,M,WoM,Dow : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateMonthWeek(**Now**,Y,M,WoM,Dow);  
**If** TryEncodeDateMonthWeek(Y,M,WoM,Dow,TS) **then**  
    WriteLn('Today is : ',DateToStr(TS))  
**else**  
    WriteLn('Invalid year/month/week/dow indication');  
**End.**

---

#### 4.4.126 TryEncodeDateTime

Synopsis: Encode a Year, Month, Day, Hour, minute, seconds, milliseconds tuple to a TDateTime value

Declaration: function TryEncodeDateTime(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word;  
const ADay: Word;const AHour: Word;  
const AMinute: Word;const ASecond: Word;  
const AMilliSecond: Word;  
var AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean

Visibility: default

**Description:** EncodeDateTime encodes the values AYearAMonth, ADay, AHour, AMinute, ASecond and AMilliSecond to a date/time value and returns this value in AValue.

If the date was encoded successfully, True is returned, False is returned if one of the arguments is not valid.

**See also:** EncodeDateTime (346), EncodeDateMonthWeek (345), EncodeDateWeek (346), EncodeDateDay (345), TryEncodeDateDay (397), TryEncodeDateWeek (399), TryEncodeDateMonthWeek (398)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex80.pp

---

**Program** Example79;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

**Var**

Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS : Word;  
TS : TDateTime;

**Begin**

DecodeDateTime(**Now**, Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS);  
**If** TryEncodeDateTime(Y, Mo, D, H, Mi, S, MS, TS) **then**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Now is : ', DateTimeToStr(TS))  
**else**  
    **WriteLn**( 'Wrong date/time indication ');

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.127 TryEncodeDateWeek

**Synopsis:** Encode a year, week and day of week triplet to a TDateTime value

**Declaration:** function TryEncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
                                          var AValue: TDateTime; const ADayOfWeek: Word)  
                                          : Boolean  
function TryEncodeDateWeek(const AYear: Word; const AWeekOfYear: Word;  
                                          var AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** TryEncodeDateWeek encodes the values AYear, AWeekOfYear and ADayOfWeek to a date value and returns this value in AValue.

If the encoding was successful, True is returned. False is returned if any of the arguments is not valid.

**See also:** EncodeDateMonthWeek (345), EncodeDateWeek (346), EncodeDateTime (346), EncodeDateDay (345), TryEncodeDateTime (398), TryEncodeDateMonthWeek (398), TryEncodeDateDay (397)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex82.pp

---

**Program** Example82;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryEncodeDateWeek function }*

**Uses** SysUtils , DateUtils ;

---

```

Var
  Y,W,Dow : Word;
  TS : TDateTime;

Begin
  DecodeDateWeek(Now,Y,W,Dow);
  If TryEncodeDateWeek(Y,W,TS,Dow) then
    WriteLn('Today is : ',DateToStr(TS))
  else
    WriteLn('Invalid date/week indication');
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.128 TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth

Synopsis: Encode a year, month, week, day of week triplet to a TDateTime value

Declaration: `function TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(const AYear: Word;const AMonth: Word; const ANthDayOfWeek: Word; const ADayOfWeek: Word; var AValue: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth encodes AYear, AMonth, ADayOfWeek and ANthDayOfWeek to a valid date stamp and returns the result in AValue.

ANthDayOfWeek is the N-th time that this weekday occurs in the month, e.g. the third saturday of the month.

The function returns True if the encoding was succesful, False if any of the values is not in range.

See also: NthDayOfWeek ([377](#)), EncodeDateMonthWeek ([345](#)), #rtl.sysutils.DayOfWeek ([1125](#)), DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth ([344](#)), EncodeDayOfWeekInMonth ([346](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex106.pp

---

**Program** Example105;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```

Var
  Y,M,NDoW,DoW : Word;
  D : TDateTime;
Begin
  DecodeDayOfWeekInMonth(Date,Y,M,NDoW,DoW);
  If TryEncodeDayOfWeekInMonth(Y,M,NDoW,DoW,D) then
    begin
      Write(DateToStr(D), ' is the ',NDoW,'-th ');
      WriteLn(formatDateTime('dddd',D), ' of the month. ');
    end
  else
    WriteLn('Invalid year/month/NthDayOfWeek combination');
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.129 TryJulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a Julian date representation to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: 

```
function TryJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double;
                                var ADateTime: TDateTime) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [DateTimeToJulianDate \(336\)](#), [JulianDateToDateTime \(366\)](#), [DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate \(336\)](#), [TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(401\)](#)

#### 4.4.130 TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a modified Julian date representation to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: 

```
function TryModifiedJulianDateToDateTime(const AValue: Double;
                                         var ADateTime: TDateTime)
                                         : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: [DateTimeToJulianDate \(336\)](#), [JulianDateToDateTime \(366\)](#), [TryJulianDateToDateTime \(401\)](#), [DateTimeToModifiedJulianDate \(336\)](#), [ModifiedJulianDateToDateTime \(374\)](#)

#### 4.4.131 TryRecodeDateTime

Synopsis: Replace selected parts of a `TDateTime` value with other values

Declaration: 

```
function TryRecodeDateTime(const AValue: TDateTime; const AYear: Word;
                          const AMonth: Word; const ADay: Word;
                          const AHour: Word; const AMinute: Word;
                          const ASecond: Word; const AMilliSecond: Word;
                          var AResult: TDateTime) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `TryRecodeDateTime` replaces selected parts of the timestamp `AValue` with the date/time values specified in `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` and `AMilliSecond`. If any of these values equals the pre-defined constant `RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs (332)`, then the corresponding part of the date/time stamp is left untouched.

The resulting date/time is returned in `AValue`.

The function returns `True` if the encoding was successful. It returns `False` if one of the values `AYear`, `AMonth`, `ADay`, `AHour`, `AMinute`, `ASecond` or `AMilliSecond` is not within a valid range.

See also: [RecodeYear \(384\)](#), [RecodeMonth \(382\)](#), [RecodeDay \(380\)](#), [RecodeHour \(380\)](#), [RecodeMinute \(381\)](#), [RecodeSecond \(383\)](#), [RecodeMilliSecond \(381\)](#), [RecodeDate \(378\)](#), [RecodeTime \(383\)](#), [RecodeDateTime \(379\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex97.pp

---

**Program** Example97;

*{ This program demonstrates the TryRecodeDateTime function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Const**

    Fmt = 'dddd dd mmmm yyyy hh:nn:ss';

**Var**

    S : AnsiString;

    D : TDateTime;

**Begin**

**If** TryRecodeDateTime(**Now**,2000,2,RecodeLeaveFieldAsIs,0,0,0,0,D) **then**

**begin**

            S:=**FormatDateTime**(Fmt,D);

**WriteLn**('This moment in februari 2000 : ',S);

**end**

**else**

**WriteLn**('This moment did/does not exist in februari 2000');

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.132 UnixToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert Unix epoch time to a TDateTime value

Declaration: function UnixToDateTime(const AValue: Int64) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: Not yet implemented.

Errors: Currently, trying to use this function will raise an exception.

See also: DateTimeToUnix ([336](#))

#### 4.4.133 WeekOf

Synopsis: Extract week (of the year) from a given date.

Declaration: function WeekOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word

Visibility: default

Description: WeekOf returns the week-of-the-year part of the AValue date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 53.

For an example, see YearOf ([415](#))

See also: YearOf ([415](#)), DayOf ([337](#)), MonthOf ([375](#)), HourOf ([351](#)), MinuteOf ([371](#)), SecondOf ([387](#)), MilliSecondOf ([366](#))

#### 4.4.134 WeekOfTheMonth

**Synopsis:** Extract the week of the month (and optionally month and year) from a `DateTime` value

**Declaration:** `function WeekOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word; Overload`  
`function WeekOfTheMonth(const AValue: TDateTime;var AYear: Word;`  
`var AMonth: Word) : Word; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WeekOfTheMonth` extracts the week of the month from `AValue` and returns it, and optionally returns the year and month as well (in `AYear`, `AMonth` respectively).

**Remark:** Note that weeks are numbered from 1 using the ISO 8601 standard, and the day of the week as well. This means that the year and month may not be the same as the year part of the date, since the week may start in the previous year as the first week of the year is the week with at least 4 days in it.

See also: `WeekOfTheYear` ([403](#)), `DayOfTheMonth` ([337](#)), `HourOfTheMonth` ([352](#)), `MinuteOfTheMonth` ([372](#)), `SecondOfTheMonth` ([389](#)), `MilliSecondOfTheMonth` ([368](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** `Example41;`

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheMonth function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`N : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`N:=Now;`

`WriteLn('Week of the Month : ', WeekOfTheMonth(N));`

`WriteLn('Day of the Month : ', DayOfTheMonth(N));`

`WriteLn('Hour of the Month : ', HourOfTheMonth(N));`

`WriteLn('Minute of the Month : ', MinuteOfTheMonth(N));`

`WriteLn('Second of the Month : ', SecondOfTheMonth(N));`

`WriteLn('MilliSecond of the Month : ',`

`MilliSecondOfTheMonth(N));`

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.135 WeekOfTheYear

**Synopsis:** Extract the week of the year (and optionally year) of a `DateTime` indication.

**Declaration:** `function WeekOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word; Overload`  
`function WeekOfTheYear(const AValue: TDateTime;var AYear: Word) : Word`  
`; Overload`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WeekOfTheYear` extracts the week of the year from `AValue` and returns it, and optionally returns the year as well. It returns the same value as `WeekOf` ([402](#)).

**Remark:** Note that weeks are numbered from 1 using the ISO 8601 standard, and the day of the week as well. This means that the year may not be the same as the year part of the date, since the week may start in the previous year as the first week of the year is the week with at least 4 days in it.



See also: [WeekOf \(402\)](#), [MonthOfTheYear \(375\)](#), [DayOfTheYear \(338\)](#), [HourOfTheYear \(353\)](#), [MinuteOfTheYear \(372\)](#), [SecondOfTheYear \(389\)](#), [MilliSecondOfTheYear \(369\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex40.pp

---

**Program** Example40;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekOfTheYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Var**

N : TDateTime;

**Begin**

N:=Now;

**WriteLn**('Month of the year : ', MonthOfTheYear(N));

**WriteLn**('Week of the year : ', WeekOfTheYear(N));

**WriteLn**('Day of the year : ', DayOfTheYear(N));

**WriteLn**('Hour of the year : ', HourOfTheYear(N));

**WriteLn**('Minute of the year : ', MinuteOfTheYear(N));

**WriteLn**('Second of the year : ', SecondOfTheYear(N));

**WriteLn**('MilliSecond of the year : ',  
MilliSecondOfTheYear(N));

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.136 WeeksBetween

**Synopsis:** Calculate the number of whole weeks between two DateTime values

**Declaration:** function WeeksBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime)  
: Integer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** WeeksBetween returns the number of whole weeks between ANow and AThen. This means the fractional part of a Week is dropped.

See also: [YearsBetween \(415\)](#), [MonthsBetween \(375\)](#), [DaysBetween \(338\)](#), [HoursBetween \(353\)](#), [MinutesBetween \(373\)](#), [SecondsBetween \(389\)](#), [MillisecondsBetween \(369\)](#)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex57.pp

---

**Program** Example57;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeeksBetween function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

**begin**

**Write**('Number of weeks between ');

**Write**(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));

**WriteLn**(' : ', WeeksBetween(ANow, AThen));

**end;**

```
Var
  D1,D2 : TDateTime;
```

```
Begin
  D1:=Today;
  D2:=Today-7;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-8;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-14;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-35;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-36;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-17;
  Test(D1,D2);
End.
```

---

#### 4.4.137 WeeksInAYear

Synopsis: Return the number of weeks in a given year

Declaration: `function WeeksInAYear(const AYear: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `WeeksInAYear` returns the number of weeks in the year `AYear`. The return value is either 52 or 53.

**Remark:** The first week of the year is determined according to the ISO 8601 standard: It is the first week that has at least 4 days in it, i.e. it includes a thursday.

See also: `WeeksInYear` ([405](#)), `DaysInYear` ([341](#)), `DaysInAYear` ([339](#)), `DaysInMonth` ([340](#)), `DaysInAMonth` ([339](#))

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** Example13;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeeksInAYear function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```
Var
  Y : Word;
```

```
Begin
  For Y:=1992 to 2010 do
    Writeln(Y, ' has ',WeeksInAYear(Y), ' weeks. ');
End.
```

---

#### 4.4.138 WeeksInYear

Synopsis: return the number of weeks in the year, given a date

Declaration: `function WeeksInYear(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WeeksInYear` returns the number of weeks in the year part of `AValue`. The return value is either 52 or 53.

**Remark:** The first week of the year is determined according to the ISO 8601 standard: It is the first week that has at least 4 days in it, i.e. it includes a thursday.

See also: `WeeksInAYear` (405), `DaysInYear` (341), `DaysInAYear` (339), `DaysInMonth` (340), `DaysInAMonth` (339)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `Example12`;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeeksInYear function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Var**

`Y` : `Word`;

**Begin**

**For** `Y:=1992 to 2010 do`

**WriteIn**(`Y`, ' has ', `WeeksInYear(EncodeDate(Y,2,1))`, ' weeks. ');

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.139 WeekSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of weeks between two `DateTime` values.

**Declaration:** `function WeekSpan(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime) : Double`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WeekSpan` returns the number of weeks between `ANow` and `AThen`, including any fractional parts of a week.

See also: `YearSpan` (416), `MonthSpan` (376), `DaySpan` (341), `HourSpan` (354), `MinuteSpan` (374), `SecondSpan` (390), `MilliSecondSpan` (370), `WeeksBetween` (404)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex65.pp`

---

**Program** `Example57`;

*{ This program demonstrates the WeekSpan function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);`

**begin**

**Write**( 'Number of weeks between ');

**Write**( `DateToStr(AThen)`, ' and ', `DateToStr(ANow)`);

**WriteIn**( ' : ', `WeekSpan(ANow, AThen)`);

**end;**

**Var**

D1,D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```
D1:=Today;
D2:=Today-7;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-8;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-14;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-35;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-36;
Test(D1,D2);
D2:=Today-17;
Test(D1,D2);
```

**End.**

---

#### 4.4.140 WithinPastDays

Synopsis: Check whether two datetimes are only a number of days apart

Declaration: `function WithinPastDays(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime;  
const ADays: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WithinPastDays` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `ADays` days apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `DaysBetween` (338) function to calculate the difference in days, this means that fractional days do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half days apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (414), `WithinPastMonths` (411), `WithinPastWeeks` (413), `WithinPastHours` (408), `WithinPastMinutes` (410), `WithinPastSeconds` (412), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (409)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex50.pp`

---

**Program** Example50;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastDays function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; ADays : Integer);

**begin**

```
Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));
Write(' are within ', ADays, ' days: ');
WriteLn(WithinPastDays(ANow, AThen, ADays));
end;
```

**Var**

D1,D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

D1:=Now;

```

D2:=Today-23/24;
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=Today-1;
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=Today-25/24;
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=Today-26/24;
Test(D1,D2,5);
D2:=Today-5.4;
Test(D1,D2,5);
D2:=Today-2.5;
Test(D1,D2,1);
Test(D1,D2,2);
Test(D1,D2,3);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.141 WithinPastHours

Synopsis: Check whether two datetimes are only a number of hours apart

Declaration: `function WithinPastHours(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AHours: Int64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WithinPastHours` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AHours` hours apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `HoursBetween` (353) function to calculate the difference in Hours, this means that fractional hours do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half hours apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (414), `WithinPastMonths` (411), `WithinPastWeeks` (413), `WithinPastDays` (407), `WithinPastMinutes` (410), `WithinPastSeconds` (412), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (409)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex51.pp`

---

**Program** Example51;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastHours function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AHours : Integer);

**begin**

**Write**(**DateTimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateTimeToStr**(ANow));

**Write**(' are within ', AHours, ' hours: ');

**WriteLn**(**WithinPastHours**(ANow, AThen, AHours));

**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1:=**Now**;

  D2:=D1-(59\*OneMinute);

  Test(D1, D2, 1);

```

D2:=D1-(61*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=D1-(122*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=D1-(306*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2,5);
D2:=D1-(5.4*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2,5);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneHour);
Test(D1,D2,1);
Test(D1,D2,2);
Test(D1,D2,3);

```

End.

#### 4.4.142 WithinPastMilliseconds

Synopsis: Check whether two datetimes are only a number of milliseconds apart

Declaration: `function WithinPastMilliseconds(const ANow: TDateTime;  
const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AMilliseconds: Int64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WithinPastMilliseconds` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AMilliseconds` milliseconds apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `MillisecondsBetween` (369) function to calculate the difference in milliseconds, this means that fractional milliseconds do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half milliseconds apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (414), `WithinPastMonths` (411), `WithinPastWeeks` (413), `WithinPastDays` (407), `WithinPastHours` (408), `WithinPastMinutes` (410), `WithinPastSeconds` (412)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex54.pp`

**Program** Example54;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMilliseconds function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AMilliseconds : Integer);

**begin**

```

Write(TimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', TimeToStr(ANow));
Write(' are within ', AMilliseconds, ' milliseconds: ');
WriteLn(WithinPastMilliseconds(ANow, AThen, AMilliseconds));
end;

```

**Var**

D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(0.9*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2,1);

```

```

D2:=D1-(1.0*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=D1-(1.1*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMilliSecond);
Test(D1,D2,1);
Test(D1,D2,2);
Test(D1,D2,3);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.143 WithinPastMinutes

Synopsis: Check whether two datetimes are only a number of minutes apart

Declaration: `function WithinPastMinutes(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime; const AMinutes: Int64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WithinPastMinutes` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AMinutes` minutes apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `MinutesBetween` (373) function to calculate the difference in Minutes, this means that fractional minutes do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half minutes apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (414), `WithinPastMonths` (411), `WithinPastWeeks` (413), `WithinPastDays` (407), `WithinPastHours` (408), `WithinPastSeconds` (412), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (409)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex52.pp`

---

**Program** Example52;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMinutes function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AMinutes : Integer);

**begin**

```

  Write(DateTimeToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateTimeToStr(ANow));
  Write(' are within ', AMinutes, ' Minutes: ');
  WriteLn(WithinPastMinutes(ANow, AThen, AMinutes));
end;

```

**Var**

D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

```

D1:=Now;
D2:=D1-(59*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=D1-(61*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=D1-(122*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2,1);
D2:=D1-(306*OneSecond);
Test(D1,D2,5);

```

```

D2:=D1-(5.4*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2,5);
D2:=D1-(2.5*OneMinute);
Test(D1,D2,1);
Test(D1,D2,2);
Test(D1,D2,3);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.144 WithinPastMonths

**Synopsis:** Check whether two datetimes are only a number of months apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastMonths(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AMonths: Integer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastMonths` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AMonths` months apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `MonthsBetween` (375) function to calculate the difference in Months, this means that fractional months do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half months apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (414), `WithinPastWeeks` (413), `WithinPastDays` (407), `WithinPastHours` (408), `WithinPastMinutes` (410), `WithinPastSeconds` (412), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (409)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex48.pp`

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastMonths function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AMonths : Integer);

**begin**

**Write**(**DateToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateToStr**(ANow));

**Write**(' are within ', AMonths, ' months: ');

**WriteLn**(**WithinPastMonths**(ANow, AThen, AMonths));

**end**;

**Var**

    D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

    D1:=Today;

    D2:=Today-364;

    Test(D1,D2,12);

    D2:=Today-365;

    Test(D1,D2,12);

    D2:=Today-366;

    Test(D1,D2,12);

    D2:=Today-390;

    Test(D1,D2,12);

    D2:=Today-368;

    Test(D1,D2,11);



```

D2:=Today-1000;
Test(D1,D2,31);
Test(D1,D2,32);
Test(D1,D2,33);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.145 WithinPastSeconds

Synopsis: Check whether two datetimes are only a number of seconds apart

Declaration: `function WithinPastSeconds(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime;  
const ASeconds: Int64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WithinPastSeconds` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `ASeconds` seconds apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `SecondsBetween` (389) function to calculate the difference in seconds, this means that fractional seconds do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half seconds apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (414), `WithinPastMonths` (411), `WithinPastWeeks` (413), `WithinPastDays` (407), `WithinPastHours` (408), `WithinPastMinutes` (410), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (409)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex53.pp`

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastSeconds function }*

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; ASeconds : Integer);

**begin**

**Write**(**DateTimeToStr**(AThen), ' and ', **DateTimeToStr**(ANow));

**Write**(' are within ', ASeconds, ' seconds: ');

**WriteLn**(**WithinPastSeconds**(ANow, AThen, ASeconds));

**end**;

**Var**

  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

**Begin**

  D1:=**Now**;

  D2:=D1-(999\*OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1,D2,1);

  D2:=D1-(1001\*OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1,D2,1);

  D2:=D1-(2001\*OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1,D2,1);

  D2:=D1-(5001\*OneMilliSecond);

  Test(D1,D2,5);

  D2:=D1-(5.4\*OneSecond);

  Test(D1,D2,5);

  D2:=D1-(2.5\*OneSecond);

  Test(D1,D2,1);

```

    Test(D1,D2,2);
    Test(D1,D2,3);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.146 WithinPastWeeks

Synopsis: Check whether two datetimes are only a number of weeks apart

Declaration: `function WithinPastWeeks(const ANow: TDateTime;const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AWeeks: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WithinPastWeeks` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AWeeks` weeks apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `WeeksBetween` (404) function to calculate the difference in Weeks, this means that fractional Weeks do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half weeks apart, the result will also be `True`

See also: `WithinPastYears` (414), `WithinPastMonths` (411), `WithinPastDays` (407), `WithinPastHours` (408), `WithinPastMinutes` (410), `WithinPastSeconds` (412), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (409)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex49.pp`

---

**Program** Example49;

```
{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastWeeks function }
```

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AWeeks : Integer);

```

begin
    Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
    Write(' are within ', AWeeks, ' weeks: ');
    WriteLn(WithinPastWeeks(ANow, AThen, AWeeks));
end;

```

**Var**  
D1, D2 : TDateTime;

```

Begin
    D1:=Today;
    D2:=Today-7;
    Test(D1,D2,1);
    D2:=Today-8;
    Test(D1,D2,1);
    D2:=Today-14;
    Test(D1,D2,1);
    D2:=Today-35;
    Test(D1,D2,5);
    D2:=Today-36;
    Test(D1,D2,5);
    D2:=Today-17;
    Test(D1,D2,1);
    Test(D1,D2,2);
    Test(D1,D2,3);

```

End.

---

#### 4.4.147 WithinPastYears

**Synopsis:** Check whether two datetimes are only a number of years apart

**Declaration:** `function WithinPastYears(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime;  
const AYears: Integer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WithinPastYears` compares the timestamps `ANow` and `AThen` and returns `True` if the difference between them is at most `AYears` years apart, or `False` if they are further apart.

**Remark:** Since this function uses the `YearsBetween` (415) function to calculate the difference in years, this means that fractional years do not count, and the fractional part is simply dropped, so for two dates actually 2 and a half years apart, the result will also be `True`

**See also:** `WithinPastMonths` (411), `WithinPastWeeks` (413), `WithinPastDays` (407), `WithinPastHours` (408), `WithinPastMinutes` (410), `WithinPastSeconds` (412), `WithinPastMilliseconds` (409)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex47.pp`

---

**Program** `Example47`;

*{ This program demonstrates the WithinPastYears function }*

**Uses** `SysUtils`, `DateUtils`;

**Procedure** `Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime; AYears : Integer);`

```
begin
  Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
  Write(' are within ', AYears, ' years: ');
  WriteLn(WithinPastYears(ANow, AThen, AYears));
end;
```

**Var**  
    `D1, D2 : TDateTime;`

```
Begin
  D1:=Today;
  D2:=Today-364;
  Test(D1,D2,1);
  D2:=Today-365;
  Test(D1,D2,1);
  D2:=Today-366;
  Test(D1,D2,1);
  D2:=Today-390;
  Test(D1,D2,1);
  D2:=Today-368;
  Test(D1,D2,1);
  D2:=Today-1000;
  Test(D1,D2,1);
  Test(D1,D2,2);
  Test(D1,D2,3);
```

End.

---

**4.4.148 YearOf**

Synopsis: Extract the year from a given date.

Declaration: `function YearOf(const AValue: TDateTime) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `YearOf` returns the year part of the `AValue` date/time indication. It is a number between 1 and 9999.

See also: `MonthOf` (375), `DayOf` (337), `WeekOf` (402), `HourOf` (351), `MinuteOf` (371), `SecondOf` (387), `MilliSecondOf` (366)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `Example23;`

`{ This program demonstrates the YearOf function }`

**Uses** `SysUtils, DateUtils;`

**Var**

`D : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`D:=Now;`

`WriteLn('Year : ', YearOf(D));`

`WriteLn('Month : ', MonthOf(D));`

`WriteLn('Day : ', DayOf(D));`

`WriteLn('Week : ', WeekOf(D));`

`WriteLn('Hour : ', HourOf(D));`

`WriteLn('Minute : ', MinuteOf(D));`

`WriteLn('Second : ', SecondOf(D));`

`WriteLn('MilliSecond : ', MilliSecondOf(D));`

**End.**

---

**4.4.149 YearsBetween**

Synopsis: Calculate the number of whole years between two `DateTime` values

Declaration: `function YearsBetween(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `YearsBetween` returns the number of whole years between `ANow` and `AThen`. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 365.25 per year (average over 4 years). This means the fractional part of a year is dropped.

See also: `MonthsBetween` (375), `WeeksBetween` (404), `DaysBetween` (338), `HoursBetween` (353), `MinutesBetween` (373), `SecondsBetween` (389), `MillisecondsBetween` (369), `YearSpan` (416)

**Listing:** `./datutex/ex55.pp`

---

**Program** `Example55;`

`{ This program demonstrates the YearsBetween function }`

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

```
begin
  Write( 'Number of years between ');
  Write( DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
  WriteLn( ' : ', YearsBetween(ANow, AThen));
end;
```

**Var**  
D1, D2 : TDateTime;

```
Begin
  D1:=Today;
  D2:=Today-364;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-365;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-366;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-390;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-368;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-1000;
  Test(D1,D2);
End.
```

---

#### 4.4.150 YearSpan

**Synopsis:** Calculate the approximate number of years between two DateTime values.

**Declaration:** function YearSpan(const ANow: TDateTime; const AThen: TDateTime) : Double

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** YearSpan returns the number of years between ANow and AThen, including any fractional parts of a year. This number is an approximation, based on an average number of days of 365.25 per year (average over 4 years).

See also: MonthSpan ([376](#)), WeekSpan ([406](#)), DaySpan ([341](#)), HourSpan ([354](#)), MinuteSpan ([374](#)), SecondSpan ([390](#)), MilliSecondSpan ([370](#)), YearsBetween ([415](#))

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex63.pp

---

**Program** Example63;

```
{ This program demonstrates the YearSpan function }
```

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

**Procedure** Test(ANow, AThen : TDateTime);

```
begin
  Write( 'Number of years between ');
```

---

```

Write(DateToStr(AThen), ' and ', DateToStr(ANow));
WriteLn(' : ', YearSpan(ANow, AThen));
end;

```

```

Var
  D1, D2 : TDateTime;

```

```

Begin
  D1:=Today;
  D2:=Today-364;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-365;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-366;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-390;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-368;
  Test(D1,D2);
  D2:=Today-1000;
  Test(D1,D2);
End.

```

---

#### 4.4.151 Yesterday

Synopsis: Return the previous day.

Declaration: function Yesterday : TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: Yesterday returns yesterday's date. Yesterday is determined from the system clock, i.e. it is Today (396) -1.

See also: Today (396), Tomorrow (397)

**Listing:** ./datutex/ex18.pp

---

**Program** Example18;

```
{ This program demonstrates the Yesterday function }
```

**Uses** SysUtils, DateUtils;

```

Begin
  WriteLn(FormatDateTime(' "Today is " dd mmm yyyy ', Today));
  WriteLn(FormatDateTime(' "Yesterday was " dd mmm yyyy ', Yesterday));
End.

```

---

## Chapter 5

# Reference for unit 'Dos'

### 5.1 System information

Functions for retrieving and setting general system information such as date and time.

Table 5.1:

Name	Description
DosVersion (427)	Get OS version
GetCBreak (432)	Get setting of control-break handling flag
GetDate (433)	Get system date
GetIntVec (435)	Get interrupt vector status
GetTime (437)	Get system time
GetVerify (437)	Get verify flag
Intr (438)	Execute an interrupt
Keep (438)	Keep process in memory and exit
MSDos (438)	Execute MS-dos function call
PackTime (439)	Pack time for file time
SetCBreak (439)	Set control-break handling flag
SetDate (440)	Set system date
SetIntVec (441)	Set interrupt vectors
SetTime (441)	Set system time
SetVerify (441)	Set verify flag
SwapVectors (442)	Swap interrupt vectors
UnPackTime (442)	Unpack file time

### 5.2 Process handling

Functions to handle process information and starting new processes.

### 5.3 Directory and disk handling

Routines to handle disk information.

Table 5.2:

Name	Description
DosExitCode (426)	Exit code of last executed program
EnvCount (428)	Return number of environment variables
EnvStr (428)	Return environment string pair
Exec (429)	Execute program
GetEnv (433)	Return specified environment string

Table 5.3:

Name	Description
AddDisk (424)	Add disk to list of disks (UNIX only)
DiskFree (425)	Return size of free disk space
DiskSize (426)	Return total disk size

## 5.4 File handling

Routines to handle files on disk.

Table 5.4:

Name	Description
FExpand (429)	Expand filename to full path
FindClose (430)	Close finfirst/findnext session
FindFirst (430)	Start find of file
FindNext (431)	Find next file
FSearch (431)	Search for file in a path
FSplit (432)	Split filename in parts
GetFAttr (434)	Return file attributes
GetFTime (435)	Return file time
GetLongName (436)	Convert short filename to long filename (DOS only)
GetShortName (436)	Convert long filename to short filename (DOS only)
SetFAttr (440)	Set file attributes
SetFTime (441)	Set file time

## 5.5 File open mode constants.

These constants are used in the Mode field of the TextRec record. Gives information on the file-mode of the text I/O. For their definitions consult the following table:

## 5.6 File attributes

The File Attribute constants are used in FindFirst (430), FindNext (431) to determine what type of special file to search for in addition to normal files. These flags are also used in the SetFAttr (440) and



Table 5.5: Possible mode constants

Constant	Description	Value
<code>fmclosed</code>	File is closed	<code>\$D7B0</code>
<code>fminput</code>	File is read only	<code>\$D7B1</code>
<code>fmoutput</code>	File is write only	<code>\$D7B2</code>
<code>fminout</code>	File is read and write	<code>\$D7B3</code>

`GetFAttr` ([434](#)) routines to set and retrieve attributes of files. For their definitions consult `fileattributes` ([419](#)).

Table 5.6: Possible file attributes

Constant	Description	Value
<code>readonly</code>	Read-Only file attribute	<code>\$01</code>
<code>hidden</code>	Hidden file attribute	<code>\$02</code>
<code>sysfile</code>	System file attribute	<code>\$04</code>
<code>volumeid</code>	Volume ID file attribute	<code>\$08</code>
<code>directory</code>	Directory file attribute	<code>\$10</code>
<code>archive</code>	Archive file attribute	<code>\$20</code>
<code>anyfile</code>	Match any file attribute	<code>\$3F</code>

## 5.7 Overview

The DOS unit gives access to some operating system calls related to files, the file system, date and time. Except for the PalmOS target, this unit is available to all supported platforms.

The unit was first written for dos by Florian Klaempfl. It was ported to linux by Mark May and enhanced by Michael Van Canneyt. The Amiga version was ported by Nils Sjöholm.

Under non-DOS systems, some of the functionality is lost, as it is either impossible or meaningless to implement it. Other than that, the functionality for all operating systems is the same.

## 5.8 Constants, types and variables

### 5.8.1 Constants

`anyfile` = `$3F`

Match any file attribute

`archive` = `$20`

Archive file attribute

`directory` = `$10`

Directory file attribute

`fauxiliary = $0010`

CPU auxiliary flag. Not used.

`fcarry = $0001`

CPU carry flag. Not used.

`FileNameLen = 255`

Maximum length of a filename

`filerecnamelength = 255`

Maximum length of FileName part in FileRec ([423](#))

`fmclosed = $D7B0`

File is closed

`fminout = $D7B3`

File is read and write

`fminput = $D7B1`

File is read only

`fmoutput = $D7B2`

File is write only

`foverflow = $0800`

CPU overflow flag. Not used.

`fparity = $0004`

CPU parity flag. Not used.

`fsign = $0080`

CPU sign flag. Not used.

`fzero = $0040`

CPU zero flag. Not used.

`hidden = $02`

Hidden file attribute

readonly = \$01

Read-Only file attribute

sysfile = \$04

System file attribute

TextRecBufSize = 256

Size of default buffer in TextRec ([424](#))

TextRecNameLength = 256

Maximum length of filename in TextRec ([424](#))

volumeid = \$08

Volumd ID file attribute

### 5.8.2 Types

ComStr =

Command-line string type

```
DateTime = packed record
  Year : Word;
  Month : Word;
  Day : Word;
  Hour : Word;
  Min : Word;
  Sec : Word;
end
```

The DateTime type is used in PackTime ([439](#)) and UnPackTime ([442](#)) for setting/reading file times with GetFTime ([435](#)) and SetFTime ([441](#)).

DirStr =

Full directory string type.

ExtStr =

Filename extension string type.

```
FileRec = packed record
  Handle : THandle;
  Mode : LongInt;
  RecSize : SizeInt;
  _private : Array[1..3*SizeOf(SizeInt)+5*SizeOf(pointer)] of Byte;
  UserData : Array[1..16] of Byte;
  name : Array[0..filerecnamelength] of Char;
end
```

FileRec is used for internal representation of typed and untyped files.

NameStr =

Fill filename string type.

PathStr =

Full File path string type.

```
Registers = packed record
end
```

Record to keep CPU registers for MSDos (438) call. Unused.

```
SearchRec = packed record
  SearchNum : LongInt;
  SearchPos : LongInt;
  DirPtr : Pointer;
  SearchType : Byte;
  SearchAttr : Byte;
  Fill : Array[1..07] of Byte;
  Attr : Byte;
  Time : LongInt;
  Size : LongInt;
  Reserved : Word;
  Name : String;
  SearchSpec : String;
  NamePos : Word;
end
```

SearchRec is filled by the FindFirst (430) call and can be used in subsequent FindNext (431) calls to search for files. The structure of this record depends on the platform. Only the following fields are present on all platforms:

**Attr** File attributes.

**Time** File modification time.

**Size** File size

**Name** File name (name part only, no path)

```
TextBuf = Array[0..TextRecBufSize-1] of Char
```

Type for default buffer in TextRec (424)

```
TextRec = packed record
  Handle : THandle;
  Mode : LongInt;
  bufsize : SizeInt;
```

```

LineEnd : TLineEndStr;
bufpos  : SizeInt;
bufend  : SizeInt;
bufptr  : ^TextBuf;
openfunc : pointer;
inoutfunc : pointer;
flushfunc : pointer;
closefunc : pointer;
UserData : Array[1..16] of Byte;
name     : Array[0..textrecnamelength-1] of Char;
buffer   : TextBuf;
end

```

TextRec describes the internal working of a Text file.

Remark that this is not binary compatible with the Turbo Pascal definition of TextRec, since the sizes of the different fields are different.

TLineEndStr =

TLineEndStr is used in the TextRec (424) record to indicate the end-of-line sequence for a text file.

### 5.8.3 Variables

DosError : Integer

The DosError variable is used by the procedures in the dos unit to report errors. It can have the following values :

Table 5.7: Dos error codes

Value	Meaning
2	File not found.
3	path not found.
5	Access denied.
6	Invalid handle.
8	Not enough memory.
10	Invalid environment.
11	Invalid format.
18	No more files.

Other values are possible, but are not documented.

## 5.9 Procedures and functions

### 5.9.1 AddDisk

Synopsis: Add disk definition to list if drives (Unix only)

Declaration: procedure AddDisk(const path: String)

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AddDisk` adds a filename `S` to the internal list of disks. It is implemented for systems which do not use DOS type drive letters. This list is used to determine which disks to use in the `DiskFree` (425) and `DiskSize` (426) calls. The `DiskFree` (425) and `DiskSize` (426) functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. The names are added sequentially. The dos initialization code presets the first three disks to:

- `'.'` for the current drive,
- `'/fd0/.'` for the first floppy-drive (linux only).
- `'/fd1/.'` for the second floppy-drive (linux only).
- `''` for the first hard disk.

The first call to `AddDisk` will therefore add a name for the second harddisk, The second call for the third drive, and so on until 23 drives have been added (corresponding to drives `'D:'` to `'Z:'`)

Errors: None

See also: `DiskFree` (425), `DiskSize` (426)

## 5.9.2 DiskFree

**Synopsis:** Get free size on Disk.

**Declaration:** `function DiskFree(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `DiskFree` returns the number of free bytes on a disk. The parameter `Drive` indicates which disk should be checked. This parameter is 1 for floppy `a:`, 2 for floppy `b:`, etc. A value of 0 returns the free space on the current drive.

**Remark:** For Unices: The `diskfree` and `disksize` functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. These filenames are set in the initialization of the dos unit, and have been preset to :

- `'.'` for the current drive,
- `'/fd0/.'` for the first floppy-drive (linux only).
- `'/fd1/.'` for the second floppy-drive (linux only).
- `''` for the first hard disk.

There is room for 1-26 drives. You can add a drive with the `AddDisk` (424) procedure. These settings can be coded in `dos.pp`, in the initialization part.

Errors: -1 when a failure occurs, or an invalid drive number is given.

See also: `DiskSize` (426), `AddDisk` (424)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;  
**uses** Dos;

*{ Program to demonstrate the DiskSize and DiskFree function. }*

**begin**

**WriteLn**('This partition size has ', **DiskSize**(0), ' bytes');

**WriteLn**('Currently ', **DiskFree**(0), ' bytes are free');

**end.**

---

### 5.9.3 DiskSize

Synopsis: Get total size of disk.

Declaration: `function DiskSize(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskSize` returns the total size (in bytes) of a disk. The parameter `Drive` indicates which disk should be checked. This parameter is 1 for floppy a:, 2 for floppy b:, etc. A value of 0 returns the size of the current drive.

**Remark:** For unix only: The `diskfree` and `disksize` functions need a file on the specified drive, since this is required for the `statfs` system call. These filenames are set in the initialization of the dos unit, and have been preset to :

- ' .' for the current drive,
- '/fd0/ .' for the first floppy-drive (linux only).
- '/fd1/ .' for the second floppy-drive (linux only).
- '/' for the first hard disk.

There is room for 1-26 drives. You can add a drive with the `AddDisk` (424) procedure. These settings can be coded in `dos.pp`, in the initialization part.

For an example, see `DiskFree` (425).

Errors: -1 when a failure occurs, or an invalid drive number is given.

See also: `DiskFree` (425), `AddDisk` (424)

### 5.9.4 DosExitCode

Synopsis: Exit code of last executed program.

Declaration: `function DosExitCode : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DosExitCode` contains (in the low byte) the exit-code of a program executed with the `Exec` call.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exec` (429)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the Exec and DosExitCode function. }

begin
  {$IFDEF Unix}
    WriteLn( 'Executing /bin/ls -la ');
    Exec( '/bin/ls ', '-la ');
  {$ELSE}
    WriteLn( 'Executing Dir ');
    Exec( GetEnv( 'COMSPEC' ), '/C dir ');
  {$ENDIF}
  WriteLn( 'Program returned with ExitCode ', Lo(DosExitCode));
end.

```

---

### 5.9.5 DosVersion

Synopsis: Current OS version

Declaration: `function DosVersion : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `DosVersion` returns the operating system or kernel version. The low byte contains the major version number, while the high byte contains the minor version number.

**Remark:** On systems where versions consists of more then two numbers, only the first two numbers will be returned. For example Linux version 2.1.76 will give you `DosVersion` 2.1. Some operating systems, such as FreeBSD, do not have system calls to return the kernel version, in that case a value of 0 will be returned.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex1.pp`

---

```

Program Example1;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the DosVersion function. }

var
    OS      : string[32];
    Version : word;
begin
    {$IFDEF LINUX}
        OS:= 'Linux';
    {$ENDIF}
    {$ifdef FreeBSD}
        OS:= 'FreeBSD';
    {$endif}
    {$ifdef NetBSD}
        OS:= 'NetBSD';
    {$endif}
    {$ifdef Solaris}
        OS:= 'Solaris';
    {$endif}
    {$ifdef QNX}
        OS:= 'QNX';
    {$endif}

    {$IFDEF DOS}
        OS:= 'Dos';
    {$ENDIF}
    Version:=DosVersion;
    WriteLn('Current ',OS,' version is ',Lo(Version),'.',Hi(Version));
end.

```

---

### 5.9.6 DTToUnixDate

Synopsis: Convert a `DateTime` to unix timestamp

Declaration: `function DTToUnixDate(DT: DateTime) : LongInt`

Visibility: default



Description: `DTToUnixDate` converts the `DateTime` value in `DT` to a unix timestamp. It is an internal function, implemented on Unix platforms, and should not be used.

Errors: None.

See also: `UnixDateToDT` ([442](#)), `PackTime` ([439](#)), `UnpackTime` ([442](#)), `GetTime` ([437](#)), `SetTime` ([441](#))

### 5.9.7 EnvCount

Synopsis: Return the number of environment variables

Declaration: `function EnvCount : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnvCount` returns the number of environment variables.

Errors: None.

See also: `EnvStr` ([428](#)), `GetEnv` ([433](#))

### 5.9.8 EnvStr

Synopsis: Return environment variable by index

Declaration: `function EnvStr(Index: LongInt) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnvStr` returns the `Index`-th `Name=Value` pair from the list of environment variables. The index of the first pair is zero.

Errors: The length is limited to 255 characters.

See also: `EnvCount` ([428](#)), `GetEnv` ([433](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** Example13;

**uses** Dos;

*{ Program to demonstrate the EnvCount and EnvStr function. }*

**var**

*i* : Longint;

**begin**

**WriteLn**( 'Current Environment is: ');

**for** *i* := 1 **to** EnvCount **do**

**WriteLn**( EnvStr( *i* ) );

**end.**

---

### 5.9.9 Exec

Synopsis: Execute another program, and wait for it to finish.

Declaration: `procedure Exec(const path: PathStr;const comline: ComStr)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exec` executes the program in `Path`, with the options given by `ComLine`. The program name should *not* appear again in `ComLine`, it is specified in `Path`. `Comline` contains only the parameters that are passed to the program.

After the program has terminated, the procedure returns. The `Exit` value of the program can be consulted with the `DosExitCode` function.

For an example, see `DosExitCode` (426)

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`.

See also: `DosExitCode` (426)

### 5.9.10 FExpand

Synopsis: Expand a relative path to an absolute path

Declaration: `function FExpand(const path: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: `FExpand` takes its argument and expands it to a complete filename, i.e. a filename starting from the root directory of the current drive, prepended with the drive-letter or volume name (when supported).

**Remark:** On case sensitive file systems (such as unix and linux), the resulting name is left as it is, otherwise it is converted to uppercase.

Errors: `FSplit` (432)

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex5.pp`

---

```

Program Example5;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the Exec and DosExitCode function. }

begin
  {$IFDEF Unix}
    WriteLn( 'Executing /bin/ls -la ');
    Exec( '/bin/ls ', '-la ');
  {$ELSE}
    WriteLn( 'Executing Dir ');
    Exec( GetEnv( 'COMSPEC' ), '/C dir ');
  {$ENDIF}
  WriteLn( 'Program returned with ExitCode ', Lo(DosExitCode));
end.

```

---

### 5.9.11 FindClose

**Synopsis:** Dispose resources allocated by a FindFirst (430)/FindNext (431) sequence.

**Declaration:** `procedure FindClose(var f: SearchRec)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FindClose frees any resources associated with the search record F.

This call is needed to free any internal resources allocated by the FindFirst (430) or FindNext (431) calls.

The unix implementation of the dos unit therefore keeps a table of open directories, and when the table is full, closes one of the directories, and reopens another. This system is adequate but slow if you use a lot of searchrecs.

So, to speed up the findfirst/findnext system, the FindClose call was implemented. When you don't need a searchrec any more, you can tell this to the dos unit by issuing a FindClose call. The directory which is kept open for this searchrec is then closed, and the table slot freed.

**Remark:** It is recommended to use the linux call Glob when looking for files on linux.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in DosError.

**See also:** FindFirst (430), FindNext (431)

### 5.9.12 FindFirst

**Synopsis:** Start search for one or more files.

**Declaration:** `procedure FindFirst(const path: PathStr; attr: Word; var f: SearchRec)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** FindFirst searches the file specified in Path. Normal files, as well as all special files which have the attributes specified in Attr will be returned.

It returns a SearchRec record for further searching in F. Path can contain the wildcard characters ? (matches any single character) and \* (matches 0 ore more arbitrary characters). In this case FindFirst will return the first file which matches the specified criteria. If DosError is different from zero, no file(s) matching the criteria was(were) found.

**Remark:** On os/2, you cannot issue two different FindFirst calls. That is, you must close any previous search operation with FindClose (430) before starting a new one. Failure to do so will end in a Run-Time Error 6 (Invalid file handle)

**Errors:** Errors are reported in DosError.

**See also:** FindNext (431), FindClose (430)

**Listing:** ./dosex/ex7.pp

---

```

Program Example7;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FindFirst and FindNext function. }

var
    Dir : SearchRec;
begin
    FindFirst( '*.*', archive, Dir);

```

---

```

WriteLn ( 'FileName '+Space(32), ' FileSize ':9);
while ( DosError=0) do
begin
  WriteLn ( Dir.Name+Space(40-Length( Dir.Name)) , Dir . Size :9);
  FindNext( Dir );
end;
FindClose( Dir );
end.

```

---

### 5.9.13 FindNext

Synopsis: Find next matching file after FindFirst ([430](#))

Declaration: `procedure FindNext( var f: SearchRec)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FindNext` takes as an argument a `SearchRec` from a previous `FindNext` call, or a `FindFirst` call, and tries to find another file which matches the criteria, specified in the `FindFirst` call. If `DosError` is different from zero, no more files matching the criteria were found.

For an example, see `FindFirst` ([430](#)).

Errors: `DosError` is used to report errors.

See also: `FindFirst` ([430](#)), `FindClose` ([430](#))

### 5.9.14 FSearch

Synopsis: Search a file in searchpath

Declaration: `function FSearch(path: PathStr;dirlist: String) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSearch` searches the file `Path` in all directories listed in `DirList`. The full name of the found file is returned. `DirList` must be a list of directories, separated by semi-colons. When no file is found, an empty string is returned.

**Remark:** On unix systems, `DirList` can also be separated by colons, as is customary on those environments.

Errors: None.

See also: `FExpand` ([429](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex10.pp`

---

```

Program Example10;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function. }

var
  s : string;
begin
  s:=FSearch( ParamStr(1), GetEnv( 'PATH' ));
  if s='' then
    WriteLn(ParamStr(1), ' not Found in PATH')
  else

```

---

```

    WriteLn(ParamStr(1), ' Found in PATH at ',s);
end.

```

---

### 5.9.15 FSplit

Synopsis: Split a full-path filename in parts.

Declaration: `procedure FSplit(path: PathStr; var dir: DirStr; var name: NameStr; var ext: ExtStr)`

Visibility: default

Description: FSplit splits a full file name into 3 parts : A Path, a Name and an extension (in ext.) The extension is taken to be all letters after the *last* dot (.). For dos, however, an exception is made when LFNSupport=False, then the extension is defined as all characters after the *first* dot.

Errors: None.

See also: FSearch ([431](#))

**Listing:** ./dosex/ex12.pp

---

```

Program Example12;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSplit function. }

var
    Path,Name,Ext : string;
begin
    FSplit(ParamStr(1),Path,Name,Ext);
    WriteLn('Splitted ',ParamStr(1), ' in: ');
    WriteLn('Path      : ',Path);
    WriteLn('Name       : ',Name);
    WriteLn('Extension : ',Ext);
end.

```

---

### 5.9.16 GetCBreak

Synopsis: Get control-Break flag

Declaration: `procedure GetCBreak(var breakvalue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: GetCBreak gets the status of CTRL-Break checking under dos and Amiga. When BreakValue is false, then dos only checks for the CTRL-Break key-press when I/O is performed. When it is set to True, then a check is done at every system call.

**Remark:** Under non-dos and non-Amiga operating systems, BreakValue always returns True.

Errors: None

See also: SetCBreak ([439](#))

### 5.9.17 GetDate

Synopsis: Get the current date

Declaration: `procedure GetDate(var year: Word; var month: Word; var mday: Word;  
var wday: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: GetDate returns the system's date. Year is a number in the range 1980..2099. mday is the day of the month, wday is the day of the week, starting with Sunday as day 0.

Errors: None.

See also: GetTime (437), SetDate (440)

**Listing:** ./dosex/ex2.pp

---

```

Program Example2;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetDate function. }

const
  DayStr: array [0..6] of string [3] = ( 'Sun', 'Mon', 'Tue', 'Wed', 'Thu', 'Fri', 'Sat' );
  MonthStr: array [1..12] of string [3] = ( 'Jan', 'Feb', 'Mar', 'Apr', 'May', 'Jun',
                                             'Jul', 'Aug', 'Sep', 'Oct', 'Nov', 'Dec' );

var
  Year, Month, Day, WDay : word;
begin
  GetDate (Year, Month, Day, WDay);
  WriteLn ( 'Current date' );
  WriteLn ( DayStr [WDay], ' ', ' ', Day, ' ', ' ', MonthStr [Month], ' ', ' ', Year, ' ' );
end.

```

---

### 5.9.18 GetEnv

Synopsis: Get environment variable by name.

Declaration: `function GetEnv(envvar: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: Getenv returns the value of the environment variable EnvVar. When there is no environment variable EnvVar defined, an empty string is returned.

**Remark:** Under some operating systems (such as unix), case is important when looking for EnvVar.

Errors: None.

See also: EnvCount (428), EnvStr (428)

**Listing:** ./dosex/ex14.pp

---

```

Program Example14;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function. }

begin

```

---

```
WriteLn( 'Current PATH is ',GetEnv( 'PATH' ));
end.
```

---

### 5.9.19 GetFAttr

Synopsis: Get file attributes

Declaration: `procedure GetFAttr(var f; var attr: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: GetFAttr returns the file attributes of the file-variable `f`. `f` can be a untyped or typed file, or of type `Text`. `f` must have been assigned, but not opened. The attributes can be examined with the following constants :

- ReadOnly
- Hidden
- SysFile
- VolumeId
- Directory
- Archive

Under linux, supported attributes are:

- Directory
- ReadOnly if the current process doesn't have access to the file.
- Hidden for files whose name starts with a dot ( `'.'` ).

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: SetFAttr ([440](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex8.pp`

---

```
Program Example8;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetFAttr function. }

var
  Attr : Word;
  f    : File;
begin
  Assign(f,ParamStr(1));
  GetFAttr(f, Attr);
  WriteLn( 'File ',ParamStr(1), ' has attribute ',Attr);
  if (Attr and archive)<>0 then WriteLn( ' - Archive ');
  if (Attr and directory)<>0 then WriteLn( ' - Directory ');
  if (Attr and readonly)<>0 then WriteLn( ' - Read-Only ');
  if (Attr and sysfile)<>0 then WriteLn( ' - System ');
  if (Attr and hidden)<>0 then WriteLn( ' - Hidden ');
end.
```

---

### 5.9.20 GetFTime

Synopsis: Get file last modification time.

Declaration: `procedure GetFTime(var f; var time: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: GetFTime returns the modification time of a file. This time is encoded and must be decoded with UnPackTime. F must be a file type, which has been assigned, and opened.

Errors: Errors are reported in DosError

See also: SetFTime (441), PackTime (439), UnPackTime (442)

**Listing:** ./dosex/ex9.pp

---

```

Program Example9;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetFTime function. }

Function L0(w: word): string;
var
  s : string;
begin
  Str(w,s);
  if w<10 then
    L0:= '0'+s
  else
    L0:=s;
end;

var
  f      : File;
  Time   : Longint;
  DT     : DateTime;
begin
  if Paramcount>0 then
    Assign(f, ParamStr(1))
  else
    Assign(f, 'ex9.pp' );
  Reset(f);
  GetFTime(f, Time);
  Close(f);
  UnPackTime(Time, DT);
  Write ( 'File ', ParamStr(1), ' is last modified on ');
  Writeln ( L0(DT.Month), '-', L0(DT.Day), '-', DT.Year,
            ' at ', L0(DT.Hour), ': ', L0(DT.Min));
end.

```

---

### 5.9.21 GetIntVec

Synopsis: Get interrupt vector

Declaration: `procedure GetIntVec(intno: Byte; var vector: pointer)`

Visibility: default



Description: `GetIntVec` returns the address of interrupt vector `IntNo`.

**Remark:** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only. Modern systems do not allow low level access to the hardware.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetIntVec` ([441](#))

### 5.9.22 GetLongName

Synopsis: Get the long filename of a DOS 8.3 filename.

Declaration: `function GetLongName(var p: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: This function is only implemented in the GO32V2 version of Free Pascal.

`GetLongName` changes the filename `p` to a long filename if the dos call to do this is successful. The resulting string is the long file name corresponding to the short filename `p`.

The function returns `True` if the dos call was successful, `False` otherwise.

This function should only be necessary when using the DOS extender under Windows 95 and higher.

Errors: If the dos call was not successful, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetShortName` ([436](#))

### 5.9.23 GetMsCount

Synopsis: Number of milliseconds since a starting point.

Declaration: `function GetMsCount : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMsCount` returns a number of milliseconds elapsed since a certain moment in time. This moment in time is implementation dependent. This function is used for timing purposes: Subtracting the results of 2 subsequent calls to this function returns the number of milliseconds elapsed between the two calls.

This call is not very reliable, it is recommended to use some system specific calls for timings.

See also: `GetTime` ([437](#))

### 5.9.24 GetShortName

Synopsis: Get the short (8.3) filename of a long filename.

Declaration: `function GetShortName(var p: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: This function is only implemented in the GO32V2 version of Free Pascal.

`GetShortName` changes the filename `p` to a short filename if the dos call to do this is successful. The resulting string is the short file name corresponding to the long filename `p`.

The function returns `True` if the dos call was successful, `False` otherwise.

This function should only be necessary when using the DOS extender under Windows 95 and higher.

Errors: If the dos call was not successful, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetLongName` ([436](#))

### 5.9.25 GetTime

Synopsis: Return the current time

Declaration: `procedure GetTime(var hour: Word; var minute: Word; var second: Word; var sec100: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTime` returns the system's time. Hour is on a 24-hour time scale. `sec100` is in hundredth of a second.

**Remark:** Certain operating systems (such as Amiga), always set the `sec100` field to zero.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDate` ([433](#)), `SetTime` ([441](#))

**Listing:** `./dosex/ex3.pp`

---

```

Program Example3;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetTime function. }

Function L0(w: word): string;
var
  s : string;
begin
  Str(w, s);
  if w < 10 then
    L0 := '0' + s
  else
    L0 := s;
end;

var
  Hour, Min, Sec, HSec : word;
begin
  GetTime(Hour, Min, Sec, HSec);
  WriteLn('Current time ');
  WriteLn(L0(Hour), ': ', L0(Min), ': ', L0(Sec));
end.

```

---

### 5.9.26 GetVerify

Synopsis: Get verify flag

Declaration: `procedure GetVerify(var verify: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetVerify` returns the status of the verify flag under dos. When `Verify` is `True`, then dos checks data which are written to disk, by reading them after writing. If `Verify` is `False`, then data written to disk are not verified.

**Remark:** Under non-dos systems (excluding os/2 applications running under vanilla DOS), `Verify` is always `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetVerify` ([441](#))

### 5.9.27 Intr

Synopsis: Execute interrupt

Declaration: `procedure Intr(intno: Byte; var regs: Registers)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Intr` executes a software interrupt number `IntNo` (must be between 0 and 255), with processor registers set to `Regs`. After the interrupt call returned, the processor registers are saved in `Regs`.

**Remark:** Under non-dos operating systems, this call does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `MSDos` ([438](#))

### 5.9.28 Keep

Synopsis: Terminate and stay resident.

Declaration: `procedure Keep(exitcode: Word)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Keep` terminates the program, but stays in memory. This is used for TSR (Terminate Stay Resident) programs which catch some interrupt. `ExitCode` is the same parameter as the `Halt` function takes.

**Remark:** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

### 5.9.29 MSdos

Synopsis: Execute MS-DOS system call

Declaration: `procedure MSdos(var regs: Registers)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `MSdos` executes an operating system call. This is the same as doing a `Intr` call with the interrupt number for an os call.

**Remark:** Under non-dos operating systems, this call does nothing. On DOS systems, this calls interrupt \$21.

Errors: None.

See also: `Intr` ([438](#))

### 5.9.30 PackTime

Synopsis: Pack DateTime value to a packed-time format.

Declaration: `procedure PackTime(var t: DateTime; var p: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: UnPackTime converts the date and time specified in T to a packed-time format which can be fed to SetFTime.

Errors: None.

See also: SetFTime ([441](#)), FindFirst ([430](#)), FindNext ([431](#)), UnPackTime ([442](#))

**Listing:** ./dosex/ex4.pp

---

```

Program Example4;
uses Dos;

{ Program to demonstrate the PackTime and UnPackTime functions. }

var
  DT   : DateTime;
  Time : longint;
begin
  with DT do
    begin
      Year:=1998;
      Month:=11;
      Day:=11;
      Hour:=11;
      Min:=11;
      Sec:=11;
    end;
    PackTime(DT, Time);
    WriteLn('Packed Time : ', Time);
    UnPackTime(Time, DT);
    WriteLn('Unpacked Again: ');
    with DT do
      begin
        WriteLn('Year   ', Year);
        WriteLn('Month  ', Month);
        WriteLn('Day    ', Day);
        WriteLn('Hour   ', Hour);
        WriteLn('Min    ', Min);
        WriteLn('Sec    ', Sec);
      end;
    end.

```

---

### 5.9.31 SetCBreak

Synopsis: Set Control-Break flag status

Declaration: `procedure SetCBreak(breakvalue: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** SetCBreak sets the status of CTRL-Break checking. When BreakValue is false, then dos only checks for the CTRL-Break key-press when I/O is performed. When it is set to True, then a check is done at every system call.

**Remark:** Under non-dos and non-Amiga operating systems, this call does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: GetCBreak ([432](#))

### 5.9.32 SetDate

**Synopsis:** Set system date

**Declaration:** `procedure SetDate(year: Word; month: Word; day: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SetDate sets the system's internal date. Year is a number between 1980 and 2099.

**Remark:** On a unix machine, there must be root privileges, otherwise this routine will do nothing. On other unix systems, this call currently does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: GetDate ([433](#)), SetTime ([441](#))

### 5.9.33 SetFAttr

**Synopsis:** Set file attributes

**Declaration:** `procedure SetFAttr(var f; attr: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SetFAttr sets the file attributes of the file-variable F. F can be a untyped or typed file, or of type Text. F must have been assigned, but not opened. The attributes can be a sum of the following constants:

- ReadOnly
- Hidden
- SysFile
- VolumeId
- Directory
- Archive

**Remark:** Under unix like systems (such as linux and BeOS) the call exists, but is not implemented, i.e. it does nothing.

Errors: Errors are reported in DosError.

See also: GetFAttr ([434](#))

### 5.9.34 SetFTime

Synopsis: Set file modification time.

Declaration: `procedure SetFTime(var f; time: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetFTime` sets the modification time of a file, this time is encoded and must be encoded with `PackTime`. `F` must be a file type, which has been assigned, and opened.

**Remark:** Under unix like systems (such as linux and BeOS) the call exists, but is not implemented, i.e. it does nothing.

Errors: Errors are reported in `DosError`

See also: `GetFTime` ([435](#)), `PackTime` ([439](#)), `UnPackTime` ([442](#))

### 5.9.35 SetIntVec

Synopsis: Set interrupt vector

Declaration: `procedure SetIntVec(intno: Byte; vector: pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetIntVec` sets interrupt vector `IntNo` to `Vector`. `Vector` should point to an interrupt procedure.

**Remark:** This call does nothing, it is present for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetIntVec` ([435](#))

### 5.9.36 SetTime

Synopsis: Set system time

Declaration: `procedure SetTime(hour: Word; minute: Word; second: Word; sec100: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTime` sets the system's internal clock. The `Hour` parameter is on a 24-hour time scale.

**Remark:** On a linux machine, there must be root privileges, otherwise this routine will do nothing. On other unix systems, this call currently does nothing.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTime` ([437](#)), `SetDate` ([440](#))

### 5.9.37 SetVerify

Synopsis: Set verify flag

Declaration: `procedure SetVerify(verify: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SetVerify` sets the status of the verify flag under dos. When `Verify` is `True`, then dos checks data which are written to disk, by reading them after writing. If `Verify` is `False`, then data written to disk are not verified.

**Remark:** Under non-dos operating systems (excluding os/2 applications running under vanilla dos), `Verify` is always `True`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetVerify` ([441](#))

### 5.9.38 SwapVectors

**Synopsis:** Swap interrupt vectors

**Declaration:** `procedure SwapVectors`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `SwapVectors` swaps the contents of the internal table of interrupt vectors with the current contents of the interrupt vectors. This is called typically in before and after an `Exec` call.

**Remark:** Under certain operating systems, this routine may be implemented as an empty stub.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exec` ([429](#)), `SetIntVec` ([441](#))

### 5.9.39 UnixDateToDt

**Synopsis:** Convert a unix timestamp to a `DateTime` record

**Declaration:** `procedure UnixDateToDt(SecsPast: LongInt; var Dt: DateTime)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `DTToUnixDate` converts the unix timestamp value in `SecsPast` to a `DateTime` representation in `DT`. It is an internal function, implemented on Unix platforms, and should not be used.

Errors: None.

See also: `DTToUnixDate` ([427](#)), `PackTime` ([439](#)), `UnpackTime` ([442](#)), `GetTime` ([437](#)), `SetTime` ([441](#))

### 5.9.40 UnpackTime

**Synopsis:** Unpack packed file time to a `DateTime` value

**Declaration:** `procedure UnpackTime(p: LongInt; var t: DateTime)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `UnPackTime` converts the file-modification time in `p` to a `DateTime` record. The file-modification time can be returned by `GetFTime`, `FindFirst` or `FindNext` calls.

For an example, see `PackTime` ([439](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetFTime` ([435](#)), `FindFirst` ([430](#)), `FindNext` ([431](#)), `PackTime` ([439](#))

### 5.9.41 weekday

Synopsis: Return the day of the week

Declaration: `function weekday(y: LongInt;m: LongInt;d: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WeekDay` returns the day of the week on which the day Y/M/D falls. Sunday is represented by 0, Saturday is 6.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `PackTime` ([439](#)), `UnpackTime` ([442](#)), `GetTime` ([437](#)), `SetTime` ([441](#))



## Chapter 6

# Reference for unit 'dxeload'

### 6.1 Overview

The `dxeload` unit was implemented by Pierre Mueller for dos, it allows to load a DXE file (an object file with 1 entry point) into memory and return a pointer to the entry point.

It exists only for dos.

### 6.2 Procedures and functions

#### 6.2.1 `dxeload`

Synopsis: Load DXE file in memory

Declaration: `function dxeload(filename: String) : pointer`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `dxeload` loads the contents of the file `filename` into memory. It performs the necessary relocations in the object code, and returns then a pointer to the entry point of the code.

For an example, see the `emu387` ([448](#)) unit in the RTL.

Errors: If an error occurs during the load or relocations, `Nil` is returned.

## Chapter 7

# Reference for unit 'dynlibs'

### 7.1 Overview

The Dynlibs unit provides support for dynamically loading shared libraries. It is available only on those platforms that support shared libraries. The functionality available here may only be a part of the functionality available on each separate platform, in the interest of portability.

On unix platforms, using this unit will cause the program to be linked to the C library, as most shared libraries are implemented in C and the dynamical linker too.

### 7.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 7.2.1 Constants

`NilHandle = nil`

Correctly typed Nil handle - returned on error by `LoadLibrary` ([446](#))

#### 7.2.2 Types

`HModule = TLibHandle`

Alias for `TLibHandle` ([445](#)) type.

`TLibHandle = Pointer`

`TLibHandle` should be considered an opaque type. It is defined differently on various platforms. The definition shown here depends on the platform for which the documentation was generated.

### 7.3 Procedures and functions

#### 7.3.1 FreeLibrary

Synopsis: For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Unload a library

Declaration: `function FreeLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeLibrary` provides the same functionality as `UnloadLibrary` (447), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

See also: `UnloadLibrary` (447)

### 7.3.2 GetProcAddress

Synopsis: For compatibility with Delphi/Windows: Get the address of a procedure

Declaration: `function GetProcAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; ProcName: AnsiString) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProcAddress` provides the same functionality as `GetProcedureAddress` (446), and is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

See also: `GetProcedureAddress` (446)

### 7.3.3 GetProcedureAddress

Synopsis: Get the address of a procedure or symbol in a dynamic library.

Declaration: `function GetProcedureAddress(Lib: TLibHandle; ProcName: AnsiString)  
: Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetProcedureAddress` returns a pointer to the location in memory of the symbol `ProcName` in the dynamically loaded library specified by its handle `lib`. If the symbol cannot be found or the handle is invalid, `Nil` is returned.

On Windows, only an exported procedure or function can be searched this way. On Unix platforms the location of any exported symbol can be retrieved this way.

Errors: If the symbol cannot be found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `LoadLibrary` (446), `UnLoadLibrary` (447)

### 7.3.4 LoadLibrary

Synopsis: Load a dynamic library and return a handle to it.

Declaration: `function LoadLibrary(Name: AnsiString) : TLibHandle`

Visibility: default

Description: `LoadLibrary` loads a dynamic library in file `Name` and returns a handle to it. If the library cannot be loaded, `NilHandle` (445) is returned.

No assumptions should be made about the location of the loaded library if a relative pathname is specified. The behaviour is dependent on the platform. Therefore it is best to specify an absolute pathname if possible.

Errors: On error, `NilHandle` (445) is returned.

See also: `UnloadLibrary` (447), `GetProcedureAddress` (446)

### 7.3.5 UnloadLibrary

Synopsis: Unload a previously loaded library

Declaration: `function UnloadLibrary(Lib: TLibHandle) : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `UnloadLibrary` unloads a previously loaded library (specified by the handle `lib`). The call returns `True` if succesful, `False` otherwisa.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

See also: `LoadLibrary` ([446](#)), `GetProcAddress` ([446](#))

## Chapter 8

# Reference for unit 'emu387'

### 8.1 Overview

The `emu387` unit was written by Pierre Mueller for dos. It sets up the coprocessor emulation for FPC under dos. It is not necessary to use this unit on other OS platforms because they either simply do not run on a machine without coprocessor, or they provide the coprocessor emulation themselves.

It shouldn't be necessary to use the function in this unit, it should be enough to place this unit in the `uses` clause of your program to enable the coprocessor emulation under dos. The unit initialization code will try and load the coprocessor emulation code and initialize it.

### 8.2 Procedures and functions

#### 8.2.1 `npxsetup`

Synopsis: Set up coprocessor emulation.

Declaration: `procedure npxsetup(prog_name: String)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `npxsetup` checks whether a coprocessor is found. If not, it loads the file `wmemu387.dxe` into memory and initializes the code in it.

If the environment variable `387` is set to `N`, then the emulation will be loaded, even if there is a coprocessor present. If the variable doesn't exist, or is set to any other value, the unit will try to detect the presence of a coprocessor unit.

The function searches the file `wmemu387.dxe` in the following way:

- 1.If the environment variable `EMU387` is set, then it is assumed to point at the `wmemu387.dxe` file.
- 2.if the environment variable `EMU387` does not exist, then the function will take the path part of `prog_name` and look in that directory for the file `wmemu387.dxe`.

It should never be necessary to call this function, because the initialization code of the unit contains a call to the function with as an argument `paramstr(0)`. This means that you should deliver the file `wmemu387.dxe` together with your program.

Errors: If there is an error, an error message is printed to standard error, and the program is halted, since any floating-point code is bound to fail anyhow.

## Chapter 9

# Reference for unit 'getopts'

### 9.1 Overview

This document describes the GETOPTS unit for Free Pascal. It was written for linux by Michael Van Canneyt. It now also works for all supported platforms.

The getopts unit provides a mechanism to handle command-line options in a structured way, much like the GNU getopts mechanism. It allows you to define the valid options for your program, and the unit will then parse the command-line options for you, and inform you of any errors.

### 9.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 9.2.1 Constants

`EndOfOptions = #255`

Returned by `getopt` ([451](#)), `getlongopts` ([451](#)) to indicate that there are no more options.

`No_Argument = 0`

Specifies that a long option does not take an argument.

`Optional_Argument = 2`

Specifies that a long option optionally takes an argument.

`OptSpecifier : Set of Char = ['-']`

Character indicating an option on the command-line.

`Required_Argument = 1`

Specifies that a long option needs an argument.

Table 9.1: Enumeration values for type Orderings

Value	Explanation
permute	Change command-line options.
require_order	Don't touch the ordering of the command-line options
return_in_order	Return options in the correct order.

### 9.2.2 Types

```
Orderings = (require_order, permute, return_in_order)
```

Command-line ordering options.

```
POption = ^TOption
```

Pointer to TOption (450) record.

```
TOption = record
  Name : String;
  Has_arg : Integer;
  Flag : PChar;
  Value : Char;
end
```

The TOption type is used to communicate the long options to GetLongOpts (451). The Name field is the name of the option. Has\_arg specifies if the option wants an argument, Flag is a pointer to a char, which is set to Value, if it is non-nil.

### 9.2.3 Variables

```
OptArg : String
```

Set to the argument of an option, if the option needs one.

```
OptErr : Boolean
```

Indicates whether getopt ( ) prints error messages.

```
OptInd : LongInt
```

when all options have been processed, optind is the index of the first non-option parameter. This is a read-only variable. Note that it can become equal to paramcount+1.

```
OptOpt : Char
```

In case of an error, contains the character causing the error.

## 9.3 Procedures and functions

### 9.3.1 GetLongOpts

Synopsis: Return next long option.

Declaration: `function GetLongOpts(ShortOpts: String; LongOpts: POption;  
var Longind: LongInt) : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the next option found on the command-line, taking into account long options as well. If no more options are found, returns `EndOfOptions`. If the option requires an argument, it is returned in the `OptArg` variable.

`ShortOptions` is a string containing all possible one-letter options. (see `Getopt` (451) for its description and use) `LongOpts` is a pointer to the first element of an array of `Option` records, the last of which needs a name of zero length.

The function tries to match the names even partially (i.e. `-app` will match e.g. the `append` option), but will report an error in case of ambiguity. If the option needs an argument, set `Has_arg` to `Required_argument`, if the option optionally has an argument, set `Has_arg` to `Optional_argument`. If the option needs no argument, set `Has_arg` to zero.

Required arguments can be specified in two ways :

1. Pasted to the option : `-option=value`
2. As a separate argument : `-option value`

Optional arguments can only be specified through the first method.

Errors: see `Getopt` (451).

See also: `Getopt` (451)

### 9.3.2 GetOpt

Synopsis: Get next short option.

Declaration: `function GetOpt(ShortOpts: String) : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the next option found on the command-line. If no more options are found, returns `EndOfOptions`. If the option requires an argument, it is returned in the `OptArg` variable.

`ShortOptions` is a string containing all possible one-letter options. If a letter is followed by a colon (:), then that option needs an argument. If a letter is followed by 2 colons, the option has an optional argument. If the first character of `shortoptions` is a '+' then options following a non-option are regarded as non-options (standard Unix behavior). If it is a '-', then all non-options are treated as arguments of a option with character #0. This is useful for applications that require their options in the exact order as they appear on the command-line. If the first character of `shortoptions` is none of the above, options and non-options are permuted, so all non-options are behind all options. This allows options and non-options to be in random order on the command line.

Errors: Errors are reported through giving back a '?' character. `OptOpt` then gives the character which caused the error. If `OptErr` is `True` then `getopt` prints an error-message to `stdout`.

See also: `GetLongOpts` (451)



**Listing:** ./optex/optex.pp

---

```

program testopt;

{ Program to depmonstrate the getopt function. }

{
  Valid calls to this program are
  optex --verbose --add me --delete you
  optex --append --create child
  optex -ab -c me -d you
  and so on
}
uses getopt;

var c : char;
    optionindex : Longint;
    theopts : array[1..7] of TOption;

begin
  with theopts[1] do
    begin
      name:= 'add';
      has_arg:=1;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[2] do
    begin
      name:= 'append';
      has_arg:=0;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[3] do
    begin
      name:= 'delete';
      has_arg:=1;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[4] do
    begin
      name:= 'verbose';
      has_arg:=0;
      flag:= nil;
      value:=#0;
    end;
  with theopts[5] do
    begin
      name:= 'create';
      has_arg:=1;
      flag:= nil;
      value:= 'c'
    end;
  with theopts[6] do
    begin
      name:= 'file';
      has_arg:=1;

```

---

```

    flag:=nil;
    value:=#0;
end;
with theopts[7] do
    begin
        name:='';
        has_arg:=0;
        flag:=nil;
    end;
c:=#0;
repeat
    c:=getlongopts('abc:d:012',@theo[1],optionindex);
    case c of
        '1','2','3','4','5','6','7','8','9' :
            begin
                writeln('Got optind : ',c)
            end;
        #0 : begin
                write('Long option : ',theo[optionindex].name);
                if theopts[optionindex].has_arg>0 then
                    writeln(' With value : ',optarg)
                else
                    writeln
                end;
            'a' : writeln('Option a. ');
            'b' : writeln('Option b. ');
            'c' : writeln('Option c : ',optarg);
            'd' : writeln('Option d : ',optarg);
            '?' : writeln('Error with opt : ',optopt);
        end; { case }
    until c=endofoptions;
    if optind<=paramcount then
        begin
            write('Non options : ');
            while optind<=paramcount do
                begin
                    write(paramstr(optind),' ');
                    inc(optind)
                end;
            writeln
        end
    end.

```

---

## Chapter 10

# Reference for unit 'go32'

### 10.1 Real mode callbacks

The callback mechanism can be thought of as the converse of calling a real mode procedure (i.e. interrupt), which allows your program to pass information to a real mode program, or obtain services from it in a manner that's transparent to the real mode program. In order to make a real mode callback available, you must first get the real mode callback address of your procedure and the selector and offset of a register data structure. This real mode callback address (this is a segment:offset address) can be passed to a real mode program via a software interrupt, a dos memory block or any other convenient mechanism. When the real mode program calls the callback (via a far call), the DPMI host saves the registers contents in the supplied register data structure, switches into protected mode, and enters the callback routine with the following settings:

- interrupts disabled
- `%CS : %EIP` = 48 bit pointer specified in the original call to `get_rm_callback` ([472](#))
- `%DS : %ESI` = 48 bit pointer to to real mode `SS : SP`
- `%ES : %EDI` = 48 bit pointer of real mode register data structure.
- `%SS : %ESP` = locked protected mode stack
- All other registers undefined

The callback procedure can then extract its parameters from the real mode register data structure and/or copy parameters from the real mode stack to the protected mode stack. Recall that the segment register fields of the real mode register data structure contain segment or paragraph addresses that are not valid in protected mode. Far pointers passed in the real mode register data structure must be translated to virtual addresses before they can be used with a protected mode program. The callback procedure exits by executing an `IRET` with the address of the real mode register data structure in `%ES : %EDI`, passing information back to the real mode caller by modifying the contents of the real mode register data structure and/or manipulating the contents of the real mode stack. The callback procedure is responsible for setting the proper address for resumption of real mode execution into the real mode register data structure; typically, this is accomplished by extracting the return address from the real mode stack and placing it into the `%CS : %EIP` fields of the real mode register data structure. After the `IRET`, the DPMI host switches the CPU back into real mode, loads ALL registers with the contents of the real mode register data structure, and finally returns control to the real mode program. All variables and code touched by the callback procedure **MUST** be locked to prevent page faults.

See also: `get_rm_callback` ([472](#)), `free_rm_callback` ([468](#)), `lock_code` ([480](#)), `lock_data` ([481](#))

## 10.2 Executing software interrupts

Simply execute a `realintr()` call with the desired interrupt number and the supplied register data structure. But some of these interrupts require you to supply them a pointer to a buffer where they can store data to or obtain data from in memory. These interrupts are real mode functions and so they only can access the first Mb of linear address space, not FPC's data segment. For this reason FPC supplies a pre-initialized dos memory location within the GO32 unit. This buffer is internally used for dos functions too and so it's contents may change when calling other procedures. It's size can be obtained with `tb_size` (490) and it's linear address via `transfer_buffer` (490). Another way is to allocate a completely new dos memory area via the `global_dos_alloc` (477) function for your use and supply its real mode address.

See also: `tb_size` (490), `transfer_buffer` (490), `global_dos_alloc` (477), `global_dos_free` (479), `realintr` (483)

## 10.3 Software interrupts

Ordinarily, a handler installed with `set_pm_interrupt` (487) only services software interrupts that are executed in protected mode; real mode software interrupts can be redirected by `set_rm_interrupt` (488).

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (488), `get_rm_interrupt` (475), `set_pm_interrupt` (487), `get_pm_interrupt` (472), `lock_data` (481), `lock_code` (480), `enable` (467), `disable` (465), `outportb` (482)

## 10.4 Hardware interrupts

Hardware interrupts are generated by hardware devices when something unusual happens; this could be a keypress or a mouse move or any other action. This is done to minimize CPU time, else the CPU would have to check all installed hardware for data in a big loop (this method is called 'polling') and this would take much time. A standard IBM-PC has two interrupt controllers, that are responsible for these hardware interrupts: both allow up to 8 different interrupt sources (IRQs, interrupt requests). The second controller is connected to the first through IRQ 2 for compatibility reasons, e.g. if controller 1 gets an IRQ 2, he hands the IRQ over to controller 2. Because of this up to 15 different hardware interrupt sources can be handled. IRQ 0 through IRQ 7 are mapped to interrupts 8h to Fh and the second controller (IRQ 8 to 15) is mapped to interrupt 70h to 77h. All of the code and data touched by these handlers **MUST** be locked (via the various locking functions) to avoid page faults at interrupt time. Because hardware interrupts are called (as in real mode) with interrupts disabled, the handler has to enable them before it returns to normal program execution. Additionally a hardware interrupt must send an EOI (end of interrupt) command to the responsible controller; this is accomplished by sending the value 20h to port 20h (for the first controller) or A0h (for the second controller). The following example shows how to redirect the keyboard interrupt.

## 10.5 Disabling interrupts

The GO32 unit provides the two procedures `disable()` and `enable()` to disable and enable all interrupts.

## 10.6 Creating your own interrupt handlers

Interrupt redirection with FPC pascal is done via the `set_pm_interrupt()` for protected mode interrupts or via the `set_rm_interrupt()` for real mode interrupts.

## 10.7 Protected mode interrupts vs. Real mode interrupts

As mentioned before, there's a distinction between real mode interrupts and protected mode interrupts; the latter are protected mode programs, while the former must be real mode programs. To call a protected mode interrupt handler, an assembly 'int' call must be issued, while the other is called via the `realintr()` or `intr()` function. Consequently, a real mode interrupt then must either reside in dos memory (<1MB) or the application must allocate a real mode callback address via the `get_rm_callback()` function.

## 10.8 Handling interrupts with DPMI

The interrupt functions are real-mode procedures; they normally can't be called in protected mode without the risk of an protection fault. So the DPMI host creates an interrupt descriptor table for the application. Initially all software interrupts (except for int 31h, 2Fh and 21h function 4Ch) or external hardware interrupts are simply directed to a handler that reflects the interrupt in real-mode, i.e. the DPMI host's default handlers switch the CPU to real-mode, issue the interrupt and switch back to protected mode. The contents of general registers and flags are passed to the real mode handler and the modified registers and flags are returned to the protected mode handler. Segment registers and stack pointer are not passed between modes.

## 10.9 Interrupt redirection

Interrupts are program interruption requests, which in one or another way get to the processor; there's a distinction between software and hardware interrupts. The former are explicitly called by an 'int' instruction and are a bit comparable to normal functions. Hardware interrupts come from external devices like the keyboard or mouse. Functions that handle hardware interrupts are called handlers.

## 10.10 Processor access

These are some functions to access various segment registers (%cs, %ds, %ss) which makes your work a bit easier.

See also: `get_cs` ([468](#)), `get_ds` ([469](#)), `get_ss` ([477](#))

## 10.11 I/O port access

The I/O port access is done via the various `inportb` ([479](#)), `outportb` ([482](#)) functions which are available. Additionally Free Pascal supports the Turbo Pascal `PORT[]`-arrays but it is by no means recommended to use them, because they're only for compatibility purposes.

See also: `outportb` ([482](#)), `inportb` ([479](#))

## 10.12 dos memory access

Dos memory is accessed by the predefined `dosmemselector` selector; the GO32 unit additionally provides some functions to help you with standard tasks, like copying memory from heap to dos memory and the likes. Because of this it is strongly recommended to use them, but you are still free

to use the provided standard memory accessing functions which use 48 bit pointers. The third, but only thought for compatibility purposes, is using the `mem[ ]`-arrays. These arrays map the whole 1 Mb dos space. They shouldn't be used within new programs. To convert a segment:offset real mode address to a protected mode linear address you have to multiply the segment by 16 and add its offset. This linear address can be used in combination with the `DOSMEMSELECTOR` variable.

See also: `dosmemget` (459), `dosmemput` (459), `dosmemmove` (459), `dosmemfillchar` (458), `dosmemfillword` (458), `seg_move` (486), `seg_fillchar` (484), `seg_fillword` (485)

### 10.13 FPC specialities

The `%ds` and `%es` selector MUST always contain the same value or some system routines may crash when called. The `%fs` selector is preloaded with the `DOSMEMSELECTOR` variable at startup, and it MUST be restored after use, because again FPC relies on this for some functions. Luckily we asm programmers can still use the `%gs` selector for our own purposes, but for how long ?

See also: `get_cs` (468), `get_ds` (469), `get_ss` (477), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461), `free_ldt_descriptor` (467), `segment_to_descriptor` (484), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (471), `get_segment_base_address` (476), `set_segment_base_address` (488), `set_segment_limit` (489), `create_code_segment_alias_descriptor` (465)

### 10.14 Selectors and descriptors

Descriptors are a bit like real mode segments; they describe (as the name implies) a memory area in protected mode. A descriptor contains information about segment length, its base address and the attributes of it (i.e. type, access rights, ...). These descriptors are stored internally in a so-called descriptor table, which is basically an array of such descriptors. Selectors are roughly an index into this table. Because these 'segments' can be up to 4 GB in size, 32 bits aren't sufficient anymore to describe a single memory location like in real mode. 48 bits are now needed to do this, a 32 bit address and a 16 bit sized selector. The GO32 unit provides the `tseginfo` record to store such a pointer. But due to the fact that most of the time data is stored and accessed in the `%ds` selector, FPC assumes that all pointers point to a memory location of this selector. So a single pointer is still only 32 bits in size. This value represents the offset from the data segment base address to this memory location.

### 10.15 What is DPMI

The dos Protected Mode Interface helps you with various aspects of protected mode programming. These are roughly divided into descriptor handling, access to dos memory, management of interrupts and exceptions, calls to real mode functions and other stuff. Additionally it automatically provides swapping to disk for memory intensive applications. A DPMI host (either a Windows dos box or `CWSDPMI.EXE`) provides these functions for your programs.

### 10.16 Overview

This document describes the GO32 unit for the Free Pascal compiler under dos. It was donated by Thomas Schatzl (`tom_at_work@geocities.com`), for which my thanks. This unit was first written for dos by Florian Klaempfl.

Only the GO32V2 DPMI mode is discussed by me here due to the fact that new applications shouldn't be created with the older GO32V1 model. The go32v2 version is much more advanced and better. Additionally a lot of functions only work in DPMI mode anyway. I hope the following explanations and introductions aren't too confusing at all. If you notice an error or bug send it to the FPC mailing list or directly to me. So let's get started and happy and error free coding I wish you.... Thomas Schatzl, 25. August 1998

## 10.17 Constants, types and variables

### 10.17.1 Constants

```
auxcarryflag = $010
```

Check for auxiliary carry flag in `trealregs` ([461](#))

```
carryflag = $001
```

Check for carry flag in `trealregs` ([461](#))

```
directionflag = $400
```

Check for direction flag in `trealregs` ([461](#))

```
dosmemfillchar : procedure(seg: Word;ofs: Word;count: LongInt;c: Char) = @dpmi_dosmemfillchar
```

Sets a region of dos memory to a specific byte value.

Parameters:

**seg** real mode segment.

**ofs** real mode offset.

**count** number of bytes to set.

**c** value to set memory to.

Notes: No range check is performed.

```
dosmemfillword : procedure(seg: Word;ofs: Word;count: LongInt;w: Word) = @dpmi_dosmemfillword
```

Sets a region of dos memory to a specific word value.

Parameters:

**seg** real mode segment.

**ofs** real mode offset.

**count** number of words to set.

**w** value to set memory to.

Notes: No range check is performed.

```
dosmemget : procedure(seg: Word;ofs: Word;var data;count: LongInt) = @dpmi_dosmemget
```

Copies data from the dos memory onto the heap.

Parameters:

**seg** source real mode segment.

**ofs** source real mode offset.

**data** destination.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range checking is performed.

For an example, see [global\\_dos\\_alloc \(477\)](#).

```
dosmemmove : procedure(sseg: Word;sofs: Word;dseg: Word;dofs: Word;count: LongInt) =
```

Copies count bytes of data between two dos real mode memory locations.

Parameters:

**sseg** source real mode segment.

**sofs** source real mode offset.

**dseg** destination real mode segment.

**dofs** destination real mode offset.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range check is performed in any way.

```
dosmemput : procedure(seg: Word;ofs: Word;var data;count: LongInt) = @dpmi_dosmemput
```

Copies heap data to dos real mode memory.

Parameters:

**seg** destination real mode segment.

**ofs** destination real mode offset.

**data** source.

**count** number of bytes to copy.

Notes: No range checking is performed.

For an example, see [global\\_dos\\_alloc \(477\)](#).

```
interruptflag = $200
```

Check for interrupt flag in [trealregs \(461\)](#)

```
overflowflag = $800
```



Check for overflow flag in `trealregs` (461)

```
parityflag = $004
```

Check for parity flag in `trealregs` (461)

```
rm_dpml = 4
```

`get_run_mode` (476) return value: DPMI (e.g. dos box or 386Max)

```
rm_raw = 1
```

`get_run_mode` (476) return value: raw (without HIMEM)

```
rm_unknown = 0
```

`get_run_mode` (476) return value: Unknown runmode

```
rm_vcpi = 3
```

`get_run_mode` (476) return value: VCPI (with HIMEM and EMM386)

```
rm_xms = 2
```

`get_run_mode` (476) return value: XMS (with HIMEM, without EMM386)

```
signflag = $080
```

Check for sign flag in `trealregs` (461)

```
trapflag = $100
```

Check for trap flag in `trealregs` (461)

```
zeroflag = $040
```

Check for zero flag in `trealregs` (461)

### 10.17.2 Types

```
registers = trealregs
```

Alias for `trealregs` (461)

```
tmeminfo = record
  available_memory : LongInt;
  available_pages : LongInt;
  available_lockable_pages : LongInt;
  linear_space : LongInt;
  unlocked_pages : LongInt;
  available_physical_pages : LongInt;
```

```

total_physical_pages : LongInt;
free_linear_space : LongInt;
max_pages_in_paging_file : LongInt;
reserved0 : LongInt;
reserved1 : LongInt;
reserved2 : LongInt;
end

```

`tmeminfo` Holds information about the memory allocation, etc.

*NOTE:* The value of a field is -1 (0ffffffh) if the value is unknown, it's only guaranteed, that `available_memory` contains a valid value. The size of the pages can be determined by the `get_page_size()` function.

```

trealregs = record
end

```

The `trealregs` type contains the data structure to pass register values to a interrupt handler or real mode callback.

```

tseginfo = record
    offset : pointer;
    segment : Word;
end

```

This record is used to store a full 48-bit pointer. This may be either a protected mode selector:offset address or in real mode a segment:offset address, depending on application.

See also: Selectors and descriptors, dos memory access, Interrupt redirection

### 10.17.3 Variables

```

dosmemselector : Word

```

Selector to the dos memory. The whole dos memory is automatically mapped to this single descriptor at startup. This selector is the recommended way to access dos memory.

```

int31error : Word

```

This variable holds the result of a DPMI interrupt call. Any nonzero value must be treated as a critical failure.

## 10.18 Procedures and functions

### 10.18.1 `allocate_ldt_descriptors`

Synopsis: Allocate a number of descriptors

Declaration: `function allocate_ldt_descriptors(count: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Allocates a number of new descriptors.

Parameters:

**count:** \ specifies the number of requested unique descriptors.

Return value: The base selector.

**Remark:** Notes: The descriptors allocated must be initialized by the application with other function calls. This function returns descriptors with a limit and size value set to zero. If more than one descriptor was requested, the function returns a base selector referencing the first of a contiguous array of descriptors. The selector values for subsequent descriptors in the array can be calculated by adding the value returned by the `get_next_selector_increment_value` (471) function.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `free_ldt_descriptor` (467), `get_next_selector_increment_value` (471), `segment_to_descriptor` (484), `create_code_segment_alias_descriptor` (465), `set_segment_limit` (489), `set_segment_base_address` (488)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/seldes.pp`

---

```
{ $mode delphi }
uses
    crt ,
    go32;

const
    maxx = 80;
    maxy = 25;
    bytespercell = 2;
    screensize = maxx * maxy * bytespercell;

    linB8000 = $B800 * 16;

type
    string80 = string[80];

var
    text_save : array[0..screensize-1] of byte;
    text_oldx , text_oldy : Word;

    text_sel : Word;

procedure status(s : string80);
begin
    gotoxy(1, 1); clreol; write(s); readkey;
end;

procedure selinfo(sel : Word);
begin
    gotoxy(1, 24);
    clreol; writeln('Descriptor base address : $',
        hexstr(get_segment_base_address(sel), 8));
    clreol; write('Descriptor limit : ', get_segment_limit(sel));
end;

function makechar(ch : char; color : byte) : Word;
```

---

```

begin
    result := byte(ch) or (color shl 8);
end;

begin
    seg_move(dosmemselector, linB8000, get_ds, longint(@text_save),
        screensize);
    text_oldx := wherex; text_oldy := wherey;
    seg_fillword(dosmemselector, linB8000, screensize div 2,
        makechar(' ', Black or (Black shl 4)));
    status('Creating selector ''text_sel'' to a part of ' +
        'text screen memory');
    text_sel := allocate_ldt_descriptors(1);
    set_segment_base_address(text_sel,
        linB8000 + bytespercell * maxx * 1);
    set_segment_limit(text_sel, screensize - 1 - bytespercell *
        maxx * 3);
    selinfo(text_sel);

    status('and clearing entire memory selected by ''text_sel'' +
        ' descriptor');
    seg_fillword(text_sel, 0, (get_segment_limit(text_sel)+1) div 2,
        makechar(' ', LightBlue shl 4));

    status('Notice that only the memory described by the ' +
        ' descriptor changed, nothing else');

    status('Now reducing it''s limit and base and setting it''s ' +
        'described memory');
    set_segment_base_address(text_sel,
        get_segment_base_address(text_sel) + bytespercell * maxx);
    set_segment_limit(text_sel,
        get_segment_limit(text_sel) - bytespercell * maxx * 2);
    selinfo(text_sel);
    status('Notice that the base addr increased by one line but ' +
        'the limit decreased by 2 lines');
    status('This should give you the hint that the limit is ' +
        'relative to the base');
    seg_fillword(text_sel, 0, (get_segment_limit(text_sel)+1) div 2,
        makechar(#176, LightMagenta or Brown shl 4));

    status('Now let''s get crazy and copy 10 lines of data from ' +
        'the previously saved screen');
    seg_move(get_ds, longint(@text_save), text_sel,
        maxx * bytespercell * 2, maxx * bytespercell * 10);

    status('At last freeing the descriptor and restoring the old ' +
        ' screen contents..');
    status('I hope this little program may give you some hints on ' +
        'working with descriptors');
    free_ldt_descriptor(text_sel);
    seg_move(get_ds, longint(@text_save), dosmemselector,
        linB8000, screensize);
    gotoxy(text_oldx, text_oldy);
end.

```

---

### 10.18.2 allocate\_memory\_block

Synopsis: Allocate a block of linear memory

Declaration: `function allocate_memory_block(size: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Allocates a block of linear memory.

Parameters:

**size:**Size of requested linear memory block in bytes.

Returned values: blockhandle - the memory handle to this memory block. Linear address of the requested memory.

**Remark:** *warning* According to my DPMI docs this function is not implemented correctly. Normally you should also get a blockhandle to this block after successful operation. This handle can then be used to free the memory block afterwards or use this handle for other purposes. Since the function isn't implemented correctly, and doesn't return a blockhandle, the block can't be deallocated and is hence unusable ! This function doesn't allocate any descriptors for this block, it's the applications responsibility to allocate and initialize for accessing this memory.

Errors: Check the int31error (461) variable.

See also: free\_memory\_block (467)

### 10.18.3 copyfromdos

Synopsis: Copy data from DOS to to heap

Declaration: `procedure copyfromdos(var addr;len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data from the pre-allocated dos memory transfer buffer to the heap.

Parameters:

**addr**data to copy to.

**len**number of bytes to copy to heap.

Notes: Can only be used in conjunction with the dos memory transfer buffer.

Errors: Check the int31error (461) variable.

See also: tb\_size (490), transfer\_buffer (490), copytodos (464)

### 10.18.4 copytodos

Synopsis: Copy data from heap to DOS memory

Declaration: `procedure copytodos(var addr;len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data from heap to the pre-allocated dos memory buffer.

Parameters:

**addr**data to copy from.

**len**number of bytes to copy to dos memory buffer.

Notes: This function fails if you try to copy more bytes than the transfer buffer is in size. It can only be used in conjunction with the transfer buffer.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `tb_size` (490), `transfer_buffer` (490), `copyfromdos` (464)

### 10.18.5 `create_code_segment_alias_descriptor`

Synopsis: Create new descriptor from existing descriptor

Declaration: `function create_code_segment_alias_descriptor(seg: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Creates a new descriptor that has the same base and limit as the specified descriptor.

Parameters:

**seg**Descriptor.

Return values: The data selector (alias).

Notes: In effect, the function returns a copy of the descriptor. The descriptor alias returned by this function will not track changes to the original descriptor. In other words, if an alias is created with this function, and the base or limit of the original segment is then changed, the two descriptors will no longer map the same memory.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461), `set_segment_limit` (489), `set_segment_base_address` (488)

### 10.18.6 `disable`

Synopsis: Disable hardware interrupts

Declaration: `procedure disable`

Visibility: default

Description: Disables all hardware interrupts by execution a CLI instruction.

Errors: None.

See also: `enable` (467)

### 10.18.7 `dpmi_dosmemfillchar`

Synopsis: Fill DOS memory with a character

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemfillchar(seg: Word;ofs: Word;count: LongInt;  
c: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` fills the DOS memory region indicated by `seg,ofs` with `count` characters `c`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempur` (466), `dpmi_dosmemget` (466), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (466), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (466)

**10.18.8 dpmi\_dosmemfillword**

Synopsis: Fill DOS memory with a word value

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemfillword(seg: Word;ofs: Word;count: LongInt;  
w: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemfillword` fills the DOS memory region indicated by `seg,ofs` with `count` words `W`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempout` (466), `dpmi_dosmemget` (466), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (465), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (466)

**10.18.9 dpmi\_dosmemget**

Synopsis: Move data from DOS memory to DPMI memory

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemget(seg: Word;ofs: Word;var data;count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmempout` moves `count` bytes of data from the DOS memory location indicated by `seg` and `ofs` to DPMI memory indicated by `data`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempout` (466), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (466), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (465), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (466)

**10.18.10 dpmi\_dosmemmove**

Synopsis: Move DOS memory

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmemmove(sseg: Word;sofs: Word;dseg: Word;dofs: Word;  
count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmemmove` moves `count` bytes from DOS memory `sseg,sofs` to `dseg,dofs`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmempout` (466), `dpmi_dosmemget` (466), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (465), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (466)

**10.18.11 dpmi\_dosmempout**

Synopsis: Move data from DPMI memory to DOS memory.

Declaration: `procedure dpmi_dosmempout(seg: Word;ofs: Word;var data;count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `dpmi_dosmempout` moves `count` bytes of data from `data` to the DOS memory location indicated by `seg` and `ofs`.

See also: `dpmi_dosmemget` (466), `dpmi_dosmemmove` (466), `dpmi_dosmemfillchar` (465), `dpmi_dosmemfillword` (466)

**10.18.12 enable**

Synopsis: Enable hardware interrupts

Declaration: `procedure enable`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Enables all hardware interrupts by executing a STI instruction.

Errors: None.

See also: `disable` ([465](#))

**10.18.13 free\_ldt\_descriptor**

Synopsis: Free a descriptor

Declaration: `function free_ldt_descriptor(d: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Frees a previously allocated descriptor.

Parameters:

**d** The descriptor to be freed.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise. Notes: After this call this selector is invalid and must not be used for any memory operations anymore. Each descriptor allocated with `allocate_ldt_descriptors` ([461](#)) must be freed individually with this function, even if it was previously allocated as a part of a contiguous array of descriptors.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` ([461](#)).

Errors: Check the `int31error` ([461](#)) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` ([461](#)), `get_next_selector_increment_value` ([471](#))

**10.18.14 free\_memory\_block**

Synopsis: Free allocated memory block

Declaration: `function free_memory_block(blockhandle: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Frees a previously allocated memory block.

Parameters:

**blockhandle** the handle to the memory area to free.

Return value: `True` if successful, `false` otherwise. Notes: Frees memory that was previously allocated with `allocate_memory_block` ([464](#)) . This function doesn't free any descriptors mapped to this block, it's the application's responsibility.

Errors: Check `int31error` ([461](#)) variable.

See also: `allocate_memory_block` ([464](#))



**10.18.15 free\_rm\_callback**

Synopsis: Release real mode callback.

Declaration: `function free_rm_callback(var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Releases a real mode callback address that was previously allocated with the `get_rm_callback` (472) function.

Parameters:

**intaddr** real mode address buffer returned by `get_rm_callback` (472) .

Return values: True if successful, False if not

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (472).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (488), `get_rm_callback` (472)

**10.18.16 get\_cs**

Synopsis: Get CS selector

Declaration: `function get_cs : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the cs selector.

Return value: The content of the cs segment register.

For an example, see `set_pm_interrupt` (487).

Errors: None.

See also: `get_ds` (469), `get_ss` (477)

**10.18.17 get\_descriptor\_access\_right**

Synopsis: Get descriptor's access rights

Declaration: `function get_descriptor_access_right(d: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Gets the access rights of a descriptor.

Parameters:

**d** selector to descriptor.

Return value: Access rights bit field.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `set_descriptor_access_right` (486)

**10.18.18 get\_ds**

Synopsis: Get DS Selector

Declaration: `function get_ds : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the ds selector.

Return values: The content of the ds segment register.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_cs` (468), `get_ss` (477)

**10.18.19 get\_exception\_handler**

Synopsis: Return current exception handler

Declaration: `function get_exception_handler(e: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_exception_handler` returns the exception handler for exception E in intaddr. It returns True if the call was successful, False if not.

See also: `set_exception_handler` (486), `get_pm_exception_handler` (472)

**10.18.20 get\_linear\_addr**

Synopsis: Convert physical to linear address

Declaration: `function get_linear_addr(phys_addr: LongInt; size: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a physical address into a linear address.

Parameters:

**phys\_addr** physical address of device.

**size** Size of region to map in bytes.

Return value: Linear address that can be used to access the physical memory. Notes: It's the applications responsibility to allocate and set up a descriptor for access to the memory. This function shouldn't be used to map real mode addresses.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461), `set_segment_limit` (489), `set_segment_base_address` (488)

**10.18.21 get\_meminfo**

Synopsis: Return information on the available memory

Declaration: `function get_meminfo(var meminfo: tmeminfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns information about the amount of available physical memory, linear address space, and disk space for page swapping.

Parameters:

**meminfo**buffer to fill memory information into.

Return values: Due to an implementation bug this function always returns `False`, but it always succeeds.

**Remark:** Notes: Only the first field of the returned structure is guaranteed to contain a valid value. Any fields that are not supported by the DPMI host will be set by the host to `-1` (`0FFFFFFFFH`) to indicate that the information is not available. The size of the pages used by the DPMI host can be obtained with the `get_page_size` (471) function.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `get_page_size` (471)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/meminfo.pp`

---

```

uses
    go32;

var
    meminfo : tmeminfo;

begin
    get_meminfo(meminfo);
    if (int31error <> 0) then begin
        Writeln('Error getting DPMI memory information... Halting');
        Writeln('DPMI error number : ', int31error);
    end else begin
        with meminfo do begin
            Writeln('Largest available free block : ',
                available_memory div 1024, ' kbytes');
            if (available_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Maximum available unlocked pages : ',
                    available_pages);
            if (available_lockable_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Maximum lockable available pages : ',
                    available_lockable_pages);
            if (linear_space <> -1) then
                Writeln('Linear address space size : ',
                    linear_space*get_page_size div 1024, ' kbytes');
            if (unlocked_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Total number of unlocked pages : ',
                    unlocked_pages);
            if (available_physical_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Total number of free pages : ',
                    available_physical_pages);
            if (total_physical_pages <> -1) then
                Writeln('Total number of physical pages : ',

```

```

                                total_physical_pages);
    if (free_linear_space <> -1) then
        WriteLn('Free linear address space : ',
                free_linear_space*get_page_size div 1024,
                ' kbytes');
    if (max_pages_in_paging_file <> -1) then
        WriteLn('Maximum size of paging file : ',
                max_pages_in_paging_file*get_page_size div 1024,
                ' kbytes');
    end;
end;
end.
```

---

### 10.18.22 get\_next\_selector\_increment\_value

Synopsis: Return selector increment value

Declaration: function get\_next\_selector\_increment\_value : Word

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the selector increment value when allocating multiple subsequent descriptors via allocate\_ldt\_descriptors (461).

Return value: Selector increment value.

**Remark:** Notes: Because allocate\_ldt\_descriptors (461) only returns the selector for the first descriptor and so the value returned by this function can be used to calculate the selectors for subsequent descriptors in the array.

Errors: Check the int31error (461) variable.

See also: allocate\_ldt\_descriptors (461), free\_ldt\_descriptor (467)

### 10.18.23 get\_page\_size

Synopsis: Return the page size

Declaration: function get\_page\_size : LongInt

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the size of a single memory page.

Return value: Size of a single page in bytes.

**Remark:** The returned size is typically 4096 bytes.

For an example, see get\_meminfo (470).

Errors: Check the int31error (461) variable.

See also: get\_meminfo (470)

### 10.18.24 `get_pm_exception_handler`

Synopsis: Get protected mode exception handler

Declaration: `function get_pm_exception_handler(e: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_pm_exception_handler` returns the protected mode exception handler for exception `E` in `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `get_exception_handler` (469), `set_pm_exception_handler` (487)

### 10.18.25 `get_pm_interrupt`

Synopsis: Return protected mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function get_pm_interrupt(vector: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the address of a current protected mode interrupt handler.

Parameters:

**vector** interrupt handler number you want the address to.

**intaddr** buffer to store address.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` if not.

**Remark:** The returned address is a protected mode selector:offset address.

For an example, see `set_pm_interrupt` (487).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `set_pm_interrupt` (487), `set_rm_interrupt` (488), `get_rm_interrupt` (475)

### 10.18.26 `get_rm_callback`

Synopsis: Return real mode callback

Declaration: `function get_rm_callback(pm_func: pointer; const reg: trealregs; var rmcb: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a unique real mode `segment:offset` address, known as a "real mode callback," that will transfer control from real mode to a protected mode procedure.

Parameters:

**pm\_func** pointer to the protected mode callback function.

**reg** supplied registers structure.

**rmcb** buffer to real mode address of callback function.

Return values: True if successful, otherwise False.

**Remark:** Callback addresses obtained with this function can be passed by a protected mode program for example to an interrupt handler, device driver, or TSR, so that the real mode program can call procedures within the protected mode program or notify the protected mode program of an event. The contents of the supplied regs structure is not valid after function call, but only at the time of the actual callback.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `free_rm_callback` (468)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/callback.pp`

---

```
{ $ASMMODE ATT }
{ $MODE FPC }

uses
    crt ,
    go32;

const
    mouseint = $33;

var
    mouse_regs      : trealregs; external name '___v2prt0_rmcb_regs';
    mouse_seginfo   : tseginfo;

var
    mouse_numbuttons : longint;

    mouse_action : word;
    mouse_x, mouse_y : Word;
    mouse_b : Word;

    userproc_installed : Longbool;
    userproc_length : Longint;
    userproc_proc : pointer;

procedure callback_handler; assembler;
asm
    pushw %ds
    pushl %eax
    movw %es, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds

    cmpl $1, USERPROC_INSTALLED
    jne .LNoCallback
    pushal
    movw DOSmemSELECTOR, %ax
    movw %ax, %fs
    call *USERPROC_PROC
    popal
.LNoCallback:

    popl %eax
    popw %ds

    pushl %eax
```

```

    movl (%esi), %eax
    movl %eax, %es: 42(%edi)
    addw $4, %es:46(%edi)
    popl %eax
    iret
end;
procedure mouse_dummy; begin end;

procedure textuserproc;
begin
    mouse_b := mouse_regs.bx;
    mouse_x := (mouse_regs.cx shr 3) + 1;
    mouse_y := (mouse_regs.dx shr 3) + 1;
end;

procedure install_mouse(userproc : pointer; userproclen : longint);
var r : trealregs;
begin
    r.eax := $0; realintr(mouseint, r);
    if (r.eax <> $FFFF) then begin
        WriteLn('No Microsoft compatible mouse found');
        WriteLn('A Microsoft compatible mouse driver is necessary ',
            'to run this example');
        halt;
    end;
    if (r.bx = $ffff) then mouse_numbuttons := 2
    else mouse_numbuttons := r.bx;
    WriteLn(mouse_numbuttons, ' button Microsoft compatible mouse ',
        ' found. ');
    if (userproc <> nil) then begin
        userproc_proc := userproc;
        userproc_installed := true;
        userproc_length := userproclen;
        lock_code(userproc_proc, userproc_length);
    end else begin
        userproc_proc := nil;
        userproc_length := 0;
        userproc_installed := false;
    end;
    lock_data(mouse_x, sizeof(mouse_x));
    lock_data(mouse_y, sizeof(mouse_y));
    lock_data(mouse_b, sizeof(mouse_b));
    lock_data(mouse_action, sizeof(mouse_action));

    lock_data(userproc_installed, sizeof(userproc_installed));
    lock_data(userproc_proc, sizeof(userproc_proc));

    lock_data(mouse_regs, sizeof(mouse_regs));
    lock_data(mouse_seginf, sizeof(mouse_seginf));
    lock_code(@callback_handler,
        longint(@mouse_dummy) - longint(@callback_handler));
    get_rm_callback(@callback_handler, mouse_regs, mouse_seginf);
    r.eax := $0c; r.ecx := $7f;
    r.edx := longint(mouse_seginf.offset);
    r.es := mouse_seginf.segment;
    realintr(mouseint, r);
    r.eax := $01;
    realintr(mouseint, r);

```

```

end;

procedure remove_mouse;
var
    r : trealregs;
begin
    r.eax := $02; realintr(mouseint, r);
    r.eax := $0c; r.ecx := 0; r.edx := 0; r.es := 0;
    realintr(mouseint, r);
    free_rm_callback(mouse_seginfo);
    if (userproc_installed) then begin
        unlock_code(userproc_proc, userproc_length);
        userproc_proc := nil;
        userproc_length := 0;
        userproc_installed := false;
    end;
    unlock_data(mouse_x, sizeof(mouse_x));
    unlock_data(mouse_y, sizeof(mouse_y));
    unlock_data(mouse_b, sizeof(mouse_b));
    unlock_data(mouse_action, sizeof(mouse_action));

    unlock_data(userproc_proc, sizeof(userproc_proc));
    unlock_data(userproc_installed, sizeof(userproc_installed));

    unlock_data(mouse_regs, sizeof(mouse_regs));
    unlock_data(mouse_seginfo, sizeof(mouse_seginfo));
    unlock_code(@callback_handler,
        longint(@mouse_dummy) - longint(@callback_handler));
    fillchar(mouse_seginfo, sizeof(mouse_seginfo), 0);
end;

begin
    install_mouse(@textuserproc, 400);
    Writeln('Press any key to exit...');
    while (not keypressed) do begin
        gotoxy(1, wherey);
        write('MouseX : ', mouse_x:2, ' MouseY : ', mouse_y:2,
            ' Buttons : ', mouse_b:2);
    end;
    remove_mouse;
end.

```

---

### 10.18.27 get\_rm\_interrupt

Synopsis: Get real mode interrupt vector

Declaration: `function get_rm_interrupt(vector: Byte; var intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the contents of the current machine's real mode interrupt vector for the specified interrupt.

Parameters:

**vector** interrupt vector number.

**intaddr** buffer to store real mode segment:offset address.



Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** The returned address is a real mode segment address, which isn't valid in protected mode.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `set_rm_interrupt` (488), `set_pm_interrupt` (487), `get_pm_interrupt` (472)

### 10.18.28 `get_run_mode`

Synopsis: Return current run mode

Declaration: `function get_run_mode : Word`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Returns the current mode your application runs with.

Return values: One of the constants used by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_run_mode` (476)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/getrunmd.pp`

---

```

uses
    go32;

begin
    case (get_run_mode) of
        rm_unknown :
            WriteLn( 'Unknown environment found' );
        rm_raw      :
            WriteLn( 'You are currently running in raw mode ',
                    '(without HIMEM)' );
        rm_xms      :
            WriteLn( 'You are currently using HIMEM.SYS only' );
        rm_vcpi     :
            WriteLn( 'VCPI server detected. You''re using HIMEM and ',
                    'EMM386' );
        rm_dpml     :
            WriteLn( 'DPML detected. You''re using a DPML host like ',
                    'a windows DOS box or CWSDPML' );
    end;
end.
```

---

### 10.18.29 `get_segment_base_address`

Synopsis: Return base address from descriptor table

Declaration: `function get_segment_base_address(d: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Returns the 32-bit linear base address from the descriptor table for the specified segment.

Parameters:

`d` selector of the descriptor you want the base address of.

Return values: Linear base address of specified descriptor.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461), `set_segment_base_address` (488), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461), `set_segment_limit` (489), `get_segment_limit` (477)

### 10.18.30 `get_segment_limit`

Synopsis: Return segment limit from descriptor

Declaration: `function get_segment_limit(d: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a descriptors segment limit.

Parameters:

**d**selector.

Return value: Limit of the descriptor in bytes.

Errors: Returns zero if descriptor is invalid.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461), `set_segment_limit` (489), `set_segment_base_address` (488), `get_segment_base_address` (476)

### 10.18.31 `get_ss`

Synopsis: Return SS selector

Declaration: `function get_ss : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the ss selector.

Return values: The content of the ss segment register.

Errors: None.

See also: `get_ds` (469), `get_cs` (468)

### 10.18.32 `global_dos_alloc`

Synopsis: Allocate DOS real mode memory

Declaration: `function global_dos_alloc(bytes: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Allocates a block of dos real mode memory.

Parameters:

**bytesize** of requested real mode memory.

Return values: The low word of the returned value contains the selector to the allocated dos memory block, the high word the corresponding real mode segment value. The offset value is always zero. This function allocates memory from dos memory pool, i.e. memory below the 1 MB boundary that is controlled by dos. Such memory blocks are typically used to exchange data with real mode programs, TSRs, or device drivers. The function returns both the real mode segment base address of the block and one descriptor that can be used by protected mode applications to access the block. This function should only be used for temporary buffers to get real mode information (e.g. interrupts that need a data structure in ES:(E)DI), because every single block needs a unique selector. The returned selector should only be freed by a `global_dos_free` (479) call.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `global_dos_free` (479)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/buffer.pp`

---

```

uses
    go32;

procedure dosalloc(var selector : word;
    var segment : word; size : longint);
var
    res : longint;
begin
    res := global_dos_alloc(size);
    selector := word(res);
    segment := word(res shr 16);
end;

procedure dosfree(selector : word);
begin
    global_dos_free(selector);
end;

type
    VBEInfoBuf = packed record
        Signature : array[0..3] of char;
        Version : Word;
        reserved : array[0..505] of byte;
    end;

var
    selector ,
    segment : Word;

    r : trealregs;
    infobuf : VBEInfoBuf;

begin
    fillchar(r, sizeof(r), 0);
    fillchar(infobuf, sizeof(VBEInfoBuf), 0);
    dosalloc(selector, segment, sizeof(VBEInfoBuf));
    if (int31error <> 0) then begin
        WriteLn('Error while allocating real mode memory, halting');
        halt;
    end;
    infobuf.Signature := 'VBE2';
    dosmempnt(segment, 0, infobuf, sizeof(infobuf));

```

---

```

    r.ax := $4f00; r.es := segment;
    realintr($10, r);
    dosmemget(segment, 0, infobuf, sizeof(infobuf));
    dosfree(selector);
    if (r.ax <> $4f) then begin
        Writeln('VBE BIOS extension not available, function call ',
                'failed');
        halt;
    end;
    if (infobuf.signature[0] = 'V') and
        (infobuf.signature[1] = 'E') and
        (infobuf.signature[2] = 'S') and
        (infobuf.signature[3] = 'A') then begin
        Writeln('VBE version ', hi(infobuf.version), '.',
                lo(infobuf.version), ' detected');
    end;
end.

```

---

### 10.18.33 global\_dos\_free

Synopsis: Free DOS memory block

Declaration: function global\_dos\_free(selector: Word) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: Frees a previously allocated dos memory block.

Parameters:

**selector** selector to the dos memory block.

Return value: True if successful, False otherwise.

**Remark:** The descriptor allocated for the memory block is automatically freed and hence invalid for further use. This function should only be used for memory allocated by global\_dos\_alloc (477).

For an example, see global\_dos\_alloc (477).

Errors: Check the int31error (461) variable.

See also: global\_dos\_alloc (477)

### 10.18.34 inportb

Synopsis: Read byte from I/O port

Declaration: function inportb(port: Word) : Byte

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 byte from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: outportb (482), inportw (480), inportl (480)

**10.18.35 inportl**

Synopsis: Read longint from I/O port

Declaration: `function inportl(port: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 longint from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: [outportb \(482\)](#), [inportb \(479\)](#), [inportw \(480\)](#)

**10.18.36 inportw**

Synopsis: Read word from I/O port

Declaration: `function inportw(port: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Reads 1 word from the selected I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number which is read.

Return values: Current I/O port value.

Errors: None.

See also: [outportw \(483\)](#), [inportb \(479\)](#), [inportl \(480\)](#)

**10.18.37 lock\_code**

Synopsis: Lock code memory range

Declaration: `function lock_code(functionaddr: pointer; size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory range which is in the code segment selector.

Parameters:

**functionaddr** address of the function to be locked.

**size** size in bytes to be locked.

Return values: True if successful, False otherwise.

For an example, see [get\\_rm\\_callback \(472\)](#).

Errors: Check the [int31error \(461\)](#) variable.

See also: [lock\\_linear\\_region \(481\)](#), [lock\\_data \(481\)](#), [unlock\\_linear\\_region \(491\)](#), [unlock\\_data \(491\)](#), [unlock\\_code \(490\)](#)

**10.18.38 lock\_data**

Synopsis: Lock data memory range

Declaration: `function lock_data(var data;size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory range which resides in the data segment selector.

Parameters:

**data** address of data to be locked.

**size** length of data to be locked.

Return values: True if successful, False otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (472).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `lock_linear_region` (481), `lock_code` (480), `unlock_linear_region` (491), `unlock_data` (491), `unlock_code` (490)

**10.18.39 lock\_linear\_region**

Synopsis: Lock linear memory region

Declaration: `function lock_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt;size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Locks a memory region to prevent swapping of it.

Parameters:

**linearaddr** the linear address of the memory are to be locked.

**size** size in bytes to be locked.

Return value: True if successful, False otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `lock_data` (481), `lock_code` (480), `unlock_linear_region` (491), `unlock_data` (491), `unlock_code` (490)

**10.18.40 map\_device\_in\_memory\_block**

Synopsis: Map a device into program's memory space

Declaration: `function map_device_in_memory_block(handle: LongInt;offset: LongInt;  
pagecount: LongInt;device: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `map_device_in_memory_block` allows to map a device in memory. This function is a direct call of the extender. For more information about it's arguments, see the extender documentation.

**10.18.41 outportb**

Synopsis: Write byte to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportb(port: Word; data: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 byte of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

Errors: None.

See also: `inportb` ([479](#)), `outportl` ([482](#)), `outportw` ([483](#))

**Listing:** `./go32ex/outport.pp`

---

**uses**

`crt ,  
go32;`

**begin**

`outportb($61, $ff);  
delay(50);  
outportb($61, $0);`

**end.**

---

**10.18.42 outportl**

Synopsis: Write longint to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportl(port: Word; data: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 longint of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

For an example, see `outportb` ([482](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `inportl` ([480](#)), `outportw` ([483](#)), `outportb` ([482](#))

**10.18.43 outportw**

Synopsis: Write word to I/O port

Declaration: `procedure outportw(port: Word; data: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sends 1 word of data to the specified I/O port.

Parameters:

**port** the I/O port number to send data to.

**data** value sent to I/O port.

Return values: None.

For an example, see `outportb` (482).

Errors: None.

See also: `inportw` (480), `outportl` (482), `outportb` (482)

**10.18.44 realintr**

Synopsis: Simulate interrupt

Declaration: `function realintr(intnr: Word; var regs: trealregs) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Simulates an interrupt in real mode.

Parameters:

**intnr** interrupt number to issue in real mode.

**regs** registers data structure.

Return values: The supplied registers data structure contains the values that were returned by the real mode interrupt. `True` if successful, `False` if not.

**Remark:** The function transfers control to the address specified by the real mode interrupt vector of `intnr`. The real mode handler must return by executing an `IRET`.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

**Listing:** `./go32ex/flags.pp`

---

```

uses
    go32;

var
    r : trealregs;

begin
    r.ax := $5300;
    r.bx := 0;
    realintr($15, r);
    if ((r.flags and carryflag)=0) then begin
        WriteLn('APM v', (r.ah and $f), '.',
                (r.al shr 4), (r.al and $f), ' detected');
    end else
        WriteLn('APM not present');
end.

```

---



**10.18.45 request\_linear\_region**

Synopsis: Request linear address region.

Declaration: `function request_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt; size: LongInt;  
var blockhandle: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `request_linear_region` requests a linear range of addresses of size `Size`, starting at `linearaddr`. If successful, `True` is returned, and a handle to the address region is returned in `blockhandle`.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned.

**10.18.46 segment\_to\_descriptor**

Synopsis: Map segment address to descriptor

Declaration: `function segment_to_descriptor(seg: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: Maps a real mode segment (paragraph) address onto an descriptor that can be used by a protected mode program to access the same memory.

Parameters:

**seg** the real mode segment you want the descriptor to.

Return values: Descriptor to real mode segment address.

**Remark:** The returned descriptors limit will be set to 64 kB. Multiple calls to this function with the same segment address will return the same selector. Descriptors created by this function can never be modified or freed. Programs which need to examine various real mode addresses using the same selector should use the function `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461) and change the base address as necessary.

For an example, see `seg_fillchar` (484).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461), `free_ldt_descriptor` (467), `set_segment_base_address` (488)

**10.18.47 seg\_fillchar**

Synopsis: Fill segment with byte value

Declaration: `procedure seg_fillchar(seg: Word; ofs: LongInt; count: LongInt; c: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a memory area to a specific value.

Parameters:

**seg** selector to memory area.

**ofs** offset to memory.

**count** number of bytes to set.

**c** byte data which is set.

Return values: None.

Notes: No range check is done in any way.

Errors: None.

See also: [seg\\_move \(486\)](#), [seg\\_fillword \(485\)](#), [dosmemfillchar \(458\)](#), [dosmemfillword \(458\)](#), [dosmemget \(459\)](#), [dosmemput \(459\)](#), [dosmemmove \(459\)](#)

**Listing:** ./go32ex/vgasel.pp

---

```

uses
    go32;

var
    vgasel : Word;
    r : treatregs;

begin
    r.eax := $13; realintr($10, r);
    vgasel := segment_to_descriptor($A000);
    seg_fillchar(vgasel, 0, 64000, #15);
    readln;
    r.eax := $3; realintr($10, r);
end.

```

---

### 10.18.48 seg\_fillword

Synopsis: Fill segment with word value

Declaration: `procedure seg_fillword(seg: Word; ofs: LongInt; count: LongInt; w: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a memory area to a specific value.

Parameters:

**seg** selector to memory area.

**ofs** offset to memory.

**count** number of words to set.

**w** word data which is set.

Return values: None.

Notes: No range check is done in any way.

For an example, see [allocate\\_ldt\\_descriptors \(461\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: [seg\\_move \(486\)](#), [seg\\_fillchar \(484\)](#), [dosmemfillchar \(458\)](#), [dosmemfillword \(458\)](#), [dosmemget \(459\)](#), [dosmemput \(459\)](#), [dosmemmove \(459\)](#)

**10.18.49 seg\_move**

Synopsis: Move data between 2 locations

Declaration: `procedure seg_move(sseg: Word;source: LongInt;dseg: Word;dest: LongInt;  
count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies data between two memory locations.

Parameters:

**sseg**source selector.

**source**source offset.

**dseg**destination selector.

**dest**destination offset.

**count**size in bytes to copy.

Return values: None.

**Remark:** Overlapping is only checked if the source selector is equal to the destination selector. No range check is done.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` ([461](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `seg_fillchar` ([484](#)), `seg_fillword` ([485](#)), `dosmemfillchar` ([458](#)), `dosmemfillword` ([458](#)), `dosmemget` ([459](#)), `dosmemput` ([459](#)), `dosmemmove` ([459](#))

**10.18.50 set\_descriptor\_access\_right**

Synopsis: Set access rights to memory descriptor

Declaration: `function set_descriptor_access_right(d: Word;w: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_descriptor_access_right` sets the access rights for descriptor `d` to `w`

**10.18.51 set\_exception\_handler**

Synopsis: Set exception handler

Declaration: `function set_exception_handler(e: Byte;const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_exception_handler` sets the exception handler for exception `E` to `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `get_exception_handler` ([469](#)), `set_pm_exception_handler` ([487](#))

### 10.18.52 set\_pm\_exception\_handler

Synopsis: Set protected mode exception handler

Declaration: `function set_pm_exception_handler(e: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `set_pm_exception_handler` sets the protected mode exception handler for exception E to `intaddr`. It returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if not.

See also: `set_exception_handler` (486), `get_pm_exception_handler` (472)

### 10.18.53 set\_pm\_interrupt

Synopsis: Set protected mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function set_pm_interrupt(vector: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the address of the protected mode handler for an interrupt.

Parameters:

**vector** number of protected mode interrupt to set.

**intaddr** selector:offset address to the interrupt vector.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** The address supplied must be a valid `selector:offset` protected mode address.

Errors: Check the `int3lerror` (461) variable.

See also: `get_pm_interrupt` (472), `set_rm_interrupt` (488), `get_rm_interrupt` (475)

**Listing:** `./go32ex/intpm.pp`

---

**uses**

`crt ,  
go32;`

**const**

`int1c = $1c;`

**var**

`oldint1c : tseginfo;  
newint1c : tseginfo;`

`int1c_counter : Longint;`

`int1c_ds : Word; external name '___v2prt0_ds_alias';`

**procedure** `int1c_handler`; **assembler**;

**asm**

`cli  
pushw %ds  
pushw %ax`

---

```

    movw %cs:int1c_ds, %ax
    movw %ax, %ds
    incl int1c_counter
    popw %ax
    popw %ds
    sti
    iret
end;

var i : Longint;

begin
    newint1c.offset := @int1c_handler;
    newint1c.segment := get_cs;
    get_pm_interrupt(int1c, oldint1c);
    Writeln('-- Press any key to exit --');
    set_pm_interrupt(int1c, newint1c);
    while (not keypressed) do begin
        gotoxy(1, wherey);
        write('Number of interrupts occurred : ', int1c_counter);
    end;
    set_pm_interrupt(int1c, oldint1c);
end.

```

---

#### 10.18.54 set\_rm\_interrupt

Synopsis: Set real mode interrupt handler

Declaration: `function set_rm_interrupt(vector: Byte; const intaddr: tseginfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets a real mode interrupt handler.

Parameters:

**vector** the interrupt vector number to set.

**intaddr** address of new interrupt vector.

Return values: True if successful, otherwise False.

**Remark:** The address supplied MUST be a real mode segment address, not a `selector:offset` address. So the interrupt handler must either reside in dos memory (below 1 Mb boundary) or the application must allocate a real mode callback address with `get_rm_callback` (472).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `get_rm_interrupt` (475), `set_pm_interrupt` (487), `get_pm_interrupt` (472), `get_rm_callback` (472)

#### 10.18.55 set\_segment\_base\_address

Synopsis: Set descriptor's base address

Declaration: `function set_segment_base_address(d: Word; s: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the 32-bit linear base address of a descriptor.

Parameters:

**dselector.**

snew base address of the descriptor.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461), `get_segment_base_address` (476), `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461), `set_segment_limit` (489), `get_segment_base_address` (476), `get_segment_limit` (477)

### 10.18.56 `set_segment_limit`

Synopsis: Set descriptor limit

Declaration: `function set_segment_limit(d: Word; s: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the limit of a descriptor.

Parameters:

**dselector.**

snew limit of the descriptor.

Return values: Returns `True` if successful, else `False`.

**Remark:** The new limit specified must be the byte length of the segment - 1. Segment limits bigger than or equal to 1MB must be page aligned, they must have the lower 12 bits set.

For an example, see `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `allocate_ldt_descriptors` (461), `set_segment_base_address` (488), `get_segment_limit` (477), `set_segment_limit` (489)

### 10.18.57 `tb_offset`

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer buffer offset

Declaration: `function tb_offset : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `tb_offset` returns the DOS transfer buffer segment.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (490), `tb_segment` (489), `tb_size` (490)

### 10.18.58 `tb_segment`

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer buffer segment

Declaration: `function tb_segment : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `tb_segment` returns the DOS transfer buffer segment.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (490), `tb_offset` (489), `tb_size` (490)

**10.18.59 tb\_size**

Synopsis: Return DOS transfer memory buffer size

Declaration: `function tb_size : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the size of the pre-allocated dos memory buffer.

Return values: The size of the pre-allocated dos memory buffer. This block always seems to be 16k in size, but don't rely on this.

Errors: None.

See also: `transfer_buffer` (490), `copyfromdos` (464), `copytodos` (464)

**10.18.60 transfer\_buffer**

Synopsis: Return offset of DOS transfer buffer

Declaration: `function transfer_buffer : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `transfer_buffer` returns the offset of the transfer buffer.

Errors: None.

See also: `tb_size` (490)

**10.18.61 unlock\_code**

Synopsis: Unlock code segment

Declaration: `function unlock_code(functionaddr: pointer;size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a memory range which resides in the code segment selector.

Parameters:

**functionaddr** address of function to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return value: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (472).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `unlock_linear_region` (491), `unlock_data` (491), `lock_linear_region` (481), `lock_data` (481), `lock_code` (480)

**10.18.62 unlock\_data**

Synopsis: Unlock data segment

Declaration: `function unlock_data(var data;size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a memory range which resides in the data segment selector.

Parameters:

**data** address of memory to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `get_rm_callback` (472).

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `unlock_linear_region` (491), `unlock_code` (490), `lock_linear_region` (481), `lock_data` (481), `lock_code` (480)

**10.18.63 unlock\_linear\_region**

Synopsis: Unlock linear memory region

Declaration: `function unlock_linear_region(linearaddr: LongInt;size: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Unlocks a previously locked linear region range to allow it to be swapped out again if needed.

Parameters:

**linearaddr** linear address of the memory to be unlocked.

**size** size bytes to be unlocked.

Return values: `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Check the `int31error` (461) variable.

See also: `unlock_data` (491), `unlock_code` (490), `lock_linear_region` (481), `lock_data` (481), `lock_code` (480)



# Chapter 11

## Reference for unit 'gpm'

### 11.1 Used units

Table 11.1: Used units by unit 'gpm'

Name	Page
baseUnix	<a href="#">492</a>

### 11.2 Overview

The GPM unit implements an interface to `libgpm`, the console program for mouse handling. This unit was created by Peter Vreman, and is only available on linux.

When this unit is used, your program is linked to the C libraries, so you must take care of the C library version. Also, it will only work with version 1.17 or higher of the `libgpm` library.

### 11.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 11.3.1 Constants

`GPM_BOT` = 2

Bottom of area.

`GPM_B_LEFT` = 4

Left mouse button identifier.

`GPM_B_MIDDLE` = 2

Middle mouse button identifier.

`GPM_B_RIGHT` = 1

Right mouse button identifier.

GPM\_DOUBLE = 32

Mouse double click event.

GPM\_DOWN = 4

Mouse button down event.

GPM\_DRAG = 2

Mouse drag event.

GPM\_ENTER = 512

Enter area event.

GPM\_HARD = 256

?

GPM\_LEAVE = 1024

Leave area event.

GPM\_LEFT = 4

Left side of area.

GPM\_MAGIC = \$47706D4C

Constant identifying GPM in gpm\_Open ([500](#)).

GPM\_MFLAG = 128

Motion flag.

GPM\_MOVE = 1

Mouse move event.

GPM\_NODE\_CTL = GPM\_NODE\_DEV

Control socket

GPM\_NODE\_DEV = '/dev/gpmctl'

Device socket filename

GPM\_NODE\_DIR = \_PATH\_VARRUN

Where to write socket.

`GPM_NODE_DIR_MODE = 0775`

Mode of socket.

`GPM_NODE_FIFO = '/dev/gpmdata'`

FIFO name

`GPM_NODE_PID = '/var/run/gpm.pid'`

Name of PID file.

`GPM_RGT = 8`

Right side of area.

`GPM_SINGLE = 16`

Mouse single click event.

`GPM_TOP = 1`

Top of area.

`GPM_TRIPLE = 64`

Mouse triple click event.

`GPM_UP = 8`

Mouse button up event.

`_PATH_DEV = '/dev/'`

Location of `/dev` directory.

`_PATH_VARRUN = '/var/run/'`

Location of run PID files directory.

### 11.3.2 Types

`Pgpmconnect = Pgpm_connect`

Pointer to `TGpmConnect` (496) record.

`Pgpmevent = Pgpm_event`

Pointer to TGpmEvent (496) record

Pgpmroi = Pgpm\_roi

Pointer to TGpmRoi (496) record.

Pgpm\_connect = ^TGpm\_connect

Pointer to TGpm\_Connect (496) record.

Pgpm\_event = ^Tgpm\_event

Pointer to TGpm\_Event (496) record

Pgpm\_roi = ^Tgpm\_roi

Pointer to Tgpm\_roi (496) record.

Tgpmconnect = Tgpm\_connect

Alias for TGpm\_Connect (496) record.

TGpmEtype = LongInt

Type for event type.

Tgpmevent = Tgpm\_event

Alias for TGPM\_EVent (496) record

```
TGpmHandler = function(var event: Tgpmevent; clientdata: pointer)
                  : LongInt
```

Mouse event handler callback.

TGpmMargin = LongInt

Type to hold area margin.

Tgpmroi = Tgpm\_roi

Alias for TGpm\_roi (496)Record

```
Tgpm_connect = record
  eventMask : Word;
  defaultMask : Word;
  minMod : Word;
  maxMod : Word;
  pid : LongInt;
  vc : LongInt;
end
```

GPM server connection information.

```
Tgpm_event = record
  buttons : Byte;
  modifiers : Byte;
  vc : Word;
  dx : Word;
  dy : Word;
  x : Word;
  y : Word;
  wdx : Word;
  wdy : Word;
  EventType : TGpmEtype;
  clicks : LongInt;
  margin : TGpmMargin;
end
```

Tgpm\_event describes the events that are reported by GPM.

```
Tgpm_roi = record
  xmin : Integer;
  xmax : Integer;
  ymin : Integer;
  ymax : Integer;
  minmod : Word;
  maxmod : Word;
  eventmask : Word;
  owned : Word;
  handler : TGpmHandler;
  clientdata : pointer;
  prev : Pgpm_roi;
  next : Pgpm_roi;
end
```

Record used to define regions of interest.

### 11.3.3 Variables

gpm\_current\_roi : Pgpm\_roi

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

gpm\_handler : TGpmHandler

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

gpm\_roi : Pgpm\_roi

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

gpm\_roi\_data : pointer

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

`gpm_roi_handler` : `TGpmHandler`

Internal gpm library variable. Do not use.

## 11.4 Procedures and functions

### 11.4.1 `Gpm_AnyDouble`

Synopsis: Check whether event has double click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnyDouble(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_AnyDouble` returns `True` if `EventType` contains the `GPM_DOUBLE` flag, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (502), `Gpm_AnySingle` (497), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (502), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (502), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (497)

### 11.4.2 `Gpm_AnySingle`

Synopsis: Check whether event has a single click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnySingle(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_AnySingle` returns `True` if `EventType` contains the `GPM_SINGLE` flag, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (502), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (497), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (502), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (502), `Gpm_AnyTriple` (497)

### 11.4.3 `Gpm_AnyTriple`

Synopsis: Check whether event has a triple click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_AnyTriple(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_AnySingle` returns `True` if `EventType` contains the `GPM_TRIPLE` flag, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_StrictSingle` (502), `Gpm_AnyDouble` (497), `Gpm_StrictDouble` (502), `Gpm_StrictTriple` (502), `Gpm_AnySingle` (497)

#### 11.4.4 gpm\_close

Synopsis: Close connection to GPM server.

Declaration: `function gpm_close : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_Close` closes the current connection, and pops the connection stack; this means that the previous connection becomes active again.

The function returns -1 if the current connection is not the last one, and it returns 0 if the current connection is the last one.

for an example, see `Gpm_GetEvent` ([498](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_Open` ([500](#))

#### 11.4.5 gpm\_fitvalues

Synopsis: Change coordinates to fit physical screen.

Declaration: `function gpm_fitvalues(var x: LongInt;var y: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_fitValues` changes `x` and `y` so they fit in the visible screen. The actual mouse pointer is not affected by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_FitValuesM` ([498](#))

#### 11.4.6 gpm\_fitvaluesM

Synopsis: Change coordinates to fit margin.

Declaration: `function gpm_fitvaluesM(var x: LongInt;var y: LongInt;margin: LongInt)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_FitValuesM` changes `x` and `y` so they fit in the margin indicated by `margin`. If `margin` is -1, then the values are fitted to the screen. The actual mouse pointer is not affected by this function.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_FitValues` ([498](#))

#### 11.4.7 gpm\_getevent

Synopsis: Get event from event queue.

Declaration: `function gpm_getevent(var event: Tgpm_event) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_GetEvent` Reads an event from the file descriptor `gpm_fd`. This file is only for internal use and should never be called by a client application.

It returns 1 on succes, and -1 on failue.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `Gpm_GetSnapshot` (500)

**Listing:** `./gpmex/gpmex.pp`

---

```

program gpmex;

{
  Example program to demonstrate the use of the gpm unit.
}

uses gpm;

var
  connect : TGPMConnect;
  event : tgpmevent;

begin
  connect.EventMask:=GPM_MOVE or GPM_DRAG or GPM_DOWN or GPM_UP;
  connect.DefaultMask:=0;
  connect.MinMod:=0;
  connect.MaxMod:=0;
  if Gpm_Open(connect,0)=-1 then
    begin
      WriteLn('No mouse handler present. ');
      Halt(1);
    end;
  WriteLn('Click right button to end. ');
  Repeat
    gpm_getevent(Event);
    With Event do
      begin
        Write('Pos = ( ',X,', ',Y,', ') Buttons : ( ');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_left)<>0 then
          write('left ');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_right)<>0 then
          write('right ');
        if (buttons and Gpm_b_middle)<>0 then
          Write('middle ');
        Write(') Event : ');
        Case EventType and $F of
          GPM_MOVE: write('Move ');
          GPM_DRAG: write('Drag ');
          GPM_DOWN: write('Down ');
          GPM_UP: write('Up ');
        end;
        WriteLn;
      end;
    Until (Event.Buttons and gpm_b_right)<>0;
    gpm_close;
  end.

```

---



### 11.4.8 gpm\_getsnapshot

Synopsis: Return servers' current image of mouse state.

Declaration: `function gpm_getsnapshot(eptr: Pgpmevent) : LongInt`  
`function gpm_getsnapshot(var eptr: Tgpmevent) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_GetSnapshot` returns the picture that the server has of the current situation in `Event`. This call will not read the current situation from the mouse file descriptor, but returns a buffered version.

The function returns the number of mouse buttons, or -1 if this information is not available.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_GetEvent` ([498](#))

### 11.4.9 gpm\_lowerroi

Synopsis: Lower a region of interest in the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_lowerroi(which: Pgpmm_roi;after: Pgpmm_roi) : Pgpmm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_LowerRoi` lowers the region of interest `which` after `after`. If `after` is `Nil`, the region of interest is moved to the bottom of the stack.

The return value is the new top of the region-of-interest stack.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` ([501](#)), `Gpm_PopRoi` ([501](#)), `Gpm_PushRoi` ([501](#))

### 11.4.10 gpm\_open

Synopsis: Open connection to GPM server.

Declaration: `function gpm_open(var conn: Tgpm_connect;flag: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_Open` opens a new connection to the mouse server. The connection is described by the fields of the `conn` record of type `TGPMConnect` ([496](#)).

if `Flag` is 0, then the application only receives events that come from its own terminal device. If it is negative it will receive all events. If the value is positive then it is considered a console number to which to connect.

The return value is -1 on error, or the file descriptor used to communicate with the client. Under an X-Term the return value is -2.

for an example, see `Gpm_GetEvent` ([498](#)).

Errors: On Error, the return value is -1.

See also: `Gpm_Open` ([500](#))

### 11.4.11 gpm\_poproi

Synopsis: Pop region of interest from the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_poproi(which: Pgpm_roi) : Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_PopRoi` pops the topmost region of interest from the stack. It returns the next element on the stack, or `Nil` if the current element was the last one.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` (501), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (500), `Gpm_PushRoi` (501)

### 11.4.12 gpm\_pushroi

Synopsis: Push region of interest on the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_pushroi(x1: LongInt; y1: LongInt; x2: LongInt; y2: LongInt;  
mask: LongInt; fun: TGpmHandler; xtradata: pointer)  
: Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_PushRoi` puts a new *region of interest* on the stack. The region of interest is defined by a rectangle described by the corners (X1, Y1) and (X2, Y2).

The mask describes which events the handler {fun} will handle; `ExtraData` will be put in the `xtradata` field of the {TGPM\_Roi} record passed to the fun handler.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` (501), `Gpm_PopRoi` (501), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (500)

### 11.4.13 gpm\_raiseroi

Synopsis: Raise region of interest in the stack.

Declaration: `function gpm_raiseroi(which: Pgpm_roi; before: Pgpm_roi) : Pgpm_roi`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_RaiseRoi` raises the *region of interest* which till it is on top of region before. If before is nil then the region is put on top of the stack. The returned value is the top of the stack.

Errors: None.

See also: `Gpm_PushRoi` (501), `Gpm_PopRoi` (501), `Gpm_LowerRoi` (500)

### 11.4.14 gpm\_repeat

Synopsis: Check for presence of mouse event.

Declaration: `function gpm_repeat(millisec: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_Repeat` returns 1 if no mouse event arrives in the next millisec milliseconds, it returns 0 otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [Gpm\\_GetEvent \(498\)](#)

### 11.4.15 Gpm\_StrictDouble

Synopsis: Check whether event contains only a double-click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictDouble(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_StrictDouble` returns true if `EventType` contains only a doubleclick event, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [Gpm\\_StrictSingle \(502\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnyTriple \(497\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnyDouble \(497\)](#), [Gpm\\_StrictTriple \(502\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnySingle \(497\)](#)

### 11.4.16 Gpm\_StrictSingle

Synopsis: Check whether event contains only a single-click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictSingle(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_StrictSingle` returns True if `EventType` contains only a singleclick event, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [Gpm\\_AnyTriple \(497\)](#), [Gpm\\_StrictDouble \(502\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnyDouble \(497\)](#), [Gpm\\_StrictTriple \(502\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnySingle \(497\)](#)

### 11.4.17 Gpm\_StrictTriple

Synopsis: Check whether event contains only a triple-click event.

Declaration: `function Gpm_StrictTriple(EventType: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gpm_StrictTriple` returns true if `EventType` contains only a triple click event, False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: [Gpm\\_AnyTriple \(497\)](#), [Gpm\\_StrictDouble \(502\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnyDouble \(497\)](#), [Gpm\\_StrictSingle \(502\)](#), [Gpm\\_AnySingle \(497\)](#)

## Chapter 12

# Reference for unit 'Graph'

### 12.1 Categorized functions: Text and font handling

Functions to set texts on the screen.

Table 12.1:

Name	Description
GetTextSettings ( <a href="#">538</a> )	Get current text settings
InstallUserFont ( <a href="#">541</a> )	Install a new font
OutText ( <a href="#">542</a> )	Write text at current cursor position
OutTextXY ( <a href="#">529</a> )	Write text at coordinates X,Y
RegisterBGIFont ( <a href="#">544</a> )	Register a new font
SetTextJustify ( <a href="#">547</a> )	Set text justification
SetTextStyle ( <a href="#">548</a> )	Set text style
SetUserCharSize ( <a href="#">548</a> )	Set text size
TextHeight ( <a href="#">549</a> )	Calculate height of text
TextWidth ( <a href="#">549</a> )	Calculate width of text

### 12.2 Categorized functions: Filled drawings

Functions for drawing filled regions.

### 12.3 Categorized functions: Drawing primitives

Functions for simple drawing.

### 12.4 Categorized functions: Color management

All functions related to color management.

Table 12.2:

Name	Description
Bar3D (531)	Draw a filled 3D-style bar
Bar (531)	Draw a filled rectangle
FloodFill (533)	Fill starting from coordinate
FillEllipse (532)	Draw a filled ellipse
FillPoly (533)	Draw a filled polygone
GetFillPattern (535)	Get current fill pattern
GetFillSettings (535)	Get current fill settings
SetFillPattern (545)	Set current fill pattern
SetFillStyle (546)	Set current fill settings

Table 12.3:

Name	Description
Arc (530)	Draw an arc
Circle (528)	Draw a complete circle
DrawPoly (532)	Draw a polygone with N points
Ellipse (532)	Draw an ellipse
GetArcCoords (533)	Get arc coordinates
GetLineSettings (536)	Get current line drawing settings
Line (529)	Draw line between 2 points
LineRel (541)	Draw line relative to current position
LineTo (542)	Draw line from current position to absolute position
MoveRel (542)	Move cursor relative to current position
MoveTo (542)	Move cursor to absolute position
PieSlice (543)	Draw a pie slice
PutPixel (530)	Draw 1 pixel
Rectangle (543)	Draw a non-filled rectangle
Sector (544)	Draw a sector
SetLineStyle (546)	Set current line drawing style

## 12.5 Categorized functions: Screen management

General drawing screen management functions.

## 12.6 Categorized functions: Initialization

Initialization of the graphics screen.

## 12.7 Target specific issues: Linux

There are several issues on Linux that need to be taken care of:

The Linux version of the Graph unit uses the libvga library. This library works on the console, not under X.

If you get an error similar to

Table 12.4:

Name	Description
GetBkColor (534)	Get current background color
GetColor (534)	Get current foreground color
GetDefaultPalette (534)	Get default palette entries
GetMaxColor (536)	Get maximum valid color
GetPaletteSize (538)	Get size of palette for current mode
GetPixel (529)	Get color of selected pixel
GetPalette (538)	Get palette entry
SetAllPalette (530)	Set all colors in palette
SetBkColor (545)	Set background color
SetColor (545)	Set foreground color
SetPalette (547)	Set palette entry
SetRGBPalette (530)	Set palette entry with RGB values

Table 12.5:

Name	Description
ClearViewPort (528)	Clear the current viewport
GetImage (528)	Copy image from screen to memory
GetMaxX (537)	Get maximum X coordinate
GetMaxY (537)	Get maximum Y coordinate
GetX (539)	Get current X position
GetY (539)	Get current Y position
ImageSize (529)	Get size of selected image
GetViewSettings (538)	Get current viewport settings
PutImage (529)	Copy image from memory to screen
SetActivePage (530)	Set active video page
SetAspectRatio (544)	Set aspect ratio for drawing routines
SetViewPort (549)	Set current viewport
SetVisualPage (530)	Set visual page
SetWriteMode (549)	Set write mode for screen operations

```
/usr/bin/ld: cannot find -lvga
```

This can mean one of two things: either libvga and its development package is not installed properly, or the directory where it is installed is not in the linker path.

To remedy the former, you should install both the libvga package and libvga-devel package (or compile and install from scratch).

To remedy the latter, you should add the path to the compiler command-line using the `-F1` option.

Programs using **libvga** need root privileges to run. You can make them `setuid` root with the following command:

```
chown root.root myprogram
chmod u+s myprogram
```

The libvga library will give up the root privileges after it is initialized.

there is an experimental version of the Graphics library available that uses GGI to do all the drawing, but it is not well tested. It's called **ggigraph** and is distributed in source form only.

Table 12.6:

Name	Description
<code>ClearDevice</code> (531)	Empty the graphics screen
<code>CloseGraph</code> (531)	Finish drawing session, return to text mode
<code>DetectGraph</code> (532)	Detect graphical modes
<code>GetAspectRatio</code> (534)	Get aspect ratio of screen
<code>GetModeRange</code> (537)	Get range of valid modes for current driver
<code>GraphDefaults</code> (539)	Set defaults
<code>GetDriverName</code> (535)	Return name of graphical driver
<code>GetGraphMode</code> (536)	Return current or last used graphics mode
<code>GetMaxMode</code> (536)	Get maximum mode for current driver
<code>GetModeName</code> (537)	Get name of current mode
<code>GraphErrorMsg</code> (539)	String representation of graphical error
<code>GraphResult</code> (540)	Result of last drawing operation
<code>InitGraph</code> (540)	Initialize graphics drivers
<code>InstallUserDriver</code> (541)	Install a new driver
<code>RegisterBGIDriver</code> (543)	Register a new driver
<code>RestoreCRTMode</code> (544)	Go back to text mode
<code>SetGraphMode</code> (546)	Set graphical mode

Do not use the CRT unit together with the Graph unit: the console may end up in an unusable state. Instead, the `ncurses` unit may function fine.

## 12.8 Target specific issues: DOS

VESA modes (i.e., anything but 320x200x256 and 640x480x16) do not work under most installations of Windows NT, Windows 2000 and Windows XP. They also do not work for some people under Windows 98 and Windows ME, depending on their graphics drivers. However, the graph unit cannot detect this, because no errors are returned from the system. In such cases, the screen simply turns black, or will show garbage.

Nothing can be done about this, the reason is missing or buggy support in the graphics drivers of the operating system.

## 12.9 A word about mode selection

The graph unit was implemented for compatibility with the old Turbo Pascal graph unit. For this reason, the mode constants as they were defined in the Turbo Pascal graph unit are retained.

However, since

1. Video cards have evolved very much
2. Free Pascal runs on multiple platforms

it was decided to implement new mode and graphic driver constants, which are more independent of the specific platform the program runs on.

In this section we give a short explanation of the new mode system. the following drivers were defined:

```

D1bit = 11;
D2bit = 12;
D4bit = 13;
D6bit = 14; { 64 colors Half-brite mode - Amiga }
D8bit = 15;
D12bit = 16; { 4096 color modes HAM mode - Amiga }
D15bit = 17;
D16bit = 18;
D24bit = 19; { not yet supported }
D32bit = 20; { not yet supported }
D64bit = 21; { not yet supported }

lowNewDriver = 11;
highNewDriver = 21;

```

Each of these drivers specifies a desired color-depth.

The following modes have been defined:

```

detectMode = 30000;
m320x200 = 30001;
m320x256 = 30002; { amiga resolution (PAL) }
m320x400 = 30003; { amiga/atari resolution }
m512x384 = 30004; { mac resolution }
m640x200 = 30005; { vga resolution }
m640x256 = 30006; { amiga resolution (PAL) }
m640x350 = 30007; { vga resolution }
m640x400 = 30008;
m640x480 = 30009;
m800x600 = 30010;
m832x624 = 30011; { mac resolution }
m1024x768 = 30012;
m1280x1024 = 30013;
m1600x1200 = 30014;
m2048x1536 = 30015;

lowNewMode = 30001;
highNewMode = 30015;

```

These modes start at 30000 because Borland specified that the mode number should be ascending with increasing X resolution, and the new constants shouldn't interfere with the old ones.

The above constants can be used to set a certain color depth and resolution, as demonstrated in the below example.

If other modes than the ones above are supported by the graphics card, you will not be able to select them with this mechanism.

For this reason, there is also a 'dynamic' mode number, which is assigned at run-time. This number increases with increasing X resolution. It can be queried with the `getmoderange` call. This call will return the range of modes which are valid for a certain graphics driver. The numbers are guaranteed to be consecutive, and can be used to search for a certain resolution, as in the second example below.

Thus, the `getmoderange` function can be used to detect all available modes and drivers, as in the third example below:



## 12.10 Requirements

The unit Graph exports functions and procedures for graphical output. It requires at least a VGA-compatible Card or a VGA-Card with software-driver (min. **512Kb** video memory).

## 12.11 Overview

This document describes the GRAPH unit for Free Pascal, for all platforms. The unit was first written for dos by Florian kl\"ampfl, but was later completely rewritten by Carl-Eric Codere to be completely portable. The unit is provided for compatibility only: It is recommended to use more modern graphical systems. The graph unit will allow to recompile old programs, they will work to some extent, but if the application has heavy graphical needs, it's recommended to use another set of graphical routines, suited to the platform the program should work on.

## 12.12 Constants, types and variables

### 12.12.1 Constants

`AndPut` = 3

Draw operation: use AND

`AnsiToASCIITransTable` : `TCharsetTransTable` = (`#$00`,`#$01`,`#$02`,`#$03`,`#$04`,`#$05`,`#$06`,`#$07`,`#$08`,`#$09`,`#$0A`,`#$0B`,`#$0C`,`#$0D`,`#$0E`,`#$0F`,`#$10`,`#$11`,`#$12`,`#$13`,`#$14`,`#$15`,`#$16`,`#$17`,`#$18`,`#$19`,`#$1A`,`#$1B`,`#$1C`,`#$1D`,`#$1E`,`#$1F`,`#$20`,`#$21`,`#$22`,`#$23`,`#$24`,`#$25`,`#$26`,`#$27`,`#$28`,`#$29`,`#$2A`,`#$2B`,`#$2C`,`#$2D`,`#$2E`,`#$2F`,`#$30`,`#$31`,`#$32`,`#$33`,`#$34`,`#$35`,`#$36`,`#$37`,`#$38`,`#$39`,`#$3A`,`#$3B`,`#$3C`,`#$3D`,`#$3E`,`#$3F`,`#$40`,`#$41`,`#$42`,`#$43`,`#$44`,`#$45`,`#$46`,`#$47`,`#$48`,`#$49`,`#$4A`,`#$4B`,`#$4C`,`#$4D`,`#$4E`,`#$4F`,`#$50`,`#$51`,`#$52`,`#$53`,`#$54`,`#$55`,`#$56`,`#$57`,`#$58`,`#$59`,`#$5A`,`#$5B`,`#$5C`,`#$5D`,`#$5E`,`#$5F`,`#$60`,`#$61`,`#$62`,`#$63`,`#$64`,`#$65`,`#$66`,`#$67`,`#$68`,`#$69`,`#$6A`,`#$6B`,`#$6C`,`#$6D`,`#$6E`,`#$6F`,`#$70`,`#$71`,`#$72`,`#$73`,`#$74`,`#$75`,`#$76`,`#$77`,`#$78`,`#$79`,`#$7A`,`#$7B`,`#$7C`,`#$7D`,`#$7E`,`#$7F`,`#$80`,`#$81`,`#$82`,`#$83`,`#$84`,`#$85`,`#$86`,`#$87`,`#$88`,`#$89`,`#$8A`,`#$8B`,`#$8C`,`#$8D`,`#$8E`,`#$8F`,`#$90`,`#$91`,`#$92`,`#$93`,`#$94`,`#$95`,`#$96`,`#$97`,`#$98`,`#$99`,`#$9A`,`#$9B`,`#$9C`,`#$9D`,`#$9E`,`#$9F`,`#$A0`,`#$A1`,`#$A2`,`#$A3`,`#$A4`,`#$A5`,`#$A6`,`#$A7`,`#$A8`,`#$A9`,`#$AA`,`#$AB`,`#$AC`,`#$AD`,`#$AE`,`#$AF`,`#$B0`,`#$B1`,`#$B2`,`#$B3`,`#$B4`,`#$B5`,`#$B6`,`#$B7`,`#$B8`,`#$B9`,`#$BA`,`#$BB`,`#$BC`,`#$BD`,`#$BE`,`#$BF`,`#$C0`,`#$C1`,`#$C2`,`#$C3`,`#$C4`,`#$C5`,`#$C6`,`#$C7`,`#$C8`,`#$C9`,`#$CA`,`#$CB`,`#$CC`,`#$CD`,`#$CE`,`#$CF`,`#$D0`,`#$D1`,`#$D2`,`#$D3`,`#$D4`,`#$D5`,`#$D6`,`#$D7`,`#$D8`,`#$D9`,`#$DA`,`#$DB`,`#$DC`,`#$DD`,`#$DE`,`#$DF`,`#$E0`,`#$E1`,`#$E2`,`#$E3`,`#$E4`,`#$E5`,`#$E6`,`#$E7`,`#$E8`,`#$E9`,`#$EA`,`#$EB`,`#$EC`,`#$ED`,`#$EE`,`#$EF`,`#$F0`,`#$F1`,`#$F2`,`#$F3`,`#$F4`,`#$F5`,`#$F6`,`#$F7`,`#$F8`,`#$F9`,`#$FA`,`#$FB`,`#$FC`,`#$FD`,`#$FE`,`#$FF`)

Default ansi transliteration table.

`BkSlashFill` = 5

Fill style: Diagonal (backslash) lines

`black` = 0

Color code: black.

`blue` = 1

Color code: blue

`BoldFont` = 10

Font number: Bold font.

`BottomText` = 0

Vertical text alignment: Align text to bottom

`brown` = 6

Color code: brown

CenterLn = 2

Line style: centered line

CenterText = 1

Horizontal text alignment: Center text

ClipOff = false

Viewport clipping off

ClipOn = true

Viewport clipping on

CloseDotFill = 11

Fill style: Closely spaced dotted lines

CopyPut = 0

Draw operation: use Copy

CurrentDriver = -128

Currently used driver

cyan = 3

Color code: Cyan

D12bit = 16

Mode: Depth 12 bit

D15bit = 17

Mode: Depth 15 bit

D16bit = 18

Mode: Depth 16 bit

D1bit = 11

Mode: Depth 1 bit

D24bit = 19

Mode: Depth 24 bit

D2bit = 12

Mode: Depth 2 bit

D32bit = 20

Mode: Depth 32 bit

D4bit = 13

Mode: Depth 4 bit

D64bit = 21

Mode: Depth 64 bit

D6bit = 14

Mode: Depth 6 bit

D8bit = 15

Mode: Depth 8 bit

darkgray = 8

Color code: Dark gray

DashedLn = 3

Line style: dashed line

Default = 0

Default mode

DefaultFont = 0

Font number: Normal font

Detect = 0

Mode: Detect mode.

detectMode = 30000

Mode: Autodetect optimal mode

DottedLn = 1

Line style: Dotted line

`DrawTextBackground : Boolean = false`

Should the background of texts be drawn or should it be left untouched ?

`EGABlack = 0`

Color code: EGA Black

`EGABlue = 1`

Color code: EGA blue

`EGABrown = 20`

Color code: EGA brown

`EGACyan = 3`

Color code: EGA cyan

`EGADarkgray = 56`

Color code: EGA dark gray

`EGAGreen = 2`

Color code: EGA green

`EGALightblue = 57`

Color code: EGA Light blue

`EGALightcyan = 59`

Color code: EGA Light cyan

`EGALightgray = 7`

Color code: EGA Light gray

`EGALightgreen = 58`

Color code: EGA Light green

`EGALightmagenta = 61`

Color code: EGA light magenta

`EGALightred = 60`

Color code: EGA light red



G1152x864x16 = 38

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16 colors

G1152x864x16M = 42

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16M colors

G1152x864x16M32 = 43

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 16M 32-bit colors

G1152x864x256 = 39

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 256 colors

G1152x864x32K = 40

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 32K colors

G1152x864x64K = 41

Mode: Resolution 1152x864, 64K colors

G1280x1024x16 = 31

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16 colors

G1280x1024x16M = 28

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16M colors

G1280x1024x16M32 = 37

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 16M 32-bit colors

G1280x1024x256 = 13

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 256 colors

G1280x1024x32K = 26

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 32K colors

G1280x1024x64K = 27

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024, 64K colors

G1600x1200x16 = 44

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16 colors

G1600x1200x16M = 48

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16M colors

G1600x1200x16M32 = 49

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 16M 32-bit colors

G1600x1200x256 = 45

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 256 colors

G1600x1200x32K = 46

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 32K colors

G1600x1200x64K = 47

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200, 64K colors

G320x200x16 = 1

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16 colors

G320x200x16M = 16

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16M colors

G320x200x16M32 = 33

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 16M 32-bit colors

G320x200x256 = 5

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 256 colors

G320x200x32K = 14

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 32K colors

G320x200x64K = 15

Mode: Resolution 320x200, 64K colors

G320x240x256 = 6

Mode: Resolution 320x240, 256 colors

G320x400x256 = 7

Mode: Resolution 320x400, 256 colors

G360x480x256 = 8

Mode: Resolution 360x480, 256 colors

G640x200x16 = 2

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x350x16 = 3

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x480x16 = 4

Mode: Resolution x, colors

G640x480x16M = 19

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 16M colors

G640x480x16M32 = 34

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 16M 32-bit colors

G640x480x2 = 9

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 2 colors

G640x480x256 = 10

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 256 colors

G640x480x32K = 17

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 32K colors

G640x480x64K = 18

Mode: Resolution 640x480, 64K colors

G720x348x2 = 32

Mode: Resolution 720x348, 2 colors

G800x600x16 = 29

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16 colors

G800x600x16M = 22

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16M colors



G800x600x16M32 = 35

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 16M 32-bit colors

G800x600x256 = 11

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 256 colors

G800x600x32K = 20

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 32K colors

G800x600x64K = 21

Mode: Resolution 800x600, 64K colors

GothicFont = 4

Font number: Gothic font

GraphStringTransTable : PCharsetTransTable = nil

Table used when transliterating strings.

green = 2

Color code: green

grError = -11

Error: Unknown error.

grFileNotFound = -3

Error: File for driver not found.

grFontNotFound = -8

Error: font description file not found.

grInvalidDriver = -4

Error: Invalid driver specified

grInvalidFont = -13

Error: Invalid font description

grInvalidFontNum = -14

Error: Invalid font number

`grInvalidMode = -10`

Error: Invalid mode specified.

`grInvalidVersion = -18`

Error: Invalid version.

`grIOerror = -12`

Error: Unspecified Input/Output error.

`grNoFloodMem = -7`

Error: Could not allocate memory for flood operation.

`grNoFontMem = -9`

Error: Not enough memory to load font.

`grNoInitGraph = -1`

Error: Graphical system not initialized

`grNoLoadMem = -5`

Error: Memory error.

`grNoScanMem = -6`

Error: Could not allocate memory for scan

`grNotDetected = -2`

Error: Graphics device not detected.

`grOk = 0`

Graphical operation went OK.

`HatchFill = 7`

Fill style: Hatch lines

`HercMono = 7`

Mode: Hercules, mono color

`HercMonoHi = 0`

Mode: Hercules card, monochrome, high resolution

highNewDriver = 21

Mode: highest number for new driver

highNewMode = 30015

Mode: Highest possible value of the new modes.

HorizDir = 0

Text write direction: Horizontal

InterleaveFill = 9

Fill style: Interleaving lines

LCOMFont = 8

Font number: ?

LeftText = 0

Horizontal text alignment: Align text left

lightblue = 9

Color code: Light blue

lightcyan = 11

Color code: Light cyan

lightgray = 7

Color code: Light gray

lightgreen = 10

Color code: Light green

lightmagenta = 13

Color code: Light magenta

lightred = 12

Color code: Light red

LineFill = 2

Fill style: Fill using horizontal lines

`lowNewDriver = 11`

Mode: lowest number for new driver

`lowNewMode = 30001`

Mode: Lowest possible value of the new modes.

`LowRes = 1`

Mode: Low resolution.

`LtBkSlashFill = 6`

Fill style: Light diagonal (backslash) lines

`LtSlashFill = 3`

Fill style: Light diagonal (slash) lines

`m1024x768 = 30012`

Mode: Resolution 1024x768

`m1280x1024 = 30013`

Mode: Resolution 1280x1024

`m1600x1200 = 30014`

Mode: Resolution 1600x1200

`m2048x1536 = 30015`

Mode: Resolution 2048x1536

`m320x200 = 30001`

Mode: Resolution 320x200

`m320x256 = 30002`

Mode: Resolution 320x256

`m320x400 = 30003`

Mode: Resolution 320x400

`m512x384 = 30004`

Mode: Resolution 512x384

m640x200 = 30005

Mode: Resolution 640x200

m640x256 = 30006

Mode: Resolution 640x256

m640x350 = 30007

Mode: Resolution 640x350

m640x400 = 30008

Mode: Resolution 640x400

m640x480 = 30009

Mode: Resolution 640x480

m800x600 = 30010

Mode: Resolution 800x600

m832x624 = 30011

Mode: Resolution 832x624

magenta = 5

Color code: Magenta

MaxColors = 255

Max amount of colors in a palette

maxsmallint = high ( smallint )

Maximum value for smallint type

NormalPut = 0

Draw operation: Use Normal (copy) operation

NormWidth = 1

Line width: Normal width

NotPut = 4

Draw operation: use NOT

OrPut = 2

Draw operation: use OR

red = 4

Color code: Red

resolutions : Array[lowNewMode..highNewMode] of TResolutionRec = ( ( x:320;y:200 ) ,

Array with actual resolutions of the new modes

RightText = 2

Horizontal text alignment: Align text right

SansSerifFont = 3

Font number: Sans Serif font

ScriptFont = 5

Font number: Script font

SimpleFont = 6

Font number: Simple font

SlashFill = 4

Fill style: Diagonal (slash) lines

SmallFont = 2

Font number: Small font

SolidFill = 1

Fill style: Solid fill.

SolidLn = 0

Line style: Solid line

ThickWidth = 3

Line width: double width

TopOff = false

Top off

TopOn = true

Top on

TopText = 2

Vertical text alignment: Align text to top

TriplexFont = 1

Font number: Triplex font

TSCRFonT = 7

Font number: Terminal font

UserBitLn = 4

Line style: User defined

UserCharSize = 0

User character size

UserFill = 12

Fill style: User-defined fill.

VertDir = 1

Text write direction: Vertical

VESA = 10

Mode: VESA graphics adaptor.

VGA = 9

Mode: VGA graphics adaptor.

VGAHi = 2

Mode: VGA high resolution (640x480)

VGALo = 0

Mode: VGA low resolution (640x200)

VGAMed = 1

Mode: VGA medium resolution (640x350)

white = 15

Color code: White

WideDotFill = 10

Fill style: Widely spaced dotted lines

XHatchFill = 8

Fill style: Heavy hatch lines

XORPut = 1

Draw operation: use XOR

yellow = 14

Color code: Yellow

### 12.12.2 Types

```
ArcCoordsType = record
  x : SmallInt;
  y : SmallInt;
  xstart : SmallInt;
  ystart : SmallInt;
  xend : SmallInt;
  yend : SmallInt;
end
```

Describe the last arc which was drawn on screen

```
CircleProc = procedure(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt;Radius: Word)
```

Standard circle drawing routine prototype.

```
clrviewproc = procedure
```

Standard clearviewport routine prototype

```
defpixelproc = procedure(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt)
```

This is the standard putpixel routine used by all function drawing routines, it will use the viewport settings, as well as clip, and use the current foreground color to plot the desired pixel.

```
ellipseproc = procedure(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt;XRadius: Word;
  YRadius: Word;stAngle: Word;EndAngle: Word;
  fp: patternlineproc)
```



Standard ellipse drawing routine prototype.

FillPatternType = Array[1..8] of Byte

Bit pattern used when drawing lines. Set bits are drawn.

```
FillSettingsType = record
  pattern : Word;
  color : Word;
end
```

Record describing fill mode

```
getimageproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt;Y1: SmallInt;X2: SmallInt;
                          Y2: SmallInt;var Bitmap)
```

Standard GetImage (528) procedure prototype.

```
getpixelproc = function(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt) : Word
```

Standard pixel fetching routine prototype

```
getrgbpaletteproc = procedure(ColorNum: SmallInt;var RedValue: SmallInt;
                              var GreenValue: SmallInt;
                              var BlueValue: SmallInt)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for GetRGBPalette (529)

```
getscanlineproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt;X2: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt;
                             var data)
```

This routine is used for FloodFill (533) It returns an entire screen scan line with a word for each pixel in the scanline. Also handy for GetImage.

```
graphfreememprc = procedure(var P: Pointer;size: Word)
```

Procedure prototype, used when heap memory is freed by the graph routines.

```
graphgetmemprc = procedure(var P: pointer;size: Word)
```

Procedure prototype, used when heap memory is needed by the graph routines.

```
graph_float = single
```

The platform's preferred floating point size for fast graph operations

```
hlineproc = procedure(x: SmallInt;x2: SmallInt;y: SmallInt)
```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a single horizontal line

```
imagesizeproc = function(X1: SmallInt;Y1: SmallInt;X2: SmallInt;
                        Y2: SmallInt) : LongInt
```

Standard ImageSize (529) calculation procedure prototype.

```
initmodeproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to initialize a mode.

```
lineproc = procedure(X1: SmallInt;Y1: SmallInt;X2: SmallInt;
                    Y2: SmallInt)
```

Standard line drawing routine prototype.

```
LineStyleType = record
    linestyle : Word;
    pattern : Word;
    thickness : Word;
end
```

Record describing current line drawing mode

```
OutTextXYProc = procedure(x: SmallInt;y: SmallInt;
                        const TextString: String)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for OutTextXY (529)

```
PaletteType = record
    Size : LongInt;
    Colors : Array[0..MaxColors] of RGBRec;
end
```

Record describing palette.

```
patternlineproc = procedure(x1: SmallInt;x2: SmallInt;y: SmallInt)
```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a patterned line

```
PCharsetTransTable = ^TCharsetTransTable
```

Pointer to TCharsetTransTable (527) array.

```
PModeInfo = ^TModeInfo
```

Pointer to TModeInfo (527) record

```
PointType = record
    x : SmallInt;
    y : SmallInt;
end
```

Record describing a point in a 2 dimensional plane

```
putimageproc = procedure(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt;var Bitmap;
                        BitBlt: Word)
```

Standard PutImage (529) procedure prototype.

```
putpixelproc = procedure(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt;Color: Word)
```

Standard pixel drawing routine prototype

```
restorestateproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to restore the graphical state at a closegraph call.

```
RGBRec = packed record
  Red : SmallInt;
  Green : SmallInt;
  Blue : SmallInt;
end
```

Record describing palette RGB color

```
savestateproc = procedure
```

Standard routine prototype to save the graphical state before a mode is set.

```
setactivepageproc = procedure(page: Word)
```

Standard SetActivePage (530) procedure prototype.

```
SetAllPaletteProc = procedure(const Palette: PaletteType)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for SetAllPalette (530)

```
setrgbpaletteproc = procedure(ColorNum: SmallInt;RedValue: SmallInt;
                             GreenValue: SmallInt;BlueValue: SmallInt)
```

This routine prototype is a hook for SetRGBPalette (530)

```
setvisualpageproc = procedure(page: Word)
```

Standard SetVisualPage (530) procedure prototype.

```
smallint = -32768..32767
```

Type redefinition

```
TCharsetTransTable = Array[Char] of Char
```

Character transliteration table, with entries for 256 characters

```
TextSettingsType = record
  font : Word;
  direction : Word;
  charsize : Word;
  horiz : Word;
  vert : Word;
end
```

Record describing how texts are drawn.

```
TModeInfo = record
  DriverNumber : SmallInt;
  ModeNumber : SmallInt;
  internModeNumber : SmallInt;
  MaxColor : LongInt;
  PaletteSize : LongInt;
  XAspect : Word;
  YAspect : Word;
  MaxX : Word;
  MaxY : Word;
  DirectColor : Boolean;
  Hardwarepages : Byte;
  ModeName : String;
  DirectPutPixel : defpixelproc;
  GetPixel : getpixelproc;
  PutPixel : putpixelproc;
  SetRGBPalette : setrgbpaletteproc;
  GetRGBPalette : getrgbpaletteproc;
  SetAllPalette : SetAllPaletteProc;
  SetVisualPage : setvisualpageproc;
  SetActivePage : setactivepageproc;
  ClearViewPort : clrviewproc;
  PutImage : putimageproc;
  GetImage : getimageproc;
  ImageSize : imagesizeproc;
  GetScanLine : getscanlineproc;
  Line : lineproc;
  InternalEllipse : ellipseproc;
  PatternLine : patternlineproc;
  HLine : hlineproc;
  VLine : vlineproc;
  Circle : CircleProc;
  InitMode : initmodeproc;
  OutTextXY : OutTextXYProc;
  next : PModeInfo;
end
```

Record describing a graphical mode.

```
TNewModeInfo = record
```

```

modeInfo : Array[lowNewDriver..highNewDriver] of PModeInfo;
loHiModeNr : Array[lowNewDriver..highNewDriver] of ;
end

```

Mode information for new modes.a

```

TResolutionRec = record
  x : LongInt;
  y : LongInt;
end

```

Record describing resolution

```

ViewPortType = record
  x1 : SmallInt;
  y1 : SmallInt;
  x2 : SmallInt;
  y2 : SmallInt;
  Clip : Boolean;
end

```

Record describing a viewport

```

vlineproc = procedure(x: SmallInt;y: SmallInt;y2: SmallInt)

```

Standard procedure prototype to draw a single vertical line

### 12.12.3 Variables

Circle : CircleProc

Circle draws a complete circle with center at (X,Y), radius radius.

ClearViewPort : clrviewproc

Clears the current viewport. The current background color is used as filling color. The pointer is set at (0,0).

DirectPutPixel : defpixelproc

Hook to directly draw a pixel on the screen.

GetImage : getimageproc

GetImage Places a copy of the screen area (X1,Y1) to X2,Y2 in BitMap

GetPixel : getpixelproc

GetPixel returns the color of the point at (X,Y)

GetRGBPalette : getrgbpaletteproc

Hook to set a RGB palette entries.

GetScanLine : getscanlineproc

Hook to get a scan line from the screen.

GraphFreeMemPtr : graphfreememprc

Hook to free heap memory.

GraphGetMemPtr : graphgetmemprc

Hook to get heap memory

HLine : hlineproc

Hook to draw a solid horizontal line

ImageSize : imagesizeproc

ImageSize returns the number of bytes needed to store the image in the rectangle defined by (X1,Y1) and (X2,Y2).

InternalEllipse : ellipseproc

Hook to draw an ellipse

Line : lineproc

Line draws a line starting from (X1,Y1 to (X2,Y2), in the current line style and color. The current position is put to (X2,Y2)

OutTextXY : OutTextXYProc

OutText puts TextString on the screen, at position (X,Y), using the current font and text settings. The current position is moved to the end of the text.

PatternLine : patternlineproc

Hook to draw a patterned line

PutImage : putimageproc

PutImage Places the bitmap in Bitmap on the screen at (X1,Y1). How determines how the bitmap will be placed on the screen. Possible values are :

- CopyPut

- XORPut
- ORPut
- AndPut
- NotPut

PutPixel : putpixelproc

Puts a point at (X,Y) using color Color

RestoreVideoState : restorestateproc

Hook to restore a saved video mode

SaveVideoState : savestateproc

Hook to save the current video state

SetActivePage : setactivepageproc

Sets Page as the active page for all graphical output.

SetAllPalette : SetAllPaletteProc

Sets the current palette to Palette. Palette is an untyped variable, usually pointing to a record of type PaletteType

SetRGBPalette : setrgbpaletteproc

SetRGBPalette sets the ColorNr-th entry in the palette to the color with RGB-values Red, Green Blue.

SetVisualPage : setvisualpageproc

SetVisualPage sets the video page to page number Page.

VLine : vlineproc

Hook to draw a solid vertical line

## 12.13 Procedures and functions

### 12.13.1 Arc

Synopsis: Draw part of a circle

Declaration: `procedure Arc(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; StAngle: Word; EndAngle: Word; Radius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Arc draws part of a circle with center at (X,Y), radius radius, starting from angle start, stopping at angle stop. These angles are measured counterclockwise.

Errors: None.

See also: Circle ([528](#)), Ellipse ([532](#)), GetArcCoords ([533](#)), PieSlice ([543](#)), Sector ([544](#))

### 12.13.2 Bar

Synopsis: Draw filled rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Bar(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Draws a rectangle with corners at (X1,Y1) and (X2,Y2) and fills it with the current color and fill-style.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar3D ([531](#)), Rectangle ([543](#))

### 12.13.3 Bar3D

Synopsis: Draw filled 3-dimensional rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Bar3D(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt; depth: Word; top: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: Bar3d draws a 3-dimensional Bar with corners at (X1,Y1) and (X2,Y2) and fills it with the current color and fill-style. Depth specifies the number of pixels used to show the depth of the bar.

If Top is true; then a 3-dimensional top is drawn.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar ([531](#)), Rectangle ([543](#))

### 12.13.4 ClearDevice

Synopsis: Clear the complete screen

Declaration: `procedure ClearDevice`

Visibility: default

Description: Clears the graphical screen (with the current background color), and sets the pointer at (0,0).

Errors: None.

See also: ClearViewPort ([528](#)), SetBkColor ([545](#))

### 12.13.5 Closegraph

Synopsis: Close graphical system.

Declaration: `procedure Closegraph`

Visibility: default

Description: Closes the graphical system, and restores the screen modus which was active before the graphical modus was activated.

Errors: None.

See also: InitGraph ([540](#))



### 12.13.6 DetectGraph

Synopsis: Detect correct graphical driver to use

Declaration: `procedure DetectGraph(var GraphDriver: SmallInt; var GraphMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DetectGraph` checks the hardware in the PC and determines the driver and screen-modus to be used. These are returned in `Driver` and `Modus`, and can be fed to `InitGraph`. See the `InitGraph` for a list of drivers and modi.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([540](#))

### 12.13.7 DrawPoly

Synopsis: Draw a polygone

Declaration: `procedure DrawPoly(NumPoints: Word; var polypoints)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DrawPoly` draws a polygone with `NumberOfPoints` corner points, using the current color and line-style. `PolyPoints` is an array of type `PointType` ([526](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `Bar` ([531](#)), `Bar3D` ([531](#)), `Rectangle` ([543](#))

### 12.13.8 Ellipse

Synopsis: Draw an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure Ellipse(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; stAngle: Word; EndAngle: Word; XRadius: Word; YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ellipse` draws part of an ellipse with center at  $(X, Y)$ . `XRadius` and `Yradius` are the horizontal and vertical radii of the ellipse. `Start` and `Stop` are the starting and stopping angles of the part of the ellipse. They are measured counterclockwise from the X-axis (3 o'clock is equal to 0 degrees). Only positive angles can be specified.

Errors: None.

See also: `Arc` ([530](#)), `Circle` ([528](#)), `FillEllipse` ([532](#))

### 12.13.9 FillEllipse

Synopsis: Draw and fill an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure FillEllipse(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; XRadius: Word; YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Ellipse` draws an ellipse with center at  $(X, Y)$ . `XRadiu`s and `Yradiu`s are the horizontal and vertical radii of the ellipse. The ellipse is filled with the current color and fill-style.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Arc` ([530](#)), `Circle` ([528](#)), `GetArcCoords` ([533](#)), `PieSlice` ([543](#)), `Sector` ([544](#))

### 12.13.10 FillPoly

**Synopsis:** Draw, close and fill a polygone

**Declaration:** `procedure FillPoly(NumPoints: Word; var PolyPoints)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FillPoly` draws a polygone with `NumberOfPoints` corner points and fills it using the current color and line-style. `PolyPoints` is an array of type `PointType`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Bar` ([531](#)), `Bar3D` ([531](#)), `Rectangle` ([543](#))

### 12.13.11 FloodFill

**Synopsis:** Fill an area with a given color

**Declaration:** `procedure FloodFill(x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt; Border: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Fills the area containing the point  $(X, Y)$ , bounded by the color `BorderColor`.

**Errors:** None

**See also:** `SetColor` ([545](#)), `SetBkColor` ([545](#))

### 12.13.12 GetArcCoords

**Synopsis:** Return coordinates of last drawn arc or ellipse.

**Declaration:** `procedure GetArcCoords(var ArcCoords: ArcCoordsType)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetArcCoords` returns the coordinates of the latest `Arc` or `Ellipse` call.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Arc` ([530](#)), `Ellipse` ([532](#))

### 12.13.13 GetAspectRatio

Synopsis: Return screen resolution

Declaration: `procedure GetAspectRatio(var Xasp: Word; var Yasp: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetAspectRatio` determines the effective resolution of the screen. The aspect ration can then be calculated as  $Xasp/Yasp$ .

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([540](#)), `SetAspectRatio` ([544](#))

### 12.13.14 GetBkColor

Synopsis: Return current background color

Declaration: `function GetBkColor : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetBkColor` returns the current background color (the palette entry).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` ([534](#)), `SetBkColor` ([545](#))

### 12.13.15 GetColor

Synopsis: Return current drawing color

Declaration: `function GetColor : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetColor` returns the current drawing color (the palette entry).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` ([534](#)), `SetBkColor` ([545](#))

### 12.13.16 GetDefaultPalette

Synopsis: Return default palette

Declaration: `procedure GetDefaultPalette(var Palette: PaletteType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDefaultPalette` returns the current palette in `Palette`.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetColor` ([534](#)), `GetBkColor` ([534](#))

### 12.13.17 GetDirectVideo

Synopsis: Determine whether direct video mode is active.

Declaration: `function GetDirectVideo : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Determine whether direct video mode is active.

Errors:

### 12.13.18 GetDriverName

Synopsis: Return current driver name

Declaration: `function GetDriverName : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetDriverName` returns a string containing the name of the current driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetModeName` ([537](#)), `InitGraph` ([540](#))

### 12.13.19 GetFillPattern

Synopsis: Return current fill pattern

Declaration: `procedure GetFillPattern(var FillPattern: FillPatternType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFillPattern` returns an array with the current fill-pattern in `FillPattern`

Errors: None

See also: `SetFillPattern` ([545](#))

### 12.13.20 GetFillSettings

Synopsis: Return current fill settings

Declaration: `procedure GetFillSettings(var Fillinfo: FillSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFillSettings` returns the current fill-settings in `FillInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFillPattern` ([545](#))

### 12.13.21 GetGraphMode

Synopsis: Get current graphical modus

Declaration: `function GetGraphMode : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetGraphMode` returns the current graphical modus

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([540](#))

### 12.13.22 GetLineSettings

Synopsis: Get current line drawing settings

Declaration: `procedure GetLineSettings(var ActiveLineInfo: LineSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLineSettings` returns the current Line settings in `LineInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetLineStyle` ([546](#))

### 12.13.23 GetMaxColor

Synopsis: return maximum number of colors

Declaration: `function GetMaxColor : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxColor` returns the maximum color-number which can be set with `SetColor`. Contrary to Turbo Pascal, this color isn't always guaranteed to be white (for instance in 256+ color modes).

Errors: None.

See also: `SetColor` ([545](#)), `GetPaletteSize` ([538](#))

### 12.13.24 GetMaxMode

Synopsis: Return biggest mode for the current driver

Declaration: `function GetMaxMode : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxMode` returns the highest modus for the current driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([540](#))

### 12.13.25 GetMaxX

Synopsis: Return maximal X coordinate

Declaration: `function GetMaxX : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxX` returns the maximum horizontal screen length

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMaxY` ([537](#))

### 12.13.26 GetMaxY

Synopsis: Return maximal Y coordinate

Declaration: `function GetMaxY : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMaxY` returns the maximum number of screen lines

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMaxX` ([537](#))

### 12.13.27 GetModeName

Synopsis: Return description a modus

Declaration: `function GetModeName(ModeNumber: SmallInt) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModeName` Returns a string with the name of modus Modus

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDriverName` ([535](#)), `InitGraph` ([540](#))

### 12.13.28 GetModeRange

Synopsis: Return lowest and highest modus of current driver

Declaration: `procedure GetModeRange(GraphDriver: SmallInt; var LoMode: SmallInt;  
var HiMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetModeRange` returns the Lowest and Highest modus of the currently installed driver. If no modes are supported for this driver, `HiModus` will be -1.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([540](#))

### 12.13.29 GetPalette

Synopsis: Return current palette

Declaration: `procedure GetPalette(var Palette: PaletteType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPalette` returns in `Palette` the current palette.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPaletteSize` ([538](#)), `SetPalette` ([547](#))

### 12.13.30 GetPaletteSize

Synopsis: Return maximal number of entries in current palette

Declaration: `function GetPaletteSize : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPaletteSize` returns the maximum number of entries in the current palette.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPalette` ([538](#)), `SetPalette` ([547](#))

### 12.13.31 GetTextSettings

Synopsis: Return current text style

Declaration: `procedure GetTextSettings(var TextInfo: TextSettingsType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTextSettings` returns the current text style settings : The font, direction, size and placement as set with `SetTextStyle` and `SetTextJustify`

Errors: None.

See also: `SetTextStyle` ([548](#)), `SetTextJustify` ([547](#))

### 12.13.32 GetViewSettings

Synopsis: Return current viewport

Declaration: `procedure GetViewSettings(var viewport: ViewPortType)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetViewSettings` returns the current viewport and clipping settings in `ViewPort`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetViewPort` ([549](#))

### 12.13.33 GetX

Synopsis: Return current cursor X position

Declaration: `function GetX : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetX` returns the X-coordinate of the current position of the graphical pointer

Errors: None.

See also: `GetY` ([539](#))

### 12.13.34 GetY

Synopsis: Return current cursor Y position

Declaration: `function GetY : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetY` returns the Y-coordinate of the current position of the graphical pointer

Errors: None.

See also: `GetX` ([539](#))

### 12.13.35 GraphDefaults

Synopsis: Reset graphical mode to defaults

Declaration: `procedure GraphDefaults`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphDefaults` resets all settings for viewport, palette, foreground and background pattern, line-style and pattern, filling style, filling color and pattern, font, text-placement and text size.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetViewPort` ([549](#)), `SetFillStyle` ([546](#)), `SetColor` ([545](#)), `SetBkColor` ([545](#)), `SetLineStyle` ([546](#))

### 12.13.36 GraphErrorMsg

Synopsis: Return a description of an error

Declaration: `function GraphErrorMsg(ErrorCode: SmallInt) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphErrorMsg` returns a string describing the error `Errorcode`. This string can be used to let the user know what went wrong.

Errors: None.

See also: `GraphResult` ([540](#))



### 12.13.37 GraphResult

Synopsis: Result of last graphical operation

Declaration: `function GraphResult : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GraphResult` returns an error-code for the last graphical operation. If the returned value is zero, all went well. A value different from zero means an error has occurred. besides all operations which draw something on the screen, the following procedures also can produce a `GraphResult` different from zero:

- `InstallUserFont` ([541](#))
- `SetLineStyle` ([546](#))
- `SetWriteMode` ([549](#))
- `SetFillStyle` ([546](#))
- `SetTextJustify` ([547](#))
- `SetGraphMode` ([546](#))
- `SetTextStyle` ([548](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `GraphErrorMsg` ([539](#))

### 12.13.38 InitGraph

Synopsis: Initialize graphical system

Declaration: `procedure InitGraph(var GraphDriver: SmallInt; var GraphMode: SmallInt; const PathToDriver: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitGraph` initializes the graph package. `GraphDriver` has two valid values: `GraphDriver=0` which performs an auto detect and initializes the highest possible mode with the most colors. 1024x768x64K is the highest possible resolution supported by the driver, if you need a higher resolution, you must edit `MODES.PPI`. If you need another mode, then set `GraphDriver` to a value different from zero and `graphmode` to the mode you wish (VESA modes where 640x480x256 is 101h etc.). `PathToDriver` is only needed, if you use the BGI fonts from Borland. Free Pascal does not offer BGI fonts like Borland, these must be obtained separately.

Example code:

```

var
  gd,gm : integer;
  PathToDriver : string;
begin
  gd:=detect; { highest possible resolution }
  gm:=0; { not needed, auto detection }
  PathToDriver:='C:\PP\BGI'; { path to BGI fonts,
                             drivers aren't needed }

  InitGraph(gd,gm,PathToDriver);
  if GraphResult<>grok then
    halt; ..... { whatever you need }
  CloseGraph; { restores the old graphics mode }
end.

```

Errors: None.

See also: Modes ([506](#)), DetectGraph ([532](#)), CloseGraph ([531](#)), GraphResult ([540](#))

### 12.13.39 InstallUserDriver

Synopsis: Install a user driver

Declaration: `function InstallUserDriver(Name: String;AutoDetectPtr: Pointer)  
: SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InstallUserDriver` adds the device-driver `DriverPath` to the list of .BGI drivers. `AutoDetectPtr` is a pointer to a possible auto-detect function.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([540](#)), `InstallUserFont` ([541](#))

### 12.13.40 InstallUserFont

Synopsis: Install a user-defined font

Declaration: `function InstallUserFont(const FontFileName: String) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InstallUserFont` adds the font in `FontPath` to the list of fonts of the .BGI system.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([540](#)), `InstallUserDriver` ([541](#))

### 12.13.41 LineRel

Synopsis: Draw a line starting from current position in given direction

Declaration: `procedure LineRel(Dx: SmallInt;Dy: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LineRel` draws a line starting from the current pointer position to the point  $(DX, DY)$ , `\textbf{relative}` to the current position, in the current line style and color. The Current Position is set to the endpoint of the line.

Errors: None.

See also: `Line` ([529](#)), `LineTo` ([542](#))

### 12.13.42 LineTo

Synopsis: Draw a line starting from current position to a given point

Declaration: `procedure LineTo(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `LineTo` draws a line starting from the current pointer position to the point  $(DX, DY, \text{\textbf{relative}})$  to the current position, in the current line style and color. The Current position is set to the end of the line.

Errors: None.

See also: `LineRel` ([541](#)), `Line` ([529](#))

### 12.13.43 MoveRel

Synopsis: Move cursor relative to current position

Declaration: `procedure MoveRel(Dx: SmallInt;Dy: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `MoveRel` moves the pointer to the point  $(DX, DY)$ , relative to the current pointer position

Errors: None.

See also: `MoveTo` ([542](#))

### 12.13.44 MoveTo

Synopsis: Move cursor to absolute position.

Declaration: `procedure MoveTo(X: SmallInt;Y: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `MoveTo` moves the pointer to the point  $(X, Y)$ .

Errors: None.

See also: `MoveRel` ([542](#))

### 12.13.45 OutText

Synopsis: Write text on the screen at the current location.

Declaration: `procedure OutText(const TextString: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `OutText` puts `TextString` on the screen, at the current pointer position, using the current font and text settings. The current position is moved to the end of the text.

Errors: None.

See also: `OutTextXY` ([529](#))

### 12.13.46 PieSlice

Synopsis: Draw a pie-slice

Declaration: `procedure PieSlice(X: SmallInt; Y: SmallInt; stangle: SmallInt;  
                                  endAngle: SmallInt; Radius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PieSlice` draws and fills a sector of a circle with center (X,Y) and radius Radius, starting at angle Start and ending at angle Stop.

Errors: None.

See also: Arc ([530](#)), Circle ([528](#)), Sector ([544](#))

### 12.13.47 queryadapterinfo

Synopsis: Function called to retrieve the current video adapter settings.

Declaration: `function queryadapterinfo : PModeInfo`

Visibility: default

### 12.13.48 Rectangle

Synopsis: Draw a rectangle on the screen.

Declaration: `procedure Rectangle(x1: SmallInt; y1: SmallInt; x2: SmallInt; y2: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Draws a rectangle with corners at (X1,Y1) and (X2,Y2), using the current color and style.

Errors: None.

See also: Bar ([531](#)), Bar3D ([531](#))

### 12.13.49 RegisterBGIDriver

Synopsis: Register a new BGI driver.

Declaration: `function RegisterBGIDriver(driver: pointer) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Registers a user-defined BGI driver

Errors: None.

See also: `InstallUserDriver` ([541](#)), `RegisterBGIFont` ([544](#))

### 12.13.50 RegisterBGIfont

Synopsis: Register a new BGI font

Declaration: `function RegisterBGIfont(font: pointer) : SmallInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Registers a user-defined BGI driver

Errors: None.

See also: [InstallUserFont \(541\)](#), [RegisterBGIDriver \(543\)](#)

### 12.13.51 RestoreCrtMode

Synopsis: Restore text screen

Declaration: `procedure RestoreCrtMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Restores the screen modus which was active before the graphical modus was started.

To get back to the graph mode you were last in, you can use `SetGraphMode (GetGraphMode)`

Errors: None.

See also: [InitGraph \(540\)](#)

### 12.13.52 Sector

Synopsis: Draw and fill a sector of an ellipse

Declaration: `procedure Sector(x: SmallInt; y: SmallInt; StAngle: Word; EndAngle: Word;  
                                  XRadius: Word; YRadius: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sector` draws and fills a sector of an ellipse with center `(X, Y)` and radii `XRadius` and `YRadius`, starting at angle `Start` and ending at angle `Stop`.

Errors: None.

See also: [Arc \(530\)](#), [Circle \(528\)](#), [PieSlice \(543\)](#)

### 12.13.53 SetAspectRatio

Synopsis: Set aspect ration of the screen

Declaration: `procedure SetAspectRatio(Xasp: Word; Yasp: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the aspect ratio of the current screen to `Xasp/Yasp`.

Errors: None

See also: [InitGraph \(540\)](#), [GetAspectRatio \(534\)](#)

#### 12.13.54 SetBkColor

Synopsis: Set background drawing color

Declaration: `procedure SetBkColor(ColorNum: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the background color to `Color`.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetBkColor \(534\)](#), [SetColor \(545\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(549\)](#)

#### 12.13.55 SetColor

Synopsis: Set foreground drawing color

Declaration: `procedure SetColor(Color: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the foreground color to `Color`.

Errors: None.

See also: [GetColor \(534\)](#), [SetBkColor \(545\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(549\)](#)

#### 12.13.56 SetDirectVideo

Synopsis: Attempt to enter direct video mode.

Declaration: `procedure SetDirectVideo(DirectAccess: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDirectVideo` attempts to enter direct video mode. In that mode, everything is drawn straight in the video buffer.

#### 12.13.57 SetFillPattern

Synopsis: Set drawing fill pattern

Declaration: `procedure SetFillPattern(Pattern: FillPatternType; Color: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetFillPattern` sets the current fill-pattern to `FillPattern`, and the filling color to `Color`. The pattern is an 8x8 raster, corresponding to the 64 bits in `FillPattern`.

Errors: None

See also: [GetFillPattern \(535\)](#), [SetFillStyle \(546\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(549\)](#)

**12.13.58 SetFillStyle**

Synopsis: Set drawing fill style

Declaration: `procedure SetFillStyle(Pattern: Word; Color: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetFillStyle` sets the filling pattern and color to one of the predefined filling patterns. `Pattern` can be one of the following predefined constants :

**EmptyFill** Uses backgroundcolor.

**SolidFill** Uses filling color

**LineFill** Fills with horizontal lines.

**LtSlashFill** Fills with lines from left-under to top-right.

**SlashFill** Idem as previous, thick lines.

**BkSlashFill** Fills with thick lines from left-Top to bottom-right.

**LtBkSlashFill** Idem as previous, normal lines.

**HatchFill** Fills with a hatch-like pattern.

**XHatchFill** Fills with a hatch pattern, rotated 45 degrees.

**InterLeaveFill**

**WideDotFill** Fills with dots, wide spacing.

**CloseDotFill** Fills with dots, narrow spacing.

**UserFill** Fills with a user-defined pattern.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetFillPattern` ([545](#)), `SetWriteMode` ([549](#))

**12.13.59 SetGraphMode**

Synopsis: Set graphical mode

Declaration: `procedure SetGraphMode(Mode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetGraphMode` sets the graphical mode and clears the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitGraph` ([540](#))

**12.13.60 SetLineStyle**

Synopsis: Set line drawing style

Declaration: `procedure SetLineStyle(LineStyle: Word; Pattern: Word; Thickness: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetLineStyle` sets the drawing style for lines. You can specify a `LineStyle` which is one of the following pre-defined constants:

**Solidln** draws a solid line.

**Dottedln** draws a dotted line.

**Centerln** draws a non-broken centered line.

**Dashedln** draws a dashed line.

**UserBitln** draws a User-defined bit pattern.

If **UserBitln** is specified then **Pattern** contains the bit pattern. In all another cases, **Pattern** is ignored. The parameter **Width** indicates how thick the line should be. You can specify one of the following pre-defined constants:

**NormWidth** Normal line width

**ThickWidth** Double line width

Errors: None.

See also: [GetLineSettings \(536\)](#), [SetWriteMode \(549\)](#)

### 12.13.61 SetPalette

Synopsis: Set palette entry using color constant

Declaration: `procedure SetPalette(ColorNum: Word; Color: ShortInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: **SetPalette** changes the **ColorNr**-th entry in the palette to **NewColor**

Errors: None.

See also: [SetAllPalette \(530\)](#), [SetRGBPalette \(530\)](#)

### 12.13.62 SetTextJustify

Synopsis: Set text placement style

Declaration: `procedure SetTextJustify(horiz: Word; vert: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: **SetTextJustify** controls the placement of new text, relative to the (graphical) cursor position. **Horizontal** controls horizontal placement, and can be one of the following pre-defined constants:

**LeftText** Text is set left of the pointer.

**CenterText** Text is set centered horizontally on the pointer.

**RightText** Text is set to the right of the pointer.

**Vertical** controls the vertical placement of the text, relative to the (graphical) cursor position. Its value can be one of the following pre-defined constants :

**BottomText** Text is placed under the pointer.

**CenterText** Text is placed centered vertically on the pointer.

**TopText** Text is placed above the pointer.

Errors: None.

See also: [OutText \(542\)](#), [OutTextXY \(529\)](#)



### 12.13.63 SetTextStyle

Synopsis: Set text style

Declaration: `procedure SetTextStyle(font: Word;direction: Word;charsize: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTextStyle` controls the style of text to be put on the screen. pre-defined constants for `Font` are:

**DefaultFont**The default font

**TriplexFont**A special font

**SmallFont**A smaller font

**SansSerifFont**A sans-serif font (like Arial)

**GothicFont**A gothic font

**ScriptFont**A script font

**SimpleFont**A simple font

**TSCRFont**Terminal screen font

**LCOMFont?**

**EuroFont?**

**BoldFont**A bold typeface font

Pre-defined constants for `Direction` are :

**HorizDir**Write horizontal

**VertDir**Write vertical

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTextSettings` ([538](#))

### 12.13.64 SetUserCharSize

Synopsis: Set user character size for vector font

Declaration: `procedure SetUserCharSize(Multx: Word;Divx: Word;Multy: Word;Divy: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the width and height of vector-fonts. The horizontal size is given by `Xasp1/Xasp2`, and the vertical size by `Yasp1/Yasp2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetTextStyle` ([548](#))

**12.13.65 SetViewPort**

Synopsis: Set the graphical drawing window

Declaration: `procedure SetViewPort(X1: SmallInt; Y1: SmallInt; X2: SmallInt;  
Y2: SmallInt; Clip: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: Sets the current graphical viewport (window) to the rectangle defined by the top-left corner (X1, Y1) and the bottom-right corner (X2, Y2). If Clip is true, anything drawn outside the viewport (window) will be clipped (i.e. not drawn). Coordinates specified after this call are relative to the top-left corner of the viewport.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetViewSettings` ([538](#))

**12.13.66 SetWriteMode**

Synopsis: Specify binary operation to perform when drawing on screen

Declaration: `procedure SetWriteMode(WriteMode: SmallInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetWriteMode` controls the drawing of lines on the screen. It controls the binary operation used when drawing lines on the screen. Mode can be one of the following pre-defined constants:

**CopyPutDraw** as specified using current bitmask and color

**XORPutDraw** XOR-ing current bitmask and color

Errors: None.

See also: `SetColor` ([545](#)), `SetBkColor` ([545](#)), `SetLineStyle` ([546](#)), `SetFillStyle` ([546](#))

**12.13.67 TextHeight**

Synopsis: Return height (in pixels) of the given string

Declaration: `function TextHeight(const TextString: String) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextHeight` returns the height (in pixels) of the string S in the current font and text-size.

Errors: None.

See also: `TextWidth` ([549](#))

**12.13.68 TextWidth**

Synopsis: Return width (in pixels) of the given string

Declaration: `function TextWidth(const TextString: String) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextWidth` returns the width (in pixels) of the string S in the current font and text-size.

Errors: None.

See also: TextHeight ([549](#))

## Chapter 13

# Reference for unit 'heaptrc'

### 13.1 Controlling HeapTrc with environment variables

The `HeapTrc` unit can be controlled with the `HEAPTRC` environment variable. The contents of this variable controls the initial setting of some constants in the unit. `HEAPTRC` consists of one or more of the following strings, separated by spaces:

**keepreleased** If this string occurs, then the `KeepReleased` (553) variable is set to `True`

**disabled** If this string occurs, then the `UseHeapTrace` (553) variable is set to `False` and the heap trace is disabled. It does not make sense to combine this value with other values.

**nohalt** If this string occurs, then the `HaltOnError` (552) variable is set to `False`, so the program continues executing even in case of a heap error.

**log=filename** If this string occurs, then the output of `heaptrc` is sent to the specified `Filename`. (see also `SetHeapTraceOutput` (555))

The following are valid values for the `HEAPTRC` variable:

```
HEAPTRC=disabled
HEAPTRC="keepreleased log=heap.log"
HEAPTRC="log=myheap.log nohalt"
```

Note that these strings are case sensitive, and the name of the variable too.

### 13.2 HeapTrc Usage

All that you need to do is to include `heaptrc` in the `uses` clause of your program. Make sure that it is the first unit in the clause, otherwise memory allocated in initialization code of units that precede the `heaptrc` unit will not be accounted for, causing an incorrect memory usage report.

If you use the `-gh` switch, the compiler will insert the unit by itself, so you don't have to include it in your `uses` clause.

The below example shows how to use the `heaptrc` unit.

This is the memory dump shown when running this program in a standard way:

```

Marked memory at 0040FA50 invalid
Wrong size : 128 allocated 64 freed
  0x00408708
  0x0040CB49
  0x0040C481
Call trace for block 0x0040FA50 size 128
  0x0040CB3D
  0x0040C481

```

If you use the `lineinfo` unit (or use the `-gl` switch) as well, then `heaptrc` will also give you the filenames and line-numbers of the procedures in the backtrace:

```

Marked memory at 00410DA0 invalid
Wrong size : 128 allocated 64 freed
  0x004094B8
  0x0040D8F9  main,   line 25 of heapex.pp
  0x0040D231
Call trace for block 0x00410DA0 size 128
  0x0040D8ED  main,   line 23 of heapex.pp
  0x0040D231

```

If lines without filename/line-number occur, this means there is a unit which has no debug info included.

## 13.3 Overview

This document describes the HEAPTRC unit for Free Pascal. It was written by Pierre Muller. It is system independent, and works on all supported systems.

The HEAPTRC unit can be used to debug your memory allocation/deallocation. It keeps track of the calls to `getmem/freemem`, and, implicitly, of `New/Dispose` statements.

When the program exits, or when you request it explicitly. It displays the total memory used, and then dumps a list of blocks that were allocated but not freed. It also displays where the memory was allocated.

If there are any inconsistencies, such as memory blocks being allocated or freed twice, or a memory block that is released but with wrong size, this will be displayed also.

The information that is stored/displayed can be customized using some constants.

## 13.4 Constants, types and variables

### 13.4.1 Constants

```
add_tail : Boolean = true
```

If `add\_tail` is `True` (the default) then a check is also performed on the memory location just behind the allocated memory.

```
HaltOnError : Boolean = true
```

If `HaltOnError` is set to `True` then an illegal call to `FreeMem` will cause the memory manager to execute a `halt(1)` instruction, causing a memory dump. By Default it is set to `True`.

```
keepreleased : Boolean = false
```

If `keepreleased` is set to `true`, then a list of freed memory blocks is kept. This is useful if you suspect that the same memory block is released twice. However, this option is very memory intensive, so use it sparingly, and only when it's really necessary.

```
quicktrace : Boolean = true
```

`Quicktrace` determines whether the memory manager checks whether a block that is about to be released is allocated correctly. This is a rather time consuming search, and slows program execution significantly, so by default it is set to `True`.

```
tracesize = 8
```

`Tracesize` specifies how many levels of calls are displayed of the call stack during the memory dump. If you specify `keepreleased:=True` then half the `TraceSize` is reserved for the `GetMem` call stack, and the other half is reserved for the `FreeMem` call stack. For example, the default value of 8 will cause eight levels of call frames to be dumped for the `getmem` call if `keepreleased` is `False`. If `KeepReleased` is `true`, then 4 levels of call frames will be dumped for the `GetMem` call and 4 frames will be dumped for the `FreeMem` call. If you want to change this value, you must recode the `heaptrc` unit.

```
usecrc : Boolean = true
```

If `usecrc` is `True` (the default) then a crc check is performed on locations before and after the allocated memory. This is useful to detect memory overwrites.

```
useheaptrace : Boolean = true
```

This variable must be set at program startup, through the help of an environment variable.

### 13.4.2 Types

```
tDisplayExtraInfoProc = procedure(var ptext: text;p: pointer)
```

The `TDisplayExtraInfoType` is a procedural type used in the `SetHeapExtraInfo` (554) call to display a memory location which was previously filled with `TFillExtraInfoProc` (553)

```
tFillExtraInfoProc = procedure(p: pointer)
```

The `TFillExtraInfoProc` is a procedural type used in the `SetHeapExtraInfo` (554) call to fill a memory location with extra data for displaying.

## 13.5 Procedures and functions

### 13.5.1 DumpHeap

Synopsis: Dump memory usage report to stderr.

Declaration: `procedure DumpHeap`

Visibility: default

Description: DumpHeap dumps to standard output a summary of memory usage. It is called automatically by the heaptrc unit when your program exits (by installing an exit procedure), but it can be called at any time.

Errors: None.

See also: MarkHeap ([554](#))

### 13.5.2 MarkHeap

Synopsis: Mark memory blocks with a signature.

Declaration: `procedure MarkHeap`

Visibility: default

Description: MarkHeap marks all memory blocks with a special signature. You can use this if you think that you corrupted the memory.

Errors: None.

See also: DumpHeap ([553](#))

### 13.5.3 SetHeapExtraInfo

Synopsis: Store extra information in blocks.

Declaration: `procedure SetHeapExtraInfo(size: ptrint; fillproc: tFillExtraInfoProc;  
displayproc: tdisplayextrainfoProc)`

Visibility: default

Description: You can use SetHeapExtraInfo to store extra info in the blocks that the heaptrc unit reserves when tracing getmem calls. Size indicates the size (in bytes) that the trace mechanism should reserve for your extra information. For each call to getmem, FillProc will be called, and passed a pointer to the memory reserved.

When dumping the memory summary, the extra info is shown by calling displayproc and passing it the memory location which was filled by fillproc. It should write the information in readable form to the text file provided in the call to displayproc

Errors: You can only call SetHeapExtraInfo if no memroy has been allocated yet. If memory was already allocated prior to the call to SetHeapExtraInfo, then an error will be displayed on standard error output, and a DumpHeap ([553](#)) is executed.

See also: DumpHeap ([553](#)), SetHeapTraceOutput ([555](#))

**Listing:** `./heapex/setinfo.pp`

---

**Program** heapex;

*{ Program used to demonstrate the usage of heaptrc unit }*

**Uses** heaptrc;

**Var** P1 : ^Longint;  
P2 : Pointer;

---

```

    l : longint;
    Marker : Longint;

Procedure SetMarker (P : pointer);

Type PLongint = ^Longint;

begin
    PLongint(P)^:= Marker;
end;

Procedure Part1;

begin
    // Blocks allocated here are marked with $FFAAFFAA = -5570646
    Marker := $FFAAFFAA;
    New(P1);
    New(P1);
    Dispose(P1);
    For l:=1 to 10 do
        begin
            GetMem (P2,128);
            If (l mod 2) = 0 Then FreeMem(P2,128);
        end;
    GetMem(P2,128);
end;

Procedure Part2;

begin
    // Blocks allocated here are marked with $FAFAFAFA = -84215046
    Marker := $FAFAFAFA;
    New(P1);
    New(P1);
    Dispose(P1);
    For l:=1 to 10 do
        begin
            GetMem (P2,128);
            If (l mod 2) = 0 Then FreeMem(P2,128);
        end;
    GetMem(P2,128);
end;

begin
    SetExtraInfo (SizeOf (Marker) , @SetMarker);
    WriteLn ( 'Part 1 ' );
    part1;
    WriteLn ( 'Part 2 ' );
    part2;
end.

```

---

### 13.5.4 SetHeapTraceOutput

Synopsis: Specify filename for heap trace output.

Declaration: `procedure SetHeapTraceOutput(const name: String)`

Visibility: default



**Description:** `SetHeapTraceOutput` sets the filename into which heap trace info will be written. By default information is written to standard output, this function allows you to redirect the information to a file with full filename name.

**Errors:** If the file cannot be written to, errors will occur when writing the trace.

**See also:** `SetHeapExtraInfo` ([554](#))

# Chapter 14

## Reference for unit 'ipc'

### 14.1 Used units

Table 14.1: Used units by unit 'ipc'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">557</a>

### 14.2 Overview

This document describes the IPC unit for Free Pascal. It was written for linux by Michael Van Canneyt. It gives all the functionality of system V Inter-Process Communication: shared memory, semaphores and messages. It works only on the linux operating system.

Many constants here are provided for completeness only, and should under normal circumstances not be used by the programmer.

### 14.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 14.3.1 Constants

`IPC_CREAT = 1 shl 9`

Create if key is nonexistent

`IPC_EXCL = 2 shl 9`

fail if key exists

`IPC_INFO = 3`

For ipcs call

`IPC_NOWAIT = 4 shl 9`

return error on wait

IPC\_RMID = 0

Remove resource

IPC\_SET = 1

set ipc\_perm options

IPC\_STAT = 2

get ipc\_perm options

MSGMAX = 4056

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSGMNB = 16384

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSGMNI = 128

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSG\_EXCEPT = 2 shl 12

Internal Message control code. Do not use

MSG\_NOERROR = 1 shl 12

Internal Message control code. Do not use

SEM\_GETALL = 13

Semaphore operation: Get all semaphore values

SEM\_GETNCNT = 14

Semaphore operation: Get number of processes waiting for resource.

SEM\_GETPID = 11

Semaphore operation: Get process ID of last operation.

SEM\_GETVAL = 12

Semaphore operation: Get current value of semaphore

SEM\_GETZCNT = 15

Semaphore operation: Get number of processes waiting for semaphores to reach zero

`SEM_SEMMNI = 128`

Semaphore operation: ?

`SEM_SEMMNS = (SEM_SEMMNI * SEM_SEMMSL )`

Semaphore operation: ?

`SEM_SEMMSL = 32`

Semaphore operation: ?

`SEM_SEMOPM = 32`

Semaphore operation: ?

`SEM_SEVMX = 32767`

Semaphore operation: ?

`SEM_SETALL = 17`

Semaphore operation: Set all semaphore values

`SEM_SETVAL = 16`

Semaphore operation: Set semaphore value

`SEM_UNDO = $1000`

Constant for use in `semop` ([573](#))

`SHM_LOCK = 11`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` ([575](#)) call.

`SHM_R = 4 shl 6`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` ([575](#)) call.

`SHM_RDONLY = 1 shl 12`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` ([575](#)) call.

`SHM_REMAP = 4 shl 12`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` ([575](#)) call.

`SHM_RND = 2 shl 12`

This constant is used in the `shmctl` (575) call.

```
SHM_UNLOCK = 12
```

This constant is used in the `shmctl` (575) call.

```
SHM_W = 2 shl 6
```

This constant is used in the `shmctl` (575) call.

### 14.3.2 Types

```
key_t = TKey
```

Alias for `TKey` (561) type

```
msglen_t = culong
```

Message length type

```
msgqnum_t = culong
```

Message queue number type

```
PIPC_Perm = ^TIPC_Perm
```

Pointer to `TIPC_Perm` (561) record.

```
PMSG = ^TMSG
```

Pointer to `TMSG` (561) record

```
PMSGbuf = ^TMSGbuf
```

Pointer to `TMsgBuf` (562) record

```
PMSGinfo = ^TMSGinfo
```

Pointer to `TMSGinfo` (562) record

```
PMSQid_ds = ^TMSQid_ds
```

Pointer to `TMSQid_ds` (562)

```
PSEMBuf = ^TSEMBuf
```

Pointer to `TSembuf` (562) record.

```
PSEMid_ds = ^TSEMid_ds
```

Pointer to TSEMid\_ds (563) record.

```
PSEMinfo = ^TSEMinfo
```

Pointer to TSEMinfo (563) record.

```
PSEMun = ^TSEMun
```

Pointer to TSEMun (563) record

```
PShmid_DS = ^TShmid_ds
```

Pointer to TSHMid\_ds (563) record.

```
PSHMinfo = ^TSHMinfo
```

```
TIPC_Perm = record
  key : TKey;
  uid : Word;
  gid : Word;
  cuid : Word;
  cgid : Word;
  mode : Word;
  seq : Word;
end
```

TIPC\_Perm is used in all IPC systems to specify the permissions. It should never be used directly.

```
TKey = LongInt
```

Type returned by the ftok (564) key generating function.

```
TMSG = record
  msg_next : PMSG;
  msg_type : LongInt;
  msg_spot : PChar;
  msg_stime : LongInt;
  msg_ts : Integer;
end
```

Record used in the handling of message queues. Do not use directly.

```
TMSGbuf = record
  mtype : LongInt;
  mtext : Array[0..0] of Char;
end
```

The TMSGbuf record is a record containing the data of a record. you should never use this record directly, instead you should make your own record that follows the structure of the TMSGbuf record, but that has a size that is big enough to accomodate your messages. The mtype field should always be present, and should always be filled.

```
TMSGinfo = record
  msgpool : LongInt;
  msgmap : LongInt;
  msgmax : LongInt;
  msgmnb : LongInt;
  msgmni : LongInt;
  msgssz : LongInt;
  msgttl : LongInt;
  msgseg : Word;
end
```

Internal message system record. Do not use directly.

```
TMSQid_ds = record
  msg_perm : TIPC_Perm;
  msg_first : PMSG;
  msg_last : PMSG;
  msg_stime : LongInt;
  msg_rtime : LongInt;
  msg_ctime : LongInt;
  wwait : Pointer;
  rwait : pointer;
  msg_cbytes : Word;
  msg_qnum : Word;
  msg_qbytes : Word;
  msg_lspid : Word;
  msg_lrpid : Word;
end
```

This record should never be used directly, it is an internal kernel record. It's fields may change at any time.

```
TSEMbuf = record
  sem_num : cushort;
  sem_op : cshort;
  sem_flg : cshort;
end
```

The TSEMbuf record is used in the semop ([573](#)) call, and is used to specify which operations you want to do.

```
TSEMid_ds = record
  sem_perm : TIPC_Perm;
  sem_otime : LongInt;
  sem_ctime : LongInt;
```

```

sem_base : pointer;
sem_pending : pointer;
sem_pending_last : pointer;
undo : pointer;
sem_nsems : Word;
end

```

Structure returned by the `semctl` (568) call, contains all data of a semaphore

```

TSEMinfo = record
  semmap : cint;
  semmni : cint;
  semmns : cint;
  semmnu : cint;
  semmsl : cint;
  semopm : cint;
  semume : cint;
  semusz : cint;
  semvmx : cint;
  semaem : cint;
end

```

Internal semaphore system record. Do not use.

```

TSEMun = record
end

```

Record used in `semctl` (568) call.

```

TShmid_ds = record
  shm_perm : TIPC_Perm;
  shm_segsz : LongInt;
  shm_atime : LongInt;
  shm_dtime : LongInt;
  shm_ctime : LongInt;
  shm_cpid : Word;
  shm_lpid : Word;
  shm_nattch : Integer;
  shm_npages : Word;
  shm_pages : Pointer;
  attaches : pointer;
end

```

Record used in the `shmctl` (575) call to set or retrieve settings for shared memory.

```

TSHMinfo = record
  shmmax : cint;
  shmmni : cint;
  shmmni : cint;
end

```



```
shmseg : cint;
shmall : cint;
end
```

Record used by the shared memory system, Do not use directly.

## 14.4 Procedures and functions

### 14.4.1 ftok

Synopsis: Create token from filename

Declaration: `function ftok(Path: pchar; ID: cint) : TKey`

Visibility: default

Description: `ftok` returns a key that can be used in a `semget` (573), `shmget` (577) or `msgget` (567) call to access a new or existing IPC resource.

`Path` is the name of a file in the file system, `ID` is a character of your choice. The `ftok` call does the same as it's C counterpart, so a pascal program and a C program will access the same resource if they use the same `Path` and `ID`.

For an example, see `msgctl` (564), `semctl` (568) or `shmctl` (575).

Errors: `ftok` returns -1 if the file in `Path` doesn't exist.

See also: `semget` (573), `shmget` (577), `msgget` (567)

### 14.4.2 msgctl

Synopsis: Perform various operations on a message queue

Declaration: `function msgctl(msqid: cint; cmd: cint; buf: PMSQid_ds) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgctl` performs various operations on the message queue with id `ID`. Which operation is performed, depends on the `cmd` parameter, which can have one of the following values:

**IPC\_STAT** In this case, the `msgctl` call fills the `TMSQid_ds` structure with information about the message queue.

**IPC\_SET** In this case, the `msgctl` call sets the permissions of the queue as specified in the `ipc_perm` record inside `buf`.

**IPC\_RMID** If this is specified, the message queue will be removed from the system.

`buf` contains the data that are needed by the call. It can be `Nil` in case the message queue should be removed.

The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set accordingly.

See also: `msgget` (567), `msgsnd` (568), `msgrcv` (567)

**Listing:** `./ipcex/msgtool.pp`

---

```

program msgtool;

Uses ipc,baseunix;

Type
  PMyMsgBuf = ^TMyMsgBuf;
  TMyMsgBuf = record
    mtype : Longint;
    mtext : string[255];
  end;

Procedure DoError (Const Msg : string);

begin
  Writeln (msg,' returned an error : ',fpgeterrno);
  halt(1);
end;

Procedure SendMessage (Id : Longint;
                        Var Buf : TMyMsgBuf;
                        MType : Longint;
                        Const MText : String);

begin
  Writeln ( 'Sending message. ');
  Buf.mtype:=mtype;
  Buf.Mtext:=mtext;
  If msgsnd(Id,PMsgBuf(@Buf),256,0)=-1 then
    DoError('msgsnd');
end;

Procedure ReadMessage (ID : Longint;
                        Var Buf : TMyMsgBuf;
                        MType : longint);

begin
  Writeln ( 'Reading message. ');
  Buf.MType:=MType;
  If msgrcv(ID,PMSGBuf(@Buf),256,mtype,0)<>-1 then
    Writeln ( 'Type : ',buf.mtype,' Text : ',buf.mtext)
  else
    DoError ( 'msgrcv' );
end;

Procedure RemoveQueue ( ID : Longint);

begin
  If msgctl (id,IPC_RMID,Nil)<>-1 then
    Writeln ( 'Removed Queue with id ',Id);
end;

Procedure ChangeQueueMode (ID,mode : longint);

Var QueueDS : TMSQid_ds;

begin
  If msgctl (Id,IPC_STAT,@QueueDS)=-1 then
    DoError ( 'msgctl : stat');

```

```

Writeln ( 'Old permissions : ',QueueDS.msg_perm.mode);
QueueDS.msg_perm.mode:=Mode;
if msgctl ( ID,IPC_SET,@QueueDS)=0 then
    Writeln ( 'New permissions : ',QueueDS.msg_perm.mode)
else
    DoError ( 'msgctl : IPC_SET');
end;

procedure usage;

begin
    Writeln ( 'Usage : msgtool s(end)    <type> <text> (max 255 characters)');
    Writeln ( '                      r(eceive) <type>');
    Writeln ( '                      d(elete)');
    Writeln ( '                      m(ode) <decimal mode>');
    halt(1);
end;

Function StrToInt (S : String): longint;

Var M : longint;
    C : Integer;

begin
    val (S,M,C);
    If C<>0 Then DoError ( 'StrToInt : '+S);
    StrToInt:=M;
end;

Var
    Key : TKey;
    ID : longint;
    Buf : TMyMsgBuf;

const ipckey = '.'#0;

begin
    If Paramcount<1 then Usage;
    key := Ftok ( @ipckey[1],ord( 'M' ));
    ID:=msgget(key,IPC_CREAT or 438);
    If ID<0 then DoError ( 'MsgGet');
    Case upCase(Paramstr(1)[1]) of
        'S' : If ParamCount<>3 then
            Usage
        else
            SendMessage ( id ,Buf,StrToInt(Paramstr(2)),paramstr(3));
        'R' : If ParamCount<>2 then
            Usage
        else
            ReadMessage ( id ,buf ,strtoint(Paramstr(2)));
        'D' : If ParamCount<>1 then
            Usage
        else
            RemoveQueue ( ID );
        'M' : If ParamCount<>2 then
            Usage
        else
            ChangeQueueMode ( id ,strtoint(paramstr(2)));
    end;

```

```

    else
        Usage
    end;
end.

```

---

### 14.4.3 msgget

Synopsis: Return message queue ID, possibly creating the queue

Declaration: `function msgget(key: TKey;msgflg: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgget` returns the ID of the message queue described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `msgflg`, a new queue is created.

`msgflg` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT** The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL** If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the queue already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

For an example, see `msgctl` ([564](#)).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `ftok` ([564](#)), `msgsnd` ([568](#)), `msgrcv` ([567](#)), `msgctl` ([564](#))

### 14.4.4 msgrcv

Synopsis: Retrieve a message from the queue

Declaration: `function msgrcv(msqid: cint;msgp: PMSGbuf;msgsz: size_t;msgtyp: cint;msgflg: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgrcv` retrieves a message of type `msgtyp` from the message queue with ID `msqid`. `msgtyp` corresponds to the `mtype` field of the `TMSGbuf` record. The message is stored in the `MSGbuf` structure pointed to by `msgp`.

The `msgflg` parameter can be used to control the behaviour of the `msgrcv` call. It consists of an ORed combination of the following flags:

**0** No special meaning.

**IPC\_NOWAIT** If no messages are available, then the call returns immediately, with the `ENOMSG` error.

**MSG\_NOERROR** If the message size is wrong (too large), no error is generated, instead the message is truncated. Normally, in such cases, the call returns an error (`E2BIG`)

The function returns `True` if the message was received correctly, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `msgctl` ([564](#)).

Errors: In case of error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `msgget` ([567](#)), `msgsnd` ([568](#)), `msgctl` ([564](#))

### 14.4.5 msgsnd

Synopsis: Send a message to the message queue

Declaration: `function msgsnd(msqid: cint;msgp: PMSGbuf;msgsz: size_t;msgflg: cint)  
: cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgsnd` sends a message to a message queue with ID `msqid`. `msgp` is a pointer to a message buffer, that should be based on the `TMsgBuf` type. `msgsz` is the size of the message (NOT of the message buffer record !)

The `msgflg` can have a combination of the following values (ORed together):

**0**No special meaning. The message will be written to the queue. If the queue is full, then the process is blocked.

**IPC\_NOWAIT**If the queue is full, then no message is written, and the call returns immediately.

The function returns `True` if the message was sent successfully, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `msgctl` (564).

Errors: In case of error, the call returns `False`, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `msgget` (567), `msgrcv` (567), `msgctl` (564)

### 14.4.6 semctl

Synopsis: Perform various control operations on a semaphore set

Declaration: `function semctl(semid: cint;semnum: cint;cmd: cint;var arg: TSEMun)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `semctl` performs various operations on the semaphore `semnum` with semaphore set id `ID`.

The `arg` parameter supplies the data needed for each call. This is a variant record that should be filled differently, according to the command:

Type

```
TSEMun = record
  case longint of
    0 : ( val : longint );
    1 : ( buf : PSEMid_ds );
    2 : ( arr : PWord );
    3 : ( padbuf : PSeminfo );
    4 : ( padpad : pointer );
  end;
```

Which operation is performed, depends on the `cmd` parameter, which can have one of the following values:

**IPC\_STAT**In this case, the `arg` record should have its `buf` field set to the address of a `TSEMid_ds` record. The `semctl` call fills this `TSEMid_ds` structure with information about the semaphore set.

**IPC\_SET**In this case, the `arg` record should have its `buf` field set to the address of a `TSEMid_ds` record. The `semctl` call sets the permissions of the queue as specified in the `ipc_perm` record.

**IPC\_RMID**If this is specified, the semaphore set is removed from the system.

**GETALL**In this case, the `arr` field of `arg` should point to a memory area where the values of the semaphores will be stored. The size of this memory area is `\var{SizeOf(Word)* Number of semaphores in the set}`. This call will then fill the memory array with all the values of the semaphores.

**GETNCNT**This will fill the `val` field of the `arg` union with the number of processes waiting for resources.

**GETPID**`semctl` returns the process ID of the process that performed the last `semop` (573) call.

**GETVAL**`semctl` returns the value of the semaphore with number `semnum`.

**GETZCNT**`semctl` returns the number of processes waiting for semaphores that reach value zero.

**SETALL**In this case, the `arr` field of `arg` should point to a memory area where the values of the semaphores will be retrieved from. The size of this memory area is `\var{SizeOf(Word)* Number of semaphores in the set}`. This call will then set the values of the semaphores from the memory array.

**SETVAL**This will set the value of semaphore `semnum` to the value in the `val` field of the `arg` parameter.

The function returns -1 on error.

Errors: The function returns -1 on error, and `IPCError` is set accordingly.

See also: `semget` (573), `semop` (573)

**Listing:** `./ipccex/semtool.pp`

---

```

Program semtool;

{ Program to demonstrat the use of semaphores }

Uses ipc,baseunix;

Const MaxSemValue = 5;

Procedure DoError (Const Msg : String);

begin
  Writeln ( 'Error : ',msg,' Code : ',fpgeterrno);
  Halt(1);
end;

Function getsemval (ID,Member : longint) : longint;

Var S : TSEMun;

begin
  GetSemVal:= SemCtl(id ,member,SEM_GETVAL,S);
end;

Procedure DispVal (ID,member : longint);

begin
  writeln ( 'Value for member ',member,' is ',GetSemVal(ID,Member));

```

```

end;

Function GetMemberCount (ID : Longint) : longint;

Var opts : TSEMun;
    semds : TSEMid_ds;

begin
    opts.buf := @semds;
    If semctl (Id, 0, IPC_STAT, opts) <> -1 then
        GetMemberCount := semds.sem_nsems
    else
        GetMemberCount := -1;
end;

Function OpenSem (Key : TKey) : Longint;

begin
    OpenSem := semget (Key, 0, 438);
    If OpenSem = -1 then
        DoError ( 'OpenSem' );
end;

Function CreateSem (Key : TKey; Members : Longint) : Longint;

Var Count : Longint;
    Semopts : TSemun;

begin
    // the semmsl constant seems kernel specific
    { If members > semmsl then
        DoError ( 'Sorry, maximum number of semaphores in set exceeded' );
    }
    WriteLn ( 'Trying to create a new semaphore set with ', members, ' members.' );
    CreateSem := semget (key, members, IPC_CREAT or IPC_Excl or 438);
    If CreateSem = -1 then
        DoError ( 'Semaphore set already exists.' );
    Semopts.val := MaxSemValue; { Initial value of semaphores }
    For Count := 0 to Members - 1 do
        semctl (CreateSem, count, SEM_SETVAL, semopts);
end;

Procedure lockSem (ID, Member: Longint);

Var lock : TSEMbuf;

begin
    With lock do
        begin
            sem_num := 0;
            sem_op := -1;
            sem_flg := IPC_NOWAIT;
        end;
        if (member < 0) or (member > GetMemberCount (ID) - 1) then
            DoError ( 'semaphore member out of range' );
        if getsemval (ID, member) = 0 then
            DoError ( 'Semaphore resources exhausted (no lock)' );
        lock.sem_num := member;

```

```

    Writeln ( 'Attempting to lock member ',member, ' of semaphore ',ID);
    if semop(Id,@lock,1)=-1 then
        DoError ( 'Lock failed')
    else
        Writeln ( 'Semaphore resources decremented by one');
        dispval(ID,Member);
end;

Procedure UnlockSem (ID,Member: Longint);

Var Unlock : TSEMbuf;

begin
    With Unlock do
        begin
            sem_num:=0;
            sem_op:=1;
            sem_flg:=IPC_NOWAIT;
        end;
        if (member<0) or (member>GetMemberCount(ID)-1) then
            DoError ( 'semaphore member out of range');
        if getsemval(ID,member)=MaxSemValue then
            DoError ( 'Semaphore not locked');
        Unlock.sem_num:=member;
        Writeln ( 'Attempting to unlock member ',member, ' of semaphore ',ID);
        if semop(Id,@unlock,1)=-1 then
            DoError ( 'Unlock failed')
        else
            Writeln ( 'Semaphore resources incremented by one');
            dispval(ID,Member);
end;

Procedure RemoveSem (ID : longint);

var S : TSemun;

begin
    If semctl(Id,0,IPC_RMID,s)<>-1 then
        Writeln ( 'Semaphore removed')
    else
        DoError ( 'Couldn't remove semaphore');
end;

Procedure ChangeMode (ID,Mode : longint);

Var rc : longint;
    opts : TSEMun;
    semds : TSEMid_ds;

begin
    opts.buf:=@semds;
    If not semctl (Id,0,IPC_STAT,opts)<>-1 then
        DoError ( 'Couldn't stat semaphore');
    Writeln ( 'Old permissions were : ',semds.sem_perm.mode);
    semds.sem_perm.mode:=mode;
    If semctl(id,0,IPC_SET,opts)<>-1 then
        Writeln ( 'Set permissions to ',mode)

```



```

    else
        DoError ( 'Couldn't set permissions' );
end;

Procedure PrintSem ( ID : longint );

Var I, cnt : longint;

begin
    cnt:=getmembercount(ID);
    Writeln ( 'Semaphore ', ID, ' has ', cnt, ' Members' );
    For I:=0 to cnt-1 Do
        DispVal(id, i);
end;

Procedure USage;

begin
    Writeln ( 'Usage : semtool c(reate) <count>' );
    Writeln ( '          l(ock) <member>' );
    Writeln ( '          u(nlock) <member>' );
    Writeln ( '          d(etele)' );
    Writeln ( '          m(ode) <mode>' );
    halt(1);
end;

Function StrToInt ( S : String ): longint;

Var M : longint;
    C : Integer;

begin
    val ( S,M,C );
    If C<>0 Then DoError ( 'StrToInt : '+S );
    StrToInt:=M;
end;

Var Key : TKey;
    ID : Longint;

const ipckey='.#0;

begin
    If ParamCount<1 then USage;
    key:=ftok ( @ipckey[1],ORD( 's' ));
    Case UpCase(Paramstr(1)[1]) of
        'C' : begin
            if paramcount<>2 then usage;
            CreateSem ( key, strtoint(paramstr(2)));
            end;
        'L' : begin
            if paramcount<>2 then usage;
            ID:=OpenSem ( key );
            LockSem ( ID, strtoint(paramstr(2)));
            end;
        'U' : begin
            if paramcount<>2 then usage;

```

---

```

        ID:=OpenSem ( key );
        UnLockSem ( ID , strtoint ( paramstr ( 2 ) ) );
        end;
'M' : begin
        if paramcount<>2 then usage;
        ID:=OpenSem ( key );
        ChangeMode ( ID , strtoint ( paramstr ( 2 ) ) );
        end;
'D' : Begin
        ID:=OpenSem ( Key );
        RemoveSem ( Id );
        end;
'P' : begin
        ID:=OpenSem ( Key );
        PrintSem ( Id );
        end;
else
        Usage
    end;
end.

```

---

#### 14.4.7 semget

Synopsis: Return the ID of a semaphore set, possibly creating the set

Declaration: `function semget(key: TKey;nsems: cint;semflg: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `msgget` returns the ID of the semaphore set described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `semflg`, a new queue is created.

`semflg` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT** The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL** If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the set already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

if a new set of semaphores is created, then there will be `nsems` semaphores in it.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `ftok` ([564](#)), `semop` ([573](#)), `semctl` ([568](#))

#### 14.4.8 semop

Synopsis: Perform semaphore operation.

Declaration: `function semop(semid: cint;sops: PSEMbuf;nsops: cuint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `semop` performs a set of operations on a message queue. `sops` points to an array of type `TSEMbuf`. The array should contain `nsops` elements.

The fields of the `TSEMbuf` ([562](#)) structure

```
TSEMBuf = record
    sem_num : word;
    sem_op  : integer;
    sem_flg : integer;
```

should be filled as follows:

**sem\_num**The number of the semaphore in the set on which the operation must be performed.

**sem\_op**The operation to be performed. The operation depends on the sign of `sem_op`: A positive number is simply added to the current value of the semaphore. If 0 (zero) is specified, then the process is suspended until the specified semaphore reaches zero. If a negative number is specified, it is subtracted from the current value of the semaphore. If the value would become negative then the process is suspended until the value becomes big enough, unless `IPC_NOWAIT` is specified in the `sem_flg`.

**sem\_flg**Optional flags: if `IPC_NOWAIT` is specified, then the calling process will never be suspended.

The function returns `True` if the operations were successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case of error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `semget` (573), `semctl` (568)

### 14.4.9 shmat

Synopsis: Attach a shared memory block.

Declaration: `function shmat(shmid: cint; shmaddr: pointer; shmflg: cint) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmat` attaches a shared memory block with identified `shmid` to the current process. The function returns a pointer to the shared memory block.

If `shmaddr` is `Nil`, then the system chooses a free unmapped memory region, as high up in memory space as possible.

If `shmaddr` is non-nil, and `SHM_RND` is in `shmflg`, then the returned address is `shmaddr`, rounded down to `SHMLBA`. If `SHM_RND` is not specified, then `shmaddr` must be a page-aligned address.

The parameter `shmflg` can be used to control the behaviour of the `shmat` call. It consists of a ORed combination of the following constants:

**SHM\_RND**The suggested address in `shmaddr` is rounded down to `SHMLBA`.

**SHM\_RDONLY**the shared memory is attached for read access only. Otherwise the memory is attached for read-write. The process then needs read-write permissions to access the shared memory.

For an example, see `shmctl` (575).

Errors: If an error occurs, -1 is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` (577), `shmdt` (577), `shmctl` (575)

**14.4.10 shmctl**

**Synopsis:** Perform control operations on a shared memory block.

**Declaration:** `function shmctl(shmid: cint;cmd: cint;buf: PShmid_DS) : cint`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `shmctl` performs various operations on the shared memory block identified by identifier `shmid`.

The `buf` parameter points to a `TSHMid_ds` record. The `cmd` parameter is used to pass which operation is to be performed. It can have one of the following values :

**IPC\_STAT**`shmctl` fills the `TSHMid_ds` record that `buf` points to with the available information about the shared memory block.

**IPC\_SET**applies the values in the `ipc_perm` record that `buf` points to, to the shared memory block.

**IPC\_RMID**the shared memory block is destroyed (after all processes to which the block is attached, have detached from it).

If successful, the function returns `True`, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** If an error occurs, the function returns `False`, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` ([577](#)), `shmat` ([574](#)), `shmdt` ([577](#))

**Listing:** `./ipccex/shmtool.pp`

---

```

Program shmtool;

uses ipc , strings , Baseunix;

Const SegSize = 100;

var key : Tkey;
    shmid,cntr : longint;
    segptr : pchar;

Procedure USage;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Usage : shmtool w(rite) text' );
  writeln ( '           r(ead)' );
  writeln ( '           d(elete)' );
  writeln ( '           m(ode change) mode' );
  halt (1);
end;

Procedure Writeshm (ID : Longint; ptr : pchar; S : string);

begin
  strcpy ( ptr , s );
end;

Procedure Readshm(ID : longint; ptr : pchar);

begin
  Writeln ( 'Read : ', ptr );
end;

```

```

Procedure removeshm (ID : Longint);

begin
    shmctl (ID,IPC_RMID,Nil);
    writeln ( 'Shared memory marked for deletion' );
end;

Procedure CHangeMode (ID : longint; mode : String);

Var m : word;
    code : integer;
    data : TSHMid_ds;

begin
    val (mode,m,code);
    if code<>0 then
        usage;
    If shmctl (shmid,IPC_STAT,@data)=-1 then
        begin
            writeln ( 'Error : shmctl : ',fpgeterrno);
            halt(1);
        end;
    writeln ( 'Old permissions : ',data.shm_perm.mode);
    data.shm_perm.mode:=m;
    If shmctl (shmid,IPC_SET,@data)=-1 then
        begin
            writeln ( 'Error : shmctl : ',fpgeterrno);
            halt(1);
        end;
    writeln ( 'New permissions : ',data.shm_perm.mode);
end;

const ftokpath = '.'#0;

begin
    if paramcount<1 then usage;
    key := ftok (pchar(@ftokpath[1]),ord('S'));
    shmid := shmget(key,segsz,IPC_CREAT or IPC_EXCL or 438);
    If shmid=-1 then
        begin
            Writeln ( 'Shared memory exists. Opening as client' );
            shmid := shmget(key,segsz,0);
            If shmid = -1 then
                begin
                    Writeln ( 'shmget : Error ! ',fpgeterrno);
                    halt(1);
                end
            end
        else
            Writeln ( 'Creating new shared memory segment.' );
            segptr:=shmat(shmid,Nil,0);
            if longint(segptr)=-1 then
                begin
                    Writeln ( 'Shmat : error ! ',fpgeterrno);
                    halt(1);
                end;
            case upcase(paramstr(1)[1]) of

```

---

```

    'W' : writeshm ( shmidx, segptr, paramstr(2));
    'R' : readshm ( shmidx, segptr);
    'D' : removeshm(shmid);
    'M' : changemode ( shmidx, paramstr(2));
else
    begin
        writeln ( paramstr(1));
        usage;
    end;
end;
end.

```

---

### 14.4.11 shmdt

Synopsis: Detach shared memory block.

Declaration: `function shmdt(shmaddr: pointer) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmdt` detaches the shared memory at address `shmaddr`. This shared memory block is unavailable to the current process, until it is attached again by a call to `shmat` ([574](#)).

The function returns `True` if the memory block was detached successfully, `False` otherwise.

Errors: On error, `False` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

See also: `shmget` ([577](#)), `shmat` ([574](#)), `shmctl` ([575](#))

### 14.4.12 shmget

Synopsis: Return the ID of a shared memory block, possibly creating it

Declaration: `function shmget(key: TKey; size: cint; flag: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

Description: `shmget` returns the ID of a shared memory block, described by `key`. Depending on the flags in `flag`, a new memory block is created.

`flag` can have one or more of the following values (combined by ORs):

**IPC\_CREAT** The queue is created if it doesn't already exist.

**IPC\_EXCL** If used in combination with `IPC_CREAT`, causes the call to fail if the queue already exists. It cannot be used by itself.

Optionally, the flags can be ORed with a permission mode, which is the same mode that can be used in the file system.

if a new memory block is created, then it will have size `Size` bytes in it.

Errors: On error, `-1` is returned, and `IPCError` is set.

## Chapter 15

# Reference for unit 'Keyboard'

### 15.1 Writing a keyboard driver

Writing a keyboard driver means that hooks must be created for most of the keyboard unit functions. The `TKeyboardDriver` record contains a field for each of the possible hooks:

```
TKeyboardDriver = Record
  InitDriver : Procedure;
  DoneDriver : Procedure;
  GetKeyEvent : Function : TKeyEvent;
  PollKeyEvent : Function : TKeyEvent;
  GetShiftState : Function : Byte;
  TranslateKeyEvent : Function (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent): TKeyEvent;
  TranslateKeyEventUnicode: Function (KeyEvent: TKeyEvent): TKeyEvent;
end;
```

The meaning of these hooks is explained below:

**InitDriver** Called to initialize and enable the driver. Guaranteed to be called only once. This should initialize all needed things for the driver.

**DoneDriver** Called to disable and clean up the driver. Guaranteed to be called after a call to `initDriver`. This should clean up all things initialized by `InitDriver`.

**GetKeyEvent** Called by `GetKeyEvent` ([586](#)). Must wait for and return the next key event. It should NOT store keys.

**PollKeyEvent** Called by `PollKeyEvent` ([591](#)). It must return the next key event if there is one. Should not store keys.

**GetShiftState** Called by `PollShiftStateEvent` ([592](#)). Must return the current shift state.

**TranslateKeyEvent** Should translate a raw key event to a correct key event, i.e. should fill in the shiftstate and convert function key scancodes to function key keycodes. If the `TranslateKeyEvent` is not filled in, a default translation function will be called which converts the known scancodes from the tables in the previous section to a correct keyevent.

**TranslateKeyEventUnicode** Should translate a key event to a unicode key representation.

Strictly speaking, only the `GetKeyEvent` and `PollKeyEvent` hooks must be implemented for the driver to function correctly.

The example unit demonstrates how a keyboard driver can be installed. It takes the installed driver, and hooks into the `GetKeyEvent` function to register and log the key events in a file. This driver can work on top of any other driver, as long as it is inserted in the `uses` clause *after* the real driver unit, and the real driver unit should set the driver record in its initialization section.

Note that with a simple extension of this unit could be used to make a driver that is capable of recording and storing a set of keyboard strokes, and replaying them at a later time, so a 'keyboard macro' capable driver. This driver could sit on top of any other driver.

## 15.2 Keyboard scan codes

Special physical keys are encoded with the DOS scan codes for these keys in the second byte of the `TKeyEvent` (584) type. A complete list of scan codes can be found in the below table. This is the list of keys that is used by the default key event translation mechanism. When writing a keyboard driver, either these constants should be returned by the various key event functions, or the `TranslateKeyEvent` hook should be implemented by the driver.

A list of scan codes for special keys and combinations with the `SHIFT`, `ALT` and `CTRL` keys can be found in the following table: They are for quick reference only.

## 15.3 Overview

The `KeyBoard` unit implements a keyboard access layer which is system independent. It can be used to poll the keyboard state and wait for certain events. Waiting for a keyboard event can be done with the `GetKeyEvent` (586) function, which will return a driver-dependent key event. This key event can be translated to a interpretable event by the `TranslateKeyEvent` (595) function. The result of this function can be used in the other event examining functions.

A custom keyboard driver can be installed using the `SetKeyboardDriver` (594) function. The current keyboard driver can be retrieved using the `GetKeyboardDriver` (586) function. The last section of this chapter demonstrates how to make a keyboard driver.

## 15.4 Constants, types and variables

### 15.4.1 Constants

`AltPrefix : Byte = 0`

Alt key name index.

`CtrlPrefix : Byte = 0`

Alt key name index.

`errKbdBase = 1010`

Base of keyboard routine error reporting constants.

`errKbdInitError = errKbdBase + 0`



Failed to initialize keyboard driver

`errKbdNotImplemented = errKbdBase + 1`

Keyboard driver not implemented.

`kbAlt = 8`

Alt key modifier

`kbASCII = $00`

Ascii code key event

`kbCtrl = 4`

Control key modifier

`kbdApps = $FF17`

Application key (popup-menu) pressed.

`kbdDelete = $FF2A`

Delete key pressed

`kbdDown = $FF27`

Arrow down key pressed

`kbdEnd = $FF26`

End key pressed

`kbdF1 = $FF01`

F1 function key pressed.

`kbdF10 = $FF0A`

F10 function key pressed.

`kbdF11 = $FF0B`

F12 function key pressed.

`kbdF12 = $FF0C`

F12 function key pressed.

`kbdF13 = $FF0D`

F13 function key pressed.

kbdF14 = \$FF0E

F14 function key pressed.

kbdF15 = \$FF0F

F15 function key pressed.

kbdF16 = \$FF10

F16 function key pressed.

kbdF17 = \$FF11

F17 function key pressed.

kbdF18 = \$FF12

F18 function key pressed.

kbdF19 = \$FF13

F19 function key pressed.

kbdF2 = \$FF02

F2 function key pressed.

kbdF20 = \$FF14

F20 function key pressed.

kbdF3 = \$FF03

F3 function key pressed.

kbdF4 = \$FF04

F4 function key pressed.

kbdF5 = \$FF05

F5 function key pressed.

kbdF6 = \$FF06

F6 function key pressed.

kbdF7 = \$FF07

F7 function key pressed.

kbdF8 = \$FF08

F8 function key pressed.

kbdF9 = \$FF09

F9 function key pressed.

kbdHome = \$FF20

Home key pressed

kbdInsert = \$FF29

Insert key pressed

kbdLeft = \$FF23

Arrow left key pressed

kbdLWin = \$FF15

Left windows key pressed.

kbdMiddle = \$FF24

Middle key pad key pressed (numerical 5)

kbdPgDn = \$FF28

Page down key pressed

kbdPgUp = \$FF22

Page Up key pressed

kbdRight = \$FF25

Arrow right key pressed

kbdRWin = \$FF16

Right windows key pressed.

kbdUp = \$FF21

Arrow up key pressed

kbFnKey = \$02

function key pressed.

`kbLeftShift = 1`

Left shift key modifier

`kbPhys = $03`

Physical key code event

`kbReleased = $04`

Key release event

`kbRightShift = 2`

Right shift key modifier

`kbShift = kbLeftShift or kbRightShift`

Shift key modifier

`kbUniCode = $01`

Unicode code key event

`SAnd : String = 'AND'`

This constant is used as the 'And' word in key descriptions. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`ShiftPrefix : Byte = 0`

Shift key name index.

`SKeyPad : Array[0..($FF2F-kbdHome)] of String = ('Home', 'Up', 'PgUp', 'Left', 'Middle',`

This constant describes all keypad keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SLeftRight : Array[1..2] of String = ('LEFT', 'RIGHT' )`

This constant contains strings to describe left and right keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SScanCode : String = 'Key with scancode '`

This constant contains a string to denote a scancode key event. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

`SShift : Array[1..3] of String = ('SHIFT', 'CTRL', 'ALT' )`

This constant describes the various modifier keys. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

```
SUnicodeChar : String = 'Unicode character '
```

This constant contains a string to denote a unicode key event. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

```
SUnknownFunctionKey : String = 'Unknown function key : '
```

This constant contains a string to denote that an unknown function key was found. This constant is used by the key event description routines. It can be changed to localize the key descriptions when needed.

### 15.4.2 Types

```
TKeyboardDriver = record
  InitDriver : procedure;
  DoneDriver : procedure;
  GetKeyEvent : function : TKeyEvent;
  PollKeyEvent : function : TKeyEvent;
  GetShiftState : function : Byte;
  TranslateKeyEvent : function(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent;
  TranslateKeyEventUniCode : function(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent;
end
```

The TKeyboardDriver record can be used to install a custom keyboard driver with the SetKeyboardDriver (594) function.

The various fields correspond to the different functions of the keyboard unit interface. For more information about this record see kbdriver (578)

```
TKeyEvent = Cardinal
```

The TKeyEvent type is the base type for all keyboard events.

The key stroke is encoded in the 4 bytes of the TKeyEvent type. The various fields of the key stroke encoding can be obtained by typecasting the TKeyEvent type to the TKeyRecord (584) type.

```
TKeyRecord = packed record
  KeyCode : Word;
  ShiftState : Byte;
  Flags : Byte;
end
```

The structure of a TKeyRecord structure is explained in the following table:

The shift-state can be checked using the various shift-state constants, and the flags in the last byte can be checked using one of the kbASCII, kbUnicode, kbFnKey, kbPhys, kbReleased constants.

If there are two keys returning the same char-code, there's no way to find out which one was pressed (Gray+ and Simple+). If it needs to be known which was pressed, the untranslated keycodes must be used, but these are system dependent. System dependent constants may be defined to cover those, with possibly having the same name (but different value).

## 15.5 Procedures and functions

### 15.5.1 AddSequence

Declaration: `procedure AddSequence(const St: String; AChar: Byte; AScan: Byte)`

Visibility: default

### 15.5.2 DoneKeyboard

Synopsis: Deactivate keyboard driver.

Declaration: `procedure DoneKeyboard`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneKeyboard` de-initializes the keyboard interface if the keyboard driver is active. If the keyboard driver is not active, the function does nothing.

This will cause the keyboard driver to clear up any allocated memory, or restores the console or terminal the program was running in to its initial state before the call to `InitKeyBoard` (590). This function should be called on program exit. Failing to do so may leave the terminal or console window in an unusable state. Its exact action depends on the platform on which the program is running.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitKeyBoard` (590)

### 15.5.3 FindSequence

Declaration: `function FindSequence(const St: String; var AChar: Byte; var AScan: Byte)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

### 15.5.4 FunctionKeyName

Synopsis: Return string representation of a function key code.

Declaration: `function FunctionKeyName(KeyCode: Word) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `FunctionKeyName` returns a string representation of the function key with code `KeyCode`. This can be an actual function key, or one of the cursor movement keys.

Errors: In case `KeyCode` does not contain a function code, the `SUnknownFunctionKey` string is returned, appended with the `KeyCode`.

See also: `ShiftStateToString` (594), `KeyEventToString` (591)

Listing: `./kbdex/ex8.pp`

---

```

Program Example8;

{ Program to demonstrate the FunctionKeyName function. }

Uses keyboard;

Var
    K : TKeyEvent;

begin
    InitKeyboard;
    WriteIn('Press function keys, press "q" to end. ');
    Repeat
        K:=GetKeyEvent;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
        If IsFunctionKey(k) then
            begin
                Write('Got function key : ');
                WriteIn(FunctionKeyName(TkeyRecord(K).KeyCode));
            end;
        Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q ');
    DoneKeyboard;
end.

```

---

### 15.5.5 GetKeyboardDriver

Synopsis: Return the current keyboard driver record.

Declaration: `procedure GetKeyboardDriver(var Driver: TKeyboardDriver)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyboardDriver` returns in `Driver` the currently active keyboard driver. This function can be used to enhance an existing keyboarddriver.

For more information on getting and setting the keyboard driver `kbddriver` ([578](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `SetKeyboardDriver` ([594](#))

### 15.5.6 GetKeyEvent

Synopsis: Get the next raw key event, wait if needed.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEvent : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEvent` returns the last keyevent if one was stored in `PendingKeyEvent`, or waits for one if none is available. A non-blocking version is available in `PollKeyEvent` ([591](#)).

The returned key is encoded as a `TKeyEvent` type variable, and is normally the physical key scan code, (the scan code is driver dependent) which can be translated with one of the translation functions `TranslateKeyEvent` ([595](#)) or `TranslateKeyEventUniCode` ([595](#)). See the types section for a description of how the key is described.

Errors: If no key became available, 0 is returned.

See also: [PutKeyEvent \(593\)](#), [PollKeyEvent \(591\)](#), [TranslateKeyEvent \(595\)](#), [TranslateKeyEventUnicode \(595\)](#)

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex1.pp

---

```

program example1;

{ This program demonstrates the GetKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyboard;
  WriteLn( 'Press keys , press "q" to end.' );
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
    Write( 'Got key event with ' );
    Case GetKeyEventFlags(K) of
      kbASCII    : WriteLn( 'ASCII key' );
      kbUnicode  : WriteLn( 'Unicode key' );
      kbFnKey    : WriteLn( 'Function key' );
      kbPhys     : WriteLn( 'Physical key' );
      kbReleased : WriteLn( 'Released key event' );
    end;
    K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
    WriteLn( 'Got key : ', KeyEventToString(K));
    Until ( GetKeyEventChar(K)='q' );
  DoneKeyboard;
end.
```

---

### 15.5.7 GetKeyEventChar

Synopsis: Get the character key part of a key event.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventChar(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEventChar` returns the charcode part of the given `KeyEvent`, if it contains a translated character key keycode. The charcode is simply the ascii code of the character key that was pressed.

It returns the null character if the key was not a character key, but e.g. a function key.

For an example, see [GetKeyEvent \(586\)](#)

Errors: None.

See also: [GetKeyEventUnicode \(589\)](#), [GetKeyEventShiftState \(589\)](#), [GetKeyEventFlags \(588\)](#), [GetKeyEventCode \(587\)](#), [GetKeyEvent \(586\)](#)

### 15.5.8 GetKeyEventCode

Synopsis: Translate function key part of a key event code.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventCode(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Word`



Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEventCode` returns the translated function keycode part of the given `KeyEvent`, if it contains a translated function key.

If the key pressed was not a function key, the null character is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventUnicode` (589), `GetKeyEventShiftState` (589), `GetKeyEventFlags` (588), `GetKeyEventChar` (587), `GetKeyEvent` (586)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `Example2`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetKeyEventCode function. }*

**Uses** `keyboard`;

**Var**

`K : TKeyEvent`;

**begin**

`InitKeyBoard`;

**WriteIn** ( 'Press function keys , or press "q" to end.' );

**Repeat**

`K:=GetKeyEvent`;

`K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K)`;

**If** ( `GetKeyEventFlags(K)<>KbfnKey` ) **then**

**WriteIn** ( 'Not a function key' )

**else**

**begin**

**Write** ( 'Got key ( ', `GetKeyEventCode(K)` );

**WriteIn** ( ' ) : ', `KeyEventToString(K)` );

**end**;

**Until** ( `GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q'` );

`DoneKeyboard`;

**end.**

---

### 15.5.9 GetKeyEventFlags

Synopsis: Extract the flags from a key event.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventFlags(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEventFlags` returns the flags part of the given `KeyEvent`.

For an example, see `GetKeyEvent` (586)

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventUnicode` (589), `GetKeyEventShiftState` (589), `GetKeyEventCode` (587), `GetKeyEventChar` (587), `GetKeyEvent` (586)

### 15.5.10 GetKeyEventShiftState

Synopsis: Return the current state of the shift keys.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventShiftState(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Byte`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetKeyEventShiftState` returns the shift-state values of the given `KeyEvent`. This can be used to detect which of the modifier keys `Shift`, `Alt` or `Ctrl` were pressed. If none were pressed, zero is returned.

Note that this function does not always return expected results; In a unix X-Term, the modifier keys do not always work.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetKeyEventUniCode` ([589](#)), `GetKeyEventFlags` ([588](#)), `GetKeyEventCode` ([587](#)), `GetKeyEventChar` ([587](#)), `GetKeyEvent` ([586](#))

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `Example3;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetKeyEventShiftState function. }*

**Uses** `keyboard;`

**Var**

`K : TKeyEvent;`  
`S : Byte;`

**begin**

`InitKeyBoard;`  
**Write** (`'Press keys combined with CTRL/SHIFT/ALT'`);  
**WriteLn** (`', or press "q" to end.'`);  
**Repeat**  
  `K:=GetKeyEvent;`  
  `K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);`  
  `S:=GetKeyEventShiftState(K);`  
  **If** (`S=0`) **then**  
    **WriteLn** (`'No special keys pressed'`)  
  **else**  
    **begin**  
      **WriteLn** (`'Detected special keys : ',ShiftStateToString(K,False)`);  
      **WriteLn** (`'Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K)`);  
    **end;**  
  **Until** (`GetKeyEventChar(K)='q'`);  
  `DoneKeyboard;`

**end.**

---

### 15.5.11 GetKeyEventUniCode

Synopsis: Return the unicode key event.

Declaration: `function GetKeyEventUniCode(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetKeyEventUnicode` returns the unicode part of the given `KeyEvent` if it contains a translated unicode character.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetKeyEventShiftState` (589), `GetKeyEventFlags` (588), `GetKeyEventCode` (587), `GetKeyEventChar` (587), `GetKeyEvent` (586)

### 15.5.12 InitKeyboard

**Synopsis:** Initialize the keyboard driver.

**Declaration:** `procedure InitKeyboard`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `InitKeyboard` initializes the keyboard driver. If the driver is already active, it does nothing. When the driver is initialized, it will do everything necessary to ensure the functioning of the keyboard, including allocating memory, initializing the terminal etc.

This function should be called once, before using any of the keyboard functions. When it is called, the `DoneKeyboard` (585) function should also be called before exiting the program or changing the keyboard driver with `SetKeyboardDriver` (594).

For an example, see most other functions.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `DoneKeyboard` (585), `SetKeyboardDriver` (594)

### 15.5.13 IsFunctionKey

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given event is a function key event.

**Declaration:** `function IsFunctionKey(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsFunctionKey` returns `True` if the given key event in `KeyEvent` was a function key or not.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetKeyEvent` (586)

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex7.pp`

---

```

program example1;

{ This program demonstrates the GetKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys , press "q" to end. ');
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
```

---

```

K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
If IsFunctionKey(K) then
  WriteLn('Got function key : ',KeyEventToString(K))
else
  WriteLn('not a function key. ');
Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');
DoneKeyBoard;
end.

```

---

### 15.5.14 KeyEventToString

Synopsis: Return a string describing the key event.

Declaration: `function KeyEventToString(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyEventToString` translates the key event in `KeyEvent` to a human-readable description of the pressed key. It will use the constants described in the constants section to do so.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: If an unknown key is passed, the scancode is returned, prefixed with the `SScanCode` string.

See also: `FunctionKeyName` ([585](#)), `ShiftStateToString` ([594](#))

### 15.5.15 KeyPressed

Synopsis: Check event queue for key press

Declaration: `function KeyPressed : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyPressed` checks the keyboard event queue to see whether a key event is present, and returns `True` if a key event is available. This function simply calls `PollKeyEvent` ([591](#)) and checks for a valid result.

Errors: None.

See also: `PollKeyEvent` ([591](#)), `GetKeyEvent` ([586](#))

### 15.5.16 PollKeyEvent

Synopsis: Get next key event, but does not wait.

Declaration: `function PollKeyEvent : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollKeyEvent` checks whether a key event is available, and returns it if one is found. If no event is pending, it returns 0.

Note that this does not remove the key from the pending keys. The key should still be retrieved from the pending key events list with the `GetKeyEvent` ([586](#)) function.

Errors: None.

See also: `PutKeyEvent` ([593](#)), `GetKeyEvent` ([586](#))

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex4.pp

---

```

program example4;

{ This program demonstrates the PollKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteIn( 'Press keys , press "q" to end.' );
  Repeat
    K:=PollKeyEvent;
    If k<>0 then
      begin
        K:=GetKeyEvent;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
        writeIn;
        WriteIn( 'Got key : ',KeyEventToString(K));
      end
    else
      write( '. ' );
    Until ( GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q' );
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.

```

---

### 15.5.17 PollShiftStateEvent

Synopsis: Check current shift state.

Declaration: `function PollShiftStateEvent : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollShiftStateEvent` returns the current shiftstate in a keyevent. This will return 0 if there is no key event pending.

Errors: None.

See also: `PollKeyEvent` ([591](#)), `GetKeyEvent` ([586](#))

**Listing:** ./kbdex/ex6.pp

---

```

program example6;

{ This program demonstrates the PollShiftStateEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteIn( 'Press keys , press "q" to end.' );

```

```

Repeat
  K:=PollKeyEvent;
  If k<>0 then
    begin
      K:=PollShiftStateEvent;
      WriteLn('Got shift state : ', ShiftStateToString(K, False));
      // Consume the key.
      K:=GetKeyEvent;
      K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
    end
  {   else
      write ( '. ' )};
  Until ( GetKeyEventChar(K)= 'q' );
  DoneKeyBoard;
end.

```

---

### 15.5.18 PutKeyEvent

Synopsis: Put a key event in the event queue.

Declaration: `procedure PutKeyEvent(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutKeyEvent` adds the given `KeyEvent` to the input queue. Please note that depending on the implementation this can hold only one value, i.e. when calling `PutKeyEvent` multiple times, only the last pushed key will be remembered.

Errors: None

See also: `PollKeyEvent` ([591](#)), `GetKeyEvent` ([586](#))

**Listing:** `./kbdex/ex5.pp`

---

```

program example5;

{ This program demonstrates the PutKeyEvent function }

uses keyboard;

Var
  K,k2 : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitKeyBoard;
  WriteLn('Press keys , press "q" to end. ');
  K2:=0;
  Repeat
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    If k<>0 then
      begin
        if (k2 mod 2)=0 then
          K2:=K+1
        else
          K2:=0;
        K:=TranslateKeyEvent(K);
        WriteLn('Got key : ', KeyEventToString(K));
        if (K2<>0) then

```

---

```

    begin
    PutKeyEvent(k2);
      K2:=TranslateKeyEvent(K2);
    WriteIn('Put key : ',KeyEventToString(K2))
    end
  end
  Until (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');
  DoneKeyboard;
end.

```

---

### 15.5.19 RawReadKey

Declaration: function RawReadKey : Char

Visibility: default

### 15.5.20 RawReadString

Declaration: function RawReadString : String

Visibility: default

### 15.5.21 RestoreStartMode

Declaration: procedure RestoreStartMode

Visibility: default

### 15.5.22 SetKeyboardDriver

Synopsis: Set a new keyboard driver.

Declaration: function SetKeyboardDriver(const Driver: TKeyboardDriver) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: SetKeyBoardDriver sets the keyboard driver to Driver, if the current keyboard driver is not yet initialized. If the current keyboard driver is initialized, then SetKeyboardDriver does nothing. Before setting the driver, the currently active driver should be disabled with a call to DoneKeyboard ([585](#)).

The function returns True if the driver was set, False if not.

For more information on setting the keyboard driver, see kbddriver ([578](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: GetKeyboardDriver ([586](#)), DoneKeyboard ([585](#))

### 15.5.23 ShiftStateToString

Synopsis: Return description of key event shift state

Declaration: function ShiftStateToString(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent;UseLeftRight: Boolean)  
: String

Visibility: default

Description: `ShiftStateToString` returns a string description of the shift state of the key event `KeyEvent`. This can be an empty string.

The shift state is described using the strings in the `SShift` constant.

For an example, see `PollShiftStateEvent` ([592](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `FunctionKeyName` ([585](#)), `KeyEventToString` ([591](#))

### 15.5.24 TranslateKeyEvent

Synopsis: Translate raw event to ascii key event

Declaration: `function TranslateKeyEvent(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `TranslateKeyEvent` performs ASCII translation of the `KeyEvent`. It translates a physical key to a function key if the key is a function key, and translates the physical key to the ordinal of the ascii character if there is an equivalent character key.

For an example, see `GetKeyEvent` ([586](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` ([595](#))

### 15.5.25 TranslateKeyEventUnicode

Synopsis: Translate raw event to UNICODE key event

Declaration: `function TranslateKeyEventUnicode(KeyEvent: TKeyEvent) : TKeyEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `TranslateKeyEventUnicode` performs Unicode translation of the `KeyEvent`. It is not yet implemented for all platforms.

Errors: If the function is not yet implemented, then the `ErrorCode` of the `system` unit will be set to `errKbdNotImplemented`

See also: `TranslateKeyEvent` ([595](#))



Table 15.1: Key Scancodes

Code	Key	Code	Key	Code	Key
00	NoKey	3D	F3	70	ALT-F9
01	ALT-Esc	3E	F4	71	ALT-F10
02	ALT-Space	3F	F5	72	CTRL-PrtSc
04	CTRL-Ins	40	F6	73	CTRL-Left
05	SHIFT-Ins	41	F7	74	CTRL-Right
06	CTRL-Del	42	F8	75	CTRL-end
07	SHIFT-Del	43	F9	76	CTRL-PgDn
08	ALT-Back	44	F10	77	CTRL-Home
09	ALT-SHIFT-Back	47	Home	78	ALT-1
0F	SHIFT-Tab	48	Up	79	ALT-2
10	ALT-Q	49	PgUp	7A	ALT-3
11	ALT-W	4B	Left	7B	ALT-4
12	ALT-E	4C	Center	7C	ALT-5
13	ALT-R	4D	Right	7D	ALT-6
14	ALT-T	4E	ALT-GrayPlus	7E	ALT-7
15	ALT-Y	4F	end	7F	ALT-8
16	ALT-U	50	Down	80	ALT-9
17	ALT-I	51	PgDn	81	ALT-0
18	ALT-O	52	Ins	82	ALT-Minus
19	ALT-P	53	Del	83	ALT-Equal
1A	ALT-LftBrack	54	SHIFT-F1	84	CTRL-PgUp
1B	ALT-RgtBrack	55	SHIFT-F2	85	F11
1E	ALT-A	56	SHIFT-F3	86	F12
1F	ALT-S	57	SHIFT-F4	87	SHIFT-F11
20	ALT-D	58	SHIFT-F5	88	SHIFT-F12
21	ALT-F	59	SHIFT-F6	89	CTRL-F11
22	ALT-G	5A	SHIFT-F7	8A	CTRL-F12
23	ALT-H	5B	SHIFT-F8	8B	ALT-F11
24	ALT-J	5C	SHIFT-F9	8C	ALT-F12
25	ALT-K	5D	SHIFT-F10	8D	CTRL-Up
26	ALT-L	5E	CTRL-F1	8E	CTRL-Minus
27	ALT-SemiCol	5F	CTRL-F2	8F	CTRL-Center
28	ALT-Quote	60	CTRL-F3	90	CTRL-GreyPlus
29	ALT-OpQuote	61	CTRL-F4	91	CTRL-Down
2B	ALT-BkSlash	62	CTRL-F5	94	CTRL-Tab
2C	ALT-Z	63	CTRL-F6	97	ALT-Home
2D	ALT-X	64	CTRL-F7	98	ALT-Up
2E	ALT-C	65	CTRL-F8	99	ALT-PgUp
2F	ALT-V	66	CTRL-F9	9B	ALT-Left
30	ALT-B	67	CTRL-F10	9D	ALT-Right
31	ALT-N	68	ALT-F1	9F	ALT-end
32	ALT-M	69	ALT-F2	A0	ALT-Down
33	ALT-Comma	6A	ALT-F3	A1	ALT-PgDn
34	ALT-Period	6B	ALT-F4	A2	ALT-Ins
35	ALT-Slash	6C	ALT-F5	A3	ALT-Del
37	ALT-GreyAst	6D	ALT-F6	A5	ALT-Tab
3B	F1	6E	ALT-F7		
3C	F2	6F	ALT-F8		

Table 15.2: Special keys scan codes

Key	Code	SHIFT-Key	CTRL-Key	Alt-Key
NoKey	00			
F1	3B	54	5E	68
F2	3C	55	5F	69
F3	3D	56	60	6A
F4	3E	57	61	6B
F5	3F	58	62	6C
F6	40	59	63	6D
F7	41	5A	64	6E
F8	42	5A	65	6F
F9	43	5B	66	70
F10	44	5C	67	71
F11	85	87	89	8B
F12	86	88	8A	8C
Home	47		77	97
Up	48		8D	98
PgUp	49		84	99
Left	4B		73	9B
Center	4C		8F	
Right	4D		74	9D
end	4F		75	9F
Down	50		91	A0
PgDn	51		76	A1
Ins	52	05	04	A2
Del	53	07	06	A3
Tab	8	0F	94	A5
GreyPlus			90	4E

Table 15.3: Structure of TKeyRecord

Field	Meaning
KeyCode	Depending on flags either the physical representation of a key (under DOS scancode, ascii code pair), or the t
ShiftState	Shift-state when this key was pressed (or shortly after)
Flags	Determine how to interpret KeyCode

# Chapter 16

## Reference for unit 'Linux'

### 16.1 Overview

The linux unit contains linux specific operating system calls.

The platform independent functionality of the FPC 1.0.X version of the linux unit has been split out over the unix ([1250](#)), baseunix ([70](#)) and unixutil ([1296](#)) units.

The X86-specific parts have been moved to the X86 ([1323](#)) unit.

People wanting to use the old version (FPC 1.0.X and before) of the linux can use the oldlinux ([742](#)) unit instead.

### 16.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 16.2.1 Constants

`CLONE_FILES = $00000400`

Clone ([599](#)) option: open files shared between processes

`CLONE_FS = $00000200`

Clone ([599](#)) option: fs info shared between processes

`CLONE_PID = $00001000`

Clone ([599](#)) option: PID shared between processes

`CLONE_SIGHAND = $00000800`

Clone ([599](#)) option: signal handlers shared between processes

`CLONE_VM = $00000100`

Clone ([599](#)) option: VM shared between processes

`CSIGNAL = $000000ff`

Clone ([599](#)) option: Signal mask to be sent at exit

### 16.2.2 Types

`PSysInfo = ^TSysinfo`

Pointer to `TSysInfo` (599) record.

`TCloneFunc = function(args: pointer) : LongInt`

Clone function prototype.

```
TSysinfo = packed record
  uptime : LongInt;
  loads : Array[1..3] of LongInt;
  totalram : LongInt;
  freeram : LongInt;
  sharedram : LongInt;
  bufferram : LongInt;
  totalswap : LongInt;
  freeswap : LongInt;
  procs : Integer;
  s : String;
end
```

Record with system information, used by the `SysInfo` (601) call.

## 16.3 Procedures and functions

### 16.3.1 Clone

Synopsis: Clone current process (create new thread)

Declaration: `function Clone(func: TCloneFunc; sp: pointer; flags: LongInt; args: pointer) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Clone` creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process, just like `FpFork` (112) does. In difference with `Fork`, however, the child process shares some parts of it's execution context with its parent, so it is suitable for the implementation of threads: many instances of a program that share the same memory.

When the child process is created, it starts executing the function `Func`, and passes it `Args`. The return value of `Func` is either the explicit return value of the function, or the exit code of the child process.

The `sp` pointer points to the memory reserved as stack space for the child process. This address should be the top of the memory block to be used as stack.

The `Flags` determine the behaviour of the `Clone` call. The low byte of the `Flags` contains the number of the signal that will be sent to the parent when the child dies. This may be bitwise OR'ed with the following constants:

**CLONE\_VM** Parent and child share the same memory space, including memory (un)mapped with subsequent `mmap` calls.

**CLONE\_FSParent** and child have the same view of the filesystem; the `chroot`, `chdir` and `umask` calls affect both processes.

**CLONE\_FILES**the file descriptor table of parent and child is shared.

**CLONE\_SIGHAND**the parent and child share the same table of signal handlers. The signal masks are different, though.

**CLONE\_PIDP**arent and child have the same process ID.

Clone returns the process ID in the parent process, and -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain**Too many processes are running.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpFork` ([112](#))

**Listing:** `./linuxex/ex71.pp`

---

```

program TestC{!one};

{$ifdef Linux}
// close is very Linux specific. 1.9.x threading is done via pthreads.

uses
    Linux , Errors , crt;

const
    Ready : Boolean = false;
    aChar : Char    = 'a';

function CloneProc( Arg: Pointer ): LongInt; Cdecl;
begin
    WriteLn('Hello from the clone ',PChar(Arg));
    repeat
        Write(aChar);
        Select(0,0,0,0,600);
    until Ready;
    WriteLn('Clone finished. ');
    CloneProc := 1;
end;

var
    PID : LongInt;

procedure MainProc;
begin
    WriteLn('cloned process PID: ', PID );
    WriteLn('Press <ESC> to kill ... ');
    repeat
        Write(' ');
        Select(0,0,0,0,300);
    if KeyPressed then
        case ReadKey of
            #27: Ready := true;
            'a': aChar := 'A';
            'A': aChar := 'a';
            'b': aChar := 'b';

```

---

```

        'B': aChar := 'B';
    end;
until Ready;
WriteLn('Ready. ');
end;

const
    StackSize = 16384;
    theFlags = CLONE_VM+CLONE_FS+CLONE_FILES+CLONE_SIGHAND;
    aMsg      : PChar = 'Oops !';

var
    theStack : Pointer;
    ExitStat : LongInt;

begin
    GetMem(theStack, StackSize);
    PID := Clone(@CloneProc,
                 Pointer(LongInt(theStack)+StackSize),
                 theFlags,
                 aMsg);
    if PID < 0 then
        WriteLn('Error : ', LinuxError, ' when cloning.')
    else
        begin
            MainProc;
            case WaitPID(0, @ExitStat, Wait_Untraced or wait_clone) of
                -1: WriteLn('error: ', LinuxError, '; ', StrError(LinuxError));
                0: WriteLn('error: ', LinuxError, '; ', StrError(LinuxError));
            else
                WriteLn('Clone exited with: ', ExitStat shr 8);
            end;
        end;
        FreeMem(theStack, StackSize);
    {$else}
begin
    {$endif}
end.

```

---

### 16.3.2 Sysinfo

Synopsis: Return kernel system information

Declaration: function Sysinfo(var Info: TSysinfo) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: SysInfo returns system information in Info. Returned information in Info includes:

**uptime**Number of seconds since boot.

**loads**1, 5 and 15 minute load averages.

**totalram**total amount of main memory.

**freeram**amount of free memory.

**sharedram**amount of shared memory.

**bufferram**amount of memory used by buffers.

**totalswap**total amount of swapspace.

**freeswap**amount of free swapspace.

**procs**number of current processes.

Errors: None.

See also: #rtl.baseunix.fpUname ([148](#))

**Listing:** ./linuxex/ex64.pp

---

**program** Example64;

*{ Example to demonstrate the SysInfo function.  
Sysinfo is Linux-only. }*

*{ \$ifdef Linux }*

**Uses** Linux;

**Function** Mb(L : Longint) : longint;

**begin**

    Mb:=L **div** (1024\*1024);

**end**;

**Var** Info : TSysInfo;

    D,M,Secs,H : longint;

*{ \$endif }*

**begin**

*{ \$ifdef Linux }*

**If Not** SysInfo(Info) **then**

**Halt**(1);

**With** Info **do**

**begin**

            D:=Uptime **div** (3600\*24);

            UpTime:=UpTime **mod** (3600\*24);

            h:=uptime **div** 3600;

            uptime:=uptime **mod** 3600;

            m:=uptime **div** 60;

            secs:=uptime **mod** 60;

**Writeln**('Uptime : ',d,'days', ' ',h,' hours', ' ',m,' min', ' ',secs,' s.');

**Writeln**('Loads : ',Loads[1], '/' ,Loads[2], '/' ,Loads[3]);

**Writeln**('Total Ram : ',Mb(totalram), 'Mb.');

**Writeln**('Free Ram : ',Mb(freeram), 'Mb.');

**Writeln**('Shared Ram : ',Mb(sharedram), 'Mb.');

**Writeln**('Buffer Ram : ',Mb(bufferram), 'Mb.');

**Writeln**('Total Swap : ',Mb(totalswap), 'Mb.');

**Writeln**('Free Swap : ',Mb(freeswap), 'Mb.');

**end**;

*{ \$endif }*

**end.**

---

## Chapter 17

# Reference for unit 'math'

### 17.1 Geometrical functions

Table 17.1:

Name	Description
hypot (619)	Hypotenuse of triangle
norm (631)	Euclidian norm

### 17.2 Statistical functions

Table 17.2:

Name	Description
mean (627)	Mean of values
meanandstddev (627)	Mean and standard deviation of values
momentskewkurtosis (630)	Moments, skew and kurtosis
popnstddev (632)	Population standarddeviation
popnvariance (633)	Population variance
randg (635)	Gaussian distributed random value
stddev (639)	Standard deviation
sum (640)	Sum of values
sumofsquares (640)	Sum of squared values
sumsandsquares (641)	Sum of values and squared values
totalvariance (643)	Total variance of values
variance (644)	variance of values



Table 17.3:

Name	Description
<code>ceil</code> (613)	Round to infinity
<code>floor</code> (616)	Round to minus infinity
<code>frexp</code> (617)	Return mantissa and exponent

## 17.3 Number converting

## 17.4 Exponential and logarithmic functions

Table 17.4:

Name	Description
<code>intpower</code> (620)	Raise float to integer power
<code>ldexp</code> (622)	Calculate $2^p \times x$
<code>lnxp1</code> (622)	calculate $\log(x+1)$
<code>log10</code> (623)	calculate 10-base log
<code>log2</code> (623)	calculate 2-base log
<code>logn</code> (624)	calculate N-base log
<code>power</code> (633)	raise float to arbitrary power

## 17.5 Hyperbolic functions

Table 17.5:

Name	Description
<code>arcosh</code> (609)	calculate reverse hyperbolic cosine
<code>arsinh</code> (612)	calculate reverse hyperbolic sine
<code>artanh</code> (612)	calculate reverse hyperbolic tangent
<code>cosh</code> (613)	calculate hyperbolic cosine
<code>sinh</code> (638)	calculate hyperbolic sine
<code>tanh</code> (642)	calculate hyperbolic tangent

## 17.6 Trigonometric functions

## 17.7 Angle unit conversion

Routines to convert angles between different angle units.

Table 17.6:

Name	Description
<code>arccos</code> (608)	calculate reverse cosine
<code>arcsin</code> (610)	calculate reverse sine
<code>arctan2</code> (611)	calculate reverse tangent
<code>cotan</code> (614)	calculate cotangent
<code>sincos</code> (638)	calculate sine and cosine
<code>tan</code> (642)	calculate tangent

Table 17.7:

Name	Description
<code>cycleto rad</code> (614)	convert cycles to radians
<code>degtograd</code> (615)	convert degrees to grads
<code>degtorad</code> (615)	convert degrees to radians
<code>gradtodeg</code> (618)	convert grads to degrees
<code>gradtorad</code> (619)	convert grads to radians
<code>radto cycle</code> (634)	convert radians to cycles
<code>radtodeg</code> (634)	convert radians to degrees
<code>radto grad</code> (635)	convert radians to grads

## 17.8 Min/max determination

Functions to determine the minimum or maximum of numbers:

Table 17.8:

Name	Description
<code>max</code> (624)	Maximum of 2 values
<code>maxIntValue</code> (625)	Maximum of an array of integer values
<code>maxvalue</code> (626)	Maximum of an array of values
<code>min</code> (628)	Minimum of 2 values
<code>minIntValue</code> (629)	Minimum of an array of integer values
<code>minvalue</code> (629)	Minimum of an array of values

## 17.9 Used units

### 17.10 Overview

This document describes the `math` unit. The `math` unit was initially written by Florian Klaempfl. It provides mathematical functions which aren't covered by the system unit.

This chapter starts out with a definition of all types and constants that are defined, after which an overview is presented of the available functions, grouped by category, and the last part contains a complete explanation of each function.

The following things must be taken into account when using this unit:

Table 17.9: Used units by unit 'math'

Name	Page
sysutils	<a href="#">1082</a>

1. This unit is compiled in Object Pascal mode so all `integers` are 32 bit.
2. Some overloaded functions exist for data arrays of integers and floats. When using the address operator (`@`) to pass an array of data to such a function, make sure the address is typecasted to the right type, or turn on the 'typed address operator' feature. failing to do so, will cause the compiler not be able to decide which function you want to call.

## 17.11 Constants, types and variables

### 17.11.1 Constants

`EqualsValue = 0`

Values are the same

`GreaterThanValue = High ( TValueRelationship )`

First values is greater than second value

`Infinity = 1.0 / 0.0`

Value is infinity

`LessThanValue = Low ( TValueRelationship )`

First value is less than second value

`MaxExtended = 1.1e + 4932`

Maximum value of extended type

`MaxFloat = MaxExtended`

Maximum value of float type

`MinExtended = 3.4e - 4932`

Minimum value (closest to zero) of extended type

`MinFloat = MinExtended`

Minimum value (closest to zero) of float type

`NaN = 0.0 / 0.0`

Value is Not a Number

```
NegativeValue = Low ( TValueSign )
```

Value is negative

```
PositiveValue = High ( TValueSign )
```

Value is positive

```
ZeroValue = 0
```

Value is zero

### 17.11.2 Types

```
float = extended
```

All calculations are done with the Float type. This allows to recompile the unit with a different float type to obtain a desired precision. The pointer type PFloat (607) is used in functions that accept an array of values of arbitrary length.

```
PFloat = ^float
```

Pointer to Float (607) type.

```
PInteger = ^Integer
```

Pointer to integer type

```
TFPUException = (exInvalidOp,exDenormalized,exZeroDivide,exOverflow,  
exUnderflow,exPrecision)
```

Table 17.10: Enumeration values for type TFPUException

Value	Explanation
exDenormalized	
exInvalidOp	Invalid operation error
exOverflow	Float overflow error
exPrecision	Precision error
exUnderflow	Float underflow error
exZeroDivide	Division by zero error.

Type describing Floating Point processor exceptions.

```
TFPUExceptionMask= Set of (exDenormalized,exInvalidOp,exOverflow,  
exPrecision,exUnderflow,exZeroDivide)
```

Type to set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

Table 17.11: Enumeration values for type TFPUPrecisionMode

Value	Explanation
pmDouble	Double-type precision
pmExtended	Extended-type precision
pmReserved	?
pmSingle	Single-type precision

Table 17.12: Enumeration values for type TFPURoundingMode

Value	Explanation
rmDown	Round to biggest integer smaller than value.
rmNearest	Round to nearest integer value
rmTruncate	Cut off fractional part.
rmUp	Round to smallest integer larger than value.

`TFPUPrecisionMode = (pmSingle, pmReserved, pmDouble, pmExtended)`

Type describing the default precision for the Floating Point processor.

`TFPURoundingMode = (rmNearest, rmDown, rmUp, rmTruncate)`

Type describing the rounding mode for the Floating Point processor.

`tpaymenttime = (ptendofperiod, ptstartofperiod)`

Table 17.13: Enumeration values for type tpaymenttime

Value	Explanation
ptendofperiod	End of period.
ptstartofperiod	Start of period.

Type used in financial (interest) calculations.

`TValueRelationship = -1..1`

Type to describe relational order between values

`TValueSign = -1..1`

Type indicating sign of a valuea

## 17.12 Procedures and functions

### 17.12.1 arccos

Synopsis: Return inverse cosine

Declaration: `function arccos(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arccos` returns the inverse cosine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should lie between -1 and 1 (borders included).

Errors: If the argument `x` is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arcsin` (610), `arcosh` (609), `arsinh` (612), `artanh` (612)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arccos function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**Procedure** `WriteRadDeg(X : float)`;

**begin**

**WriteLn**(`X:8:5`, ' rad = ', `radtodeg(x):8:5`, ' degrees.')

**end**;

**begin**

`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(1) );`

`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(sqrt(3)/2) );`

`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(sqrt(2)/2) );`

`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(1/2) );`

`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(0) );`

`WriteRadDeg ( arccos(-1) );`

**end**.

---

### 17.12.2 arccosh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic cosine

Declaration: `function arccosh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arccosh` returns the inverse hyperbolic cosine of its argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `arcosh` (609), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `arcosh` (609)

### 17.12.3 arcosh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic cosine

Declaration: `function arcosh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arcosh` returns the inverse hyperbolic cosine of its argument `x`. The argument `x` should be larger than 1. The `arccosh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: If the argument  $x$  is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `cosh` (613), `sinh` (638), `arcsin` (610), `arsinh` (612), `artanh` (612), `tanh` (642)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex3.pp

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arcosh function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**WriteIn**(arcosh(1));

**WriteIn**(arcosh(2));

**end.**

---

### 17.12.4 arcsin

Synopsis: Return inverse sine

Declaration: `function arcsin(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Arcsin` returns the inverse sine of its argument  $x$ . The argument  $x$  should lie between -1 and 1.

Errors: If the argument  $x$  is not in the allowed range, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arccos` (608), `arcosh` (609), `arsinh` (612), `artanh` (612)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex2.pp

---

**Program** Example1;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arcsin function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** WriteRadDeg(X : float);

**begin**

**WriteIn**(X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees.')

**end;**

**begin**

    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin(1));

    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin(**sqrt**(3)/2));

    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin(**sqrt**(2)/2));

    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin(1/2));

    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin(0));

    WriteRadDeg ( arcsin(-1));

**end.**

---

### 17.12.5 arcsinh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function arcsinh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arcsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `arsinh` (612), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `arsinh` (612)

### 17.12.6 arctan2

Synopsis: Return arctangent of (y/x)

Declaration: `function arctan2(y: float; x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arctan2` calculates `arctan(y/x)`, and returns an angle in the correct quadrant. The returned angle will be in the range  $-\pi$  to  $\pi$  radians. The values of `x` and `y` must be between  $-2^{64}$  and  $2^{64}$ , moreover `x` should be different from zero. On Intel systems this function is implemented with the native intel `fpatan` instruction.

Errors: If `x` is zero, an overflow error will occur.

See also: `arccos` (608), `arcosh` (609), `arsinh` (612), `artanh` (612)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arctan2 function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** WriteRadDeg(X : float);

**begin**

**WriteLn**(X:8:5, ' rad = ', radtodeg(x):8:5, ' degrees.')

**end**;

**begin**

**WriteRadDeg** ( arctan2 (1,1));

**end**.

---

### 17.12.7 artanh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function artanh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arcsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic tangent of its argument `x`.

This function is an alias for `artanh` (612), provided for Delphi compatibility.

See also: `artanh` (612)



### 17.12.8 arsinh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function arsinh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `arsinh` returns the inverse hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`. The `arscsinh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcosh` ([609](#)), `arccos` ([608](#)), `arcsin` ([610](#)), `artanh` ([612](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ Program to demonstrate the arsinh function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**WriteLn**(`arsinh(0)`);

**WriteLn**(`arsinh(1)`);

**end.**

---

### 17.12.9 artanh

Synopsis: Return inverse hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function artanh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `artanh` returns the inverse hyperbolic tangent of its argument `x`, where `x` should lie in the interval `[-1,1]`, borders included. The `arctanh` variant of this function is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

Errors: In case `x` is not in the interval `[-1,1]`, an `EInvalidArgument` exception is raised.

See also: `arcosh` ([609](#)), `arccos` ([608](#)), `arcsin` ([610](#)), `artanh` ([612](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** Example5;

*{ Program to demonstrate the artanh function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**WriteLn**(`artanh(0)`);

**WriteLn**(`artanh(0.5)`);

**end.**

---

**17.12.10 ceil**

Synopsis: Return the lowest integer number greater than or equal to argument

Declaration: `function ceil(x: float) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ceil` returns the lowest integer number greater than or equal to `x`. The absolute value of `x` should be less than `maxint`.

Errors: If the absolute value of `x` is larger than `maxint`, an overflow error will occur.

See also: `floor` ([616](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example7`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ceil function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

`WriteLn (Ceil (-3.7)); // should be -3`

`WriteLn (Ceil (3.7)); // should be 4`

`WriteLn (Ceil (-4.0)); // should be -4`

**end.**

---

**17.12.11 ClearExceptions**

Synopsis: Clear Floating Point Unit exceptions

Declaration: `procedure ClearExceptions(RaisePending: Boolean)`

Visibility: default

Description: Clear Floating Point Unit exceptions

**17.12.12 cosh**

Synopsis: Return hyperbolic cosine

Declaration: `function cosh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Cosh` returns the hyperbolic cosine of its argument `{x}`.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcosh` ([609](#)), `sinh` ([638](#)), `arsinh` ([612](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex8.pp`

---

```

Program Example8;

{ Program to demonstrate the cosh function . }

Uses math;

begin
    WriteLn (Cosh (0));
    WriteLn (Cosh (1));
end .

```

---

### 17.12.13 cotan

Synopsis: Return cotangent

Declaration: `function cotan(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Cotan returns the cotangent of it's argument x. x should be different from zero.

Errors: If x is zero then a overflow error will occur.

See also: `tanh` ([642](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex9.pp`

---

```

Program Example9;

{ Program to demonstrate the cotan function . }

Uses math;

begin
    writeln (cotan (pi / 2));
    WriteLn (cotan (pi / 3));
    WriteLn (cotan (pi / 4));
end .

```

---

### 17.12.14 cycletorad

Synopsis: Convert cycle angle to radians angle

Declaration: `function cycletorad(cycle: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Cycletorad transforms it's argument `cycle` (an angle expressed in cycles) to radians. (1 cycle is  $2\pi$  radians).

Errors: None.

See also: `degtograd` ([615](#)), `degtorad` ([615](#)), `radto deg` ([634](#)), `radto grad` ([635](#)), `radto cycle` ([634](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex10.pp`

---

**Program** Example10;

*{ Program to demonstrate the cycletorad function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**writeln**(cos(cycletorad(1/6))); *// Should print 1/2*

**writeln**(cos(cycletorad(1/8))); *// should be sqrt(2)/2*

**end.**

---

### 17.12.15 degtograd

Synopsis: Convert degree angle to grads angle

Declaration: function degtograd(deg: float) : float

Visibility: default

Description: Degtograd transforms it's argument deg (an angle in degrees) to grads. (90 degrees is 100 grad.)

Errors: None.

See also: cycletorad ([614](#)), degtorad ([615](#)), radtodeg ([634](#)), radtograd ([635](#)), radtocycle ([634](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ Program to demonstrate the degtograd function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**writeln**(deltograd(90));

**writeln**(deltograd(180));

**writeln**(deltograd(270))

**end.**

---

### 17.12.16 degtorad

Synopsis: Convert degree angle to radians angle.

Declaration: function degtorad(deg: float) : float

Visibility: default

Description: Degtograd converts it's argument deg (an angle in degrees) to radians. (pi radians is 180 degrees)

Errors: None.

See also: cycletorad ([614](#)), degtograd ([615](#)), radtodeg ([634](#)), radtograd ([635](#)), radtocycle ([634](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex12.pp

---

**Program** Example12;

*{ Program to demonstrate the degtorad function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

```
writeln(degtorad(45));
writeln(degtorad(90));
writeln(degtorad(180));
writeln(degtorad(270));
writeln(degtorad(360));
```

**end.**

---

### 17.12.17 DivMod

Synopsis: Return DIV and MOD of arguments

Declaration: `procedure DivMod(Dividend: Integer; Divisor: Word; var Result: Word; var Remainder: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: DivMod returns Dividend DIV Divisor in Result, and Dividend MOD Divisor in Remainder

### 17.12.18 EnsureRange

Synopsis: Change value to it falls in specified range.

Declaration: `function EnsureRange(const AValue: Integer; const AMin: Integer; const AMax: Integer) : Integer`  
`function EnsureRange(const AValue: Int64; const AMin: Int64; const AMax: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: EnsureRange returns Value if AValue is in the range AMin..AMax. It returns AMin if the value is less than AMin, or AMax if the value is larger than AMax.

See also: InRange ([620](#))

### 17.12.19 floor

Synopsis: Return the largest integer smaller than or equal to argument

Declaration: `function floor(x: float) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: Floor returns the largest integer smaller than or equal to x. The absolute value of x should be less than maxint.

Errors: If x is larger than maxint, an overflow will occur.

See also: ceil ([613](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex13.pp

---

**Program** Example13;

*{ Program to demonstrate the floor function . }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**WriteLn**(Ceil(-3.7)); *// should be -4*

**WriteLn**(Ceil(3.7)); *// should be 3*

**WriteLn**(Ceil(-4.0)); *// should be -4*

**end.**

---

### 17.12.20 Frexp

Synopsis: Return mantissa and exponent.

Declaration: `procedure Frexp(X: float; var Mantissa: float; var Exponent: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Frexp` returns the mantissa and exponent of it's argument `x` in mantissa and exponent.

Errors: None

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex14.pp

---

**Program** Example14;

*{ Program to demonstrate the frexp function . }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** dofexp(**Const** X : extended);

**var** man : extended;

**exp**: longint;

**begin**

        man:=0;

**exp**:=0;

        frexp(x,man,**exp**);

**write**(x, ' has ');

**WriteLn**('mantissa ',man,' and exponent ',**exp**);

**end**;

**begin**

*// dofexp(1.00);*

        dofexp(1.02e-1);

        dofexp(1.03e-2);

        dofexp(1.02e1);

        dofexp(1.03e2);

**end.**

---

**17.12.21 GetExceptionMask**

Synopsis: Get the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

Declaration: `function GetExceptionMask : TFPUExceptionMask`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

**17.12.22 GetPrecisionMode**

Synopsis: Return the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

Declaration: `function GetPrecisionMode : TFPUPrecisionMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Return the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

**17.12.23 GetRoundMode**

Synopsis: Return the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

Declaration: `function GetRoundMode : TFPURoundingMode`

Visibility: default

Description: Return the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

**17.12.24 GetSSECSR**

Synopsis: Get MXCSR control word (Intel only)

Declaration: `function GetSSECSR : dword`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetSSECSR` can be used to get the SSE/SSE2 control DWord. It is equivalent to the `LDMXCSR` assembler instruction, and returns the control dword.

**17.12.25 gradtodeg**

Synopsis: Convert grads angle to degrees angle

Declaration: `function gradtodeg(grad: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Gradtodeg` converts its argument `grad` (an angle in grads) to degrees. (100 grad is 90 degrees)

Errors: None.

See also: `cycltorad` ([614](#)), `degtograd` ([615](#)), `radtodeg` ([634](#)), `radtograd` ([635](#)), `radtcycle` ([634](#)), `gradtorad` ([619](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** Example15;

*{ Program to demonstrate the gradtodeg function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**  
     **writeln** (gradtodeg(100));  
     **writeln** (gradtodeg(200));  
     **writeln** (gradtodeg(300));  
**end.**

---

### 17.12.26 gradtorad

Synopsis: Convert grads angle to radians angle

Declaration: `function gradtorad(grad: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Gradtorad converts its argument grad (an angle in grads) to radians. (200 grad is pi degrees).

Errors: None.

See also: cycletorad ([614](#)), degtograd ([615](#)), radtodeg ([634](#)), radtograd ([635](#)), radtcycle ([634](#)), gradtodeg ([618](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex16.pp

---

**Program** Example16;

*{ Program to demonstrate the gradtorad function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**  
     **writeln** (gradtorad(100));  
     **writeln** (gradtorad(200));  
     **writeln** (gradtorad(300));  
**end.**

---

### 17.12.27 hypot

Synopsis: Return hypotenuse of triangle

Declaration: `function hypot(x: float;y: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Hypot returns the hypotenuse of the triangle where the sides adjacent to the square angle have lengths x and y. The function uses Pythagoras' rule for this.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex17.pp



---

```

Program Example17;

{ Program to demonstrate the hypot function. }

Uses math;

begin
    WriteLn(hypot(3,4)); // should be 5
end.

```

---

### 17.12.28 ifthen

Synopsis: Return one of two values, depending on a boolean condition

Declaration: `function ifthen(val: Boolean;const iftrue: Integer; const iffalse: Integer) : Integer`  
`function ifthen(val: Boolean;const iftrue: Int64;const iffalse: Int64) : Int64`  
`function ifthen(val: Boolean;const iftrue: double;const iffalse: double) : double`

Visibility: default

Description: `ifthen` returns `iftrue` if `val` is `True`, and `False` if `val` is `False`.

This function can be used in expressions.

### 17.12.29 InRange

Synopsis: Check whether value is in range.

Declaration: `function InRange(const AValue: Integer;const AMin: Integer; const AMax: Integer) : Boolean`  
`function InRange(const AValue: Int64;const AMin: Int64; const AMax: Int64) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `InRange` returns `True` if `AValue` is in the range `AMin..AMax`. It returns `False` if `Value` lies outside the specified range.

See also: `EnsureRange` ([616](#))

### 17.12.30 intpower

Synopsis: Return integer power.

Declaration: `function intpower(base: float;const exponent: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Intpower` returns `base` to the power `exponent`, where `exponent` is an integer value.

Errors: If `base` is zero and the `exponent` is negative, then an overflow error will occur.

See also: `power` ([633](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex18.pp

**Program** Example18;

*{ Program to demonstrate the intpower function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** DoIntpower (X : extended; Pow : Integer);

**begin**

**writeln** (X:8:4, '^', Pow:2, ' = ', intpower(X,pow):8:4);

**end**;

**begin**

    dointpower(0.0,0);  
    dointpower(1.0,0);  
    dointpower(2.0,5);  
    dointpower(4.0,3);  
    dointpower(2.0,-1);  
    dointpower(2.0,-2);  
    dointpower(-2.0,4);  
    dointpower(-4.0,3);

**end**.

### 17.12.31 IsInfinite

Synopsis: Check whether value is infinite

Declaration: `function IsInfinite(const d: Double) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsInfinite` returns `True` if the double `d` contains the infinite value.

See also: `IsZero` ([621](#)), `IsInfinite` ([621](#))

### 17.12.32 IsNan

Synopsis: Check whether value is Not a Number

Declaration: `function IsNan(const d: Double) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsNan` returns `True` if the double `d` contains Not A Number (a value which cannot be represented correctly in double format).

See also: `IsZero` ([621](#)), `IsInfinite` ([621](#))

### 17.12.33 IsZero

Synopsis: Check whether value is zero

Declaration: `function IsZero(const A: Single; Epsilon: Single) : Boolean`

`function IsZero(const A: Single) : Boolean`

`function IsZero(const A: Extended; Epsilon: Extended) : Boolean`

`function IsZero(const A: Extended) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsZero` checks whether the float value `A` is zero, up to a precision of `Epsilon`. It returns `True` if `Abs(A)` is less than `Epsilon`.

The default value for `Epsilon` is dependent on the type of the arguments, but is `MinFloat` (606) for the float type.

See also: `IsNan` (621), `IsInfinite` (621), `SameValue` (636)

### 17.12.34 `ldexp`

Synopsis: Return (2 to the power `p`) times `x`

Declaration: `function ldexp(x: float; const p: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ldexp` returns (2 to the power `p`) times `x`.

Errors: None.

See also: `lnxp1` (622), `log10` (623), `log2` (623), `logn` (624)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `Example19;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the ldexp function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

`writeln(ldexp(2,4):8:4);`

`writeln(ldexp(0.5,3):8:4);`

**end.**

---

### 17.12.35 `lnxp1`

Synopsis: Return natural logarithm of `1+X`

Declaration: `function lnxp1(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Lnxp1` returns the natural logarithm of `1+X`. The result is more precise for small values of `x`. `x` should be larger than -1.

Errors: If `$x \leq -1` then an `EInvalidArgument` exception will be raised.

See also: `ldexp` (622), `log10` (623), `log2` (623), `logn` (624)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `Example20;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the lnxp1 function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

---

```

begin
  writeln(lnxp1(0));
  writeln(lnxp1(0.5));
  writeln(lnxp1(1));
end.

```

---

### 17.12.36 log10

Synopsis: Return 10-Based logarithm.

Declaration: `function log10(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Log10 returns the 10-base logarithm of X.

Errors: If  $x$  is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` ([622](#)), `lnxp1` ([622](#)), `log2` ([623](#)), `logn` ([624](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex21.pp`

---

**Program** Example21;

*{ Program to demonstrate the log10 function. }*

**Uses** math;

```

begin
  WriteLn(Log10(10):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log10(100):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log10(1000):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log10(1):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log10(0.1):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log10(0.01):8:4);
  WriteLn(Log10(0.001):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 17.12.37 log2

Synopsis: Return 2-based logarithm

Declaration: `function log2(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Log2 returns the 2-base logarithm of X.

Errors: If  $x$  is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` ([622](#)), `lnxp1` ([622](#)), `log10` ([623](#)), `logn` ([624](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex22.pp`

---

```

Program Example22;

{ Program to demonstrate the log2 function. }

Uses math;

begin
  Writeln(Log2(2):8:4);
  Writeln(Log2(4):8:4);
  Writeln(Log2(8):8:4);
  Writeln(Log2(1):8:4);
  Writeln(Log2(0.5):8:4);
  Writeln(Log2(0.25):8:4);
  Writeln(Log2(0.125):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 17.12.38 logn

Synopsis: Return N-based logarithm.

Declaration: `function logn(n: float;x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Logn returns the n-base logarithm of X.

Errors: If x is less than or equal to 0 an 'invalid fpu operation' error will occur.

See also: `ldexp` ([622](#)), `lnxp1` ([622](#)), `log10` ([623](#)), `log2` ([623](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex23.pp

---

```

Program Example23;

{ Program to demonstrate the logn function. }

Uses math;

begin
  Writeln(Logn(3,4):8:4);
  Writeln(Logn(2,4):8:4);
  Writeln(Logn(6,9):8:4);
  Writeln(Logn(exp(1),exp(1)):8:4);
  Writeln(Logn(0.5,1):8:4);
  Writeln(Logn(0.25,3):8:4);
  Writeln(Logn(0.125,5):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 17.12.39 Max

Synopsis: Return largest of 2 values

Declaration: `function Max(a: Integer;b: Integer) : Integer`  
`function Max(a: Cardinal;b: Cardinal) : Cardinal`  
`function Max(a: Int64;b: Int64) : Int64`  
`function Max(a: Extended;b: Extended) : Extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `Max` returns the maximum of `Int1` and `Int2`.

Errors: None.

See also: `min` ([628](#)), `maxIntValue` ([625](#)), `maxvalue` ([626](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex24.pp

---

```
Program Example24;

{ Program to demonstrate the max function. }

Uses math;

Var
  A,B : Cardinal;

begin
  A:=1;b:=2;
  writeln(max(a,b));
end.
```

---

### 17.12.40 MaxIntValue

Synopsis: Return largest element in integer array

Declaration: `function MaxIntValue(const Data: Array[] of Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `MaxIntValue` returns the largest integer out of the `Data` array.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility, use the `maxvalue` ([626](#)) function instead.

Errors: None.

See also: `maxvalue` ([626](#)), `minvalue` ([629](#)), `minIntValue` ([629](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex25.pp

---

```
Program Example25;

{ Program to demonstrate the MaxIntValue function. }

{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }
{$mode objfpc}

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Integer;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
```

---

```

Randomize;
for I:=1 to 100 do
  ExArray[I]:=Random(I)-Random(100);
WriteLn(MaxIntValue(ExArray));
end.

```

---

### 17.12.41 maxvalue

Synopsis: Return largest value in array

Declaration: `function maxvalue(const data: Array[] of float) : float`  
`function maxvalue(const data: Array[] of Integer) : Integer`  
`function maxvalue(const data: PFloat;const N: Integer) : float`  
`function maxvalue(const data: PInteger;const N: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Maxvalue` returns the largest value in the data array with integer or float values. The return value has the same type as the elements of the array.

The third and fourth forms accept a pointer to an array of N integer or float values.

Errors: None.

See also: `maxIntValue` (625), `minvalue` (629), `minIntValue` (629)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex26.pp

---

**Program** Example26;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the MaxValue function. }

{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }
{$mode objfpc}

```

**Uses** math;

**Type**

```

TExFloatArray = Array[1..100] of Float;
TExIntArray = Array[1..100] of Integer;

```

**Var**

```

I : Integer;
ExFloatArray : TExFloatArray;
ExIntArray : TExIntArray;
AFloatArray : PFloat;
AIntArray : PInteger;

```

**begin**

```

Randomize;
AFloatArray:=@ExFloatArray[1];
AIntArray:=@ExIntArray[1];
for I:=1 to 100 do
  ExFloatArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
for I:=1 to 100 do
  ExIntArray[I]:=Random(I)-Random(100);
WriteLn('Max Float      : ',MaxValue(ExFloatArray):8:4);
WriteLn('Max Float      (b) : ',MaxValue(AFloatArray,100):8:4);
WriteLn('Max Integer     : ',MaxValue(ExIntArray):8);

```

---

```

WriteIn( 'Max Integer (b) : ',MaxValue(AIntArray,100):8);
end.

```

---

### 17.12.42 mean

Synopsis: Return mean value of array

Declaration: `function mean(const data: Array[] of float) : float`  
`function mean(const data: PFloat;const N: LongInt) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Mean returns the average value of data. The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: `meanandstddev` ([627](#)), `momentaskewkurtosis` ([630](#)), `sum` ([640](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex27.pp

---

**Program** Example27;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Mean function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;`

**Var**

`I : Integer;`  
`ExArray : TExArray;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`

`for I:=1 to 100 do`

`ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;`

`WriteIn('Max : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);`

`WriteIn('Min : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);`

`WriteIn('Mean : ',Mean(ExArray):8:4);`

`WriteIn('Mean (b) : ',Mean(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);`

**end.**

---

### 17.12.43 meanandstddev

Synopsis: Return mean and standard deviation of array

Declaration: `procedure meanandstddev(const data: Array[] of float;var mean: float;`  
`var stddev: float)`  
`procedure meanandstddev(const data: PFloat;const N: LongInt;`  
`var mean: float;var stddev: float)`

Visibility: default

Description: `meanandstddev` calculates the mean and standard deviation of data and returns the result in `mean` and `stddev`, respectively. `Stddev` is zero if there is only one value. The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.



Errors: None.

See also: mean ([627](#)), sum ([640](#)), sumofsquares ([640](#)), momentskewkurtosis ([630](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex28.pp

---

**Program** Example28;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Meanandstddev function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Type**

TExArray = **Array**[1..100] of Extended;

**Var**

I : Integer;

ExArray : TExArray;

Mean, stddev : Extended;

**begin**

Randomize;

for I:=1 to 100 do

ExArray[I]:= (Random-~~Random~~)\*100;

MeanAndStdDev(ExArray, Mean, StdDev);

WriteLn('Mean : ', Mean:8:4);

WriteLn('StdDev : ', StdDev:8:4);

MeanAndStdDev(@ExArray[1], 100, Mean, StdDev);

WriteLn('Mean (b) : ', Mean:8:4);

WriteLn('StdDev (b) : ', StdDev:8:4);

**end.**

---

#### 17.12.44 Min

Synopsis: Return smallest of two values.

Declaration: function Min(a: Integer;b: Integer) : Integer  
 function Min(a: Cardinal;b: Cardinal) : Cardinal  
 function Min(a: Int64;b: Int64) : Int64  
 function Min(a: Extended;b: Extended) : Extended

Visibility: default

Description: min returns the smallest value of Int1 and Int2;

Errors: None.

See also: max ([624](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex29.pp

---

**Program** Example29;

*{ Program to demonstrate the min function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Var**

---

```

A,B : Cardinal;

begin
  A:=1;b:=2;
  writeln(min(a,b));
end.

```

---

### 17.12.45 MinIntValue

Synopsis: Return smallest value in integer array

Declaration: `function MinIntValue(const Data: Array[] of Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: MinIntvalue returns the smallest value in the Data array.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility, use minvalue instead.

Errors: None

See also: minvalue ([629](#)), maxIntValue ([625](#)), maxvalue ([626](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex30.pp

---

**Program** Example30;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the MinIntValue function. }

{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }
{$mode objfpc}

```

**Uses** math;

**Type**

TExArray = **Array**[1..100] **of** Integer;

**Var**

I : Integer;  
ExArray : TExArray;

**begin**

```

  Randomize;
  for I:=1 to 100 do
    ExArray[i]:=Random(I)-Random(100);
  Writeln(MinIntValue(ExArray));
end.

```

---

### 17.12.46 minvalue

Synopsis: Return smallest value in array

Declaration: `function minvalue(const data: Array[] of float) : float`

`function minvalue(const data: Array[] of Integer) : Integer`

`function minvalue(const data: PFloat;const N: Integer) : float`

`function MinValue(const Data: PInteger;const N: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Minvalue` returns the smallest value in the data array with integer or float values. The return value has the same type as the elements of the array.

The third and fourth forms accept a pointer to an array of N integer or float values.

Errors: None.

See also: `maxIntValue` (625), `maxvalue` (626), `minIntValue` (629)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex31.pp`

---

**Program** `Example26`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MinValue function. }*

*{ Make sure integer is 32 bit }*  
*{ \$mode objfpc }*

**Uses** `math`;

**Type**

`TExFloatArray = Array[1..100] of Float;`  
`TExIntArray = Array[1..100] of Integer;`

**Var**

`I : Integer;`  
`ExFloatArray : TExFloatArray;`  
`AFloatArray : PFloat;`  
`ExIntArray : TExIntArray;`  
`AIntArray : PInteger;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`  
`AFloatArray := @ExFloatArray[0];`  
`AIntArray := @ExIntArray[0];`  
**for** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
    `ExFloatArray[I] := (Random-Random)*100;`  
**for** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
    `ExIntArray[I] := Random(I)-Random(100);`  
`WriteLn('Min Float : ', MinValue(ExFloatArray):8:4);`  
`WriteLn('Min Float (b) : ', MinValue(AFloatArray,100):8:4);`  
`WriteLn('Min Integer : ', MinValue(ExIntArray):8);`  
`WriteLn('Min Integer (b) : ', MinValue(AIntArray,100):8);`

**end.**

---

### 17.12.47 momentskewkurtosis

Synopsis: Return 4 first moments of distribution

Declaration: `procedure momentskewkurtosis(const data: Array[] of float; var m1: float;`  
    `var m2: float; var m3: float; var m4: float;`  
    `var skew: float; var kurtosis: float)`  
`procedure momentskewkurtosis(const data: PFloat; const N: Integer;`  
    `var m1: float; var m2: float; var m3: float;`  
    `var m4: float; var skew: float;`  
    `var kurtosis: float)`

Visibility: default

Description: `momentskewkurtosis` calculates the 4 first moments of the distribution of values in data and returns them in `m1`, `m2`, `m3` and `m4`, as well as the skew and kurtosis.

Errors: None.

See also: `mean` (627), `meanandstddev` (627)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex32.pp`

---

**Program** Example32;

*{ Program to demonstrate the momentskewkurtosis function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Var**

  DistArray : **Array**[1..1000] of float;  
  l : longint;  
  m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis : float;

**begin**

**randomize**;

**for** l:=1 **to** 1000 **do**

    distarray[l]:=random;

  momentskewkurtosis(DistArray,m1,m2,m3,m4,skew,kurtosis);

**Writeln** ( '1st moment : ',m1:8:6);

**Writeln** ( '2nd moment : ',m2:8:6);

**Writeln** ( '3rd moment : ',m3:8:6);

**Writeln** ( '4th moment : ',m4:8:6);

**Writeln** ( 'Skew : ',skew:8:6);

**Writeln** ( 'kurtosis : ',kurtosis:8:6);

**end.**

---

### 17.12.48 norm

Synopsis: Return Euclidian norm

Declaration: `function norm(const data: Array[] of float) : float`  
`function norm(const data: PFloat;const N: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Norm calculates the Euclidian norm of the array of data. This equals `sqrt(sumofsquares(data))`.  
 The second form accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: `sumofsquares` (640)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** Example33;

*{ Program to demonstrate the norm function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Type**

TVector = **Array**[1..10] of Float;

**Var**

AVector : Tvector;  
I : longint;

**begin**

for I:=1 to 10 do  
  Avector[i]:=Random;  
  WriteLn(Norm(AVector));  
**end.**

---

### 17.12.49 popnstddev

Synopsis: Return population variance

Declaration: function popnstddev(const data: Array[] of float) : float  
function popnstddev(const data: PFloat;const N: Integer) : float

Visibility: default

Description: Popnstddev returns the square root of the population variance of the values in the Data array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of this function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: popnvariance ([633](#)), mean ([627](#)), meanandstddev ([627](#)), stddev ([639](#)), momentskewkurtosis ([630](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex35.pp

---

**Program** Example35;

*{ Program to demonstrate the PopnStdDev function. }*

**Uses** Math;

**Type**

TExArray = **Array**[1..100] of Float;

**Var**

I : Integer;  
ExArray : TExArray;

**begin**

Randomize;  
for I:=1 to 100 do  
  ExArray[i]:=(Random-~~Random~~)\*100;  
  WriteLn('Max : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);  
  WriteLn('Min : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);  
  WriteLn('Pop. stddev. : ',PopnStdDev(ExArray):8:4);  
  WriteLn('Pop. stddev. (b) : ',PopnStdDev(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);  
**end.**

---

**17.12.50 popnvariance**

Synopsis: Return population variance

Declaration: `function popnvariance(const data: PFloat; const N: Integer) : float`  
`function popnvariance(const data: Array[] of float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Popnvariance` returns the square root of the population variance of the values in the `Data` array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of this function accepts a pointer to an array of `N` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `popnstddev` (632), `mean` (627), `meanandstddev` (627), `stddev` (639), `momentskewkurtosis` (630)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex36.pp`

---

**Program** `Example36;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the PopnVariance function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;`

**Var**

`I : Integer;`

`ExArray : TExArray;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`

`for I:=1 to 100 do`

`ExArray[I]:= (Random-Random)*100;`

`WriteIn('Max : ', MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);`

`WriteIn('Min : ', MinValue(ExArray):8:4);`

`WriteIn('Pop. var. : ', PopnVariance(ExArray):8:4);`

`WriteIn('Pop. var. (b) : ', PopnVariance(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);`

`end.`

---

**17.12.51 power**

Synopsis: Return real power.

Declaration: `function power(base: float; exponent: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `power` raises `base` to the power `power`. This is equivalent to `exp(power*ln(base))`. Therefore `base` should be non-negative.

Errors: None.

See also: `intpower` (620)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** Example34;

*{ Program to demonstrate the power function. }*

**Uses** Math;

**procedure** dopower(x,y : float);

**begin**

**writeln**(x:8:6, '^', y:8:6, ' = ', power(x,y):8:6)

**end**;

**begin**

    dopower(2,2);

    dopower(2,-2);

    dopower(2,0.0);

**end**.

---

### 17.12.52 radtcycle

Synopsis: Convert radians angle to cycle angle

Declaration: `function radtcycle(rad: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Radtcycle converts its argument rad (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in cycles.  
(1 cycle equals 2 pi radians)

Errors: None.

See also: degtograd ([615](#)), degtorad ([615](#)), radtodeg ([634](#)), radto grad ([635](#)), cycletorad ([614](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex37.pp

---

**Program** Example37;

*{ Program to demonstrate the radtcycle function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**

**writeln**(radtcycle(2\*pi):8:6);

**writeln**(radtcycle(pi):8:6);

**writeln**(radtcycle(pi/2):8:6);

**end**.

---

### 17.12.53 radtodeg

Synopsis: Convert radians angle to degrees angle

Declaration: `function radtodeg(rad: float) : float`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Radtodeg` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in degrees. (180 degrees equals pi radians)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `degtograd` ([615](#)), `degtorad` ([615](#)), `radtocycle` ([634](#)), `radtoegrad` ([635](#)), `cycletorad` ([614](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex38.pp`

---

**Program** `Example38`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the radtodeg function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

`writeln (radtodeg(2*pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtodeg(pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtodeg(pi/2):8:6);`

**end.**

---

### 17.12.54 radtoegrad

**Synopsis:** Convert radians angle to grads angle

**Declaration:** `function radtoegrad(rad: float) : float`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Radtodeg` converts its argument `rad` (an angle expressed in radians) to an angle in grads. (200 grads equals pi radians)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `degtograd` ([615](#)), `degtorad` ([615](#)), `radtocycle` ([634](#)), `radtodeg` ([634](#)), `cycletorad` ([614](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** `Example39`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the radtoegrad function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**begin**

`writeln (radtoegrad(2*pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtoegrad(pi):8:6);`

`writeln (radtoegrad(pi/2):8:6);`

**end.**

---

### 17.12.55 randg

**Synopsis:** Return gaussian distributed random number.

**Declaration:** `function randg(mean: float; stddev: float) : float`

**Visibility:** `default`



Description: `randg` returns a random number which - when produced in large quantities - has a Gaussian distribution with mean `mean` and standarddeviation `stddev`.

Errors: None.

See also: `mean` ([627](#)), `stddev` ([639](#)), `meanandstddev` ([627](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex40.pp`

---

**Program** `Example40`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the randg function. }*

**Uses** `Math`;

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..10000] of Float`;

**Var**

`I : Integer`;

`ExArray : TExArray`;

`Mean, stddev : Float`;

**begin**

`Randomize`;

`for I:=1 to 10000 do`

`ExArray[I]:=Randg(1,0.2);`

`MeanAndStdDev(ExArray,Mean,StdDev);`

`WriteLn('Mean : ',Mean:8:4);`

`WriteLn('StdDev : ',StdDev:8:4);`

**end.**

---

### 17.12.56 SameValue

Synopsis: Check whether 2 float values are the same

Declaration: `function SameValue(const A: Extended;const B: Extended) : Boolean`  
`function SameValue(const A: Single;const B: Single) : Boolean`  
`function SameValue(const A: Extended;const B: Extended;`  
`Epsilon: Extended) : Boolean`  
`function SameValue(const A: Single;const B: Single;Epsilon: Single)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameValue` returns `True` if the floating-point values `A` and `B` are the same, i.e. whether the absolute value of their difference is smaller than `Epsilon`. If their difference is larger, then `False` is returned.

The default value for `Epsilon` is dependent on the type of the arguments, but is `MinFloat` ([606](#)) for the float type.

See also: `MinFloat` ([606](#)), `IsZero` ([621](#))

### 17.12.57 SetExceptionMask

Synopsis: Set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

**Declaration:** `function SetExceptionMask(const Mask: TFPUEExceptionMask)  
: TFPUEExceptionMask`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Set the Floating Point Unit exception mask.

### 17.12.58 SetPrecisionMode

**Synopsis:** Set the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

**Declaration:** `function SetPrecisionMode(const Precision: TFPUPrecisionMode)  
: TFPUPrecisionMode`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Set the Floating Point Unit precision mode.

### 17.12.59 SetRoundMode

**Synopsis:** Set the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

**Declaration:** `function SetRoundMode(const RoundMode: TFPURoundingMode)  
: TFPURoundingMode`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Set the Floating Point Unit rounding mode.

### 17.12.60 SetSSECSR

**Synopsis:** Set MXCSR control word (Intel only)

**Declaration:** `procedure SetSSECSR(w: dword)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** SetSSECSR can be used to set the SSE/SSE2 control DWord. It is equivalent to the STMXCSR assembler instruction, and stores w in the control dword.

### 17.12.61 Sign

**Synopsis:** Return sign of argument

**Declaration:** `function Sign(const AValue: Integer) : TValueSign  
function Sign(const AValue: Int64) : TValueSign  
function Sign(const AValue: Double) : TValueSign`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Sign returns the sign of it's argument, which can be an Integer, 64 bit integer, or a double. The returned value is an integer which is -1, 0 or 1, and can be used to do further calculations with.

**17.12.62 sincos**

Synopsis: Return sine and cosine of argument

Declaration: `procedure sincos(theta: float; var sinus: float; var cosinus: float)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sincos` calculates the sine and cosine of the angle `theta`, and returns the result in `sinus` and `cosinus`.

On Intel hardware, This calculation will be faster than making 2 calls to calculate the sine and cosine separately.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcsin` ([610](#)), `arccos` ([608](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex41.pp`

---

**Program** `Example41`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the sincos function. }*

**Uses** `math`;

**Procedure** `dosincos`(`Angle` : `Float`);

**Var**

`Sine`, `Cosine` : `Float`;

**begin**

`sincos`(`angle`, `sine`, `cosine`);

**Write**( 'Angle : ', `Angle`:8:6);

**Write**( ' Sine : ', `sine`:8:6);

**Write**( ' Cosine : ', `cosine`:8:6);

**end**;

**begin**

`dosincos`(`pi`);

`dosincos`(`pi`/2);

`dosincos`(`pi`/3);

`dosincos`(`pi`/4);

`dosincos`(`pi`/6);

**end**.

---

**17.12.63 sinh**

Synopsis: Return hyperbolic sine

Declaration: `function sinh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sinh` returns the hyperbolic sine of its argument `x`.

Errors:

See also: `cosh` ([613](#)), `arsinh` ([612](#)), `tanh` ([642](#)), `artanh` ([612](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex42.pp

---

**Program** Example42;

*{ Program to demonstrate the sinh function. }*

**Uses** math;

**begin**  
     **writeln**(sinh(0));  
     **writeln**(sinh(1));  
     **writeln**(sinh(-1));  
**end.**

---

### 17.12.64 stddev

Synopsis: Return standard deviation of data

Declaration: `function stddev(const data: Array[] of float) : float`  
               `function stddev(const data: PFloat; const N: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Stddev returns the standard deviation of the values in Data. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: mean ([627](#)), meanandstddev ([627](#)), variance ([644](#)), totalvariance ([643](#))

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex43.pp

---

**Program** Example40;

*{ Program to demonstrate the stddev function. }*

**Uses** Math;

**Type**  
     TExArray = **Array**[1..10000] of Float;

**Var**  
     I : Integer;  
     ExArray : TExArray;

**begin**  
     **Randomize**;  
     **for** I:=1 **to** 10000 **do**  
         ExArray[I]:=Randg(1,0.2);  
     **Writeln**('StdDev : ',StdDev(ExArray):8:4);  
     **Writeln**('StdDev (b) : ',StdDev(@ExArray[0],10000):8:4);  
**end.**

---

**17.12.65 sum**

Synopsis: Return sum of values

Declaration: `function sum(const data: Array[] of float) : float`  
`function sum(const data: PFloat;const N: LongInt) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Sum returns the sum of the values in the data array.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: `sumofsquares` (640), `sumsandsquares` (641), `totalvariance` (643), `variance` (644)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex44.pp

---

**Program** Example44;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Sum function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;`

**Var**

`I : Integer;`

`ExArray : TExArray;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`

`for I:=1 to 100 do`

`ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;`

`WriteLn('Max : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);`

`WriteLn('Min : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);`

`WriteLn('Sum : ',Sum(ExArray):8:4);`

`WriteLn('Sum (b) : ',Sum(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);`

**end.**

---

**17.12.66 sumofsquares**

Synopsis: Return sum of squares of values

Declaration: `function sumofsquares(const data: Array[] of float) : float`  
`function sumofsquares(const data: PFloat;const N: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Sumofsquares returns the sum of the squares of the values in the data array.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: `sum` (640), `sumsandsquares` (641), `totalvariance` (643), `variance` (644)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex45.pp

---

```

Program Example45;

{ Program to demonstrate the SumOfSquares function. }

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

begin
  Randomize;
  for I:=1 to 100 do
    ExArray[I] := (Random-Random)*100;
  WriteIn ( 'Max           : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
  WriteIn ( 'Min           : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
  WriteIn ( 'Sum squares   : ',SumOfSquares(ExArray):8:4);
  WriteIn ( 'Sum squares (b) : ',SumOfSquares(@ExArray[1],100):8:4);
end.

```

---

### 17.12.67 sumsandsquares

Synopsis: Return sum and sum of squares of values.

Declaration: `procedure sumsandsquares(const data: Array[] of float; var sum: float; var sumofsquares: float)`  
`procedure sumsandsquares(const data: PFloat; const N: Integer; var sum: float; var sumofsquares: float)`

Visibility: default

Description: sumsandsquares calculates the sum of the values and the sum of the squares of the values in the data array and returns the results in sum and sumofsquares.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: [sum \(640\)](#), [sumofsquares \(640\)](#), [totalvariance \(643\)](#), [variance \(644\)](#)

**Listing:** ./mathex/ex46.pp

---

```

Program Example45;

{ Program to demonstrate the SumOfSquares function. }

Uses math;

Type
  TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;

Var
  I : Integer;
  ExArray : TExArray;

```

```

s,ss : float;

begin
  Randomize;
  for i:=1 to 100 do
    ExArray[i]:=(Random-Random)*100;
    WriteLn('Max           : ',MaxValue(ExArray):8:4);
    WriteLn('Min           : ',MinValue(ExArray):8:4);
    SumsAndSquares(ExArray,S,SS);
    WriteLn('Sum           : ',S:8:4);
    WriteLn('Sum squares    : ',SS:8:4);
    SumsAndSquares(@ExArray[1],100,S,SS);
    WriteLn('Sum (b)        : ',S:8:4);
    WriteLn('Sum squares (b) : ',SS:8:4);
  end.

```

---

### 17.12.68 tan

Synopsis: Return tangent

Declaration: `function tan(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Tan returns the tangent of x.

Errors: If x (normalized) is  $\pi/2$  or  $3\pi/2$  then an overflow will occur.

See also: `tanh` (642), `arcsin` (610), `sincos` (638), `arccos` (608)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex47.pp`

**Program** Example47;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Tan function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Procedure** DoTan(Angle : Float);

**begin**

**Write** ('Angle : ',RadToDeg(Angle):8:6);

**WriteLn** ('Tangent : ',Tan(Angle):8:6);

**end;**

**begin**

  DoTan(0);

  DoTan(**Pi**);

  DoTan(**Pi**/3);

  DoTan(**Pi**/4);

  DoTan(**Pi**/6);

**end.**

---

### 17.12.69 tanh

Synopsis: Return hyperbolic tangent

Declaration: `function tanh(x: float) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: Tanh returns the hyperbolic tangent of `x`.

Errors: None.

See also: `arcsin` ([610](#)), `sincos` ([638](#)), `arccos` ([608](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex48.pp`

---

**Program** `Example48;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Tanh function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**begin**

`writeln(tanh(0));`

`writeln(tanh(1));`

`writeln(tanh(-1));`

**end.**

---

### 17.12.70 totalvariance

Synopsis: Return total variance of values

Declaration: `function totalvariance(const data: Array[] of float) : float`  
`function totalvariance(const data: PFloat; const N: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `TotalVariance` returns the total variance of the values in the `data` array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of `N` values.

Errors: None.

See also: `variance` ([644](#)), `stddev` ([639](#)), `mean` ([627](#))

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex49.pp`

---

**Program** `Example49;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TotalVariance function. }*

**Uses** `math;`

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;`

**Var**

`I : Integer;`

`ExArray : TExArray;`

`TV : float;`

**begin**



---

```

Randomize;
for I:=1 to 100 do
  ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
TV:=TotalVariance(ExArray);
WriteLn('Total variance      : ',TV:8:4);
TV:=TotalVariance(@ExArray[1],100);
WriteLn('Total Variance (b) : ',TV:8:4);
end.

```

---

### 17.12.71 variance

Synopsis: Return variance of values

Declaration: `function variance(const data: Array[] of float) : float`  
`function variance(const data: PFloat;const N: Integer) : float`

Visibility: default

Description: `Variance` returns the variance of the values in the data array. It returns zero if there is only one value.

The second form of the function accepts a pointer to an array of N values.

Errors: None.

See also: `totalvariance` (643), `stddev` (639), `mean` (627)

**Listing:** `./mathex/ex50.pp`

---

**Program** Example50;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Variance function. }*

**Uses** math;

**Type**

`TExArray = Array[1..100] of Float;`

**Var**

`I : Integer;`  
`ExArray : TExArray;`  
`V : float;`

**begin**

```

Randomize;
for I:=1 to 100 do
  ExArray[I]:=(Random-Random)*100;
V:=Variance(ExArray);
WriteLn('Variance      : ',V:8:4);
V:=Variance(@ExArray[1],100);
WriteLn('Variance (b) : ',V:8:4);
end.

```

---

## **17.13    `invalidargument`**

### **17.13.1    Description**

Exception raised when invalid arguments are passed to a function.

## Chapter 18

# Reference for unit 'mmx'

### 18.1 Overview

This document describes the MMX unit. This unit allows you to use the MMX capabilities of the Free Pascal compiler. It was written by Florian Klaempfl for the I386 processor. It should work on all platforms that use the Intel processor.

### 18.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 18.2.1 Constants

```
is_amd_3d_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_amd_3d_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_amd_3d_dsp_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_amd_3d_dsp_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D DSP extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_amd_3d_mmx_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_amd_3d_mmx_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the AMD 3D MMX extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_mmx_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_mmx_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has MMX extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_sse2_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_sse2_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the SSE2 extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

```
is_sse_cpu : Boolean = false
```

The `is_sse_cpu` initialized constant allows you to determine if the computer has the SSE extensions. It is set correctly in the unit's initialization code.

### 18.2.2 Types

`pmmxbyte = ^tmmxbyte`

Pointer to `tmmxbyte` (647) array type

`pmmxcardinal = ^tmmxcardinal`

Pointer to `tmmxcardinal` (647) array type

`pmmxinteger = ^tmmxinteger`

Pointer to `tmmxinteger` (647) array type

`pmmxlongint = ^tmmxlongint`

Pointer to `tmmxlongint` (647) array type

`pmmxshortint = ^tmmxshortint`

Pointer to `tmmxshortint` (647) array type

`pmmxsingle = ^tmmxsingle`

Pointer to `tmmxsingle` (647) array type

`pmmxword = ^tmmxword`

Pointer to `tmmxword` (647) array type

`tmmxbyte = Array[0..7] of Byte`

Array of bytes, 64 bits in size

`tmmxcardinal = Array[0..1] of cardinal`

Array of cardinals, 64 bits in size

`tmmxinteger = Array[0..3] of Integer`

Array of integers, 64 bits in size

`tmmxlongint = Array[0..1] of LongInt`

Array of longint, 64 bits in size

`tmmxshortint = Array[0..7] of ShortInt`

Array of shortints, 64 bits in size

`tmmxsingle = Array[0..1] of single`

Array of singles, 64 bits in size

`tmmxword = Array[0..3] of Word`

Array of words, 64 bits in size

## 18.3 Procedures and functions

### 18.3.1 emms

Synopsis: Reset floating point registers

Declaration: `procedure emms`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Emms` sets all floating point registers to empty. This procedure must be called after you have used any MMX instructions, if you want to use floating point arithmetic. If you just want to move floating point data around, it isn't necessary to call this function, the compiler doesn't use the FPU registers when moving data. Only when doing calculations, you should use this function. The following code demonstrates this:

```
Program MMXDemo;
uses mmx;
var
  d1 : double;
  a : array[0..10000] of double;
  i : longint;
begin
  d1:=1.0;
  {$mmx+}
  { floating point data is used, but we do _no_ arithmetic }
  for i:=0 to 10000 do
    a[i]:=d2; { this is done with 64 bit moves }
  {$mmx-}
  emms; { clear fpu }
  { now we can do floating point arithmetic again }
end.
```

See also: `femms` ([648](#))

### 18.3.2 femms

Synopsis: Reset floating point registers - AMD version

Declaration: `procedure femms`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `femms` executes the `femms` assembler instruction for AMD processors. it is not supported by all assemblers, hence it is coded as byte codes.

See also: `emms` ([648](#))

## Chapter 19

# Reference for unit 'Mouse'

### 19.1 Writing a custom mouse driver

The `mouse` unit has support for adding a custom mouse driver. This can be used to add support for mice not supported by the standard Free Pascal driver, but also to enhance an existing driver for instance to log mouse events or to implement a record and playback function.

The following unit shows how a mouse driver can be enhanced by adding some logging capabilities to the driver.

### 19.2 Overview

The `Mouse` unit implements a platform independent mouse handling interface. It is implemented identically on all platforms supported by Free Pascal and can be enhanced with custom drivers, should this be needed. It is intended to be used only in text-based screens, for instance in conjunction with the keyboard and video unit. No support for graphical screens is implemented, and there are (currently) no plans to implement this.

### 19.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 19.3.1 Constants

```
errMouseBase = 1030
```

Base for mouse error codes.

```
errMouseInitError = errMouseBase + 0
```

Mouse initialization error

```
errMouseNotImplemented = errMouseBase + 1
```

Mouse driver not implemented.

```
MouseActionDown = $0001
```

Mouse button down event signal.

MouseActionMove = \$0004

Mouse cursor move event signal.

MouseActionUp = \$0002

Mouse button up event signal.

MouseEventBufSize = 16

The mouse unit has a mechanism to buffer mouse events. This constant defines the size of the event buffer.

MouseLeftButton = \$01

Left mouse button event.

MouseMiddleButton = \$04

Middle mouse button event.

MouseRightButton = \$02

Right mouse button event.

### 19.3.2 Types

PMouseEvent = ^TMouseEvent

Pointer to TMouseEvent ([651](#)) record.

```
TMouseDriver = record
  UseDefaultQueue : Boolean;
  InitDriver : procedure;
  DoneDriver : procedure;
  DetectMouse : function : Byte;
  ShowMouse : procedure;
  HideMouse : procedure;
  GetMouseX : function : Word;
  GetMouseY : function : Word;
  GetMouseButtons : function : Word;
  SetMouseXY : procedure(x: Word;y: Word);
  GetMouseEvent : procedure(var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent);
  PollMouseEvent : function(var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent) : Boolean;
  PutMouseEvent : procedure(const MouseEvent: TMouseEvent);
end
```

The TMouseDriver record is used to implement a mouse driver in the SetMouseDriver ([656](#)) function. Its fields must be filled in before calling the SetMouseDriver ([656](#)) function.

```

TMouseEvent = packed record
  buttons : Word;
  x : Word;
  y : Word;
  Action : Word;
end

```

The `TMouseEvent` is the central type of the mouse unit, it is used to describe all mouse events.

The `Buttons` field describes which buttons were down when the event occurred. The `x`, `y` fields describe where the event occurred on the screen. The `Action` describes what action was going on when the event occurred. The `Buttons` and `Action` field can be examined using the constants defined in the unit interface.

### 19.3.3 Variables

`MouseButtons` : Byte

This variable keeps track of the last known mouse button state. Do not use.

`MouseIntFlag` : Byte

This variable keeps track of the last known internal mouse state. Do not use.

`MouseWhereX` : Word

This variable keeps track of the last known cursor position. Do not use.

`MouseWhereY` : Word

This variable keeps track of the last known cursor position. Do not use.

## 19.4 Procedures and functions

### 19.4.1 DetectMouse

Synopsis: Detect the presence of a mouse.

Declaration: `function DetectMouse` : Byte

Visibility: default

Description: `DetectMouse` detects whether a mouse is attached to the system or not. If there is no mouse, then zero is returned. If a mouse is attached, then the number of mouse buttons is returned.

This function should be called after the mouse driver was initialized.

Errors: None.

See also: `InitMouse` ([655](#)), `DoneMouse` ([652](#))

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex1.pp`



---

```

Program Example1;

{ Program to demonstrate the DetectMouse function. }

Uses mouse;

Var
  Buttons : Byte;

begin
  InitMouse;
  Buttons:=DetectMouse;
  If Buttons=0 then
    WriteLn( 'No mouse present. ')
  else
    WriteLn( 'Found mouse with ',Buttons, ' buttons. ');
  DoneMouse;
end.

```

---

### 19.4.2 DoneMouse

Synopsis: Deinitialize mouse driver.

Declaration: `procedure DoneMouse`

Visibility: default

Description: DoneMouse De-initializes the mouse driver. It cleans up any memory allocated when the mouse was initialized, or removes possible mouse hooks from memory. The mouse functions will not work after DoneMouse was called. If DoneMouse is called a second time, it will exit at once. InitMouse should be called before DoneMouse can be called again.

For an example, see most other mouse functions.

Errors: None.

See also: DetectMouse ([651](#)), InitMouse ([655](#))

### 19.4.3 GetMouseButtons

Synopsis: Get the state of the mouse buttons

Declaration: `function GetMouseButtons : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: GetMouseButtons returns the current button state of the mouse, i.e. it returns a or-ed combination of the following constants:

**MouseLeftButton** When the left mouse button is held down.

**MouseRightButton** When the right mouse button is held down.

**MouseMiddleButton** When the middle mouse button is held down.

Errors: None.

See also: GetMouseEvent ([653](#)), GetMouseX ([653](#)), GetMouseY ([654](#))

**Listing:** ./mouseex/ex2.pp

**Program** Example2;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetMouseButtons function. }*

**Uses** mouse;

**begin**

  InitMouse;

**WriteLn**('Press right mouse button to exit program');

**While** (GetMouseButtons<>MouseRightButton) **do** ;

  DoneMouse;

**end.**

#### 19.4.4 GetMouseDriver

**Synopsis:** Get a copy of the currently active mouse driver.

**Declaration:** procedure GetMouseDriver(var Driver: TMouseDriver)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetMouseDriver returns the currently set mouse driver. It can be used to retrieve the current mouse driver, and override certain callbacks.

A more detailed explanation about getting and setting mouse drivers can be found in mousedrv (649).

For an example, see the section on writing a custom mouse driver, mousedrv (649)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** SetMouseDriver (656)

#### 19.4.5 GetMouseEvent

**Synopsis:** Get next mouse event from the queue.

**Declaration:** procedure GetMouseEvent(var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetMouseEvent returns the next mouse event (a movement, button press or button release), and waits for one if none is available in the queue.

Some mouse drivers can implement a mouse event queue which can hold multiple events till they are fetched. Others don't, and in that case, a one-event queue is implemented for use with PollMouseEvent (656).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** GetMouseButtons (652), GetMouseX (653), GetMouseY (654)

#### 19.4.6 GetMouseX

**Synopsis:** Query the current horizontal position of the mouse cursor.

**Declaration:** function GetMouseX : Word

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMouseX` returns the current X position of the mouse. X is measured in characters, starting at 0 for the left side of the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseButtons` (652), `GetMouseEvent` (653), `GetMouseY` (654)

**Listing:** ./mouseex/ex4.pp

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetMouseX,GetMouseY functions. }*

**Uses** mouse;

**Var**

X,Y : Word;

**begin**

InitMouse;

**WriteLn**('Move mouse cursor to square 10,10 to end');

**Repeat**

X:=GetMouseX;

Y:=GetMouseY;

**WriteLn**('X,Y= ( ',X,' ',Y,' '');

**Until** (X=9) and (Y=9);

DoneMouse;

**end.**

---

### 19.4.7 GetMouseY

Synopsis: Query the current vertical position of the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `function GetMouseY : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMouseY` returns the current Y position of the mouse. Y is measured in characters, starting at 0 for the top of the screen.

For an example, see `GetMouseX` (653)

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseButtons` (652), `GetMouseEvent` (653), `GetMouseX` (653)

### 19.4.8 HideMouse

Synopsis: Hide the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `procedure HideMouse`

Visibility: default

Description: `HideMouse` hides the mouse cursor. This may or may not be implemented on all systems, and depends on the driver.

Errors: None.

See also: ShowMouse ([657](#))

**Listing:** ./mouseex/ex5.pp

---

**Program** Example5;

*{ Program to demonstrate the HideMouse function. }*

**Uses** mouse;

**Var**

Event : TMouseEvent;

Visible : Boolean;

**begin**

InitMouse;

ShowMouse;

Visible:=True;

**WriteIn**('Press left mouse button to hide/show, right button quits');

**Repeat**

GetMouseEvent(Event);

**With** Event **do**

**If** (Buttons=MouseLeftbutton) **and**

(Action=MouseDown) **then**

**begin**

**If** Visible **then**

HideMouse

**else**

ShowMouse;

Visible:=**Not** Visible;

**end**;

**Until** (Event.Buttons=MouseRightButton) **and**

(Event.Action=MouseDown);

DoneMouse;

**end.**

---

### 19.4.9 InitMouse

Synopsis: Initialize the FPC mouse driver.

Declaration: procedure InitMouse

Visibility: default

Description: InitMouse Initializes the mouse driver. This will allocate any data structures needed for the mouse to function. All mouse functions can be used after a call to InitMouse.

A call to InitMouse must always be followed by a call to DoneMouse ([652](#)) at program exit. Failing to do so may leave the mouse in an unusable state, or may result in memory leaks.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: DoneMouse ([652](#)), DetectMouse ([651](#))

### 19.4.10 PollMouseEvent

Synopsis: Query next mouse event. Do not wait if none available.

Declaration: `function PollMouseEvent(var MouseEvent: TMouseEvent) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PollMouseEvent` checks whether a mouse event is available, and returns it in `MouseEvent` if one is found. The function result is `True` in that case. If no mouse event is pending, the function result is `False`, and the contents of `MouseEvent` is undefined.

Note that after a call to `PollMouseEvent`, the event should still be removed from the mouse event queue with a call to `GetMouseEvent`.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseEvent` ([653](#)), `PutMouseEvent` ([656](#))

### 19.4.11 PutMouseEvent

Synopsis: Put a mouse event in the venet queue.

Declaration: `procedure PutMouseEvent(const MouseEvent: TMouseEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutMouseEvent` adds `MouseEvent` to the input queue. The next call to `GetMouseEvent` ([653](#)) or `PollMouseEvent` will then return `MouseEvent`.

Please note that depending on the implementation the mouse event queue can hold only one value.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseEvent` ([653](#)), `PollMouseEvent` ([656](#))

### 19.4.12 SetMouseDriver

Synopsis: Set a new mouse driver.

Declaration: `procedure SetMouseDriver(const Driver: TMouseDriver)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMouseDriver` sets the mouse driver to `Driver`. This function should be called before `InitMouse` ([655](#)) is called, or after `DoneMouse` is called. If it is called after the mouse has been initialized, it does nothing.

For more information on setting the mouse driver, `mousedrv` ([649](#)).

For an example, see `mousedrv` ([649](#))

Errors:

See also: `InitMouse` ([655](#)), `DoneMouse` ([652](#)), `GetMouseDriver` ([653](#))

### 19.4.13 SetMouseXY

Synopsis: Set the mouse cursor position.

Declaration: `procedure SetMouseXY(x: Word; y: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMouseXY` places the mouse cursor on X, Y. X and Y are zero based character coordinates: 0, 0 is the top-left corner of the screen, and the position is in character cells (i.e. not in pixels).

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMouseX` ([653](#)), `GetMouseY` ([654](#))

**Listing:** `./mouseex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** `Example7;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the SetMouseXY function. }*

**Uses** `mouse;`

**begin**

`InitMouse;`

`WriteLn('Click right mouse button to quit.');`

`SetMouseXY(40,12);`

**Repeat**

`WriteLn(GetMouseX, ' ', GetMouseY);`

`If (GetMouseX>70) then`

`SetMouseXY(10,GetMouseY);`

`If (GetMouseY>20) then`

`SetMouseXY(GetMouseX, 5);`

`Until (GetMouseButtons=MouseRightButton);`

`DoneMouse;`

**end.**

---

### 19.4.14 ShowMouse

Synopsis: Show the mouse cursor.

Declaration: `procedure ShowMouse`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShowMouse` shows the mouse cursor if it was previously hidden. The capability to hide or show the mouse cursor depends on the driver.

For an example, see `HideMouse` ([654](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `HideMouse` ([654](#))

## Chapter 20

# Reference for unit 'Objects'

### 20.1 Overview

This document documents the `objects` unit. The unit was implemented by many people, and was mainly taken from the FreeVision sources. It has been ported to all supported platforms.

The methods and fields that are in a `Private` part of an object declaration have been left out of this documentation.

### 20.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 20.2.1 Constants

`coIndexError = -1`

Collection list error: Index out of range

`coOverflow = -2`

Collection list error: Overflow

`DefaultTPCompatible : Boolean = false`

`DefaultTPCompatible` is used to initialize `tstream.tpcompatible` (??).

`MaxBytes = 128 * 1024 * 128`

Maximum data size (in bytes)

`MaxCollectionSize = MaxBytes div SizeOf ( Pointer )`

Maximum collection size (in items)

`MaxPtrs = MaxBytes div SizeOf ( Pointer )`

Maximum data size (in pointers)

MaxReadBytes = \$7fffffff

Maximum data that can be read from a stream (not used)

MaxTPCompatibleCollectionSize = 65520 div 4

Maximum collection size (in items, same value as in TP)

MaxWords = MaxBytes div SizeOf ( Word )

Maximum data size (in words)

RCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType:50;VmtLink:Ofs ( TypeOf ( TCollection ) ^ ) ;Load

Default stream record for the TCollection (675) object.

RStrCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType:69;VmtLink:Ofs ( TypeOf ( TStrCollection ) ^

Default stream record for the TStrCollection (715) object.

RStringCollection : TStreamRec = (ObjType:51;VmtLink:Ofs ( TypeOf ( TStringCollection

Default stream record for the TStringCollection (725) object.

RStringList : TStreamRec = (ObjType:52;VmtLink:Ofs ( TypeOf ( TStringList ) ^ ) ;Load

Default stream record for the TStringList (727) object.

RStrListMaker : TStreamRec = (ObjType:52;VmtLink:Ofs ( TypeOf ( TStrListMaker ) ^ )

Default stream record for the TStrListMaker (729) object.

stCreate = \$3C00

Stream initialization mode: Create new file

stError = -1

Stream error codes: Access error

stGetError = -5

Stream error codes: Get object error

stInitError = -2

Stream error codes: Initialize error

stOk = 0

Stream error codes: No error



`stOpen = $3D02`

Stream initialization mode: Read/write access

`stOpenError = -8`

Stream error codes: Error opening stream

`stOpenRead = $3D00`

Stream initialization mode: Read access only

`stOpenWrite = $3D01`

Stream initialization mode: Write access only

`stPutError = -6`

Stream error codes: Put object error

`stReadError = -3`

Stream error codes: Stream read error

`StreamError : Pointer = nil`

Pointer to default stream error handler.

`stSeekError = -7`

Stream error codes: Seek error in stream

`stWriteError = -4`

Stream error codes: Stream write error

`vmtHeaderSize = 8`

Size of the VMT header in an object (not used).

### 20.2.2 Types

`AsciiZ = Array[0..255] of Char`

Filename - null terminated array of characters.

`FNameStr = String`

Filename - shortstring version.

```
LongRec = packed record
  Hi : Word;
  Lo : Word;
end
```

Record describing a longint (in Words)

```
PBufStream = ^TBufStream
```

Pointer to TBufStream ([671](#)) object.

```
PByteArray = ^TByteArray
```

Pointer to TByteArray ([663](#))

```
PCharSet = ^TCharSet
```

Pointer to TCharSet ([663](#)).

```
PCollection = ^TCollection
```

Pointer to TCollection ([675](#)) object.

```
PDosStream = ^TDosStream
```

Pointer to TDosStream ([690](#)) object.

```
PItemList = ^TItemList
```

Pointer to TItemList ([663](#)) object.

```
PMemoryStream = ^TMemoryStream
```

Pointer to TMemoryStream ([695](#)) object.

```
PObject = ^TObject
```

Pointer to TObject ([697](#)) object.

```
PPoint = ^TPoint
```

Pointer to TPoint ([699](#)) record.

```
PPointerArray = ^TPointerArray
```

Pointer to TPointerArray ([663](#))

```
PRect = ^TRect
```

Pointer to TRect ([699](#)) object.

`PResourceCollection = ^TResourceCollection`

Pointer to `TResourceCollection` (705) object.

`PResourceFile = ^TResourceFile`

Pointer to `TResourceFile` (706) object.

`PSortedCollection = ^TSortedCollection`

Pointer to `TSortedCollection` (709) object.

`PStrCollection = ^TStrCollection`

Pointer to `TStrCollection` (715) object.

`PStream = ^TStream`

Pointer type to `TStream` (717)

`PStreamRec = ^TStreamRec`

Pointer to `TStreamRec` (663)

`PStrIndex = ^TStrIndex`

Pointer to `TStrIndex` (663) array.

`PString = PShortString`

Pointer to a shortstring.

`PStringCollection = ^TStringCollection`

Pointer to `TStringCollection` (725) object.

`PStringList = ^TStringList`

Pointer to `TStringList` (727) object.

`PStrListMaker = ^TStrListMaker`

Pointer to `TStrListMaker` (729) object.

```
PTrRec = packed record
  Ofs : Word;
  Seg : Word;
end
```

Record describing a pointer to a memory location.

PUnSortedStrCollection = ^TUnSortedStrCollection

Pointer to TUnsortedStrCollection (730) object.

PWordArray = ^TWordArray

Pointer to TWordArray (664)

Sw\_Integer = LongInt

Alias for longint

Sw\_Word = Cardinal

Alias for Cardinal

TByteArray = Array[0..MaxBytes-1] of Byte

Array with maximum allowed number of bytes.

TCharSet = Set of Char

Generic set of characters type.

TItemList = Array[0..MaxCollectionSize-1] of Pointer

Pointer array type used in a TCollection (675)

TPointerArray = Array[0..MaxPtrs-1] of Pointer

Array with maximum allowed number of pointers

TStreamRec = packed record

ObjType : Sw\_Word;

VmtLink : pointer;

Load : Pointer;

Store : Pointer;

Next : PStreamRec;

end

TStreamRec is used by the **Objects** unit streaming mechanism: when an object is registered, a TStreamRec record is added to a list of records. This list is used when objects need to be streamed from/streamed to a stream. It contains all the information needed to stream the object.

TStrIndex = Array[0..9999] of TStrIndexRec

Pointer array type used in a TStringList (727)

```
TStrIndexRec = packed record
  Key : Sw_Word;
  Count : Word;
  Offset : Word;
end
```

Record type used in a TStringList (727) to store the strings

```
TWordArray = Array[0..MaxWords-1] of Word
```

Array with maximum allowed number of words.

```
WordRec = packed record
  Hi : Byte;
  Lo : Byte;
end
```

Record describing a Word (in bytes)

### 20.2.3 Variables

```
invalidhandle : THandle
```

Value for invalid handle. Initial value for file stream handles or when the stream is closed.

## 20.3 Procedures and functions

### 20.3.1 Abstract

Synopsis: Abstract error handler.

Declaration: `procedure Abstract`

Visibility: default

Description: When implementing abstract methods, do not declare them as `abstract`. Instead, define them simply as `virtual`. In the implementation of such abstract methods, call the `Abstract` procedure. This allows explicit control of what happens when an abstract method is called.

The current implementation of `Abstract` terminates the program with a run-time error 211.

Errors: None.

### 20.3.2 CallPointerConstructor

Synopsis: Call a constructor with a pointer argument.

Declaration: `function CallPointerConstructor(Ctor: pointer; Obj: pointer; VMT: pointer; Param1: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `CallVoidConstructor` calls the constructor of an object. `Ctor` is the address of the constructor, `Obj` is a pointer to the instance. If it is `Nil`, then a new instance is allocated. `VMT` is a pointer to the object's VMT. `Param1` is passed to the constructor. The return value is a pointer to the instance.

Note that this can only be used on constructors that require a pointer as the sole argument. It can also be used to call a constructor with a single argument by reference.

**Errors:** If the constructor expects other arguments than a pointer, the stack may be corrupted.

**See also:** `CallVoidConstructor` (666), `CallPointerMethod` (665), `CallVoidLocal` (666), `CallPointerLocal` (665), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (667), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (665)

### 20.3.3 CallPointerLocal

**Synopsis:** Call a local nested function with a pointer argument

**Declaration:** `function CallPointerLocal(Func: pointer;Frame: Pointer;Param1: pointer)  
: pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallPointerLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping function. It passes `Param1` to the local function.

**Errors:** If the local function expects other parameters than a pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

**See also:** `CallPointerMethod` (665), `CallVoidMethod` (666), `CallVoidLocal` (666), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (667), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (665), `CallVoidConstructor` (666), `CallPointerConstructor` (664)

### 20.3.4 CallPointerMethod

**Synopsis:** Call a method with a single pointer argument

**Declaration:** `function CallPointerMethod(Method: pointer;Obj: pointer;Param1: pointer)  
: pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallPointerMethod` calls the method with address `Method` for instance `Obj`. It passes `Param1` to the method as the single argument. It returns a pointer to the instance.

**Errors:** If the method expects other parameters than a single pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

**See also:** `CallVoidMethod` (666), `CallVoidLocal` (666), `CallPointerLocal` (665), `CallVoidMethodLocal` (667), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (665), `CallVoidConstructor` (666), `CallPointerConstructor` (664)

### 20.3.5 CallPointerMethodLocal

**Synopsis:** Call a local procedure of a method with a pointer argument

**Declaration:** `function CallPointerMethodLocal(Func: pointer;Frame: Pointer;  
Obj: pointer;Param1: pointer) : pointer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `CallPointerMethodLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping method. It passes `Param1` to the local function.

Errors: If the local function expects other parameters than a pointer, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: [CallPointerMethod \(665\)](#), [CallVoidMethod \(666\)](#), [CallPointerLocal \(665\)](#), [CallVoidLocal \(666\)](#), [CallVoidMethodLocal \(667\)](#), [CallVoidConstructor \(666\)](#), [CallPointerConstructor \(664\)](#)

### 20.3.6 CallVoidConstructor

Synopsis: Call a constructor with no arguments

Declaration: `function CallVoidConstructor(Ctor: pointer;Obj: pointer;VMT: pointer)  
: pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidConstructor` calls the constructor of an object. `Ctor` is the address of the constructor, `Obj` is a pointer to the instance. If it is `Nil`, then a new instance is allocated. `VMT` is a pointer to the object's VMT. The return value is a pointer to the instance.

Note that this can only be used on constructors that require no arguments.

Errors: If the constructor expects arguments, the stack may be corrupted.

See also: [CallPointerConstructor \(664\)](#), [CallPointerMethod \(665\)](#), [CallVoidLocal \(666\)](#), [CallPointerLocal \(665\)](#), [CallVoidMethodLocal \(667\)](#), [CallPointerMethodLocal \(665\)](#)

### 20.3.7 CallVoidLocal

Synopsis: Call a local nested procedure.

Declaration: `function CallVoidLocal(Func: pointer;Frame: Pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping function.

Errors: If the local function expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: [CallPointerMethod \(665\)](#), [CallVoidMethod \(666\)](#), [CallPointerLocal \(665\)](#), [CallVoidMethodLocal \(667\)](#), [CallPointerMethodLocal \(665\)](#), [CallVoidConstructor \(666\)](#), [CallPointerConstructor \(664\)](#)

### 20.3.8 CallVoidMethod

Synopsis: Call an object method

Declaration: `function CallVoidMethod(Method: pointer;Obj: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidMethod` calls the method with address `Method` for instance `Obj`. It returns a pointer to the instance.

Errors: If the method expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: [CallPointerMethod \(665\)](#), [CallVoidLocal \(666\)](#), [CallPointerLocal \(665\)](#), [CallVoidMethodLocal \(667\)](#), [CallPointerMethodLocal \(665\)](#), [CallVoidConstructor \(666\)](#), [CallPointerConstructor \(664\)](#)

### 20.3.9 CallVoidMethodLocal

Synopsis: Call a local procedure of a method

Declaration: `function CallVoidMethodLocal(Func: pointer;Frame: Pointer;Obj: pointer)  
: pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallVoidMethodLocal` calls the local procedure with address `Func`, where `Frame` is the frame of the wrapping method.

Errors: If the local function expects parameters, the stack may become corrupted.

See also: `CallPointerMethod` (665), `CallVoidMethod` (666), `CallPointerLocal` (665), `CallVoidLocal` (666), `CallPointerMethodLocal` (665), `CallVoidConstructor` (666), `CallPointerConstructor` (664)

### 20.3.10 DisposeStr

Synopsis: Dispose of a shortstring which was allocated on the heap.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeStr(P: PString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DisposeStr` removes a dynamically allocated string from the heap.

For an example, see `NewStr` (668).

Errors: None.

See also: `NewStr` (668), `SetStr` (670)

### 20.3.11 LongDiv

Synopsis: Overflow safe divide

Declaration: `function LongDiv(X: LongInt;Y: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `LongDiv` divides `X` by `Y`. The result is of type `Integer` instead of type `Longint`, as you would get normally.

Errors: If `Y` is zero, a run-time error will be generated.

See also: `LongMul` (667)

### 20.3.12 LongMul

Synopsis: Overflow safe multiply.

Declaration: `function LongMul(X: Integer;Y: Integer) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `LongMul` multiplies `X` with `Y`. The result is of type `Longint`. This avoids possible overflow errors you would normally get when multiplying `X` and `Y` that are too big.

Errors: None.

See also: `LongDiv` (667)



### 20.3.13 NewStr

Synopsis: Allocate a copy of a shortstring on the heap.

Declaration: `function NewStr(const S: String) : PString`

Visibility: default

Description: `NewStr` makes a copy of the string `S` on the heap, and returns a pointer to this copy. If the string is empty then `Nil` is returned.

The allocated memory is not based on the declared size of the string passed to `NewStr`, but is based on the actual length of the string.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an 'out of memory' error will occur.

See also: `DisposeStr` ([667](#)), `SetStr` ([670](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex40.pp`

---

```

Program ex40;

{ Program to demonstrate the NewStr function }

Uses Objects;

Var S : String;
    P : PString;

begin
  S := 'Some really cute string';
  Writeln ('Memavail : ', Memavail);
  P := NewStr(S);
  If P^ <> S then
    Writeln ('Oh-oh... Something is wrong !! ');
  Writeln ('Allocated string. Memavail : ', Memavail);
  DisposeStr(P);
  Writeln ('Deallocated string. Memavail : ', Memavail);
end.

```

---

### 20.3.14 RegisterObjects

Synopsis: Register standard objects.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterObjects`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterObjects` registers the following objects for streaming:

1. `TCollection`, see `TCollection` ([675](#)).
2. `TStringCollection`, see `TStringCollection` ([725](#)).
3. `TStrCollection`, see `TStrCollection` ([715](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `RegisterType` ([669](#))

### 20.3.15 RegisterType

Synopsis: Register new object for streaming.

Declaration: `procedure RegisterType(var S: TStreamRec)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RegisterType` registers a new type for streaming. An object cannot be streamed unless it has been registered first. The stream record `S` needs to have the following fields set:

**ObjType: Sw\_Word** This should be a unique identifier. Each possible type should have it's own identifier.

**VmtLink: pointer** This should contain a pointer to the VMT (Virtual Method Table) of the object you try to register.

**Load : Pointer** is a pointer to a method that initializes an instance of that object, and reads the initial values from a stream. This method should accept as it's sole argument a `PStream` type variable.

**Store: Pointer** is a pointer to a method that stores an instance of the object to a stream. This method should accept as it's sole argument a `PStream` type variable.

The VMT of the object can be retrieved with the following expression:

```
VmtLink: ofs(EOF(MyType)^);
```

Errors: In case of error (if a object with the same `ObjType`) is already registered), run-time error 212 occurs.

**Listing:** `./objectex/myobject.pp`

---

```
Unit MyObject;
```

#### Interface

```
Uses Objects;
```

#### Type

```
PMyObject = ^TMyObject;
TMyObject = Object(TObject)
  Field : Longint;
  Constructor Init;
  Constructor Load (Var Stream : TStream);
  Destructor Done;
  Procedure Store (Var Stream : TStream);
  Function GetField : Longint;
  Procedure SetField (Value : Longint);
end;
```

#### Implementation

```
Constructor TMyobject.Init;

begin
  Inherited Init;
  Field := -1;
end;
```

---

```

Constructor TMyobject.Load (Var Stream : TStream);

begin
    Stream.Read(Field, Sizeof(Field));
end;

Destructor TMyObject.Done;

begin
end;

Function TMyObject.GetField : Longint;

begin
    GetField:=Field;
end;

Procedure TMyObject.SetField (Value : Longint);

begin
    Field:=Value;
end;

Procedure TMyObject.Store (Var Stream : TStream);

begin
    Stream.Write(Field, SizeOf(Field));
end;

Const MyObjectRec : TStreamRec = (
    Objtype : 666;
    vmtlink : Ofs(TypeOf(TMyObject)^);
    Load : @TMyObject.Load;
    Store : @TMyObject.Store;
);

begin
    RegisterObjects;
    RegisterType (MyObjectRec);
end.

```

---

### 20.3.16 SetStr

**Synopsis:** Allocate a copy of a shortstring on the heap.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetStr(var p: PString; const s: String)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetStr` makes a copy of the string `S` on the heap and returns the pointer to this copy in `P`. If `P` pointed to another string (i.e. was not `Nil`, the memory is released first. Contrary to `NewStr` (668), if the string is empty then a pointer to an empty string is returned.

The allocated memory is not based on the declared size of the string passed to `NewStr`, but is based on the actual length of the string.

**Errors:** If not enough memory is available, an 'out of memory' error will occur.

See also: `DisposeStr` ([667](#)), `NewStr` ([668](#))

## 20.4 TBufStream

### 20.4.1 Description

`Bufstream` implements a buffered file stream. That is, all data written to the stream is written to memory first. Only when the buffer is full, or on explicit request, the data is written to disk.

Also, when reading from the stream, first the buffer is checked if there is any unread data in it. If so, this is read first. If not the buffer is filled again, and then the data is read from the buffer.

The size of the buffer is fixed and is set when constructing the file.

This is useful if you need heavy throughput for your stream, because it speeds up operations.

### 20.4.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">672</a>	<code>Close</code>	Flush data and Close the file.
<a href="#">672</a>	<code>Done</code>	Close the file and cleans up the instance.
<a href="#">672</a>	<code>Flush</code>	FLush data from buffer, and write it to stream.
<a href="#">671</a>	<code>Init</code>	Initialize an instance of <code>TBufStream</code> and open the file.
<a href="#">674</a>	<code>Open</code>	Open the file if it is closed.
<a href="#">674</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the file to a buffer in memory.
<a href="#">673</a>	<code>Seek</code>	Set current position in file.
<a href="#">673</a>	<code>Truncate</code>	Flush buffer, and truncate the file at current position.
<a href="#">674</a>	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the file from a buffer in memory.

### 20.4.3 TBufStream.Init

**Synopsis:** Initialize an instance of `TBufStream` and open the file.

**Declaration:** constructor `Init(FileName: FNameStr; Mode: Word; Size: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Init` instantiates an instance of `TBufStream`. The name of the file that contains (or will contain) the data of the stream is given in `FileName`. The `Mode` parameter determines whether a new file should be created and what access rights you have on the file. It can be one of the following constants:

**stCreate** Creates a new file.

**stOpenRead** Read access only.

**stOpenWrite** Write access only.

**stOpenRead** and write access.

The `Size` parameter determines the size of the buffer that will be created. It should be different from zero.

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` ([672](#)).

**Errors:** On error, `Status` is set to `stInitError`, and `ErrorInfo` is set to the dos error code.

See also: `TDosStream.Init` ([691](#)), `TBufStream.Done` ([672](#))

#### 20.4.4 TBufStream.Done

Synopsis: Close the file and cleans up the instance.

Declaration: `destructor Done; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Done` flushes and closes the file if it was open and cleans up the instance of `TBufStream`.

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` (672).

Errors: None.

See also: `TDosStream.Done` (691), `TBufStream.Init` (671), `TBufStream.Close` (672)

#### 20.4.5 TBufStream.Close

Synopsis: Flush data and Close the file.

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Close` flushes and closes the file if it was open, and sets `Handle` to -1. Contrary to `Done` (672) it does not clean up the instance of `TBufStream`

For an example see `TBufStream.Flush` (672).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` (721), `TBufStream.Init` (671), `TBufStream.Done` (672)

#### 20.4.6 TBufStream.Flush

Synopsis: FLush data from buffer, and write it to stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: When the stream is in write mode, the contents of the buffer are written to disk, and the buffer position is set to zero. When the stream is in read mode, the buffer position is set to zero.

Errors: Write errors may occur if the file was in write mode. see `Write` (674) for more info on the errors.

See also: `TStream.Close` (721), `TBufStream.Init` (671), `TBufStream.Done` (672)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `ex15;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Flush method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`

`P : PString;`

`S : PBufStream; { Only one with Flush implemented. }`

**begin**

---

```

L:= 'Some constant string';
{ Buffer size of 100 }
S:=New(PBufStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate, 100));
WriteIn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.WriteStr(@L);
{ At this moment, there is no data on disk yet. }
S^.Flush;
{ Now there is. }
S^.WriteStr(@L);
{ Close calls flush first }
S^.Close;
WriteIn ('Closed stream. File handle is ', S^.Handle);
S^.Open (stOpenRead);
P:=S^.ReadStr;
L:=P^;
DisposeStr(P);
WriteIn ('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.Close;
Dispose (S, Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.4.7 TBufStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Flush buffer, and truncate the file at current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the status of the stream is `stOK`, then `Truncate` tries to flush the buffer, and then truncates the stream size to the current file position.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` ([692](#)).

Errors: Errors can be those of `Flush` ([672](#)) or `TDosStream.Truncate` ([692](#)).

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([722](#)), `TDosStream.Truncate` ([692](#)), `TStream.GetSize` ([719](#))

### 20.4.8 TBufStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set current position in file.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, then `Seek` sets the file position to `Pos`. `Pos` is a zero-based offset, counted from the beginning of the file.

For an example, see `TStream.Seek` ([723](#));

Errors: In case an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stSeekError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([723](#)), `TStream.GetPos` ([719](#))

### 20.4.9 TBufStream.Open

Synopsis: Open the file if it is closed.

Declaration: `procedure Open(OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, and the stream is closed then `Open` re-opens the file stream with mode `OpenMode`. This call can be used after a `Close` (672) call.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` (693).

Errors: If an error occurs when re-opening the file, then `Status` is set to `stOpenError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`

See also: `TStream.Open` (721), `TBufStream.Close` (672)

### 20.4.10 TBufStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the file to a buffer in memory.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the Stream is open and the stream status is `stOK` then `Read` will read `Count` bytes from the stream and place them in `Buf`.

`Read` will first try to read the data from the stream's internal buffer. If insufficient data is available, the buffer will be filled before continuing to read. This process is repeated until all needed data has been read.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` (724).

Errors: In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StReadError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error, or 0 when an attempt was made to read beyond the end of the stream.

See also: `TStream.Read` (724), `TBufStream.Write` (674)

### 20.4.11 TBufStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the file from a buffer in memory.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: If the Stream is open and the stream status is `stOK` then `Write` will write `Count` bytes from `Buf` and place them in the stream.

`Write` will first try to write the data to the stream's internal buffer. When the internal buffer is full, then the contents will be written to disk. This process is repeated until all data has been written.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` (724).

Errors: In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StWriteError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error.

See also: `TStream.Write` (724), `TBufStream.Read` (674)

## 20.5 TCollection

### 20.5.1 Description

The `TCollection` object manages a collection of pointers or objects. It also provides a series of methods to manipulate these pointers or objects.

Whether or not objects are used depends on the kind of calls you use. All kinds come in 2 flavors, one for objects, one for pointers.

### 20.5.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">677</a>	<code>At</code>	Return the item at a certain index.
<a href="#">686</a>	<code>AtDelete</code>	Delete item at certain position.
<a href="#">685</a>	<code>AtFree</code>	Free an item at the indicates position, calling it's destructor.
<a href="#">689</a>	<code>AtInsert</code>	Insert an element at a certain position in the collection.
<a href="#">688</a>	<code>AtPut</code>	Set collection item, overwriting an existing value.
<a href="#">684</a>	<code>Delete</code>	Delete an item from the collection, but does not destroy it.
<a href="#">682</a>	<code>DeleteAll</code>	Delete all elements from the collection. Objects are not destroyed.
<a href="#">676</a>	<code>Done</code>	Clean up collection, release all memory.
<a href="#">688</a>	<code>Error</code>	Set error code.
<a href="#">679</a>	<code>FirstThat</code>	Return first item which matches a test.
<a href="#">687</a>	<code>ForEach</code>	Execute procedure for each item in the list.
<a href="#">683</a>	<code>Free</code>	Free item from collection, calling it's destructor.
<a href="#">681</a>	<code>FreeAll</code>	Release all objects from the collection.
<a href="#">686</a>	<code>FreeItem</code>	Destroy a non-nil item.
<a href="#">678</a>	<code>GetItem</code>	Read one item off the stream.
<a href="#">677</a>	<code>IndexOf</code>	Find the position of a certain item.
<a href="#">675</a>	<code>Init</code>	Instantiate a new collection.
<a href="#">684</a>	<code>Insert</code>	Insert a new item in the collection at the end.
<a href="#">679</a>	<code>LastThat</code>	Return last item which matches a test.
<a href="#">676</a>	<code>Load</code>	Initialize a new collection and load collection from a stream.
<a href="#">680</a>	<code>Pack</code>	Remove all <code>&gt;Nil</code> pointers from the collection.
<a href="#">690</a>	<code>PutItem</code>	Put one item on the stream
<a href="#">688</a>	<code>SetLimit</code>	Set maximum number of elements in the collection.
<a href="#">689</a>	<code>Store</code>	Write collection to a stream.

### 20.5.3 TCollection.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new collection.

Declaration: `constructor Init(ALimit: Sw_Integer;ADelta: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` initializes a new instance of a collection. It sets the (initial) maximum number of items in the collection to `ALimit`. `ADelta` is the increase size : The number of memory places that will be allocated in case `ALimit` is reached, and another element is added to the collection.

For an example, see `TCollection.ForEach` ([687](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Load` ([676](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([676](#))



### 20.5.4 TCollection.Load

Synopsis: Initialize a new collection and load collection from a stream.

Declaration: constructor Load(var S: TStream)

Visibility: default

Description: Load initializes a new instance of a collection. It reads from stream S the item count, the item limit count, and the increase size. After that, it reads the specified number of items from the stream.

Errors: Errors returned can be those of GetItem (678).

See also: TCollection.Init (675), TCollection.GetItem (678), TCollection.Done (676)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex22.pp

---

**Program** ex22;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Load method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PCollection;  
       M : PMyObject;  
       I : Longint;  
       S : PMemoryStream;

**begin**

  C:=**New**(PCollection, Init(100,10));

**For** I:=1 **to** 100 **do**

**begin**

      M:=**New**(PMyObject, Init);

      M^.SetField(100-I);

      C^.Insert(M);

**end**;

**WriteLn** ('Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects');

  S:=**New**(PMemoryStream, Init(1000,10));

  C^.Store(S^);

  C^.FreeAll;

**Dispose**(C, Done);

  S^.Seek(0);

  C^.Load(S^);

**WriteLn** ('Read ', C^.Count, ' objects from stream.');

**Dispose**(S, Done);

**Dispose**(C, Done);

**end.**

---

### 20.5.5 TCollection.Done

Synopsis: Clean up collection, release all memory.

Declaration: destructor Done; Virtual

Visibility: default

Description: Done frees all objects in the collection, and then releases all memory occupied by the instance.

For an example, see TCollection.ForEach (687).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Init` ([675](#)), `TCollection.FreeAll` ([681](#))

### 20.5.6 `TCollection.At`

Synopsis: Return the item at a certain index.

Declaration: `function At(Index: Sw_Integer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `At` returns the item at position `Index`.

Errors: If `Index` is less than zero or larger than the number of items in the collection, `seep{Error}{TCollection.Error}` is called with `coIndexError` and `Index` as arguments, resulting in a run-time error.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` ([684](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex23.pp`

---

**Program** `ex23`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.At method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C : PCollection`;  
       `M : PMyObject`;  
       `I : Longint`;

**begin**  
   `C:=New(PCollection, Init(100,10));`  
   **For** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
     **begin**  
       `M:=New(PMyObject, Init);`  
       `M^.SetField(100-I);`  
       `C^.Insert(M);`  
     **end**;  
   **For** `I:=0 to C^.Count-1 do`  
     **begin**  
       `M:=C^.At(I);`  
       `Writeln('Object ',i,' has field : ',M^.GetField);`  
     **end**;  
   `C^.FreeAll;`  
   `Dispose(C,Done);`  
**end.**

---

### 20.5.7 `TCollection.IndexOf`

Synopsis: Find the position of a certain item.

Declaration: `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the collection. If `Item` isn't present in the collection, -1 is returned.

Errors: If the item is not present, -1 is returned.

See also: TCollection.At ([677](#)), TCollection.GetItem ([678](#)), TCollection.Insert ([684](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex24.pp

---

**Program** ex24;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.IndexOf method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PCollection;  
       M, Keep : PMyObject;  
       I : Longint;

**begin**

**Randomize**;

  C:=**New**(PCollection, Init(100,10));

  Keep:=**Nil**;

**For** I:=1 **to** 100 **do**

**begin**

      M:=**New**(PMyObject, Init);

      M^.SetField(I-1);

**If** Random<0.1 **then**

        Keep:=M;

      C^.Insert(M);

**end**;

**If** Keep=**Nil** **then**

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Please run again. No object selected' );

**Halt** (1);

**end**;

**Writeln** ( 'Selected object has field : ', Keep^.GetField );

**Write** ( 'Selected object has index : ', C^.IndexOf(Keep) );

**Writeln** ( ' should match it 's field.' );

  C^.FreeAll;

**Dispose**(C, Done);

**end.**

---

### 20.5.8 TCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Read one item off the stream.

Declaration: function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual

Visibility: default

Description: GetItem reads a single item off the stream S, and returns a pointer to this item. This method is used internally by the Load method, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Possible errors are the ones from TStream.Get ([717](#)).

See also: TStream.Get ([717](#)), TCollection.Store ([689](#))

### 20.5.9 TCollection.LastThat

Synopsis: Return last item which matches a test.

Declaration: `function LastThat(Test: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: This function returns the last item in the collection for which `Test` returns a non-nil result. `Test` is a function that accepts 1 argument: a pointer to an object, and that returns a pointer as a result.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FirstThat` ([679](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `ex21;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Foreach method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }`

**Var** `C : PCollection;  
M : PMyObject;  
I : Longint;`

**Function** `CheckField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject) : Longint;`

**begin**  
  **If** `P^.GetField < 56` **then**  
    `Checkfield := 1`  
  **else**  
    `CheckField := 0;`  
**end;**

**begin**  
  `C := New( PCollection , Init(100, 10));`  
  **For** `I := 1 to 100` **do**  
    **begin**  
      `M := New(PMyObject, Init);`  
      `M^.SetField(I);`  
      `C^.Insert(M);`  
    **end;**  
  **WriteLn** ( 'Inserted ', `C^.Count`, ' objects ');  
  **WriteLn** ( 'Last one for which Field < 56 has index (should be 54) : ',  
    `C^.IndexOf(C^.LastThat( @CheckField ))` );  
  `C^.FreeAll;`  
  **Dispose**(`C`, Done);  
**end.**

---

### 20.5.10 TCollection.FirstThat

Synopsis: Return first item which matches a test.

Declaration: `function FirstThat(Test: Pointer) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This function returns the first item in the collection for which `Test` returns a non-nil result. `Test` is a function that accepts 1 argument: a pointer to an object, and that returns a pointer as a result.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TCollection.LastThat` ([679](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** `ex21`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FirstThat method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMMyObject`;  
       `I` : `Longint`;

**Function** `CheckField` (`Dummy`: `Pointer`; `P` : `PMMyObject`) : `Longint`;

**begin**

**If** `P^.GetField > 56` **then**  
     `Checkfield := 1`

**else**  
     `CheckField := 0`;

**end**;

**begin**

`C := New(PCollection, Init(100, 10));`

**For** `I := 1` **to** `100` **do**

**begin**

`M := New(PMyObject, Init)`;

`M^.SetField(I)`;

`C^.Insert(M)`;

**end**;

**Writeln** ('Inserted ', `C^.Count`, ' objects');

**Writeln** ('first one for which Field > 56 has index (should be 56) : ',  
             `C^.IndexOf(C^.FirstThat(@CheckField))`);

`C^.FreeAll`;

**Dispose**(`C, Done`);

**end.**

---

### 20.5.11 TCollection.Pack

**Synopsis:** Remove all `>Nil` pointers from the collection.

**Declaration:** `procedure Pack`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Pack` removes all `Nil` pointers from the collection, and adjusts `Count` to reflect this change. No memory is freed as a result of this call. In order to free any memory, you can call `SetLimit` with an argument of `Count` after a call to `Pack`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TCollection.SetLimit` ([688](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex26.pp

---

```

Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FirstThat method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

Function CheckField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject) : Longint;

begin
    If P^.GetField > 56 then
        Checkfield := 1
    else
        CheckField := 0;
end;

begin
    C := New(PCollection, Init(100, 10));
    For I := 1 to 100 do
        begin
            M := New(PMyObject, Init);
            M^.SetField(I);
            C^.Insert(M);
        end;
    WriteLn ('Inserted ', C^.Count, ' objects ');
    WriteLn ('first one for which Field > 56 has index (should be 56) : ',
        C^.IndexOf(C^.FirstThat(@CheckField)));
    C^.FreeAll;
    Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.5.12 TCollection.FreeAll

Synopsis: Release all objects from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure FreeAll`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeAll` calls the destructor of each object in the collection. It doesn't release any memory occupied by the collection itself, but it does set `Count` to zero.

Errors:

See also: `TCollection.DeleteAll` ([682](#)), `TCollection.FreeItem` ([686](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex28.pp

---

```

Program ex28;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.FreeAll method }

Uses Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

```

---

---

```

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I, InitMem : Longint;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
  InitMem:=Memavail;
  WriteLn ('Initial memory : ', InitMem);
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(I-1);
      C^.Insert(M);
    end;
    WriteLn ('Added 100 Items. Memory available : ', Memavail);
    Write ('Lost : ', Initmem-Memavail, ' bytes. ');
    Write (' (Should be 100* ', SizeOf(TMyObject));
    WriteLn ('=', 100*SizeOf(TMyObject), ') ');
    C^.FreeAll;
    WriteLn ('Freed all objects. Memory available : ', Memavail);
    WriteLn ('Lost : ', Initmem-Memavail, ' bytes. ');
    Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.5.13 TCollection.DeleteAll

Synopsis: Delete all elements from the collection. Objects are not destroyed.

Declaration: `procedure DeleteAll`

Visibility: default

Description: `DeleteAll` deletes all elements from the collection. It just sets the `Count` variable to zero. Contrary to `FreeAll` (681), `DeleteAll` doesn't call the destructor of the objects.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeAll` (681), `TCollection.Delete` (684)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex29.pp`

---

**Program** `ex29`;

```

{
  Program to demonstrate the TCollection.DeleteAll method
  Compare with example 28, where FreeAll is used.
}

```

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }`

```

Var C : PCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I, InitMem : Longint;

```

```

begin
  Randomize;

```

---

```

C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));
InitMem:=Memavail;
Writeln('Initial memory : ', InitMem);
For I:=1 to 100 do
begin
M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
M^.SetField(I-1);
C^.Insert(M);
end;
Writeln('Added 100 Items. Memory available : ', Memavail);
Write('Lost : ', InitMem-Memavail, ' bytes. ');
Write(' (Should be 100*', SizeOf(TMyObject));
Writeln('=', 100*SizeOf(TMyObject), ') ');
C^.DeleteAll;
Writeln('Deleted all objects. Memory available : ', Memavail);
Writeln('Lost : ', InitMem-Memavail, ' bytes. ');
Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.5.14 TCollection.Free

Synopsis: Free item from collection, calling it's destructor.

Declaration: `procedure Free(Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: Free Deletes Item from the collection, and calls the destructor Done of the object.

Errors: If the Item is not in the collection, Error will be called with `coIndexError`.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` ([686](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex30.pp`

---

**Program** `ex30;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Free method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }`

**Var** `C : PCollection;`  
`M : PMyObject;`  
`I, InitMem : Longint;`

**begin**  
`Randomize;`  
`C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));`  
`InitMem:=Memavail;`  
`Writeln('Initial memory : ', InitMem);`  
`For I:=1 to 100 do`  
`begin`  
`M:=New(PMyObject, Init);`  
`M^.SetField(I-1);`  
`C^.Insert(M);`  
`end;`  
`Writeln('Added 100 Items. Memory available : ', Memavail);`  
`Write('Lost : ', InitMem-Memavail, ' bytes. ');`



---

```

Write    ( '(Should be 100* ',SizeOf(TMyObject));
WriteLn  ( '= ',100*SizeOf(TMyObject), ' ' );
With C^ do
    While Count>0 do Free(At(Count-1));
    WriteLn ( 'Freed all objects. Memory available : ',Memavail);
    WriteLn ( 'Lost : ',Initmem-Memavail, ' bytes. ');
    Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.5.15 TCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new item in the collection at the end.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts `Item` in the collection. `TCollection` inserts this item at the end, but descendent objects may insert it at another place.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.AtInsert` (689), `TCollection.AtPut` (688)

### 20.5.16 TCollection.Delete

Synopsis: Delete an item from the collection, but does not destroy it.

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Delete` deletes `Item` from the collection. It doesn't call the item's destructor, though. For this the `Free` (683) call is provided.

Errors: If the `Item` is not in the collection, `Error` will be called with `coIndexError`.

See also: `TCollection.AtDelete` (686), `TCollection.Free` (683)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex31.pp`

---

**Program** `ex31`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.Delete method }*

**Uses** `Objects,MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C : PCollection`;  
       `M : PMyObject`;  
       `I,InitMem : Longint`;

**begin**  
     **Randomize**;  
     `C:=New(PCollection,Init(120,10))`;  
     `InitMem:=Memavail`;  
     **WriteLn** ( 'Initial memory : ',InitMem);  
     **For** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
       **begin**

```

    M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
    M^.SetField(I-1);
    C^.Insert(M);
    end;
    Writeln('Added 100 Items. Memory available : ',Memavail);
    Write('Lost : ',Initmem-Memavail,' bytes. ');
    Write(' (Should be 100*',SizeOf(TMyObject));
    Writeln('=',100*SizeOf(TMyObject),') ');
    With C^ do
        While Count>0 do Delete(At(Count-1));
    Writeln('Freed all objects. Memory available : ',Memavail);
    Writeln('Lost : ',Initmem-Memavail,' bytes. ');
    Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.5.17 TCollection.AtFree

Synopsis: Free an item at the indicates position, calling it's destructor.

Declaration: `procedure AtFree(Index: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AtFree` deletes the item at position `Index` in the collection, and calls the item's destructor if it is not `Nil`.

Errors: If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (688) is called with `CoIndexError`.

See also: `TCollection.Free` (683), `TCollection.AtDelete` (686)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex32.pp`

**Program** `ex32`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtFree method }*

**Uses** `Objects,MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C` : `PCollection`;  
       `M` : `PMyObject`;  
       `I,InitMem` : `Longint`;

**begin**  
     **Randomize**;  
     `C:=New(PCollection, Init(120,10));`  
     `InitMem:=Memavail`;  
     **Writeln** ('Initial memory : ',InitMem);  
     **For** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
       **begin**  
         `M:=New(PMyObject, Init);`  
         `M^.SetField(I-1);`  
         `C^.Insert(M);`  
       **end**;  
     **Writeln** ('Added 100 Items. Memory available : ',Memavail);  
     **Write** ('Lost : ',Initmem-Memavail,' bytes. ');  
     **Write** (' (Should be 100\*',SizeOf(TMyObject));  
     **Writeln** ('=',100\*SizeOf(TMyObject),') ');  
     **With** `C^ do`

---

```

    While Count>0 do AtFree(Count-1);
    Writeln ( 'Freed all objects. Memory available : ',Memavail);
    Writeln ( 'Lost : ',Initmem-Memavail, ' bytes. ');
    Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.5.18 TCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Destroy a non-nil item.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeItem` calls the destructor of `Item` if it is not nil.

**Remark:** This function is used internally by the `TCollection` object, and should not be called directly.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Free` ([683](#)), `TCollection.AtFree` ([685](#))

### 20.5.19 TCollection.AtDelete

Synopsis: Delete item at certain position.

Declaration: `procedure AtDelete(Index: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AtDelete` deletes the pointer at position `Index` in the collection. It doesn't call the object's destructor.

Errors: If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` ([688](#)) is called with `CoIndexError`.

See also: `TCollection.Delete` ([684](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** `ex33`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtDelete method }*

**Uses** `Objects, MyObject`; *{ For TMyObject definition and registration }*

**Var** `C : PCollection`;  
       `M : PMyObject`;  
       `I, InitMem : Longint`;

**begin**  
   `Randomize`;  
   `C:=New( PCollection , Init(120,10))`;  
   `InitMem:=Memavail`;  
   `Writeln ( 'Initial memory : ',InitMem)`;  
   **For** `I:=1 to 100 do`  
     **begin**  
       `M:=New( PMyObject, Init )`;  
       `M^. SetField (I-1)`;

---

```

    C^.Insert(M);
    end;
    Writeln ('Added 100 Items. Memory available : ',Memavail);
    Write ('Lost : ',Initmem-Memavail,' bytes. ');
    Write ('(Should be 100*',SizeOf(TMyObject));
    Writeln ('=',100*SizeOf(TMyObject),' ) ');
    With C^ do
        While Count>0 do AtDelete(Count-1);
    Writeln ('Freed all objects. Memory available : ',Memavail);
    Writeln ('Lost : ',Initmem-Memavail,' bytes. ');
    Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.5.20 TCollection.ForEach

Synopsis: Execute procedure for each item in the list.

Declaration: `procedure ForEach(Action: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ForEach` calls `Action` for each element in the collection, and passes the element as an argument to `Action`.

`Action` is a procedural type variable that accepts a pointer as an argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FirstThat` ([679](#)), `TCollection.LastThat` ([679](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex21.pp`

---

```

Program ex21;

{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.ForEach method }

Uses Objects,MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }

Var C : PCollection;
    M : PMyObject;
    I : Longint;

Procedure PrintField (Dummy: Pointer;P : PMyObject);

begin
    Writeln ('Field : ',P^.GetField);
end;

begin
    C:=New(PCollection , Init(100,10));
    For I:=1 to 100 do
        begin
            M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
            M^.SetField(100-I);
            C^.Insert(M);
        end;
    Writeln ('Inserted ',C^.Count,' objects ');
    C^.ForEach( @PrintField );

```

```
C^.FreeAll;  
Dispose(C,Done);  
end.
```

---

### 20.5.21 TCollection.SetLimit

Synopsis: Set maximum number of elements in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure SetLimit(ALimit: Sw_Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetLimit` sets the maximum number of elements in the collection. `ALimit` must not be less than `Count`, and should not be larger than `MaxCollectionSize`

For an example, see Pack (680).

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Init` (675)

### 20.5.22 TCollection.Error

Synopsis: Set error code.

Declaration: `procedure Error(Code: Integer;Info: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Error` is called by the various `TCollection` methods in case of an error condition. The default behaviour is to make a call to `RunError` with an error of `212-Code`.

This method can be overridden by descendent objects to implement a different error-handling.

Errors:

See also: `Abstract` (664)

### 20.5.23 TCollection.AtPut

Synopsis: Set collection item, overwriting an existing value.

Declaration: `procedure AtPut(Index: Sw_Integer;Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AtPut` sets the element at position `Index` in the collection to `Item`. Any previous value is overwritten.

For an example, see Pack (680).

Errors: If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (688) is called with `CoIndexError`.

### 20.5.24 TCollection.AtInsert

Synopsis: Insert an element at a certain position in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure AtInsert(Index: Sw_Integer;Item: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AtInsert` inserts `Item` in the collection at position `Index`, shifting all elements by one position. In case the current limit is reached, the collection will try to expand with a call to `SetLimit`

Errors: If `Index` isn't valid then `Error` (688) is called with `CoIndexError`. If the collection fails to expand, then `coOverflow` is passed to `Error`.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` (684)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** `ex34;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCollection.AtInsert method }*

**Uses** `Objects,MyObject; { For TMyObject definition and registration }`

**Var** `C : PCollection;`  
`M : PMyObject;`  
`I : Longint;`

**Procedure** `PrintField (Dummy: Pointer;P : PMyObject);`

**begin**  
`WriteLn ( 'Field : ',P^.GetField);`  
**end;**

**begin**  
`Randomize;`  
`C:=New(PCollection,Init(120,10));`  
`WriteLn ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.');`  
`For I:=1 to 100 do`  
`begin`  
`M:=New(PMyObject,Init);`  
`M^.SetField(I-1);`  
`If I=1 then`  
`C^.Insert(M)`  
`else`  
`With C^ do`  
`AtInsert(Random(Count),M);`  
`end;`  
`WriteLn ( 'Values : ');`  
`C^.Foreach( @PrintField );`  
`Dispose(C,Done);`  
**end.**

---

### 20.5.25 TCollection.Store

Synopsis: Write collection to a stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Store writes the collection to the stream S. It does this by writing the current Count, Limit and Delta to the stream, and then writing each item to the stream.

The contents of the stream are then suitable for instantiating another collection with Load (676).

For an example, see TCollection.Load (676).

**Errors:** Errors returned are those by TStream.Put (722).

**See also:** TCollection.Load (676), TCollection.PutItem (690)

### 20.5.26 TCollection.PutItem

**Synopsis:** Put one item on the stream

**Declaration:** procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual

Visibility: default

**Description:** PutItem writes Item to stream S. This method is used internally by the TCollection object, and should not be called directly.

**Errors:** Errors are those returned by TStream.Put (722).

**See also:** TCollection.Store (689), TCollection.GetItem (678)

## 20.6 TDosStream

### 20.6.1 Description

TDosStream is a stream that stores its contents in a file. it overrides a couple of methods of TStream (717) for this.

In addition to the fields inherited from TStream (see TStream (717)), there are some extra fields, that describe the file. (mainly the name and the OS file handle)

No buffering in memory is done when using TDosStream. All data are written directly to the file. For a stream that buffers in memory, see TBufStream (671).

### 20.6.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
691	Close	Close the file.
691	Done	Closes the file and cleans up the instance.
691	Init	Instantiate a new instance of TDosStream.
693	Open	Open the file stream
694	Read	Read data from the stream to a buffer.
692	Seek	Set file position.
692	Truncate	Truncate the file on the current position.
694	Write	Write data from a buffer to the stream.

### 20.6.3 TDosStream.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance of TDosStream.

Declaration: constructor `Init(FileName: FNameStr; Mode: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates an instance of `TDosStream`. The name of the file that contains (or will contain) the data of the stream is given in `FileName`. The `Mode` parameter determines whether a new file should be created and what access rights you have on the file. It can be one of the following constants:

**stCreate** Creates a new file.

**stOpenRead** Read access only.

**stOpenWrite** Write access only.

**stOpenRead** and write access.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` (692).

Errors: On error, `Status` (??) is set to `stInitError`, and `ErrorInfo` is set to the dos error code.

See also: `TDosStream.Done` (691)

### 20.6.4 TDosStream.Done

Synopsis: Closes the file and cleans up the instance.

Declaration: destructor `Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Done` closes the file if it was open and cleans up the instance of `TDosStream`.  
for an example, see e.g. `TDosStream.Truncate` (692).

Errors: None.

See also: `TDosStream.Init` (691), `TDosStream.Close` (691)

### 20.6.5 TDosStream.Close

Synopsis: Close the file.

Declaration: procedure `Close; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Close` closes the file if it was open, and sets `Handle` to -1. Contrary to `Done` (691) it does not clean up the instance of `TDosStream`

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` (693).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` (721), `TDosStream.Init` (691), `TDosStream.Done` (691)



### 20.6.6 TDosStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Truncate the file on the current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: If the status of the stream is `stOK`, then `Truncate` tries to truncate the stream size to the current file position.

Errors: If an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stError` and `ErrorInfo` is set to the OS error code.

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([722](#)), `TStream.GetSize` ([719](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `ex16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Truncate method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`  
       `P : PString;`  
       `S : PDosStream; { Only one with Truncate implemented. }`

**begin**

```

L:= 'Some constant string';
{ Buffer size of 100 }
S:=New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));
Writeln ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.WriteStr(@L);
S^.WriteStr(@L);
{ Close calls flush first }
S^.Close;
S^.Open (stOpen);
Writeln ('Size of stream is : ', S^.GetSize);
P:=S^.ReadStr;
L:=P^;
DisposeStr(P);
Writeln ('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
S^.Truncate;
Writeln ('Truncated stream. Size is : ', S^.GetSize);
S^.Close;
Dispose (S, Done);

```

**end.**

---

### 20.6.7 TDosStream.Seek

Synopsis: Set file position.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: `default`

Description: If the stream's status is `stOK`, then `Seek` sets the file position to `Pos`. `Pos` is a zero-based offset, counted from the beginning of the file.

**Errors:** In case an error occurs, the stream's status is set to `stSeekError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([723](#)), `TStream.GetPos` ([719](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `ex17`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Seek method }*

**Uses** `Objects`;

**Var** `L : String`;  
       `Marker : Word`;  
       `P : PString`;  
       `S : PDosStream`;

**begin**  
   `L := 'Some constant string' ;`  
   *{ Buffer size of 100 }*  
   `S := New(PDosStream, Init( 'test.dat', stcreate ));`  
   `WriteLn ( 'Writing " ', L, '" to stream.' );`  
   `S^.WriteStr(@L);`  
   `Marker := S^.GetPos;`  
   `WriteLn ( 'Set marker at ', Marker);`  
   `L := 'Some other constant String' ;`  
   `WriteLn ( 'Writing " ', L, '" to stream.' );`  
   `S^.WriteStr(@L);`  
   `S^.Close;`  
   `S^.Open (stOpenRead);`  
   `WriteLn ( 'Size of stream is : ', S^.GetSize );`  
   `WriteLn ( 'Seeking to marker');`  
   `S^.Seek(Marker);`  
   `P := S^.ReadStr;`  
   `L := P^;`  
   `DisposeStr(P);`  
   `WriteLn ( 'Read " ', L, '" from stream.' );`  
   `S^.Close;`  
   `Dispose (S, Done);`  
**end.**

---

## 20.6.8 TDosStream.Open

**Synopsis:** Open the file stream

**Declaration:** `procedure Open(OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** If the stream's status is `stOK`, and the stream is closed then `Open` re-opens the file stream with mode `OpenMode`. This call can be used after a `Close` ([691](#)) call.

**Errors:** If an error occurs when re-opening the file, then `Status` is set to `stOpenError`, and the OS error code is stored in `ErrorInfo`

See also: `TStream.Open` ([721](#)), `TDosStream.Close` ([691](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex14.pp

---

```

Program ex14;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Close method }

Uses Objects;

Var L : String;
    P : PString;
    S : PDosStream; { Only one with Close implemented. }

begin
    L:= 'Some constant string';
    S:=New(PDosStream, Init('test.dat', stcreate));
    WriteIn ('Writing "', L, '" to stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
    S^.WriteStr(@L);
    S^.Close;
    WriteIn ('Closed stream. File handle is ', S^.Handle);
    S^.Open (stOpenRead);
    P:=S^.ReadStr;
    L:=P^;
    DisposeStr(P);
    WriteIn ('Read "', L, '" from stream with handle ', S^.Handle);
    S^.Close;
    Dispose (S, Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.6.9 TDosStream.Read

**Synopsis:** Read data from the stream to a buffer.

**Declaration:** `procedure Read(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** If the Stream is open and the stream status is stOK then Read will read Count bytes from the stream and place them in Buf.

For an example, see TStream.Read ([724](#)).

**Errors:** In case of an error, Status is set to StReadError, and ErrorInfo gets the OS specific error, or 0 when an attempt was made to read beyond the end of the stream.

See also: TStream.Read ([724](#)), TDosStream.Write ([694](#))

### 20.6.10 TDosStream.Write

**Synopsis:** Write data from a buffer to the stream.

**Declaration:** `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** If the Stream is open and the stream status is stOK then Write will write Count bytes from Buf and place them in the stream.

For an example, see TStream.Read ([724](#)).

Errors: In case of an error, `Status` is set to `StWriteError`, and `ErrorInfo` gets the OS specific error.

See also: `TStream.Write` ([724](#)), `TDosStream.Read` ([694](#))

## 20.7 TMemoryStream

### 20.7.1 Description

The `TMemoryStream` object implements a stream that stores its data in memory. The data is stored on the heap, with the possibility to specify the maximum amount of data, and the size of the memory blocks being used.

### 20.7.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">695</a>	<code>Done</code>	Clean up memory and destroy the object instance.
<a href="#">695</a>	<code>Init</code>	Initialize memory stream, reserves memory for stream data.
<a href="#">696</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read data from the stream to a location in memory.
<a href="#">696</a>	<code>Truncate</code>	Set the stream size to the current position.
<a href="#">697</a>	<code>Write</code>	Write data to the stream.

### 20.7.3 TMemoryStream.Init

Synopsis: Initialize memory stream, reserves memory for stream data.

Declaration: constructor `Init(ALimit: LongInt; ABlockSize: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates a new `TMemoryStream` object. The `memorystreamobject` will initially allocate at least `ALimit` bytes memory, divided into memory blocks of size `ABlockSize`. The number of blocks needed to get to `ALimit` bytes is rounded up.

By default, the number of blocks is 1, and the size of a block is 8192. This is selected if you specify 0 as the blocksize.

For an example, see e.g. `TStream.CopyFrom` ([725](#)).

Errors: If the stream cannot allocate the initial memory needed for the memory blocks, then the stream's status is set to `stInitError`.

See also: `TMemoryStream.Done` ([695](#))

### 20.7.4 TMemoryStream.Done

Synopsis: Clean up memory and destroy the object instance.

Declaration: destructor `Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Done` releases the memory blocks used by the stream, and then cleans up the memory used by the stream object itself.

For an example, see e.g. `TStream.CopyFrom` ([725](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TMemoryStream.Init` ([695](#))

### 20.7.5 TMemoryStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Set the stream size to the current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Truncate` sets the size of the memory stream equal to the current position. It de-allocates any memory-blocks that are no longer needed, so that the new size of the stream is the current position in the stream, rounded up to the first multiple of the stream blocksize.

Errors: If an error occurs during memory de-allocation, the stream's status is set to `stError`

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([722](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** `ex20;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the TMemoryStream.Truncate method }*

**Uses** `Objects;`

**Var** `L : String;`  
`P : PString;`  
`S : PMemoryStream;`  
`I, InitMem : Longint;`

**begin**

```

  InitMem:=Memavail;
  L:= 'Some constant string';
  { Buffer size of 100 }
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(1000,100));
  Writeln ( 'Free memory : ',Memavail);
  Writeln ( 'Writing 100 times "',L,'" to stream. ');
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    S^.WriteStr(@L);
  Writeln ( 'Finished. Free memory : ',Memavail);
  S^.Seek(100);
  S^.Truncate;
  Writeln ( 'Truncated at byte 100. Free memory : ',Memavail);
  Dispose (S,Done);
  Writeln ( 'Finished. Lost ',InitMem-Memavail, ' Bytes. ');

```

**end.**

---

### 20.7.6 TMemoryStream.Read

Synopsis: Read data from the stream to a location in memory.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf;Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Read` reads `Count` bytes from the stream to `Buf`. It updates the position of the stream.

For an example, see `TStream.Read` ([724](#)).

Errors: If there is not enough data available, no data is read, and the stream's status is set to `stReadError`.

See also: `TStream.Read` ([724](#)), `TMemoryStream.Write` ([697](#))

### 20.7.7 TMemoryStream.Write

Synopsis: Write data to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf; Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Write copies Count bytes from Buf to the stream. It updates the position of the stream.

If not enough memory is available to hold the extra Count bytes, then the stream will try to expand, by allocating as much blocks with size BlkSize (as specified in the constructor call Init (695)) as needed.

For an example, see TStream.Read (724).

Errors: If the stream cannot allocate more memory, then the status is set to stWriteError

See also: TStream.Write (724), TMemoryStream.Read (696)

## 20.8 TObject

### 20.8.1 Description

This type serves as the basic object for all other objects in the Objects unit.

### 20.8.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">698</a>	Done	Destroy an object.
<a href="#">697</a>	Free	Destroy an object and release all memory.
<a href="#">697</a>	Init	Construct (initialize) a new object
<a href="#">698</a>	Is_Object	Check whether a pointer points to an object.

### 20.8.3 TObject.Init

Synopsis: Construct (initialize) a new object

Declaration: `constructor Init`

Visibility: default

Description: Instantiates a new object of type TObject. It fills the instance up with Zero bytes.

For an example, see Free (697)

Errors: None.

See also: TObject.Free (697), TObject.Done (698)

### 20.8.4 TObject.Free

Synopsis: Destroy an object and release all memory.

Declaration: `procedure Free`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Free` calls the destructor of the object, and releases the memory occupied by the instance of the object.

**Errors:** No checking is performed to see whether `self` is `nil` and whether the object is indeed allocated on the heap.

See also: `TObject.Init` (697), `TObject.Done` (698)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex7.pp`

---

```

program ex7;

{ Program to demonstrate the TObject.Free call }

Uses Objects;

Var O : PObject;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
  // Allocate memory for object.
  O:=New(PObject, Init);
  Writeln ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
  // Free memory of object.
  O^.free;
  Writeln ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
end.
```

---

### 20.8.5 TObject.Is\_Object

**Synopsis:** Check whether a pointer points to an object.

**Declaration:** `function Is_Object(P: Pointer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Is_Object` returns `True` if the pointer `P` points to an instance of a `TObject` descendent, it returns `false` otherwise.

### 20.8.6 TObject.Done

**Synopsis:** Destroy an object.

**Declaration:** `destructor Done; Virtual`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Done`, the destructor of `TObject` does nothing. It is mainly intended to be used in the `TObject.Free` (697) method.

The destructore `Done` does not free the memory occupied by the object.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `TObject.Free` (697), `TObject.Init` (697)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex8.pp`

---

```

program ex8;

{ Program to demonstrate the TObject.Done call }

Uses Objects;

Var O : PObject;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
  // Allocate memory for object.
  O:=New(PObject, Init);
  WriteLn ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
  O^.Done;
  WriteLn ( 'Memavail : ', Memavail );
end.

```

---

## 20.9 TPoint

### 20.9.1 Description

Record describing a point in a 2 dimensional plane.

## 20.10 TRect

### 20.10.1 Description

Describes a rectangular region in a plane.

#### 20.10.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">704</a>	Assign	Set rectangle corners.
<a href="#">701</a>	Contains	Determine if a point is inside the rectangle
<a href="#">701</a>	Copy	Copy cornerpoints from another rectangle.
<a href="#">699</a>	Empty	Is the surface of the rectangle zero
<a href="#">700</a>	Equals	Do the corners of the rectangles match
<a href="#">704</a>	Grow	Expand rectangle with certain size.
<a href="#">702</a>	Intersect	Reduce rectangle to intersection with another rectangle
<a href="#">703</a>	Move	Move rectangle along a vector.
<a href="#">702</a>	Union	Enlarges rectangle to encompass another rectangle.

### 20.10.3 TRect.Empty

Synopsis: Is the surface of the rectangle zero

Declaration: `function Empty : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Empty returns True if the rectangle defined by the corner points A, B has zero or negative surface.



Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Equals` ([700](#)), `TRect.Contains` ([701](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex1.pp

---

```

Program ex1;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Empty }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect : TRect;
    P : TPoint;

begin
  With ARect.A do
    begin
      X:=10;
      Y:=10;
    end;
  With ARect.B do
    begin
      X:=20;
      Y:=20;
    end;
  { Offset B by (5,5) }
  With BRect.A do
    begin
      X:=15;
      Y:=15;
    end;
  With BRect.B do
    begin
      X:=25;
      Y:=25;
    end;
  { Point }
  With P do
    begin
      X:=15;
      Y:=15;
    end;
  Writeln ( 'A empty : ',ARect.Empty);
  Writeln ( 'B empty : ',BRect.Empty);
  Writeln ( 'A Equals B : ',ARect.Equals(BRect));
  Writeln ( 'A Contains (15,15) : ',ARect.Contains(P));
end.
```

---

#### 20.10.4 TRect.Equals

Synopsis: Do the corners of the rectangles match

Declaration: `function Equals(R: TRect) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Equals` returns `True` if the rectangle has the same corner points A,B as the rectangle R, and `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `TRect.Empty` (699)

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Empty` (699), `TRect.Contains` (701)

### 20.10.5 TRect.Contains

Synopsis: Determine if a point is inside the rectangle

Declaration: `function Contains(P: TPoint) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Contains` returns `True` if the point P is contained in the rectangle (including borders), `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Intersect` (702), `TRect.Equals` (700)

### 20.10.6 TRect.Copy

Synopsis: Copy cornerpoints from another rectangle.

Declaration: `procedure Copy(R: TRect)`

Visibility: default

Description: Assigns the rectangle R to the object. After the call to `Copy`, the rectangle R has been copied to the object that invoked `Copy`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Assign` (704)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `ex2`;

*{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Copy }*

**Uses** `objects`;

**Var** `ARect,BRect,CRect : TRect`;

**begin**

`ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);`

`BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);`

`CRect.Copy(ARect);`

**If** `ARect.Equals(CRect)` **Then**

`Writeln ( 'ARect equals CRect ' )`

**Else**

`Writeln ( 'ARect does not equal CRect ! ' );`

**end.**

---

### 20.10.7 TRect.Union

Synopsis: Enlarges rectangle to encompass another rectangle.

Declaration: `procedure Union(R: TRect)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Union` enlarges the current rectangle so that it becomes the union of the current rectangle with the rectangle `R`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Intersect` ([702](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** `ex3`;

*{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Union }*

**Uses** `objects`;

**Var** `ARect, BRect, CRect : TRect`;

**begin**

`ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);`

`BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);`

*{ CRect is union of ARect and BRect }*

`CRect.Assign(10,10,25,25);`

*{ Calculate it explicitly }*

`ARect.Union(BRect);`

**If** `ARect.Equals(CRect)` **Then**

`Writeln ( 'ARect equals CRect' )`

**Else**

`Writeln ( 'ARect does not equal CRect !' );`

**end.**

---

### 20.10.8 TRect.Intersect

Synopsis: Reduce rectangle to intersection with another rectangle

Declaration: `procedure Intersect(R: TRect)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Intersect` makes the intersection of the current rectangle with `R`. If the intersection is empty, then the rectangle is set to the empty rectangle at coordinate (0,0).

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Union` ([702](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex4.pp`

---

```

Program ex4;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Intersect }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect,CRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);
  { CRect is intersection of ARect and BRect }
  CRect.Assign(15,15,20,20);
  { Calculate it explicitly }
  ARect.Intersect(BRect);
  If ARect.Equals(CRect) Then
    Writeln ( 'ARect equals CRect' )
  Else
    Writeln ( 'ARect does not equal CRect !' );
  BRect.Assign(25,25,30,30);
  ARect.Intersect(BRect);
  If ARect.Empty Then
    Writeln ( 'ARect is empty' );
end.

```

---

### 20.10.9 TRect.Move

Synopsis: Move rectangle along a vector.

Declaration: `procedure Move(ADX: Sw_Integer;ADY: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: Move moves the current rectangle along a vector with components ( ADX , ADY ). It adds ADX to the X-coordinate of both corner points, and ADY to both end points.

Errors: None.

See also: TRect.Grow ([704](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex5.pp

---

```

Program ex5;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Move }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  ARect.Move(5,5);
  // Brect should be where new ARect is.
  BRect.Assign(15,15,25,25);

```

---

```

If ARect.Equals(BRect) Then
  WriteLn ( 'ARect equals BRect' )
Else
  WriteLn ( 'ARect does not equal BRect !' );
end.

```

---

### 20.10.10 TRect.Grow

Synopsis: Expand rectangle with certain size.

Declaration: `procedure Grow(ADX: Sw_Integer;ADY: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Grow` expands the rectangle with an amount `ADX` in the X direction (both on the left and right side of the rectangle, thus adding a length  $2*ADX$  to the width of the rectangle), and an amount `ADY` in the Y direction (both on the top and the bottom side of the rectangle, adding a length  $2*ADY$  to the height of the rectangle).

`ADX` and `ADY` can be negative. If the resulting rectangle is empty, it is set to the empty rectangle at `(0,0)`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TRect.Move` ([703](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex6.pp`

---

```

Program ex6;

{ Program to demonstrate TRect.Grow }

Uses objects;

Var ARect,BRect : TRect;

begin
  ARect.Assign(10,10,20,20);
  ARect.Grow(5,5);
  // Brect should be where new ARect is.
  BRect.Assign(5,5,25,25);
  If ARect.Equals(BRect) Then
    WriteLn ( 'ARect equals BRect' )
  Else
    WriteLn ( 'ARect does not equal BRect !' );
end.

```

---

### 20.10.11 TRect.Assign

Synopsis: Set rectangle corners.

Declaration: `procedure Assign(XA: Sw_Integer;YA: Sw_Integer;XB: Sw_Integer;YB: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Assign sets the corner points of the rectangle to (XA, YA) and (Xb, Yb).

For an example, see TRect.Copy ([701](#)).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** TRect.Copy ([701](#))

## 20.11 TResourceCollection

### 20.11.1 Description

A TResourceCollection manages a collection of resource names. It stores the position and the size of a resource, as well as the name of the resource. It stores these items in records that look like this:

```
TYPE
  TResourceItem = packed RECORD
    Posn: LongInt;
    Size: LongInt;
    Key : String;
  End;
  PResourceItem = ^TResourceItem;
```

It overrides some methods of TStringCollection in order to accomplish this.

**Remark:** Remark that the TResourceCollection manages the names of the resources and their associated positions and sizes, it doesn't manage the resources themselves.

### 20.11.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">706</a>	FreeItem	Release memory occupied by item.
<a href="#">706</a>	GetItem	Read an item from the stream.
<a href="#">705</a>	KeyOf	Return the key of an item in the collection.
<a href="#">706</a>	PutItem	Write an item to the stream.

### 20.11.3 TResourceCollection.KeyOf

**Synopsis:** Return the key of an item in the collection.

**Declaration:** function KeyOf(Item: Pointer) : Pointer; Virtual

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** KeyOf returns the key of an item in the collection. For resources, the key is a pointer to the string with the resource name.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** TStringCollection.Compare ([726](#))

#### 20.11.4 TResourceCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Read an item from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a resource item from the stream `S`. It reads the position, size and name from the stream, in that order. It DOES NOT read the resource itself from the stream.

The resulting item is not inserted in the collection. This call is mainly for internal use by the `TCollection.Load` (676) method.

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Read` (724)

See also: `TCollection.Load` (676), `TStream.Read` (724)

#### 20.11.5 TResourceCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Release memory occupied by item.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeItem` releases the memory occupied by `Item`. It de-allocates the name, and then the resource item record.

It does NOT remove the item from the collection.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` (686)

#### 20.11.6 TResourceCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write an item to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes `Item` to the stream `S`. It does this by writing the position and size and name of the resource item to the stream.

This method is used primarily by the `Store` (689) method.

Errors: Errors returned are those by `TStream.Write` (724).

See also: `TCollection.Store` (689)

### 20.12 TResourceFile

#### 20.12.1 Description

`TResourceFile` (706) represents the resources in a binary file image.

### 20.12.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">707</a>	Count	Number of resources in the file
<a href="#">709</a>	Delete	Delete a resource from the file
<a href="#">707</a>	Done	Destroy the instance and remove it from memory.
<a href="#">708</a>	Flush	Writes the resources to the stream.
<a href="#">708</a>	Get	Return a resource by key name.
<a href="#">707</a>	Init	Instantiate a new instance.
<a href="#">708</a>	KeyAt	Return the key of the item at a certain position.
<a href="#">709</a>	Put	Set a resource by key name.
<a href="#">708</a>	SwitchTo	Write resources to a new stream.

### 20.12.3 TResourceFile.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance.

Declaration: constructor `Init(AStream: PStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` instantiates a new instance of a `TResourceFile` object. If `AStream` is not nil then it is considered as a stream describing an executable image on disk.

`Init` will try to position the stream on the start of the resources section, and read all resources from the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Done` ([707](#))

### 20.12.4 TResourceFile.Done

Synopsis: Destroy the instance and remove it from memory.

Declaration: destructor `Done; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Done` cleans up the instance of the `TResourceFile` Object. If `Stream` was specified at initialization, then `Stream` is disposed of too.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Init` ([707](#))

### 20.12.5 TResourceFile.Count

Synopsis: Number of resources in the file

Declaration: function `Count : Sw_Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Count` returns the number of resources. If no resources were read, zero is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `TResourceFile.Init` ([707](#))



### 20.12.6 TResourceFile.KeyAt

Synopsis: Return the key of the item at a certain position.

Declaration: `function KeyAt(I: Sw_Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `KeyAt` returns the key (the name) of the `I`-th resource.

Errors: In case `I` is invalid, `TCollection.Error` will be executed.

See also: `TResourceFile.Get` (708)

### 20.12.7 TResourceFile.Get

Synopsis: Return a resource by key name.

Declaration: `function Get(Key: String) : PObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `Get` returns a pointer to a instance of a resource identified by `Key`. If `Key` cannot be found in the list of resources, then `Nil` is returned.

Errors: Errors returned may be those by `TStream.Get`

### 20.12.8 TResourceFile.SwitchTo

Synopsis: Write resources to a new stream.

Declaration: `function SwitchTo(AStream: PStream; Pack: Boolean) : PStream`

Visibility: default

Description: `SwitchTo` switches to a new stream to hold the resources in. `AStream` will be the new stream after the call to `SwitchTo`.

If `Pack` is true, then all the known resources will be copied from the current stream to the new stream (`AStream`). If `Pack` is False, then only the current resource is copied.

The return value is the value of the original stream: `Stream`.

The `Modified` flag is set as a consequence of this call.

Errors: Errors returned can be those of `TStream.Read` (724) and `TStream.Write` (724).

See also: `TResourceFile.Flush` (708)

### 20.12.9 TResourceFile.Flush

Synopsis: Writes the resources to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Flush`

Visibility: default

Description: If the `Modified` flag is set to `True`, then `Flush` writes the resources to the stream `Stream`. It sets the `Modified` flag to true after that.

Errors: Errors can be those by `TStream.Seek` (723) and `TStream.Write` (724).

See also: `TResourceFile.SwitchTo` (708)

**20.12.10 TResourceFile.Delete**

Synopsis: Delete a resource from the file

Declaration: `procedure Delete(Key: String)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Delete` deletes the resource identified by `Key` from the collection. It sets the `Modified` flag to `true`.

Errors: `None`.

See also: `TResourceFile.Flush` (708)

**20.12.11 TResourceFile.Put**

Synopsis: Set a resource by key name.

Declaration: `procedure Put(Item: PObject;Key: String)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Put` sets the resource identified by `Key` to `Item`. If no such resource exists, a new one is created. The item is written to the stream.

Errors: Errors returned may be those by `TStream.Put` (722) and `TStream.Seek`

See also: `TResourceFile.Get` (708)

**20.13 TSortedCollection****20.13.1 Description**

`TSortedCollection` is an abstract class, implementing a sorted collection. You should never use an instance of `TSortedCollection` directly, instead you should declare a descendent type, and override the `Compare` (711) method.

Because the collection is ordered, `TSortedCollection` overrides some `TCollection` methods, to provide faster routines for lookup.

The `Compare` (711) method decides how elements in the collection should be ordered. Since `TCollection` has no way of knowing how to order pointers, you must override the compare method.

Additionally, `TCollection` provides a means to filter out duplicates. if you set `Duplicates` to `False` (the default) then duplicates will not be allowed.

The example below defines a descendent of `TSortedCollection` which is used in the examples.

**20.13.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">711</a>	Compare	Compare two items in the collection.
<a href="#">711</a>	IndexOf	Return index of an item in the collection.
<a href="#">710</a>	Init	Instantiates a new instance of a TSortedCollection
<a href="#">713</a>	Insert	Insert new item in collection.
<a href="#">710</a>	KeyOf	Return the key of an item
<a href="#">710</a>	Load	Instantiates a new instance of a TSortedCollection and loads it from stream.
<a href="#">712</a>	Search	Search for item with given key.
<a href="#">714</a>	Store	Write the collection to the stream.

**20.13.3 TSortedCollection.Init**

Synopsis: Instantiates a new instance of a TSortedCollection

Declaration: constructor `Init(ALimit: Sw_Integer;ADelta: Sw_Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Init` calls the inherited constructor (see `TCollection.Init` ([675](#))) and sets the `Duplicates` flag to `false`.

You should not call this method directly, since `TSortedCollection` is a abstract class. Instead, the descendent classes should call it via the inherited keyword.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Load` ([710](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([676](#))

**20.13.4 TSortedCollection.Load**

Synopsis: Instantiates a new instance of a TSortedCollection and loads it from stream.

Declaration: constructor `Load(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Load` calls the inherited constructor (see `TCollection.Load` ([676](#))) and reads the `Duplicates` flag from the stream..

You should not call this method directly, since `TSortedCollection` is a abstract class. Instead, the descendent classes should call it via the inherited keyword.

For an example, see `TCollection.Load` ([676](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Init` ([710](#)), `TCollection.Done` ([676](#))

**20.13.5 TSortedCollection.KeyOf**

Synopsis: Return the key of an item

Declaration: function `KeyOf(Item: Pointer) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `KeyOf` returns the key associated with `Item`. `TSortedCollection` returns the item itself as the key, descendent objects can override this method to calculate a (unique) key based on the item passed (such as hash values).

Keys are used to sort the objects, they are used to search and sort the items in the collection. If descendent types override this method then it allows possibly for faster search/sort methods based on keys rather than on the objects themselves.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.IndexOf` (711), `TSortedCollection.Compare` (711)

### 20.13.6 TSortedCollection.IndexOf

**Synopsis:** Return index of an item in the collection.

**Declaration:** `function IndexOf(Item: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IndexOf` returns the index of `Item` in the collection. It searches for the object based on it's key. If duplicates are allowed, then it returns the index of last object that matches `Item`.

In case `Item` is not found in the collection, -1 is returned.

For an example, see `TCollection.IndexOf` (677)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.Search` (712), `TSortedCollection.Compare` (711)

### 20.13.7 TSortedCollection.Compare

**Synopsis:** Compare two items in the collection.

**Declaration:** `function Compare(Key1: Pointer;Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Compare` is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects in order to compare two items in the collection. This method is used in the `Search` (712) method and in the `Insert` (713) method to determine the ordering of the objects.

The function should compare the two keys of items and return the following function results:

**Result < 0** If `Key1` is logically before `Key2` (`Key1<Key2`)

**Result = 0** If `Key1` and `Key2` are equal. (`Key1=Key2`)

**Result > 0** If `Key1` is logically after `Key2` (`Key1>Key2`)

**Errors:** An 'abstract run-time error' will be generated if you call `TSortedCollection.Compare` directly.

**See also:** `TSortedCollection.IndexOf` (711), `TSortedCollection.Search` (712)

**Listing:** `./objectex/mysortc.pp`

---

**Unit** MySortC;

**Interface**

**Uses** Objects;

**Type**

```

PMySortedCollection = ^TMySortedCollection;
TMySortedCollection = Object(TSortedCollection)
    Function Compare (Key1,Key2 : Pointer): Sw_integer; virtual;
    end;

```

**Implementation**

**Uses** MyObject;

**Function** TMySortedCollection.Compare (Key1,Key2 : Pointer) : sw\_integer;

**begin**

```

    Compare:=PMyobject(Key1)^.GetField - PMyObject(Key2)^.GetField;

```

**end**;

**end**.

---

### 20.13.8 TSortedCollection.Search

Synopsis: Search for item with given key.

Declaration: `function Search(Key: Pointer;var Index: Sw_Integer) : Boolean; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Search looks for the item with key Key and returns the position of the item (if present) in the collection in Index.

Instead of a linear search as TCollection does, TSortedCollection uses a binary search based on the keys of the objects. It uses the Compare (711) function to implement this search.

If the item is found, Search returns True, otherwise False is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: TCollection.IndexOf (677)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** ex36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TSortedCollection.Insert method }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject, MySortC;

*{ For TMyObject, TMySortedCollection definition and registration }*

**Var** C : PSortedCollection;

    M : PMyObject;

    I : Longint;

**Procedure** PrintField (Dummy: Pointer;P : PMyObject);

```

begin
  Writeln ( 'Field : ', P^.GetField);
end;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New( PMySortedCollection , Init (120,10));
  C^.Duplicates:=True;
  Writeln ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places. ');
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
      M^.SetField(Random(100));
      C^.Insert(M)
    end;
  M:=New(PMyObject, Init);
  Repeat;
    Write ( 'Value to search for (-1 stops) : ');
    read (I);
    If I<>-1 then
      begin
        M^.SetField(i);
        If Not C^.Search (M,I) then
          Writeln ( 'No such value found')
        else
          begin
            Write ( 'Value ', PMyObject(C^.At(I))^ .GetField);
            Writeln ( ' present at position ', I);
          end;
        end;
      Until I=-1;
      Dispose (M, Done);
      Dispose (C, Done);
    end.

```

---

### 20.13.9 TSortedCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert new item in collection.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts an item in the collection at the correct position, such that the collection is ordered at all times. You should never use `Atinsert` (689), since then the collection ordering is not guaranteed.

If `Item` is already present in the collection, and `Duplicates` is `False`, the item will not be inserted.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.AtInsert` (689)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex35.pp

---

```

Program ex35;

{ Program to demonstrate the TSortedCollection.Insert method }

Uses Objects, MyObject, MySortC;
      { For TMyObject, TMySortedCollection definition and registration }

Var C : PSortedCollection;
      M : PMyObject;
      I : Longint;

Procedure PrintField (Dummy: Pointer; P : PMyObject);

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Field : ', P^.GetField );
end;

begin
  Randomize;
  C:=New( PMySortedCollection, Init(120,10));
  WriteLn ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );
  For I:=1 to 100 do
    begin
      M:=New( PMyObject, Init );
      M^.SetField(Random(100));
      C^.Insert(M)
    end;
    WriteLn ( 'Values : ' );
    C^.Foreach( @PrintField );
    Dispose(C, Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.13.10 TSortedCollection.Store

Synopsis: Write the collection to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: Store writes the collection to the stream S. It does this by calling the inherited TCollection.Store (689), and then writing the Duplicates flag to the stream.

After a Store, the collection can be loaded from the stream with the constructor Load (710)

For an example, see TCollection.Load (676).

Errors: Errors can be those of TStream.Put (722).

See also: TSortedCollection.Load (710)

## 20.14 TStrCollection

### 20.14.1 Description

The TStrCollection object manages a sorted collection of null-terminated strings (pchar strings). To this end, it overrides the Compare (711) method of TSortedCollection, and it introduces methods to read/write strings from a stream.

### 20.14.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">715</a>	Compare	Compare two strings in the collection.
<a href="#">716</a>	FreeItem	Free null-terminated string from the collection.
<a href="#">716</a>	GetItem	Read a null-terminated string from the stream.
<a href="#">716</a>	PutItem	Write a null-terminated string to the stream.

### 20.14.3 TStrCollection.Compare

Synopsis: Compare two strings in the collection.

Declaration: `function Compare(Key1: Pointer;Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: TStrCollection overrides the Compare function so it compares the two keys as if they were pointers to strings. The compare is done case sensitive. It returns

-1if the first string is alphabetically earlier than the second string.

0if the two strings are equal.

1if the first string is alphabetically later than the second string.

Errors: None.

See also: TSortedCollection.Compare ([711](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex38.pp

---

**Program** ex38;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStrCollection.Compare method }*

**Uses** Objects , Strings ;

**Var** C : PStrCollection ;  
       S : **String** ;  
       I : longint ;  
       P : Pchar ;

**begin**

**Randomize** ;

  C:=**New**( PStrCollection , Init (120,10));

  C^.Duplicates:=True; *{ Duplicates allowed }*

**WriteLn** ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );

**For** I:=1 **to** 100 **do**

**begin**

**Str**(Random(100),S);



---

```

S:= 'String with value '+S;
P:= StrAlloc (Length(S)+1);
C^.Insert (StrPCopy(P,S));
end;
For I:=0 to 98 do
  With C^ do
    If Compare (At(I),At(I+1))=0 then
      WriteLn ('Duplicate string found at position ',I);
    Dispose(C,Done);
  end.

```

---

#### 20.14.4 TStrCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Read a null-terminated string from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a null-terminated string from the stream `S` and returns a pointer to it. It doesn't insert the string in the collection.

This method is primarily introduced to be able to load and store the collection from and to a stream.

Errors: The errors returned are those of `TStream.StrRead` ([718](#)).

See also: `TStrCollection.PutItem` ([716](#))

#### 20.14.5 TStrCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Free null-terminated string from the collection.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStrCollection` overrides `FreeItem` so that the string pointed to by `Item` is disposed from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` ([686](#))

#### 20.14.6 TStrCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write a null-terminated string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes the string pointed to by `Item` to the stream `S`.

This method is primarily used in the `Load` and `Store` methods, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Errors are those of `TStream.StrWrite` ([723](#)).

See also: `TStrCollection.GetItem` ([716](#))

## 20.15 TStream

### 20.15.1 Description

The `TStream` object is the ancestor for all streaming objects, i.e. objects that have the capability to store and retrieve data.

It defines a number of methods that are common to all objects that implement streaming, many of them are virtual, and are only implemented in the descendent types.

Programs should not instantiate objects of type `TStream` directly, but instead instantiate a descendant type, such as `TDosStream`, `TMemoryStream`.

### 20.15.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">721</a>	<code>Close</code>	Close the stream
<a href="#">725</a>	<code>CopyFrom</code>	Copy data from another stream.
<a href="#">723</a>	<code>Error</code>	Set stream status
<a href="#">722</a>	<code>Flush</code>	Flush the stream data from the buffer, if any.
<a href="#">717</a>	<code>Get</code>	Read an object definition from the stream.
<a href="#">719</a>	<code>GetPos</code>	Return current position in the stream
<a href="#">719</a>	<code>GetSize</code>	Return the size of the stream.
<a href="#">717</a>	<code>Init</code>	Constructor for <code>TStream</code> instance
<a href="#">721</a>	<code>Open</code>	Open the stream
<a href="#">722</a>	<code>Put</code>	Write an object to the stream.
<a href="#">724</a>	<code>Read</code>	Read data from stream to buffer.
<a href="#">720</a>	<code>ReadStr</code>	Read a shortstring from the stream.
<a href="#">721</a>	<code>Reset</code>	Reset the stream
<a href="#">723</a>	<code>Seek</code>	Set stream position.
<a href="#">718</a>	<code>StrRead</code>	Read a null-terminated string from the stream.
<a href="#">723</a>	<code>StrWrite</code>	Write a null-terminated string to the stream.
<a href="#">722</a>	<code>Truncate</code>	Truncate the stream size on current position.
<a href="#">724</a>	<code>Write</code>	Write a number of bytes to the stream.
<a href="#">723</a>	<code>WriteStr</code>	Write a pascal string to the stream.

### 20.15.3 TStream.Init

Synopsis: Constructor for `TStream` instance

Declaration: `constructor Init`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Init` initializes a `TStream` instance. Descendent streams should always call the inherited `Init`.

### 20.15.4 TStream.Get

Synopsis: Read an object definition from the stream.

Declaration: `function Get : PObject`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Get` reads an object definition from a stream, and returns a pointer to an instance of this object.

Errors: On error, TStream.Status (??) is set, and NIL is returned.

See also: TStream.Put ([722](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex9.pp

---

**Program** ex9;

*{ Program to demonstrate TStream.Get and TStream.Put }*

**Uses** Objects, MyObject; *{ Definition and registration of TMyObject }*

**Var** Obj : PMyObject;  
S : PStream;

**begin**

```
Obj:=New(PMyObject, Init);
Obj^.SetField($1111);
Writeln ('Field value : ', Obj^.GetField);
{ Since Stream is an abstract type, we instantiate a TMemoryStream }
S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
S^.Put(Obj);
Writeln ('Disposing object');
S^.Seek(0);
Dispose(Obj, Done);
Writeln ('Reading object');
Obj:=PMyObject(S^.Get);
Writeln ('Field Value : ', Obj^.GetField);
Dispose(Obj, Done);
```

**end.**

---

### 20.15.5 TStream.StrRead

Synopsis: Read a null-terminated string from the stream.

Declaration: function StrRead : PChar

Visibility: default

Description: StrRead reads a string from the stream, allocates memory for it, and returns a pointer to a null-terminated copy of the string on the heap.

Errors: On error, Nil is returned.

See also: TStream.StrWrite ([723](#)), TStream.ReadStr ([720](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** ex10;

*{*  
*Program to demonstrate the TStream.StrRead TStream.StrWrite functions*  
*}*

**Uses** objects;

**Var** P : PChar;  
S : PStream;

---

```

begin
  P:= 'Constant Pchar string';
  Writeln ('Writing to stream : ',P,'');
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  S^.StrWrite(P);
  S^.Seek(0);
  P:= Nil;
  P:=S^.StrRead;
  Dispose (S,Done);
  Writeln ('Read from stream : ',P,'');
  Freemem(P, Strlen(P)+1);
end.

```

---

### 20.15.6 TStream.GetPos

Synopsis: Return current position in the stream

Declaration: function GetPos : LongInt; Virtual

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is stOk, GetPos returns the current position in the stream. Otherwise it returns -1

Errors: -1 is returned if the status is an error condition.

See also: TStream.Seek ([723](#)), TStream.GetSize ([719](#))

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex11.pp

---

```

Program ex11;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.GetPos function }

Uses objects;

Var L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
  L:= 'Some kind of string';
  S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  Writeln ('Stream position before write : ',S^.GetPos);
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  Writeln ('Stream position after write : ',S^.GetPos);
  Dispose(S,Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.15.7 TStream.GetSize

Synopsis: Return the size of the stream.

Declaration: function GetSize : LongInt; Virtual

Visibility: default

Description: If the stream's status is `stOk` then `GetSize` returns the size of the stream, otherwise it returns `-1`.

Errors: `-1` is returned if the status is an error condition.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([723](#)), `TStream.GetPos` ([719](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex12.pp`

---

```

Program ex12;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.GetSize function }

Uses objects;

Var L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
  L := 'Some kind of string';
  S := New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
  WriteLn ( 'Stream size before write : ', S^.GetSize );
  S^.WriteStr(@L);
  WriteLn ( 'Stream size after write : ', S^.GetSize );
  Dispose(S, Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.15.8 TStream.ReadStr

Synopsis: Read a shortstring from the stream.

Declaration: `function ReadStr : PString`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `ReadStr` reads a string from the stream, copies it to the heap and returns a pointer to this copy. The string is saved as a pascal string, and hence is NOT null terminated.

Errors: On error (e.g. not enough memory), `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TStream.StrRead` ([718](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex13.pp`

---

```

Program ex13;

{
  Program to demonstrate the TStream.ReadStr TStream.WriteStr functions
}

Uses objects;

Var P : PString;
    L : String;
    S : PStream;

begin
  L := 'Constant string line';
  WriteLn ( 'Writing to stream : " ', L, '" ' );

```

---

---

```

S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
S^.WriteStr(@L);
S^.Seek(0);
P:=S^.ReadStr;
L:=P^;
DisposeStr(P);
Dispose(S, Done);
WriteLn('Read from stream : ', L, ' ');
end.

```

---

### 20.15.9 TStream.Open

Synopsis: Open the stream

Declaration: `procedure Open(OpenMode: Word); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Open` is an abstract method, that should be overridden by descendent objects. Since opening a stream depends on the stream's type this is not surprising.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Open` ([693](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Close` ([721](#)), `TStream.Reset` ([721](#))

### 20.15.10 TStream.Close

Synopsis: Close the stream

Declaration: `procedure Close; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Close` is an abstract method, that should be overridden by descendent objects. Since Closing a stream depends on the stream's type this is not surprising.

for an example, see `TDosStream.Open` ([693](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Open` ([721](#)), `TStream.Reset` ([721](#))

### 20.15.11 TStream.Reset

Synopsis: Reset the stream

Declaration: `procedure Reset`

Visibility: default

Description: `Reset` sets the stream's status to 0, as well as the `ErrorInfo`

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Open` ([721](#)), `TStream.Close` ([721](#))

### 20.15.12 TStream.Flush

Synopsis: Flush the stream data from the buffer, if any.

Declaration: `procedure Flush; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Flush` is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects. It serves to enable the programmer to tell streams that implement a buffer to clear the buffer.

for an example, see `TBufStream.Flush` ([672](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Truncate` ([722](#))

### 20.15.13 TStream.Truncate

Synopsis: Truncate the stream size on current position.

Declaration: `procedure Truncate; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Truncate` is an abstract procedure that should be overridden by descendent objects. It serves to enable the programmer to truncate the size of the stream to the current file position.

For an example, see `TDosStream.Truncate` ([692](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Seek` ([723](#))

### 20.15.14 TStream.Put

Synopsis: Write an object to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Put(P: PObject)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Put` writes the object pointed to by `P`. `P` should be non-nil. The object type must have been registered with `RegisterType` ([669](#)).

After the object has been written, it can be read again with `Get` ([717](#)).

For an example, see `TStream.Get` ([717](#));

Errors: No check is done whether `P` is `Nil` or not. Passing `Nil` will cause a run-time error 216 to be generated. If the object has not been registered, the status of the stream will be set to `stPutError`.

See also: `TStream.Get` ([717](#))

**20.15.15 TStream.StrWrite**

Synopsis: Write a null-terminated string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure StrWrite(P: PChar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrWrite` writes the null-terminated string `P` to the stream. `P` can only be 65355 bytes long.

For an example, see `TStream.StrRead` (718).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.WriteString` (723), `TStream.StrRead` (718), `TStream.ReadStr` (720)

**20.15.16 TStream.WriteString**

Synopsis: Write a pascal string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure WriteStr(P: PString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrWrite` writes the pascal string pointed to by `P` to the stream.

For an example, see `TStream.ReadStr` (720).

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.StrWrite` (723), `TStream.StrRead` (718), `TStream.ReadStr` (720)

**20.15.17 TStream.Seek**

Synopsis: Set stream position.

Declaration: `procedure Seek(Pos: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seek` sets the position to `Pos`. This position is counted from the beginning, and is zero based. (i.e. `seek(0)` sets the position pointer on the first byte of the stream)

For an example, see `TDosStream.Seek` (692).

Errors: If `Pos` is larger than the stream size, `Status` is set to `StSeekError`.

See also: `TStream.GetPos` (719), `TStream.GetSize` (719)

**20.15.18 TStream.Error**

Synopsis: Set stream status

Declaration: `procedure Error(Code: Integer; Info: Integer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Error` sets the stream's status to `Code` and `ErrorInfo` to `Info`. If the `StreamError` procedural variable is set, `Error` executes it, passing `Self` as an argument.

This method should not be called directly from a program. It is intended to be used in descendent objects.

Errors: None.



**20.15.19 TStream.Read**

Synopsis: Read data from stream to buffer.

Declaration: `procedure Read(var Buf;Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Read is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects.

Read reads Count bytes from the stream into Buf. It updates the position pointer, increasing it's value with Count. Buf must be large enough to contain Count bytes.

Errors: No checking is done to see if Buf is large enough to contain Count bytes.

See also: TStream.Write (724), TStream.ReadStr (720), TStream.StrRead (718)

**Listing:** ./objectex/ex18.pp

---

```

program ex18;

{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.Read method }

Uses Objects;

Var Buf1, Buf2 : Array[1..1000] of Byte;
    I : longint;
    S : PMemoryStream;

begin
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        Buf1[I]:=Random(1000);
    Buf2:=Buf1;
    S:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10));
    S^.Write(Buf1, SizeOf(Buf1));
    S^.Seek(0);
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        Buf1[I]:=0;
    S^.Read(Buf1, SizeOf(Buf1));
    For I:=1 to 1000 do
        If Buf1[I]<>buf2[i] then
            WriteLn('Buffer differs at position ',I);
        Dispose(S,Done);
end.

```

---

**20.15.20 TStream.Write**

Synopsis: Write a number of bytes to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Write(var Buf;Count: LongInt); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: Write is an abstract method that should be overridden by descendent objects.

Write writes Count bytes to the stream from Buf. It updates the position pointer, increasing it's value with Count.

For an example, see TStream.Read (724).

Errors: No checking is done to see if Buf actually contains Count bytes.

See also: TStream.Read (724), TStream.WriteString (723), TStream.StrWrite (723)

### 20.15.21 TStream.CopyFrom

Synopsis: Copy data from another stream.

Declaration: `procedure CopyFrom(var S: TStream; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `CopyFrom` reads `Count` bytes from stream `S` and stores them in the current stream. It uses the `Read` (724) method to read the data, and the `Write` (724) method to write in the current stream.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStream.Read` (724), `TStream.Write` (724)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `ex19`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStream.CopyFrom function }*

**Uses** `objects`;

**Var** `P` : `PString`;  
    `L` : **String**;  
    `S1,S2` : `PStream`;

**begin**  
    `L:= 'Constant string line'`;  
    **Writeln** ( 'Writing to stream 1 : " ',`L`, ' " ');  
    `S1:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10))`;  
    `S2:=New(PMemoryStream, Init(100,10))`;  
    `S1^.WriteStr(@L)`;  
    `S1^.Seek(0)`;  
    **Writeln** ( 'Copying contents of stream 1 to stream 2 ' );  
    `S2^.Copyfrom(S1^,S1^.GetSize)`;  
    `S2^.Seek(0)`;  
    `P:=S2^.ReadStr`;  
    `L:=P^`;  
    **DisposeStr**(`P`);  
    **Dispose** ( `S1`, `Done` );  
    **Dispose** ( `S2`, `Done` );  
    **Writeln** ( 'Read from stream 2 : " ',`L`, ' " ');  
**end.**

---

## 20.16 TStringCollection

### 20.16.1 Description

The `TStringCollection` object manages a sorted collection of pascal strings. To this end, it overrides the `Compare` (711) method of `TSortedCollection`, and it introduces methods to read/write strings from a stream.

### 20.16.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">726</a>	Compare	Compare two strings in the collection.
<a href="#">727</a>	FreeItem	Dispose a string in the collection from memory.
<a href="#">726</a>	GetItem	Get string from the stream.
<a href="#">727</a>	PutItem	Write a string to the stream.

### 20.16.3 TStringCollection.GetItem

Synopsis: Get string from the stream.

Declaration: `function GetItem(var S: TStream) : Pointer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetItem` reads a string from the stream `S` and returns a pointer to it. It doesn't insert the string in the collection.

This method is primarily introduced to be able to load and store the collection from and to a stream.

Errors: The errors returned are those of `TStream.ReadStr` ([720](#)).

See also: `TStringCollection.PutItem` ([727](#))

### 20.16.4 TStringCollection.Compare

Synopsis: Compare two strings in the collection.

Declaration: `function Compare(Key1: Pointer;Key2: Pointer) : Sw_Integer; Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStringCollection` overrides the `Compare` function so it compares the two keys as if they were pointers to strings. The compare is done case sensitive. It returns the following results:

-1if the first string is alphabetically earlier than the second string.

0if the two strings are equal.

1if the first string is alphabetically later than the second string.

Errors: None.

See also: `TSortedCollection.Compare` ([711](#))

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex37.pp`

---

**Program** `ex37`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TStringCollection.Compare method }*

**Uses** `Objects`;

**Var** `C : PStringCollection`;  
       `S : String`;  
       `I : longint`;

**begin**  
     `Randomize`;

---

```

C:=New(PStringCollection, Init(120,10));
C^.Duplicates:=True; { Duplicates allowed }
WriteLn ('Inserting 100 records at random places. ');
For I:=1 to 100 do
  begin
    Str(Random(100),S);
    S:='String with value '+S;
    C^.Insert(NewStr(S));
  end;
For I:=0 to 98 do
  With C^ do
    If Compare (At(i),At(I+1))=0 then
      WriteLn ('Duplicate string found at position ',i);
Dispose(C,Done);
end.

```

---

### 20.16.5 TStringCollection.FreeItem

Synopsis: Dispose a string in the collection from memory.

Declaration: `procedure FreeItem(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `TStringCollection` overrides `FreeItem` so that the string pointed to by `Item` is disposed from memory.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.FreeItem` ([686](#))

### 20.16.6 TStringCollection.PutItem

Synopsis: Write a string to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure PutItem(var S: TStream; Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `PutItem` writes the string pointed to by `Item` to the stream `S`.

This method is primarily used in the `Load` and `Store` methods, and should not be used directly.

Errors: Errors are those of `TStream.WriteString` ([723](#)).

See also: `TStringCollection.GetItem` ([726](#))

## 20.17 TStringList

### 20.17.1 Description

A `TStringList` object can be used to read a collection of strings stored in a stream. If you register this object with the `RegisterType` ([669](#)) function, you cannot register the `TStrListMaker` object.

**20.17.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">728</a>	Done	Clean up the instance
<a href="#">728</a>	Get	Return a string by key name
<a href="#">728</a>	Load	Load stringlist from stream.

**20.17.3 TStringList.Load**

Synopsis: Load stringlist from stream.

Declaration: constructor Load(var S: TStream)

Visibility: default

Description: The Load constructor reads the TStringList object from the stream S. It also reads the descriptions of the strings from the stream. The string descriptions are stored as an array of TStrIndexrec records, where each record describes a string on the stream. These records are kept in memory.

Errors: If an error occurs, a stream error is triggered.

See also: TStringList.Done ([728](#))

**20.17.4 TStringList.Done**

Synopsis: Clean up the instance

Declaration: destructor Done; Virtual

Visibility: default

Description: The Done destructor frees the memory occupied by the string descriptions, and destroys the object.

Errors: None.

See also: TStringList.Load ([728](#)), TObject.Done ([698](#))

**20.17.5 TStringList.Get**

Synopsis: Return a string by key name

Declaration: function Get(Key: Sw\_Word) : String

Visibility: default

Description: Get reads the string with key Key from the list of strings on the stream, and returns this string. If there is no string with such a key, an empty string is returned.

Errors: If no string with key Key is found, an empty string is returned. A stream error may result if the stream doesn't contain the needed strings.

See also: TStrListMaker.Put ([729](#))

## 20.18 TStrListMaker

### 20.18.1 Description

The TStrListMaker object can be used to generate a stream with strings, which can be read with the TStringList object. If you register this object with the RegisterType (669) function, you cannot register the TStringList object.

### 20.18.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">729</a>	Done	Clean up the instance and free all related memory.
<a href="#">729</a>	Init	Instantiate a new instance of TStrListMaker
<a href="#">729</a>	Put	Add a new string to the list with associated key.
<a href="#">730</a>	Store	Write the strings to the stream.

### 20.18.3 TStrListMaker.Init

Synopsis: Instantiate a new instance of TStrListMaker

Declaration: constructor Init(AStrSize: Sw\_Word; AIndexSize: Sw\_Word)

Visibility: default

Description: The Init constructor creates a new instance of the TStrListMaker object. It allocates AStrSize bytes on the heap to hold all the strings you wish to store. It also allocates enough room for AIndexSize key description entries (of the type TStrIndexrec).

AStrSize must be large enough to contain all the strings you wish to store. If not enough memory is allocated, other memory will be overwritten. The same is true for AIndexSize : maximally AIndexSize strings can be written to the stream.

Errors: None.

See also: TObject.Init (697), TStrListMaker.Done (729)

### 20.18.4 TStrListMaker.Done

Synopsis: Clean up the instance and free all related memory.

Declaration: destructor Done; Virtual

Visibility: default

Description: The Done destructor de-allocates the memory for the index description records and the string data, and then destroys the object.

Errors: None.

See also: TObject.Done (698), TStrListMaker.Init (729)

### 20.18.5 TStrListMaker.Put

Synopsis: Add a new string to the list with associated key.

Declaration: procedure Put(Key: Sw\_Word; S: String)

Visibility: default

Description: `Put` adds the string `S` with key `Key` to the collection of strings. This action doesn't write the string to a stream. To write the strings to the stream, see the `Store` (730) method.

Errors: None.

See also: `TStrListMaker.Store` (730)

### 20.18.6 TStrListMaker.Store

Synopsis: Write the strings to the stream.

Declaration: `procedure Store(var S: TStream)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Store` writes the collection of strings to the stream `S`. The collection can then be read with the `TStringList` object.

Errors: A stream error may occur when writing the strings to the stream.

See also: `TStringList.Load` (728), `TStrListMaker.Put` (729)

## 20.19 TUnSortedStrCollection

### 20.19.1 Description

The `TUnSortedStrCollection` object manages an unsorted list of strings. To this end, it overrides the `TStringCollection.Insert` (725) method to add strings at the end of the collection, rather than in the alphabetically correct position.

Take care, the `Search` (712) and `IndexOf` (677) methods will not work on an unsorted string collection.

### 20.19.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">730</a>	<code>Insert</code>	Insert a new string in the collection.

### 20.19.3 TUnSortedStrCollection.Insert

Synopsis: Insert a new string in the collection.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(Item: Pointer); Virtual`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts a string at the end of the collection, instead of on its alphabetical place, resulting in an unsorted collection of strings.

Errors: None.

See also: `TCollection.Insert` (684)

**Listing:** `./objectex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** ex39;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TUnsortedStrCollection.Insert method }*

**Uses** Objects, Strings;

**Var** C : PUnsortedStrCollection;  
      S : **String**;  
      I : longint;  
      P : Pchar;

**begin**

**Randomize**;

  C:=**New**(PUnsortedStrCollection, Init(120,10));

**Writeln** ( 'Inserting 100 records at random places.' );

**For** I:=1 **to** 100 **do**

**begin**

**Str**(Random(100),S);

      S:= 'String with value ' + S;

      C^.**Insert**(**NewStr**(S));

**end**;

**For** I:=0 **to** 99 **do**

**Writeln** ( I:2, ': ', PString(C^.**At**(i))^ );

**Dispose**(C,Done);

**end**.

---



# Chapter 21

## Reference for unit 'objpas'

### 21.1 Overview

The `objpas` unit is meant for compatibility with Object Pascal as implemented by Delphi. The unit is loaded automatically by the Free Pascal compiler whenever the `Delphi` or `objfpc` mode is entered, either through the command line switches `-Sd` or `-Sh` or with the `{ $MODE DELPHI }` or `{ $MODE OBJFPC }` directives.

It redefines some basic pascal types, introduces some functions for compatibility with Delphi's system unit, and introduces some methods for the management of the resource string tables.

### 21.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 21.2.1 Constants

`MaxInt = MaxLongint`

Maximum value for Integer (732) type.

#### 21.2.2 Types

`Integer = LongInt`

In OBJPAS mode and in DELPHI mode, an Integer has a size of 32 bit. In TP or regular FPC mode, an integer is 16 bit.

`IntegerArray = Array[0..$effffff] of Integer`

Generic array of integer (732)

`PInteger = ^Integer`

Pointer to Integer (732) type.

`PIntegerArray = ^IntegerArray`

Pointer to TIntegerArray (733) type.

`PointerArray = Array[0..512*1024*1024-2] of Pointer`

Generic Array of pointers.

`PPointerArray = ^PointerArray`

Pointer to PointerArray ([733](#))

`PResStringRec = ^AnsiString`

Pointer to ansistring (Delphi compatibility).

`PString = PAnsiString`

Pointer to ansistring type.

`TBoundArray = Array[] of Integer`

Array of integer, used in interfaces.

`TIntegerArray = IntegerArray`

Alias for IntegerArray ([732](#))

`TPointerArray = PointerArray`

Alias for PointerArray ([733](#))

`TResourceIterator = function(Name: AnsiString; Value: AnsiString;  
Hash: LongInt) : AnsiString`

The resource string tables can be managed with a callback function which the user must provide:  
`TResourceIterator`.

`TResStringRec = AnsiString`

Ansistring record in resource table (Delphi compatibility).

## 21.3 Procedures and functions

### 21.3.1 AssignFile

Synopsis: Assign text or untyped file

Declaration: `procedure AssignFile(var f: File; const Name: String)`  
`procedure AssignFile(var f: File; p: pchar)`  
`procedure AssignFile(var f: File; c: Char)`  
`procedure AssignFile(var t: Text; const s: String)`  
`procedure AssignFile(var t: Text; p: pchar)`  
`procedure AssignFile(var t: Text; c: Char)`  
`procedure AssignFile(var f: TypedFile; const Name: String)`  
`procedure AssignFile(var f: TypedFile; p: pchar)`  
`procedure AssignFile(var f: TypedFile; c: Char)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** AssignFile is completely equivalent to the system unit's Assign (987) function: It assigns Name to a function of any type (FileType can be Text or a typed or untyped File variable). Name can be a string, a single character or a PChar.

It is most likely introduced to avoid confusion between the regular Assign (987) function and the Assign method of TPersistent in the Delphi VCL.

Errors: None.

See also: CloseFile (734), #rtl.system.Assign (987), #rtl.system.Reset (1047), #rtl.system.Rewrite (1048), #rtl.system.Append (985)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex88.pp

---

**Program** Example88;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignFile and CloseFile functions. }*

*{ \$MODE Delphi }*

**Var** F : text;

**begin**

    AssignFile(F, 'textfile.tmp');

    Rewrite(F);

    WriteLn (F, 'This is a silly example of AssignFile and CloseFile.');

    CloseFile(F);

**end.**

---

### 21.3.2 CloseFile

Synopsis: Close text or untyped file

**Declaration:** procedure CloseFile(var f: File)  
                  procedure CloseFile(var t: Text)

Visibility: default

**Description:** CloseFile flushes and closes a file F of any file type. F can be Text or a typed or untyped File variable. After a call to CloseFile, any attempt to write to the file F will result in an error.

It is most likely introduced to avoid confusion between the regular Close (994) function and the Close method of TForm in the Delphi VCL.

for an example, see AssignFile (733).

Errors: None.

See also: #rtl.system.Close (994), AssignFile (733), #rtl.system.Reset (1047), #rtl.system.Rewrite (1048), #rtl.system.Append (985)

### 21.3.3 GetStringCurrentValue

Synopsis: Return current value of resourcestring

**Declaration:** function GetStringCurrentValue(TableIndex: LongInt;  
                                          StringIndex: LongInt) : AnsiString

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetStringCurrentValue` returns the current value of the resourcestring in table `TableIndex` with index `StringIndex`.

The current value depends on the system of internationalization that was used, and which language is selected when the program is executed.

**Errors:** If either `TableIndex` or `StringIndex` are out of range, then a empty string is returned.

**See also:** `SetResourceStrings` (739), `GetStringDefaultValue` (735), `GetStringHash` (736), `GetStringName` (736), `ResourceStringTableCount` (739), `ResourceStringCount` (739)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex90.pp`

**Program** `Example90`;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the GetStringCurrentValue function. }
{$Mode Delphi}
```

`ResourceString`

```
First = 'First string';
Second = 'Second String';
```

`Var I, J : Longint;`

**begin**

```
{ Print current values of all resourcestrings }
For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
  For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(I)-1 do
    Writeln (I, ', ', J, ' : ', GetStringCurrentValue(I, J));
```

**end.**

### 21.3.4 GetStringDefaultValue

**Synopsis:** Return default (original) value of resourcestring

**Declaration:** `function GetStringDefaultValue(TableIndex: LongInt;  
StringIndex: LongInt) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetStringDefaultValue` returns the default value of the resourcestring in table `TableIndex` with index `StringIndex`.

The default value is the value of the string that appears in the source code of the programmer, and is compiled into the program.

**Errors:** If either `TableIndex` or `StringIndex` are out of range, then a empty string is returned.

**See also:** `SetResourceStrings` (739), `GetStringCurrentValue` (734), `GetStringHash` (736), `GetStringName` (736), `ResourceStringTableCount` (739), `ResourceStringCount` (739)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex91.pp`

---

**Program** Example91;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the GetStringDefaultValue function. }
{$Mode Delphi}
```

```
ResourceString
```

```
    First = 'First string';
    Second = 'Second String';
```

```
Var I,J : Longint;
```

```
begin
```

```
    { Print default values of all resourcestrings }
```

```
    For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
```

```
        For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(i)-1 do
```

```
            WriteLn (I,',',J,' : ',GetStringDefaultValue(I,J));
```

```
end.
```

---

### 21.3.5 GetStringHash

Synopsis: Return hash value of resource string

Declaration: function GetStringHash(TableIndex: LongInt;StringIndex: LongInt)  
: LongInt

Visibility: default

Description: GetStringHash returns the hash value associated with the resource string in table TableIndex, with index StringIndex.

The hash value is calculated from the default value of the resource string in a manner that gives the same result as the GNU `gettext` mechanism. It is stored in the resourcestring tables, so retrieval is faster than actually calculating the hash for each string.

For an example, see Hash ([737](#)).

Errors: If either TableIndex or StringIndex is zero, 0 is returned.

See also: Hash ([737](#)), SetResourceStrings ([739](#)), GetStringDefaultValue ([735](#)), GetStringHash ([736](#)), GetStringName ([736](#)), ResourceStringTableCount ([739](#)), ResourceStringCount ([739](#))

### 21.3.6 GetStringName

Synopsis: Return name of resource string.

Declaration: function GetStringName(TableIndex: LongInt;StringIndex: LongInt)  
: Ansistring

Visibility: default

Description: GetStringName returns the name of the resourcestring in table TableIndex with index StringIndex. The name of the string is always the unit name in which the string was declared, followed by a period and the name of the constant, all in lowercase.

If a unit `MyUnit` declares a resourcestring `MyTitle` then the name returned will be `myunit.mytitle`. A resourcestring in the program file will have the name of the program prepended.

The name returned by this function is also the name that is stored in the resourcestring file generated by the compiler.

Strictly speaking, this information isn't necessary for the functioning of the program, it is provided only as a means to easier translation of strings.

Errors: If either TableIndex or StringIndex is zero, an empty string is returned.

See also: SetResourceStrings (739), GetResourceStringDefaultValue (735), GetResourceStringHash (736), GetResourceStringName (736), ResourceStringTableCount (739), ResourceStringCount (739)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex92.pp

**Program** Example92;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the GetResourceStringName function. }
{$Mode Delphi}
```

ResourceString

```
First = 'First string';
Second = 'Second String';
```

**Var** I,J : Longint;

**begin**

```
{ Print names of all resourcestrings }
For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
  For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(I)-1 do
    Writeln (I, ',', J, ' : ', GetResourceStringName(I, J));
```

**end.**

### 21.3.7 Hash

Synopsis: Create GNU Gettext hash value for a string

Declaration: function Hash(S: AnsiString) : LongInt

Visibility: default

Description: Hash calculates the hash value of the string S in a manner that is compatible with the GNU gettext hash value for the string. It is the same value that is stored in the Resource string tables, and which can be retrieved with the GetResourceStringHash (736) function call.

Errors: None. In case the calculated hash value should be 0, the returned result will be -1.

See also: GetResourceStringHash (736)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex93.pp

**Program** Example93;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Hash function. }
{$Mode Delphi}
```

ResourceString

```
First = 'First string';
```

---

```

    Second = 'Second String';

    Var I,J : Longint;

    begin
        For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
            For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(i)-1 do
                If Hash(GetResourceStringDefaultValue(I,J))
                    <>GetResourceStringHash(I,J) then
                    WriteLn ('Hash mismatch at ',I,', ',J)
                else
                    WriteLn ('Hash ( ',I,', ',J, ' ) matches. ');
            end.
    end.

```

---

### 21.3.8 LoadResString

Synopsis: Load resource string

Declaration: function LoadResString(p: PResStringRec) : AnsiString

Visibility: default

### 21.3.9 ParamStr

Synopsis: Return command-line parameter

Declaration: function ParamStr(Param: Integer) : Ansistring

Visibility: default

Description: ParamStr returns the Param-th command-line parameter as an AnsiString. The system unit Paramstr (738) function limits the result to 255 characters, and is overridden with this function.

The zeroeth command-line parameter contains the path of the executable. On some operating systems (BSD) it may be simply the command as typed on the command-line, because the OS does not offer a method to retrieve the full binary name.

For an example, see #rtl.system.Paramstr (1040).

Errors: In case Param is an invalid value, an empty string is returned.

See also: Paramstr (738)

### 21.3.10 ResetResourceTables

Synopsis: Restore all resource strings to their declared values

Declaration: procedure ResetResourceTables

Visibility: default

Description: ResetResourceTables resets all resource strings to their default (i.e. as in the source code) values.

Normally, this should never be called from a user's program. It is called in the initialization code of the objpas unit. However, if the resourcetables get messed up for some reason, this procedure will fix them again.

Errors: None.

See also: [SetResourceStrings \(739\)](#), [GetResourceStringDefaultValue \(735\)](#), [GetResourceStringHash \(736\)](#), [GetResourceStringName \(736\)](#), [ResourceStringTableCount \(739\)](#), [ResourceStringCount \(739\)](#)

### 21.3.11 ResourceStringCount

Synopsis: Return number of resource strings in table

Declaration: `function ResourceStringCount(TableIndex: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ResourceStringCount` returns the number of resource strings in the table with index `TableIndex`. The strings in a particular table are numbered from 0 to `ResourceStringCount-1`, i.e. they're zero based.

For an example, see [GetResourceStringDefaultValue \(735\)](#)

Errors: If an invalid `TableIndex` is given, -1 is returned.

See also: [SetResourceStrings \(739\)](#), [GetResourceStringCurrentValue \(734\)](#), [GetResourceStringDefaultValue \(735\)](#), [GetResourceStringHash \(736\)](#), [GetResourceStringName \(736\)](#), [ResourceStringTableCount \(739\)](#)

### 21.3.12 ResourceStringTableCount

Synopsis: Return number of resource string tables

Declaration: `function ResourceStringTableCount : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ResourceStringTableCount` returns the number of resource string tables; this may be zero if no resource strings are used in a program.

The tables are numbered from 0 to `ResourceStringTableCount-1`, i.e. they're zero based.

For an example, see [GetResourceStringDefaultValue \(735\)](#)

Errors:

See also: [SetResourceStrings \(739\)](#), [GetResourceStringDefaultValue \(735\)](#), [GetResourceStringHash \(736\)](#), [GetResourceStringName \(736\)](#), [ResourceStringCount \(739\)](#)

### 21.3.13 SetResourceStrings

Synopsis: Set values of all resource strings.

Declaration: `procedure SetResourceStrings(SetFunction: TResourceIterator)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetResourceStrings` calls `SetFunction` for all resource strings in the resource string tables and sets the resource string's current value to the value returned by `SetFunction`.

The `Name`, `Value` and `Hash` parameters passed to the iterator function are the values stored in the tables.

Errors: None.



See also: [GetResourceStringCurrentValue \(734\)](#), [GetResourceStringDefaultValue \(735\)](#), [GetResourceStringHash \(736\)](#), [GetResourceStringName \(736\)](#), [ResourceStringTableCount \(739\)](#), [ResourceStringCount \(739\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex95.pp

---

**Program** Example95;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SetResourceStrings function. }
{$Mode objfpc}

ResourceString

    First  = 'First string';
    Second = 'Second String';

Var I,J : Longint;
    S : AnsiString;

Function Translate (Name, Value : AnsiString; Hash : longint): AnsiString;

begin
    Writeln ( 'Translate ( ', Name, ') => ', Value);
    Write   ( '→');
    Readln  ( Result);
end;

begin
    SetResourceStrings (@Translate);
    Writeln ( 'Translated strings : ');
    For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
        For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(i)-1 do
            begin
                Writeln ( GetResourceStringDefaultValue(I,J));
                Writeln ( 'Translates to : ');
                Writeln ( GetResourceStringCurrentValue(I,J));
            end;
        end;
    end.
```

---

### 21.3.14 SetResourceStringValue

Synopsis: Set value of a resource string

Declaration: `function SetResourceStringValue(TableIndex: LongInt;  
StringIndex: LongInt; Value: Ansistring)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: SetResourceStringValue assigns Value to the resource string in table TableIndex with index StringIndex.

Errors:

See also: [SetResourceStrings \(739\)](#), [GetResourceStringCurrentValue \(734\)](#), [GetResourceStringDefaultValue \(735\)](#), [GetResourceStringHash \(736\)](#), [GetResourceStringName \(736\)](#), [ResourceStringTableCount \(739\)](#), [ResourceStringCount \(739\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex94.pp

**Program** Example94;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SetResourceStringValue function. }
{$Mode Delphi}
```

ResourceString

```
First  = 'First string';
Second = 'Second String';
```

```
Var I,J : Longint;
    S : AnsiString;
```

**begin**

```
  { Print current values of all resourcestrings }
  For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
    For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(i)-1 do
      begin
        Writeln ( 'Translate => ',GetResourceStringDefaultValue(I,J));
        Write   ( '→');
        Readln(S);
        SetResourceStringValue(I,J,S);
      end;
  Writeln ( 'Translated strings : ');
  For I:=0 to ResourceStringTableCount-1 do
    For J:=0 to ResourceStringCount(i)-1 do
      begin
        Writeln ( GetResourceStringDefaultValue(I,J));
        Writeln ( 'Translates to : ');
        Writeln ( GetResourceStringCurrentValue(I,J));
      end;
```

**end.**

## Chapter 22

# Reference for unit 'oldlinux'

### 22.1 Utility routines

Auxiliary functions that are useful in connection with the other functions.

Table 22.1:

Name	Description
CreateShellArgV (803)	Create an array of pchars from string
EpochToLocal (806)	Convert epoch time to local time
FD_Clr (817)	Clear item of select filedescriptors
FD_IsSet (817)	Check item of select filedescriptors
FD_Set (817)	Set item of select filedescriptors
FD_ZERO (818)	Clear all items in select filedcriptors
LocalToEpoch (836)	Convert local time to epoch time
MMap (839)	Map a file into memory
MUnMap (840)	Unmap previously mapped memory file
Octal (842)	Convert octal to digital
S_ISBLK (858)	Check file mode for block device
S_ISCHR (859)	Check file mode for character device
S_ISDIR (859)	Check file mode for directory
S_ISFIFO (859)	Check file mode for FIFO
S_ISLNK (859)	Check file mode for symboloc link
S_ISREG (860)	Check file mode for regular file
S_ISSOCK (860)	Check file mode for socket
StringToPPchar (855)	Create an array of pchars from string

### 22.2 Terminal functions

Functions for controlling the terminal to which the process is connected.

### 22.3 System information

Functions for retrieving system information such as date and time.

Table 22.2:

Name	Description
CFMakeRaw (798)	Set terminal to raw mode
CFSetISpeed (798)	Set terminal reading speed
CFSetOSpeed (798)	Set terminal writing speed
IOCtl (833)	General IO control call
IsATTY (835)	See if filedescriptor is a terminal
TCDrain (861)	Wait till all output was written
TCFlow (861)	Suspend transmission or receipt of data
TCFlush (861)	Discard data written to terminal
TCGetAttr (862)	Get terminal attributes
TCGetPGrp (862)	Return PID of foreground process
TCSendBreak (863)	Send data for specific time
TCSetAttr (863)	Set terminal attributes
TCSetPGrp (864)	Set foreground process
TTYName (864)	Name of tty file

Table 22.3:

Name	Description
GetDate (824)	Return system date
GetDateTime (824)	Return system date and time
GetDomainName (825)	Return system domain name
GetEpochTime (826)	Return epoch time
GetHostName (828)	Return system host name
GetLocalTimezone (829)	Return system timezone
GetTime (831)	Return system time
GetTimeOfDay (831)	Return system time
GetTimezoneFile (832)	Return name of timezone file
ReadTimezoneFile (847)	Read timezone file contents
SysInfo (857)	Return general system information
Uname (865)	Return system information

## 22.4 Signals

Functions for managing and responding to signals.

## 22.5 Process handling

Functions for managing processes and programs.

## 22.6 Directory handling routines

Functions for reading and searching directories.

Table 22.4:

Name	Description
Alarm (794)	Send alarm signal to self
Kill (835)	Send arbitrary signal to process
pause (844)	Wait for signal to arrive
SigAction (851)	Set signal action
Signal (852)	Set signal action
SigPending (853)	See if signals are waiting
SigProcMask (853)	Set signal processing mask
SigRaise (854)	Send signal to self
SigSuspend (855)	Sets signal mask and waits for signal
NanoSleep (841)	Waits for a specific amount of time

## 22.7 Pipes, FIFOs and streams

Functions for creating and managing pipes.

## 22.8 General File handling routines

Functions for handling files on disk.

## 22.9 File Input/Output routines

Functions for handling file input/output.

## 22.10 Overview

This document describes the LINUX unit for Free Pascal. The unit was written by Michael van Canneyt. It works only on the Linux/BSD operating systems.

## 22.11 Constants, types and variables

### 22.11.1 Constants

B0 = \$00000000

B110 = \$00000003

B115200 = \$0001002

B1200 = \$00000009

Table 22.5:

Name	Description
Clone (801)	Create a thread
Execl (807)	Execute process with command-line list
Execle (808)	Execute process with command-line list and environment
Execlp (808)	Search in path and execute process with command list
Execv (809)	Execute process
Execve (810)	Execute process with environment
Execvp (811)	Search in path and execute process
Fork (820)	Spawn child process
GetEGid (825)	Get effective group id
GetEnv (826)	Get environment variable
GetEUid (827)	Get effective user id
GetGid (828)	Get group id
GetPid (829)	Get process id
GetPPid (830)	Get parent process id
GetPriority (830)	Get process priority
GetUid (832)	Get user id
Nice (842)	Change priority of process
SetPriority (850)	Change priority of process
Shell (850)	Execute shell command
WaitPid (867)	Wait for child process to terminate

Table 22.6:

Name	Description
CloseDir (803)	Close directory handle
Glob (832)	Return files matching a search expression
GlobFree (833)	Free result of Glob
OpenDir (843)	Open directory for reading
ReadDir (845)	Read directory entry
SeekDir (847)	Seek directory
TellDir (864)	Seek directory

B134 = \$0000004

B150 = \$0000005

B1800 = \$000000A

B19200 = \$000000E

B200 = \$0000006

B230400 = \$0001003

Table 22.7:

Name	Description
AssignPipe (795)	Create a pipe
AssignStream (796)	Create pipes to program's input and output
MkFifo (839)	Make a fifo
PClose (844)	Close a pipe
POpen (844)	Open a pipe for to program's input or output

Table 22.8:

Name	Description
Access (793)	Check access rights on file
BaseName (797)	Return name part of file
Chown (800)	Change owner of file
Chmod (799)	Change access rights on file
DirName (804)	Return directory part of file
FSplit (821)	Split filename in parts
FExpand (818)	Return full-grown filename
FLock (818)	Set lock on a file
FNMatch (819)	Match filename to searchpattern
FSearch (821)	Search for a file in a path
FStat (822)	Return filesystem information
FStat (823)	Return file information
FRename (820)	Rename file
LStat (837)	Return information on a link
Link (835)	Create a link
ReadLink (846)	Read contents of a symbolic link
SymLink (856)	Create a symbolic link
Umask (865)	Set the file creation mask
UnLink (865)	Remove a file
Utime (866)	Change file timestamps

B2400 = \$000000B

B300 = \$0000007

B38400 = \$000000F

B460800 = \$0001004

B4800 = \$000000C

B50 = \$0000001

B57600 = \$0001001

Table 22.9:

Name	Description
Dup (805)	Duplicate a file handle
Dup2 (805)	Copy one file handle to another
Fcntl (812)	General file control
fdClose (813)	Close file descriptor
fdFlush (813)	Flush file descriptor
fdOpen (814)	Open new file descriptor
fdRead (815)	Read from file descriptor
fdSeek (816)	Position in file
fdTruncate (816)	Truncate file
fdWrite (817)	Write to file descriptor
GetFS (827)	Get file descriptor of pascal file
Select (847)	Wait for input from file descriptor
SelectText (849)	Wait for input from pascal file

B600 = \$0000008

B75 = \$0000002

B9600 = \$000000D

BRKINT = \$0000002

BS0 = \$0000000

BS1 = \$0002000

BSDLY = \$0002000

CBAUD = \$000100F

CBAUDEX = \$0001000

CIBAUD = \$100F0000

CLOCAL = \$0000800

CLONE\_FILES = \$00000400

Clone (801) option: open files shared between processes



CLONE\_FS = \$00000200

Clone (801) option: fs info shared between processes

CLONE\_PID = \$00001000

Clone (801) option: PID shared between processes

CLONE\_SIGHAND = \$00000800

Clone (801) option: signal handlers shared between processes

CLONE\_VM = \$00000100

Clone (801) option: VM shared between processes

CMSPAR = \$40000000

CR0 = \$00000000

CR1 = \$0000200

CR2 = \$0000400

CR3 = \$0000600

CRDLY = \$0000600

CREAD = \$0000080

CRTSCTS = \$80000000

CS5 = \$0000000

CS6 = \$0000010

CS7 = \$0000020

CS8 = \$0000030

CSIGNAL = \$000000ff

Clone (801) option: Signal mask to be sent at exit

CSize = \$0000030

CStopB = \$0000040

ECHO = \$0000008

ECHOCTL = \$0000200

ECHOE = \$0000010

ECHOK = \$0000020

ECHOKe = \$0000800

ECHONL = \$0000040

ECHOPRT = \$0000400

EXTA = B19200

EXTB = B38400

FF0 = \$0000000

FF1 = \$0008000

FFDLY = \$0008000

FIOASYNC = \$5452

FIOCLEX = \$5451

FIONBIO = \$5421

FIONCLEX = \$5450

FIONREAD = \$541B

FLUSHO = \$0001000

fs\_ext = \$137d

File system type (FSStat (822)): (ext) Extended

fs\_ext2 = \$ef53

File system type (FSStat (822)): (ext2) Second extended

fs\_iso = \$9660

File system type (FSStat (822)): ISO 9660

fs\_minix = \$137f

File system type (FSStat (822)): Minix

fs\_minix\_30 = \$138f

File system type (FSStat (822)): Minix 3.0

fs\_minux\_V2 = \$2468

File system type (FSStat (822)): Minix V2

fs\_msdos = \$4d44

File system type (FSStat (822)): MSDOS (FAT)

fs\_nfs = \$6969

File system type (FSStat (822)): NFS

fs\_old\_ext2 = \$ef51

File system type (FSStat (822)): (ext2) Old second extended

fs\_proc = \$9fa0

File system type (FSStat (822)): PROC fs

fs\_xia = \$012FD16D

File system type (FSStat (822)): XIA

F\_GetFd = 1

FCntl (812) command: Get close-on-exec flag

F\_GetFl = 3

FCntl (812) command: Get filedescriptor flags

F\_GetLk = 5

FCntl (812) command: Get lock

F\_GetOwn = 9

FCntl (812) command: get owner of filedescriptor events

F\_OK = 0

Access (793) call test: file exists.

F\_SetFd = 2

FCntl (812) command: Set close-on-exec flag

F\_SetFl = 4

FCntl (812) command: Set filedescriptor flags

F\_SetLk = 6

FCntl (812) command: Set lock

F\_SetLkW = 7

FCntl (812) command: Test lock

F\_SetOwn = 8

FCntl (812) command: Set owner of filedescriptor events

HUPCL = \$0000400

ICANON = \$0000002

ICRNL = \$0000100

IEXTEN = \$0008000

IGNBRK = \$0000001

IGNCR = \$0000080

IGNPAR = \$0000004

IMAXBEL = \$0002000

INLCR = \$0000040

INPCK = \$0000010

IOctl\_TCGETS = \$5401

IOCTL call number: get Terminal Control settings

ISIG = \$0000001

ISTRIP = \$0000020

IUCLC = \$0000200

IXANY = \$0000800

IXOFF = \$0001000

IXON = \$0000400

LOCK\_EX = 2

Flock (818) Exclusive lock

LOCK\_NB = 4

Flock (818) Non-blocking operation

LOCK\_SH = 1

Flock (818) Shared lock

LOCK\_UN = 8

Flock (818) unlock

MAP\_ANONYMOUS = \$20

MMap (839) map type: Don't use a file

MAP\_DENYWRITE = \$800

MMap (839) option: Ignored.

MAP\_EXECUTABLE = \$1000

MMap (839) option: Ignored.

MAP\_FIXED = \$10

MMap (839) map type: Interpret addr exactly

MAP\_GROWSDOWN = \$100

MMap (839) option: Memory grows downward (like a stack)

MAP\_LOCKED = \$2000

MMap (839) option: lock the pages in memory.

MAP\_NORESERVE = \$4000

MMap (839) option: Do not reserve swap pages for this memory.

MAP\_PRIVATE = 2

MMap (839) map type: Changes are private

MAP\_SHARED = \$1

MMap (839) map type: Share changes

MAP\_TYPE = \$f

MMap (839) map type: Bitmask for type of mapping

MINSIGSTKSZ = 2048

NCC = 8

Number of control characters in termio (789) record.

NCCS = 32

Number of control characters in termios (790) record.

NL0 = \$0000000

NL1 = \$0000100

NLDLY = \$0000100

NOFLSH = \$0000080

OCRNL = \$0000008

OFDEL = \$0000080

OFILL = \$0000040

OLCUC = \$0000002

ONLCR = \$0000004

ONLRET = \$0000020

ONOCR = \$0000010

Open\_Accmode = 3

Bitmask to determine access mode in open flags.

Open\_Append = 2 shl 9

File open mode: Append to file

Open\_Creat = 1 shl 6

File open mode: Create if file does not yet exist.

Open\_Direct = 4 shl 12

File open mode: Minimize caching effects

Open\_Directory = 2 shl 15

File open mode: File must be directory.

Open\_Excl = 2 shl 6

File open mode: Open exclusively

`Open_LargeFile = 1 shl 15`

File open mode: Open for 64-bit I/O

`Open_NDelay = Open_NonBlock`

File open mode: Alias for `Open_NonBlock` (755)

`Open_NoCtty = 4 shl 6`

File open mode: No TTY control.

`Open_NoFollow = 4 shl 15`

File open mode: Fail if file is symbolic link.

`Open_NonBlock = 4 shl 9`

File open mode: Open in non-blocking mode

`Open_RdOnly = 0`

File open mode: Read only

`Open_RdWr = 2`

File open mode: Read/Write

`Open_Sync = 1 shl 12`

File open mode: Write to disc at once

`Open_Trunc = 1 shl 9`

File open mode: Truncate file to length 0

`Open_WrOnly = 1`

File open mode: Write only

`OPOST = $0000001`

`PARENB = $0000100`

`PARMRK = $0000008`

`PARODD = $0000200`



PENDIN = \$0004000

Prio\_PGrp = 1

Get/set process group priority

Prio\_Process = 0

Get/Set process priority

Prio\_User = 2

Get/set user priority

PROT\_EXEC = \$4

MMap (839) memory access: page can be executed

PROT\_NONE = \$0

MMap (839) memory access: page can not be accessed

PROT\_READ = \$1

MMap (839) memory access: page can be read

PROT\_WRITE = \$2

MMap (839) memory access: page can be written

P\_IN = 1

Input file descriptor of pipe pair.

P\_OUT = 2

Output file descriptor of pipe pair.

R\_OK = 4

Access (793) call test: read allowed

SA\_INTERRUPT = \$20000000

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_NOCLDSTOP = 1

Sigaction options: Do not receive notification when child processes stop

SA\_NOMASK = \$40000000

Sigaction options: Do not prevent the signal from being received when it is handled.

SA\_ONESHOT = \$80000000

Sigaction options: Restore the signal action to the default state.

SA\_ONSTACK = SA\_STACK

Socket option

SA\_RESTART = \$10000000

Sigaction options: Provide behaviour compatible with BSD signal semantics

SA\_SHIRQ = \$04000000

Sigaction options: ?

SA\_STACK = \$08000000

Sigaction options: Call the signal handler on an alternate signal stack.

Seek\_Cur = 1

Seek option: Set position relative to current position.

Seek\_End = 2

Seek option: Set position relative to end of file.

Seek\_set = 0

Seek option: Set absolute position.

SIGABRT = 6

Signal: ABRT (Abort)

SIGALRM = 14

Signal: ALRM (Alarm clock)

SIGBUS = 7

Signal: BUS (bus error)

SIGCHLD = 17

Signal: CHLD (child status changed)

SIGCONT = 18

Signal: CONT (Continue)

SIGFPE = 8

Signal: FPE (Floating point error)

SIGHUP = 1

Signal: HUP (Hangup)

SIGILL = 4

Signal: ILL (Illegal instruction)

SIGINT = 2

Signal: INT (Interrupt)

SIGIO = 29

Signal: IO (I/O operation possible)

SIGIOT = 6

Signal: IOT (IOT trap)

SIGKILL = 9

Signal: KILL (unblockable)

SIGPIPE = 13

Signal: PIPE (Broken pipe)

SIGPOLL = SIGIO

Signal: POLL (Pollable event)

SIGPROF = 27

Signal: PROF (Profiling alarm)

SIGPWR = 30

Signal: PWR (power failure restart)

SIGQUIT = 3

Signal: QUIT

SIGSEGV = 11

Signal: SEGV (Segmentation violation)

SIGSTKFLT = 16

Signal: STKFLT (Stack Fault)

SIGSTKSZ = 8192

Signal Stack size error

SIGSTOP = 19

Signal: STOP (Stop, unblockable)

SIGTerm = 15

Signal: TERM (Terminate)

SIGTRAP = 5

Signal: TRAP (Trace trap)

SIGTSTP = 20

Signal: TSTP (keyboard stop)

SIGTTIN = 21

Signal: TTIN (Terminal input, background)

SIGTTOU = 22

Signal: TTOU (Terminal output, background)

SIGUNUSED = 31

Signal: Unused

SIGURG = 23

Signal: URG (Socket urgent condition)

SIGUSR1 = 10

Signal: USR1 (User-defined signal 1)

SIGUSR2 = 12

Signal: USR2 (User-defined signal 2)

SIGVTALRM = 26

Signal: VTALRM (Virtual alarm clock)

SIGWINCH = 28

Signal: WINCH (Window/Terminal size change)

SIGXCPU = 24

Signal: XCPU (CPU limit exceeded)

SIGXFSZ = 25

Signal: XFSZ (File size limit exceeded)

SIG\_BLOCK = 0

Sigprocmask flags: Add signals to the set of blocked signals.

SIG\_DFL = 0

Signal handler: Default signal handler

SIG\_ERR = -1

Signal handler: error

SIG\_IGN = 1

Signal handler: Ignore signal

SIG\_SETMASK = 2

Sigprocmask flags: Set of blocked signals is given.

SIG\_UNBLOCK = 1

Sigprocmask flags: Remove signals from the set set of blocked signals.

SI\_PAD\_SIZE = ( ( 128 / sizeof ( longint ) ) - 3 )

Signal information record pad bytes size. Do not use.

SS\_DISABLE = 2

Socket options

SS\_ONSTACK = 1

Socket options

STAT\_IFBLK = \$6000

File (stat (788) record) mode: Block device

STAT\_IFCHR = \$2000

File (stat (788) record) mode: Character device

STAT\_IFDIR = \$4000

File (stat (788) record) mode: Directory

STAT\_IFIFO = \$1000

File (stat (788) record) mode: FIFO

STAT\_IFLNK = \$a000

File (stat (788) record) mode: Link

STAT\_IFMT = \$f000

File (stat (788) record) mode: File type bit mask

STAT\_IFREG = \$8000

File (stat (788) record) mode: Regular file

STAT\_IFSOCK = \$c000

File (stat (788) record) mode: Socket

STAT\_IRGRP = STAT\_IROTH shl 3

File (stat (788) record) mode: Group read permission

STAT\_IROTH = \$4

File (stat (788) record) mode: Other read permission

STAT\_IRUSR = STAT\_IROTH shl 6

File (stat (788) record) mode: Owner read permission

STAT\_IRWXG = STAT\_IRWXO shl 3

File (stat (788) record) mode: Group permission bits mask

STAT\_IRWXO = \$7

File (stat (788) record) mode: Other permission bits mask

`STAT_IRWXU = STAT_IRWXO shl 6`

File (stat (788) record) mode: Owner permission bits mask

`STAT_ISGID = $0400`

File (stat (788) record) mode: GID bit set

`STAT_ISUID = $0800`

File (stat (788) record) mode: UID bit set

`STAT_ISVTX = $0200`

File (stat (788) record) mode: Sticky bit set

`STAT_IWGRP = STAT_IWOTH shl 3`

File (stat (788) record) mode: Group write permission

`STAT_IWOTH = $2`

File (stat (788) record) mode: Other write permission

`STAT_IWUSR = STAT_IWOTH shl 6`

File (stat (788) record) mode: Owner write permission

`STAT_IXGRP = STAT_IXOTH shl 3`

File (stat (788) record) mode: Others execute permission

`STAT_IXOTH = $1`

File (stat (788) record) mode: Others execute permission

`STAT_IXUSR = STAT_IXOTH shl 6`

File (stat (788) record) mode: Others execute permission

`syscall_nr_access = 33`

`syscall_nr_acct = 51`

`syscall_nr_adjtimex = 124`

`syscall_nr_afs_syscall = 137`

`syscall_nr_alarm = 27`

`syscall_nr_bdflush = 134`

`syscall_nr_break = 17`

`syscall_nr_brk = 45`

`syscall_nr_chdir = 12`

`syscall_nr_chmod = 15`

`syscall_nr_chown = 16`

`syscall_nr_chroot = 61`

`syscall_nr_clone = 120`

`syscall_nr_close = 6`

`syscall_nr_creat = 8`

`syscall_nr_create_module = 127`

`syscall_nr_delete_module = 129`

`syscall_nr_dup = 41`

`syscall_nr_dup2 = 63`

`syscall_nr_execve = 11`

`syscall_nr_exit = 1`

`syscall_nr_fchdir = 133`

`syscall_nr_fchmod = 94`



`syscall_nr_fchown = 95`

`syscall_nr_fcntl = 55`

`syscall_nr_fdatasync = 148`

`syscall_nr_flock = 143`

`syscall_nr_fork = 2`

`syscall_nr_fstat = 108`

`syscall_nr_fstatfs = 100`

`syscall_nr_fsync = 118`

`syscall_nr_ftime = 35`

`syscall_nr_ftruncate = 93`

`syscall_nr_getdents = 141`

`syscall_nr_getegid = 50`

`syscall_nr_geteuid = 49`

`syscall_nr_getgid = 47`

`syscall_nr_getgroups = 80`

`syscall_nr_getitimer = 105`

`syscall_nr_getpgid = 132`

`syscall_nr_getpgrp = 65`

`syscall_nr_getpid = 20`

syscall\_nr\_getppid = 64

syscall\_nr\_getpriority = 96

syscall\_nr\_getresuid = 165

syscall\_nr\_getrlimit = 76

syscall\_nr\_getrusage = 77

syscall\_nr\_getsid = 147

syscall\_nr\_gettimeofday = 78

syscall\_nr\_getuid = 24

syscall\_nr\_get\_kernel\_syms = 130

syscall\_nr\_gtty = 32

syscall\_nr\_idle = 112

syscall\_nr\_init\_module = 128

syscall\_nr\_ioctl = 54

syscall\_nr\_ioperm = 101

syscall\_nr\_iopl = 110

syscall\_nr\_ipc = 117

syscall\_nr\_kill = 37

syscall\_nr\_link = 9

syscall\_nr\_lock = 53

`syscall_nr_lseek` = 19

`syscall_nr_lstat` = 107

`syscall_nr_mkdir` = 39

`syscall_nr_mknod` = 14

`syscall_nr_mlock` = 150

`syscall_nr_mlockall` = 152

`syscall_nr_mmap` = 90

`syscall_nr_modify_ldt` = 123

`syscall_nr_mount` = 21

`syscall_nr_mprotect` = 125

`syscall_nr_mpx` = 56

`syscall_nr_mremap` = 163

`syscall_nr_msync` = 144

`syscall_nr_munlock` = 151

`syscall_nr_munlockall` = 153

`syscall_nr_munmap` = 91

`syscall_nr_nanosleep` = 162

`syscall_nr_nice` = 34

`syscall_nr_oldfstat` = 28

```
syscall_nr_oldlstat = 84

syscall_nr_oldolduname = 59

syscall_nr_oldstat = 18

syscall_nr_olduname = 109

syscall_nr_open = 5

syscall_nr_pause = 29

syscall_nr_personality = 136

syscall_nr_phys = 52

syscall_nr_pipe = 42

syscall_nr_poll = 168

syscall_nr_prof = 44

syscall_nr_profil = 98

syscall_nr_ptrace = 26

syscall_nr_query_module = 167

syscall_nr_quotactl = 131

syscall_nr_read = 3

syscall_nr_readdir = 89

syscall_nr_readlink = 85

syscall_nr_readv = 145
```

syscall\_nr\_reboot = 88

syscall\_nr\_rename = 38

syscall\_nr\_rmdir = 40

syscall\_nr\_sched\_getparam = 155

syscall\_nr\_sched\_getscheduler = 157

syscall\_nr\_sched\_get\_priority\_max = 159

syscall\_nr\_sched\_get\_priority\_min = 160

syscall\_nr\_sched\_rr\_get\_interval = 161

syscall\_nr\_sched\_setparam = 154

syscall\_nr\_sched\_setscheduler = 156

syscall\_nr\_sched\_yield = 158

syscall\_nr\_select = 82

syscall\_nr\_setdomainname = 121

syscall\_nr\_setfsgid = 139

syscall\_nr\_setfsuid = 138

syscall\_nr\_setgid = 46

syscall\_nr\_setgroups = 81

syscall\_nr\_sethostname = 74

syscall\_nr\_setitimer = 104

syscall\_nr\_setpgid = 57

syscall\_nr\_setpriority = 97

syscall\_nr\_setregid = 71

syscall\_nr\_setresuid = 164

syscall\_nr\_setreuid = 70

syscall\_nr\_setrlimit = 75

syscall\_nr\_setsid = 66

syscall\_nr\_settimeofday = 79

syscall\_nr\_setuid = 23

syscall\_nr\_setup = 0

syscall\_nr\_sgetmask = 68

syscall\_nr\_sigaction = 67

syscall\_nr\_sigaltstack = 186

syscall\_nr\_signal = 48

syscall\_nr\_sigpending = 73

syscall\_nr\_sigprocmask = 126

syscall\_nr\_sigreturn = 119

syscall\_nr\_sigsuspend = 72

syscall\_nr\_socketcall = 102

syscall\_nr\_ssetmask = 69

syscall\_nr\_stat = 106

syscall\_nr\_statfs = 99

syscall\_nr\_stime = 25

syscall\_nr\_stty = 31

syscall\_nr\_swapoff = 115

syscall\_nr\_swapon = 87

syscall\_nr\_symlink = 83

syscall\_nr\_sync = 36

syscall\_nr\_sysfs = 135

syscall\_nr\_sysinfo = 116

syscall\_nr\_syslog = 103

syscall\_nr\_time = 13

syscall\_nr\_times = 43

syscall\_nr\_truncate = 92

syscall\_nr\_ulimit = 58

syscall\_nr\_umask = 60

syscall\_nr\_umount = 22

syscall\_nr\_uname = 122

syscall\_nr\_unlink = 10

syscall\_nr\_uselib = 86

syscall\_nr\_ustat = 62

syscall\_nr\_utime = 30

syscall\_nr\_vhangup = 111

syscall\_nr\_vm86 = 166

syscall\_nr\_vm86old = 113

syscall\_nr\_wait4 = 114

syscall\_nr\_waitpid = 7

syscall\_nr\_write = 4

syscall\_nr\_writev = 146

syscall\_nr\_\_llseek = 140

syscall\_nr\_\_newselect = 142

syscall\_nr\_\_sysctl = 149

Sys\_E2BIG = 7

Sys\_EACCES = 13

Sys\_EADDRINUSE = 98

Sys\_EADDRNOTAVAIL = 99

Sys\_EADV = 68



Sys\_EAFNOSUPPORT = 97

Sys\_EAGAIN = 11

Sys\_EALREADY = 114

Sys\_EBADE = 52

Sys\_EBADF = 9

Sys\_EBADFD = 77

Sys\_EBADMSG = 74

Sys\_EBADR = 53

Sys\_EBADRQC = 56

Sys\_EBADSLT = 57

Sys\_EBFONT = 59

Sys\_EBUSY = 16

Sys\_ECHILD = 10

Sys\_ECHRNG = 44

Sys\_ECOMM = 70

Sys\_ECONNABORTED = 103

Sys\_ECONNREFUSED = 111

Sys\_ECONNRESET = 104

Sys\_EDEADLK = 35

Sys\_EDEADLOCK = 58

Sys\_EDESTADDRREQ = 89

Sys\_EDOM = 33

Sys\_EDOTDOT = 73

Sys\_EDQUOT = 122

Sys\_EEXIST = 17

Sys\_EFAULT = 14

Sys\_EFBIG = 27

Sys\_EHOSTDOWN = 112

Sys\_EHOSTUNREACH = 113

Sys\_EIDRM = 43

Sys\_EILSEQ = 84

Sys\_EINPROGRESS = 115

Sys\_EINTR = 4

Sys\_EINVAL = 22

Sys\_EIO = 5

Sys\_EISCONN = 106

Sys\_EISDIR = 21

Sys\_EISNAM = 120

Sys\_EL2HLT = 51

Sys\_EL2NSYNC = 45

Sys\_EL3HLT = 46

Sys\_EL3RST = 47

Sys\_ELIBACC = 79

Sys\_ELIBBAD = 80

Sys\_ELIBEXEC = 83

Sys\_ELIBMAX = 82

Sys\_ELIBSCN = 81

Sys\_ELN RNG = 48

Sys\_ELOOP = 40

Sys\_EMFILE = 24

Sys\_EMLINK = 31

Sys\_MSGSIZE = 90

Sys\_EMULTIHOP = 72

Sys\_ENAMETOOLONG = 36

Sys\_ENAVAIL = 119

Sys\_ENETDOWN = 100

Sys\_ENETRESET = 102

Sys\_ENETUNREACH = 101

Sys\_ENFILE = 23

Sys\_ENOANO = 55

Sys\_ENOBUFS = 105

Sys\_ENOCSI = 50

Sys\_ENODATA = 61

Sys\_ENODEV = 19

Sys\_ENOENT = 2

Sys\_ENOEXEC = 8

Sys\_ENOLCK = 37

Sys\_ENOLINK = 67

Sys\_ENOMEM = 12

Sys\_ENOMSG = 42

Sys\_ENONET = 64

Sys\_ENOPKG = 65

Sys\_ENOPROTOOPT = 92

Sys\_ENOSPC = 28

Sys\_ENOSR = 63

Sys\_ENOSTR = 60

Sys\_ENOSYS = 38

Sys\_ENOTBLK = 15

Sys\_ENOTCONN = 107

Sys\_ENOTDIR = 20

Sys\_ENOTEMPTY = 39

Sys\_ENOTNAM = 118

Sys\_ENOTSOCK = 88

Sys\_ENOTTY = 25

Sys\_ENOTUNIQ = 76

Sys\_ENXIO = 6

Sys\_EOPNOTSUPP = 95

Sys\_EOVERFLOW = 75

Sys\_EPERM = 1

Sys\_EPFNOSUPPORT = 96

Sys\_EPIPE = 32

Sys\_EPROTO = 71

Sys\_EPROTONOSUPPORT = 93

Sys\_EPROTOTYPE = 91

Sys\_ERANGE = 34

Sys\_EREMCHG = 78

Sys\_EREMOTE = 66

Sys\_EREMOTEIO = 121

Sys\_ERESTART = 85

Sys\_EROFS = 30

Sys\_ERROR\_MAX = \$fff

Sys\_ESHUTDOWN = 108

Sys\_ESOCKTNOSUPPORT = 94

Sys\_ESPIPE = 29

Sys\_ESRCH = 3

Sys\_ESRMNT = 69

Sys\_ESTALE = 116

Sys ESTRPIPE = 86

Sys\_ETIME = 62

Sys\_ETIMEDOUT = 110

Sys\_ETOOMANYREFS = 109

Sys\_ETXTBSY = 26

Sys\_EUCLEAN = 117

Sys\_EUNATCH = 49

Sys\_EUSERS = 87

Sys\_EWOULDBLOCK = Sys\_EAGAIN

Sys\_EXDEV = 18

Sys\_EXFULL = 54

TAB0 = \$00000000

TAB1 = \$00008000

TAB2 = \$00010000

TAB3 = \$00018000

TABDLY = \$00018000

TCFLSH = \$540B

TCGETA = \$5405

TCGETS = \$5401

TCIFLUSH = 0

TCIOFF = 2

TCIOFLUSH = 2

TCION = 3

TCOFLUSH = 1

TCOOFF = 0

TCOON = 1

TCSADRAIN = 1

TCSAFLUSH = 2

TCSANOW = 0

TCSBRK = \$5409

TCSBRKP = \$5425

TCSETA = \$5406

TCSETAF = \$5408

TCSETAW = \$5407

TCSETS = \$5402

TCSETSF = \$5404

TCSETSW = \$5403

TCXONC = \$540A

TIOCCONS = \$541D

TIOCEXCL = \$540C

TIOCGETD = \$5424

TIOCGICOUNT = \$545D

TIOCGLOCKTRMIOS = \$5456

TIOCGPGRP = \$540F

TIOCGSERIAL = \$541E



TIOCGSOFTCAR = \$5419

TIOCGWINSZ = \$5413

TIOCINQ = FIONREAD

TIOCLINUX = \$541C

TIOCMBIC = \$5417

TIOCMBIS = \$5416

TIOCMGET = \$5415

TIOCMWAIT = \$545C

TIOCMSET = \$5418

TIOCM\_CAR = \$040

TIOCM\_CD = TIOCM\_CAR

TIOCM\_CTS = \$020

TIOCM\_DSR = \$100

TIOCM\_DTR = \$002

TIOCM\_LE = \$001

TIOCM\_OUT1 = \$2000

TIOCM\_OUT2 = \$4000

TIOCM\_RI = TIOCM\_RNG

TIOCM\_RNG = \$080

TIOCM\_RTS = \$004

TIOCM\_SR = \$010

TIOCM\_ST = \$008

TIOCNOTTY = \$5422

TIOCNXCL = \$540D

TIOCOUTQ = \$5411

TIOCPKT = \$5420

TIOCPKT\_DATA = 0

TIOCPKT\_DOSTOP = 32

TIOCPKT\_FLUSHREAD = 1

TIOCPKT\_FLUSHWRITE = 2

TIOCPKT\_NOSTOP = 16

TIOCPKT\_START = 8

TIOCPKT\_STOP = 4

TIOCSCTTY = \$540E

TIOCSERCONFIG = \$5453

TIOCSERGETLSR = \$5459

TIOCSERGETMULTI = \$545A

TIOCSERGSTRUCT = \$5458

TIOCSERGWILD = \$5454

TIOCSERSETMULTI = \$545B

TIOCSERSWILD = \$5455

TIOCSETD = \$5423

TIOCSLCKTRMIOS = \$5457

TIOCSPPGRP = \$5410

TIOCSSERIAL = \$541F

TIOCSSOFTCAR = \$541A

TIOCSTI = \$5412

TIOCSWINSZ = \$5414

TIOCTTYGSTRUCT = \$5426

TOSTOP = \$0000100

VDISCARD = 13

VEOF = 4

VEOL = 11

VEOL2 = 16

VERASE = 2

VINTR = 0

VKILL = 3

VLNEXT = 15

VMIN = 6

VQUIT = 1

VREPRINT = 12

VSTART = 8

VSTOP = 9

VSUSP = 10

VSWTC = 7

VT0 = \$00000000

VT1 = \$0004000

VTDLY = \$0004000

VTIME = 5

VWERASE = 14

Wait\_Any = -1

WaitPID (867): Wait on any process

Wait\_Clone = \$80000000

WaitPID (867): Wait on clone processes only.

Wait\_MyPGRP = 0

WaitPID (867): Wait processes from current process group

Wait\_NoHang = 1

WaitPID (867): Do not wait

Wait\_UnTraced = 2

WaitPID (867): Also report stopped but untraced processes

WNOHANG = \$1

Waitpid (867) option: Do not wait for processes to terminate.

WUNTRACED = \$2

Waitpid (867) option: Also report children which were stopped but not yet reported

W\_OK = 2

Access (793) call test: write allowed

XCASE = \$00000004

XTABS = \$0001800

X\_OK = 1

Access (793) call test: execute allowed

\_\_WCLONE = \$80000000

Waitpid option: Wait for clone children only

### 22.11.2 Types

ComStr =

Command-line string type.

dev\_t = Word

Device descriptor type

```
dirent = packed record
  ino : LongInt;
  off : LongInt;
  reclen : Word;
  name : Array[0..255] of Char;
end
```

Record used in the ReadDir (845) function to return files in a directory.

DirStr =

Filename directory part string type.

ExtStr =

Filename extension part string type.

fdSet = Array[0..7] of LongInt

Array containing file descriptor bitmask for the Select (847) call.

NameStr =

Filename name part string type.

PathStr =

Filename path part string type.

PDir = ^TDir

Pointer to TDir (789) record

pdirent = ^dirent

Pointer to Dirent (784) record.

pfdsset = ^fdSet

Pointer to FDSet (817) array.

pfpstate = ^tfpstate

Pointer to tfpstate (790) record.

pglob = ^tglob

Pointer to TGlob (790) record.

PSigActionRec = ^SigActionRec

Pointer to SigActionRec (787) record.

PSigAltStack = ^SigAltStack

Pointer to SigAltStack (787) record

PSigContextRec = ^SigContextRec

Pointer to SigContextRec (787) record

PSignalHandler = ^SignalHandler

Pointer to SignalHandler (787) type.

`PSignalRestorer = ^SignalRestorer`

Pointer to SignalRestorer (787) type

`PSigSet = ^SigSet`

Pointer to signal set.

`pstack_t = ^stack_t`

Pointer to stack\_t (788) record

`PStat = ^Stat`

Pointer to Stat (788) record.

`PStatFS = ^Statfs`

Pointer to StatFS (788) record.

`PSysCallRegs = ^SysCallRegs`

Pointer to SysCallRegs (789) record.

`PSysInfo = ^TSysinfo`

Pointer to TSysInfo (792) record.

`ptimeval = ^timeval`

Pointer to TTimeVal (792) record

`ptimezone = ^timezone`

Pointer to TimeZone (791) record.

`PUTimeBuf = ^UTimeBuf`

Pointer to UTimeBuf (792) record

`PUTSName = ^utsname`

Pointer to UTSName (793) record.

```
SigActionRec = packed record
  Handler : record
  end;
  Sa_Mask : SigSet;
  Sa_Flags : LongInt;
  Sa_restorer : SignalRestorer;
end
```

Record used in SigAction (851) call.

```
SigAltStack = record
  ss_sp : pointer;
  ss_flags : LongInt;
  ss_size : Size_T;
end
```

Alternate stack registers record

```
SigContextRec = record
  gs : Word;
  __gsh : Word;
  fs : Word;
  __fsh : Word;
  es : Word;
  __esh : Word;
  ds : Word;
  __dsh : Word;
  edi : cardinal;
  esi : cardinal;
  ebp : cardinal;
  esp : cardinal;
  ebx : cardinal;
  edx : cardinal;
  ecx : cardinal;
  eax : cardinal;
  trapno : cardinal;
  err : cardinal;
  eip : cardinal;
  cs : Word;
  __csh : Word;
  eflags : cardinal;
  esp_at_signal : cardinal;
  ss : Word;
  __ssh : Word;
  fpstate : pfpstate;
  oldmask : cardinal;
  cr2 : cardinal;
end
```

The above records contain information about the processor state and process state at the moment a signal is sent to your program.

```
SignalHandler = procedure(Sig: LongInt)
```

Function prototype for the Signal (852) call.

```
SignalRestorer = procedure
```

Signal restorer function prototype



SigSet = LongInt

Signal set type

Size\_T = cardinal

Size type

stack\_t = SigAltStack

Alias for SigAltStack ([787](#)) type

```
Stat = packed record
  dev : dev_t;
  pad1 : Word;
  ino : LongInt;
  mode : Word;
  nlink : Word;
  uid : Word;
  gid : Word;
  rdev : dev_t;
  pad2 : Word;
  size : LongInt;
  blksize : LongInt;
  blocks : LongInt;
  atime : LongInt;
  unused1 : LongInt;
  mtime : LongInt;
  unused2 : LongInt;
  ctime : LongInt;
  unused3 : LongInt;
  unused4 : LongInt;
  unused5 : LongInt;
end
```

Record describing an inode (file) in the fstat ([823](#)) call.

```
Statfs = packed record
  fstype : LongInt;
  bsize : LongInt;
  blocks : LongInt;
  bfree : LongInt;
  bavail : LongInt;
  files : LongInt;
  ffree : LongInt;
  fsid : LongInt;
  namelen : LongInt;
  spare : Array[0..6] of LongInt;
end
```

Record describing a file system in the fsstat ([822](#)) call.

```

SysCallRegs = record
  reg1 : LongInt;
  reg2 : LongInt;
  reg3 : LongInt;
  reg4 : LongInt;
  reg5 : LongInt;
  reg6 : LongInt;
end

```

Register describing system calls.

```

TCloneFunc = function(args: pointer) : LongInt

```

Clone function prototype.

```

TDir = packed record
  fd : Integer;
  loc : LongInt;
  size : Integer;
  buf : dirent;
  nextoff : LongInt;
  dd_max : Integer;
  lock : pointer;
end

```

Record used in [OpenDir \(843\)](#) and [ReadDir \(845\)](#) calls

```

TDirEnt = dirent

```

Alias for [DirEnt \(784\)](#) record

```

Termio = packed record
  c_iflag : Word;
  c_oflag : Word;
  c_cflag : Word;
  c_lflag : Word;
  c_line : Word;
  c_cc : Array[0..NCC-1] of Char;
end

```

Terminal I/O description record (small)

```

Termios = record
  c_iflag : Cardinal;
  c_oflag : Cardinal;
  c_cflag : Cardinal;
  c_lflag : Cardinal;
  c_line : Char;
  c_cc : Array[0..NCCS-1] of Byte;

```

```

    c_ispeed : LongInt;
    c_ospeed : LongInt;
end

```

Terminal I/O description record

```
TFDSet = fdSet
```

Alias for FDSets (817) type.

```

tfpreg = record
    significand : Array[0..3] of Word;
    exponent : Word;
end

```

Record describing floating point register in signal handler.

```

tfpstate = record
    cw : cardinal;
    sw : cardinal;
    tag : cardinal;
    ipoff : cardinal;
    cssel : cardinal;
    dataoff : cardinal;
    datasel : cardinal;
    st : Array[0..7] of tfpreg;
    status : cardinal;
end

```

Record describing floating point unit in signal handler.

```

tglob = record
    name : pchar;
    next : pglob;
end

```

Record containing one entry in the result of Glob (832)

```

timespec = packed record
    tv_sec : LongInt;
    tv_nsec : LongInt;
end

```

Time interval for the NanoSleep (841) function.

```

timeval = packed record
    sec : LongInt;
    usec : LongInt;
end

```

Record specifying a time interval.

```
timezone = packed record
  minuteswest : LongInt;
  dsttime : LongInt;
end
```

Record describing a timezone

```
tmapargs = record
  address : LongInt;
  size : LongInt;
  prot : LongInt;
  flags : LongInt;
  fd : LongInt;
  offset : LongInt;
end
```

Record containing mmap args.

```
Tpipe = Array[1..2] of LongInt
```

Array describing a pipe pair of filedescriptors.

```
TSigAction = procedure(Sig: LongInt; SigContext: SigContextRec)
```

Function prototype for SigAction (851) call.

```
TStat = Stat
```

Alias for Stat (788) record.

```
TStatFS = Statfs
```

Alias for StatFS (788) type.

```
TSysCallRegs = SysCallRegs
```

Alias for SysCallRegs (789) record

```
TSysinfo = packed record
  uptime : LongInt;
  loads : Array[1..3] of LongInt;
  totalram : LongInt;
  freeram : LongInt;
  sharedram : LongInt;
  bufferram : LongInt;
  totalswap : LongInt;
  freeswap : LongInt;
  procs : Integer;
  s : String;
end
```

Record with system information, used by the SysInfo (857) call.

```
TTermio = Termio
```

Alias for TermIO (789) record

```
TTermios = Termios
```

Alias for Termios (790) record.

```
TTimeVal = timeval
```

Alias for TimeVal (791) record.

```
TTimeZone = timezone
```

Alias for TimeZone (791) record.

```
TUTimeBuf = UTimeBuf
```

Alias for UTimBuf (792) record.

```
TUTSName = utsname
```

Alias for UTSName (793) record.

```
TWinSize = winsize
```

Alias for WinSize (793) record.

```
UTimBuf = packed record
  actime : LongInt;
  modtime : LongInt;
end
```

Record used in Utime (866) to set file access and modification times.

```
UTimeBuf = UTimBuf
```

Alias for UTimBuf (792) record.

```
utsname = packed record
  sysname : Array[0..64] of Char;
  nodename : Array[0..64] of Char;
  release : Array[0..64] of Char;
  version : Array[0..64] of Char;
  machine : Array[0..64] of Char;
  domainname : Array[0..64] of Char;
end
```

The elements of this record are null-terminated C style strings, you cannot access them directly.

```
winsize = packed record
  ws_row : Word;
  ws_col : Word;
  ws_xpixel : Word;
  ws_ypixel : Word;
end
```

Record describing terminal window size.

### 22.11.3 Variables

`ErrNo` : LongInt

Error number of last operation.

`LinuxError` : LongInt

Linuxerror is the variable in which the procedures in the linux unit report errors.

`tzdaylight` : Boolean

Indicates whether daylight savings time is active.

`tzname` : Array[boolean] of pchar

Timezone name.

`tzseconds` : LongInt

Seconds west of GMT

## 22.12 Procedures and functions

### 22.12.1 Access

Synopsis: Check file access

Declaration: `function Access(Path: PathStr; mode: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Access tests user's access rights on the specified file. Mode is a mask existing of one or more of the following:

**R\_OK**User has read rights.

**W\_OK**User has write rights.

**X\_OK**User has execute rights.

**F\_OK**File exists.

The test is done with the real user ID, instead of the effective user ID. If access is denied, or an error occurred, `False` is returned.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors:

**sys\_eaccess** The requested access is denied, either to the file or one of the directories in its path.

**sys\_einval** Mode was incorrect.

**sys\_enoent** A directory component in `Path` doesn't exist or is a dangling symbolic link.

**sys\_enotdir** A directory component in `Path` is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_eloop** `Path` has a circular symbolic link.

See also: `Chown` (800), `Chmod` (799)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** `Example26;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Access function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**begin**

**if** `Access ( '/etc/passwd', W_OK )` **then**

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Better check your system.' );

**WriteLn** ( 'I can write to the /etc/passwd file !' );

**end;**

**end.**

---

## 22.12.2 Alarm

Synopsis: Schedule an alarm signal to be delivered

Declaration: `function Alarm(Sec: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Alarm` schedules an alarm signal to be delivered to your process in `Sec` seconds. When `Sec` seconds have elapsed, Linux will send a `SIGALRM` signal to the current process. If `Sec` is zero, then no new alarm will be set. Whatever the value of `Sec`, any previous alarm is cancelled.

The function returns the number of seconds till the previously scheduled alarm was due to be delivered, or zero if there was none.

See also: `SigAction` (851)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex59.pp`

---

**Program** `Example59;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Alarm function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**Procedure** `AlarmHandler(Sig : longint); cdecl;`

```

begin
  Writeln ( 'Got to alarm handler' );
end;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Setting alarm handler' );
  Signal (SIGALRM, @AlarmHandler);
  Writeln ( 'Scheduling Alarm in 10 seconds' );
  Alarm (10);
  Writeln ( 'Pausing' );
  Pause;
  Writeln ( 'Pause returned' );
end.

```

---

### 22.12.3 AssignPipe

Synopsis: Create a set of pipe file handlers

Declaration: `function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: LongInt; var pipe_out: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: text; var pipe_out: text) : Boolean`  
`function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: file; var pipe_out: file) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignPipe` creates a pipe, i.e. two file objects, one for input, one for output. What is written to `Pipe_out`, can be read from `Pipe_in`.

This call is overloaded. The in and out pipe can take three forms: an typed or untyped file, a text file or a file descriptor.

If a text file is passed then reading and writing from/to the pipe can be done through the usual `Readln(Pipe_in, ...)` and `Writeln(Pipe_out, ...)` procedures.

The function returns `True` if everything went successfully, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case the function fails and returns `False`, `LinuxError` is used to report errors:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: `POpen` ([844](#)), `MkFifo` ([839](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex36.pp`

---

**Program** `Example36`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignPipe function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux`;

**Var** `pipi, pipo : Text`;  
`s : String`;

**begin**  
`Writeln ( 'Assigning Pipes.' );`  
`If Not assignpipe (pipi, pipo) then`



---

```

    Writeln('Error assigning pipes !',LinuxError);
    Writeln ('Writing to pipe, and flushing. ');
    Writeln (pipo,'This is a textstring');close(pipo);
    Writeln ('Reading from pipe. ');
    While not eof(pipi) do
    begin
        Readln (pipi,s);
        Writeln ('Read from pipe : ',s);
    end;
    close (pipi);
    writeln ('Closed pipes. ');
    writeln
end.

```

---

## 22.12.4 AssignStream

Synopsis: Assign stream for in and output to a program

Declaration: `function AssignStream(var StreamIn: text;var Streamout: text; const Prog: String) : LongInt`  
`function AssignStream(var StreamIn: Text;var StreamOut: Text; var StreamErr: Text;const prog: String) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: AssignStream creates a 2 or 3 pipes, i.e. two (or three) file objects, one for input, one for output,(and one for standard error) the other ends of these pipes are connected to standard input and output (and standard error) of Prog. Prog is the name of a program (including path) with options, which will be executed.

What is written to StreamOut, will go to the standard input of Prog. Whatever is written by Prog to it's standard output can be read from StreamIn. Whatever is written by Prog to it's standard error read from StreamErr, if present.

Reading and writing happens through the usual Readln(StreamIn,...) and Writeln (StreamOut,...) procedures.

**Remark:** You should *not* use Reset or Rewrite on a file opened with POpen. This will close the file before re-opening it again, thereby closing the connection with the program.

The function returns the process ID of the spawned process, or -1 in case of error.

Errors: In case of error (return value -1) LinuxError is used to report errors:

**sys\_enfile**Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile**The system file table is full.

Other errors include the ones by the fork and exec programs

See also: AssignPipe ([795](#)), POpen ([844](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex38.pp

---

**Program** Example38;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignStream function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

---

```

Var Si,So : Text;
    S : String;
    i : longint;

begin
  if not (paramstr(1)='-son') then
    begin
      Writeln ('Calling son');
      Assignstream (Si,So,'./ex38 -son');
      if linuxerror<>0 then
        begin
          writeln ('AssignStream failed !');
          halt(1);
        end;
      Writeln ('Speaking to son');
      For i:=1 to 10 do
        begin
          writeln (so,'Hello son !');
          if ioresult<>0 then writeln ('Can't speak to son...');
        end;
      For i:=1 to 3 do writeln (so,'Hello chap !');
      close (so);
      while not eof(si) do
        begin
          readln (si,s);
          writeln ('Father: Son said : ',S);
        end;
      Writeln ('Stopped conversation');
      Close (Si);
      Writeln ('Put down phone');
    end
  Else
    begin
      Writeln ('This is the son ');
      While not eof (input) do
        begin
          readln (s);
          if pos ('Hello son !',S)<>0 then
            Writeln ('Hello Dad !')
          else
            writeln ('Who are you ?');
          end;
        close (output);
      end
    end
end.

```

---

### 22.12.5 Basename

Synopsis: Return basename of a file

Declaration: `function Basename(const path: PathStr;const suf: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the filename part of Path, stripping off Suf if it exists. The filename part is the whole name if Path contains no slash, or the part of Path after the last slash. The last character of the result is not a slash, unless the directory is the root directory.

Errors: None.

See also: [DirName \(804\)](#), [FExpand \(818\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex48.pp

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ Program to demonstrate the BaseName function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** S : **String**;

**begin**

S:=FExpand(**Paramstr**(0));

**WriteLn** ( 'This program is called : ', Basename(S, ' '));

**end.**

---

### 22.12.6 CFMakeRaw

Synopsis: Sets flags in Termios ([790](#)) record.

Declaration: `procedure CFMakeRaw(var tios: Termios)`

Visibility: default

Description: CFMakeRaw sets the flags in the Termios structure Tios to a state so that the terminal will function in Raw Mode.

For an example, see TCGetAttr ([862](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: [CFSetOSpeed \(798\)](#), [CFSetISpeed \(798\)](#)

### 22.12.7 CFSetISpeed

Synopsis: Set input baud rate in Termios ([790](#)) record

Declaration: `procedure CFSetISpeed(var tios: Termios; speed: Cardinal)`

Visibility: default

Description: CFSetISpeed Sets the input baudrate in the TermIOS structure Tios to Speed.

Errors: None.

See also: [CFSetOSpeed \(798\)](#), [CFMakeRaw \(798\)](#)

### 22.12.8 CFSetOSpeed

Synopsis: Set output baud rate in Termios ([790](#)) record

Declaration: `procedure CFSetOSpeed(var tios: Termios; speed: Cardinal)`

Visibility: default

Description: CFSetOSpeed Sets the output baudrate in the Termios structure Tios to Speed.

Errors: None.

See also: CFSetISpeed (798), CFMakeRaw (798)

### 22.12.9 Chmod

Synopsis: Change file permission bits

Declaration: `function Chmod(path: PathStr;Newmode: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Chmod Sets the Mode bits of the file in Path to NewMode. Newmode can be specified by 'or'-ing the following:

**S\_ISUID**Set user ID on execution.

**S\_ISGID**Set Group ID on execution.

**S\_ISVTX**Set sticky bit.

**S\_IRUSR**Read by owner.

**S\_IWUSR**Write by owner.

**S\_IXUSR**Execute by owner.

**S\_IRGRP**Read by group.

**S\_IWGRP**Write by group.

**S\_IXGRP**Execute by group.

**S\_IROTH**Read by others.

**S\_IWOTH**Write by others.

**S\_IXOTH**Execute by others.

**S\_IRWXO**Read, write, execute by others.

**S\_IRWXG**Read, write, execute by groups.

**S\_IRWXU**Read, write, execute by user.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in Path has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in Path does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The file is on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eloop**Path has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: Chown (800), Access (793), Octal (842)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex23.pp

---

```

Program Example23;

{ Program to demonstrate the Chmod function . }

Uses oldlinux;

Var F : Text;

begin
  { Create a file }
  Assign (f, 'testex21');
  Rewrite (F);
  WriteLn (f, '#!/bin/sh');
  WriteLn (f, 'echo Some text for this file');
  Close (F);
  { Octal() makes the correct number from a
    number that LOOKS octal }
  Chmod ('testex21', octal (777));
  { File is now executable }
  execl ( './testex21 ');
end.

```

---

### 22.12.10 Chown

Synopsis: Change owner of file

Declaration: `function Chown(path: PathStr; NewUid: LongInt; NewGid: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Chown sets the User ID and Group ID of the file in Path to NewUid, NewGid The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False if the call failed.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_eperm**The effective UID doesn't match the ownership of the file, and is not zero. Owner or group were not specified correctly.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in Path has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in Path does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**The file is on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eloop**Path has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

See also: Chmod ([799](#)), Access ([793](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex24.pp

---

```

Program Example24;

{ Program to demonstrate the Chown function . }

Uses oldlinux;

```

```

Var UID,GID : Longint;
      F : Text;

begin

  Writeln ('This will only work if you are root. ');
  Write ('Enter a UID : '); readln(UID);
  Write ('Enter a GID : '); readln(GID);
  Assign (f, 'test.txt');
  Rewrite (f);
  Writeln (f, 'The owner of this file should become : ');
  Writeln (f, 'UID : ',UID);
  Writeln (f, 'GID : ',GID);
  Close (F);
  if not Chown ('test.txt',UID,GID) then
    if LinuxError=Sys_EPERM then
      Writeln ('You are not root !')
    else
      Writeln ('Chmod failed with exit code : ',LinuxError)
    else
      Writeln ('Changed owner successfully !');
end.

```

---

### 22.12.11 Clone

Synopsis: Clone current process (create new thread)

Declaration: `function Clone(func: TCloneFunc; sp: pointer; flags: LongInt; args: pointer) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Clone creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process, just like Fork (820) does. In difference with Fork, however, the child process shares some parts of it's execution context with its parent, so it is suitable for the implementation of threads: many instances of a program that share the same memory.

When the child process is created, it starts executing the function Func, and passes it Args. The return value of Func is either the explicit return value of the function, or the exit code of the child process.

The sp pointer points to the memory reserved as stack space for the child process. This address should be the top of the memory block to be used as stack.

The Flags determine the behaviour of the Clone call. The low byte of the Flags contains the number of the signal that will be sent to the parent when the child dies. This may be bitwise OR'ed with the following constants:

**CLONE\_VM**Parent and child share the same memory space, including memory (un)mapped with subsequent mmap calls.

**CLONE\_FS**Parent and child have the same view of the filesystem; the chroot, chdir and umask calls affect both processes.

**CLONE\_FILES**the file descriptor table of parent and child is shared.

**CLONE\_SIGHAND**the parent and child share the same table of signal handlers. The signal masks are different, though.

**CLONE\_PID**Parent and child have the same process ID.

Clone returns the process ID in the parent process, and -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain**Too many processes are running.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: Fork ([820](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex71.pp

---

```

program TestC {lone};

uses
    oldlinux , Errors , crt;

const
    Ready : Boolean = false;
    aChar : Char    = 'a';

function CloneProc( Arg: Pointer ): LongInt; Cdecl;
begin
    WriteLn('Hello from the clone ',PChar(Arg));
    repeat
        Write(aChar);
        Select(0,Nil,Nil,Nil,Nil);
    until Ready;
    WriteLn('Clone finished. ');
    CloneProc := 1;
end;

var
    PID : LongInt;

procedure MainProc;
begin
    WriteLn('cloned process PID: ', PID );
    WriteLn('Press <ESC> to kill ... ');
    repeat
        Write(' ');
        Select(0,Nil,Nil,Nil,Nil);
        if KeyPressed then
            case ReadKey of
                #27: Ready := true;
                'a': aChar := 'A';
                'A': aChar := 'a';
                'b': aChar := 'b';
                'B': aChar := 'B';
            end;
        until Ready;
    WriteLn('Ready. ');
end;

const
    StackSize = 16384;
    theFlags = CLONE_VM+CLONE_FS+CLONE_FILES+CLONE_SIGHAND;

```

---

```

aMsg      : PChar = 'Oops !';

var
  theStack : Pointer;
  ExitStat : LongInt;

begin
  GetMem(theStack, StackSize);
  PID := Clone(@CloneProc,
               Pointer(LongInt(theStack)+StackSize),
               theFlags,
               aMsg);
  if PID < 0 then
    WriteLn('Error : ', LinuxError, ' when cloning.')
  else
    begin
      MainProc;
      case WaitPID(0, @ExitStat, Wait_Untraced or wait_clone) of
        -1: WriteLn('error: ', LinuxError, '; ', StrError(LinuxError));
        0: WriteLn('error: ', LinuxError, '; ', StrError(LinuxError));
      else
        WriteLn('Clone exited with: ', ExitStat shr 8);
      end;
    end;
  FreeMem(theStack, StackSize);
end.

```

---

### 22.12.12 CloseDir

Synopsis: Close directory file descriptor

Declaration: `function CloseDir(p: PDir) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CloseDir` closes the directory pointed to by `p`. It returns zero if the directory was closed successfully, -1 otherwise.

For an example, see `OpenDir` ([843](#)).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `OpenDir` ([843](#)), `ReadDir` ([845](#)), `SeekDir` ([847](#)), `TellDir` ([864](#))

### 22.12.13 CreateShellArgV

Synopsis: Create an array of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function CreateShellArgV(const prog: String) : ppchar`  
`function CreateShellArgV(const prog: Ansistring) : ppchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateShellArgV` creates an array of 3 `PChar` pointers that can be used as arguments to `ExecVE` the first elements in the array will contain `/bin/sh`, the second will contain `-c`, and the third will contain `prog`.

The function returns a pointer to this array, of type `PPChar`.



Errors: None.

See also: Shell ([850](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex61.pp

---

```

Program ex61;

{ Example program to demonstrate the CreateShellArgV function }

uses oldlinux;

Var
  S: String;
  PP : PPchar;
  I : longint;

begin
  S:= 'script -a -b -c -d -e fghijk';
  PP:=CreateShellArgV(S);
  I:=0;
  If PP<>Nil then
    While PP[I]<>Nil do
      begin
        WriteLn ( 'Got : " ',PP[I], ' " ');
        Inc(I);
      end;
    end;
end.

```

---

### 22.12.14 Dirname

Synopsis: Extract directory part from filename

Declaration: `function Dirname(const path: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the directory part of Path. The directory is the part of Path before the last slash, or empty if there is no slash. The last character of the result is not a slash, unless the directory is the root directory.

Errors: None.

See also: BaseName ([797](#)), FExpand ([818](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex47.pp

---

```

Program Example47;

{ Program to demonstrate the DirName function. }

Uses oldlinux;

Var S : String;

begin
  S:=FExpand(Paramstr(0));
  WriteLn ( 'This program is in directory : ',Dirname(S));
end.

```

---

### 22.12.15 Dup

Synopsis: Duplicate a file handle

Declaration: `function Dup(oldfile: LongInt;var newfile: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function Dup(var oldfile: text;var newfile: text) : Boolean`  
`function Dup(var oldfile: file;var newfile: file) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Makes NewFile an exact copy of OldFile, after having flushed the buffer of OldFile in case it is a Text file or untyped file. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, this has not the same functionality as the dup call in C. The internal Pascal buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an lseek will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a lseek will change the fileposition in both files.

The function returns False in case of an error, True if successful.

Errors: In case of errors, Linuxerror is used to report errors.

`sys_ebadf`OldFile hasn't been assigned.

`sys_emfile`Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: Dup2 ([805](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex31.pp

---

**program** Example31;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Dup function. }*

**uses** oldlinux;

**var** f : text;

**begin**

**if not** dup (output,f) **then**

**Writeln** ( 'Dup Failed !');

**writeln** ( 'This is written to stdout.');

**writeln** (f, 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed');**flush**(f);

**writeln**

**end.**

---

### 22.12.16 Dup2

Synopsis: Duplicate one filehandle to another

Declaration: `function Dup2(oldfile: LongInt;newfile: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function Dup2(var oldfile: text;var newfile: text) : Boolean`  
`function Dup2(var oldfile: file;var newfile: file) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Makes NewFile an exact copy of OldFile, after having flushed the buffer of OldFile in the case of text or untyped files.

NewFile can be an assigned file. If newfile was open, it is closed first. Due to the buffering mechanism of Pascal, this has not the same functionality as the dup2 call in C. The internal Pascal

buffers are not the same after this call, but when the buffers are flushed (e.g. after output), the output is sent to the same file. Doing an lseek will, however, work as in C, i.e. doing a lseek will change the fileposition in both files.

The function returns True if succesful, false otherwise.

Errors: In case of error, `Linuxerror` is used to report errors.

**sys\_ebadf**OldFile hasn't been assigned.

**sys\_emfile**Maximum number of open files for the process is reached.

See also: Dup ([805](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex32.pp

---

```

program Example31;

{ Program to demonstrate the Dup function. }

uses oldlinux;

var f : text;
    i : longint;

begin
  Assign (f, 'text.txt');
  Rewrite (F);
  For i:=1 to 10 do writeln (F, 'Line : ', i);
  if not dup2 (output, f) then
    Writeln ( 'Dup2 Failed ! ');
  writeln ( 'This is written to stdout.' );
  writeln (f, 'This is written to the dup file , and flushed');
  flush(f);
  writeln;
  { Remove file . Comment this if you want to check flushing. }
  Unlink ( 'text.txt' );
end.

```

---

### 22.12.17 EpochToLocal

Synopsis: Convert epoch time to local time

Declaration: `procedure EpochToLocal(epoch: LongInt; var year: Word; var month: Word; var day: Word; var hour: Word; var minute: Word; var second: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts the epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00 , January 1, 1970, corrected for your time zone ) to local date and time.

This function takes into account the timzeone settings of your system.

Errors: None

See also: GetEpochTime ([826](#)), LocalToEpoch ([836](#)), GetTime ([831](#)), GetDate ([824](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex3.pp

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ Program to demonstrate the EpochToLocal function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds : Word;

**begin**

EpochToLocal ( GetEpochTime, Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds );

**Writeln** ( 'Current date : ', Day:2, '/', Month:2, '/', Year:4 );

**Writeln** ( 'Current time : ', Hour:2, ': ', minute:2, ': ', seconds:2 );

**end.**

---

### 22.12.18 Exec1

Synopsis: Execute process (using argument list)

Declaration: `procedure Exec1(const Todo: String)`  
`procedure Exec1(const Todo: Ansistring)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. `Path` is split into a command and it's options. The executable in `path` is NOT searched in the `path`. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `exec1` does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `Execve` ([810](#)), `Execv` ([809](#)), `Execvp` ([811](#)), `Execle` ([808](#)), `Execlp` ([808](#)), `Fork` ([820](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex10.pp`

---

**Program** Example10;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Exec1 function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux, strings;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*

*{ 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }*

`Exec1 ( '/bin/ls -l' );`

**end.**

---

### 22.12.19 Execle

Synopsis: Execute process (using argument list, environment)

Declaration: `procedure Execle(Todo: String;Ep: ppchar)`  
`procedure Execle(Todo: AnsiString;Ep: ppchar)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. `Path` is split into a command and it's options. The executable in `path` is searched in the `path`, if it isn't an absolute filename. The environment in `ep` is passed to the program. On success, `execle` does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `Execve` (810), `Execv` (809), `Execvp` (811), `Execl` (807), `Execlp` (808), `Fork` (820)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex11.pp`

---

**Program** `Example11`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execle function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux` , `strings`;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
*{ envp is defined in the system unit. }*  
`Execle ( '/bin/ls -l',envp);`

**end.**

---

### 22.12.20 Execlp

Synopsis: Execute process (using argument list, environment; search path)

Declaration: `procedure Execlp(Todo: String;Ep: ppchar)`  
`procedure Execlp(Todo: AnsiString;Ep: ppchar)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. `Path` is split into a command and it's options. The executable in `path` is searched in the `path`, if it isn't an absolute filename. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execlp` does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.  
**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.  
**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.  
**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.  
**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.  
**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.  
**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.  
**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `Execve` (810), `Execv` (809), `Execvp` (811), `Execle` (808), `Execl` (807), `Fork` (820)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `Example12`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execlp function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux` , `strings`;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
*{ envp is defined in the system unit. }*  
`Execlp ( 'ls -l',envp);`

**end.**

---

## 22.12.21 Execv

Synopsis: Execute process

Declaration: `procedure Execv(const path: PathStr;args: ppchar)`  
`procedure Execv(const path: AnsiString;args: ppchar)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `path`. It gives the program the options in `args`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be `nil`. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execv` does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.  
**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.  
**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.  
**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.  
**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.  
**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir** A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop** The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: [Execve \(810\)](#), [Execvp \(811\)](#), [Execle \(808\)](#), [Execl \(807\)](#), [Execlp \(808\)](#), [Fork \(820\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execv function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux , strings ;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/ls' ;  
           Arg1 : Pchar = '-l' ;

**Var** PP : PPchar ;

**begin**

**GetMem** (PP,3\***SizeOf**(Pchar));

  PP[0]:=Arg0;

  PP[1]:=Arg1;

  PP[3]:=Nil;

*{ Execute '/bin/ls -l', with current environment }*

  Execv ('/bin/ls',pp);

**end.**

---

### 22.12.22 Execve

**Synopsis:** Execute process using environment

**Declaration:** `procedure Execve(Path: PathStr;args: ppchar;ep: ppchar)`  
                   `procedure Execve(Path: AnsiString;args: ppchar;ep: ppchar)`  
                   `procedure Execve(path: pchar;args: ppchar;ep: ppchar)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in path. It gives the program the options in args, and the environment in ep. They are pointers to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. On success, `execve` does not return.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eaccess** File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm** The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big** Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec** The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent** The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem** Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir** A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop** The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: [Execve \(810\)](#), [Execl \(807\)](#), [Execlp \(808\)](#), [Execl \(807\)](#), [Execlp \(808\)](#), [Fork \(820\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex7.pp

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execve function . }*

**Uses** oldlinux , strings ;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/lS ' ;  
           Arg1 : Pchar = '-l ' ;

**Var** PP : PPchar ;

**begin**  
   **GetMem** (PP,3\***SizeOf**(Pchar));  
   PP[0]:=Arg0;  
   PP[1]:=Arg1;  
   PP[3]:=**Nil**;  
   *{ Execute '/bin/lS -l ', with current environment }*  
   *{ Env is defined in system.inc }*  
   ExecVe ('/bin/lS',pp,envp);  
**end.**

---

### 22.12.23 Execvp

Synopsis: Execute process, search path

Declaration: `procedure Execvp(Path: PathStr;Args: ppchar;Ep: ppchar)`  
               `procedure Execvp(Path: AnsiString;Args: ppchar;Ep: ppchar)`

Visibility: default

Description: Replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in path. The executable in path is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. It gives the program the options in args. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, execvp does not return.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`:

**sys\_eacces**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: [Execve \(810\)](#), [Execl \(807\)](#), [Execlp \(808\)](#), [Execl \(807\)](#), [Execlp \(808\)](#), [Fork \(820\)](#)



**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex9.pp

**Program** Example9;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execvp function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux , strings ;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = 'ls' ;  
           Arg1 : Pchar = '-l' ;

**Var** PP : PPchar ;

**begin**

**GetMem** (PP,3\***SizeOf**(Pchar));  
 PP[0]:=Arg0;  
 PP[1]:=Arg1;  
 PP[3]:=Nil;  
*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
*{ Env is defined in the system unit. }*  
 Execvp ('ls',pp,envp);

**end.**

### 22.12.24 ExitProcess

Synopsis: Exit the current process

Declaration: procedure ExitProcess(val: LongInt)

Visibility: default

Description: ExitProcess exits the currently running process, and report Val as the exit status.

**Remark:** If this call is executed, the normal unit finalization code will not be executed. This may lead to unexpected errors and stray files on your system. It is therefore recommended to use the Halt call instead.

Errors: None.

See also: Fork ([820](#)), ExecVE ([810](#))

### 22.12.25 Fcntl

Synopsis: File control operations.

Declaration: function Fcntl(Fd: LongInt;Cmd: LongInt) : LongInt  
 procedure Fcntl(Fd: LongInt;Cmd: LongInt;Arg: LongInt)  
 function Fcntl(var Fd: Text;Cmd: LongInt) : LongInt  
 procedure Fcntl(var Fd: Text;Cmd: LongInt;Arg: LongInt)

Visibility: default

Description: Read a file's attributes. Fd is an assigned file, or a valid file descriptor. Cmd specifies what to do, and is one of the following:

**F\_GetFd**Read the `close_on_exec` flag. If the low-order bit is 0, then the file will remain open across `execve` calls.

**F\_GetFl**Read the descriptor's flags.

**F\_GetOwn**Get the Process ID of the owner of a socket.

**F\_SetFd**Set the `close_on_exec` flag of `Fd`. (only the least significant bit is used).

**F\_GetLk**Return the `flock` record that prevents this process from obtaining the lock, or set the `l_type` field of the lock of there is no obstruction. `Arg` is a pointer to a flock record.

**F\_SetLk**Set the lock or clear it (depending on `l_type` in the `flock` structure). if the lock is held by another process, an error occurs.

**F\_GetLkw**Same as for **F\_Setlk**, but wait until the lock is released.

**F\_SetOwn**Set the Process or process group that owns a socket.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

**sys\_ebadf**`Fd` has a bad file descriptor.

**sys\_eagain** or **sys\_eaccess**For **F\_SetLk**, if the lock is held by another process.

## 22.12.26 fdClose

Synopsis: Close file descriptor

Declaration: `function fdClose(fd: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdClose` closes a file with file descriptor `Fd`. The function returns `True` if the file was closed successfully, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `fdOpen` (814).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (814), `fdRead` (815), `fdWrite` (817), `fdTruncate` (816), `fdFlush` (813), `fdSeek` (816)

## 22.12.27 fdFlush

Synopsis: Flush kernel file buffer

Declaration: `function fdFlush(fd: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdflush` flushes the Linux kernel file buffer, so the file is actually written to disk. This is NOT the same as the internal buffer, maintained by Free Pascal. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `false` if an error occurred.

For an example, see `fdRead` (815).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (814), `fdClose` (813), `fdRead` (815), `fdWrite` (817), `fdTruncate` (816), `fdSeek` (816)

**22.12.28 fdOpen**

Synopsis: Open file and return file descriptor

Declaration: `function fdOpen(pathname: String; flags: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function fdOpen(pathname: String; flags: LongInt; mode: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function fdOpen(pathname: pchar; flags: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function fdOpen(pathname: pchar; flags: LongInt; mode: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdOpen` opens a file in `PathName` with flags `flags` One of the following:

**Open\_RdOnlyFile** is opened Read-only

**Open\_WrOnlyFile** is opened Write-only

**Open\_RdWrFile** is opened Read-Write

The flags may be OR-ed with one of the following constants:

**Open\_CreatFile** is created if it doesn't exist.

**Open\_ExclIf** the file is opened with `Open_Creat` and it already exists, the call will fail.

**Open\_NoCttyIf** the file is a terminal device, it will NOT become the process' controlling terminal.

**Open\_TruncIf** the file exists, it will be truncated.

**Open\_Append** the file is opened in append mode. *Before each write*, the file pointer is positioned at the end of the file.

**Open\_NonBlock** The file is opened in non-blocking mode. No operation on the file descriptor will cause the calling process to wait till.

**Open\_NDelay** Idem as `Open_NonBlock`

**Open\_Sync** The file is opened for synchronous IO. Any write operation on the file will not return until the data is physically written to disk.

**Open\_NoFollow** if the file is a symbolic link, the open fails. (linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

**Open\_Directory** if the file is not a directory, the open fails. (linux 2.1.126 and higher only)

`PathName` can be of type `PChar` or `String`. The optional mode argument specifies the permissions to set when opening the file. This is modified by the `umask` setting. The real permissions are `Mode` and not `umask`. The return value of the function is the file descriptor, or a negative value if there was an error.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdClose` ([813](#)), `fdRead` ([815](#)), `fdWrite` ([817](#)), `fdTruncate` ([816](#)), `fdFlush` ([813](#)), `fdSeek` ([816](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** Example19;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fdOpen, fdwrite and fdCLose functions. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Const** Line : **String**[80] = 'This is easy writing !';

**Var** FD : Longint;

**begin**

---

```

FD:=fdOpen ( 'Test.dat',Open_WrOnly or Open_Creat);
if FD>0 then
  begin
    if length(Line)<>fdwrite (FD,Line[1],Length(Line)) then
      WriteLn ( 'Error when writing to file ! ');
    fdClose(FD);
  end;
end.

```

---

### 22.12.29 fdRead

Synopsis: Read data from file descriptor

Declaration: `function fdRead(fd: LongInt;var buf;size: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdRead` reads at most `size` bytes from the file descriptor `fd`, and stores them in `buf`. The function returns the number of bytes actually read, or -1 if an error occurred. No checking on the length of `buf` is done.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (814), `fdClose` (813), `fdWrite` (817), `fdTruncate` (816), `fdFlush` (813), `fdSeek` (816)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** Example20;

*{ Program to demonstrate the fdRead and fdTruncate functions. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Const** Data : **string**[10] = '12345687890';

**Var** FD : Longint;  
I : longint;

**begin**

FD:=fdOpen('test.dat',open\_wronly or open\_creat,octal(666));

if fd>0 then

begin

*{ Fill file with data }*

for I:=1 to 10 do

if fdWrite (FD,Data[I],10)<>10 then

begin

writeLn ( 'Error when writing ! ');

halt(1);

end;

fdClose(FD);

FD:=fdOpen('test.dat',open\_rdonly);

*{ Read data again }*

If FD>0 then

begin

For I:=1 to 5 do

if fdRead (FD,Data[I],10)<>10 then

begin

WriteLn ( 'Error when Reading ! ');

---

```

        Halt (2);
    end;
    fdClose(FD);
    { Truncating file at 60 bytes }
    { For truncating , file must be open or write }
    FD:=fdOpen('test.dat',open_wronly,octal(666));
    if FD>0 then
        begin
            if not fdTruncate(FD,60) then
                Writeln('Error when truncating !');
            fdClose (FD);
        end;
    end;
end.

```

---

### 22.12.30 fdSeek

Synopsis: Set file pointer position.

Declaration: `function fdSeek(fd: LongInt;pos: LongInt;seektype: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdSeek` sets the current fileposition of file `fd` to `Pos`, starting from `SeekType`, which can be one of the following:

**Seek\_SetPos** is the absolute position in the file.

**Seek\_CurPos** is relative to the current position.

**Seek\_endPos** is relative to the end of the file.

The function returns the new fileposition, or -1 of an error occurred.

For an example, see `fdOpen` (814).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (814), `fdWrite` (817), `fdClose` (813), `fdRead` (815), `fdTruncate` (816), `fdFlush` (813)

### 22.12.31 fdTruncate

Synopsis: Truncate file on certain size.

Declaration: `function fdTruncate(fd: LongInt;size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdTruncate` sets the length of a file in `fd` on `size` bytes, where `size` must be less than or equal to the current length of the file in `fd`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `false` if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (814), `fdClose` (813), `fdRead` (815), `fdWrite` (817), `fdFlush` (813), `fdSeek` (816)

### 22.12.32 fdWrite

Synopsis: Write data to file descriptor

Declaration: `function fdWrite(fd: LongInt; const buf; size: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fdWrite` writes at most `size` bytes from `buf` to file descriptor `fd`. The function returns the number of bytes actually written, or -1 if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `fdOpen` (814), `fdClose` (813), `fdRead` (815), `fdTruncate` (816), `fdSeek` (816), `fdFlush` (813)

### 22.12.33 FD\_Clr

Synopsis: Clears a filedescriptor in a set

Declaration: `procedure FD_Clr(fd: LongInt; var fds: fdSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FD_Clr` clears file descriptor `fd` in filedescriptor set `fds`.

For an example, see `Select` (847).

Errors: None.

See also: `Select` (847), `SelectText` (849), `GetFS` (827), `FD_ZERO` (818), `FD_Set` (817), `FD_IsSet` (817)

### 22.12.34 FD\_IsSet

Synopsis: Check whether a filedescriptor is set

Declaration: `function FD_IsSet(fd: LongInt; var fds: fdSet) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FD_Set` Checks whether file descriptor `fd` in filedescriptor set `fds` is set.

For an example, see `Select` (847).

Errors: None.

See also: `Select` (847), `SelectText` (849), `GetFS` (827), `FD_ZERO` (818), `FD_Clr` (817), `FD_Set` (817)

### 22.12.35 FD\_Set

Synopsis: Set a filedescriptor in a set

Declaration: `procedure FD_Set(fd: LongInt; var fds: fdSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FD_Set` sets file descriptor `fd` in filedescriptor set `fds`.

For an example, see `Select` (847).

Errors: None.

See also: `Select` (847), `SelectText` (849), `GetFS` (827), `FD_ZERO` (818), `FD_Clr` (817), `FD_IsSet` (817)

### 22.12.36 FD\_Zero

Synopsis: Clear all file descriptors in set

Declaration: `procedure FD_Zero(var fds: fdSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FD_ZERO` clears all the filedescriptors in the file descriptor set `fds`.

For an example, see [Select \(847\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: [Select \(847\)](#), [SelectText \(849\)](#), [GetFS \(827\)](#), [FD\\_Clr \(817\)](#), [FD\\_Set \(817\)](#), [FD\\_IsSet \(817\)](#)

### 22.12.37 FExpand

Synopsis: Expand filename to fully qualified path

Declaration: `function FExpand(const Path: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: `FExpand` expands `Path` to a full path, starting from root, eliminating directory references such as `.` and `..` from the result.

Errors: None

See also: [BaseName \(797\)](#), [DirName \(804\)](#)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex45.pp`

---

**Program** `Example45;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the FExpand function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ('This program is in : ',FExpand(Paramstr(0)));`  
**end.**

---

### 22.12.38 Flock

Synopsis: Lock a file (advisory lock)

Declaration: `function Flock(fd: LongInt;mode: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function Flock(var T: text;mode: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function Flock(var F: File;mode: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FLock` implements file locking. it sets or removes a lock on the file `F`. `F` can be of type `Text` or `File`, or it can be a linux filedescriptor (a longint) `Mode` can be one of the following constants :

**LOCK\_SH**sets a shared lock.

**LOCK\_EX**sets an exclusive lock.

**LOCK\_UN** unlocks the file.

**LOCK\_NB** This can be OR-ed together with the other. If this is done the application doesn't block when locking.

The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: If an error occurs, it is reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `Fcntl` ([812](#))

### 22.12.39 FNMatch

Synopsis: Check whether filename matches wildcard specification

Declaration: `function FNMatch(const Pattern: String; const Name: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `FNMatch` returns `True` if the filename in `Name` matches the wildcard pattern in `Pattern`, `False` otherwise.

`Pattern` can contain the wildcards `*` (match zero or more arbitrary characters) or `?` (match a single character).

Errors: `None`.

See also: `FSearch` ([821](#)), `FExpand` ([818](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex69.pp`

---

**Program** `Example69;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the FNMatch function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**Procedure** `TestMatch(Pattern, Name : String);`

**begin**

`Write (' ', Name, ' ');`

`If FNMatch ( Pattern, Name) then`

`Write ( 'matches ')`

`else`

`Write ( 'does not match');`

`WriteLn ( ' ', Pattern, ' " ');`

`end;`

**begin**

`TestMatch ( '*', 'FileName ');`

`TestMatch ( '.*', 'FileName ');`

`TestMatch ( '*a*', 'FileName ');`

`TestMatch ( '?ile*', 'FileName ');`

`TestMatch ( '??', 'FileName ');`

`TestMatch ( '.?', 'FileName ');`

`TestMatch ( '?a*', 'FileName ');`

`TestMatch ( '??*me?', 'FileName ');`

`end.`

---



### 22.12.40 Fork

Synopsis: Create child process

Declaration: `function Fork : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Fork` creates a child process which is a copy of the parent process. `Fork` returns the process ID in the parent process, and zero in the child's process. (you can get the parent's PID with `GetPPid` (830)).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned to the parent, and no child is created.

**sys\_eagain**Not enough memory to create child process.

See also: `Execve` (810), `Clone` (801)

### 22.12.41 FReName

Synopsis: Rename file

Declaration: `function FReName(OldName: Pchar;NewName: Pchar) : Boolean`  
`function FReName(OldName: String;NewName: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FReName` renames the file `OldName` to `NewName`. `NewName` can be in a different directory than `OldName`, but it cannot be on another partition (device). Any existing file on the new location will be replaced.

If the operation fails, then the `OldName` file will be preserved.

The function returns `True` on succes, `False` on failure.

Errors: On error, errors are reported in `LinuxError`. Possible errors include:

**sys\_eisdir**`NewName` exists and is a directory, but `OldName` is not a directory.

**sys\_exdev**`NewName` and `OldName` are on different devices.

**sys\_enotempty or sys\_eexist**`NewName` is an existing, non-empty directory.

**sys\_ebusy**`OldName` or `NewName` is a directory and is in use by another process.

**sys\_einval**`NewName` is part of `OldName`.

**sys\_mlink**`OldPath` or `NewPath` already have the maximum amount of links pointing to them.

**sys\_enotdir**part of `OldName` or `NewName` is not directory.

**sys\_efault**For the `pchar` case: One of the pointers points to an invalid address.

**sys\_eaccess**access is denied when attempting to move the file.

**sys\_enametoolong**Either `OldName` or `NewName` is too long.

**sys\_enoenta**directory component in `OldName` or `NewName` didn't exist.

**sys\_enomem**not enough kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**`NewName` or `OldName` is on a read-only file system.

**sys\_eloop**too many symbolic links were encountered trying to expand `OldName` or `NewName`

**sys\_enospct**the filesystem has no room for the new directory entry.

See also: `UnLink` (865)

### 22.12.42 FSearch

Synopsis: Search for file in search path.

Declaration: `function FSearch(const path: PathStr;dirlist: String) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSearch` searches in `DirList`, a colon separated list of directories, for a file named `Path`. It then returns a path to the found file.

Errors: An empty string if no such file was found.

See also: `BaseName` ([797](#)), `DirName` ([804](#)), `FExpand` ([818](#)), `FNMatch` ([819](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** `Example46;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux, strings;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Is is in : ',FSearch ( 'Is',strpas(Getenv('PATH'))));`  
**end.**

---

### 22.12.43 FSplit

Synopsis: Split filename into path, name and extension

Declaration: `procedure FSplit(const Path: PathStr;var Dir: DirStr;var Name: NameStr;  
                          var Ext: ExtStr)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSplit` splits a full file name into 3 parts : A `Path`, a `Name` and an extension (in `ext`). The extension is taken to be all letters after the last dot (.).

Errors: None.

See also: `FSearch` ([821](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex67.pp`

---

**Program** `Example67;`

**uses** `oldlinux;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the FSplit function. }*

**var**

`Path,Name,Ext : string;`

**begin**

`FSplit(ParamStr(1),Path,Name,Ext);`  
`WriteLn(' Split ',ParamStr(1),' in: ');`  
`WriteLn(' Path      : ',Path);`  
`WriteLn(' Name      : ',Name);`  
`WriteLn(' Extension: ',Ext);`  
**end.**

---

**22.12.44 FSStat**

Synopsis: Retrieve filesystem information.

Declaration: `function FSStat(Path: PathStr;var Info: Statfs) : Boolean`  
`function FSStat(Fd: LongInt;var Info: Statfs) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: FSStat returns in Info information about the filesystem on which the file Path resides, or on which the file with file descriptor fd resides. Info is of type statfs. The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False if the call failed.

Errors: LinuxError is used to report errors.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of Path is not a directory.

**sys\_einval**Invalid character in Path.

**sys\_enoent**Path does not exist.

**sys\_eaccess**Search permission is denied for component inPath.

**sys\_eloop**A circular symbolic link was encountered in Path.

**sys\_eio**An error occurred while reading from the filesystem.

See also: FStat ([823](#)), LStat ([837](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex30.pp

---

```

program Example30;

{ Program to demonstrate the FSStat function. }

uses oldlinux;

var s : string;
    info : statfs;

begin
    writeln ('Info about current partition : ');
    s := '.';
    while s <> 'q' do
        begin
            if not fsstat (s,info) then
                begin
                    writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ',linuxerror);
                    halt (1);
                end;
            writeln;
            writeln ('Result of fsstat on file ''',s,'''');
            writeln ('fstype   : ',info.fstype);
            writeln ('bsize    : ',info.bsize);
            writeln ('bfree    : ',info.bfree);
            writeln ('bavail   : ',info.bavail);
            writeln ('files    : ',info.files);
            writeln ('ffree    : ',info.ffree);
            writeln ('fsid     : ',info.fsid);
            writeln ('Namelen  : ',info.namelen);
            write ('Type name of file to do fsstat. (q quits) : ');
            readln (s)
        end;
    end.

```

---

**22.12.45 FStat**

Synopsis: Retrieve information about a file

Declaration: `function FStat(Path: PathStr;var Info: Stat) : Boolean`  
`function FStat(Fd: LongInt;var Info: Stat) : Boolean`  
`function FStat(var F: Text;var Info: Stat) : Boolean`  
`function FStat(var F: File;var Info: Stat) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FStat` gets information about the file specified in one of the following:

**Path**a file on the filesystem.

**Fd**a valid file descriptor.

**F**an opened text file or untyped file.

and stores it in `Info`, which is of type `stat`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if the call failed.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

`sys_enoent`Path does not exist.

See also: `FStat` ([822](#)), `LStat` ([837](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex28.pp`

---

```
program example28;

{ Program to demonstrate the FStat function. }

uses oldlinux;

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
  close (f);
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if not fstat ('test.fil', info) then
    begin
      writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ', linuxerror);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil''.');
  writeln ('Inode      : ', info.ino);
  writeln ('Mode       : ', info.mode);
  writeln ('nlink      : ', info.nlink);
  writeln ('uid        : ', info.uid);
  writeln ('gid        : ', info.gid);
  writeln ('rdev       : ', info.rdev);
  writeln ('Size       : ', info.size);
```

---

```

writeln ( 'Blksize : ',info.blksize);
writeln ( 'Blocks : ',info.blocks);
writeln ( 'atime : ',info.atime);
writeln ( 'mtime : ',info.mtime);
writeln ( 'ctime : ',info.ctime);
  { Remove file }
  erase (f);
end.

```

---

### 22.12.46 GetDate

Synopsis: Return the system date

Declaration: `procedure GetDate(var Year: Word;var Month: Word;var Day: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the current date.

Errors: None

See also: [GetEpochTime \(826\)](#), [GetTime \(831\)](#), [GetDateTime \(824\)](#), [EpochToLocal \(806\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex6.pp

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDate function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** Year, Month, Day : Word;

**begin**

  GetDate (Year, Month, Day);

**Writeln** ( 'Date : ',Day:2,'/',Month:2,'/',Year:4);

**end.**

---

### 22.12.47 GetDateTime

Synopsis: Return system date and time

Declaration: `procedure GetDateTime(var Year: Word;var Month: Word;var Day: Word;  
var hour: Word;var minute: Word;var second: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the current date and time. The time is corrected for the local time zone. This procedure is equivalent to the [GetDate \(824\)](#) and [GetTime](#) calls.

Errors: None

See also: [GetEpochTime \(826\)](#), [GetTime \(831\)](#), [EpochToLocal \(806\)](#), [GetDate \(824\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex60.pp

---

```

Program Example6;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetDateTime function. }

Uses oldlinux;

Var Year, Month, Day, Hour, min, sec : Word;

begin
  GetDateTime (Year, Month, Day, Hour, min, sec);
  WriteIn ( 'Date : ', Day:2, '/', Month:2, '/', Year:4 );
  WriteIn ( 'Time : ', Hour:2, ': ', Min:2, ': ', Sec:2 );
end.

```

---

### 22.12.48 GetDomainName

Synopsis: Return current domain name

Declaration: `function GetDomainName : String`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the domain name of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if the domain is not set.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetHostName` ([828](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex39.pp

---

```

Program Example39;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetDomainName function. }

Uses oldlinux;

begin
  WriteIn ( 'Domain name of this machine is : ', GetDomainName );
end.

```

---

### 22.12.49 GetEGid

Synopsis: Return effective group ID

Declaration: `function GetEGid : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the effective group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetGid` ([828](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex18.pp

---

**Program** Example18;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**begin**

**writeLn** ( 'Group Id = ',getgid,' Effective group Id = ',getegid);

**end.**

---

### 22.12.50 GetEnv

Synopsis: Return value of environment variable.

Declaration: `function GetEnv(P: String) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnv` returns the value of the environment variable in `P`. If the variable is not defined, `nil` is returned. The value of the environment variable may be the empty string. A `PChar` is returned to accomodate for strings longer than 255 bytes, `TERMCAP` and `LS_COLORS`, for instance.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex41.pp

---

**Program** Example41;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetEnv function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Path is : ',Getenv( 'PATH' ));

**end.**

---

### 22.12.51 GetEpochTime

Synopsis: Return the current unix time

Declaration: `function GetEpochTime : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: returns the number of seconds since 00:00:00 gmt, january 1, 1970. it is adjusted to the local time zone, but not to DST.

Errors: no errors

See also: `EpochToLocal` ([806](#)), `GetTime` ([831](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex1.pp

---

```

Program Example1;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetEpochTime function. }

Uses oldlinux;

begin
  Write ( 'Secs past the start of the Epoch (00:00 1/1/1980) : ');
  WriteLn ( GetEpochTime );
end.

```

---

### 22.12.52 GetEUid

Synopsis: Return effective user ID

Declaration: `function GetEUid : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the effective user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetUid` ([832](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex17.pp

---

```

Program Example17;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEUid functions. }

Uses oldlinux;

begin
  writeln ( 'User Id = ',getuid, ' Effective user Id = ',geteuid);
end.

```

---

### 22.12.53 GetFS

Synopsis: Return file selector

Declaration: `function GetFS(var T: Text) : LongInt`  
`function GetFS(var F: File) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFS` returns the file selector that the kernel provided for your file. In principle you don't need this file selector. Only for some calls it is needed, such as the `Select` ([847](#)) call or so.

Errors: In case the file was not opened, then -1 is returned.

See also: `Select` ([847](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex34.pp



---

```

Program Example33;

{ Program to demonstrate the SelectText function. }

Uses oldlinux;

Var tv : TimeVal;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Press the <ENTER> to continue the program.' );
  { Wait until File descriptor 0 (=Input) changes }
  SelectText ( Input, nil );
  { Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }
  readln;
  Writeln ( 'Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds...' );
  tv.sec:=2;
  tv.usec:=0;
  if SelectText ( Input, @tv) > 0 then
    Writeln ( 'Thank you ! ' )
  else
    Writeln ( 'Too late ! ' );
end.

```

---

### 22.12.54 GetGid

Synopsis: Return real group ID

Declaration: function GetGid : LongInt

Visibility: default

Description: Get the real group ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: GetEGid ([825](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex18.pp

---

```

Program Example18;

{ Program to demonstrate the GetGid and GetEGid functions. }

Uses oldlinux;

begin
  writeln ( 'Group Id = ', getgid, ' Effective group Id = ', getegid );
end.

```

---

### 22.12.55 GetHostName

Synopsis: Return host name

Declaration: function GetHostName : String

Visibility: default

Description: Get the hostname of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if hostname is not set.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDomainName` ([825](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex40.pp`

---

**Program** `Example40;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetHostName function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Name of this machine is : ', GetHostName );  
**end.**

---

### 22.12.56 GetLocalTimezone

Synopsis: Return local timezone information

Declaration: `procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: LongInt; var leap_correct: LongInt;  
var leap_hit: LongInt)  
procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLocalTimezone` returns the local timezone information. It also initializes the `TZSeconds` variable, which is used to correct the epoch time to local time.

There should never be any need to call this function directly. It is called by the initialization routines of the Linux unit.

See also: `GetTimezoneFile` ([832](#)), `ReadTimezoneFile` ([847](#))

### 22.12.57 GetPid

Synopsis: Return current process ID

Declaration: `function GetPid : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the Process ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPPid` ([830](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

---

```
begin
  WriteLn ( 'Process Id = ',getpid, ' Parent process Id = ',getppid);
end.
```

---

### 22.12.58 GetPPid

Synopsis: Return parent process ID

Declaration: `function GetPPid : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the Process ID of the parent process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetPid` ([829](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetPid, GetPPid function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

```
begin
  WriteLn ( 'Process Id = ',getpid, ' Parent process Id = ',getppid);
end.
```

---

### 22.12.59 GetPriority

Synopsis: Return process priority

Declaration: `function GetPriority(Which: Integer;Who: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPriority` returns the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the `Which` and `Who` variables. `Which` can be one of the pre-defined `Prio_Process`, `Prio_PGrp`, `Prio_User`, in which case `Who` is the process ID, Process group ID or User ID, respectively.

For an example, see `Nice` ([842](#)).

Errors: Error checking must be done on `LinuxError`, since a priority can be negative.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using `which` and `who`.

**sys\_einval**`Which` was not one of `Prio_Process`, `Prio_Grp` or `Prio_User`.

See also: `SetPriority` ([850](#)), `Nice` ([842](#))

**22.12.60 GetTime**

Synopsis: Return current system time

Declaration: `procedure GetTime(var hour: Word; var min: Word; var sec: Word;  
var msec: Word; var usec: Word)  
procedure GetTime(var hour: Word; var min: Word; var sec: Word;  
var sec100: Word)  
procedure GetTime(var hour: Word; var min: Word; var sec: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the current time of the day, adjusted to local time. Upon return, the parameters are filled with

**hour** Hours since 00:00 today.

**min** minutes in current hour.

**sec** seconds in current minute.

**sec100** hundreds of seconds in current second.

**msec** milliseconds in current second.

**usec** microseconds in current second.

Errors: None

See also: [GetEpochTime \(826\)](#), [GetDate \(824\)](#), [GetDateTime \(824\)](#), [EpochToLocal \(806\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex5.pp

**Program** Example5;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetTime function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** Hour, Minute, Second : Word;

**begin**

GetTime (Hour, Minute, Second);

**WriteLn** ( 'Time : ', Hour:2, ': ', Minute:2, ': ', Second:2 );

**end.**

**22.12.61 GetTimeOfDay**

Synopsis: Return kernel time of day in GMT

Declaration: `procedure GetTimeOfDay(var tv: timeval)  
function GetTimeOfDay : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTimeOfDay` returns the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT in a `timeval` record. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account timezones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call. To get the local time, [GetTime \(831\)](#).

Errors: None.

See also: [GetTime \(831\)](#), [GetTimeOfDay \(831\)](#)

### 22.12.62 GetTimezoneFile

Synopsis: Return name of timezone information file

Declaration: `function GetTimezoneFile : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTimezoneFile` returns the location of the current timezone file. The location of file is determined as follows:

- 1.If `/etc/timezone` exists, it is read, and the contents of this file is returned. This should work on Debian systems.
- 2.If `/usr/lib/zoneinfo/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on SuSE systems)
- 3.If `/etc/localtime` exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on RedHat systems)

Errors: If no file was found, an empty string is returned.

See also: `ReadTimezoneFile` ([847](#))

### 22.12.63 GetUid

Synopsis: Return current user ID

Declaration: `function GetUid : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the real user ID of the currently running process.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetEUid` ([827](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetUid and GetEUid functions. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**begin**

`writeln ( 'User Id = ',getuid, ' Effective user Id = ',geteuid);`  
**end.**

---

### 22.12.64 Glob

Synopsis: Find filenames matching a wildcard pattern

Declaration: `function Glob(const path: PathStr) : pglob`

Visibility: default

Description: `Glob` returns a pointer to a glob structure which contains all filenames which exist and match the pattern in `Path`. The pattern can contain wildcard characters, which have their usual meaning.

Errors: Returns nil on error, and `LinuxError` is set.

**sys\_enomem** No memory on heap for glob structure.

**others** As returned by the `opendir` call, and `sys_readdir`.

See also: `GlobFree` ([833](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex49.pp`

---

**Program** `Example49`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Glob and GlobFree functions. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux`;

**Var** `G1,G2 : PGlob`;

**begin**

`G1:=Glob ( '*' );`

`if LinuxError=0 then`

`begin`

`G2:=G1;`

`Writeln ( 'Files in this directory : ' );`

`While g2<>Nil do`

`begin`

`Writeln ( g2^.name );`

`g2:=g2^.next;`

`end;`

`GlobFree ( g1 );`

`end;`

`end.`

---

### 22.12.65 Globfree

Synopsis: Free result of `Glob` ([832](#)) call

Declaration: `procedure Globfree(var p: pglob)`

Visibility: default

Description: Releases the memory, occupied by a `pglob` structure. `P` is set to nil.

For an example, see `Glob` ([832](#)).

Errors: None

See also: `Glob` ([832](#))

### 22.12.66 IOCtl

Synopsis: General kernel IOCTL call.

Declaration: `function IOCtl(Handle: LongInt;Ndx: LongInt;Data: Pointer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** This is a general interface to the Unix/ linux ioctl call. It performs various operations on the filedescriptor `Handle`. `Ndx` describes the operation to perform. `Data` points to data needed for the `Ndx` function. The structure of this data is function-dependent, so we don't elaborate on this here. For more information on this, see various manual pages under linux.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`. They are very dependent on the used function, that's why we don't list them here

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex54.pp`

---

**Program** `Example54`;

**uses** `oldlinux`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IOCTL function. }*

**var**

`tios` : `Termios`;

**begin**

`IOctl(1,TCGETS,@tios);`

`WriteLn('Input Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_iflag,8));`

`WriteLn('Output Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_oflag,8));`

`WriteLn('Line Flags : $',hexstr(tios.c_lflag,8));`

`WriteLn('Control Flags: $',hexstr(tios.c_cflag,8));`

**end.**

---

### 22.12.67 IOperm

**Synopsis:** Set permission on IO ports

**Declaration:** `function IOperm(From: Cardinal;Num: Cardinal;Value: LongInt) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `IOperm` sets permissions on `Num` ports starting with port `From` to `Value`. The function returns `True` if the call was successfull, `False` otherwise.

**Note:**

- This works ONLY as root.
- Only the first 0x03ff ports can be set.
- When doing a `Fork` (820), the permissions are reset. When doing a `Execve` (810) they are kept.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `LinuxError`

### 22.12.68 IoPL

**Synopsis:** Set I/O privilege level

**Declaration:** `function IoPL(Level: LongInt) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `IoPL` sets the I/O privilege level. It is intended for completeness only, one should normally not use it.

### 22.12.69 IsATTY

Synopsis: Check if filehandle is a TTY (terminal)

Declaration: `function IsATTY(Handle: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function IsATTY(var f: text) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Check if the filehandle described by `f` is a terminal. `f` can be of type

- 1. `longint` for file handles;
- 2. `Text` for text variables such as `input` etc.

Returns `True` if `f` is a terminal, `False` otherwise.

Errors: No errors are reported

See also: `IOCtl` (833), `TTYName` (864)

### 22.12.70 Kill

Synopsis: Send a signal to a process

Declaration: `function Kill(Pid: LongInt;Sig: LongInt) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: Send a signal `Sig` to a process or process group. If `Pid>0` then the signal is sent to `Pid`, if it equals `-1`, then the signal is sent to all processes except process 1. If `Pid<-1` then the signal is sent to process group `-Pid`. The return value is zero, except in case three, where the return value is the number of processes to which the signal was sent.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors:

**sys\_einval**An invalid signal is sent.

**sys\_esrch**The `Pid` or process group don't exist.

**sys\_eperm**The effective userid of the current process doesn't math the one of process `Pid`.

See also: `SigAction` (851), `Signal` (852)

### 22.12.71 Link

Synopsis: Create a hard link to a file

Declaration: `function Link(OldPath: PathStr;NewPath: PathStr) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Link` makes `NewPath` point to the same file als `OldPath`. The two files then have the same inode number. This is known as a 'hard' link. The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` if the call failed.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_exdev**`OldPath` and `NewPath` are not on the same filesystem.

**sys\_eperm**The filesystem containing `oldpath` and `newpath` doesn't support linking files.



**sys\_eaccess** Write access for the directory containing Newpath is disallowed, or one of the directories in OldPath or {NewPath} has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent** A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir** A directory entry in OldPath or NewPath is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** The files are on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eexist** NewPath already exists.

**sys\_mlink** OldPath has reached maximal link count.

**sys\_eloop** OldPath or NewPath has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc** The device containing NewPath has no room for another entry.

**sys\_eperm** OldPath points to . or .. of a directory.

See also: SymLink (856), UnLink (865)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex21.pp

---

**Program** Example21;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Link and UnLink functions. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** F : Text;

S : String;

**begin**

Assign (F, 'test.txt');

**Rewrite** (F);

**WriteIn** (F, 'This is written to test.txt');

**Close**(f);

*{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*

**if not** Link ('test.txt', 'new.txt') **then**

**writeln** ('Error when linking !');

*{ Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt }*

**If not** Unlink ('test.txt') **then**

**WriteIn** ('Error when unlinking !');

Assign (f, 'new.txt');

**Reset** (F);

**While not EOF**(f) **do**

**begin**

**ReadIn**(F,S);

**WriteIn** ('> ',s);

**end**;

**Close** (f);

*{ Remove new.txt also }*

**If not** Unlink ('new.txt') **then**

**WriteIn** ('Error when unlinking !');

**end.**

---

## 22.12.72 LocalToEpoch

Synopsis: Convert local time to epoch (unix) time

**Declaration:** `function LocalToEpoch(year: Word;month: Word;day: Word;hour: Word;  
minute: Word;second: Word) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Converts the Local time to epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00 , January 1, 1970 ).

**Errors:** None

**See also:** [GetEpochTime \(826\)](#), [EpochToLocal \(806\)](#), [GetTime \(831\)](#), [GetDate \(824\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex4.pp

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ Program to demonstrate the LocalToEpoch function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** year, month, day, hour, minute, second : Word;

**begin**

```
Write ( 'Year      : ' ); readln (Year);
Write ( 'Month     : ' ); readln (Month);
Write ( 'Day       : ' ); readln (Day);
Write ( 'Hour      : ' ); readln (Hour);
Write ( 'Minute    : ' ); readln (Minute);
Write ( 'Seconds   : ' ); readln (Second);
Write ( 'This is   : ' );
Write ( LocalToEpoch(year, month, day, hour, minute, second));
Writeln ( ' seconds past 00:00 1/1/1980 ');
```

**end.**

---

### 22.12.73 Lstat

**Synopsis:** Return information about symbolic link. Do not follow the link

**Declaration:** `function Lstat(Filename: PathStr;var Info: Stat) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** LStat gets information about the link specified in Path, and stores it in Info, which is of type stat. Contrary to FStat, it stores information about the link, not about the file the link points to. The function returns True if the call was succesfull, False if the call failed.

**Errors:** `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

`sys_enoent`Path does not exist.

**See also:** [FStat \(823\)](#), [FSStat \(822\)](#)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex29.pp

---

**program** example29;

*{ Program to demonstrate the LStat function. }*

**uses** oldlinux;

---

```

var f : text;
    i : byte;
    info : stat;

begin
  { Make a file }
  assign (f, 'test.fil');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 10 do writeln (f, 'Testline # ', i);
  close (f);
  { Do the call on made file. }
  if not fstat ('test.fil', info) then
    begin
      writeln('Fstat failed. Errno : ', linuxerror);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.fil''.');
  writeln ('Inode   : ', info.ino);
  writeln ('Mode    : ', info.mode);
  writeln ('nlink   : ', info.nlink);
  writeln ('uid     : ', info.uid);
  writeln ('gid     : ', info.gid);
  writeln ('rdev    : ', info.rdev);
  writeln ('Size    : ', info.size);
  writeln ('Blksize  : ', info.blksize);
  writeln ('Blocks  : ', info.blocks);
  writeln ('atime   : ', info.atime);
  writeln ('mtime   : ', info.mtime);
  writeln ('ctime   : ', info.ctime);

  If not SymLink ('test.fil', 'test.lnk') then
    writeln ('Link failed ! Errno : ', linuxerror);

  if not lstat ('test.lnk', info) then
    begin
      writeln('LStat failed. Errno : ', linuxerror);
      halt (1);
    end;
  writeln;
  writeln ('Result of fstat on file ''test.lnk''.');
  writeln ('Inode   : ', info.ino);
  writeln ('Mode    : ', info.mode);
  writeln ('nlink   : ', info.nlink);
  writeln ('uid     : ', info.uid);
  writeln ('gid     : ', info.gid);
  writeln ('rdev    : ', info.rdev);
  writeln ('Size    : ', info.size);
  writeln ('Blksize  : ', info.blksize);
  writeln ('Blocks  : ', info.blocks);
  writeln ('atime   : ', info.atime);
  writeln ('mtime   : ', info.mtime);
  writeln ('ctime   : ', info.ctime);
  { Remove file and link }
  erase (f);
  unlink ('test.lnk');
end.

```

---

### 22.12.74 mkFifo

Synopsis: Create FIFO (named pipe) in file system

Declaration: `function mkFifo(pathname: String; mode: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `MkFifo` creates named a named pipe in the filesystem, with name `PathName` and mode `Mode`.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: `POpen` (844), `MkFifo` (839)

### 22.12.75 MMap

Synopsis: Create memory map of a file

Declaration: `function MMap(const m: tmmmapargs) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `MMap` maps or unmaps files or devices into memory. The different fields of the argument `m` determine what and how the `mmap` maps this:

**address** Address where to `mmap` the device. This address is a hint, and may not be followed.

**size** Size (in bytes) of area to be mapped.

**prot** Protection of mapped memory. This is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**PROT\_EXEC** The memory can be executed.

**PROT\_READ** The memory can be read.

**PROT\_WRITE** The memory can be written.

**PROT\_NONE** The memory can not be accessed.

**flags** Contains some options for the `mmap` call. It is an OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**MAP\_FIXED** Do not map at another address than the given address. If the address cannot be used, `MMap` will fail.

**MAP\_SHARED** Share this map with other processes that map this object.

**MAP\_PRIVATE** Create a private map with copy-on-write semantics.

**MAP\_ANONYMOUS** `fd` does not have to be a file descriptor.

One of the options `MAP_SHARED` and `MAP_PRIVATE` must be present, but not both at the same time.

**fd** File descriptor from which to map.

**offset** Offset to be used in file descriptor `fd`.

The function returns a pointer to the mapped memory, or a -1 in case of an error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned and `LinuxError` is set to the error code:

**Sys\_EBADF** `fd` is not a valid file descriptor and `MAP_ANONYMOUS` was not specified.

**Sys\_EACCES** `MAP_PRIVATE` was specified, but `fd` is not open for reading. Or `MAP_SHARED` was asked and `PROT_WRITE` is set, `fd` is not open for writing

**Sys\_EINVAL** One of the record fields `Start`, `length` or `offset` is invalid.

**Sys\_ETXTBUSY** `MAP_DENYWRITE` was set but the object specified by `fd` is open for writing.

**Sys\_EAGAIN** `fd` is locked, or too much memory is locked.

**Sys\_ENOMEM** Not enough memory for this operation.

See also: `MUnMap` ([840](#))

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex66.pp`

**Program** `Example66`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MMap function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux`;

**Var** `S : String`;  
       `fd, Len : Longint`;  
       `args : tmapargs`;  
       `P : PChar`;

**begin**

```

S:= 'This is a string'#0;
Len:=Length(S);
fd:=fdOpen('testfile.txt',Open_wrOnly or open_creat);
If fd=-1 then
  Halt(1);
If fdWrite(fd,S[1],Len)=-1 then
  Halt(2);
fdClose(fd);
fdOpen('testfile.txt',Open_rdOnly);
if fd=-1 then
  Halt(3);
args.address:=0;
args.offset:=0;
args.size:=Len+1;
args.fd:=Fd;
args.flags:=MAP_PRIVATE;
args.prot:=PROT_READ or PROT_WRITE;
P:=PChar(mmap(args));
If longint(P)=-1 then
  Halt(4);
WriteLn('Read in memory :',P);
fdclose(fd);
if Not MUnMap(P,Len) Then
  Halt(LinuxError);
end.
```

### 22.12.76 MUnMap

**Synopsis:** Unmap previously mapped memory block

**Declaration:** `function MUnMap(P: Pointer;Size: LongInt) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** MUnMap unmaps the memory block of size `Size`, pointed to by `P`, which was previously allocated with `MMap` (839).

The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `MMap` (839).

**Errors:** In case of error the function returns `False` and `LinuxError` is set to an error value. See `MMap` (839) for possible error values.

See also: `MMap` (839)

### 22.12.77 NanoSleep

**Synopsis:** Suspend process for a short time

**Declaration:** `function NanoSleep(const req: timespec; var rem: timespec) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `NanoSleep` suspends the process till a time period as specified in `req` has passed. Then the function returns. If the call was interrupted (e.g. by some signal) then the function may return earlier, and `rem` will contain the remaining time till the end of the intended period. In this case the return value will be `-1`, and `LinuxError` will be set to `EINTR`.

If the function returns without error, the return value is zero.

**Errors:** If the call was interrupted, `-1` is returned, and `LinuxError` is set to `EINTR`. If invalid time values were specified, then `-1` is returned and `LinuxError` is set to `EINVAL`.

See also: `Pause` (844), `Alarm` (794)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex72.pp`

---

```
program example72;

{ Program to demonstrate the NanoSleep function. }

uses oldlinux;

Var
  Req, Rem : TimeSpec;
  Res : Longint;

begin
  With Req do
    begin
      tv_sec:=10;
      tv_nsec:=100;
    end;
  Write( 'NanoSleep returned : ');
  Flush( Output );
  Res:=( NanoSleep( Req, rem ));
  Writeln( res );
  If ( res <> 0) then
    With rem do
      begin
        Writeln( 'Remaining seconds      : ', tv_sec );
        Writeln( 'Remaining nanoseconds : ', tv_nsec );
      end;
  end.
```

---

### 22.12.78 Nice

Synopsis: Set process priority

Declaration: `procedure Nice(N: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Nice` adds `-N` to the priority of the running process. The lower the priority numerically, the less the process is favored. Only the superuser can specify a negative `N`, i.e. increase the rate at which the process is run.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`

**sys\_eperm** A non-superuser tried to specify a negative `N`, i.e. do a priority increase.

See also: `GetPriority` (830), `SetPriority` (850)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Nice and Get/SetPriority functions. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**begin**

```
writeln ('Setting priority to 5 ');
setpriority (prio_process, getpid, 5);
writeln ('New priority = ', getpriority (prio_process, getpid));
writeln ('Doing nice 10 ');
nice (10);
writeln ('New Priority = ', getpriority (prio_process, getpid));
```

**end.**

---

### 22.12.79 Octal

Synopsis: Convert octal to decimal value

Declaration: `function Octal(l: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Octal` will convert a number specified as an octal number to its decimal value.

This is useful for the `Chmod` (799) call, where permissions are specified as octal numbers.

Errors: No checking is performed whether the given number is a correct Octal number. e.g. specifying 998 is possible; the result will be wrong in that case.

See also: `Chmod` (799)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex68.pp`

---

**Program** `Example68;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Octal function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

```

begin
  Writeln ( 'Mode 777 : ', Octal(777));
  Writeln ( 'Mode 644 : ', Octal(644));
  Writeln ( 'Mode 755 : ', Octal(755));
end.

```

---

### 22.12.80 OpenDir

Synopsis: Open directory for reading

Declaration: `function OpenDir(f: pchar) : PDir`  
`function OpenDir(f: String) : PDir`

Visibility: default

Description: `OpenDir` opens the directory `f`, and returns a `pdir` pointer to a `Dir` record, which can be used to read the directory structure. If the directory cannot be opened, `nil` is returned.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `CloseDir` (803), `ReadDir` (845), `SeekDir` (847), `TellDir` (864)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex35.pp`

---

**Program** Example35;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the
  OpenDir, ReadDir, SeekDir and TellDir functions. }

```

**Uses** oldlinux;

```

Var TheDir : PDir;
    ADirent : PDirent;
    Entry : Longint;

```

```

begin
  TheDir:=OpenDir( './. ' );
  Repeat
    Entry:=TellDir(TheDir);
    ADirent:=ReadDir ( TheDir);
    If ADirent<>Nil then
      With ADirent^ do
        begin
          Writeln ( 'Entry No : ',Entry);
          Writeln ( 'Inode   : ',ino);
          Writeln ( 'Offset  : ',off);
          Writeln ( 'Reclen  : ',reclen);
          Writeln ( 'Name    : ',pchar(@name[0]));
        end;
      Until ADirent=Nil;
  Repeat
    Write ( 'Entry No. you would like to see again (-1 to stop): ');
    ReadLn ( Entry);
    If Entry<>-1 then
      begin
        SeekDir ( TheDir, Entry);
        ADirent:=ReadDir ( TheDir);

```



---

```

    If ADirent<>Nil then
      With ADirent^ do
        begin
          Writeln ( 'Entry No : ', Entry );
          Writeln ( 'Inode   : ', ino );
          Writeln ( 'Offset  : ', off );
          Writeln ( 'Reclen  : ', reclen );
          Writeln ( 'Name    : ', pchar(@name[0]));
        end;
      end;
    Until Entry=-1;
    CloseDir ( TheDir );
end.

```

---

### 22.12.81 Pause

Synopsis: Wait for a signal

Declaration: `procedure Pause`

Visibility: default

Description: `Pause` puts the process to sleep and waits until the application receives a signal. If a signal handler is installed for the received signal, the handler will be called and after that `pause` will return control to the process.

For an example, see [Alarm \(794\)](#).

### 22.12.82 PClose

Synopsis: Close file opened with `POpen` ([844](#))

Declaration: `function PClose(var F: text) : LongInt`  
`function PClose(var F: file) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `PClose` closes a file opened with `POpen` ([844](#)). It waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command.

For an example, see `POpen` ([844](#))

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors. If it is different from zero, the exit status is not valid.

See also: `POpen` ([844](#))

### 22.12.83 POpen

Synopsis: Pipe file to standard input/output of program

Declaration: `procedure POpen(var F: text; const Prog: String; rw: Char)`  
`procedure POpen(var F: file; const Prog: String; rw: Char)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** POpen runs the command specified in Cmd, and redirects the standard in or output of the command to the other end of the pipe F. The parameter rw indicates the direction of the pipe. If it is set to 'W', then F can be used to write data, which will then be read by the command from stdin. If it is set to 'R', then the standard output of the command can be read from F. F should be reset or rewritten prior to using it. F can be of type Text or File. A file opened with POpen can be closed with Close, but also with PClose (844). The result is the same, but PClose returns the exit status of the command Cmd.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in LinuxError and are essentially those of the Execve, Dup and AssignPipe commands.

See also: AssignPipe (795), PClose (844)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex37.pp

**Program** Example37;

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Popen function. }

uses oldlinux;

var f : text;
    i : longint;

begin
    writeln ('Creating a shell script to which echoes its arguments');
    writeln ('and input back to stdout');
    assign (f, 'test21a ');
    rewrite (f);
    writeln (f, '#!/bin/sh');
    writeln (f, 'echo this is the child speaking.... ');
    writeln (f, 'echo got arguments \*"${*}"\* ');
    writeln (f, 'cat ');
    writeln (f, 'exit 2 ');
    writeln (f);
    close (f);
    chmod ('test21a ', octal (755));
    popen (f, './test21a arg1 arg2 ', 'W');
    if linuxerror <> 0 then
        writeln ('error from POpen : Linuxerror : ', Linuxerror);
    for i:=1 to 10 do
        writeln (f, 'This is written to the pipe, and should appear on stdout. ');
    Flush(f);
    Writeln ('The script exited with status : ', PClose (f));
    writeln;
    writeln ('Press <return> to remove shell script. ');
    readln;
    assign (f, 'test21a ');
    erase (f)
end.
```

---

## 22.12.84 ReadDir

**Synopsis:** Read entry from directory

**Declaration:** function ReadDir(p: PDir) : pdirent

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ReadDir` reads the next entry in the directory pointed to by `p`. It returns a `pdirent` pointer to a structure describing the entry. If the next entry can't be read, `Nil` is returned.

For an example, see `OpenDir` (843).

**Errors:** Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `CloseDir` (803), `OpenDir` (843), `SeekDir` (847), `TellDir` (864)

## 22.12.85 ReadLink

**Synopsis:** Read destination of symbolic link

**Declaration:** `function ReadLink(name: pchar; linkname: pchar; maxlen: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function ReadLink(name: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ReadLink` returns the file the symbolic link name is pointing to. The first form of this function accepts a buffer `linkname` of length `maxlen` where the filename will be stored. It returns the actual number of characters stored in the buffer.

The second form of the function returns simply the name of the file.

**Errors:** On error, the first form of the function returns -1; the second one returns an empty string. `LinuxError` is set to report errors:

**SYS\_ENOTDIR**A part of the path in `Name` is not a directory.

**SYS\_EINVAL**`maxlen` is not positive, or the file is not a symbolic link.

**SYS\_ENAMETOOLONG**A pathname, or a component of a pathname, was too long.

**SYS\_ENOENT**the link name does not exist.

**SYS\_EACCES**No permission to search a directory in the path

**SYS\_ELOOP**Too many symbolic links were encountered in translating the pathname.

**SYS\_EIO**An I/O error occurred while reading from the file system.

**SYS\_EFAULT**The buffer is not part of the process's memory space.

**SYS\_ENOMEM**Not enough kernel memory was available.

See also: `SymLink` (856)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex62.pp`

---

**Program** `Example62`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the ReadLink function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux`;

**Var** `F : Text`;  
`S : String`;

**begin**  
`Assign (F, 'test.txt');`  
`Rewrite (F);`  
`WriteLn (F, 'This is written to test.txt');`

---

```

Close(f);
{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }
if not SymLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') then
  writeln ('Error when symlinking !');
S:=ReadLink('new.txt');
If S='' then
  Writeln ('Error reading link !')
Else
  Writeln ('Link points to : ',S);
{ Now remove links }
If not Unlink ('new.txt') then
  Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');
If not Unlink ('test.txt') then
  Writeln ('Error when unlinking !');
end.

```

---

### 22.12.86 ReadTimezoneFile

Synopsis: Read the timezone file and initialize time routines

Declaration: `procedure ReadTimezoneFile(fn: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadTimezoneFile` reads the timezone file `fn` and initializes the local time routines based on the information found there.

There should be no need to call this function. The initialization routines of the `linux` unit call this routine at unit startup.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTimezoneFile` ([832](#)), `GetLocalTimezone` ([829](#))

### 22.12.87 SeekDir

Synopsis: Seek to position in directory

Declaration: `procedure SeekDir(p: PDir; off: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SeekDir` sets the directory pointer to the `off`-th entry in the directory structure pointed to by `p`.

For an example, see `OpenDir` ([843](#)).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `CloseDir` ([803](#)), `ReadDir` ([845](#)), `OpenDir` ([843](#)), `TellDir` ([864](#))

### 22.12.88 Select

Synopsis: Wait for events on file descriptors

Declaration: `function Select(N: LongInt; readfds: pfdset; writefds: pfdset; exceptfds: pfdset; Timeout: ptimeval) : LongInt`  
`function Select(N: LongInt; readfds: pfdset; writefds: pfdset; exceptfds: pfdset; Timeout: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Select` checks one of the file descriptors in the `FDSet`s to see if its status changed.

`readfds`, `writefds` and `exceptfds` are pointers to arrays of 256 bits. If you want a file descriptor to be checked, you set the corresponding element in the array to 1. The other elements in the array must be set to zero. Three arrays are passed : The entries in `readfds` are checked to see if characters become available for reading. The entries in `writefds` are checked to see if it is OK to write to them, while entries in `exceptfds` are checked to see if an exception occurred on them.

You can use the functions `FD_ZERO` (818), `FD_Clr` (817), `FD_Set` (817) or `FD_IsSet` (817) to manipulate the individual elements of a set.

The pointers can be `Nil`.

`N` is the largest index of a nonzero entry plus 1. (= the largest file-descriptor + 1).

`Timeout` can be used to set a time limit. If `Timeout` can be two types :

1. `Timeout` is of type `PTime` and contains a zero time, the call returns immediately. If `Timeout` is `Nil`, the kernel will wait forever, or until a status changed.
2. `Timeout` is of type `Longint`. If it is -1, this has the same effect as a `Timeout` of type `PTime` which is `Nil`. Otherwise, `Timeout` contains a time in milliseconds.

When the `Timeout` is reached, or one of the file descriptors has changed, the `Select` call returns. On return, it will have modified the entries in the array which have actually changed, and it returns the number of entries that have been changed. If the timeout was reached, and no descriptor changed, zero is returned; The arrays of indexes are undefined after that. On error, -1 is returned.

Errors: On error, the function returns -1, and Errors are reported in `LinuxError` :

**SYS\_EBADF** An invalid descriptor was specified in one of the sets.

**SYS\_EINTR** A non blocked signal was caught.

**SYS\_EINVAL** `N` is negative or too big.

**SYS\_ENOMEM** `Select` was unable to allocate memory for its internal tables.

See also: `SelectText` (849), `GetFS` (827), `FD_ZERO` (818), `FD_Clr` (817), `FD_Set` (817), `FD_IsSet` (817)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex33.pp

**Program** Example33;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Select function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** FDS : `FDSet`;

**begin**

```

  FD_Zero (FDS);
  FD_Set (0,FDS);
  Writeln ('Press the <ENTER> to continue the program. ');
  { Wait until File descriptor 0 (=Input) changes }
  Select (1,@FDS,nil,nil,nil);
  { Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }
  readln;
  Writeln ('Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds... ');
  FD_Zero (FDS);
  FD_Set (0,FDS);

```

---

```

if Select (1,@FDS,nil ,nil ,2000)>0 then
  Writeln ( 'Thank you ! ' )
  { FD_ISSET(0,FDS) would be true here. }
else
  Writeln ( 'Too late ! ' );
end.

```

---

### 22.12.89 SelectText

Synopsis: Wait for event on typed ontyped file.

Declaration: `function SelectText(var T: Text;Timeout: ptimeval) : LongInt`  
`function SelectText(var T: Text;Timeout: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SelectText` executes the `Select` (847) call on a file of type `Text`. You can specify a timeout in `Timeout`. The `SelectText` call determines itself whether it should check for read or write, depending on how the file was opened : With `Reset` it is checked for reading, with `Rewrite` and `Append` it is checked for writing.

Errors: See `Select` (847). `SYS_EBADF` can also mean that the file wasn't opened.

See also: `Select` (847), `GetFS` (827)

### 22.12.90 SetDate

Synopsis: Set the current system date.

Declaration: `function SetDate(Year: Word;Month: Word;Day: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDate` sets the system date to year, month, day. This is the kernel date, so it is in GMT. The time is not touched. The function returns `True` if the call was executed corretly, `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** You must be root to execute this call.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError` (793)

See also: `GetDate` (824), `SetTime` (850), `SetDateTime` (849)

### 22.12.91 SetDateTime

Synopsis: Set the current system date and time

Declaration: `function SetDateTime(Year: Word;Month: Word;Day: Word;hour: Word;`  
`minute: Word;second: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDate` sets the system date and time to year, month, day, hour, min, Sec. This is the kernel date/time, so it is in GMT. The time is not touched. The function returns `True` if the call was executed corretly, `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** You must be root to execute this call.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError` (793)

See also: `SetDate` (849), `SetTime` (850), `GetDateTime` (824)

### 22.12.92 SetPriority

Synopsis: Set process priority

Declaration: `procedure SetPriority(Which: Integer;Who: Integer;What: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: SetPriority sets the priority with which a process is running. Which process(es) is determined by the Which and Who variables. Which can be one of the pre-defined constants:

**Prio\_Process**Who is interpreted as process ID

**Prio\_PGrp**Who is interpreted as process group ID

**Prio\_User**Who is interpreted as user ID

Prio is a value in the range -20 to 20.

For an example, see Nice (842).

Errors: Error checking must be done on `LinuxError`, since a priority can be negative.

**sys\_esrch**No process found using which and who.

**sys\_einval**Which was not one of Prio\_Process, Prio\_Grp or Prio\_User.

**sys\_eperm**A process was found, but neither its effective or real user ID match the effective user ID of the caller.

**sys\_eaccess**A non-superuser tried to a priority increase.

See also: GetPriority (830), Nice (842)

### 22.12.93 SetTime

Synopsis: Set the current system time.

Declaration: `function SetTime(Hour: Word;Min: Word;Sec: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: SetTime sets the system time to hour, min, Sec. This is the kernel time, so it is in GMT. The date is not touched. The function returns `True` if the call was executed correctly, `False` otherwise.

**Remark:** You must be root to execute this call.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError` (793)

See also: GetTime (831), SetDate (849), SetDateTime (849)

### 22.12.94 Shell

Synopsis: Execute and feed command to system shell

Declaration: `function Shell(const Command: String) : LongInt`  
`function Shell(const Command: AnsiString) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Shell invokes the bash shell (`/bin/sh`), and feeds it the command `Command` (using the `-c` option). The function then waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command, or 127 if it could not complete the `Fork` (820) or `Execve` (810) calls.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `POpen` (844), `Fork` (820), `Execve` (810)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex56.pp`

---

```

program example56;

uses oldlinux;

{ Program to demonstrate the Shell function }

Var S : Longint;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Output of ls -l *.pp' );
  S:=Shell ( 'ls -l *.pp' );
  WriteLn ( 'Command exited wwith status : ',S);
end.

```

---

### 22.12.95 SigAction

Synopsis: Install signal handler

Declaration: `procedure SigAction(Signum: LongInt; Act: PSigActionRec;  
OldAct: PSigActionRec)`

Visibility: default

Description: Changes the action to take upon receipt of a signal. `Act` and `Oldact` are pointers to a `SigActionRec` record. `SigNum` specifies the signal, and can be any signal except **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

If `Act` is non-nil, then the new action for signal `SigNum` is taken from it. If `OldAct` is non-nil, the old action is stored there. `Sa_Handler` may be `SIG_DFL` for the default action or `SIG_IGN` to ignore the signal. `Sa_Mask` Specifies which signals should be ignored during the execution of the signal handler. `Sa_Flags` Specifies a series of flags which modify the behaviour of the signal handler. You can 'or' none or more of the following :

**SA\_NOCLDSTOP**If `signum` is **SIGCHLD** do not receive notification when child processes stop.

**SA\_ONESHOT** or **SA\_RESETHAND**Restore the signal action to the default state once the signal handler has been called.

**SA\_RESTART**For compatibility with BSD signals.

**SA\_NOMASK** or **SA\_NODEFER**Do not prevent the signal from being received from within its own signal handler.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

**sys\_einval**an invalid signal was specified, or it was **SIGKILL** or **SIGSTOP**.

**sys\_efault**`Act` , `OldAct` point outside this process address space

**sys\_eintr**System call was interrupted.

See also: `SigProcMask` (853), `SigPending` (853), `SigSuspend` (855), `Kill` (835)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex57.pp`



---

```

Program example57;

{ Program to demonstrate the SigAction function. }

{
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.
replace pid with the real pid of this program.
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.
}

uses oldlinux;

Var
    oa, na : PSigActionRec;

Procedure DoSig(sig : Longint); cdecl;

begin
    writeln( 'Receiving signal: ', sig );
end;

begin
    new(na);
    new(oa);
    na^.Handler.sh:=@DoSig;
    na^.Sa_Mask:=0;
    na^.Sa_Flags:=0;
    na^.Sa_Restorer:=Nil;
    SigAction( SigUsr1, na, oa );
    if LinuxError <> 0 then
        begin
            writeln( 'Error: ', linuxerror, ' ');
            halt(1);
        end;
    Writeln( 'Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit ');
    readln;
end.

```

---

### 22.12.96 Signal

Synopsis: Install signal handler (deprecated)

Declaration: `function Signal(Signum: LongInt; Handler: SignalHandler) : SignalHandler`

Visibility: default

Description: `Signal` installs a new signal handler for signal `SigNum`. This call has the same functionality as the **SigAction** call. The return value for `Signal` is the old signal handler, or nil on error.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors :

**SIG\_ERR** An error occurred.

See also: `SigAction` ([851](#)), `Kill` ([835](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex58.pp

---

**Program** example58;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Signal function.}

{
do a kill -USR1 pid from another terminal to see what happens.
replace pid with the real pid of this program.
You can get this pid by running 'ps'.
}

uses oldlinux;

Procedure DoSig(sig : Longint);cdecl;

begin
  writeln('Receiving signal: ',sig);
end;

begin
  SigNal(SigUsr1,@DoSig);
  if LinuxError<>0 then
    begin
      writeln('Error: ',linuxerror, '.');
      halt(1);
    end;
  Writeln ('Send USR1 signal or press <ENTER> to exit');
  readln;
end.
```

---

### 22.12.97 SigPending

Synopsis: Return set of currently pending signals

Declaration: function SigPending : SigSet

Visibility: default

Description: Sigpending allows the examination of pending signals (which have been raised while blocked.) The signal mask of pending signals is returned.

Errors: None

See also: SigAction ([851](#)), SigProcMask ([853](#)), SigSuspend ([855](#)), Signal ([852](#)), Kill ([835](#))

### 22.12.98 SigProcMask

Synopsis: Set list of blocked signals

Declaration: procedure SigProcMask(How: LongInt; SSet: PSigSet; OldSSet: PSigSet)

Visibility: default

Description: Changes the list of currently blocked signals. The behaviour of the call depends on How :

**SIG\_BLOCK**The set of blocked signals is the union of the current set and the SSet argument.

**SIG\_UNBLOCK**The signals in SSet are removed from the set of currently blocked signals.

**SIG\_SETMASK**The list of blocked signals is set so SSet.

If OldSSet is non-nil, then the old set is stored in it.

Errors: LinuxError is used to report errors.

**sys\_efault**SSet or OldSSet point to an adress outside the range of the process.

**sys\_eintr**System call was interrupted.

See also: SigAction (851), SigPending (853), SigSuspend (855), Kill (835)

## 22.12.99 SigRaise

Synopsis: Raise a signal (send to current process)

Declaration: procedure SigRaise(Sig: Integer)

Visibility: default

Description: SigRaise sends a Sig signal to the current process.

Errors: None.

See also: Kill (835), GetPid (829)

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex65.pp

---

**Program** example64;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SigRaise function. }*

**uses** oldlinux;

**Var**

oa,na : PSigActionRec;

**Procedure** DoSig(sig : Longint);**cdecl**;

**begin**

**writeln**('Receiving signal: ',sig);

**end**;

**begin**

**new**(na);

**new**(oa);

na^.handler.sh:=@DoSig;

na^.Sa\_Mask:=0;

na^.Sa\_Flags:=0;

na^.Sa\_Restorer:=**Nil**;

SigAction(SigUsr1,na,oa);

**if** LinuxError<>0 **then**

**begin**

**writeln**('Error: ',linuxerror, '.');

**halt**(1);

**end**;

**Writeln**('Sending USR1 ( ',sigusr1, ') signal to self.');

SigRaise(sigusr1);

**end**.

---

### 22.12.100 SigSuspend

Synopsis: Set signal mask and suspend process till signal is received

Declaration: `procedure SigSuspend(Mask: SigSet)`

Visibility: default

Description: SigSuspend temporarily replaces the signal mask for the process with the one given in Mask, and then suspends the process until a signal is received.

Errors: None

See also: SigAction ([851](#)), SigProcMask ([853](#)), SigPending ([853](#)), Signal ([852](#)), Kill ([835](#))

### 22.12.101 StringToPPChar

Synopsis: Split string in list of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function StringToPPChar(var S: String) : ppchar`  
`function StringToPPChar(var S: AnsiString) : ppchar`  
`function StringToPPChar(S: Pchar) : ppchar`

Visibility: default

Description: StringToPPChar splits the string S in words, replacing any whitespace with zero characters. It returns a pointer to an array of pchars that point to the first letters of the words in S. This array is terminated by a Nil pointer.

The function does *not* add a zero character to the end of the string unless it ends on whitespace.

The function reserves memory on the heap to store the array of PChar; The caller is responsible for freeing this memory.

This function can be called to create arguments for the various Exec calls.

Errors: None.

See also: CreateShellArgV ([803](#)), Execve ([810](#)), Execv ([809](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex70.pp

---

**Program** Example70;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StringToPPchar function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**Var** S : **String**;  
P : PPChar;  
I : longint;

**begin**  
*// remark whitespace at end.*  
S:= 'This is a string with words. ';  
P:= StringToPPChar(S);  
I:=0;  
**While** P[I]<>Nil **do**  
**begin**  
**Writeln**( 'Word ',I, ' : ',P[I]);  
**Inc**(I);  
**end**

```

    end;
    FreeMem(P, i * SizeOf(Pchar));
end.

```

---

### 22.12.102 SymLink

Synopsis: Create a symbolic link

Declaration: `function SymLink(OldPath: PathStr; NewPath: PathStr) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SymLink` makes `Newpath` point to the file in `OldPath`, which doesn't necessarily exist. The two files DO NOT have the same inode number. This is known as a 'soft' link.

The permissions of the link are irrelevant, as they are not used when following the link. Ownership of the file is only checked in case of removal or renaming of the link.

The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` if the call failed.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_eperm** The filesystem containing `oldpath` and `newpath` does not support linking files.

**sys\_eaccess** Write access for the directory containing `Newpath` is disallowed, or one of the directories in `OldPath` or `NewPath` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent** A directory entry in `OldPath` or `NewPath` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

**sys\_enotdir** A directory entry in `OldPath` or `NewPath` is not a directory.

**sys\_enomem** Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs** The files are on a read-only filesystem.

**sys\_eexist** `NewPath` already exists.

**sys\_eloop** `OldPath` or `NewPath` has a reference to a circular symbolic link, i.e. a symbolic link, whose expansion points to itself.

**sys\_enospc** The device containing `NewPath` has no room for another entry.

See also: [Link \(835\)](#), [UnLink \(865\)](#), [ReadLink \(846\)](#)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex22.pp`

**Program** `Example22;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the SymLink and UnLink functions. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**Var** `F : Text;`  
`S : String;`

**begin**  
   Assign (F, 'test.txt');  
   Rewrite (F);  
   Writeln (F, 'This is written to test.txt');  
   Close(f);  
   *{ new.txt and test.txt are now the same file }*  
   if not SymLink ('test.txt', 'new.txt') then

---

```

    writeln ( 'Error when symlinking !' );
    { Removing test.txt still leaves new.txt
      Pointing now to a non-existent file ! }
    If not Unlink ( 'test.txt' ) then
        Writeln ( 'Error when unlinking !' );
    Assign ( f, 'new.txt' );
    { This should fail, since the symbolic link
      points to a non-existent file ! }
    { $i- }
    Reset ( F );
    { $i+ }
    If IOResult=0 then
        Writeln ( 'This shouldn't happen' );
    { Now remove new.txt also }
    If not Unlink ( 'new.txt' ) then
        Writeln ( 'Error when unlinking !' );
end.

```

---

### 22.12.103 SysCall

Synopsis: Execute system call.

Declaration: `function SysCall(callnr: LongInt; var regs: SysCallRegs) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysCall` can be used to execute a direct system call. The call parameters must be encoded in `regs` and the call number must be specified by `callnr`. The call result is returned, and any modified registers are in `regs`

Errors: None.

See also: `SysCallRegs` ([789](#))

### 22.12.104 Sysinfo

Synopsis: Return kernel system information

Declaration: `function Sysinfo(var Info: TSysinfo) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInfo` returns system information in `Info`. Returned information in `Info` includes:

**uptime** Number of seconds since boot.

**loads** 1, 5 and 15 minute load averages.

**totalram** total amount of main memory.

**freeram** amount of free memory.

**sharedram** amount of shared memory.

**bufferram** amount of memory used by buffers.

**totalswap** total amount of swapspace.

**freeswap** amount of free swapspace.

**procs** number of current processes.

Errors: None.

See also: Uname ([865](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex64.pp

---

```

program Example64;

{ Example to demonstrate the SysInfo function }

Uses oldlinux;

Function Mb(L : Longint) : longint;

begin
  Mb:=L div (1024*1024);
end;

Var Info : TSysInfo;
      D,M,Secs,H : longint;

begin
  If Not SysInfo(Info) then
    Halt(1);
  With Info do
    begin
      D:=Uptime div (3600*24);
      UpTime:=UpTime mod (3600*24);
      h:=uptime div 3600;
      uptime:=uptime mod 3600;
      m:=uptime div 60;
      secs:=uptime mod 60;
      Writeln( 'Uptime : ',d,'days', 'h,' hours', 'm,' min', 'secs,' s.' );
      Writeln( 'Loads   : ',Loads[1], '/' ,Loads[2], '/' ,Loads[3]);
      Writeln( 'Total Ram   : ',Mb(totalram), 'Mb.' );
      Writeln( 'Free Ram    : ',Mb(freeram), 'Mb.' );
      Writeln( 'Shared Ram  : ',Mb(sharedram), 'Mb.' );
      Writeln( 'Buffer Ram  : ',Mb(bufferram), 'Mb.' );
      Writeln( 'Total Swap  : ',Mb(totalswap), 'Mb.' );
      Writeln( 'Free Swap   : ',Mb(freeswap), 'Mb.' );
    end;
  end.

```

---

### 22.12.105 S\_ISBLK

Synopsis: Is file a block device

Declaration: function S\_ISBLK(m: Word) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: S\_ISBLK checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a block device file. If so it returns True.

See also: FStat ([823](#)), S\_ISLNK ([859](#)), S\_ISREG ([860](#)), S\_ISDIR ([859](#)), S\_ISCHR ([859](#)), S\_ISFIFO ([859](#)), S\_ISSOCK ([860](#))

### 22.12.106 S\_ISCHR

Synopsis: Is file a character device

Declaration: `function S_ISCHR(m: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `S_ISCHR` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a character device file. If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FStat` (823), `S_ISLNK` (859), `S_ISREG` (860), `S_ISDIR` (859), `S_ISBLK` (858), `S_ISFIFO` (859), `S_ISSOCK` (860)

### 22.12.107 S\_ISDIR

Synopsis: Is file a directory

Declaration: `function S_ISDIR(m: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `S_ISDIR` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a directory. If so it returns `True`

See also: `FStat` (823), `S_ISLNK` (859), `S_ISREG` (860), `S_ISCHR` (859), `S_ISBLK` (858), `S_ISFIFO` (859), `S_ISSOCK` (860)

### 22.12.108 S\_ISFIFO

Synopsis: Is file a FIFO

Declaration: `function S_ISFIFO(m: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `S_ISFIFO` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a fifo (a named pipe). If so it returns `True`.

See also: `FStat` (823), `S_ISLNK` (859), `S_ISREG` (860), `S_ISCHR` (859), `S_ISBLK` (858), `S_ISDIR` (859), `S_ISSOCK` (860)

### 22.12.109 S\_ISLNK

Synopsis: Is file a symbolic link

Declaration: `function S_ISLNK(m: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `S_ISLNK` checks the file mode `m` to see whether the file is a symbolic link. If so it returns `True`

See also: `FStat` (823), `S_ISFIFO` (859), `S_ISREG` (860), `S_ISCHR` (859), `S_ISBLK` (858), `S_ISDIR` (859), `S_ISSOCK` (860)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex53.pp`



---

```

Program Example53;

{ Program to demonstrate the S_ISLNK function. }

Uses oldlinux;

Var Info : Stat;

begin
  if LStat (paramstr(1),info) then
    begin
      if S_ISLNK(info.mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a link');
      if S_ISREG(info.mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a regular file');
      if S_ISDIR(info.mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a directory');
      if S_ISCHR(info.mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a character device file');
      if S_ISBLK(info.mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a block device file');
      if S_ISFIFO(info.mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a named pipe (FIFO)');
      if S_ISSOCK(info.mode) then
        WriteLn ('File is a socket');
      end;
    end.

```

---

### 22.12.110 S\_ISREG

Synopsis: Is file a regular file

Declaration: function S\_ISREG(m: Word) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: S\_ISREG checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a regular file. If so it returns True

See also: FStat ([823](#)), S\_ISFIFO ([859](#)), S\_ISLNK ([859](#)), S\_ISCHR ([859](#)), S\_ISBLK ([858](#)), S\_ISDIR ([859](#)), S\_ISSOCK ([860](#))

### 22.12.111 S\_ISSOCK

Synopsis: Is file a unix socket

Declaration: function S\_ISSOCK(m: Word) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: S\_ISSOCK checks the file mode m to see whether the file is a socket. If so it returns True.

See also: FStat ([823](#)), S\_ISFIFO ([859](#)), S\_ISLNK ([859](#)), S\_ISCHR ([859](#)), S\_ISBLK ([858](#)), S\_ISDIR ([859](#)), S\_ISREG ([860](#))

### 22.12.112 TCDrain

Synopsis: Terminal control: Wait till all data was transmitted

Declaration: `function TCDrain(fd: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TCDrain` waits until all data to file descriptor `Fd` is transmitted.

The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`

See also: `TCFlow` (861), `TCFlush` (861), `TCGetAttr` (862), `TCGetPGrp` (862), `TCSendBreak` (863), `TCSetAttr` (863), `TCSetPGrp` (864), `TTYName` (864), `IsATTY` (835)

### 22.12.113 TCFlow

Synopsis: Terminal control: Suspend transmission of data

Declaration: `function TCFlow(fd: LongInt;act: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TCFlow` suspends/resumes transmission or reception of data to or from the file descriptor `Fd`, depending on the action `Act`.

This can be one of the following pre-defined values:

**TCOOFF**suspend reception/transmission

**TCOON**resume reception/transmission

**TCIOFF**transmit a stop character to stop input from the terminal

**TCION**transmit start to resume input from the terminal.

The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `TCDrain` (861), `TCFlow` (861), `TCGetAttr` (862), `TCGetPGrp` (862), `TCSendBreak` (863), `TCSetAttr` (863), `TCSetPGrp` (864), `TTYName` (864), `IsATTY` (835)

### 22.12.114 TCFlush

Synopsis: Terminal control: Discard data buffer

Declaration: `function TCFlush(fd: LongInt;qsel: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TCFlush` discards all data sent or received to/from file descriptor `fd`. `QSel` indicates which queue should be discard. It can be one of the following pre-defined values :

**TCIFLUSH**input buffer

**TCOFLUSH**output buffer

**TCIOFLUSH**both input and output buffers

The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `TCDrain` (861), `TCFlow` (861), `TCGetAttr` (862), `TCGetPGrp` (862), `TCSendBreak` (863), `TCSetAttr` (863), `TCSetPGrp` (864), `TTYName` (864), `IsATTY` (835)

**22.12.115 TCGetAttr**

Synopsis: Terminal Control: Get terminal attributes

Declaration: `function TCGetAttr(fd: LongInt;var tios: Termios) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: TCGetAttr gets the terminal parameters from the terminal referred to by the file descriptor `fd` and returns them in a `TermIOS` structure `tios`. The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` otherwise.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`

See also: `TCDrain` (861), `TCFlow` (861), `TCFlush` (861), `TCGetPGrp` (862), `TCSendBreak` (863), `TCSetAttr` (863), `TCSetPGrp` (864), `TTYName` (864), `IsATTY` (835)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex55.pp`

---

**Program** Example55;

**uses** oldlinux;

*{ Program to demonstrate the TCGetAttr/TCSetAttr/CFMakeRaw functions. }*

**procedure** ShowTermios(**var** tios:Termios);

**begin**

**WriteLn**('Input Flags : \$',hexstr(tios.c\_iflag,8)+#13);

**WriteLn**('Output Flags : \$',hexstr(tios.c\_oflag,8));

**WriteLn**('Line Flags : \$',hexstr(tios.c\_lflag,8));

**WriteLn**('Control Flags: \$',hexstr(tios.c\_cflag,8));

**end**;

**var**

    oldios ,

    tios : Termios;

**begin**

**WriteLn**('Old attributes:');

    TCGetAttr(1,tios);

    ShowTermios(tios);

    oldios:=tios;

**WriteLn**('Setting raw terminal mode');

    CFMakeRaw(tios);

    TCSetAttr(1,TCSANOW,tios);

**WriteLn**('Current attributes:');

    TCGetAttr(1,tios);

    ShowTermios(tios);

    TCSetAttr(1,TCSANOW,oldios);

**end**.

---

**22.12.116 TCGetPGrp**

Synopsis: Terminal control: Get process group

Declaration: `function TCGetPGrp(fd: LongInt;var id: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `TCGetPGrp` returns the process group ID of a foreground process group in `Id`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

**See also:** `TCDrain` (861), `TCFlow` (861), `TCFlush` (861), `TCGetAttr` (862), `TCSendBreak` (863), `TCSetAttr` (863), `TCSetPGrp` (864), `TTYName` (864), `IsATTY` (835)

### 22.12.117 TCSendBreak

**Synopsis:** Terminal control: Send break

**Declaration:** `function TCSendBreak(fd: LongInt;duration: LongInt) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TCSendBreak` Sends zero-valued bits on an asynchronouse serial connection described by file-descriptor `Fd`, for duration `Duration`. The function returns `True` if the action was performed successfully, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

**See also:** `TCDrain` (861), `TCFlow` (861), `TCFlush` (861), `TCGetAttr` (862), `TCGetPGrp` (862), `TCSetAttr` (863), `TCSetPGrp` (864), `TTYName` (864), `IsATTY` (835)

### 22.12.118 TCSetAttr

**Synopsis:** Terminal control: Set attributes

**Declaration:** `function TCSetAttr(fd: LongInt;OptAct: LongInt;const tios: Termios) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TCSetAttr` sets the terminal parameters you specify in a `TermIOS` structure `Tios` for the terminal referred to by the file descriptor `Fd`.

`OptAct` specifies an optional action when the set need to be done, this could be one of the following pre-defined values:

**TCSANOW**set immediately.

**TCSADRAIN**wait for output.

**TCSAFLUSH**wait for output and discard all input not yet read.

The function Returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `TCGetAttr` (862).

**Errors:** Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

**See also:** `TCDrain` (861), `TCFlow` (861), `TCFlush` (861), `TCGetAttr` (862), `TCGetPGrp` (862), `TCSendBreak` (863), `TCSetPGrp` (864), `TTYName` (864), `IsATTY` (835)

### 22.12.119 TCSetsPGrp

Synopsis: Terminal control: Set process group

Declaration: `function TCSetsPGrp(fd: LongInt;id: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TCSetsPGrp` Sets the Process Group Id to `Id`. The function returns `True` if the call was successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `TCGetPGrp` (862).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `TCDrain` (861), `TCFlow` (861), `TCFlush` (861), `TCGetAttr` (862), `TCGetPGrp` (862), `TCSendBreak` (863), `TCSetAttr` (863), `TTYName` (864), `IsATTY` (835)

### 22.12.120 Telldir

Synopsis: Return current location in a directory

Declaration: `function Telldir(p: PDir) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Telldir` returns the current location in the directory structure pointed to by `p`. It returns `-1` on failure.

For an example, see `OpenDir` (843).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `CloseDir` (803), `ReadDir` (845), `SeekDir` (847), `OpenDir` (843)

### 22.12.121 TTYname

Synopsis: Terminal control: Get terminal name

Declaration: `function TTYname(Handle: LongInt) : String`  
`function TTYname(var F: Text) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `TTYName` Returns the name of the terminal pointed to by `f`. `f` must be a terminal. `f` can be of type:

1. `longint` for file handles;
2. `Text` for text variables such as `input` etc.

Errors: Returns an empty string in case of an error. `Linuxerror` may be set to indicate what error occurred, but this is uncertain.

See also: `TCDrain` (861), `TCFlow` (861), `TCFlush` (861), `TCGetAttr` (862), `TCGetPGrp` (862), `TCSendBreak` (863), `TCSetAttr` (863), `TCSetPGrp` (864), `IsATTY` (835), `IOctl` (833)

**22.12.122 Umask**

Synopsis: Set file creation mask.

Declaration: `function Umask(Mask: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: Change the file creation mask for the current user to Mask. The current mask is returned.

See also: Chmod ([799](#))

**Listing:** ./olinuxex/ex27.pp

---

**Program** Example27;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Umask function. }*

**Uses** oldlinux;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Old Umask was : ', Umask(Octal(111)));

**WRiteLn** ( 'New Umask is : ', Octal(111));

**end.**

---

**22.12.123 Uname**

Synopsis: Return system name.

Declaration: `function Uname(var unamerec: utsname) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Uname gets the name and configuration of the current linux kernel, and returns it in unamerec.

Errors: `LinuxError` is used to report errors.

See also: `GetHostName` ([828](#)), `GetDomainName` ([825](#))

**22.12.124 UnLink**

Synopsis: Unlink (i.e. remove) a file.

Declaration: `function UnLink(Path: PathStr) : Boolean`  
               `function UnLink(Path: pchar) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `UnLink` decreases the link count on file Path. Path can be of type PathStr or PChar. If the link count is zero, the file is removed from the disk. The function returns `True` if the call was succesfull, `False` if the call failed.

For an example, see `Link` ([835](#)).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_eaccess** You have no write access right in the directory containing Path, or you have no search permission in one of the directory components of Path.

**sys\_eperm**The directory containing pathname has the sticky-bit set and the process's effective uid is neither the uid of the file to be deleted nor that of the directory containing it.

**sys\_enoent**A component of the path doesn't exist.

**sys\_enotdir**A directory component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eisdir**Path refers to a directory.

**sys\_enomem**Insufficient kernel memory.

**sys\_erofs**Path is on a read-only filesystem.

See also: [Link \(835\)](#), [SymLink \(856\)](#)

### 22.12.125 Utime

Synopsis: Set access and modification times of a file (touch).

Declaration: `function Utime(const path: PathStr; utim: UTimeBuf) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Utime` sets the access and modification times of a file. the `utimbuf` record contains 2 fields, `actime`, and `modtime`, both of type `Longint`. They should be filled with an epoch-like time, specifying, respectively, the last access time, and the last modification time. For some filesystem (most notably, FAT), these times are the same.

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

**sys\_eaccess**One of the directories in `Path` has no search (=execute) permission.

**sys\_enoent**A directory entry in `Path` does not exist or is a symbolic link pointing to a non-existent directory.

Other errors may occur, but aren't documented.

See also: [GetEpochTime \(826\)](#), [Chown \(800\)](#), [Access \(793\)](#)

**Listing:** `./olinuxex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `Example25;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the UTime function. }*

**Uses** `oldlinux;`

**Var** `utim : utimbuf;`  
`year, month, day, hour, minute, second : Word;`

**begin**  
*{ Set access and modification time of executable source }*  
`GetTime ( hour, minute, second );`  
`GetDate ( year, month, day );`  
`utim.actime := LocalToEpoch ( year, month, day, hour, minute, second );`  
`utim.modtime := utim.actime;`  
**if not** `Utime ( 'ex25.pp', utim ) then`  
    `writeln ( 'Call to UTime failed ! ' )`  
**else**  
    **begin**  
        `Write ( 'Set access and modification times to : ' );`  
        `Write ( Hour:2, ': ', minute:2, ': ', second, ' , ' );`  
    **end**

```

    WriteLn (Day:2, ' / ', month:2, ' / ', year:4);
end;
end.

```

---

### 22.12.126 WaitPid

Synopsis: Wait for a process to terminate

Declaration: `function WaitPid(Pid: LongInt; Status: pointer; Options: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WaitPid` waits for a child process with process ID `Pid` to exit. The value of `Pid` can be one of the following:

**Pid < -1** Causes `WaitPid` to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the absolute value of `pid`.

**Pid = -1** Causes `WaitPid` to wait for any child process.

**Pid = 0** Causes `WaitPid` to wait for any child process whose process group ID equals the one of the calling process.

**Pid > 0** Causes `WaitPid` to wait for the child whose process ID equals the value of `Pid`.

The `Options` parameter can be used to specify further how `WaitPid` behaves:

**WNOHANG** Causes `Waitpid` to return immediately if no child has exited.

**WUNTRACED** Causes `WaitPid` to return also for children which are stopped, but whose status has not yet been reported.

**\_\_WCLONE** Causes `WaitPid` also to wait for threads created by the `Clone` (801) call.

Upon return, it returns the exit status of the process, or -1 in case of failure.

For an example, see `Fork` (820).

Errors: Errors are returned in `LinuxError`.

See also: `Fork` (820), `Execve` (810)

### 22.12.127 WaitProcess

Synopsis: Wait for process to terminate.

Declaration: `function WaitProcess(Pid: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WaitProcess` waits for process `PID` to exit. `WaitProcess` is equivalent to the `WaitPID` (867) call:

```
WaitPid(PID, @result, 0)
```

Handles of Signal interrupts (`errno=EINTR`), and returns the Exitcode of Process `PID` (`>=0`) or - Status if it was terminated

Errors: None.

See also: `WaitPID` (867), `WTERMSIG` (869), `WSTOPSIG` (869), `WIFEXITED` (868), `WIFSTOPPED` (868), `WIFSIGNALED` (868), `W_EXITCODE` (869), `W_STOPCODE` (869), `WEXITSTATUS` (868)



### 22.12.128 WEXITSTATUS

Synopsis: Extract the exit status from the WaitPID (867) result.

Declaration: `function WEXITSTATUS(Status: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: WEXITSTATUS can be used to extract the exit status from Status, the result of the WaitPID (867) call.

See also: WaitPID (867), WaitProcess (867), WTERMSIG (869), WSTOPSIG (869), WIFEXITED (868), WIFSTOPPED (868), WIFSIGNALED (868), W\_EXITCODE (869), W\_STOPCODE (869)

### 22.12.129 WIFEXITED

Synopsis: Check whether the process exited normally

Declaration: `function WIFEXITED(Status: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: WIFEXITED checks Status and returns True if the status indicates that the process terminated normally, i.e. was not stopped by a signal.

See also: WaitPID (867), WaitProcess (867), WTERMSIG (869), WSTOPSIG (869), WIFSTOPPED (868), WIFSIGNALED (868), W\_EXITCODE (869), W\_STOPCODE (869), WEXITSTATUS (868)

### 22.12.130 WIFSIGNALED

Synopsis: Check whether the process was exited by a signal.

Declaration: `function WIFSIGNALED(Status: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: WIFSIGNALED returns True if Status indicates that the process exited because it received a signal.

See also: WaitPID (867), WaitProcess (867), WTERMSIG (869), WSTOPSIG (869), WIFEXITED (868), WIFSTOPPED (868), W\_EXITCODE (869), W\_STOPCODE (869), WEXITSTATUS (868)

### 22.12.131 WIFSTOPPED

Synopsis: Check whether the process is currently stopped.

Declaration: `function WIFSTOPPED(Status: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: WIFSTOPPED checks Status and returns true if the process is currently stopped. This is only possible if WUNTRACED was specified in the options of WaitPID (867).

See also: WaitPID (867), WaitProcess (867), WTERMSIG (869), WSTOPSIG (869), WIFEXITED (868), WIFSIGNALED (868), W\_EXITCODE (869), W\_STOPCODE (869), WEXITSTATUS (868)

### 22.12.132 WSTOPSIG

Synopsis: Return the exit code from the process.

Declaration: `function WSTOPSIG(Status: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: WSTOPSIG is an alias for WEXITSTATUS (868).

See also: WaitPID (867), WaitProcess (867), WTERMSIG (869), WIFEXITED (868), WIFSTOPPED (868), WIFSIGNALED (868), W\_EXITCODE (869), W\_STOPCODE (869), WEXITSTATUS (868)

### 22.12.133 WTERMSIG

Synopsis: Return the signal that caused a process to exit.

Declaration: `function WTERMSIG(Status: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: WTERMSIG extracts from Status the signal number which caused the process to exit.

See also: WaitPID (867), WaitProcess (867), WSTOPSIG (869), WIFEXITED (868), WIFSTOPPED (868), WIFSIGNALED (868), W\_EXITCODE (869), W\_STOPCODE (869), WEXITSTATUS (868)

### 22.12.134 W\_EXITCODE

Synopsis: Construct an exit status based on an return code and signal.

Declaration: `function W_EXITCODE(ReturnCode: Integer;Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: W\_EXITCODE combines ReturnCode and Signal to a status code fit for WaitPid.

See also: WaitPID (867), WaitProcess (867), WTERMSIG (869), WSTOPSIG (869), WIFEXITED (868), WIFSTOPPED (868), WIFSIGNALED (868), W\_STOPCODE (869), WEXITSTATUS (868)

### 22.12.135 W\_STOPCODE

Synopsis: Construct an exit status based on a signal.

Declaration: `function W_STOPCODE(Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: W\_STOPCODE constructs an exit status based on Signal, which will cause WIFSIGNALED (868) to return True

See also: WaitPID (867), WaitProcess (867), WTERMSIG (869), WSTOPSIG (869), WIFEXITED (868), WIFSTOPPED (868), WIFSIGNALED (868), W\_EXITCODE (869), WEXITSTATUS (868)

## Chapter 23

# Reference for unit 'ports'

### 23.1 Overview

The ports unit implements the `port` constructs found in Turbo Pascal. It uses classes and default array properties to do this.

The unit exists on linux, os/2 and dos. It is implemented only for compatibility with Turbo Pascal. It's usage is discouraged, because using ports is not portable programming, and the operating system may not even allow it (for instance Windows).

Under linux, your program must be run as root, or the `IOPerm` call must be set in order to set appropriate permissions on the port access.

### 23.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 23.2.1 Variables

`port : tport`

Default instance of type `TPort` ([871](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
port[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the integer 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type `tport`

`portb : tport`

Default instance of type `TPort` ([871](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portb[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the byte 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type `tport`

```
portl : tportl
```

Default instance of type TPortL ([871](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portl[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the longint 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type tport

```
portw : tportw
```

Default instance of type TPortW ([872](#)). Do not free. This variable is initialized in the unit initialization code, and freed at finalization.

Since there is a default property for a variable of this type, a sentence as

```
portb[221]:=12;
```

Will result in the word 12 being written to port 221, if port is defined as a variable of type tport

## 23.3 tport

### 23.3.1 Description

The TPort type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

### 23.3.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">871</a>	pp	rw	Access integer-sized port by port number

### 23.3.3 tport.pp

Synopsis: Access integer-sized port by port number

Declaration: Property pp[w: LongInt]: Byte; default

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: Access integer-sized port by port number

## 23.4 tportl

### 23.4.1 Description

The TPortL type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

### 23.4.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">872</a>	pp	rw	Access Longint-sized port by port number

### 23.4.3 tportl.pp

Synopsis: Access Longint-sized port by port number

Declaration: `Property pp[w: LongInt]: LongInt; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: Access Longint-sized port by port number

## 23.5 tportw

### 23.5.1 Description

The TPortW type is implemented specially for access to the ports in a TP compatible manner. There is no need to create an instance of this type: the standard TP variables are instantiated at unit initialization.

### 23.5.2 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">872</a>	pp	rw	Access word-sized port by port number

### 23.5.3 tportw.pp

Synopsis: Access word-sized port by port number

Declaration: `Property pp[w: LongInt]: Word; default`

Visibility: `public`

Access: Read,Write

Description: Access word-sized port by port number

## Chapter 24

# Reference for unit 'printer'

### 24.1 Overview

This chapter describes the PRINTER unit for Free Pascal. It was written for dos by Florian Klaempfl, and it was written for linux by Michael Van Canneyt, and has been ported to Windows and os/2 as well. Its basic functionality is the same for all supported systems, although there are minor differences on linux/unix.

### 24.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 24.2.1 Variables

`Lst : text`

`Lst` is the standard printing device.

On linux, `Lst` is set up using `AssignLst( '/tmp/PID.lst' )`.

### 24.3 Procedures and functions

#### 24.3.1 AssignLst

Synopsis: Assign text file to printing device

Declaration: `procedure AssignLst(var F: text;ToFile: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AssignLst` Assigns to `F` a printing device - *Unix only*. `ToFile` is a string with the following form:

- `'|filename options'` : This sets up a pipe with the program filename, with the given options, such as in the `popen()` call.
- `'filename'` : Prints to file filename. Filename can contain the string 'PID' (No Quotes), which will be replaced by the PID of your program. When closing `lst`, the file will be sent to `lpr` and deleted. (`lpr` should be in `PATH`)
- `{ 'filename| ' }` Idem as previous, only the file is NOT sent to `lpr`, nor is it deleted. (useful for opening `/dev/printer` or for later printing)

Errors: Errors are reported in `Linuxerror`.

See also: `lst` ([873](#))

**Listing:** `./printex/printex.pp`

---

```

program testprn;

uses printer;

var i : integer;
    f : text;

begin
  writeln ('Test of printer unit');
  writeln ('Writing to lst...');
  for i:=1 to 80 do writeln (lst, 'This is line ', i, '.' #13);
  close (lst);
  writeln ('Done. ');
  {$ifdef Unix}
  writeln ('Writing to pipe...');
  assignlst (f, '|/usr/bin/lpr -m');
  rewrite (f);
  for i:=1 to 80 do writeln (f, 'This is line ', i, '.' #13);
  close (f);
  writeln ('Done. ')
  {$endif}
end.

```

---

### 24.3.2 InitPrinter

Synopsis: Initialize the printer

Declaration: `procedure InitPrinter(const PrinterName: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: Initialize the printer

### 24.3.3 IsLstAvailable

Synopsis: Determine whether printer is available.

Declaration: `function IsLstAvailable : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Determine whether printer is available.

## Chapter 25

# Reference for unit 'Sockets'

### 25.1 Used units

Table 25.1: Used units by unit 'Sockets'

Name	Page
UnixType	<a href="#">875</a>

### 25.2 Overview

This document describes the SOCKETS unit for Free Pascal. it was written for linux by Michael Van Canneyt, and ported to Windows by Florian Klaempfl.

### 25.3 Constants, types and variables

#### 25.3.1 Constants

`AF_APPLETALK = 16`

Socket domain: Appletalk DDP

`AF_ATM = 30`

Address family: ?

`AF_CCITT = 10`

Address family: ?

`AF_CHAOS = 5`

Address family: ?



AF\_CNT = 21

Address family: ?

AF\_COIP = 20

Address family: ?

AF\_DATAKIT = 9

Address family: ?

AF\_DECnet = 12

Address family: Reserved for DECnet project.

AF\_DLI = 13

Address family: ?

AF\_E164 = AF\_ISDN

Address family: ?

AF\_ECMA = 8

Address family: ?

AF\_FILE = PF\_FILE

Address family: Unix socket (alias)

AF\_HYLINK = 15

Address family: ?

AF\_IMPLINK = 3

Address family: ?

AF\_INET = PF\_INET

Socket domain: Internet IP Protocol

AF\_INET6 = 28

Socket domain: IP version 6

AF\_IPX = 23

Socket domain: Novell IPX

AF\_ISDN = 26

Address family: ?

AF\_ISO = 7

Address family: ?

AF\_LAT = 14

Address family: ?

AF\_LINK = 18

Address family: ?

AF\_LOCAL = PF\_LOCAL

Address family: Unix socket

AF\_MAX = 33

Socket domain: Maximum value

AF\_NATM = 29

Address family: ?

AF\_NETGRAPH = 32

Address family: ?

AF\_NS = 6

Address family: ?

AF\_OSI = AF\_ISO

Address family: ?

AF\_PUP = 4

Address family: ?

AF\_ROUTE = 17

Address family: Alias to emulate 4.4BSD.

AF\_SIP = 24

Address family: ?

AF\_SNA = 11

Address family: Linux SNA project

AF\_UNIX = PF\_UNIX

Socket domain: Unix domain sockets

AF\_UNSPEC = PF\_UNSPEC

Socket domain: Not specified

MSG\_CONFIRM = 0x0000

Send flags: Confirm connection

MSG\_CTRUNC = 0x0008

Receive flags: Control Data was discarded (buffer too small)

MSG\_DONTROUTE = 0x0004

Send flags: don't use gateway

MSG\_DONTWAIT = 0x0040

Receive flags: Non-blocking operation request.

MSG\_EOR = 0x0080

Receive flags: End of record

MSG\_ERRQUEUE = 0x2000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_FIN = 0x0200

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_MORE = 0x8000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_NOSIGNAL = 0x4000

Receive flags: Suppress SIG\_PIPE signal.

MSG\_OOB = 0x0001

Receive flags: receive out-of-band data.

MSG\_PEEK = \$0002

Receive flags: peek at data, don't remove from buffer.

MSG\_PROXY = \$0010

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_RST = \$1000

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_SYN = \$0400

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_TRUNC = \$0020

Receive flags: packet Data was discarded (buffer too small)

MSG\_TRYHARD = MSG\_DONTROUTE

Receive flags: ?

MSG\_WAITALL = \$0100

Receive flags: Wait till operation completed.

NoAddress : in\_addr = (s\_addr:0 )

Constant indicating invalid (no) network address.

NoAddress6 : Tin6\_addr = (u6\_addr16: ( 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0 ) )

Constant indicating invalid (no) IPV6 network address.

NoNet : in\_addr = (s\_addr:0 )

Constant indicating invalid (no) network address.

NoNet6 : Tin6\_addr = (u6\_addr16: ( 0,0,0,0,0,0,0,0 ) )

Constant indicating invalid (no) IPV6 network address.

PF\_APPLETALK = AF\_APPLETALK

Protocol family: Appletalk DDP

PF\_ATM = AF\_ATM

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_CCITT = AF\_CCITT

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_CHAOS = AF\_CHAOS

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_CNT = AF\_CNT

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_COIP = AF\_COIP

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_DATAKIT = AF\_DATAKIT

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_DECnet = AF\_DECnet

Protocol Family: DECNET project

PF\_DLI = AF\_DLI

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_ECMA = AF\_ECMA

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_FILE = PF\_LOCAL

Protocol family: Unix socket (alias)

PF\_HYLINK = AF\_HYLINK

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_IMPLINK = AF\_IMPLINK

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_INET = 2

Protocol family: Internet IP Protocol

PF\_INET6 = AF\_INET6

Protocol family: IP version 6

PF\_IPX = AF\_IPX

Protocol family: Novell IPX

PF\_ISDN = AF\_ISDN

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_ISO = AF\_ISO

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_KEY = pseudo\_AF\_KEY

Protocol family: Key management API

PF\_LAT = AF\_LAT

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_LINK = AF\_LINK

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_LOCAL = 1

Protocol family: Unix socket

PF\_MAX = AF\_MAX

Protocol family: Maximum value

PF\_NATM = AF\_NATM

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_NETGRAPH = AF\_NETGRAPH

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_NS = AF\_NS

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_OSI = AF\_ISO

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_PIP = pseudo\_AF\_PIP

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_PUP = AF\_PUP

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_ROUTE = AF\_ROUTE

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_RTIP = pseudo\_AF\_RTIP

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_SIP = AF\_SIP

Protocol Family: ?

PF\_SNA = AF\_SNA

Protocol Family: Linux SNA project

PF\_UNIX = PF\_LOCAL

Protocol family: Unix domain sockets

PF\_UNSPEC = 0

Protocol family: Unspecified

PF\_XTP = pseudo\_AF\_XTP

Protocol Family: ?

pseudo\_AF\_HDRCMPLT = 31

Address family: ?

pseudo\_AF\_KEY = 27

Address family: key management API.

pseudo\_AF\_PIP = 25

Address family: ?

pseudo\_AF\_RTIP = 22

Address family: ?

pseudo\_AF\_XTP = 19

Address family: ?

SCM\_TIMESTAMP = SO\_TIMESTAMP

Socket option: ?

SHUT\_RD = 0

Shutdown read part of full duplex socket

SHUT\_RDWR = 2

Shutdown read and write part of full duplex socket

SHUT\_WR = 1

Shutdown write part of full duplex socket

SOCK\_DGRAM = 2

Type of socket: datagram (conn.less) socket (UDP)

SOCK\_MAXADDRLEN = 255

Maximum socket address length for Bind (889) call.

SOCK\_RAW = 3

Type of socket: raw socket

SOCK\_RDM = 4

Type of socket: reliably-delivered message

SOCK\_SEQPACKET = 5

Type of socket: sequential packet socket

SOCK\_STREAM = 1

Type of socket: stream (connection) type socket (TCP)

SOL\_SOCKET = 1

Socket option level: Socket level

SO\_ACCEPTCONN = 30

Socket option: ?

SO\_ATTACH\_FILTER = 26

Socket option: ?



SO\_BINDTODEVICE = 25

Socket option: ?

SO\_BROADCAST = 6

Socket option: Broadcast

SO\_BSDCOMPAT = 14

Socket option: ?

SO\_DEBUG = 1

Socket option level: debug

SO\_DETACH\_FILTER = 27

Socket option: ?

SO\_DONTROUTE = 5

Socket option: Don't route

SO\_ERROR = 4

Socket option: Error

SO\_KEEPAIVE = 9

Socket option: keep alive

SO\_LINGER = 13

Socket option: ?

SO\_NO\_CHECK = 11

Socket option: ?

SO\_OOBINLINE = 10

Socket option: ?

SO\_PASSCRED = 16

Socket option: ?

SO\_PEERCREC = 17

Socket option: ?

SO\_PEERNAME = 28

Socket option: ?

SO\_PRIORITY = 12

Socket option: ?

SO\_RCVBUF = 8

Socket option: receive buffer

SO\_RCVLOWAT = 18

Socket option: ?

SO\_RCVTIMEO = 20

Socket option: ?

SO\_REUSEADDR = 2

Socket option: Reuse address

SO\_SECURITY\_AUTHENTICATION = 22

Socket option: ?

SO\_SECURITY\_ENCRYPTION\_NETWORK = 24

Socket option: ?

SO\_SECURITY\_ENCRYPTION\_TRANSPORT = 23

Socket option: ?

SO\_SNDBUF = 7

Socket option: Send buffer

SO\_SNDLOWAT = 19

Socket option: ?

SO\_SNDTIMEO = 21

Socket option: ?

SO\_TIMESTAMP = 29

Socket option: ?

SO\_TYPE = 3

Socket option: Type

S\_IN = 0

Input socket in socket pair.

S\_OUT = 1

Output socket in socket pair

### 25.3.2 Types

```
in_addr = packed record
end
```

General inet socket address.

```
in_addrbytes = packed Array[1..4] of Byte
```

in\_addrbytes is used to typecast a in\_addr (886) record to an array of bytes.

```
pIn6_Addr = ^Tin6_addr
```

Pointer to Tin6\_addr (887)

```
pInetSockAddr = ^TInetSockAddr
```

Pointer to TInetSockAddr (887)

```
pin_addr = ^in_addr
```

Pointer to in\_addr (886) record.

```
PSockAddr = ^TSockAddr
```

Pointer to TSockAddr (887)

```
psockaddr_in6 = ^sockaddr_in6
```

Pointer to sockaddr\_in6 (887)

```
sa_family_t = cushort
```

Address family type

```
SockAddr = TSockAddr
```

Alias for TSockAddr (887) record type.

```
sockaddr_in6 = TInetSockAddr6
```

Alias for TInetSockAddr6 ([887](#))

```
Tin6_addr = packed record
end
```

Alias for TInetSockAddr6 ([887](#))

```
TInAddr = in_addr
```

Alias for in\_addr ([886](#)) record type.

```
TInetSockAddr = packed record
end
```

TUnixSockAddr is used to store a INET socket address for the Bind ([889](#)), Recv ([898](#)) and Send ([899](#)) calls.

```
TInetSockAddr6 = packed record
  sin6_family : sa_family_t;
  sin6_port : cuint16;
  sin6_flowinfo : cuint32;
  sin6_addr : Tin6_addr;
  sin6_scope_id : cuint32;
end
```

Record for IPV6 socket address.

```
TIn_addr = in_addr
```

Alias for in\_addr ([886](#)) record type.

```
TSockAddr = packed record
end
```

TUnixSockAddr is used to store a general socket address for the Bind ([889](#)), Recv ([898](#)) and Send ([899](#)) calls.

```
TSockArray = Array[1..2] of LongInt
```

Type returned by the SocketPair ([903](#)) call.

```
TSockPairArray = Array[0..1] of LongInt
```

Array of sockets, used in SocketPair ([903](#)) call.

```

TUnixSockAddr = packed record
  family : sa_family_t;
  path : Array[0..107] of Char;
end

```

TUnixSockAddr is used to store a UNIX socket address for the Bind (889), Recv (898) and Send (899) calls.

### 25.3.3 Variables

```
SocketError : cint
```

SocketError contains the error code for the last socket operation. It can be examined to return the last socket error.

## 25.4 Procedures and functions

### 25.4.1 Accept

Synopsis: Accept a connection from a socket.

```

Declaration: function Accept(Sock: LongInt;var Addr;var AddrLen: LongInt) : LongInt
function Accept(Sock: LongInt;var addr: TInetSockAddr;var SockIn: File;
               var SockOut: File) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt;var addr: TInetSockAddr;var SockIn: text;
               var SockOut: text) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt;var addr: String;var SockIn: text;
               var SockOut: text) : Boolean
function Accept(Sock: LongInt;var addr: String;var SockIn: File;
               var SockOut: File) : Boolean

```

Visibility: default

Description: FPAccept accepts a connection from a socket Sock, which was listening for a connection. If a connection is accepted, a file descriptor is returned. On error -1 is returned. The returned socket may NOT be used to accept more connections. The original socket remains open.

The Accept call fills the address of the connecting entity in Addr, and sets its length in AddrLen. Addr should be pointing to enough space, and AddrLen should be set to the amount of space available, prior to the call.

The alternate forms of the Accept (888) command, with the Text or File parameters are equivalent to subsequently calling the regular Accept (888) function and the Sock2Text (902) or Sock2File (902) functions. These functions return True if successful, False otherwise.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned, and errors are reported in SocketError, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP**The socket type doesn't support the Listen operation.

**SYS\_EFAULT**Addr points outside your address space.

**SYS\_EWOULDBLOCK**The requested operation would block the process.

See also: Listen (897), Connect (890), Bind (889)

**Listing:** ./sockex/socksvr.pp

---

```

Program server;

{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Server Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}

uses BaseUnix, Sockets;
const
  SPath= 'ServerSoc';

Var
  FromName : string;
  Buffer    : string[255];
  S         : Longint;
  Sin, Sout : Text;

procedure perror (const S:string);
begin
  writeln (S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;

begin
  S:= Socket (AF_UNIX, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
  if SocketError<>0 then
    PError ('Server : Socket : ');
  fpUnLink(SPath);
  if not Bind(S, SPath) then
    PError ('Server : Bind : ');
  if not Listen (S, 1) then
    PError ('Server : Listen : ');
  Writeln ('Waiting for Connect from Client , run now sock_cli in an other tty');
  if not Accept (S, FromName, Sin, Sout) then
    PError ('Server : Accept : '+fromname);
  Reset(Sin);
  ReWrite(Sout);
  Writeln (Sout, 'Message From Server');
  Flush(SOut);
  while not eof(sin) do
    begin
      Readln(Sin, Buffer);
      Writeln ('Server : read : ', buffer);
    end;
  FPUntLink(SPath);
end.

```

---

## 25.4.2 Bind

Synopsis: Bind a socket to an address.

**Declaration:** `function Bind(Sock: LongInt;const Addr;AddrLen: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function Bind(Sock: LongInt;const addr: String) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Bind binds the socket Sock to address Addr. Addr has length AddrLen. The function returns True if the call was succesful, False if not.

The form of the Bind command with the TUnixSockAddr (888) is equivalent to subsequently calling Str2UnixSockAddr (903) and the regular Bind function. The function returns True if successfull, False otherwise.

**Errors:** Errors are returned in SocketError and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_EINVAL**The socket is already bound to an address,

**SYS\_EACCESS**Address is protected and you don't have permission to open it.

More errors can be found in the Unix man pages.

See also: Socket (902)

### 25.4.3 CloseSocket

**Synopsis:** Closes a socket handle.

**Declaration:** `function CloseSocket(Sock: LongInt) : LongInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** CloseSocket closes a socket handle. It returns 0 if the socket was closed succesfully, -1 if it failed.

**Errors:** On error, -1 is returned.

See also: Socket (902)

### 25.4.4 Connect

**Synopsis:** Open a connection to a server socket.

**Declaration:** `function Connect(Sock: LongInt;const Addr;AddrLen: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function Connect(Sock: LongInt;const addr: TInetSockAddr;`  
`var SockIn: text;var SockOut: text) : Boolean`  
`function Connect(Sock: LongInt;const addr: TInetSockAddr;`  
`var SockIn: file;var SockOut: file) : Boolean`  
`function Connect(Sock: LongInt;const addr: String;var SockIn: text;`  
`var SockOut: text) : Boolean`  
`function Connect(Sock: LongInt;const addr: String;var SockIn: file;`  
`var SockOut: file) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Connect opens a connection to a peer, whose address is described by Addr. AddrLen contains the length of the address. The type of Addr depends on the kind of connection you're trying to make, but is generally one of TSockAddr or TUnixSockAddr.

The forms of the `Connect` (890) command with the `Text` or `File` arguments are equivalent to subsequently calling the regular `Connect` function and the `Sock2Text` (902) or `Sock2File` (902) functions. These functions return `True` if successful, `False` otherwise.

The `Connect` function returns a file descriptor if the call was successful, `-1` in case of error.

Errors: On error, `-1` is returned and errors are reported in `SocketError`.

See also: `Listen` (897), `Bind` (889), `Accept` (888)

**Listing:** `./sockex/sockcli.pp`

---

**Program** `Client`;

```
{
  Program to test Sockets unit by Michael van Canneyt and Peter Vreman
  Client Version, First Run sock_svr to let it create a socket and then
  sock_cli to connect to that socket
}
```

**uses** `Sockets, BaseUnix`;

```
procedure PError(const S : string);
begin
  writeln(S, SocketError);
  halt(100);
end;
```

**Var**

```
Saddr   : String[25];
Buffer  : string [255];
S       : Longint;
Sin, Sout : Text;
i       : integer;
```

**begin**

```
S:=Socket (AF_UNIX, SOCK_STREAM, 0);
if SocketError<>0 then
  PError('Client : Socket : ');
Saddr:='ServerSoc';
if not Connect (S, Saddr, Sin, Sout) then
  PError('Client : Connect : ');
Reset(Sin);
ReWrite(Sout);
Buffer:='This is a textstring sent by the Client.';
for i:=1 to 10 do
  Writeln(Sout, Buffer);
  Flush(Sout);
  Readln(Sin, Buffer);
  WriteLn(Buffer);
  Close(sout);
end.
```

---

**Listing:** `./sockex/pfinger.pp`

---

**program** `pfinger`;

**uses** `sockets, errors`;

**Var** `Addr` : `TInetSockAddr`;



---

```

S : Longint;
  Sin, Sout : Text;
  Line : string;

begin
  Addr.family:=AF_INET;
  { port 79 in network order }
  Addr.port:=79 shl 8;
  { localhost : 127.0.0.1 in network order }
  Addr.addr:=((1 shl 24) or 127);
  S:=Socket(AF_INET,SOCK_STREAM,0);
  If Not Connect (S,ADDR,SIN,SOUT) Then
    begin
      Writeln ( 'Couldn't connect to localhost' );
      Writeln ( 'Socket error : ',strerror(SocketError));
      halt (1);
    end;
    rewrite (sout);
    reset (sin);
    writeln (sout,paramstr(1));
    flush (sout);
    while not eof (sin) do
      begin
        readln (Sin,line);
        writeln (line);
      end;
    Shutdown(s,2);
    close (sin);
    close (sout);
  end.

```

---

### 25.4.5 fpaccept

Synopsis: Alias for the accept ([888](#)) call

Declaration: function fpaccept(s: cint;addrx: PSockAddr;addrlen: psocklen) : cint

Visibility: default

### 25.4.6 fpbind

Synopsis: Alias for the bind ([889](#)) call

Declaration: function fpbind(s: cint;addrx: PSockAddr;addrlen: tsocklen) : cint

Visibility: default

### 25.4.7 fpconnect

Synopsis: Alias for the connect ([890](#)) call

Declaration: function fpconnect(s: cint;name: PSockAddr;namelen: tsocklen) : cint

Visibility: default

### 25.4.8 fpgetpeername

Synopsis: Alias for the `GetPeerName` (894) call

Declaration: `function fpgetpeername(s: cint; name: PSockAddr; namelen: psocklen) : cint`

Visibility: default

### 25.4.9 fpgetsockname

Synopsis: Alias for the `GetSocketName` (895) call

Declaration: `function fpgetsockname(s: cint; name: PSockAddr; namelen: psocklen) : cint`

Visibility: default

### 25.4.10 fpgetsockopt

Synopsis: Alias for the `GetSocketOptions` (895) call

Declaration: `function fpgetsockopt(s: cint; level: cint; optname: cint; optval: pointer; optlen: psocklen) : cint`

Visibility: default

### 25.4.11 fplisten

Synopsis: Alias for the `listen` (897) call

Declaration: `function fplisten(s: cint; backlog: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

### 25.4.12 fprecv

Synopsis: Alias for the `recv` (898) call

Declaration: `function fprecv(s: cint; buf: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint) : ssize_t`

Visibility: default

### 25.4.13 fprecvfrom

Synopsis: Alias for the `recvfrom` (899) call

Declaration: `function fprecvfrom(s: cint; buf: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint; from: PSockAddr; fromlen: psocklen) : ssize_t`

Visibility: default

### 25.4.14 fpsend

Synopsis: Alias for the `send` (899) call

Declaration: `function fpsend(s: cint; msg: pointer; len: size_t; flags: cint) : ssize_t`

Visibility: default

**25.4.15 fpsendto**

Synopsis: Alias for the send (899) call

Declaration: `function fpsendto(s: cint;msg: pointer;len: size_t;flags: cint;  
                                  tox: PSockAddr;tolen: tsocklen) : ssize_t`

Visibility: default

**25.4.16 fpsetsockopt**

Synopsis: Alias for the SetSocketOptions (900) call

Declaration: `function fpsetsockopt(s: cint;level: cint;optname: cint;optval: pointer;  
                                  optlen: tsocklen) : cint`

Visibility: default

**25.4.17 fpshutdown**

Synopsis: Alias for the shutdown (901) call

Declaration: `function fpshutdown(s: cint;how: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

**25.4.18 fpsocket**

Synopsis: Alias for the socket (902) call

Declaration: `function fpsocket(domain: cint;xtype: cint;protocol: cint) : cint`

Visibility: default

**25.4.19 fpsocketpair**

Synopsis: Alias for the SocketPair (903) call

Declaration: `function fpsocketpair(d: cint;xtype: cint;protocol: cint;sv: pcint)  
                                  : cint`

Visibility: default

**25.4.20 GetPeerName**

Synopsis: Return the name (address) of the connected peer.

Declaration: `function GetPeerName(Sock: LongInt;var Addr;var Addrlen: LongInt)  
                                  : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetPeerName` returns the name of the entity connected to the specified socket `Sock`. The Socket must be connected for this call to work.

`Addr` should point to enough space to store the name, the amount of space pointed to should be set in `Addrlen`. When the function returns successfully, `Addr` will be filled with the name, and `Addrlen` will be set to the length of `Addr`.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough buffers to perform the operation.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**`Addr` points outside your address space.

**SYS\_ENOTCONN**The socket isn't connected.

See also: `Connect` (890), `Socket` (902)

### 25.4.21 GetSocketName

Synopsis: Return name of socket.

Declaration: `function GetSocketName(Sock: LongInt; var Addr; var Addrlen: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetSocketName` returns the current name of the specified socket `Sock`. `Addr` should point to enough space to store the name, the amount of space pointed to should be set in `Addrlen`. When the function returns successfully, `Addr` will be filled with the name, and `Addrlen` will be set to the length of `Addr`.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough buffers to perform the operation.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**`Addr` points outside your address space.

See also: `Bind` (889)

### 25.4.22 GetSocketOptions

Synopsis: Get current socket options

Declaration: `function GetSocketOptions(Sock: LongInt; Level: LongInt; OptName: LongInt; var OptVal; var optlen: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetSocketOptions` gets the connection options for socket `Sock`. The socket may be obtained from different levels, indicated by `Level`, which can be one of the following:

**SOL\_SOCKET**From the socket itself.

**XXX**set `Level` to `XXX`, the protocol number of the protocol which should interpret the option.

For more information on this call, refer to the unix manual page `\seem{getsockopt}{2}`.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**`OptVal` points outside your address space.

See also: `GetSocketOptions` (895)

### 25.4.23 HostAddrToStr

Synopsis: Convert a host address to a string.

Declaration: `function HostAddrToStr(Entry: in_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostAddrToStr` converts the host address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form (a dotted quad).

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr` (897), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` (897), `StrToHostAddr` (903), `StrToNetAddr` (904)

### 25.4.24 HostAddrToStr6

Synopsis: Convert a IPV6 host address to a string representation.

Declaration: `function HostAddrToStr6(Entry: Tin6_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostAddrToStr6` converts the IPV6 host address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form.

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr6` (897), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` (897), `StrToHostAddr` (903), `StrToNetAddr` (904), `StrToHostAddr6` (903)

### 25.4.25 HostToNet

Synopsis: Convert a host address to a network address

Declaration: `function HostToNet(Host: in_addr) : in_addr`  
`function HostToNet(Host: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `HostToNet` converts a host address to a network address. It takes care of endianness of the host machine. The address can be specified as a dotted quad or as a longint.

Errors: None.

See also: `NetToHost` (898), `NToHS` (898), `HToNS` (897), `ShortHostToNet` (901), `ShortNetToHost` (901)

### 25.4.26 htonl

Synopsis: Convert long integer from host ordered to network ordered

Declaration: `function htonl(host: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `htonl` makes sure that the bytes in `host` are ordered in the correct way for sending over the network and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htons` (897), `ntohl` (898), `ntohs` (898)

### 25.4.27 htons

Synopsis: Convert short integer from host ordered to network ordered

Declaration: `function htons(host: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `htons` makes sure that the bytes in `host` are ordered in the correct way for sending over the network and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htonl` ([896](#)), `ntohl` ([898](#)), `ntohs` ([898](#))

### 25.4.28 Listen

Synopsis: Listen for connections on socket.

Declaration: `function Listen(Sock: LongInt; MaxConnect: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `Listen` listens for up to `MaxConnect` connections from socket `Sock`. The socket `Sock` must be of type `SOCK_STREAM` or `Sock_SEQPACKET`.

The function returns `True` if a connection was accepted, `False` if an error occurred.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF** The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK** The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EOPNOTSUPP** The socket type doesn't support the `Listen` operation.

See also: `Socket` ([902](#)), `Bind` ([889](#)), `Connect` ([890](#))

### 25.4.29 NetAddrToStr

Synopsis: Convert a network address to a string.

Declaration: `function NetAddrToStr(Entry: in_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `NetAddrToStr` converts the network address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form (a dotted quad).

See also: `HostAddrToStr` ([896](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([904](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([903](#))

### 25.4.30 NetAddrToStr6

Synopsis: Convert a IPV6 network address to a string.

Declaration: `function NetAddrToStr6(Entry: Tin6_addr) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `NetAddrToStr6` converts the IPV6 network address in `Entry` to a string representation in human-readable form.

Basically, it is the same as `NetAddrToStr6` ([897](#)), but with the bytes in correct order.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([897](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([903](#)), `StrToNetAddr` ([904](#)), `StrToHostAddr6` ([903](#))

### 25.4.31 NetToHost

Synopsis: Convert a network address to a host address.

Declaration: `function NetToHost(Net: in_addr) : in_addr`  
`function NetToHost(Net: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `NetToHost` converts a network address to a host address. It takes care of endianness of the host machine. The address can be specified as a dotted quad or as a longint.

Errors: None.

See also: `HostToNet` ([896](#)), `NToHS` ([898](#)), `HToNS` ([897](#)), `ShortHostToNet` ([901](#)), `ShortNetToHost` ([901](#))

### 25.4.32 NToHI

Synopsis: Convert long integer from network ordered to host ordered

Declaration: `function NToHI(Net: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ntohs` makes sure that the bytes in `Net`, received from the network, are ordered in the correct way for handling by the host machine, and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htonl` ([896](#)), `htons` ([897](#)), `ntohs` ([898](#))

### 25.4.33 NToHs

Synopsis: Convert short integer from network ordered to host ordered

Declaration: `function NToHs(Net: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `ntohs` makes sure that the bytes in `Net`, received from the network, are ordered in the correct way for handling by the host machine, and returns the correctly ordered result.

See also: `htonl` ([896](#)), `htons` ([897](#)), `ntohl` ([898](#))

### 25.4.34 Recv

Synopsis: Receive data on socket

Declaration: `function Recv(Sock: LongInt; var Buf; BufLen: LongInt; Flags: LongInt)`  
`: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Recv` reads at most `AddrLen` bytes from socket `Sock` into address `Addr`. The socket must be in a connected state. `Flags` can be one of the following:

**1**Process out-of band data.

**4**Bypass routing, use a direct interface.

**??**Wait for full request or report an error.

The functions returns the number of bytes actually read from the socket, or -1 if a detectable error occurred.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

- SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.
- SYS\_ENOTCONN**The socket isn't connected.
- SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.
- SYS\_EFAULT**The address is outside your address space.
- SYS EMSGSIZE**The message cannot be sent atomically.
- SYS\_EWOULDBLOCK**The requested operation would block the process.
- SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough free buffers available.

See also: `Send` ([899](#))

### 25.4.35 RecvFrom

Synopsis: Receive data from an unconnected socket

Declaration: `function RecvFrom(Sock: LongInt;var Buf;Buflen: LongInt;Flags: LongInt;  
var Addr;var AddrLen: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `RecvFrom` receives data in buffer `Buf` with maximum length `BufLen` from socket `Sock`. Receipt is controlled by options in `Flags`. `Addr` will be filled with the address from the sender, and will have length `AddrLen`. The function returns the number of bytes received, or -1 on error.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `Socket` ([902](#)), `recv` ([898](#)), `RecvFrom` ([899](#))

### 25.4.36 Send

Synopsis: Send data through socket

Declaration: `function Send(Sock: LongInt;const Buf;BufLen: LongInt;Flags: LongInt)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Send` sends `AddrLen` bytes starting from address `Addr` to socket `Sock`. `Sock` must be in a connected state. The function returns the number of bytes sent, or -1 if a detectable error occurred.

`Flags` can be one of the following:

- 1**Process out-of band data.
- 4**Bypass routing, use a direct interface.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

- SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.
- SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.
- SYS\_EFAULT**The address is outside your address space.



**SYS\_EMSGSIZE**The message cannot be sent atomically.

**SYS\_EWOULDBLOCK**The requested operation would block the process.

**SYS\_ENOBUFS**The system doesn't have enough free buffers available.

See also: [Recv \(898\)](#)

### 25.4.37 SendTo

Synopsis: Send data through an unconnected socket to an address.

Declaration: 

```
function SendTo(Sock: LongInt; const Buf: BufLen: LongInt; Flags: LongInt;
                var Addr: AddrLen: LongInt) : LongInt
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SendTo` sends data from buffer `Buf` with length `Buflen` through socket `Sock` with options `Flags`. The data is sent to address `Addr`, which has length `AddrLen`

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: [Socket \(902\)](#), [Send \(899\)](#), [RecvFrom \(899\)](#)

### 25.4.38 SetSocketOptions

Synopsis: Set socket options.

Declaration: 

```
function SetSocketOptions(Sock: LongInt; Level: LongInt; OptName: LongInt;
                          const OptVal; optlen: LongInt) : LongInt
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SetSocketOptions` sets the connection options for socket `Sock`. The socket may be manipulated at different levels, indicated by `Level`, which can be one of the following:

**SOL\_SOCKET**To manipulate the socket itself.

**XXX**set `Level` to `XXX`, the protocol number of the protocol which should interpret the option.

For more information on this call, refer to the unix manual page `setsockopt`

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and include the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

**SYS\_EFAULT**`OptVal` points outside your address space.

See also: [GetSocketOptions \(895\)](#)

### 25.4.39 ShortHostToNet

Synopsis: Convert a host port number to a network port number

Declaration: `function ShortHostToNet(Host: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShortHostToNet` converts a host port number to a network port number. It takes care of endianness of the host machine.

Errors: None.

See also: `ShortNetToHost` (901), `HostToNet` (896), `NToHS` (898), `HToNS` (897)

### 25.4.40 ShortNetToHost

Synopsis: Convert a network port number to a host port number

Declaration: `function ShortNetToHost(Net: Word) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShortNetToHost` converts a network port number to a host port number. It takes care of endianness of the host machine.

Errors: None.

See also: `ShortNetToHost` (901), `HostToNet` (896), `NToHS` (898), `HToNS` (897)

### 25.4.41 Shutdown

Synopsis: Close one end of full duplex connection.

Declaration: `function Shutdown(Sock: LongInt;How: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShutDown` closes one end of a full duplex socket connection, described by `Sock`. The parameter `How` determines how the connection will be shut down, and can be one of the following:

**0**Further receives are disallowed.

**1**Further sends are disallowed.

**2**Sending nor receiving are allowed.

On succes, the function returns 0, on error -1 is returned.

Errors: `SocketError` is used to report errors, and includes the following:

**SYS\_EBADF**The socket descriptor is invalid.

**SYS\_ENOTCONN**The socket isn't connected.

**SYS\_ENOTSOCK**The descriptor is not a socket.

See also: `Socket` (902), `Connect` (890)

### 25.4.42 Sock2File

Synopsis: Convert socket to untyped file descriptors

Declaration: `procedure Sock2File(Sock: LongInt; var SockIn: File; var SockOut: File)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sock2File` transforms a socket `Sock` into 2 Pascal file descriptors of type `File`, one for reading from the socket (`SockIn`), one for writing to the socket (`SockOut`).

Errors: None.

See also: [Socket \(902\)](#), [Sock2Text \(902\)](#)

### 25.4.43 Sock2Text

Synopsis: Convert socket to text file descriptors

Declaration: `procedure Sock2Text(Sock: LongInt; var SockIn: Text; var SockOut: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sock2Text` transforms a socket `Sock` into 2 Pascal file descriptors of type `Text`, one for reading from the socket (`SockIn`), one for writing to the socket (`SockOut`).

Errors: None.

See also: [Socket \(902\)](#), [Sock2File \(902\)](#)

### 25.4.44 Socket

Synopsis: Create new socket

Declaration: `function Socket(Domain: LongInt; SocketType: LongInt; Protocol: LongInt)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Socket` creates a new socket in domain `Domain`, from type `SocketType` using protocol `Protocol`.

The `Domain`, `Socket` type and `Protocol` can be specified using predefined constants (see the section on constants for available constants) If succesfull, the function returns a socket descriptor, which can be passed to a subsequent `Bind` ([889](#)) call. If unsuccesfull, the function returns -1.

for an example, see `Accept` ([888](#)).

Errors: Errors are returned in `SocketError`, and include the follwing:

**SYS\_EPROTONOSUPPORT**The protocol type or the specified protocol is not supported within this domain.

**SYS\_EMFILE**The per-process descriptor table is full.

**SYS\_ENFILE**The system file table is full.

**SYS\_EACCESS**Permission to create a socket of the specified type and/or protocol is denied.

**SYS\_ENOBUFS**Insufficient buffer space is available. The socket cannot be created until sufficient resources are freed.

See also: [SocketPair \(903\)](#)

### 25.4.45 SocketPair

Synopsis: Create socket pair

Declaration: `function SocketPair(Domain: LongInt; SocketType: LongInt;  
Protocol: LongInt; var Pair: TSockArray) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SocketPair` creates 2 sockets in domain `Domain`, from type `SocketType` and using protocol `Protocol`. The pair is returned in `Pair`, and they are indistinguishable. The function returns -1 upon error and 0 upon success.

Errors: Errors are reported in `SocketError`, and are the same as in `Socket` (902)

See also: `Str2UnixSockAddr` (903)

### 25.4.46 Str2UnixSockAddr

Synopsis: Convert path to `TUnixSockAddr` (888)

Declaration: `procedure Str2UnixSockAddr(const addr: String; var t: TUnixSockAddr;  
var len: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Str2UnixSockAddr` transforms a Unix socket address in a string to a `TUnixSockAddr` structure which can be passed to the `Bind` (889) call.

Errors: None.

See also: `Socket` (902), `Bind` (889)

### 25.4.47 StrToHostAddr

Synopsis: Convert a string to a host address.

Declaration: `function StrToHostAddr(IP: AnsiString) : in_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToHostAddr` converts the string representation in `IP` to a host address and returns the host address.

Errors: On error, the host address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` (897), `HostAddrToStr` (896), `StrToNetAddr` (904)

### 25.4.48 StrToHostAddr6

Synopsis: Convert a string to a IPV6 host address.

Declaration: `function StrToHostAddr6(IP: String) : Tin6_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToHostAddr6` converts the string representation in `IP` to a IPV6 host address and returns the host address.

Errors: On error, the address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr6` (897), `HostAddrToStr6` (896), `StrToHostAddr` (903)

### 25.4.49 StrToNetAddr

Synopsis: Convert a string to a network address.

Declaration: `function StrToNetAddr(IP: AnsiString) : in_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToNetAddr` converts the string representation in IP to a network address and returns the network address.

Errors: On error, the network address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr` ([897](#)), `HostAddrToStr` ([896](#)), `StrToHostAddr` ([903](#))

### 25.4.50 StrToNetAddr6

Synopsis: Convert a string to a IPV6 network address

Declaration: `function StrToNetAddr6(IP: AnsiString) : Tin6_addr`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToNetAddr6` converts the string representation in IP to a IPV6 network address and returns the network address.

Errors: On error, the address is filled with zeroes.

See also: `NetAddrToStr6` ([897](#)), `HostAddrToStr6` ([896](#)), `StrToHostAddr6` ([903](#))

# Chapter 26

## Reference for unit 'strings'

### 26.1 Overview

This chapter describes the `STRINGS` unit for Free Pascal. This unit is system independent, and therefore works on all supported platforms.

### 26.2 Procedures and functions

#### 26.2.1 `stralloc`

Synopsis: Allocate memory for a new null-terminated string on the heap

Declaration: `function stralloc(L: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `StrAlloc` reserves memory on the heap for a string with length `Len`, terminating `#0` included, and returns a pointer to it.

Errors: If there is not enough memory, a run-time error occurs.

See also: `StrNew` ([913](#)), `StrPCopy` ([914](#))

#### 26.2.2 `strcat`

Synopsis: Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings.

Declaration: `function strcat(dest: pchar; source: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Attaches `Source` to `Dest` and returns `Dest`.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrLCat` ([909](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex11.pp`

---

```

Program Example11;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrCat function. }

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar String.';

Var P2 : PChar;

begin
  P2:= StrAlloc ( StrLen(P1)*2+1);
  StrMove (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2=P1 }
  StrCat (P2,P1);                { Append P2 once more }
  WriteLn ( 'P2 : ',P2);
end.

```

---

### 26.2.3 strcmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case sensitive.

Declaration: `function strcmp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

For an example, see StrLComp (910).

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp (910), StrIComp (909), StrLComp (912)

### 26.2.4 strcpy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strcpy(dest: pchar;source: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copy the null terminated string in Source to Dest, and returns a pointer to Dest. Dest needs enough room to contain Source, i.e. `StrLen(Source)+1` bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrPCopy (914), StrLCopy (911), StrECopy (908)

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex4.pp

---

```

Program Example4;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrCopy function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

var PP : PChar;

begin
  PP:= StrAlloc ( Strlen (P)+1);
  STrCopy (PP,P);
  If StrComp (PP,P)<>0 then
    Writeln ( 'Oh-oh problems...' )
  else
    Writeln ( 'All is well : PP=',PP);
end.

```

---

### 26.2.5 strdispose

Synopsis: disposes of a null-terminated string on the heap

Declaration: `procedure strdispose(p: pchar)`

Visibility: default

Description: Removes the string in P from the heap and releases the memory.

Errors: None.

See also: StrNew ([913](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex17.pp

---

```

Program Example17;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrDispose function. }

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';

var P2 : PChar;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Before StrNew : Memory available : ',MemAvail);
  P2:=StrNew (P1);
  Writeln ( 'After StrNew : Memory available : ',MemAvail);
  Writeln ( 'P2 : ',P2);
  StrDispose(P2);
  Writeln ( 'After StrDispose : Memory available : ',MemAvail);
end.

```

---



### 26.2.6 strecopy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, return a pointer to the end.

Declaration: `function strecopy(dest: pchar;source: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies the Null-terminated string in Source to Dest, and returns a pointer to the end (i.e. the terminating Null-character) of the copied string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrLCopy (911), StrCopy (906)

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex6.pp

---

**Program** Example6;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrECopy function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

**Var** PP : PChar;

**begin**

PP:=StrAlloc (StrLen(P)+1);

**If** Longint(StrECopy(PP,P)) – Longint(PP)<>StrLen(P) **then**

**Writeln** ('Something is wrong here !')

**else**

**Writeln** ( 'PP= ',PP);

**end.**

---

### 26.2.7 strend

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the end of a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strend(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the end of P. (i.e. to the terminating null-character.

Errors: None.

See also: StrLen (911)

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex7.pp

---

**Program** Example6;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrEnd function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

---

```

begin
  If Longint(StrEnd(P)) - Longint(P) <> StrLen(P) then
    Writeln('Something is wrong here !')
  else
    Writeln('All is well..');
end.

```

---

### 26.2.8 stricmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case insensitive.

Declaration: `function stricmp(str1: pchar; str2: pchar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1 < S2.
- 0 when S1 = S2.
- A positive Longint when S1 > S2.

Errors: None.

See also: [StrLComp \(910\)](#), [StrComp \(906\)](#), [StrLComp \(912\)](#)

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

```

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';
      P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

```

```

Var L : Longint;

```

```

begin
  Write('P1 and P2 are ');
  If StrComp(P1, P2) <> 0 then write('NOT ');
  write('equal. The first ');
  L := 1;
  While StrLComp(P1, P2, L) = 0 do inc(L);
  dec(L);
  Writeln(L, ' characters are the same.');
```

---

### 26.2.9 strlcat

Synopsis: Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings, with length boundary.

Declaration: `function strlcat(dest: pchar; source: pchar; l: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Adds MaxLen characters from Source to Dest, and adds a terminating null-character. Returns Dest.

Errors: None.

See also: StrCat ([905](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex12.pp

---

**Program** Example12;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCat function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = '1234567890';

**Var** P2 : PChar;

**begin**

  P2:=StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)\*2+1);

  P2^:=#0; { Zero length }

  StrCat (P2,P1);

  StrLCat (P2,P1,5);

  WriteLn ('P2 = ',P2);

**end.**

---

### 26.2.10 strlcomp

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters of 2 null-terminated strings

Declaration: function strlcomp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar;l: SizeInt) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

Errors: None.

See also: StrComp ([906](#)), StrIComp ([909](#)), StrLComp ([912](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';

  P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

**Var** L : Longint;

---

```

begin
  Write ( 'P1 and P2 are ');
  If StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 then write ( 'NOT ');
  write ( 'equal. The first ');
  L:=1;
  While StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 do inc (L);
  dec(L);
  Writeln (L, ' characters are the same. ');
end.

```

---

### 26.2.11 strcpy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, limited in length.

Declaration: `function strcpy(dest: pchar;source: pchar;maxlen: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies MaxLen characters from Source to Dest, and makes Dest a null terminated string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrCopy ([906](#)), StrECopy ([908](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex5.pp

---

**Program** Example5;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCopy function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = '123456789ABCDEF';

**var** PP : PChar;

**begin**

PP:=StrAlloc(11);

Writeln ( 'First 10 characters of P : ',StrLCopy (PP,P,10));

**end.**

---

### 26.2.12 strlen

Synopsis: Length of a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strlen(p: pchar) : sizeint`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the length of the null-terminated string P.

Errors: None.

See also: StrNew ([913](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex1.pp

---

```

Program Example1;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrLen function. }

Const P : PChar = 'This is a constant pchar string';

begin
  WriteLn ( 'P          : ',p);
  WriteLn ( 'length(P) : ',StrLen(P));
end.

```

---

### 26.2.13 strlicomp

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters in 2 null-terminated strings, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function strlicomp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar;l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

For an example, see StrIComp ([909](#))

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp ([910](#)), StrComp ([906](#)), StrIComp ([909](#))

### 26.2.14 strlower

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-lowercase.

Declaration: `function strlower(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts P to an all-lowercase string. Returns P.

Errors: None.

See also: StrUpper ([916](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex14.pp

---

```

Program Example14;

Uses strings;

{ Program to demonstrate the StrLower and StrUpper functions. }

```

**Const**

```
P1 : PChar = 'THIS IS AN UPPERCASE PCHAR STRING';
P2 : PChar = 'this is a lowercase string';
```

**begin**

```
  WriteLn ( 'Uppercase : ', StrUpper(P2));
  StrLower (P1);
  WriteLn ( 'Lowercase : ', P1);
```

**end.****26.2.15 strmove**

Synopsis: Move a null-terminated string to new location.

Declaration: `function strmove(dest: pchar; source: pchar; l: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies MaxLen characters from Source to Dest. No terminating null-character is copied. Returns Dest

Errors: None.

See also: StrLCopy ([911](#)), StrCopy ([906](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex10.pp

**Program** Example10;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrMove function. }*

**Const** P1 : PCHAR = 'This is a pchar string.';

**Var** P2 : Pchar;

**begin**

```
P2:=StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)+1);
StrMove (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2:=P1 }
WriteLn ( 'P2 = ', P2);
```

**end.****26.2.16 strnew**

Synopsis: Allocate room for new null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strnew(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies P to the Heap, and returns a pointer to the copy.

Errors: Returns Nil if no memory was available for the copy.

See also: StrCopy ([906](#)), StrDispose ([907](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex16.pp

---

**Program** Example16;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrNew function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';

**var** P2 : PChar;

**begin**

  P2:=**StrNew** (P1);

**If** P1=P2 **then**

**writeln** ( 'This can''t be happening...' )

**else**

**writeln** ( 'P2 : ',P2);

**end.**

---

### 26.2.17 strpas

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to a shortstring.

Declaration: function strpas(p: pchar) : shortstring

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a null terminated string in P to a Pascal string, and returns this string. The string is truncated at 255 characters.

Errors: None.

See also: StrPCopy ([914](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex3.pp

---

**Program** Example3;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPas function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string';

**var** S : **string**;

**begin**

  S:=**StrPas** (P);

**Writeln** ( 'S : ',S);

**end.**

---

### 26.2.18 strcpy

Synopsis: Copy a pascal string to a null-terminated string

Declaration: function strcpy(d: pchar;const s: String) : pchar

Visibility: default

Description: Converts the Pascal string in `Source` to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to `Dest`. `Dest` needs enough room to contain the string `Source`, i.e. `Length(Source)+1` bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrPas` ([914](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex2.pp`

---

**Program** `Example2;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPCopy function. }*

**Const** `S = 'This is a normal string.';`

**Var** `P : Pchar;`

**begin**

`p:= StrAlloc (length(S)+1);`

`if StrPCopy (P,S)<>P then`

`Writeln ('This is impossible !!')`

`else`

`writeln (P);`

**end.**

---

### 26.2.19 strpos

Synopsis: Search for a null-terminated substring in a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strpos(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of `S2` in `S1`. If `S2` does not occur in `S1`, returns `Nil`.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrScan` ([916](#)), `StrRScan` ([916](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPos function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a PChar string.';`

`S : Pchar = 'is';`

**begin**

`Writeln ('Position of ''is'' in P : ',longint(StrPos(P,S))-Longint(P));`

**end.**

---



**26.2.20 strscan**

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

For an example, see StrScan (916).

Errors: None.

See also: StrScan (916), StrPos (915)

**26.2.21 strscan**

Synopsis: Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar; c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: StrRScan (916), StrPos (915)

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex13.pp

---

**Program** Example13;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrScan and StrRScan functions. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';  
           S : Char = 's' ;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from first 's' : ', **StrScan**(P,s));

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from last 's' : ', **StrRScan**(P,s));

**end.**

---

**26.2.22 strupper**

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-uppercase

Declaration: `function strupper(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts P to an all-uppercase string. Returns P.

For an example, see StrLower (912)

Errors: None.

See also: StrLower (912)

# Chapter 27

## Reference for unit 'strutils'

### 27.1 Used units

Table 27.1: Used units by unit 'strutils'

Name	Page
SysUtils	<a href="#">917</a>

### 27.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 27.2.1 Constants

`AnsiResemblesProc` : `TCompareTextProc` = `@SoundexProc`

This procedural variable is standard set to `SoundexProc` ([939](#)) but can be overridden with a user-defined algorithm. This algorithm should return `True` if `AText` resembles `AOtherText`, or `False` otherwise. The standard routine compares the soundexes of the two strings and returns `True` if they are equal.

`Brackets` = `[ ' ( , ' ) ' , ' [ , , ] ' , ' { , , } ' ]`

Set of characters that contain all possible bracket characters

`DigitChars` = `[ ' 0 ' . . ' 9 ' ]`

Set of digit characters

`StdSwitchChars` = `[ ' - ' , ' / ' ]`

Standard characters for the `SwitchChars` argument of `GetCmdLineArg` ([929](#)).

`StdWordDelims` = `[ # 0 . . ' ' , , , , ' . ' , ; , ' / ' , ' \ ' , ' : ' , ' ' ' , ' " ' , ' ` ' ] + Brackets`

Standard word delimiter values.

WordDelimiters : Set of Char = [#0..#255] - ['a'..'z', 'A'..'Z', '1'..'9', '0']

Standard word delimiters, used in the SearchBuf (937) call.

## 27.2.2 Types

TCompareTextProc = function(const AText: String;const AOther: String)  
: Boolean

Function prototype for comparing two string in AnsiResemblesText (923)

TSoundexIntLength = 1..8

Range of allowed integer soundex lengths.

TSoundexLength = 1..MaxInt

Range of allowed soundex lengths.

TStringSeachOption = TStringSearchOption

There is an typo error in the original Borland StrUtils unit. This type just refers to the correct TStringSearchOption (918) and is provided for compatibility only.

TStringSearchOption = (soDown,soMatchCase,soWholeWord)

Table 27.2: Enumeration values for type TStringSearchOption

Value	Explanation
soDown	Search in down direction.
soMatchCase	Match case
soWholeWord	Search whole words only.

Possible options for SearchBuf (937) call.

TStringSearchOptions= Set of (soDown,soMatchCase,soWholeWord)

Set of options for SearchBuf (937) call.

## 27.3 Procedures and functions

### 27.3.1 AddChar

Synopsis: Add characters to the left of a string till a certain length

Declaration: function AddChar(C: Char;const S: String;N: Integer) : String

Visibility: default

Description: AddChar adds characters (C ) to the left of S till the length N is reached, and returns the resulting string. If the length of S is already equal to or larger than N , then no characters are added. The resulting string can be thought of as a right-aligned version of S , with length N .

Errors: None

See also: AddCharR (919), PadLeft (935), PadRight (935), PadCenter (934)

### 27.3.2 AddCharR

Synopsis: Add chars at the end of a string till it reaches a certain length

Declaration: `function AddCharR(C: Char;const S: String;N: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddCharR` adds characters (C) to the right of S till the length N is reached, and returns the resulting string. If the length of S is already equal to or larger than N, then no characters are added. The resulting string can be thought of as a left-aligned version of S, with length N.

Errors: None

See also: `AddChar` ([918](#))

### 27.3.3 AnsiContainsStr

Synopsis: Checks whether a string contains a given substring

Declaration: `function AnsiContainsStr(const AText: String;const ASubText: String)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiContainsString` checks whether AText contains ASubText, and returns True if this is the case, or returns False otherwise. The search is performed case-sensitive.

Errors: None

See also: `AnsiContainsText` ([919](#)), `AnsiEndsStr` ([919](#)), `AnsiIndexStr` ([920](#)), `AnsiStartsStr` ([923](#))

### 27.3.4 AnsiContainsText

Synopsis: Check whether a string contains a certain substring, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function AnsiContainsText(const AText: String;const ASubText: String)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiContainsString` checks whether AText contains ASubText, and returns True if this is the case, or returns False otherwise. The search is performed case-insensitive.

Errors:

See also: `AnsiContainsStr` ([919](#)), `AnsiEndsText` ([920](#)), `AnsiIndexText` ([920](#)), `AnsiStartsText` ([924](#))

### 27.3.5 AnsiEndsStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string ends with a certain substring

Declaration: `function AnsiEndsStr(const ASubText: String;const AText: String)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiEndsStr` checks AText to see whether it ends with ASubText, and returns True if it does, False if not. The check is performed case-sensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of ASubText equals the length of AText minus the length of ASubText plus one.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiEndsText \(920\)](#), [AnsiStartsStr \(923\)](#), [AnsiIndexStr \(920\)](#), [AnsiContainsStr \(919\)](#)

### 27.3.6 AnsiEndsText

Synopsis: Check whether a string ends with a certain substring, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function AnsiEndsText(const ASubText: String;const AText: String)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiEndsStr` checks `AText` to see whether it ends with `ASubText`, and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-insensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals the length of `AText` minus the length of `ASubText` plus one.

Errors: None

See also: [AnsiStartsText \(924\)](#), [AnsiEndsStr \(919\)](#), [AnsiIndexText \(920\)](#), [AnsiContainsText \(919\)](#)

### 27.3.7 AnsiIndexStr

Synopsis: Searches, observing case, for a string in an array of strings.

Declaration: `function AnsiIndexStr(const AText: String;  
const AValues: Array[] of String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, the corresponding index (zero-based) in the `AValues` array is returned. If no match is found, -1 is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiIndexText \(920\)](#), [AnsiMatchStr \(921\)](#), [AnsiMatchText \(921\)](#)

### 27.3.8 AnsiIndexText

Synopsis: Searches, case insensitive, for a string in an array of strings.

Declaration: `function AnsiIndexText(const AText: String;  
const AValues: Array[] of String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, the corresponding index (zero-based) in the `AValues` array is returned. If no match is found, -1 is returned. The strings are matched ignoring case.

Errors: None

See also: [AnsiIndexStr \(920\)](#), [AnsiMatchStr \(921\)](#), [AnsiMatchText \(921\)](#)

### 27.3.9 AnsiLeftStr

Synopsis: Copies a number of characters starting at the left of a string

Declaration: `function AnsiLeftStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: Integer)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiLeftStr` returns the `ACount` leftmost characters from `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes.

This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `LeftStr` function.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiMidStr` (921), `AnsiRightStr` (923), `LeftStr` (932), `RightStr` (936), `MidStr` (933), `LeftBStr` (932), `RightBStr` (936), `MidBStr` (933)

### 27.3.10 AnsiMatchStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string occurs in an array of strings, observing case.

Declaration: `function AnsiMatchStr(const AText: String;  
const AValues: Array[] of String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, it returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned. The strings are matched observing case.

This function simply calls `AnsiIndexStr` (920) and checks whether it returns -1 or not.

Errors:

### 27.3.11 AnsiMatchText

Synopsis: Check whether a string occurs in an array of strings, disregarding case.

Declaration: `function AnsiMatchText(const AText: String;  
const AValues: Array[] of String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiIndexStr` matches `AText` against each string in `AValues`. If a match is found, it returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned. The strings are matched ignoring case.

This function simply calls `AnsiIndexText` (920) and checks whether it returns -1 or not.

Errors:

### 27.3.12 AnsiMidStr

Synopsis: Returns a number of characters copied from a given location in a string

Declaration: `function AnsiMidStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AStart: Integer;  
const ACount: Integer) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AnsiMidStr` returns `ACount` characters from `AText`, starting at position `AStart`. If `AStart+ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` (starting from `AStart`) will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes.

This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `MidStr` function.

**Errors:** None

**See also:** `AnsiLeftStr` (921), `AnsiRightStr` (923), `LeftStr` (932), `RightStr` (936), `MidStr` (933), `LeftBStr` (932), `RightBStr` (936), `MidBStr` (933)

### 27.3.13 `AnsiProperCase`

**Synopsis:** Pretty-Print a string: make lowercase and capitalize first letters of words

**Declaration:** `function AnsiProperCase(const S: String;const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiProperCase` converts `S` to an all lowercase string, but capitalizes the first letter of every word in the string, and returns the resulting string. When searching for words, the characters in `WordDelimiters` are used to determine the boundaries of words. The constant `StdWordDelims` (917) can be used for this.

**Errors:**

### 27.3.14 `AnsiReplaceStr`

**Synopsis:** Search and replace all occurrences of a string, case sensitive.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiReplaceStr(const AText: String;const AFromText: String;const AToText: String) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiReplaceString` searches `AText` for all occurrences of the string `AFromText` and replaces them with `AToText`, and returns the resulting string. The search is performed observing case.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiReplaceText` (922), `SearchBuf` (937)

### 27.3.15 `AnsiReplaceText`

**Synopsis:** Search and replace all occurrences of a string, case sensitive.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiReplaceText(const AText: String;const AFromText: String;const AToText: String) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiReplaceString` searches `AText` for all occurrences of the string `AFromText` and replaces them with `AToText`, and returns the resulting string. The search is performed ignoring case.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiReplaceStr` (922), `SearchBuf` (937)

### 27.3.16 AnsiResemblesText

Synopsis: Check whether 2 strings resemble each other.

Declaration: `function AnsiResemblesText(const AText: String;const AOther: String)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiResemblesText` will check whether `AnsiResemblesProc` (917) is set. If it is not set, `False` is returned. If it is set, `AText` and `AOtherText` are passed to it and its result is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiResemblesProc` (917), `SoundexProc` (939)

### 27.3.17 AnsiReverseString

Synopsis: Reverse the letters in a string.

Declaration: `function AnsiReverseString(const AText: AnsiString) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiReverseString` returns a string with all characters of `AText` in reverse order.  
if the result of this function equals `AText`, `AText` is called an anagram.

Errors: None.

### 27.3.18 AnsiRightStr

Synopsis: Copies a number of characters starting at the right of a string

Declaration: `function AnsiRightStr(const AText: AnsiString;const ACount: Integer)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiLeftStr` returns the `ACount` rightmost characters from `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length of `AText`, only as much characters as available in `AText` will be copied. If `ACount` is zero or negative, no characters will be copied. The characters are counted as characters, not as Bytes.  
This function corresponds to the Visual Basic `RightStr` function.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiLeftStr` (921), `AnsiMidStr` (921), `LeftStr` (932), `RightStr` (936), `MidStr` (933), `LeftBStr` (932), `RightBStr` (936), `MidBStr` (933)

### 27.3.19 AnsiStartsStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string starts with a given substring, observing case

Declaration: `function AnsiStartsStr(const ASubText: String;const AText: String)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default



**Description:** `AnsiEndsStr` checks `AText` to see whether it starts with `ASubText` , and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-sensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals 1.

**Errors:**

See also: `AnsiEndsStr` ([919](#)), `AnsiStartsStr` ([923](#)), `AnsiIndexStr` ([920](#)), `AnsiContainsStr` ([919](#))

### 27.3.20 AnsiStartsText

**Synopsis:** Check whether a string starts with a given substring, ignoring case

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStartsText(const ASubText: String;const AText: String)  
: Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiEndsText` checks `AText` to see whether it starts with `ASubText` , and returns `True` if it does, `False` if not. The check is performed case-insensitive. Basically, it checks whether the position of `ASubText` equals 1.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AnsiEndsText` ([920](#)), `AnsiStartsStr` ([923](#)), `AnsiIndexText` ([920](#)), `AnsiContainsText` ([919](#))

### 27.3.21 BinToHex

**Synopsis:** Convert a binary buffer to a hexadecimal string

**Declaration:** `procedure BinToHex(BinValue: PChar;HexValue: PChar;BinBufSize: Integer)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `BinToHex` converts the byte values in `BinValue` to a string consisting of 2-character hexadecimal strings in `HexValue`. `BufSize` specifies the length of `BinValue`, which means that `HexValue` must have size `2*BufSize`.

For example a buffer containing the byte values 255 and 0 will be converted to FF00.

**Errors:** No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `HexToBin` ([930](#))

### 27.3.22 Copy2Space

**Synopsis:** Returns all characters in a string till the first space character (not included).

**Declaration:** `function Copy2Space(const S: String) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Copy2Space` determines the position of the first space in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The space character itself is not included in the result string. The string `S` is left untouched. If there is no space in `S`, then the whole string `S` is returned.

This function simply calls `Copy2Symb` ([925](#)) with the space (ASCII code 32) as the symbol argument.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Copy2Symb` ([925](#)), `Copy2SpaceDel` ([925](#))

### 27.3.23 Copy2SpaceDel

Synopsis: Deletes and returns all characters in a string till the first space character (not included).

Declaration: `function Copy2SpaceDel(var S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Copy2SpaceDel` determines the position of the first space in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The space character itself is not included in the result string. All returned characters, including the space, are deleted from the string `S`, after which it is right-trimmed. If there is no space in `S`, then the whole string `S` is returned, and `S` itself is emptied.

This function simply calls `Copy2SymbDel` (925) with the space (ASCII code 32) as the symbol argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `Copy2SymbDel` (925), `Copy2Space` (924)

### 27.3.24 Copy2Symb

Synopsis: Returns all characters in a string till a given character (not included).

Declaration: `function Copy2Symb(const S: String; Symb: Char) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Copy2SymbDel` determines the position of the first occurrence of `Symb` in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The `Symb` character itself is not included in the result string. The string `S` is left untouched. If `Symb` does not appear in `S`, then the whole of `S` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Copy2Space` (924), `Copy2SymbDel` (925)

### 27.3.25 Copy2SymbDel

Synopsis: Deletes and returns all characters in a string till a given character (not included).

Declaration: `function Copy2SymbDel(var S: String; Symb: Char) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Copy2SymbDel` determines the position of the first occurrence of `Symb` in the string `S` and returns all characters up to this position. The `Symb` character itself is not included in the result string. All returned characters, including the `Symb` character, are deleted from the string `S`, after which it is right-trimmed. If `Symb` does not appear in `S`, then the whole of `S` is returned, and `S` itself is emptied.

Errors: None.

See also: `Copy2SpaceDel` (925), `Copy2Symb` (925)

### 27.3.26 Dec2Numb

Synopsis: Convert a decimal number to a string representation, using given a base.

Declaration: `function Dec2Numb(N: LongInt;Len: Byte;Base: Byte) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Dec2Numb` converts `N` to its representation using base `Base`. The resulting string is left-padded with zeroes till it has length `Len`. `Base` must be in the range 2-36 to be meaningful, but no checking on this is performed.

Errors: If `Base` is out of range, the resulting string will contain unreadable (non-alphanumeric) characters.

See also: `Hex2Dec` (930), `IntToBin` (931), `intToRoman` (931), `RomanToInt` (937)

### 27.3.27 DecodeSoundexInt

Synopsis: Decodes the integer representation of a soundex code and returns the original soundex code.

Declaration: `function DecodeSoundexInt(AValue: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeSoundexInt` converts the integer value `AValue` to a soundex string. It performs the reverse operation of the `SoundexInt` (939) function. The result is the soundex string corresponding to `AValue`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SoundexInt` (939), `DecodeSoundexWord` (926), `Soundex` (938)

### 27.3.28 DecodeSoundexWord

Synopsis: Decodes the word-sized representation of a soundex code and returns the original soundex code.

Declaration: `function DecodeSoundexWord(AValue: Word) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DecodeSoundexWord` converts the integer value `AValue` to a soundex string. It performs the reverse operation of the `SoundexWord` (940) function. The result is the soundex string corresponding to `AValue`.

Errors: None.

See also: `SoundexInt` (939), `DecodeSoundexInt` (926), `Soundex` (938)

### 27.3.29 DelChars

Synopsis: Delete all occurrences of a given character from a string.

Declaration: `function DelChars(const S: String;Chr: Char) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelChars` returns a copy of `S` with all `Chr` characters removed from it.

Errors: None.

See also: `DelSpace` (927), `DelSpace1` (927)

### 27.3.30 DelSpace

Synopsis: Delete all occurrences of a space from a string.

Declaration: `function DelSpace(const S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelSpace` returns a copy of `S` with all spaces (ASCII code 32) removed from it.

Errors: None.

See also: `DelChars` ([926](#)), `DelSpace1` ([927](#))

### 27.3.31 DelSpace1

Synopsis: Reduces sequences of space characters to 1 space character.

Declaration: `function DelSpace1(const S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DelSpace1` returns a copy of `S` with all sequences of spaces reduced to 1 space.

Errors: None.

See also: `DelChars` ([926](#)), `DelSpace` ([927](#))

### 27.3.32 DupeString

Synopsis: Creates and concatenates `N` copies of a string

Declaration: `function DupeString(const AText: String; ACount: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DupeString` returns a string consisting of `ACount` concatenations of `AText`. Thus

```
DupeString('1234567890',3);
```

will produce a string

```
'123456789012345678901234567890'
```

Errors: None.

### 27.3.33 ExtractDelimited

Synopsis: Extract the `N`-th delimited part from a string.

Declaration: `function ExtractDelimited(N: Integer; const S: String;  
const Delims: TSysCharSet) : String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `ExtractDelimited` extracts the N-th part from the string `S`. The set of characters in `Delims` are used to mark part boundaries. When a delimiter is encountered, a new part is started and the old part is ended. Another way of stating this is that any (possibly empty) series of characters not in `Delims`, situated between 2 characters in `Delims`, it is considered as piece of a part. This means that if 2 delimiter characters appear next to each other, there is an empty part between it. If an N-th part cannot be found, an empty string is returned. However, unlike `ExtractWord` (928), an empty string is a valid return value, i.e. a part can be empty.

The pre-defined constant `StdWordDelims` (917) can be used for the `Delims` argument. The pre-defined constant `Brackets` (917) would be better suited the `Delims` argument e.g. in case factors in a mathematical expression are searched.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ExtractSubStr` (928), `ExtractWord` (928), `ExtractWordPos` (929)

### 27.3.34 ExtractSubstr

**Synopsis:** Extract a word from a string, starting at a given position in the string.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractSubstr(const S: String; var Pos: Integer;  
const Delims: TSysCharSet) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractSubStr` returns all characters from `S` starting at position `Pos` till the first character in `Delims`, or till the end of `S` is reached. The delimiter character is not included in the result. `Pos` is then updated to point to the next first non-delimiter character in `S`. If `Pos` is larger than the `Length` of `S`, an empty string is returned.

The pre-defined constant `StdWordDelims` (917) can be used for the `Delims` argument.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ExtractDelimited` (927), `ExtractWord` (928), `ExtractWordPos` (929)

### 27.3.35 ExtractWord

**Synopsis:** Extract the N-th word out of a string.

**Declaration:** `function ExtractWord(N: Integer; const S: String;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ExtractWord` extracts the N-th word from the string `S`. The set of characters in `WordDelims` are used to mark word boundaries. A word is defined as any non-empty sequence of characters which are not present in `WordDelims`: if a character is not in `WordDelims`, it is considered as part of a word. If an N-th word cannot be found, an empty string is returned.

Unlike `ExtractDelimited` (927), an empty string is not a valid return value, i.e. is not a word. If an empty string is returned, the index `N` was out of range.

The pre-defined constant `StdWordDelims` (917) can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `ExtractWordPos` (929), `ExtractSubStr` (928), `ExtractDelimited` (927), `IsWordPresent` (932), `WordCount` (940), `WordPosition` (941)

### 27.3.36 ExtractWordPos

Synopsis: Extract a word from a string, and return the position where it was located in the string.

Declaration: 

```
function ExtractWordPos(N: Integer; const S: String;
                        const WordDelims: TSysCharSet; var Pos: Integer)
                        : String
```

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractWordPos` extracts the N-th word from the string `S` and returns the position of this word in `Pos`. The set of characters in `WordDelims` are used to mark word boundaries. A word is defined as any non-empty sequence of characters which are not present in `WordDelims`: if a character is not in `WordDelims`, it is considered as part of a word. If an N-th word cannot be found, an empty string is returned and `Pos` is zero.

Unlike `ExtractDelimited` (927), an empty string is not a valid return value, i.e. is not a word. If an empty string is returned, the index `N` was out of range.

The pre-defined constant `StdWordDelims` (917) can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractWord` (928), `ExtractSubStr` (928), `IsWordPresent` (932), `WordCount` (940), `WordPosition` (941)

### 27.3.37 FindPart

Synopsis: Search for a substring in a string, using wildcards.

Declaration: 

```
function FindPart(const HelpWilds: String; const InputStr: String)
                  : Integer
```

Visibility: default

Description: `FindPart` searches the string `InputStr` and returns the first string that matches the wildcards specification in `HelpWilds`. If no match is found, an empty string is returned. valid wildcards are the "?" (question mark) and "\*" (asterisk) characters.

Errors: None.

See also: `SearchBuf` (937)

### 27.3.38 GetCmdLineArg

Synopsis: Returns the command-line argument following the given switch.

Declaration: 

```
function GetCmdLineArg(const Switch: String; SwitchChars: TSysCharSet)
                      : String
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCmdLineArg` returns the value for the `Switch` option on the command-line, if any is given. Command-line arguments are considered switches if they start with one of the characters in the `SwitchChars` set. The value is the command-line argument following the switch command-line argument.

Gnu-style (long) Options of the form `switch=value` are not supported.

The `StdSwitchChars` (917) constant can be used as value for the `SwitchChars` parameter.

Errors: The `GetCmdLineArg` does not check whether the value of the option does not start with a switch character. i.e.

```
myprogram -option1 -option2
```

will result in "-option2" as the result of the `GetCmdLineArg` call for option1.

See also: `StdSwitchChars` ([917](#))

### 27.3.39 Hex2Dec

Synopsis: Converts a hexadecimal string to a decimal value

Declaration: `function Hex2Dec(const S: String) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Hex2Dec` converts the hexadecimal value in the string `S` to its decimal value. Unlike the standard `Val` or `StrToInt` functions, there need not be a \$ sign in front of the hexadecimal value to indicate that it is indeed a hexadecimal value.

Errors: If `S` does not contain a valid hexadecimal value, an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

See also: `Dec2Numb` ([926](#)), `IntToBin` ([931](#)), `intToRoman` ([931](#)), `RomanToInt` ([937](#))

### 27.3.40 HexToBin

Synopsis: Convert a hexadecimal string to a binary buffer

Declaration: `function HexToBin(HexValue: PChar; BinValue: PChar; BinBufSize: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `HexToBin` scans the hexadecimal string representation in `HexValue` and transforms every 2 character hexadecimal number to a byte and stores it in `BinValue`. The buffer size is the size of the binary buffer. Scanning will stop if the size of the binary buffer is reached or when an invalid character is encountered. The return value is the number of stored bytes.

Errors: No length checking is done, so if an invalid size is specified, an exception may follow.

See also: `BinToHex` ([924](#))

### 27.3.41 IfThen

Synopsis: Returns one of two strings, depending on a boolean expression

Declaration: `function IfThen(AValue: Boolean; const ATrue: String; AFalse: String) : String`  
`function IfThen(AValue: Boolean; const ATrue: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `IfThen` returns `ATrue` if `AValue` is `True`, and returns `AFalse` if `AValue` is `false`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiMatchStr` ([921](#)), `AnsiMatchText` ([921](#))

### 27.3.42 IntToBin

Synopsis: Converts an integer to a binary string representation, inserting spaces at fixed locations.

Declaration: `function IntToBin(Value: LongInt; Digits: Integer; Spaces: Integer)  
: String`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntToBin` converts `Value` to a string with its binary (base 2) representation. The resulting string contains at least `Digits` digits, with spaces inserted every `Spaces` digits. `Spaces` should be a nonzero value. If `Digits` is larger than 32, it is truncated to 32.

Errors: If `Spaces` is zero, a division by zero error will occur.

See also: `Hex2Dec` (930), `IntToRoman` (931)

### 27.3.43 IntToRoman

Synopsis: Represent an integer with roman numerals

Declaration: `function IntToRoman(Value: LongInt) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntToRoman` converts `Value` to a string with the Roman representation of `Value`. Number up to 1 million can be represented this way.

Errors: None.

See also: `RomanToInt` (937), `Hex2Dec` (930), `IntToBin` (931)

### 27.3.44 IsEmptyStr

Synopsis: Check whether a string is empty, disregarding whitespace characters

Declaration: `function IsEmptyStr(const S: String; const EmptyChars: TSysCharSet)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsEmptyStr` returns `True` if the string `S` only contains characters whitespace characters, all characters in `EmptyChars` are considered whitespace characters. If a character not present in `EmptyChars` is found in `S`, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `IsWild` (931), `FindPart` (929), `IsWordPresent` (932)

### 27.3.45 IsWild

Synopsis: Check whether a string matches a wildcard search expression.

Declaration: `function IsWild(InputStr: String; Wilds: String; IgnoreCase: Boolean)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default



**Description:** `IsWild` checks `InputStr` for the presence of the `Wilds` string. `Wilds` may contain "?" and "\*" wildcard characters, which have their usual meaning: "\*" matches any series of characters, possibly empty. "?" matches any single character. The function returns `True` if a string is found that matches `Wilds`, `False` otherwise.

If `IgnoreCase` is `True`, the non-wildcard characters are matched case insensitively. If it is `False`, case is observed when searching.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SearchBuf` (937), `FindPart` (929)

### 27.3.46 IsWordPresent

**Synopsis:** Check for the presence of a word in a string.

**Declaration:** `function IsWordPresent(const W: String;const S: String;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `IsWordPresent` checks for the presence of the word `W` in the string `S`. Words are delimited by the characters found in `WordDelims`. The function returns `True` if a match is found, `False` otherwise. The search is performed case sensitive.

This function is equivalent to the `SearchBuf` (937) function with the `soWholeWords` option specified.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SearchBuf` (937)

### 27.3.47 LeftBStr

**Synopsis:** Copies Count characters starting at the left of a string.

**Declaration:** `function LeftBStr(const AText: AnsiString;const AByteCount: Integer)  
: AnsiString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LeftBStr` returns a string containing the leftmost `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText`. If `AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `LeftStr` (932), `AnsiLeftStr` (921), `RightBStr` (936), `MidBStr` (933)

### 27.3.48 LeftStr

**Synopsis:** Copies Count characters starting at the left of a string.

**Declaration:** `function LeftStr(const AText: AnsiString;const ACount: Integer)  
: AnsiString  
function LeftStr(const AText: WideString;const ACount: Integer)  
: WideString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LeftStr` returns a string containing the leftmost `ACount` characters from the string `AText` . If `ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText` , only as many characters as available are returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `LeftBStr` (932), `AnsiLeftStr` (921), `RightStr` (936), `MidStr` (933)

### 27.3.49 MidBStr

**Synopsis:** Copies a number of characters starting at a given position in a string.

**Declaration:** `function MidBStr(const AText: AnsiString;const AByteStart: Integer;  
const AByteCount: Integer) : AnsiString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MidBStr` returns a string containing the first `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText` starting at position `AByteStart`. If `AByteStart+AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned. If `AByteStart` is less than 1 or larger than the length of `AText`, then no characters are returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `LeftBStr` (932), `AnsiMidStr` (921), `RightBStr` (936), `MidStr` (933)

### 27.3.50 MidStr

**Synopsis:** Copies a number of characters starting at a given position in a string.

**Declaration:** `function MidStr(const AText: AnsiString;const AStart: Integer;  
const ACount: Integer) : AnsiString  
function MidStr(const AText: WideString;const AStart: Integer;  
const ACount: Integer) : WideString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `MidStr` returns a string containing the first `ACount` bytes from the string `AText` starting at position `AStart`. If `AStart+ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText`, only as many characters as available are returned. If `AStart` is less than 1 or larger than the length of `AText`, then no characters are returned.

This function is equivalent to the standard `Copy` function, and is provided for completeness only.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `LeftStr` (932), `AnsiMidStr` (921), `RightStr` (936), `MidBStr` (933)

### 27.3.51 NPos

**Synopsis:** Returns the position of the N-th occurrence of a substring in a string.

**Declaration:** `function NPos(const C: String;S: String;N: Integer) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `NPos` checks `S` for the position of the N-th occurrence of `C`. If `C` occurs less than `N` times in `S`, or does not occur in `S` at all, 0 is returned. If `N` is less than 1, zero is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: [WordPosition \(941\)](#), [FindPart \(929\)](#)

### 27.3.52 Numb2Dec

Synopsis: Converts a string representation of a number to its numerical value, given a certain base.

Declaration: `function Numb2Dec(S: String;Base: Byte) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Numb2Dec` converts the number in string `S` to a decimal value. It assumes the number is represented using `Base` as the base. No checking is performed to see whether `S` contains a valid number using base `Base`.

Errors: None.

See also: [Hex2Dec \(930\)](#), [Numb2USA \(934\)](#)

### 27.3.53 Numb2USA

Synopsis: Insert thousand separators.

Declaration: `function Numb2USA(const S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Numb2USA` inserts thousand separators in the string `S` at the places where they are supposed to be, i.e. every 3 digits. The string `S` should contain a valid integer number, i.e. no digital number. No checking on this is done.

Errors: None.

### 27.3.54 PadCenter

Synopsis: Pad the string to a certain length, so the string is centered.

Declaration: `function PadCenter(const S: String;Len: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadCenter` add spaces to the left and right of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len`. If the number of spaces to add is odd, then the extra space will be added at the end. If the string `S` has length equal to or largert than `Len`, no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is.

Errors: None.

See also: [PadLeft \(935\)](#), [PadRight \(935\)](#), [AddChar \(918\)](#), [AddCharR \(919\)](#)

**27.3.55 PadLeft**

Synopsis: Add spaces to the left of a string till a certain length is reached.

Declaration: `function PadLeft(const S: String; N: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadLeft` add spaces to the left of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len` . If the string `S` has length equal to or largert than `Len` , no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is. The resulting string is `S` , right-justified on length `Len` .

Errors: None.

See also: `PadLeft` ([935](#)), `PadCenter` ([934](#)), `AddChar` ([918](#)), `AddCharR` ([919](#))

**27.3.56 PadRight**

Synopsis: Add spaces to the right of a string till a certain length is reached.

Declaration: `function PadRight(const S: String; N: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `PadRight` add spaces to the left of the string `S` till the result reaches length `Len`. If the string `S` has length equal to or largert than `Len`, no spaces are added, and the string `S` is returned as-is. The resulting string is `S`, left-justified on length `Len` .

Errors: None.

See also: `PadLeft` ([935](#)), `PadCenter` ([934](#)), `AddChar` ([918](#)), `AddCharR` ([919](#))

**27.3.57 PosEx**

Synopsis: Search for the occurance of a character in a string, starting at a certain position.

Declaration: `function PosEx(const SubStr: String; const S: String; Offset: Cardinal)  
: Integer  
function PosEx(const SubStr: String; const S: String) : Integer  
function PosEx(c: Char; const S: String; Offset: Cardinal) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `PosEx` returns the position of the first occurrence of the character `C` or the substring `SubStr` in the string `S`, starting the search at position `Offset` (default 1). If `C` or `SubStr` does not occur in `S` after the given `Offset`, zero is returned. The position `Offset` is also searched.

Errors: None.

See also: `NPos` ([933](#)), `AnsiContainsText` ([919](#)), `AnsiContainsStr` ([919](#))

**27.3.58 RandomFrom**

Synopsis: Choose a random string from an array of strings.

Declaration: `function RandomFrom(const AValues: Array[] of String) : String  
; Overload`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RandomFrom` picks at random a valid index in the array `AValues` and returns the string at that position in the array.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiMatchStr` ([921](#)), `AnsiMatchText` ([921](#))

### 27.3.59 ReverseString

**Synopsis:** Reverse characters in a string

**Declaration:** `function ReverseString(const AText: String) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `ReverseString` returns a string, made up of the characters in string `AText`, in reverse order.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `RandomFrom` ([935](#))

### 27.3.60 RightBStr

**Synopsis:** Copy a given number of characters (bytes), counting from the right of a string.

**Declaration:** `function RightBStr(const AText: AnsiString; const AByteCount: Integer) : AnsiString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RightBStr` returns a string containing the rightmost `AByteCount` bytes from the string `AText`. If `AByteCount` is larger than the length (in bytes) of `AText`, only as many bytes as available are returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `LeftBStr` ([932](#)), `AnsiRightStr` ([923](#)), `RightStr` ([936](#)), `MidBStr` ([933](#))

### 27.3.61 RightStr

**Synopsis:** Copy a given number of characters, counting from the right of a string.

**Declaration:** `function RightStr(const AText: AnsiString; const ACount: Integer) : AnsiString`  
`function RightStr(const AText: WideString; const ACount: Integer) : WideString`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `RightStr` returns a string containing the rightmost `ACount` characters from the string `AText`. If `ACount` is larger than the length (in characters) of `AText`, only as many characters as available are returned.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `LeftStr` ([932](#)), `AnsiRightStr` ([923](#)), `RightBStr` ([936](#)), `MidStr` ([933](#))

### 27.3.62 RomanToInt

Synopsis: Convert a string with a Roman number to it's decimal value.

Declaration: `function RomanToInt(const S: String) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `RomanToInt` returns the decimal equivalent of the Roman numerals in the string `S`. Invalid characters are dropped from `S`. A negative numeral is supported as well.

Errors: None.

See also: `IntToRoman` ([931](#)), `Hex2Dec` ([930](#)), `Numb2Dec` ([934](#))

### 27.3.63 RPos

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of substring or character in a string

Declaration: `function RPos(c: Char;const S: AnsiString) : Integer; Overload`  
`function RPos(const Substr: AnsiString;const Source: AnsiString)`  
`: Integer; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `RPos` looks in `S` for the character `C` or the string `SubStr`. It starts looking at the end of the string, and searches towards the beginning of the string. If a match is found, it returns the position of the match.

See also: `RPosEx` ([937](#))

### 27.3.64 RPosEx

Synopsis: Find last occurrence substring or character in a string, starting at a certain position

Declaration: `function RPosEX(C: Char;const S: AnsiString;offs: cardinal) : Integer`  
`; Overload`  
`function RPosEx(const Substr: AnsiString;const Source: AnsiString;`  
`offs: cardinal) : Integer; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `RPos` looks in `S` for the character `C` or the string `SubStr`. It starts looking at position `Offs`, and searches towards the beginning of the string. If a match is found, it returns the position of the match.

See also: `RPos` ([937](#))

### 27.3.65 SearchBuf

Synopsis: Search a buffer for a certain string.

Declaration: `function SearchBuf(Buf: PChar;BufLen: Integer;SelStart: Integer;`  
`SelLength: Integer;SearchString: String;`  
`Options: TStringSearchOptions) : PChar`  
`function SearchBuf(Buf: PChar;BufLen: Integer;SelStart: Integer;`  
`SelLength: Integer;SearchString: String) : PChar`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `SearchBuf` searches the buffer `Buf` for the occurrence of `SearchString`. At most `Buflen` characters are searched, and the search is started at `SelStart+SelLength`. If a match is found, a pointer to the position of the match is returned. The parameter `Options` (918) specifies how the search is conducted. It is a set of the following options:

Table 27.3:

Option	Effect
<code>soDown</code>	Searches forward, starting at the end of the selection. Default is searching up
<code>soMatchCase</code>	Observe case when searching. Default is to ignore case.
<code>soWholeWord</code>	Match only whole words. Default also returns parts of words

The standard constant `WordDelimiters` (918) is used to mark the boundaries of words.

The `SelStart` parameter is zero based.

**Errors:** `Buflen` must be the real length of the string, no checking on this is performed.

**See also:** `FindPart` (929), `ExtractWord` (928), `ExtractWordPos` (929), `ExtractSubStr` (928), `IsWordPresent` (932)

### 27.3.66 Soundex

**Synopsis:** Compute the soundex of a string

**Declaration:** `function Soundex(const AText: String; ALength: TSoundexLength) : String`  
`function Soundex(const AText: String) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Soundex` computes a soundex code for `AText`. The resulting code will at most have `ALength` characters. The soundex code is computed according to the US system of soundex computing, which may result in inaccurate results in other languages.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SoundexCompare` (938), `SoundexInt` (939), `SoundexProc` (939), `SoundexWord` (940), `SoundexSimilar` (939)

### 27.3.67 SoundexCompare

**Synopsis:** Compare soundex values of 2 strings.

**Declaration:** `function SoundexCompare(const AText: String; const AOther: String; ALength: TSoundexLength) : Integer`  
`function SoundexCompare(const AText: String; const AOther: String) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SoundexCompare` computes the soundex codes of `AText` and `AOther` and feeds these to `CompareText`. It will return -1 if the soundex code of `AText` is less than the soundex code of `AOther`, 0 if they are equal, and 1 if the code of `AOther` is larger than the code of `AText`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Soundex` (938), `SoundexInt` (939), `SoundexProc` (939), `SoundexWord` (940), `SoundexSimilar` (939)

**27.3.68 SoundexInt**

Synopsis: Soundex value as an integer.

Declaration: `function SoundexInt(const AText: String; ALength: TSoundexIntLength)  
: Integer  
function SoundexInt(const AText: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexInt` computes the Soundex (938) code (with length `ALength`, default 4) of `AText`, and converts the code to an integer value.

Errors: None.

See also: Soundex (938), SoundexCompare (938), SoundexProc (939), SoundexWord (940), SoundexSimilar (939)

**27.3.69 SoundexProc**

Synopsis: Default `AnsiResemblesText` implementation.

Declaration: `function SoundexProc(const AText: String; const AOther: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexProc` is the standard implementation for the `AnsiResemblesText` (923) procedure: By default, `AnsiResemblesProc` is set to this function. It compares the soundex codes of `AOther` and `AText` and returns `True` if they are equal, or `False` if they are not.

Errors: None.

See also: Soundex (938), SoundexCompare (938), SoundexInt (939), SoundexWord (940), SoundexSimilar (939)

**27.3.70 SoundexSimilar**

Synopsis: Check whether 2 strings have equal soundex values

Declaration: `function SoundexSimilar(const AText: String; const AOther: String;  
ALength: TSoundexLength) : Boolean  
function SoundexSimilar(const AText: String; const AOther: String)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexSimilar` returns `True` if the soundex codes (with length `ALength`) of `AText` and `AOther` are equal, and `False` if they are not.

Errors: None.

See also: Soundex (938), SoundexCompare (938), SoundexInt (939), SoundexProc (939), SoundexWord (940), Soundex (938)



### 27.3.71 SoundexWord

Synopsis: Calculate a word-sized soundex value

Declaration: `function SoundexWord(const AText: String) : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `SoundexInt` computes the Soundex (938) code (with length 4) of `AText`, and converts the code to a word-sized value.

Errors: None.

See also: `Soundex` (938), `SoundexCompare` (938), `SoundexInt` (939), `SoundexProc` (939), `SoundexSimilar` (939)

### 27.3.72 StuffString

Synopsis: Replace part of a string with another string.

Declaration: `function StuffString(const AText: String; AStart: Cardinal;  
                                  ALength: Cardinal; const ASubText: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `StuffString` returns a copy of `AText` with the segment starting at `AStart` with length `ALength`, replaced with the string `ASubText`. Basically it deletes the segment of `AText` and inserts the new text in it's place.

Errors: No checking on the validity of the `AStart` and `ALength` parameters is done. Providing invalid values may result in access violation errors.

See also: `FindPart` (929), `DelChars` (926), `DelSpace` (927), `ExtractSubStr` (928), `DupeString` (927)

### 27.3.73 Tab2Space

Synopsis: Convert tab characters to a number of spaces

Declaration: `function Tab2Space(const S: String; Numb: Byte) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Tab2Space` returns a copy of `S` with all tab characters (ASCII character 9) converted to `Numb` spaces.

Errors: None.

See also: `StuffString` (940), `FindPart` (929), `ExtractWord` (928), `DelChars` (926), `DelSpace` (927), `DelSpace1` (927), `DupeString` (927)

### 27.3.74 WordCount

Synopsis: Count the number of words in a string.

Declaration: `function WordCount(const S: String; const WordDelims: TSysCharSet)  
                                  : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `WordCount` returns the number of words in the string `S`. A word is a non-empty string of characters bounded by one of the characters in `WordDelims`.

The pre-defined `StdWordDelims` (917) constant can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `WordPosition` (941), `StdWordDelims` (917), `ExtractWord` (928), `ExtractWordPos` (929)

### 27.3.75 WordPosition

**Synopsis:** Search position of Nth word in a string.

**Declaration:** `function WordPosition(const N: Integer; const S: String;  
const WordDelims: TSysCharSet) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WordPosition` returns the position (in characters) of the N-th word in the string `S`. A word is a non-empty string of characters bounded by one of the characters in `WordDelims`. If `N` is out of range, zero is returned.

The pre-defined `StdWordDelims` (917) constant can be used for the `WordDelims` argument.

**Errors:** None

See also: `WordCount` (940), `StdWordDelims` (917), `ExtractWord` (928), `ExtractWordPos` (929)

### 27.3.76 XorDecode

**Synopsis:** Decode a string encoded with `XorEncode` (941)

**Declaration:** `function XorDecode(const Key: String; const Source: String) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `XorDecode` decodes `Source` and returns the original string that was encrypted using `XorEncode` (941) with key `Key`. If a different key is used than the key used to encode the string, the result will be unreadable.

**Errors:** If the string `Source` is not a valid `XorEncode` result (e.g. contains non-numerical characters), then a `EConversionError` exception will be raised.

See also: `XorEncode` (941), `XorString` (942)

### 27.3.77 XorEncode

**Synopsis:** Encode a string by XOR-ing its characters using characters of a given key, representing the result as hex values.

**Declaration:** `function XorEncode(const Key: String; const Source: String) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `XorEncode` encodes the string `Source` by XOR-ing each character in `Source` with the corresponding character in `Key` (repeating `Key` as often as necessary) and representing the resulting ASCII code as a hexadecimal number (of length 2). The result is therefore twice as long as the original string, and every 2 bytes represent an ASCII code.

Feeding the resulting string with the same key `Key` to the `XorDecode` (941) function will result in the original `Source` string.

This function can be used e.g. to trivially encode a password in a configuration file.

Errors: None.

See also: `XorDecode` (941), `XorString` (942), `Hex2Dec` (930)

### 27.3.78 XorString

Synopsis: Encode a string by XOR-ing its characters using characters of a given key.

Declaration: `function XorString(const Key: ShortString; const Src: ShortString)  
: ShortString`

Visibility: default

Description: `XorString` encodes the string `Src` by XOR-ing each character in `Source` with the corresponding character in `Key`, repeating `Key` as often as necessary. The resulting string may contain unreadable characters and may even contain null characters. For this reason it may be a better idea to use the `XorEncode` (941) function instead, which will represent each resulting ASCII code as a hexadecimal number (of length 2).

Feeding the result again to `XorString` with the same `Key`, will result in the original string `Src`.

Errors: None.

See also: `XorEncode` (941), `XorDecode` (941)

## Chapter 28

# Reference for unit 'System'

### 28.1 Miscellaneous functions

Functions that do not belong in one of the other categories.

Table 28.1:

Name	Description
Assert ( <a href="#">987</a> )	Conditionally abort program with error
Break ( <a href="#">992</a> )	Abort current loop
Continue ( <a href="#">1000</a> )	Next cycle in current loop
Exclude ( <a href="#">1008</a> )	Exclude an element from a set
Exit ( <a href="#">1010</a> )	Exit current function or procedure
Include ( <a href="#">1024</a> )	Include an element into a set
LongJump ( <a href="#">1034</a> )	Jump to execution point
Ord ( <a href="#">1039</a> )	Return ordinal value of enumerated type
Pred ( <a href="#">1041</a> )	Return previous value of ordinal type
SetJump ( <a href="#">1055</a> )	Mark execution point for jump
SizeOf ( <a href="#">1059</a> )	Return size of variable or type
Succ ( <a href="#">1064</a> )	Return next value of ordinal type

### 28.2 Operating System functions

Functions that are connected to the operating system.

### 28.3 String handling

All things connected to string handling.

### 28.4 Mathematical routines

Functions connected to calculating and converting numbers.

Table 28.2:

Name	Description
Chdir (993)	Change working directory
Getdir (1018)	Return current working directory
Halt (1021)	Halt program execution
Paramcount (1039)	Number of parameters with which program was called
Paramstr (1040)	Retrieve parameters with which program was called
Mkdir (1035)	Make a directory
Rmdir (1049)	Remove a directory
Runerror (1052)	Abort program execution with error condition

Table 28.3:

Name	Description
BinStr (990)	Construct binary representation of integer
Chr (993)	Convert ASCII code to character
Concat (999)	Concatenate two strings
Copy (1001)	Copy part of a string
Delete (1003)	Delete part of a string
HexStr (1021)	Construct hexadecimal representation of integer
Insert (1028)	Insert one string in another
Length (1032)	Return length of string
Lowercase (1034)	Convert string to all-lowercase
OctStr (1037)	Construct octal representation of integer
Pos (1041)	Calculate position of one string in another
SetLength (1056)	Set length of a string
SetString (1057)	Set contents and length of a string
Str (1062)	Convert number to string representation
StringOfChar (1063)	Create string consisting of a number of characters
Uppcase (1070)	Convert string to all-uppercase
Val (1071)	Convert string to number

## 28.5 Memory management functions

Functions concerning memory issues.

## 28.6 File handling functions

Functions concerning input and output from and to file.

## 28.7 Overview

The system unit contains the standard supported functions of Free Pascal. It is the same for all platforms. Basically it is the same as the system unit provided with Borland or Turbo Pascal.

Functions are listed in alphabetical order. Arguments of functions or procedures that are optional are put between square brackets.

Table 28.4:

Name	Description
Abs (982)	Calculate absolute value
Arctan (985)	Calculate inverse tangent
Cos (1001)	Calculate cosine of angle
Dec (1002)	Decrease value of variable
Exp (1011)	Exponentiate
Frac (1016)	Return fractional part of floating point value
Hi (1022)	Return high byte/word of value
Inc (1023)	Increase value of variable
Int (1029)	Calculate integer part of floating point value
Ln (1033)	Calculate logarithm
Lo (1033)	Return low byte/word of value
Odd (1038)	Is a value odd or even ?
Pi (1040)	Return the value of pi
Power (943)	Raise float to integer power
Random (1043)	Generate random number
Randomize (1043)	Initialize random number generator
Round (1050)	Round floating point value to nearest integer number
Sin (1059)	Calculate sine of angle
Sqr (1061)	Calculate the square of a value
Sqrt (1061)	Calculate the square root of a value
Swap (1065)	Swap high and low bytes/words of a variable
Trunc (1069)	Truncate a floating point value

The pre-defined constants and variables are listed in the first section. The second section contains an overview of all functions, grouped by functionality, and the last section contains the supported functions and procedures.

## 28.8 Constants, types and variables

### 28.8.1 Constants

```
AbstractErrorProc : TAbstractErrorProc = nil
```

If set, the `AbstractErrorProc` constant is used when an abstract error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: A stack dump is performed, and the program exits with error code 211.

The `SysUtils` unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

```
AssertErrorProc : TAssertErrorProc = @SysAssert
```

If set, the `AssertErrorProc` constant is used when an assert error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: The assertion error message is printed, together with the location of the assertion, and A stack dump is performed, and the program exits with error code 227.

The `SysUtils` unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

```
BackTraceStrFunc : TBackTraceStrFunc = @SysBackTraceStr
```

Table 28.5:

Name	Description
Addr (984)	Return address of variable
Assigned (988)	Check if a pointer is valid
CompareByte (994)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CompareChar (995)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CompareDWord (997)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CompareWord (998)	Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte
CSeg (1002)	Return code segment
Dispose (1004)	Free dynamically allocated memory
DSeg (1005)	Return data segment
FillByte (1012)	Fill memory region with 8-bit pattern
Fillchar (1013)	Fill memory region with certain character
FillDWord (1014)	Fill memory region with 32-bit pattern
Fillword (1015)	Fill memory region with 16-bit pattern
Freemem (1016)	Release allocated memory
Getmem (1018)	Allocate new memory
GetMemoryManager (1019)	Return current memory manager
High (1022)	Return highest index of open array or enumerated
IsMemoryManagerSet (1031)	Is the memory manager set
Low (1034)	Return lowest index of open array or enumerated
Move (1036)	Move data from one location in memory to another
MoveChar0 (1036)	Move data till first zero character
New (1037)	Dynamically allocate memory for variable
Ofs (1038)	Return offset of variable
Ptr (1042)	Combine segment and offset to pointer
ReAllocMem (1046)	Resize a memory block on the heap
Seg (1054)	Return segment
SetMemoryManager (1056)	Set a memory manager
Sptr (1060)	Return current stack pointer
SSeg (1062)	Return stack segment register value

This handler is called to get a standard format for the backtrace routine.

```
CmdLine : PChar = nil
```

Current command-line.

```
CtrlZMarksEOF : Boolean = false
```

CtrlZMarksEOF indicates whether on this system, an CTRL-Z character (ordinal 26) in a file marks the end of the file. This is False on most systems except on DOS.

To get DOS-compatible behaviour, this constant can be set to True

```
DefaultStackSize = 32768
```

Default size for a new thread's stack (32k by default).

```
DefaultTextLineBreakStyle : TTextLineBreakStyle = tlbsLF
```

Table 28.6:

Name	Description
Append (985)	Open a file in append mode
Assign (987)	Assign a name to a file
Blockread (991)	Read data from a file into memory
Blockwrite (991)	Write data from memory to a file
Close (994)	Close a file
Eof (1006)	Check for end of file
Eoln (1007)	Check for end of line
Erase (1008)	Delete file from disk
Filepos (1011)	Position in file
Filesize (1012)	Size of file
Flush (1015)	Write file buffers to disk
IOresult (1029)	Return result of last file IO operation
Read (1044)	Read from file into variable
Readln (1045)	Read from file into variable and goto next line
Rename (1047)	Rename file on disk
Reset (1047)	Open file for reading
Rewrite (1048)	Open file for writing
Seek (1052)	Set file position
SeekEof (1053)	Set file position to end of file
SeekEoln (1054)	Set file position to end of line
SetTextBuf (1057)	Set size of file buffer
Truncate (1069)	Truncate the file at position
Write (1072)	Write variable to file
WriteLn (1072)	Write variable to file and append newline

DefaultTextLineBreakStyle contains the default OS setting for the TTextLineBreakStyle (975) type. It is initialized by the system unit, and is used to determine the default line ending when writing to text files.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
DirectorySeparator = '/'
```

DirectorySeparator is the character used by the current operating system to separate directory parts in a pathname. This constant is system dependent, and should not be set.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
DriveSeparator = ':'
```

On systems that support driveletters, the DriveSeparator constant denotes the character that separates the drive indicator from the directory part in a filename path.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
Erroraddr : pointer = nil
```

Address where the last error occurred.



Errorcode : Word = 0

Last error code.

ErrorProc : TErrorProc = nil

If set, the ErrorProc constant is used when a run-time error occurs. If it is not set, then the standard error handling is done: a stack dump is performed, and the program exits with the indicated error code.

The SysUtils unit sets this procedure and raises an exception in its handler.

ExceptProc : TExceptProc = nil

This constant points to the current exception handling procedure. This routine is called when an unhandled exception occurs, i.e. an exception that is not stopped by a except block.

If the handler is not set, the RTL will emit a run-time error 217 when an unhandler exception occurs.

It is set by the sysutils (1082) unit.

ExitProc : pointer = nil

Exit procedure pointer.

E\_NOINTERFACE = HRESULT ( \$80004002 )

Interface call result: Error: not an interface

E\_NOTIMPL = HRESULT ( \$80004001 )

Interface call result: Interface not implemented

E\_UNEXPECTED = HRESULT ( \$8000FFFF )

Interface call result: Unexpected error

Filemode : Byte = 2

Default file mode for untyped files.

FileNameCaseSensitive : Boolean = true

FileNameCaseSensitive is True if case is important when using filenames on the current OS. In this case, the OS will treat files with different cased names as different files. Note that this may depend on the filesystem: Unix operating systems that access a DOS or Windows partition will have this constant set to true, but when writing to the DOS partition, the casing is ignored.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

fmAppend = \$D7B4

File mode: File is open for writing, appending to the end.

fmClosed = \$D7B0

File mode: File is closed.

fmInOut = \$D7B3

File mode: File is open for reading and writing.

fmInput = \$D7B1

File mode: File is open for reading.

fmOutput = \$D7B2

File mode: File is open for writing.

fpc\_in\_abs\_real = 122

FPC compiler internal procedure index: abs (real)

fpc\_in\_addr\_x = 42

FPC compiler internal procedure index: addr

fpc\_in\_arctan\_real = 125

FPC compiler internal procedure index: arctan (real)

fpc\_in\_assert\_x\_y = 41

FPC compiler internal procedure index: assert

fpc\_in\_assigned\_x = 19

FPC compiler internal procedure index: assigned

fpc\_in\_break = 39

FPC compiler internal procedure index: break

fpc\_in\_chr\_byte = 7

FPC compiler internal procedure index: chr

fpc\_in\_concat\_x = 18

FPC compiler internal procedure index: concat

fpc\_in\_const\_abs = 103

FPC compiler internal procedure index: abs

fpc\_in\_const\_arctan = 112

FPC compiler internal procedure index: arctan

fpc\_in\_const\_cos = 113

FPC compiler internal procedure index: cos

fpc\_in\_const\_exp = 114

FPC compiler internal procedure index: exp

fpc\_in\_const\_frac = 102

FPC compiler internal procedure index: frac

fpc\_in\_const\_int = 104

FPC compiler internal procedure index: int

fpc\_in\_const\_ln = 115

FPC compiler internal procedure index: in

fpc\_in\_const\_odd = 106

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

fpc\_in\_const\_pi = 110

FPC compiler internal procedure index: pi

fpc\_in\_const\_ptr = 107

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

fpc\_in\_const\_round = 101

FPC compiler internal procedure index: round

fpc\_in\_const\_sin = 116

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sin

fpc\_in\_const\_sqr = 105

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr

fpc\_in\_const\_sqrt = 111

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqrt

`fpc_in_const_swap_long` = 109

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (long)

`fpc_in_const_swap_qword` = 128

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (qword)

`fpc_in_const_swap_word` = 108

FPC compiler internal procedure index: swap (word)

`fpc_in_const_trunc` = 100

FPC compiler internal procedure index: trunc

`fpc_in_continue` = 40

FPC compiler internal procedure index: continue

`fpc_in_copy_x` = 49

FPC compiler internal procedure index: copy

`fpc_in_cos_real` = 119

FPC compiler internal procedure index: cos (real)

`fpc_in_cycle` = 52

FPC compiler internal procedure index: cycle

`fpc_in_dec_x` = 36

FPC compiler internal procedure index: dec

`fpc_in_dispose_x` = 47

FPC compiler internal procedure index: dispose

`fpc_in_exclude_x_y` = 38

FPC compiler internal procedure index: exclude

`fpc_in_exit` = 48

FPC compiler internal procedure index: exit

`fpc_in_finalize_x` = 45

FPC compiler internal procedure index: finalize

`fpc_in_high_x` = 28

FPC compiler internal procedure index: high

`fpc_in_hi_long` = 4

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (long)

`fpc_in_hi_qword` = 118

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (qword)

`fpc_in_hi_word` = 2

FPC compiler internal procedure index: hi (word)

`fpc_in_include_x_y` = 37

FPC compiler internal procedure index: include

`fpc_in_inc_x` = 35

FPC compiler internal procedure index: inc

`fpc_in_initialize_x` = 50

FPC compiler internal procedure index: initialize

`fpc_in_leave` = 51

FPC compiler internal procedure index: leave

`fpc_in_length_string` = 6

FPC compiler internal procedure index: length

`fpc_in_ln_real` = 126

FPC compiler internal procedure index: ln (real)

`fpc_in_low_x` = 27

FPC compiler internal procedure index: low

`fpc_in_lo_long` = 3

FPC compiler internal procedure index: lo (long)

`fpc_in_lo_qword` = 117

FPC compiler internal procedure index: lo (qword)

`fpc_in_lo_word = 1`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: lo (word)

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpeqb = 200`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpeqd = 202`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpeqw = 201`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpgtb = 203`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpgtd = 205`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_mmx_pcmpgtw = 204`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: MMX

`fpc_in_new_x = 46`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: new

`fpc_in_ofs_x = 21`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: ofs

`fpc_in_ord_x = 5`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: ord

`fpc_in_pi = 121`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: pi

`fpc_in_pred_x = 30`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: pred

`fpc_in_prefetch_var = 129`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: prefetch

fpc\_in\_readln\_x = 17

FPC compiler internal procedure index: readln

fpc\_in\_read\_x = 16

FPC compiler internal procedure index: read

fpc\_in\_reset\_typedfile = 32

FPC compiler internal procedure index: reset

fpc\_in\_reset\_x = 25

FPC compiler internal procedure index: reset

fpc\_in\_rewrite\_typedfile = 33

FPC compiler internal procedure index: rewrite

fpc\_in\_rewrite\_x = 26

FPC compiler internal procedure index: rewrite

fpc\_in\_seg\_x = 29

FPC compiler internal procedure index: seg

fpc\_in\_setlength\_x = 44

FPC compiler internal procedure index: setlength

fpc\_in\_settextbuf\_file\_x = 34

FPC compiler internal procedure index: settextbuf

fpc\_in\_sin\_real = 127

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sin (real)

fpc\_in\_sizeof\_x = 22

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sizeof

fpc\_in\_sqrt\_real = 124

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqrt (real)

fpc\_in\_sqr\_real = 123

FPC compiler internal procedure index: sqr (real)

`fpc_in_str_x_string = 20`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: str

`fpc_in_succ_x = 31`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: succ

`fpc_in_typeinfo_x = 43`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: typeinfo

`fpc_in_typeof_x = 23`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: typeof

`fpc_in_val_x = 24`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: val

`fpc_in_writeln_x = 15`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: writeln

`fpc_in_write_x = 14`

FPC compiler internal procedure index: write

`growheapsize1 : PtrInt = 256 * 1024`

Grow rate for block less than 256 Kb.

`growheapsize2 : PtrInt = 1024 * 1024`

Grow rate for block larger than 256 Kb.

`growheapsize_small : PtrInt = 32 * 1024`

Fixed size small blocks grow rate

`InitProc : Pointer = nil`

`InitProc` is a routine that can be called after all units were initialized. It can be set by units to execute code that can be initialized after all units were initialized.

**Remark:** When setting the value of `InitProc`, the previous value should always be saved, and called when the installed initialization routine has finished executing.

`IsMultiThread : Boolean = false`

Indicates whether more than one thread is running in the application.



```
LFNSupport = true
```

LFNSupport determines whether the current OS supports long file names, i.e. filenames that are not of the form 8.3 as on ancient DOS systems. If the value of this constant is True then long filenames are supported. If it is false, then not.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
LineEnding = #10
```

LineEnding is a constant which contains the current line-ending character. This character is system dependent, and is initialized by the system. It should not be set.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

```
maxExitCode = 255
```

maxExitCode is the maximum value for the Halt ([1021](#)) call.

```
maxint = maxsmallint
```

Maximum integer value.

```
maxLongint = $7fffffff
```

Maximum longint value.

```
MaxSIntValue = High ( ValSInt )
```

Maximum String-size value.

```
maxSmallint = 32767
```

Maximum smallint value.

```
MaxUIntValue = High ( ValUInt )
```

Maximum unsigned integer value.

```
Max_Frame_Dump : Word = 8
```

Maximum number of frames to show in error frame dump.

```
PathSeparator = ':'
```

PathSeparator is the character used commonly on the current operating system to separate paths in a list of paths, such as the PATH environment variable.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

`RaiseMaxFrameCount : LongInt = 16`

Maximum number of frames to include in `TExceptObject` ([972](#))

`RaiseProc : TExceptProc = nil`

Procedure to raise an exception.

`SIGSTKSZ = 40960`

`sLineBreak = LineEnding`

`sLineBreak` is an alias for `LineEnding` ([956](#)) and is supplied for Delphi compatibility.

This constant is part of a set of constants that describe the OS characteristics. These constants should be used instead of hardcoding OS characteristics.

`StackError : Boolean = false`

Indicate whether there was a stack error.

`StdErrorHandle = 2`

Value of the OS handle for the standard error-output file.

`StdInputHandle = 0`

Value of the OS handle for the standard input file.

`StdOutputHandle = 1`

Value of the OS handle for the standard output file.

`S_FALSE = 1`

Interface call result: Not OK

`S_OK = 0`

Interface call result: OK

`ThreadingAlreadyUsed : Boolean = false`

Internal constant for the threading system. Don't use.

`UnusedHandle = -1`

Value indicating an unused file handle (as reported by the OS).

`VarAddRefProc : procedure(var v: tvardata) = nil`

Callback to increase reference count of a variant.

`varany = $101`

Variant type: Any

`vararray = $2000`

Variant type: variant Array

`varboolean = 11`

Variant type: Boolean type

`varbyref = $4000`

Variant type: By reference

`varbyte = 17`

Variant type: Byte (8 bit)

`VarClearProc : procedure(var v: tvardata) = nil`

Callback to clear a variant.

`VarCopyProc : procedure(var d: tvardata;const s: tvardata) = nil`

Callback to copy a variant

`varcurrency = 6`

Variant type: Currency

`vardate = 7`

Variant type: Date

`vardecimal = 14`

Variant type: Decimal (BCD)

`vardispatch = 9`

Variant type: dispatch interface

`vardouble = 5`

Variant type: Double float

`vareempty = 0`

Variant type: Empty variant

`varerror` = 10

Variant type: Error type

`varint64` = 20

Variant type: Integer (64-Bit)

`varinteger` = 3

Variant type: Integer (32-bit)

`varlongword` = 19

Variant type: Word (32 bit)

`varnull` = 1

Variant type: Null (981) variant

`varolestr` = 8

Variant type: OLE string (widestring)

`varqword` = 21

Variant type: Word (64-bit)

`varshortint` = 16

Variant type: Shortint (16 bit)

`varsingle` = 4

Variant type: Single float

`varsmallint` = 2

Variant type: smallint (8 bit)

`varstrarg` = \$48

Variant type: String

`varstring` = \$100

Variant type: String

`VarToLStrProc` : procedure(var d: AnsiString;const s: tvardata) = nil

Callback to convert a variant to a ansistring.

```
VarToWStrProc : procedure(var d: WideString;const s: tvardata) = nil
```

Callback to convert a variant to a widestring.

```
vartypemask = $fff
```

Variant type: Mask to extract type

```
varunknown = 13
```

Variant type: Unknown

```
varvariant = 12
```

Variant type: Variant (arrays only)

```
varword = 18
```

Variant type: Word (16 bit)

```
varword64 = varqword
```

Variant type: Word (64-bit)

```
vmtAfterConstruction = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 5
```

VMT Layout: ?

```
vmtAutoTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 7
```

VMT layout: ?

```
vmtBeforeDestruction = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 6
```

VMT Layout: ?

```
vmtClassName = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer )
```

VMT Layout: location of class name.

```
vmtDefaultHandler = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 4
```

VMT Layout: ?

```
vmtDefaultHandlerStr = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 7
```

VMT Layout: ?

```
vmtDestroy = vmtMethodStart
```

VMT Layout: Location of destructor pointer.

```
vmtDynamicTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 2
```

VMT Layout: location of dynamic methods table.

```
vmtFieldTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 4
```

VMT Layout: Location of fields table.

```
vmtFreeInstance = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 2
```

VMT Layout: location of FreeInstance method.

```
vmtInitTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 6
```

VMT Layout: ?

```
vmtInstanceSize = 0
```

VMT Layout: Location of class instance size in VMT

```
vmtIntfTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 8
```

VMT layout: Interface table

```
vmtMethodStart = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 10
```

VMT layout: start of method table.

```
vmtMethodTable = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 3
```

VMT Layout: Method table start.

```
vmtMsgStrPtr = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 9
```

VMT layout: message strings table.

```
vmtNewInstance = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer )
```

VMT Layout: location of NewInstance method.

```
vmtParent = sizeof ( ptring ) * 2
```

VMT Layout: location of pointer to parent VMT.

```
vmtSafeCallException = vmtMethodStart + sizeof ( pointer ) * 3
```

VMT Layout: ?

```
vmtTypeInfo = vmtParent + sizeof ( pointer ) * 5
```

VMT Layout: Location of class type information.

`vtAnsiString = 11`

TVarRec type: Ansistring

`vtBoolean = 1`

TVarRec type: Boolean

`vtChar = 2`

TVarRec type: Char

`vtClass = 8`

TVarRec type: Class type

`vtCurrency = 12`

TVarRec type: Currency

`vtExtended = 3`

TVarRec type: Extended

`vtInt64 = 16`

TVarRec type: Int64 (signed 64-bit integer)

`vtInteger = 0`

TVarRec type: Integer

`vtInterface = 14`

TVarRec type: Interface

`vtObject = 7`

TVarRec type: Object instance

`vtPChar = 6`

TVarRec type: PChar

`vtPointer = 5`

TVarRec type: pointer

`vtPWideChar = 10`

TVarRec type: PWideChar

vtQWord = 17

TVarRec type: QWord (unsigned 64-bit integer)

vtString = 4

TVarRec type: String

vtVariant = 13

TVarRec type: Variant

vtWideChar = 9

TVarRec type: Widechar

vtWideString = 15

TVarRec type: WideString

## 28.8.2 Types

AnsiChar = Char

Alias for 1-byte sized char.

Byte = 0..255

An unsigned 8-bits integer

Cardinal = LongWord

An unsigned 32-bits integer.

Currency = Int64

Currency type.

DWord = LongWord

An unsigned 32-bits integer

Error = LongInt

32-bit signed integer.

fpc\_big\_chararray = Array[0..1023] of Char



Array of char.

```
fpc_big_widechararray = Array[0..1023] of widechar
```

Internal type used by widestring routines. Do not use

```
fpc_normal_set = Array[0..7] of LongInt
```

Type with the size of a normal set

```
fpc_small_set = LongInt
```

Type with the size of a small set

```
HRESULT = LongInt
```

32-Bit signed integer.

```
Integer = SmallInt
```

The system unit defines `Integer` as a signed 16-bit integer. But when DELPHI or OBJFPC mode are active, then the `objpas` unit redefines `Integer` as a 16-bit integer.

```
IntegerArray = Array[0..$effffff] of Integer
```

Generic array of integer.

```
jmp_buf = packed record
  ebx : LongInt;
  esi : LongInt;
  edi : LongInt;
  bp  : Pointer;
  sp  : Pointer;
  pc  : Pointer;
end
```

Record type to store processor information.

```
Longint = + ( - 2147483647 - 1 ) .. $7fffffff
```

A signed 32-bits integer

```
PAnsiChar = PChar
```

Alias for `PChar` (965) type.

```
PAnsiString = ^AnsiString
```

Pointer to an ansistring type.

`PBoolean = ^Boolean`

Pointer to a Boolean type.

`PByte = ^Byte`

Pointer to byte (963) type

`pcalldesc = ^tcalldesc`

Pointer to TCallDesc (971) record.

`PCardinal = ^Cardinal`

Pointer to Cardinal (963) type

`PChar = ^Char`

Or the same as a pointer to an array of char. See the reference manual for more information about this type.

`PClass = ^TClass`

Pointer to TClass (971)

`PCurrency = ^Currency`

Pointer to currency type.

`PDate = ^TDateTime`

Pointer to a TDateTime (971) type.

`pdispdesc = ^tdispdesc`

Pointer to tdispdesc (972) record

`PDouble = ^Double`

Pointer to double-sized float value.

`PDWord = ^DWord`

Pointer to DWord (963) type

`pdynarrayindex = ^tdynarrayindex`

Pointer to tdynarrayindex (972) type.

`PError = ^Error`

Pointer to an [Error \(963\)](#) type.

`PEventState = pointer`

Pointer to EventState, which is an opaque type.

`PExceptObject = ^TExceptObject`

Pointer to Exception handler procedural type TExceptProc [\(972\)](#)

`PExtended = ^Extended`

Pointer to extended-sized float value.

`PGuid = ^TGuid`

Pointer to TGUID [\(972\)](#) type.

`PInt64 = ^Int64`

Pointer to Int64 type

`PInteger = ^Integer`

Pointer to integer [\(964\)](#) type

`PIntegerArray = ^IntegerArray`

Pointer to IntegerArray [\(964\)](#) type

`pinterfaceentry = ^tinterfaceentry`

Pointer to tinterfaceentry [\(973\)](#) record.

`pinterfacetable = ^tinterfacetable`

Pointer to tinterfacetable [\(973\)](#) record.

`PJump_buf = ^jmp_buf`

Pointer to jmp\_buf [\(964\)](#) record

`PLongBool = ^LongBool`

Pointer to a LongBool type.

`PLongint = ^LongInt`

Pointer to Longint [\(964\)](#) type

`PLongWord = ^LongWord`

Pointer to LongWord type

PMemoryManager = ^TMemoryManager

Pointer to TMemoryManager (973) record

PMsgStrTable = ^TMsgStrTable

Pointer to array of TMsgStrTable (974) records.

PointerArray = Array[0..512\*1024\*1024-2] of Pointer

Generic pointer array.

POleVariant = ^OleVariant

Pointer to OleVariant type.

PPAnsiChar = PPChar

Alias for PPChar (967) type.

PPChar = ^PChar

Pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings.

PPCharArray = ^TPCharArray

Pointer to TPCharArray (974) type.

PPointer = ^Pointer

Pointer to a pointer type.

PPointerArray = ^PointerArray

Pointer to PointerArray (967) type

PPPointer = ^PPointer

Pointer to a PPointer (967) type.

PPtrInt = ^PtrInt

Pointer to PtrInt (968) type.

PPWideChar = ^PWideChar

Pointer to link id="PWideChar"> type.

PQWord = ^QWord

Pointer to QWord type

`PRTLCriticalSection = ^RTLCriticalSection`

Pointer to `#rtl.system.RTLCriticalSection` (974) type.

`PRTLEvent = pointer`

Pointer to `RTLEvent`, which is an opaque type.

`PShortInt = ^ShortInt`

Pointer to `shortint` (970) type

`PShortString = ^ShortString`

Pointer to a `shortstring` type.

`PSingle = ^Single`

Pointer to single-sized float value.

`PSizeInt = ^SizeInt`

Pointer to a `SizeInt` (970) type

`PSmallInt = ^SmallInt`

Pointer to `smallint` (970) type

`pstringmessagetable = ^TStringMessageTable`

Pointer to `TStringMessageTable` (975) record.

`PText = ^Text`

Pointer to text file.

`PTrInt = LongInt`

`PTrInt` is an integer type which has always the same size as a pointer. When using integers which will be cast to pointers and vice versa, use this type, never the regular integer type.

`PTrUInt = DWord`

`PTrUInt` is an unsigned integer type which has always the same size as a pointer. When using integers which will be cast to pointers and vice versa, use this type, never the regular `Cardinal` type.

`PUCS2Char = PWideChar`

Pointer to `UCS2Char` (979) character.

PUCS4Char = ^UCS4Char

Pointer to UCS4Char (980)

PUCS4CharArray = ^TUCS4CharArray

Pointer to array of UCS4Char (980) characters.

PUTF8String = ^UTF8String

Pointer to UTF8String (980)

pvararray = ^tvararray

Pointer to TVarArray (977) type.

pvararraybound = ^tvararraybound

Pointer to tvararraybound (977) type.

pvararrayboundarray = ^tvararrayboundarray

Pointer to tvararrayboundarray (977) type.

pvararraycoorarray = ^tvararraycoorarray

Pointer to tvararraycoorarray (977) type.

pvardata = ^tvardata

Pointer to TVarData (977) record.

PVariant = ^Variant

Pointer to Variant type.

pvariantmanager = ^tvariantmanager

Pointer to TVariantManager (978) record.

PVarRec = ^TVarRec

Pointer to TVarRec (979) type.

PWideChar = ^WideChar

Pointer to WChar (980).

PWord = ^Word

Pointer to word (980) type

`PWordBool = ^WordBool`

Pointer to a `WordBool` type.

`real48 = Array[0..5] of Byte`

TP compatible real type (6 bytes) definition

`ShortInt = -128..127`

A signed 8-bits integer

`SizeInt = LongInt`

Signed integer type which fits for sizes

`SizeUInt = DWord`

Unsigned Integer type which fits for sizes

`SmallInt = -32768..32767`

A signed 16-bits integer

`TAbstractErrorProc = procedure`

Abstract error handler procedural type.

`TAllocateThreadVarsHandler = procedure`

Threadvar allocation callback type for `TThreadManager` (976).

`TAnsiChar = Char`

Alias for 1-byte sized char.

`TAssertErrorProc = procedure(const msg: ShortString;  
const fname: ShortString; lineno: LongInt;  
erroraddr: pointer)`

Assert error handler procedural type.

`TBackTraceStrFunc = function(Addr: Pointer) : ShortString`

Type for formatting of backtrace dump.

`TBasicEventCreateHandler = function(EventAttributes: Pointer;  
AManualReset: Boolean;  
InitialState: Boolean;  
const Name: ansistring)  
: PEventState`

callback type for creating eventstate in TThreadManager (976).

```
TBasicEventHandler = procedure(state: PEventState)
```

Generic callback type for handling eventstate in TThreadManager (976).

```
TBasicEventWaitForHandler = function(timeout: Cardinal;
                                     state: PEventState) : LongInt
```

Wait for basic event callback type for TThreadManager (976).

```
TBeginThreadHandler = function(sa: Pointer;stacksize: DWord;
                               ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc;p: pointer;
                               creationFlags: DWord;
                               var ThreadId: TThreadID) : DWord
```

Callback for thread start in TThreadManager (976).

```
TBoundArray = Array[] of Integer
```

Dynamic array of integer.

```
tcalldesc = packed record
  calltype : Byte;
  argcount : Byte;
  namedargcount : Byte;
  argtypes : Array[0..255] of Byte;
end
```

tcalldesc is used to encode the arguments to a dispatch call to an OLE dual interface. It is used on windows only. It describes the arguments to a call.

```
TClass = Class of TObject
```

Class of TObject (1073).

```
TCriticalSectionHandler = procedure(var cs)
```

Generic callback type for critical section handling in TThreadManager (976).

```
TDateTime = Double
```

Encoded Date-Time type.

```
tdispdesc = packed record
  dispid : LongInt;
  restype : Byte;
  calldesc : tcalldesc;
end
```



`tcalldesc` is used to encode a dispatch call to an OLE dispatch interface. It is used on windows only. It describes the dispatch call.

`tdynarrayindex` = `SizeInt`

A variable of type `tdynarrayindex` will always have the correct size, suitable for serving as an index in a dynamic array.

`TEndThreadHandler` = `procedure(ExitCode: DWord)`

Callback for thread end in `TThreadManager` (976).

`TErrorProc` = `procedure(ErrNo: LongInt;Address: Pointer;Frame: Pointer)`

Standard error handler procedural type.

```
TExceptObject = record
  FObject : TObject;
  Addr : pointer;
  Next : PExceptObject;
  refcount : LongInt;
  Framecount : LongInt;
  Frames : PPointer;
end
```

`TExceptObject` is the exception description record which is found on the exception stack.

```
TExceptProc = procedure(Obj: TObject;Addr: Pointer;FrameCount: LongInt;
                        Frame: PPointer)
```

Exception handler procedural type

`TextFile` = `Text`

Alias for Text file type.

`TGetCurrentThreadIdHandler` = `function : TThreadId`

Callback type for retrieving thread ID in `TThreadManager` (976).

```
TGuid = packed record
end
```

Standard GUID representation type.

`THandle` = `LongInt`

This type should be considered opaque. It is used to describe file and other handles.

```

THeapStatus = record
  MaxHeapSize : PtrInt;
  MaxHeapUsed : PtrInt;
  CurrHeapSize : PtrInt;
  CurrHeapUsed : PtrInt;
  CurrHeapFree : PtrInt;
end

```

THeapStatus is the record describing the current heap status. It is returned by the GetHeapStatus (1018) call.

```
TInitThreadVarHandler = procedure(var offset: DWord; size: DWord)
```

Threadvar initialization callback type for TThreadManager (976).

```

tinterfaceentry = packed record
  IID : PGuid;
  VTable : Pointer;
  IOffset : DWord;
  IIDStr : PShortString;
end

```

tinterfaceentry is used to store the list of Interfaces of a class. This list is stored as an array of tinterfaceentry records.

```

tinterfacetable = packed record
  EntryCount : Word;
  Entries : Array[0..0] of tinterfaceentry;
end

```

Record to store list of interfaces of a class.

```

TMemoryManager = record
  NeedLock : Boolean;
  Getmem : function(Size: PtrInt) : Pointer;
  Freemem : function(p: pointer) : PtrInt;
  FreememSize : function(p: pointer; Size: PtrInt) : PtrInt;
  AllocMem : function(Size: PtrInt) : Pointer;
  ReAllocMem : function(var p: pointer; Size: PtrInt) : Pointer;
  MemSize : function(p: pointer) : PtrInt;
  GetHeapStatus : procedure(var status: THeapStatus);
end

```

TMemoryManager describes the memory manager. For more information about the memory manager, see the programmer's reference.

```

TMemoryMutexManager = record
  MutexInit : procedure;

```

```

    MutexDone : procedure;
    MutexLock : procedure;
    MutexUnlock : procedure;
end

```

When the heapmanager needs a lock, then the mutex manager is used to handle the lock.

```

TMethod = record
    Code : Pointer;
    Data : Pointer;
end

```

TMethod describes a general method pointer, and is used in Run-Time Type Information handling.

```

TMsgStrTable = record
    name : PShortString;
    method : pointer;
end

```

Record used in string message handler table.

```

TPCharArray = packed Array[0..(MaxLongintdivSizeOf(PChar))-1] of PChar

```

Array of PChar

```

TProcedure = procedure

```

Simple procedural type.

```

TReleaseThreadVarsHandler = procedure

```

Threadvar release callback type for TThreadManager (976).

```

TRelocateThreadVarHandler = function(offset: DWord) : pointer

```

Threadvar relocation callback type for TThreadManager (976).

```

TRTLCreateEventHandler = function : PRTLEvent

```

Callback type for creating a RTLEvent type in TThreadManager (976).

```

RTLCriticalSection = Opaque type

```

RTLCriticalSection represents a critical section (a mutex). This is an opaque type, it can differ from operating system to operating system. No assumptions should be made about it's structure or contents.

```

RTLEventHandler = procedure(AEvent: PRTLEvent)

```

Generic TRTLEvent handling type for TThreadManager (976).

```
TRTLEventHandlerTimeout = procedure(AEvent: PRTLEvent; timeout: LongInt)
```

TRTLEvent timeout handling type for TThreadManager (976).

```
TRTLEventSyncHandler = procedure(m: trtlmethod; p: TProcedure)
```

Callback type for event synchronization in TThreadManager (976).

```
trtlmethod = procedure of object
```

Callback type for synchronization event.

```
TStringMessageTable = record
    count : DWord;
    msgstrtable : Array[0..0] of TMsgStrTable;
end
```

Record used to describe the string messages handled by a class. It consists of a count, followed by an array of TMsgStrTable (974) records.

```
TTextLineBreakStyle = (tlbsLF, tlbsCRLF, tlbsCR)
```

Table 28.7: Enumeration values for type TTextLineBreakStyle

Value	Explanation
tlbsCR	Carriage-return (#13, Mac-OS style)
tlbsCRLF	Carriage-return, line-feed (#13#30, Windows style)
tlbsLF	Line-feed only (#10, unix style)

Text line break style. (end of line character)

```
TThreadFunc = function(parameter: pointer) : PtrInt
```

Thread function prototype

```
TThreadGetPriorityHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID) : LongInt
```

Callback type for thread priority getting in TThreadManager (976).

```
TThreadHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord
```

Generic thread handler callback for TThreadManager (976).

```
TThreadID = THandle
```

This is an opaque type, it can differ from operating system to operating system.

```

TThreadManager = record
  InitManager : function : Boolean;
  DoneManager : function : Boolean;
  BeginThread : TBeginThreadHandler;
  EndThread : TEndThreadHandler;
  SuspendThread : TThreadHandler;
  ResumeThread : TThreadHandler;
  KillThread : TThreadHandler;
  ThreadSwitch : TThreadSwitchHandler;
  WaitForThreadTerminate : TWaitForThreadTerminateHandler;
  ThreadSetPriority : TThreadSetPriorityHandler;
  ThreadGetPriority : TThreadGetPriorityHandler;
  GetCurrentThreadId : TGetCurrentThreadIdHandler;
  InitCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler;
  DoneCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler;
  EnterCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler;
  LeaveCriticalSection : TCriticalSectionHandler;
  InitThreadVar : TInitThreadVarHandler;
  RelocateThreadVar : TRelocateThreadVarHandler;
  AllocateThreadVars : TAllocateThreadVarsHandler;
  ReleaseThreadVars : TReleaseThreadVarsHandler;
  BasicEventCreate : TBasicEventCreateHandler;
  BasicEventDestroy : TBasicEventHandler;
  BasicEventResetEvent : TBasicEventHandler;
  BasicEventSetEvent : TBasicEventHandler;
  BasicEventWaitFor : TBasicEventWaitForHandler;
  RTLEventCreate : TRTLCREATEEventHandler;
  RTLEventDestroy : TRTLEventHandler;
  RTLEventSetEvent : TRTLEventHandler;
  RTLEventResetEvent : TRTLEventHandler;
  RTLEventStartWait : TRTLEventHandler;
  RTLEventWaitFor : TRTLEventHandler;
  RTLEventSync : TRTLEventSyncHandler;
  RTLEventWaitForTimeout : TRTLEventHandlerTimeout;
end

```

TThreadManager is a record that contains all callbacks needed for the thread handling routines of the Free Pascal Run-Time Library. The thread manager can be set by the `SetThreadManager` (1058) procedure, and the current thread manager can be retrieved with the `GetThreadManager` (1020) procedure.

The Windows RTL will set the thread manager automatically to a system thread manager, based on the Windows threading routines. Unix operating systems provide a unit `cthreads` which implements threads based on the C library POSIX thread routines. It is not included by default, because it would make the system unit dependent on the C library.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

```

TThreadSetPriorityHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID;
                                     Prio: LongInt) : Boolean

```

Callback type for thread priority setting in TThreadManager (976).

```

TThreadSwitchHandler = procedure

```

Callback type for thread switch in TThreadManager (976).

TUCS4CharArray = Array[0..\$ffffff] of UCS4Char

Array of UCS4Char (980) characters.

```
tvararray = packed record
  dimcount : Word;
  flags : Word;
  elementsize : LongInt;
  lockcount : LongInt;
  data : pointer;
  bounds : Array[0..255] of tvararraybound;
end
```

tvararray is a record describing a variant array. It contains some general data, followed by a number of TVarArrayBound (977) records equal to the number of dimensions in the array (dimcount).

```
tvararraybound = packed record
  elementcount : SizeInt;
  lowbound : SizeInt;
end
```

tvararraybound is used to describe one dimension in a variant array.

tvararrayboundarray = Array[0..0] of tvararraybound

array of tvararraybound (977) records.

tvararraycoorarray = Array[0..0] of SizeInt

Array of variant array coordinates

```
tvardata = packed record
  vtype : tvartype;
end
```

TVarData is a record representation of a variant. It contains the internal structure of a variant and is handled by the various variant handling routines.

```
tvariantmanager = record
  vartoint : function(const v: variant) : LongInt;
  vartoint64 : function(const v: variant) : Int64;
  vartoword64 : function(const v: variant) : qword;
  vartobool : function(const v: variant) : Boolean;
  vartoreal : function(const v: variant) : extended;
  vartotdatetime : function(const v: variant) : TDateTime;
  vartocurr : function(const v: variant) : Currency;
  vartopstr : procedure(var s; const v: variant);
```

```

vartolstr : procedure(var s: ansistring;const v: variant);
vartowstr : procedure(var s: widestring;const v: variant);
vartointf : procedure(var intf: iinterface;const v: variant);
vartodisp : procedure(var disp: idispatch;const v: variant);
vartodynamarray : procedure(var dynarr: pointer;const v: variant;typeinfo: pointer);
varfrombool : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: Boolean);
varfromint : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: LongInt;const Range: LongInt);
varfromint64 : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: Int64);
varfromword64 : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: qword);
varfromreal : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: extended);
varfromdatetime : procedure(var dest: Variant;const source: TDateTime);
varfromcurr : procedure(var dest: Variant;const source: Currency);
varfrompstr : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: ShortString);
varfromlstr : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: ansistring);
varfromwstr : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: WideString);
varfromintf : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: iinterface);
varfromdisp : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: idispatch);
varfromdynarray : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: pointer;typeinfo: poin
olevarfrompstr : procedure(var dest: olevariant;const source: shortstring);
olevarfromlstr : procedure(var dest: olevariant;const source: ansistring);
olevarfromvar : procedure(var dest: olevariant;const source: variant);
olevarfromint : procedure(var dest: olevariant;const source: LongInt;
    const range: ShortInt);
varop : procedure(var left: variant;const right: variant;opcode: tvarop);
cmpop : function(const left: variant;const right: variant;const opcode: tvarop)
    : Boolean;
varneg : procedure(var v: variant);
varnot : procedure(var v: variant);
varinit : procedure(var v: variant);
varclear : procedure(var v: variant);
varaddref : procedure(var v: variant);
varcopy : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: variant);
varcast : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: variant;vartype: LongInt);
varcastole : procedure(var dest: variant;const source: variant;vartype: LongInt);
dispinvoke : procedure(dest: pvardata;const source: tvardata;calldesc: pcalldesc;
    params: pointer);
vararrayredim : procedure(var a: variant;highbound: SizeInt);
vararrayget : function(const a: variant;indexcount: SizeInt;indices: PSizeInt)
    : variant;
vararrayput : procedure(var a: variant;const value: variant;indexcount: SizeInt;
    indices: PSizeInt);
writevariant : function(var t: text;const v: variant;width: LongInt) : Pointer;
write0Variant : function(var t: text;const v: Variant) : Pointer;
end

```

TVariantManager describes the variant manager as expected by the SetVariantManager (1059) call.

```

tvarop = (opadd,opsubtract,opmultiply,opdivide,opintdivide,opmodulus,
    opshiftright,opshiftright,opand,opor,opxor,opcompare,opnegate,
    opnot,opcmpeq,opcmpne,opcmplt,opcmple,opcmpgt,opcmpge,oppower)

```

Table 28.8: Enumeration values for type tvarop

Value	Explanation
opadd	Variant operation: Addition.
opand	Variant operation: Binary AND operation
opcmpeq	Variant operation: Compare equal.
opcmpge	Variant operation: Compare larger than or equal
opcmpgt	Variant operation: Compare larger than
opcmple	Variant operation: Compare less than or equal to
opcmplt	Variant operation: Compare less than.
opcmpne	Variant operation: Compare not equal
opcompare	Variant operation: Compare
opdivide	Variant operation: division
opintdivide	Variant operation: integer divide
opmodulus	Variant operation: Modulus
opmultiply	Variant operation: multiplication
opnegate	Variant operation: negation.
opnot	Variant operation: Binary NOT operation.
opor	Variant operation: Binary OR operation
oppower	Variant operation: Power
opshiftright	Variant operation: Shift left
opshiftright	Variant operation: Shift right
opsubtract	Variant operation: Substraction
opxor	Variant operation: binary XOR operation.

tvarop describes a variant operation. It is mainly used for the variant manager to implement the various conversions and mathematical operations on a variant.

```
TVarRec = record
end
```

TVarRec is a record generated by the compiler for each element in a array of const call. The procedure that receives the constant array receives an array of TVarRec elements, with lower bound zero and high bound equal to the number of elements in the array minus one (as returned by High(Args))

```
tvartype = Word
```

Type with size of variant type.

```
TWaitForThreadTerminateHandler = function(threadHandle: TThreadID;
                                          TimeoutMs: LongInt) : DWord
```

Callback type for thread termination in TThreadManager (976).

```
UCS2Char = WideChar
```

UCS2 unicode character.

```
UCS4Char = LongWord
```



UCS unicode character (unsigned 32 bit word)

`UCS4String = Array[] of UCS4Char`

String of UCS4Char (980) characters.

`UTF8String = ansistring`

UTF-8 unicode (ansi) string.

`ValSInt = LongInt`

Integer with the same size as the return code of the `Val` (1071) function.

`ValUInt = Cardinal`

Integer with the same size as the return code of the `Val` (1071) function.

`WChar = Widechar`

Wide char (16-bit sized char)

`Word = 0..65535`

An unsigned 16-bits integer

### 28.8.3 Variables

`argc : LongInt; external name operatingsystem_parameter_argc`

`argc` contains the number of command-line arguments passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`argv : PPChar; external name operatingsystem_parameter_argv`

`argv` contains a pointer to a nil-terminated array of null-terminated strings, containing the command-line arguments passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`DispCallByIDProc : pointer`

`VarDispProc` is called by the compiler if it needs to perform an interface call from a variant which contains a dispatch interface. For instance, the following call:

```
Var
  V : OleVariant;
begin
  (V as IWord).OpenDocument('c:\temp\mydoc.doc');
end;
```

where `IWord` is a dispatch interface is encoded by the compiler and passed to `DispCallByIDProc`. This pointer must be set by a routine that calls the OS COM handling routines.

`envp : PPChar;external name operatingsystem_parameter_envp`

`envp` contains a pointer to a nil-terminated array of null-terminated strings, containing the environment variables passed to the program by the OS. It is not available on all systems.

`ErrOutput : Text`

`ErrOutput` is provided for Delphi compatibility.

`ExitCode : Word;public name operatingsystem_result`

Exit code for the program, will be communicated to the OS on exit.

`fpc_threadvar_relocate_proc : pointer;public name FPC_THREADVAR_RELOCATE`

`InOutRes : Word`

Result of last I/O operation. Read-Only.

`Input : Text`

Standard input text file.

`IsConsole : Boolean`

True for console applications, False for GUI applications.

`IsLibrary : Boolean`

True if the current module is a library. Otherwise module is an executable

`Null : Variant`

Null variant

`Output : Text`

Standard output text file.

`RandSeed : Cardinal`

Seed for Random ([1043](#)) function.

`ReturnNilIfGrowHeapFails : Boolean`

`ReturnNilIfGrowHeapFails` describes what happens if there is no more memory available from the operating system. if set to `True` the memory manager will return `Nil`. If set to `False` then a run-time error will occur.

`StackBottom : Pointer`

Current stack bottom.

StackLength : Cardinal

Maximum stack length.

StdErr : Text

Standard diagnostic output text file.

StdOut : Text

Alias for Output ([981](#)).

ThreadID : SizeUInt

Current Thread ID.

Unassigned : Variant

Unassigned variant.

VarDispProc : pointer

VarDispProc is called by the compiler if it needs to perform an interface call from a variant. For instance, the following call:

```
Var
  V : OleVariant;
begin
  V.OpenDocument('c:\temp\mydoc.doc');
end;
```

is encoded by the compiler and passed to VarDispProc.

This pointer must be set by a routine that calls the OS COM handling routines.

## 28.9 Procedures and functions

### 28.9.1 abs

Synopsis: Calculate absolute value

Declaration: `function abs(l: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function abs(l: Int64) : Int64`  
`function abs(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: Abs returns the absolute value of a variable. The result of the function has the same type as its argument, which can be any numerical type.

Errors: None.

See also: Round ([1050](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex1.pp

---

```

Program Example1;

{ Program to demonstrate the Abs function. }

Var
    r : real;
    i : integer;

begin
    r:=abs(-1.0);    { r:=1.0 }
    i:=abs(-21);     { i:=21 }
end.

```

---

### 28.9.2 AbstractError

Synopsis: Generate an abstract error.

Declaration: procedure AbstractError

Visibility: default

Description: AbstractError generates an abstract error (run-time error 211). If the AbstractErrorProc ([945](#)) constant is set, it will be called instead.

Errors: This routine causes a run-time error 211.

See also: AbstractErrorProc ([945](#))

### 28.9.3 AcquireExceptionObject

Synopsis: Obtain a reference to the current exception object

Declaration: function AcquireExceptionObject : Pointer

Visibility: default

Description: AcquireExceptionObject returns the current exception object. It raises the reference count of the exception object, so it will not be freed. Calling this method is only valid within an except block.

The effect of this function is countered by re-raising an exception via raise;

To make sure that the exception object is released when it is no longer needed, ReleaseExceptionObject ([1046](#)) must be called when the reference is no longer needed.

Errors: If there is no current exception, a run-time error 231 will occur.

See also: ReleaseExceptionObject ([1046](#))

### 28.9.4 AddExitProc

Synopsis: Add an exit procedure to the exit procedure chain.

Declaration: `procedure AddExitProc(Proc: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AddExitProc` adds `Proc` to the exit procedure chain. At program exit, all procedures added in this way will be called in reverse order.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExitProc` ([948](#))

### 28.9.5 Addr

Synopsis: Return address of a variable

Declaration: `function Addr(X: TAnytype) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Addr` returns a pointer to its argument, which can be any type, or a function or procedure name. The returned pointer isn't typed. The same result can be obtained by the `@` operator, which can return a typed pointer (`\progref`).

Errors: None

See also: `SizeOf` ([1059](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex2.pp`

---

```
Program Example2;

{ Program to demonstrate the Addr function. }

Const Zero : integer = 0;

Var p : pointer;
    i : Integer;

begin
  p:=Addr(p);      { P points to itself }
  p:=Addr(i);      { P points to i }
  p:=Addr(Zero);   { P points to 'Zero' }
end.
```

---

### 28.9.6 Align

Synopsis: Return aligned version of an address

Declaration: `function Align(Addr: PtrInt;Alignment: PtrInt) : PtrInt`  
`function Align(Addr: Pointer;Alignment: PtrInt) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Align` returns `Address`, aligned to `Alignment` bytes.

Errors: None.

### 28.9.7 AllocMem

Synopsis: Alias for GetMem ([1018](#))

Declaration: `function AllocMem(Size: PtrInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: AllocMem is an alias for GetMem ([1018](#)).

See also: GetMem ([1018](#))

### 28.9.8 Append

Synopsis: Open a file in append mode

Declaration: `procedure Append(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: Append opens an existing file in append mode. Any data written to F will be appended to the file. Only text files can be opened in append mode. After a call to Append, the file F becomes write-only. File sharing is not taken into account when calling Append.

Errors: If the file doesn't exist when appending, a run-time error will be generated. This behaviour has changed on Windows and Linux platforms, where in versions prior to 1.0.6, the file would be created in append mode.

See also: Rewrite ([1048](#)), Close ([994](#)), Reset ([1047](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex3.pp`

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Append function. }*

**Var** f : text;

**begin**

Assign (f, 'test.txt');

**Rewrite** (f); *{ file is opened for write , and emptied }*

**WriteLn** (F, 'This is the first line of text.txt');

close (f);

**Append**(f); *{ file is opened for write , but NOT emptied.  
any text written to it is appended. }*

**WriteLn** (f, 'This is the second line of text.txt');

close (f);

**end.**

---

### 28.9.9 arctan

Synopsis: Calculate inverse tangent

Declaration: `function arctan(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: Arctan returns the Arctangent of X, which can be any Real type. The resulting angle is in radial units.

Errors: None

See also: Sin ([1059](#)), Cos ([1001](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex4.pp

---

```

Program Example4;

{ Program to demonstrate the ArcTan function. }

Var R : Real;

begin
  R:=ArcTan(0);      { R:=0 }
  R:=ArcTan(1)/pi;   { R:=0.25 }
end.

```

---

### 28.9.10 ArrayStringToPPchar

Synopsis: Concert an array of string to an array of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function ArrayStringToPPchar(const S: Array[] of AnsiString;  
reserveentries: LongInt) : PPChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `ArrayStringToPPchar` creates an array of null-terminated strings that point to strings which are the same as the strings in the array `S`. The function returns a pointer to this array. The array and the strings it contains must be disposed of after being used, because it they are allocated on the heap.

The `ReserveEntries` parameter tells `ArrayStringToPPchar` to allocate room at the end of the array for another `ReserveEntries` entries.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an error may occur.

See also: `StringToPPChar` ([1063](#))

### 28.9.11 AsmFreemem

Synopsis: Routine that can be called from assembler routines to release memory.

Declaration: `procedure AsmFreemem(var p: pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AsmFreemem` is a routine that can be called from assembler code to release previously allocated memory. The assembler reader cannot decide which overloaded `FreeMem` ([1016](#)) call should be used. `AsmFreeMem` provides a unique name that can be called from assembler. Other than that it is completely equivalent to `FreeMem`.

See also: `FreeMem` ([1016](#)), `AsmGetMem` ([987](#))

### 28.9.12 AsmGetmem

Synopsis: Routine that can be called from assembler routines to get memory.

Declaration: `procedure AsmGetmem(var p: pointer;size: PtrInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `AsmGetmem` is a routine that can be called from assembler code to get memory. The assembler reader cannot decide which overloaded `GetMem` (1018) call should be used. `AsmGetMem` provides a unique name that can be called from assembler. Other than that it is completely equivalent to `GetMem`.

See also: `GetMem` (1018), `AsmFreeMem` (986)

### 28.9.13 Assert

Synopsis: Check validity of a given condition.

Declaration: `procedure Assert(Expr: Boolean)`  
`procedure Assert(Expr: Boolean;const Msg: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: With assertions on, `Assert` tests if `expr` is false, and if so, aborts the application with a Runtime error 227 and an optional error message in `msg`. If `expr` is true, program execution continues normally. If assertions are not enabled at compile time, this routine does nothing, and no code is generated for the `Assert` call. Enabling and disabling assertions at compile time is done via the `\$C` or `\$ASSERTIONS` compiler switches. These are global switches. The default behavior of the assert call can be changed by setting a new handler in the `AssertErrorProc` variable. `Sysutils` overrides the default handler to raise a `EAssertionFailed` exception.

Errors: None.

See also: `Halt` (1021), `Runerror` (1052)

### 28.9.14 Assign

Synopsis: Assign a name to a file

Declaration: `procedure Assign(var f: File;const Name: String)`  
`procedure Assign(var f: File;p: PChar)`  
`procedure Assign(var f: File;c: Char)`  
`procedure Assign(var f: TypedFile;const Name: String)`  
`procedure Assign(var f: TypedFile;p: PChar)`  
`procedure Assign(var f: TypedFile;c: Char)`  
`procedure Assign(var t: Text;const s: String)`  
`procedure Assign(var t: Text;p: PChar)`  
`procedure Assign(var t: Text;c: Char)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Assign` assigns a name to `F`, which can be any file type. This call doesn't open the file, it just assigns a name to a file variable, and marks the file as closed.

Errors: None.

See also: `Reset` (1047), `Rewrite` (1048), `Append` (985)



**Listing:** ./refex/ex5.pp

---

**Program** Example5;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Assign function. }
```

**Var** F : text;

**begin**

```
  Assign (F, '');
  Rewrite (f);
  { The following can be put in any file by redirecting it
    from the command line. }
  Writeln (f, 'This goes to standard output !');
  Close (f);
  Assign (F, 'Test.txt');
  rewrite (f);
  writeln (f, 'This doesn't go to standard output !');
  close (f);
end.
```

---

### 28.9.15 Assigned

Synopsis: Check if a pointer is valid

Declaration: function Assigned(P: Pointer) : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: Assigned returns True if P is non-nil and returns False if P is nil. The main use of Assigned is that Procedural variables, method variables and class-type variables also can be passed to Assigned.

Errors: None

See also: New ([1037](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex96.pp

---

**Program** Example96;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Assigned function. }
```

**Var** P : Pointer;

**begin**

```
  If Not Assigned(P) then
    Writeln ('Pointer is initially NIL');
  P:=@P;
  If Not Assigned(P) then
    Writeln('Internal inconsistency')
  else
    Writeln('All is well in FPC')
end.
```

---

### 28.9.16 BasicEventCreate

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `function BasicEventCreate(EventAttributes: Pointer;  
                                          AManualReset: Boolean;InitialState: Boolean;  
                                          const Name: ansistring) : PEventState`

Visibility: default

Description: `BasicEventCreate` is obsolete, use `RTLEventCreate` ([1050](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1050](#))

### 28.9.17 basiceventdestroy

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `procedure basiceventdestroy(state: PEventState)`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventdestroy` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventDestroy` ([1050](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventDestroy` ([1050](#))

### 28.9.18 basiceventResetEvent

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `procedure basiceventResetEvent(state: PEventState)`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventResetEvent` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1051](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventResetEvent` ([1051](#))

### 28.9.19 basiceventSetEvent

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `procedure basiceventSetEvent(state: PEventState)`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventSetEvent` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1051](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1051](#))

### 28.9.20 basiceventWaitFor

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `function basiceventWaitFor(Timeout: Cardinal;state: PEventState)  
                                          : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `basiceventwaitfor` is obsolete. Use `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1052](#)) instead.

See also: `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1052](#))

### 28.9.21 BeginThread

Synopsis: Start a new thread.

Declaration: `function BeginThread(sa: Pointer;stacksize: DWord;  
ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc;p: pointer;  
creationFlags: DWord;var ThreadId: TThreadID)  
: DWord`  
`function BeginThread(ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc) : DWord`  
`function BeginThread(ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc;p: pointer) : DWord`  
`function BeginThread(ThreadFunction: TThreadFunc;p: pointer;  
var ThreadId: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `BeginThread` starts a new thread and executes `ThreadFunction` in the new thread. If `P` is specified, then it is passed to `ThreadFunction`. If `ThreadId` is specified, it is filled with the thread ID of the newly started thread.

The function returns zero on success.

Errors: On error, a nonzero value is returned.

See also: `EndThread` ([1006](#))

### 28.9.22 binStr

Synopsis: Convert integer to string with binary representation.

Declaration: `function binStr(Val: LongInt;cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function binStr(Val: Int64;cnt: Byte) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: `BinStr` returns a string with the binary representation of `Value`. The string has at most `cnt` characters. (i.e. only the `cnt` rightmost bits are taken into account) To have a complete representation of any longint-type value, 32 bits are needed, i.e. `cnt=32`

Errors: None.

See also: `Str` ([1062](#)), `Val` ([1071](#)), `HexStr` ([1021](#)), `OctStr` ([1037](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex82.pp`

---

**Program** `example82;`

`{ Program to demonstrate the BinStr function }`

**Const** `Value = 45678;`

**Var** `l : longint;`

**begin**

`For l:=8 to 20 do`

`Writeln ( BinStr(Value,l):20);`

**end.**

---

### 28.9.23 BlockRead

Synopsis: Read data from an untyped file into memory

Declaration: `procedure BlockRead(var f: File;var Buf;count: LongInt;  
var Result: LongInt)  
procedure BlockRead(var f: File;var Buf;count: Cardinal;  
var Result: Cardinal)  
procedure BlockRead(var f: File;var Buf;count: Word;var Result: Word)  
procedure BlockRead(var f: File;var Buf;count: Word;var Result: Integer)  
procedure BlockRead(var f: File;var Buf;count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Blockread reads count or less records from file F. A record is a block of bytes with size specified by the Rewrite (1048) or Reset (1047) statement. The result is placed in Buffer, which must contain enough room for Count records. The function cannot read partial records. If Result is specified, it contains the number of records actually read. If Result isn't specified, and less than Count records were read, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled by the `\var{\{$i\}}` switch.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: Blockwrite (991), Close (994), Reset (1047), Assign (987)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex6.pp

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the BlockRead and BlockWrite functions. }*

```
Var Fin, fout : File;
    NumRead, NumWritten : Word;
    Buf : Array[1..2048] of byte;
    Total : Longint;

begin
    Assign (Fin, Paramstr(1));
    Assign (Fout, Paramstr(2));
    Reset (Fin, 1);
    Rewrite (Fout, 1);
    Total:=0;
    Repeat
        BlockRead (Fin, buf, Sizeof(buf), NumRead);
        BlockWrite (Fout, Buf, NumRead, NumWritten);
        inc (Total, NumWritten);
    Until (NumRead=0) or (NumWritten<>NumRead);
    Write ('Copied ', Total, ' bytes from file ', paramstr(1));
    Writeln (' to file ', paramstr(2));
    close (fin);
    close (fout);
end.
```

### 28.9.24 BlockWrite

Synopsis: Write data from memory to an untyped file

**Declaration:** `procedure BlockWrite(var f: File;const Buf;Count: LongInt;  
                                   var Result: LongInt)  
       procedure BlockWrite(var f: File;const Buf;Count: Cardinal;  
                                   var Result: Cardinal)  
       procedure BlockWrite(var f: File;const Buf;Count: Word;var Result: Word)  
       procedure BlockWrite(var f: File;const Buf;Count: Word;  
                                   var Result: Integer)  
       procedure BlockWrite(var f: File;const Buf;Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** BlockWrite writes count records from buffer to the file F.A record is a block of bytes with size specified by the Rewrite (1048) or Reset (1047) statement. If the records couldn't be written to disk, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled by the `\var{\{$i\}}` switch.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the `\var{\{$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

**See also:** Blockread (991), Close (994), Rewrite (1048), Assign (987)

## 28.9.25 Break

**Synopsis:** Exit current loop construct.

**Declaration:** `procedure Break`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Break jumps to the statement following the end of the current repetitive statement. The code between the Break call and the end of the repetitive statement is skipped. The condition of the repetitive statement is NOT evaluated.

This can be used with For, var{repeat} and While statements.

Note that while this is a procedure, Break is a reserved word and hence cannot be redefined.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Continue (1000), Exit (1010)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex87.pp

---

**Program** Example87;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Break function . }*

**Var** I : longint;

```
begin
  I:=0;
  While I<10 Do
    begin
      Inc(I);
      If I>5 Then
        Break;
      Writeln (i);
    end;
  I:=0;
  Repeat
```

---

```

    Inc ( i );
    If i > 5 Then
        Break;
    Writeln ( i );
    Until i >= 10;
    For i := 1 to 10 do
        begin
            If i > 5 Then
                Break;
            Writeln ( i );
        end;
    end.

```

---

### 28.9.26 chdir

Synopsis: Change current working directory.

Declaration: `procedure chdir(const s: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: Chdir changes the working directory of the process to S.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: Mkdir ([1035](#)), Rmdir ([1049](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ Program to demonstrate the ChDir function. }*

```

begin
    {$I-}
    ChDir (ParamStr(1));
    if IOResult <> 0 then
        Writeln ( 'Cannot change to directory : ', paramstr (1));
    end.

```

---

### 28.9.27 Chr

Synopsis: Convert byte value to character value

Declaration: `function Chr(b: Byte) : Char`

Visibility: default

Description: Chr returns the character which has ASCII value X.

Errors: None.

See also: Ord ([1039](#)), Str ([1062](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Chr function. }*

**begin**  
     **Write** (chr(10),chr(13)); *{ The same effect as Writeln; }*  
**end.**

---

### 28.9.28 Close

Synopsis: Close a file

Declaration: `procedure Close(var f: File)`  
               `procedure Close(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Close` flushes the buffer of the file `F` and closes `F`. After a call to `Close`, data can no longer be read from or written to `F`. To reopen a file closed with `Close`, it isn't necessary to assign the file again. A call to `Reset` (1047) or `Rewrite` (1048) is sufficient.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Assign` (987), `Reset` (1047), `Rewrite` (1048), `Flush` (1015)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex9.pp

---

**Program** Example9;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Close function. }*

**Var** F : text;

**begin**  
     Assign (f, 'Test.txt');  
     **ReWrite** (F);  
     **Writeln** (F, 'Some text written to Test.txt');  
     close (f); *{ Flushes contents of buffer to disk,*  
                   *closes the file. Omitting this may*  
                   *cause data NOT to be written to disk.}*  
**end.**

---

### 28.9.29 CompareByte

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory buffers byte per byte

Declaration: `function CompareByte(const buf1;const buf2;len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareByte` compares two memory regions `buf1`, `buf2` on a byte-per-byte basis for a total of `len` bytes.

The function returns one of the following values:

**less than 0** if buf1 and buf2 contain different bytes in the first len bytes, and the first such byte is smaller in buf1 than the byte at the same position in buf2.

**0** if the first len bytes in buf1 and buf2 are equal. \item [greater than 0] if buf1 and buf2 contain different bytes in the first len bytes, and the first such byte is larger in buf1 than the byte at the same position in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareChar (995), CompareWord (998), CompareDWord (997)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex99.pp

**Program** Example99;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareByte function. }*

**Const**

    ArraySize      = 100;  
    HalfArraySize = ArraySize **Div** 2;

**Var**

    Buf1, Buf2 : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** byte;  
    I : longint;

**Procedure** CheckPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

**Write**('First ', Len, ' positions are ');  
    **if** CompareByte(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 **then**  
        **Write**('NOT ');  
    **Writeln**('equal');  
**end**;

**begin**

**For** I:=1 **to** ArraySize **do**  
        **begin**  
            Buf1[I]:=I;  
            **If** I<=HalfArraySize **Then**  
                Buf2[I]:=I  
            **else**  
                Buf2[I]:=HalfArraySize-I;  
            **end**;  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize **div** 2);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize+1);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize **Div** 2);  
    **end**.

### 28.9.30 CompareChar

Synopsis: ompare 2 memory buffers character per character

Declaration: function CompareChar(const buf1;const buf2;len: SizeInt) : SizeInt

Visibility: default



**Description:** CompareChar compares two memory regions buf1,buf2 on a character-per-character basis for a total of len characters.

The CompareChar0 variant compares len bytes, or until a zero character is found.

The function returns one of the following values:

-1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different characters in the first len positions, and the first such character is smaller in buf1 than the character at the same position in buf2.

0 if the first len characters in buf1 and buf2 are equal.

1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different characters in the first len positions, and the first such character is larger in buf1 than the character at the same position in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareByte ([994](#)), CompareWord ([998](#)), CompareDWord ([997](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex100.pp

---

**Program** Example100;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareChar function. }*

**Const**

    ArraySize      = 100;  
    HalfArraySize = ArraySize Div 2;

**Var**

    Buf1,Buf2 : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** char;  
    I : longint;

**Procedure** CheckPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

**Write**( 'First ',Len,' characters are ' );  
    **if** CompareChar(Buf1,Buf2,Len)<>0 **then**  
        **Write**( 'NOT ' );  
        **Writeln**( 'equal' );  
**end**;

**Procedure** CheckNullPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

**Write**( 'First ',Len,' non-null characters are ' );  
    **if** CompareChar0(Buf1,Buf2,Len)<>0 **then**  
        **Write**( 'NOT ' );  
        **Writeln**( 'equal' );  
**end**;

**begin**

**For** I:=1 **to** ArraySize **do**  
        **begin**  
            Buf1[I]:=chr(I);  
            **If** I<=HalfArraySize **Then**  
                Buf2[I]:=chr(I)  
            **else**  
                Buf2[I]:=chr(HalfArraySize-I);  
            **end**;  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize div 2);

---

```

CheckPos( HalfArraySize );
CheckPos( HalfArraySize + 1 );
CheckPos( HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2 );
For I:=1 to 4 do
  begin
    buf1[Random( ArraySize)+1]:=Chr(0);
    buf2[Random( ArraySize)+1]:=Chr(0);
  end;
Randomize;
CheckNullPos( HalfArraySize div 2 );
CheckNullPos( HalfArraySize );
CheckNullPos( HalfArraySize + 1 );
CheckNullPos( HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2 );
end.

```

---

### 28.9.31 CompareChar0

Synopsis: Compare two buffers character by character till a null-character is reached.

Declaration: `function CompareChar0(const buf1;const buf2;len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareChar0 compares 2 buffers buf1 and buf2 for a maximum length of len or till a null character is reached in either buffer. The result depends on the contents of the buffers:

- < 0 If buf1 contains a character less than the corresponding character in buf2.
- 0 If both buffers are equal
- > 0 If buf1 contains a character greater than the corresponding character in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareByte (994), CompareChar (995), CompareDWord (997), CompareWord (998)

### 28.9.32 CompareDWord

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory buffers DWord per DWord

Declaration: `function CompareDWord(const buf1;const buf2;len: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareDWord compares two memory regions buf1, buf2 on a DWord-per-DWord basis for a total of len DWords. (A DWord is 4 bytes).

The function returns one of the following values:

- 1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different DWords in the first len DWords, and the first such DWord is smaller in buf1 than the DWord at the same position in buf2.
- 0 if the first len DWords in buf1 and buf2 are equal.
- 1 if buf1 and buf2 contain different DWords in the first len DWords, and the first such DWord is larger in buf1 than the DWord at the same position in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: CompareChar (995), CompareByte (994), CompareWord (998)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex101.pp

---

**Program** Example101;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareDWord function. }*

**Const**

    ArraySize      = 100;  
    HalfArraySize = ArraySize **Div** 2;

**Var**

    Buf1, Buf2 : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** Dword;  
    I : longint;

**Procedure** CheckPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

**Write**('First ', Len, ' DWords are ');  
        **if** CompareDWord(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 **then**  
            **Write**('NOT ');  
        **Writeln**('equal');  
    **end**;

**begin**

**For** I:=1 **to** ArraySize **do**  
        **begin**  
            Buf1[I]:=I;  
            **If** I<=HalfArraySize **Then**  
                Buf2[I]:=I  
            **else**  
                Buf2[I]:=HalfArraySize-I;  
            **end**;  
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize **div** 2);  
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize);  
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize+1);  
    CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize **Div** 2);  
**end**.

---

### 28.9.33 CompareWord

**Synopsis:** Compare 2 memory buffers word per word

**Declaration:** function CompareWord(const buf1;const buf2;len: SizeInt) : SizeInt

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** CompareWord compares two memory regions buf1,buf2 on a Word-per-Word basis for a total of len Words. (A Word is 2 bytes).

The function returns one of the following values:

- 1if buf1 and buf2 contain different Words in the first len Words, and the first such Word is smaller in buf1 than the Word at the same position in buf2.
- 0if the first len Words in buf1 and buf2 are equal.
- 1if buf1 and buf2 contain different Words in the first len Words, and the first such Word is larger in buf1 than the Word at the same position in buf2.

Errors: None.

See also: [CompareChar \(995\)](#), [CompareByte \(994\)](#), [CompareDWord \(997\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex102.pp

---

**Program** Example102;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareWord function. }*

**Const**

    ArraySize      = 100;  
    HalfArraySize = ArraySize **Div** 2;

**Var**

    Buf1, Buf2 : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** Word;  
    I : longint;

**Procedure** CheckPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

**Write**( 'First ', Len, ' words are ' );  
    **if** CompareWord(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 **then**  
        **Write**( 'NOT ' );  
        **Writeln**( 'equal ' );  
    **end**;

**begin**

**For** I:=1 **to** ArraySize **do**  
        **begin**  
            Buf1[I]:=I;  
            **If** I<=HalfArraySize **Then**  
                Buf2[I]:=I  
            **else**  
                Buf2[I]:=HalfArraySize-I;  
            **end**;  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize **div** 2);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize+1);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize **Div** 2);  
    **end**.

---

### 28.9.34 Concat

Synopsis: Append one string to another.

Declaration: `function Concat(const S1: String; const S2: String; const S3: String;  
                                  const Sn: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: Concat concatenates the strings S1, S2 etc. to one long string. The resulting string is truncated at a length of 255 bytes. The same operation can be performed with the + operation.

Errors: None.

See also: [Copy \(1001\)](#), [Delete \(1003\)](#), [Insert \(1028\)](#), [Pos \(1041\)](#), [Length \(1032\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Concat function . }
Var
  S : String;

begin
  S:=Concat('This can be done',' Easier ','with the + operator !');
end.
```

---

### 28.9.35 Continue

Synopsis: Continue with next loop cycle.

Declaration: procedure Continue

Visibility: default

Description: Continue jumps to the end of the current repetitive statement. The code between the Continue call and the end of the repetitive statement is skipped. The condition of the repetitive statement is then checked again.

This can be used with For, var{repeat} and While statements.

Note that while this is a procedure, Continue is a reserved word and hence cannot be redefined.

Errors: None.

See also: Break ([992](#)), Exit ([1010](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex86.pp

---

**Program** Example86;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Continue function . }

Var I : longint;

begin
  I:=0;
  While I<10 Do
    begin
      Inc(I);
      If I<5 Then
        Continue;
      WriteLn (i);
    end;
  I:=0;
  Repeat
    Inc(I);
    If I<5 Then
      Continue;
    WriteLn (i);
  Until I>=10;
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      If I<5 Then
```

---

```

    Continue;
    Writeln (i);
end;
end.

```

---

### 28.9.36 copy

Synopsis: Copy part of a string.

Declaration: `function Copy(const s: shortstring; index: SizeInt; count: SizeInt) : shortstring`  
`function copy(c: Char; index: SizeInt; count: SizeInt) : shortstring`  
`function Copy(const S: AnsiString; Index: SizeInt; Size: SizeInt) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: Copy returns a string which is a copy of the Count characters in S, starting at position Index. If Count is larger than the length of the string S, the result is truncated. If Index is larger than the length of the string S, then an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: Delete ([1003](#)), Insert ([1028](#)), Pos ([1041](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Copy function. }*

**Var** S,T : **String**;

**begin**

T:= '1234567' ;

S:=**Copy** (T,1,2); { S:= '12' }

S:=**Copy** (T,4,2); { S:= '45' }

S:=**Copy** (T,4,8); { S:= '4567' }

**end.**

---

### 28.9.37 cos

Synopsis: Calculate cosine of angle

Declaration: `function cos(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: Cos returns the cosine of X, where X is an angle, in radians. If the absolute value of the argument is larger than  $\sqrt{2}$ , then the result is undefined.

Errors: None.

See also: Arctan ([985](#)), Sin ([1059](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex12.pp

---

```

Program Example12;

{ Program to demonstrate the Cos function. }

Var R : Real;

begin
  R:=Cos(Pi);    { R:=-1 }
  R:=Cos(Pi/2);  { R:=0  }
  R:=Cos(0);     { R:=1  }
end.

```

---

### 28.9.38 Cseg

Synopsis: Return code segment

Declaration: `function Cseg : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: CSeg returns the Code segment register. In Free Pascal, it returns always a zero, since Free Pascal is a 32 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: DSeg ([1005](#)), Seg ([1054](#)), Ofs ([1038](#)), Ptr ([1042](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex13.pp

---

```

Program Example13;

{ Program to demonstrate the CSeg function. }

var W : word;

begin
  W:=CSeg; {W:=0, provided for compatibility,
           FPC is 32 bit.}
end.

```

---

### 28.9.39 Dec

Synopsis: Decrease value of variable

Declaration: `procedure Dec(var X: TOrdinal)`  
`procedure Dec(var X: TOrdinal;Decrement: TOrdinal)`

Visibility: default

Description: Dec decreases the value of X with Decrement. If Decrement isn't specified, then 1 is taken as a default.

Errors: A range check can occur, or an underflow error, if an attempt it made to decrease X below its minimum value.

See also: Inc ([1023](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex14.pp

**Program** Example14;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Dec function. }*

**Var**

I : Integer;  
L : Longint;  
W : Word;  
B : Byte;  
Si : ShortInt;

**begin**

I:=1;  
L:=2;  
W:=3;  
B:=4;  
Si:=5;  
**Dec** ( i ); { i:=0 }  
**Dec** ( L, 2 ); { L:=0 }  
**Dec** ( W, 2 ); { W:=1 }  
**Dec** ( B, -2 ); { B:=6 }  
**Dec** ( Si, 0 ); { Si:=5 }

**end.**

### 28.9.40 Delete

Synopsis: Delete part of a string.

**Declaration:** procedure Delete(var s: shortstring; index: SizeInt; count: SizeInt)  
procedure Delete(var S: AnsiString; Index: SizeInt; Size: SizeInt)

Visibility: default

**Description:** Delete removes Count characters from string S, starting at position Index. All characters after the deleted characters are shifted Count positions to the left, and the length of the string is adjusted.

Errors: None.

See also: Copy ([1001](#)), Pos ([1041](#)), Insert ([1028](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex15.pp

**Program** Example15;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Delete function. }*

**Var**

S : **String**;

**begin**

S:= 'This is not easy !';  
**Delete** ( S, 9, 4 ); { S:= 'This is easy !' }

**end.**



### 28.9.41 Dispose

Synopsis: Free dynamically allocated memory

Declaration: `procedure Dispose(P: Pointer)`  
`procedure Dispose(P: TypedPointer; Des: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

Description: The first form `Dispose` releases the memory allocated with a call to `New` (1037). The pointer `P` must be typed. The released memory is returned to the heap.

The second form of `Dispose` accepts as a first parameter a pointer to an object type, and as a second parameter the name of a destructor of this object. The destructor will be called, and the memory allocated for the object will be freed.

Errors: An runtime error will occur if the pointer doesn't point to a location in the heap.

See also: `New` (1037), `Getmem` (1018), `Freemem` (1016)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** `Example16;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Dispose and New functions. }*

**Type** `SS = String[20];`

`AnObj = Object`  
`I : integer;`  
`Constructor Init;`  
`Destructor Done;`  
`end;`

**Var**

`P : ^SS;`  
`T : ^AnObj;`

**Constructor** `AnObj.Init;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ('Initializing an instance of AnObj !');`  
**end;**

**Destructor** `AnObj.Done;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ('Destroying an instance of AnObj !');`  
**end;**

**begin**

`New (P);`  
`P^:= 'Hello , World !';`  
`Dispose (P);`  
*{ P is undefined from here on ! }*  
`New(T, Init);`  
`T^.i:=0;`  
`Dispose (T,Done);`  
**end.**

---

### 28.9.42 DoneCriticalSection

Synopsis: Clean up a critical section.

Declaration: `procedure DoneCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCriticalSection)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneCriticalSection` cleans up the critical section `CS`. After a call to `DoneCriticalSection`, the critical section can no longer be used with `EnterCriticalSection` (1006) or `LeaveCriticalSection` (1032), unless it is again initialized with `InitCriticalSection` (1028)

See also: `InitCriticalSection` (1028), `EnterCriticalSection` (1006), `LeaveCriticalSection` (1032)

### 28.9.43 Dseg

Synopsis: Return data segment

Declaration: `function Dseg : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `Dseg` returns the data segment register. In Free Pascal, it returns always a zero, since Free Pascal is a 32 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: `Cseg` (1002), `Seg` (1054), `Ofs` (1038), `Ptr` (1042)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the DSeg function. }*

**Var**

`W : Word;`

**begin**

*W:=Dseg; {W:=0, This function is provided for compatibility,  
FPC is a 32 bit comiler.}*

**end.**

---

### 28.9.44 Dump\_Stack

Synopsis: Dump stack to the given text file.

Declaration: `procedure Dump_Stack(var f: text;bp: pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Dump_Stack` prints a stack dump to the file `f`, with base frame pointer `bp`

Errors: The file `f` must be opened for writing or an error will occur.

See also: `get_caller_addr` (1020), `get_caller_frame` (1020), `get_frame` (1020)

### 28.9.45 EndThread

Synopsis: End the current thread.

Declaration: `procedure EndThread(ExitCode: DWord)`  
`procedure EndThread`

Visibility: default

Description: `EndThread` ends the current thread. If `ExitCode` is supplied, it is returned as the exit code for the thread to a function waiting for the thread to terminate (`WaitForThreadTerminate` (1072)). If it is omitted, zero is used.

This function does not return.

See also: `WaitForThreadTerminate` (1072), `BeginThread` (990)

### 28.9.46 EnterCriticalSection

Synopsis: Enter a critical section

Declaration: `procedure EnterCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCriticalSection)`

Visibility: default

Description: `EnterCriticalSection` will suspend the current thread if another thread has currently entered the critical section. When the other thread has left the critical section (through `LeaveCriticalSection` (1032)), the current thread resumes execution. The result is that only 1 thread is executing code which is protected by a `EnterCriticalSection` and `LeaveCriticalSection` pair.

The critical section must have been initialized with `InitCriticalSection` (1028) prior to a call to `EnterCriticalSection`.

A call to `EnterCriticalSection` must always be matched by a call to `LeaveCriticalSection` (1032). To avoid problems, it is best to include the code to be execute in a `try...finally` block, as follows:

```
EnterCriticalSection(Section);
try
  // Code to be protected goes here.
finally
  LeaveCriticalSection(Section);
end;
```

For performance reasons it is best to limit the code between the entering and leaving of a critical section as short as possible.

See also: `InitCriticalSection` (1028), `DoneCriticalSection` (1005), `LeaveCriticalSection` (1032)

### 28.9.47 EOF

Synopsis: Check for end of file

Declaration: `function EOF(var f: File) : Boolean`  
`function EOF(var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function EOF : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Eof` returns `True` if the file-pointer has reached the end of the file, or if the file is empty. In all other cases `Eof` returns `False`. If no file `F` is specified, standard input is assumed.

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the `\var{\{\$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{\$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Eoln` ([1007](#)), `Assign` ([987](#)), `Reset` ([1047](#)), `Rewrite` ([1048](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** `Example18`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Eof function. }*

**Var** `T1,T2 : text`;  
       `C : Char`;

**begin**

*{ Set file to read from. Empty means from standard input. }*

`assign (t1,paramstr(1));`

`reset (t1);`

*{ Set file to write to. Empty means to standard output. }*

`assign (t2,paramstr(2));`

`rewrite (t2);`

**While not eof**(`t1`) **do**

**begin**

`read (t1,C);`

`write (t2,C);`

**end**;

`Close (t1);`

`Close (t2);`

**end**.

---

## 28.9.48 EOLn

**Synopsis:** Check for end of line

**Declaration:** `function EOLn(var t: Text) : Boolean`  
               `function EOLn : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Eof` returns `True` if the file pointer has reached the end of a line, which is demarcated by a line-feed character (ASCII value 10), or if the end of the file is reached. In all other cases `Eof` returns `False`. If no file `F` is specified, standard input is assumed. It can only be used on files of type `Text`.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `Eof` ([1006](#)), `Assign` ([987](#)), `Reset` ([1047](#)), `Rewrite` ([1048](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** `Example19`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Eoln function. }*

**begin**

*{ This program waits for keyboard input. }*

---

```

{ It will print True when an empty line is put in ,
  and false when you type a non-empty line .
  It will only stop when you press enter .}
While not Eoln do
  Writeln (eoln);
end.

```

---

### 28.9.49 Erase

Synopsis: Delete a file from disk

Declaration: `procedure Erase(var f: File)`  
`procedure Erase(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: Erase removes an unopened file from disk. The file should be assigned with Assign, but not opened with Reset or Rewrite

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{\$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{\$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: Assign ([987](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex20.pp`

---

**Program** Example20;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Erase function . }

Var F : Text;

begin
  { Create a file with a line of text in it}
  Assign (F, 'test.txt');
  Rewrite (F);
  Writeln (F, 'Try and find this when I 'm finished !');
  close (f);
  { Now remove the file }
  Erase (f);
end.

```

---

### 28.9.50 Exclude

Synopsis: Exclude element from a set if it is present.

Declaration: `procedure Exclude(var S: TSetType; E: TSetElement)`

Visibility: default

Description: Exclude removes E from the set S if it is included in the set. E should be of the same type as the base type of the set S.

Thus, the two following statements do the same thing:

```

S:=S-[E];
Exclude(S,E);

```

Errors: If the type of the element  $E$  is not equal to the base type of the set  $S$ , the compiler will generate an error.

See also: Include ([1024](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex111.pp

---

```

program Example111;

{ Program to demonstrate the Include/Exclude functions }

Type
  TEnumA = (aOne,aTwo,aThree);
  TEnumAs = Set of TEnumA;

Var
  SA : TEnumAs;

Procedure PrintSet(S : TEnumAs);

var
  B : Boolean;

procedure DoEl(A : TEnumA; Desc : String);

begin
  if A in S then
    begin
      if B then
        Write(' ');
      B:=True;
      Write(Desc);
    end;
  end;

begin
  Write(' ');
  B:=False;
  DoEl(aOne, 'aOne');
  DoEl(aTwo, 'aTwo');
  DoEl(aThree, 'aThree');
  Writeln(' ');
end;

begin
  SA:=[];
  Include(SA,aOne);
  PrintSet(SA);
  Include(SA,aThree);
  PrintSet(SA);
  Exclude(SA,aOne);
  PrintSet(SA);
  Exclude(SA,aTwo);
  PrintSet(SA);
  Exclude(SA,aThree);
  PrintSet(SA);
end.

```

---

**28.9.51 Exit**

Synopsis: Exit current subroutine.

Declaration: `procedure Exit(const X: TAnyType)`  
`procedure Exit`

Visibility: default

Description: `Exit` exits the current subroutine, and returns control to the calling routine. If invoked in the main program routine, exit stops the program. The optional argument `X` allows to specify a return value, in the case `Exit` is invoked in a function. The function result will then be equal to `X`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Halt` ([1021](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex21.pp`

---

**Program** `Example21`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Exit function. }*

**Procedure** `DoAnExit (Yes : Boolean)`;

*{ This procedure demonstrates the normal Exit }*

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Hello from DoAnExit !' );

**If** `Yes` **then**

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'Bailing out early.' );

**exit**;

**end**;

**Writeln** ( 'Continuing to the end.' );

**end**;

**Function** `Positive (Which : Integer) : Boolean`;

*{ This function demonstrates the extra FPC feature of Exit :  
 You can specify a return value for the function }*

**begin**

**if** `Which > 0` **then**

**exit** ( `True` )

**else**

**exit** ( `False` );

**end**;

**begin**

*{ This call will go to the end }*

`DoAnExit` ( `False` );

*{ This call will bail out early }*

`DoAnExit` ( `True` );

**if** `Positive (-1)` **then**

**Writeln** ( 'The compiler is nuts, -1 is not positive.' )

**else**

**Writeln** ( 'The compiler is not so bad, -1 seems to be negative.' );

**end**.

---

### 28.9.52 exp

Synopsis: Exponentiate

Declaration: `function exp(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: Exp returns the exponent of X, i.e. the number e to the power X.

Errors: None.

See also: Ln ([1033](#)), Power ([943](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex22.pp

---

**Program** Example22;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Exp function. }*

**begin**

**WriteIn** (Exp(1):8:2); *{ Should print 2.72 }*

**end.**

---

### 28.9.53 FilePos

Synopsis: Get position in file

Declaration: `function FilePos(var f: File) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Filepos returns the current record position of the file-pointer in file F. It cannot be invoked with a file of type Text. A compiler error will be generated if this is attempted.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{\$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{\$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: Filesize ([1012](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex23.pp

---

**Program** Example23;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FilePos function. }*

**Var F : File of Longint;**

**L,FP : longint;**

**begin**

*{ Fill a file with data :  
Each position contains the position ! }*

**Assign** (F, 'test.tmp');

**Rewrite** (F);

**For** L:=0 to 100 **do**

**begin**

**FP:=FilePos** (F);

**Write** (F,FP);

**end;**



---

```

Close (F);
Reset (F);
{ If all goes well, nothing is displayed here. }
While not (Eof(F)) do
  begin
    FP:=FilePos (F);
    Read (F,L);
    if L<>FP then
      WriteLn ('Something wrong: Got ',L,' on pos ',FP);
    end;
  Close (F);
  Erase (f);
end.

```

---

### 28.9.54 FileSize

Synopsis: Size of file

Declaration: `function FileSize(var f: File) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Filesize returns the total number of records in file F. It cannot be invoked with a file of type Text. (under linux and unix, this also means that it cannot be invoked on pipes). If F is empty, 0 is returned.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{\$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{\$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: Filepos ([1011](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex24.pp

---

**Program** Example24;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the FileSize function. }

Var F : File Of byte;
    L : File Of Longint;

begin
  Assign (F,paramstr(1));
  Reset (F);
  WriteLn ('File size in bytes : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (F);
  Assign (L,paramstr (1));
  Reset (L);
  WriteLn ('File size in Longints : ',FileSize(L));
  Close (f);
end.

```

---

### 28.9.55 FillByte

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 8-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillByte(var x;count: SizeInt;value: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FillByte` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` bytes with value equal to `Value`. This is useful for quickly zeroing out a memory location. When the size of the memory location to be filled out is a multiple of 2 bytes, it is better to use `FillWord` (1015), and if it is a multiple of 4 bytes it is better to use `FillDWord` (1014), these routines are optimized for their respective sizes.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `FillChar` (1013), `FillDWord` (1014), `FillWord` (1015), `Move` (1036)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex102.pp

---

**Program** Example102;

*{ Program to demonstrate the CompareWord function. }*

**Const**

    ArraySize      = 100;  
    HalfArraySize = ArraySize Div 2;

**Var**

    Buf1, Buf2 : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** Word;  
    I : longint;

**Procedure** CheckPos(Len : Longint);

**Begin**

**Write**( 'First ', Len, ' words are ' );  
    **if** CompareWord(Buf1, Buf2, Len) <> 0 **then**  
        **Write**( 'NOT ' );  
        **Writeln**( 'equal' );  
    **end**;

**begin**

**For** I:=1 **to** ArraySize **do**  
        **begin**  
            Buf1[I]:= I;  
            **If** I<=HalfArraySize **Then**  
                Buf2[I]:= I  
            **else**  
                Buf2[I]:= HalfArraySize-I;  
            **end**;  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize div 2);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize+1);  
        CheckPos(HalfArraySize + HalfArraySize Div 2);  
    **end**.

---

## 28.9.56 FillChar

Synopsis: Fill memory region with certain character

Declaration: `procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Boolean)`  
               `procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Char)`  
               `procedure FillChar(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Byte)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Fillchar` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` bytes or characters with value equal to `Value`.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `Fillword` ([1015](#)), `Move` ([1036](#)), `FillByte` ([1012](#)), `FillDWord` ([1014](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `Example25`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillChar function. }*

```

Var S : String[10];
      I : Byte;
begin
  For i:=10 downto 0 do
    begin
      { Fill S with i spaces }
      FillChar (S, SizeOf(S), ' ');
      { Set Length }
      SetLength(S, I);
      Writeln (s, '*');
    end;
end.

```

---

### 28.9.57 FillDWord

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 32-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillDWord(var x; count: SizeInt; value: DWord)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Fillword` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` `DWords` with value equal to `Value`. A `DWord` is 4 bytes in size.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `FillByte` ([1012](#)), `Fillchar` ([1013](#)), `Fillword` ([1015](#)), `Move` ([1036](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex103.pp`

---

**Program** `Example103`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillByte function. }*

```

Var S : String[10];
      I : Byte;

begin
  For i:=10 downto 0 do
    begin
      { Fill S with i bytes }
      FillChar (S, SizeOf(S), 32);
      { Set Length }

```

---

```

    SetLength(S, I);
    Writeln (s, '*');
end;
end.

```

---

### 28.9.58 FillWord

Synopsis: Fill memory region with 16-bit pattern

Declaration: `procedure FillWord(var x; count: SizeInt; Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Fillword` fills the memory starting at `X` with `Count` words with value equal to `Value`. A word is 2 bytes in size.

Errors: No checking on the size of `X` is done.

See also: `Fillchar` ([1013](#)), `Move` ([1036](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex76.pp`

---

**Program** `Example76`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FillWord function. }*

**Var** `W : Array[1..100] of Word`;

```

begin
  { Quick initialization of array W }
  FillWord(W, 100, 0);
end.

```

---

### 28.9.59 Flush

Synopsis: Write file buffers to disk

Declaration: `procedure Flush(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Flush` empties the internal buffer of an opened file `F` and writes the contents to disk. The file is `\textit{not}` closed as a result of this call.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Close` ([994](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** `Example26`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Flush function. }*

**Var** `F : Text`;

---

```

begin
  { Assign F to standard output }
  Assign (F, '');
  Rewrite (F);
  Writeln (F, 'This line is written first , but appears later !');
  { At this point the text is in the internal pascal buffer ,
    and not yet written to standard output }
  Writeln ('This line appears first , but is written later !');
  { A writeln to 'output' always causes a flush – so this text is
    written to screen }
  Flush (f);
  { At this point , the text written to F is written to screen. }
  Write (F, 'Finishing ');
  Close (f); { Closing a file always causes a flush first }
  Writeln ('off. ');
end.

```

---

### 28.9.60 frac

Synopsis: Return fractional part of floating point value.

Declaration: `function frac(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Frac` returns the non-integer part of `X`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Round` ([1050](#)), `Int` ([1029](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex27.pp`

---

```

Program Example27;

{ Program to demonstrate the Frac function. }

Var R : Real;

begin
  Writeln (Frac (123.456):0:3); { Prints 0.456 }
  Writeln (Frac (-123.456):0:3); { Prints -0.456 }
end.

```

---

### 28.9.61 Freemem

Synopsis: Release allocated memory

Declaration: `procedure Freemem(p: pointer;Size: PtrInt)`  
`function Freemem(p: pointer) : PtrInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Freemem` releases the memory occupied by the pointer `P`, of size `Count` (in bytes), and returns it to the heap. `P` should point to the memory allocated to a dynamic variable.

Errors: An error will occur when `P` doesn't point to the heap.

See also: [Getmem \(1018\)](#), [New \(1037\)](#), [Dispose \(1004\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex28.pp

---

**Program** Example28;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FreeMem and GetMem functions. }*

**Var** P : Pointer;  
MM : Longint;

**begin**

```

  { Get memory for P }
  MM:=MemAvail;
  Writeln ( 'Memory available before GetMem : ',MemAvail);
  GetMem (P,80);
  MM:=MM-Memavail;
  Write   ( 'Memory available after GetMem : ',MemAvail);
  Writeln ( ' or ',MM,' bytes less than before the call.' );
  { fill it with spaces }
  FillChar (P^,80,' ');
  { Free the memory again }
  FreeMem (P,80);
  Writeln ( 'Memory available after FreeMem : ',MemAvail);
end.
```

---

## 28.9.62 Freememory

Synopsis: Alias for FreeMem ([1016](#))

Declaration: `procedure Freememory(p: pointer;Size: PtrInt)`  
`function Freememory(p: pointer) : PtrInt`

Visibility: default

Description: FreeMemory is an alias for FreeMem ([1016](#)).

See also: FreeMem ([1016](#))

## 28.9.63 GetCurrentThreadId

Synopsis: Return the id of the currently running thread.

Declaration: `function GetCurrentThreadId : TThreadId`

Visibility: default

Description: GetCurrentThreadId returns the ID of the currently running thread. It can be used in calls such as KillThread ([1031](#)) or ThreadSetPriority ([1068](#))

Errors: None.

See also: KillThread ([1031](#)), ThreadSetPriority ([1068](#))

### 28.9.64 getdir

Synopsis: Return the current directory

Declaration: `procedure getdir(drivenr: Byte;var dir: shortstring)`  
`procedure getdir(drivenr: Byte;var dir: ansistring)`

Visibility: default

Description: Getdir returns in dir the current directory on the drive drivenr, where {drivenr} is 1 for the first floppy drive, 3 for the first hard disk etc. A value of 0 returns the directory on the current disk. On linux and unix systems, drivenr is ignored, as there is only one directory tree.

Errors: An error is returned under dos, if the drive requested isn't ready.

See also: Chdir ([993](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex29.pp

---

**Program** Example29;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetDir function. }*

**Var** S : **String**;

**begin**

**GetDir** (0,S);

**WriteLn** ( 'Current directory is : ',S);

**end.**

---

### 28.9.65 GetHeapStatus

Synopsis: Return the memory manager heap status.

Declaration: `procedure GetHeapStatus(var status: THeapStatus)`

Visibility: default

### 28.9.66 GetMem

Synopsis: Allocate new memory on the heap

Declaration: `procedure Getmem(var p: pointer;Size: PtrInt)`  
`function GetMem(size: PtrInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: Getmem reserves Size bytes memory on the heap, and returns a pointer to this memory in p. If no more memory is available, nil is returned.

For an example, see Freemem ([1016](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: Freemem ([1016](#)), Dispose ([1004](#)), New ([1037](#))

### 28.9.67 GetMemory

Synopsis: Alias for GetMem ([1018](#))

Declaration: `procedure Getmemory(var p: pointer; Size: PtrInt)`  
`function GetMemory(size: PtrInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: Getmemory is an alias for GetMem ([1018](#)).

See also: GetMem ([1018](#))

### 28.9.68 GetMemoryManager

Synopsis: Return current memory manager

Declaration: `procedure GetMemoryManager(var MemMgr: TMemoryManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: GetMemoryManager stores the current Memory Manager record in MemMgr.

For an example, see `\progrex`.

Errors: None.

See also: SetMemoryManager ([1056](#)), IsMemoryManagerSet ([1031](#))

### 28.9.69 GetProcessID

Synopsis: Get the current process ID

Declaration: `function GetProcessID : SizeUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: GetProcessID returns the current process ID. The meaning of the return value of this call is system dependent.

Errors: None.

See also: GetThreadID ([1019](#))

### 28.9.70 GetThreadID

Synopsis: Get the current Thread ID.

Declaration: `function GetThreadID : SizeUInt`

Visibility: default

Description: GetThreadID returns the current process ID. The meaning of the return value of this call is system dependent.

See also: GetProcessID ([1019](#))



### 28.9.71 GetThreadManager

Synopsis: Return the current thread manager

Declaration: `function GetThreadManager(var TM: TThreadManager) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetThreadManager` returns the currently used thread manager in TM.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

See also: `SetThreadManager` ([1058](#)), `TThreadManager` ([976](#))

### 28.9.72 GetVariantManager

Synopsis: Return the current variant manager.

Declaration: `procedure GetVariantManager(var VarMgr: tvariantmanager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVariantManager` returns the current variant manager in `varmgr`.

See also: `IsVariantManagerSet` ([1031](#)), `SetVariantManager` ([1059](#))

### 28.9.73 get\_caller\_addr

Synopsis: Return the address of the caller.

Declaration: `function get_caller_addr(framebp: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_caller_frame` returns a pointer to address ( the return address) of the caller of the routine which has as frame `framebp`.

See also: `get_frame` ([1020](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1020](#)), `Dump_Stack` ([1005](#))

### 28.9.74 get\_caller\_frame

Synopsis: Return the frame pointer of the caller

Declaration: `function get_caller_frame(framebp: pointer) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_caller_frame` returns a pointer to the frame of the caller of the routine which has as frame `framebp`.

See also: `get_caller_addr` ([1020](#)), `get_frame` ([1020](#)), `Dump_Stack` ([1005](#))

### 28.9.75 get\_frame

Synopsis: Return the current frame

Declaration: `function get_frame : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `get_frame` returns a pointer to the current stack frame.

See also: `get_caller_addr` ([1020](#)), `get_caller_frame` ([1020](#))

**28.9.76 halt**

Synopsis: Stop program execution.

Declaration: `procedure halt(errnum: Byte)`  
`procedure halt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Halt` stops program execution and returns control to the calling program. The optional argument `Errnum` specifies an exit value. If omitted, zero is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Exit` ([1010](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex30.pp`

**Program** `Example30;`

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Halt function. }
```

```
begin
  Writeln ( 'Before Halt.' );
  Halt (1); { Stop with exit code 1 }
  Writeln ( 'After Halt doesn't get executed.' );
end.
```

---

**28.9.77 hexStr**

Synopsis: Convert integer value to string with hexadecimal representation.

Declaration: `function hexStr(Val: LongInt; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function hexStr(Val: Int64; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function hexStr(Val: Pointer) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: `HexStr` returns a string with the hexadecimal representation of `Value`. The string has exactly `cnt` characters. (i.e. only the `cnt` rightmost nibbles are taken into account) To have a complete representation of a `Longint`-type value, 8 nibbles are needed, i.e. `cnt=8`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Str` ([1062](#)), `Val` ([1071](#)), `BinStr` ([990](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex81.pp`

**Program** `example81;`

---

```
{ Program to demonstrate the HexStr function }
```

```
Const Value = 45678;
```

```
Var I : longint;
```

```
begin
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    Writeln ( HexStr(Value, I) );
end.
```

---

**28.9.78 hi**

Synopsis: Return high byte/word of value.

Declaration: `function hi(b: Byte) : Byte`  
`function hi(i: Integer) : Byte`  
`function hi(w: Word) : Byte`  
`function hi(l: LongInt) : Word`  
`function hi(l: DWord) : Word`  
`function hi(i: Int64) : DWord`  
`function hi(q: QWord) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `Hi` returns the high byte or word from `X`, depending on the size of `X`. If the size of `X` is 4, then the high word is returned. If the size is 2 then the high byte is returned. `Hi` cannot be invoked on types of size 1, such as `byte` or `char`.

Errors: None

See also: `Lo` ([1033](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex31.pp`

---

**Program** `Example31;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Hi function. }*

**var**

`L : Longint;`  
`W : Word;`

**begin**

`L:=1 Shl 16; { = $10000 }`  
`W:=1 Shl 8; { = $100 }`  
`Writeln (Hi(L)); { Prints 1 }`  
`Writeln (Hi(W)); { Prints 1 }`

**end.**

---

**28.9.79 High**

Synopsis: Return highest index of open array or enumerated

Declaration: `function High(Arg: TypeOrVariable) : TOrdinal`

Visibility: default

Description: The return value of `High` depends on it's argument:

- 1.If the argument is an ordinal type, `High` returns the highest value in the range of the given ordinal type.
- 2.If the argument is an array type or an array type variable then `High` returns the highest possible value of it's index.
- 3.If the argument is an open array identifier in a function or procedure, then `High` returns the highest index of the array, as if the array has a zero-based index.

The return type is always the same type as the type of the argument (This can lead to some nasty surprises!).

Errors: None.

See also: Low ([1034](#)), Ord ([1039](#)), Pred ([1041](#)), Succ ([1064](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex80.pp

---

**Program** example80;

*{ Example to demonstrate the High and Low functions. }*

**Type** TEnum = ( North , East , South , West );  
           TRange = 14..55;  
           TArray = **Array** [2..10] **of** Longint;

**Function** Average (Row : **Array of** Longint) : Real;

**Var** I : longint;  
       Temp : Real;

**begin**

    Temp := Row[0];  
     **For** I := 1 **to** High(Row) **do**  
         Temp := Temp + Row[i];  
     Average := Temp / ( High(Row)+1);

**end;**

**Var** A : TEnum;  
       B : TRange;  
       C : TArray;  
       I : longint;

**begin**

**Writeln** ( 'TEnum goes from : ', Ord(Low(TEnum)), ' to ', Ord(high(TEnum)), '. ' );  
     **Writeln** ( 'A goes from : ', Ord(Low(A)), ' to ', Ord(high(A)), '. ' );  
     **Writeln** ( 'TRange goes from : ', Ord(Low(TRange)), ' to ', Ord(high(TRange)), '. ' );  
     **Writeln** ( 'B goes from : ', Ord(Low(B)), ' to ', Ord(high(B)), '. ' );  
     **Writeln** ( 'TArray index goes from : ', Ord(Low(TArray)), ' to ', Ord(high(TArray)), '. ' );  
     **Writeln** ( 'C index goes from : ', Low(C), ' to ', high(C), '. ' );  
     **For** I:=Low(C) **to** High(C) **do**  
         C[i]:=I;  
     **Writeln** ( 'Average : ', Average(c));  
     **Write** ( 'Type of return value is always same as type of argument: ' );  
     **Writeln** ( high(high(word)) );  
**end.**

---

### 28.9.80 Inc

Synopsis: Increase value of integer variable

Declaration: procedure Inc(var X: TOrdinal)  
               procedure Inc(var X: TOrdinal; Increment: TOrdinal)

Visibility: default

Description: Inc increases the value of X with Increment. If Increment isn't specified, then 1 is taken as a default.

**Errors:** If range checking is on, then A range check can occur, or an overflow error, when an attempt is made to increase X over its maximum value.

See also: Dec ([1002](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex32.pp

---

**Program** Example32;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Inc function. }*

**Const**

```
C : Cardinal = 1;
L : Longint  = 1;
I : Integer  = 1;
W : Word     = 1;
B : Byte     = 1;
SI : ShortInt = 1;
CH : Char    = 'A';
```

**begin**

```
Inc (C);      { C:=2    }
Inc (L,5);    { L:=6    }
Inc (I,-3);   { I:=-2   }
Inc (W,3);    { W:=4    }
Inc (B,100);  { B:=101  }
Inc (SI,-3);  { SI:=-2  }
Inc (CH,1);   { ch:='B' }
```

**end.**

---

### 28.9.81 Include

**Synopsis:** Include element in set if it was not yet present.

**Declaration:** procedure Include(var S: TSetType;E: TSetElement)

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Include includes E in the set S if it is not yet part of the set. E should be of the same type as the base type of the set S.

Thus, the two following statements do the same thing:

```
S:=S+[E];
Include(S,E);
```

For an example, see Exclude ([1008](#))

**Errors:** If the type of the element E is not equal to the base type of the set S, the compiler will generate an error.

See also: Exclude ([1008](#))

**28.9.82 IndexByte**

Synopsis: Search for a byte in a memory range.

Declaration: `function IndexByte(const buf;len: SizeInt;b: Byte) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexByte` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the byte `b` and returns it's position if it found one. If `b` is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: `IndexChar` ([1025](#)), `IndexDWord` ([1026](#)), `IndexWord` ([1027](#)), `CompareByte` ([994](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex105.pp`

---

**Program** `Example105;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexByte function. }*

**Const**

`ArraySize = 256;`  
`MaxValue = 256;`

**Var**

`Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of Byte;`  
`I,J : longint;`  
`K : Byte;`

**begin**

`Randomize;`

`For I:=1 To ArraySize do`

`Buffer[I]:=Random(MaxValue);`

`For I:=1 to 10 do`

`begin`

`K:=Random(MaxValue);`

`J:=IndexByte(Buffer,ArraySize,K);`

`if J=-1 then`

`WriteLn('Value ',K,' was not found in buffer.')`

`else`

`WriteLn('Found ',K,' at position ',J,' in buffer');`

`end;`

`end.`

---

**28.9.83 IndexChar**

Synopsis: Search for a character in a memory range.

Declaration: `function IndexChar(const buf;len: SizeInt;b: Char) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `IndexChar` searches the memory at `buf` for maximally `len` positions for the character `b` and returns it's position if it found one. If `b` is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based. The `IndexChar0` variant stops looking if a null character is found, and returns -1 in that case.

Errors: `Buf` and `Len` are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: IndexByte ([1025](#)), IndexDWord ([1026](#)), IndexWord ([1027](#)), CompareChar ([995](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex108.pp

**Program** Example108;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexChar function. }*

**Const**

ArraySize = 1000;  
MaxValue = 26;

**Var**

Buffer : **Array**[1..ArraySize] **of** Char;  
I,J : longint;  
K : Char;

**begin**

Randomize;  
**For** I:=1 **To** ArraySize **do**  
  Buffer[I]:=chr(Ord('A')+Random(MaxValue));  
**For** I:=1 **to** 10 **do**  
  **begin**  
    K:=chr(Ord('A')+Random(MaxValue));  
    J:=IndexChar(Buffer,ArraySize,K);  
    **if** J=-1 **then**  
      WriteLn('Value ',K,' was not found in buffer.')

**else**  
    WriteLn('Found ',K,' at position ',J,' in buffer');

**end**;

**end.**

### 28.9.84 IndexChar0

Synopsis: Return index of a character in null-terminated array of char.

Declaration: function IndexChar0(const buf;len: SizeInt;b: Char) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

Description: IndexChar0 returns the index of the character b in the null-terminated array Buf. At most len characters will be searched, or the null character if it is encountered first. If the character is not found, 0 is returned.

Errors: On error, 0 is returned.

See also: IndexByte ([1025](#)), IndexChar ([1025](#)), IndexWord ([1027](#)), IndexDWord ([1026](#)), CompareChar0 ([997](#))

### 28.9.85 IndexDWord

Synopsis: Search for a DWord value in a memory range.

Declaration: function IndexDWord(const buf;len: SizeInt;b: DWord) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

Description: IndexChar searches the memory at buf for maximally len positions for the DWord DW and returns it's position if it found one. If DW is not found then -1 is returned. The position is zero-based.

Errors: Buf and Len are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: IndexByte ([1025](#)), IndexChar ([1025](#)), IndexWord ([1027](#)), CompareDWord ([997](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex106.pp

---

**Program** Example106;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexDWord function. }*

**Const**

ArraySize = 1000;  
MaxValue = 1000;

**Var**

Buffer : **Array** [1.. ArraySize] **of** DWord;  
I, J : longint;  
K : DWord;

**begin**

Randomize;

**For** I:=1 **To** ArraySize **do**

Buffer[I]:=Random(MaxValue);

**For** I:=1 **to** 10 **do**

**begin**

K:=Random(MaxValue);

J:=IndexDWord(Buffer, ArraySize, K);

**if** J=-1 **then**

**WriteLn**('Value ', K, ' was not found in buffer.')

**else**

**WriteLn**('Found ', K, ' at position ', J, ' in buffer');

**end**;

**end.**

---

### 28.9.86 Indexword

Synopsis: Search for a WORD value in a memory range.

Declaration: function Indexword(const buf;len: SizeInt;b: Word) : SizeInt

Visibility: default

Description: IndexChar searches the memory at buf for maximally len positions for the Word W and returns it's position if it found one. If W is not found then -1 is returned.

Errors: Buf and Len are not checked to see if they are valid values.

See also: IndexByte ([1025](#)), IndexDWord ([1026](#)), IndexChar ([1025](#)), CompareWord ([998](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex107.pp

---

**Program** Example107;

*{ Program to demonstrate the IndexWord function. }*

**Const**

ArraySize = 1000;  
MaxValue = 1000;



```

Var
  Buffer : Array[1..ArraySize] of Word;
  I,J : longint;
  K : Word;

begin
  Randomize;
  For I:=1 To ArraySize do
    Buffer[I]:=Random(MaxValue);
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      K:=Random(MaxValue);
      J:=IndexWord(Buffer,ArraySize,K);
      if J=-1 then
        WriteLn('Value ',K,' was not found in buffer.')
      else
        WriteLn('Found ',K,' at position ',J,' in buffer');
      end;
    end.

```

---

### 28.9.87 InitCriticalSection

Synopsis: Initialize a critical section

Declaration: `procedure InitCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCriticalSection)`

Visibility: default

Description: `InitCriticalSection` initializes a critical section CS for use. Before using a critical section with `EnterCriticalSection` (1006) or `LeaveCriticalSection` (1032) the critical section should be initialized with `InitCriticalSection`.

When a critical section is no longer used, it should be disposed of with `DoneCriticalSection` (1005)

See also: `DoneCriticalSection` (1005), `EnterCriticalSection` (1006), `LeaveCriticalSection` (1032)

### 28.9.88 InitThread

Synopsis: Initialize a thread

Declaration: `procedure InitThread(stklen: Cardinal)`

Visibility: default

Description: Do not use, this is used internally by the thread manager.

### 28.9.89 Insert

Synopsis: Insert one string in another.

Declaration: `procedure Insert(const source: shortstring; var s: shortstring; index: SizeInt)`  
`procedure Insert(source: Char; var s: shortstring; index: SizeInt)`  
`procedure Insert(const Source: AnsiString; var S: AnsiString; Index: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Insert` inserts string `Source` in string `S`, at position `Index`, shifting all characters after `Index` to the right. The resulting string is truncated at 255 characters, if needed. (i.e. for shortstrings)

Errors: None.

See also: `Delete` ([1003](#)), `Copy` ([1001](#)), `Pos` ([1041](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex33.pp`

---

**Program** `Example33`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Insert function. }*

**Var** `S : String`;

**begin**

`S := 'Free Pascal is difficult to use !';`

`Insert ( 'NOT ', S, pos( 'difficult ', S ));`

`writeln (s);`

**end.**

---

### 28.9.90 `int`

Synopsis: Calculate integer part of floating point value.

Declaration: `function int(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Int` returns the integer part of any Real `X`, as a Real.

Errors: None.

See also: `Frac` ([1016](#)), `Round` ([1050](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** `Example34`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Int function. }*

**begin**

`Writeln (Int(123.456):0:1); { Prints 123.0 }`

`Writeln (Int(-123.456):0:1); { Prints -123.0 }`

**end.**

---

### 28.9.91 `IOResult`

Synopsis: Return result of last file IO operation

Declaration: `function IOResult : Word`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IOresult` contains the result of any input/output call, when the `{\%i-}` compiler directive is active, disabling IO checking. When the flag is read, it is reset to zero. If `IOresult` is zero, the operation completed successfully. If non-zero, an error occurred. The following errors can occur:

dos errors :

- 2**File not found.
- 3**Path not found.
- 4**Too many open files.
- 5**Access denied.
- 6**Invalid file handle.
- 12**Invalid file-access mode.
- 15**Invalid disk number.
- 16**Cannot remove current directory.
- 17**Cannot rename across volumes.

I/O errors :

- 100**Error when reading from disk.
- 101**Error when writing to disk.
- 102**File not assigned.
- 103**File not open.
- 104**File not opened for input.
- 105**File not opened for output.
- 106**Invalid number.

Fatal errors :

- 150**Disk is write protected.
- 151**Unknown device.
- 152**Drive not ready.
- 153**Unknown command.
- 154**CRC check failed.
- 155**Invalid drive specified..
- 156**Seek error on disk.
- 157**Invalid media type.
- 158**Sector not found.
- 159**Printer out of paper.
- 160**Error when writing to device.
- 161**Error when reading from device.
- 162**Hardware failure.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./refex/ex35.pp`

---

```

Program Example35;

{ Program to demonstrate the IOResult function. }

Var F : text;

begin
  Assign (f,paramstr(1));
  {$i-}
  Reset (f);
  {$i+}
  If IOresult<>0 then
    writeln ( 'File ',paramstr(1),' doesn't exist')
  else
    writeln ( 'File ',paramstr(1),' exists');
end.

```

---

### 28.9.92 IsMemoryManagerSet

Synopsis: Is the memory manager set

Declaration: `function IsMemoryManagerSet : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: IsMemoryManagerSet will return True if the memory manager has been set to another value than the system heap manager, it will return False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: SetMemoryManager ([1056](#)), GetMemoryManager ([1019](#))

### 28.9.93 IsVariantManagerSet

Synopsis: Determine if variant manager is currently set.

Declaration: `function IsVariantManagerSet : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: IsVariantManagerSet determines whether the variant manager was set to a correct variant manager. It returns True if it is, or False if it is not.

The routine checks all variant operation handlers, they should all be set correctly.

See also: SetVariantManager ([1059](#)), GetVariantManager ([1020](#))

### 28.9.94 KillThread

Synopsis: Kill a running thread

Declaration: `function KillThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `KillThread` causes a running thread to be aborted. The thread is identified by its handle or ID `threadHandle`.

The function returns zero if successful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

**Errors:** If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is system dependent.

**See also:** `WaitForThreadTerminate` (1072), `EndThread` (1006), `SuspendThread` (1064)

### 28.9.95 LeaveCriticalSection

**Synopsis:** Leave a critical section

**Declaration:** `procedure LeaveCriticalSection(var cs: TRTLCriticalSection)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `LeaveCriticalSection` signals that the current thread is exiting the critical section CS it has entered with `EnterCriticalSection` (1006).

The critical section must have been initialized with `InitCriticalSection` (1028) prior to a call to `EnterCriticalSection` and `LeaveCriticalSection`.

**See also:** `InitCriticalSection` (1028), `DoneCriticalSection` (1005), `EnterCriticalSection` (1006)

### 28.9.96 length

**Synopsis:** Calculate length of a string.

**Declaration:** `function Length(s: String) : Byte`  
`function length(c: Char) : Byte`  
`function Length(const S: AnsiString) : SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Length` returns the length of the string S, which is limited to 255 for shortstrings. If the string S is empty, 0 is returned. *Note:* The length of the string S is stored in `S[0]` for shortstrings only. The `Length` function should always be used on ansistrings and widestrings.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Pos` (1041)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex36.pp`

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Length function. }*

```

Var S : String;
      I : Integer;

begin
  S:= '';
  for i:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      S:=S+ '* ';
      WriteLn ( Length(S):2, ' : ',s);
    end;
end.
```

---

**28.9.97 ln**

Synopsis: Calculate logarithm

Declaration: `function ln(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: Ln returns the natural logarithm of the Real parameter X. X must be positive.

Errors: An run-time error will occur when X is negative.

See also: Exp ([1011](#)), Power ([943](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex37.pp

---

**Program** Example37;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ln function. }*

```
begin
  Writeln (Ln(1));      { Prints 0 }
  Writeln (Ln(Exp(1))); { Prints 1 }
end.
```

---

**28.9.98 lo**

Synopsis: Return low byte/word of value.

Declaration: `function lo(B: Byte) : Byte`  
`function lo(i: Integer) : Byte`  
`function lo(w: Word) : Byte`  
`function lo(l: LongInt) : Word`  
`function lo(l: DWord) : Word`  
`function lo(i: Int64) : DWord`  
`function lo(q: QWord) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: Lo returns the low byte of its argument if this is of type Integer or Word. It returns the low word of its argument if this is of type Longint or Cardinal.

Errors: None.

See also: Ord ([1039](#)), Chr ([993](#)), Hi ([1022](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex38.pp

---

**Program** Example38;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Lo function. }*

```
Var L : Longint;
    W : Word;

begin
  L:=(1 Shl 16) + (1 Shl 4); { $10010 }
  Writeln (Lo(L));          { Prints 16 }
  W:=(1 Shl 8) + (1 Shl 4); { $110   }
```

---

```

    WriteLn (Lo(W));           { Prints 16 }
end.

```

---

### 28.9.99 longjmp

Synopsis: Jump to address.

Declaration: `procedure longjmp(var S: jmp_buf; value: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: LongJump jumps to the address in the `env jmp_buf`, and restores the registers that were stored in it at the corresponding SetJump (1055) call. In effect, program flow will continue at the SetJump call, which will return `value` instead of 0. If a value equal to zero is passed, it will be converted to 1 before passing it on. The call will not return, so it must be used with extreme care. This can be used for error recovery, for instance when a segmentation fault occurred.

For an example, see SetJump (1055)

Errors: None.

See also: SetJump (1055)

### 28.9.100 Low

Synopsis: Return lowest index of open array or enumerated

Declaration: `function Low(Arg: TypeOrVariable) : TOrdinal`

Visibility: default

Description: The return value of Low depends on it's argument:

- 1.If the argument is an ordinal type, Low returns the lowest value in the range of the given ordinal type.
- 2.If the argument is an array type or an array type variable then Low returns the lowest possible value of it's index.

The return type is always the same type as the type of the argument.

for an example, see High (1022).

Errors: None.

See also: High (1022), Ord (1039), Pred (1041), Succ (1064)

### 28.9.101 lowerCase

Synopsis: Return lowercase version of a string.

Declaration: `function lowerCase(const s: shortstring) : shortstring; Overload`  
`function lowerCase(c: Char) : Char; Overload`  
`function lowercase(const s: ansistring) : ansistring`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `Lowercase` returns the lowercase version of its argument `C`. If its argument is a string, then the complete string is converted to lowercase. The type of the returned value is the same as the type of the argument.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Ucase` ([1070](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex73.pp`

---

**Program** `Example73`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Lowercase function. }*

**Var** `I` : `Longint`;

**begin**

**For** `i:=ord('A')` **to** `ord('Z')` **do**

**write** (`lowercase(chr(i))`);

**WriteLn**;

**WriteLn** (`Lowercase('ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ')`);

**end.**

---

### 28.9.102 MemSize

**Synopsis:** Return the size of a memory block.

**Declaration:** `function MemSize(p: pointer) : PtrInt`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `MemSize` returns the size of a memory block on the heap.

**Errors:** Passing an invalid pointer may lead to run-time errors (access violations).

**See also:** `GetMem` ([1018](#)), `FreeMem` ([1016](#))

### 28.9.103 mkdir

**Synopsis:** Create a new directory.

**Declaration:** `procedure mkdir(const s: String)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `Mkdir` creates a new directory `S`.

For an example, see `Rmdir` ([1049](#)).

**Errors:** Depending on the state of the `\var{\{$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

**See also:** `Chdir` ([993](#)), `Rmdir` ([1049](#))



**28.9.104 Move**

Synopsis: Move data from one location in memory to another

Declaration: `procedure Move(const source;var dest;count: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: Move moves Count bytes from Source to Dest.

Errors: If either Dest or Source is outside the accessible memory for the process, then a run-time error will be generated.

See also: Fillword ([1015](#)), Fillchar ([1013](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex42.pp

---

**Program** Example42;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Move function. }*

**Var** S1,S2 : **String** [30];

**begin**

  S1:= 'Hello World !';

  S2:= 'Bye, bye !';

**Move** (S1,S2,**Sizeof**(S1));

**WriteLn** (S2);

**end.**

---

**28.9.105 MoveChar0**

Synopsis: Move data till first zero character

Declaration: `procedure MoveChar0(const buf1;var buf2;len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: MoveChar0 moves Count bytes from Src to Dest, and stops moving if a zero character is found.

Errors: No checking is done to see if Count stays within the memory allocated to the process.

See also: Move ([1036](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex109.pp

---

**Program** Example109;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MoveChar0 function. }*

**Var**

  Buf1,Buf2 : **Array**[1..80] **of** char;

  I : longint;

**begin**

**Randomize**;

**For** I:=1 **to** 80 **do**

    Buf1[I]:= **chr**(**Random**(16)+**Ord**( 'A' ));

**WriteLn**('Original buffer');

---

```

writeln (Buf1);
Buf1[Random(80)+1]:=#0;
MoveChar0(Buf1,Buf2,80);
Writeln ('Randomly zero-terminated Buffer');
Writeln (Buf2);
end.

```

---

### 28.9.106 New

Synopsis: Dynamically allocate memory for variable

Declaration: `procedure New(var P: Pointer)`  
`procedure New(var P: Pointer; Cons: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

Description: `New` allocates a new instance of the type pointed to by `P`, and puts the address in `P`. If `P` is an object, then it is possible to specify the name of the constructor with which the instance will be created.

For an example, see `Dispose` (1004).

Errors: If not enough memory is available, `Nil` will be returned.

See also: `Dispose` (1004), `Freemem` (1016), `Getmem` (1018)

### 28.9.107 OctStr

Synopsis: Convert integer to a string with octal representation.

Declaration: `function OctStr(Val: LongInt; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`  
`function OctStr(Val: Int64; cnt: Byte) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: `OctStr` returns a string with the octal representation of `Value`. The string has exactly `cnt` characters.

Errors: None.

See also: `Str` (1062), `Val` (1071), `BinStr` (990), `HexStr` (1021)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex112.pp

---

```

Program example112;

{ Program to demonstrate the OctStr function }

Const Value = 45678;

Var I : longint;

begin
  For I:=1 to 10 do
    Writeln ( OctStr(Value, I));
  For I:=1 to 16 do
    Writeln ( OctStr(I, 3));
end.

```

---

**28.9.108 odd**

Synopsis: Is a value odd or even ?

Declaration: `function odd(l: LongInt) : Boolean`  
`function odd(l: LongWord) : Boolean`  
`function odd(l: Int64) : Boolean`  
`function odd(l: QWord) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: Odd returns True if X is odd, or False otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: Abs ([982](#)), Ord ([1039](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex43.pp

---

**Program** Example43;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Odd function. }*

```
begin
  If Odd(1) Then
    WriteLn ( 'Everything OK with 1 ! ' );
  If Not Odd(2) Then
    WriteLn ( 'Everything OK with 2 ! ' );
end.
```

---

**28.9.109 Ofs**

Synopsis: Return offset of a variable.

Declaration: `function Ofs(var X) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Ofs returns the offset of the address of a variable. This function is only supported for compatibility. In Free Pascal, it returns always the complete address of the variable, since Free Pascal is a 32 bit compiler.

Errors: None.

See also: DSeg ([1005](#)), CSeg ([1002](#)), Seg ([1054](#)), Ptr ([1042](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex44.pp

---

**Program** Example44;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ofs function. }*

**Var** W : Pointer;

```
begin
  W:=Pointer(Ofs(W)); { W contains its own offset. }
end.
```

---

**28.9.110 Ord**

Synopsis: Return ordinal value of an ordinal type.

Declaration: `function Ord(X: TOrdinal) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Ord` returns the Ordinal value of a ordinal-type variable `X`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Chr` ([993](#)), `Succ` ([1064](#)), `Pred` ([1041](#)), `High` ([1022](#)), `Low` ([1034](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex45.pp`

---

**Program** `Example45;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Ord, Pred, Succ functions. }*

**Type**

`TEnum = (Zero, One, Two, Three, Four);`

**Var**

`X : Longint;`

`Y : TEnum;`

**begin**

`X:=125;`

`WriteLn (Ord(X)); { Prints 125 }`

`X:=Pred(X);`

`WriteLn (Ord(X)); { prints 124 }`

`Y:= One;`

`WriteLn (Ord(y)); { Prints 1 }`

`Y:=Succ(Y);`

`WriteLn (Ord(Y)); { Prints 2 }`

**end.**

---

**28.9.111 Paramcount**

Synopsis: Return number of command-line parameters passed to the program.

Declaration: `function Paramcount : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Paramcount` returns the number of command-line arguments. If no arguments were given to the running program, 0 is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Paramstr` ([1040](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** `Example46;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the ParamCount and ParamStr functions. }*

**Var**

---

```

    l : Longint;

begin
    WriteLn (paramstr(0), ' : Got ', ParamCount, ' command-line parameters: ');
    For i:=1 to ParamCount do
        WriteLn (ParamStr (i));
    end.

```

---

### 28.9.112 ParamStr

Synopsis: Return value of a command-line argument.

Declaration: function ParamStr(l: LongInt) : String

Visibility: default

Description: ParamStr returns the L-th command-line argument. L must be between 0 and Paramcount, these values included. The zeroth argument is the path and file name with which the program was started.

The command-line parameters will be truncated to a length of 255, even though the operating system may support bigger command-lines. The Objpas unit (used in objfpc or delphi mode) define versions of Paramstr which return the full-length command-line arguments.

When the complete command-line must be accessed, the argv pointer should be used to retrieve the real values of the command-line parameters.

For an example, see Paramcount ([1039](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: Paramcount ([1039](#))

### 28.9.113 pi

Synopsis: Return the value of PI.

Declaration: function pi : ValReal

Visibility: default

Description: Pi returns the value of Pi (3.1415926535897932385).

Errors: None.

See also: Cos ([1001](#)), Sin ([1059](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex47.pp

---

**Program** Example47;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Pi function. }*

```

begin
    WriteLn (Pi);           {3.1415926}
    WriteLn (Sin(Pi));
end.

```

---

**28.9.114 Pos**

Synopsis: Search for substring in a string.

Declaration: `function Pos(const substr: shortstring;const s: shortstring) : SizeInt`  
`function Pos(C: Char;const s: shortstring) : SizeInt`  
`function pos(const substr: shortstring;c: Char) : SizeInt`  
`function Pos(const Substr: AnsiString;const Source: AnsiString)`  
`: SizeInt`  
`function Pos(c: Char;const s: AnsiString) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Pos` returns the index of `Substr` in `S`, if `S` contains `Substr`. In case `Substr` isn't found, 0 is returned. The search is case-sensitive.

Errors: None

See also: `Length` ([1032](#)), `Copy` ([1001](#)), `Delete` ([1003](#)), `Insert` ([1028](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex48.pp`

---

**Program** `Example48;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Pos function. }*

**Var**

`S : String;`

**begin**

`S:= 'The first space in this sentence is at position : ';`

`WriteLn (S,pos(' ',S));`

`S:= 'The last letter of the alphabet doesn't appear in this sentence ';`

`If (Pos ('Z',S)=0) and (Pos ('z',S)=0) then`

`WriteLn (S);`

**end.**

---

**28.9.115 Pred**

Synopsis: Return previous element for an ordinal type.

Declaration: `function Pred(X: TOrdinal) : TOrdinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Pred` returns the element that precedes the element that was passed to it. If it is applied to the first value of the ordinal type, and the program was compiled with range checking on (`\var{\{$R+\}}`), then a run-time error will be generated.

for an example, see `Ord` ([1039](#))

Errors: Run-time error 201 is generated when the result is out of range.

See also: `Ord` ([1039](#)), `Pred` ([1041](#)), `High` ([1022](#)), `Low` ([1034](#))

**28.9.116 prefetch**

Synopsis: Prefetch a memory location

Declaration: `procedure prefetch(const mem)`

Visibility: default

Description: Prefetch can be used to optimize the CPU behaviour by already loading a memory location. It is mainly used as a hint for those processors that support it.

Errors: None.

**28.9.117 ptr**

Synopsis: Combine segment and offset to pointer

Declaration: `function ptr(sel: LongInt; off: LongInt) : farpointer`

Visibility: default

Description: Ptr returns a pointer, pointing to the address specified by segment Sel and offset Off.

**Remark:**

1. In the 32-bit flat-memory model supported by Free Pascal, this function is obsolete.
2. The returned address is simply the offset.

Errors: None.

See also: Addr ([984](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex59.pp

---

**Program** Example59;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Ptr (compability) function .
}
```

```
type pString = ^String;
```

```
Var P : pString;
    S : String;
```

```
begin
  S:= 'Hello , World !';
  P:= pString( Ptr( Seg(S), Longint( OfS(S) ) ) );
  {P now points to S !}
  WriteLn (P^);
end.
```

---

**28.9.118 RaiseList**

Synopsis: List of currently raised exceptions.

Declaration: `function RaiseList : PExceptObject`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `RaiseList` returns a pointer to the list of currently raised exceptions (i.e. a pointer to the first exception block).

**Errors:**

### 28.9.119 Random

**Synopsis:** Generate random number

**Declaration:** `function Random(l: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function Random(l: Int64) : Int64`  
`function Random : extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `Random` returns a random number larger or equal to 0 and strictly less than L. If the argument L is omitted, a Real number between 0 and 1 is returned. (0 included, 1 excluded)

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `Randomize` ([1043](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex49.pp`

---

**Program** Example49;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Random and Randomize functions. }*

**Var** I,Count,guess : Longint;  
       R : Real;

**begin**

**Randomize**; *{ This way we generate a new sequence every time  
                   the program is run }*

    Count:=0;

**For** i:=1 **to** 1000 **do**

**If** `Random`>0.5 **then inc**(Count);

**Writeln** ( 'Generated ',Count, ' numbers > 0.5 ' );

**Writeln** ( 'out of 1000 generated numbers.' );

    count:=0;

**For** i:=1 **to** 5 **do**

**begin**

**write** ( 'Guess a number between 1 and 5 : ' );

**readln**(Guess);

**If** `Guess=Random`(5)+1 **then inc**(count);

**end**;

**Writeln** ( 'You guessed ',Count, ' out of 5 correct.' );

**end.**

---

### 28.9.120 Randomize

**Synopsis:** Initialize random number generator

**Declaration:** `procedure Randomize`

**Visibility:** default



**Description:** Randomize initializes the random number generator of Free Pascal, by giving a value to Randseed, calculated with the system clock.

For an example, see Random (1043).

**Errors:** None.

See also: Random (1043)

### 28.9.121 Read

**Synopsis:** Read from a text file into variable

**Declaration:** `procedure Read(var F: Text; Args: Arguments)`  
`procedure Read(Args: Arguments)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Read reads one or more values from a file F, and stores the result in V1, V2, etc.; If no file F is specified, then standard input is read. If F is of type Text, then the variables V1, V2 etc. must be of type Char, Integer, Real, String or PChar. If F is a typed file, then each of the variables must be of the type specified in the declaration of F. Untyped files are not allowed as an argument.

**Errors:** If no data is available, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `\var{\{$i\}}` compiler switch.

See also: Readln (1045), Blockread (991), Write (1072), Blockwrite (991)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex50.pp

---

**Program** Example50;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Read(Ln) function. }*

```

Var S : String;
      C : Char;
      F : File of char;

begin
  Assign (F, 'ex50.pp');
  Reset (F);
  C:= 'A';
  Writeln ( 'The characters before the first space in ex50.pp are : ');
  While not Eof(f) and (C<>' ') do
    Begin
      Read (F,C);
      Write (C);
    end;
  Writeln;
  Close (F);
  Writeln ( 'Type some words. An empty line ends the program. ');
  repeat
    Readln (S);
  until S='';
end.
```

---

**28.9.122 ReadLn**

Synopsis: Read from a text file into variable and goto next line

Declaration: `procedure ReadLn(var F: Text;Args: Arguments)`  
`procedure ReadLn(Args: Arguments)`

Visibility: default

Description: Read reads one or more values from a file F, and stores the result in V1, V2, etc. After that it goes to the next line in the file. The end of the line is marked by the `LineEnding` character sequence (which is platform dependent). The end-of-line marker is not considered part of the line and is ignored.

If no file F is specified, then standard input is read. The variables V1, V2 etc. must be of type Char, Integer, Real, String or PChar.

For an example, see Read (1044).

Errors: If no data is available, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `\var{\{$i\}}` compiler switch.

See also: Read (1044), Blockread (991), Write (1072), Blockwrite (991)

**28.9.123 Real2Double**

Synopsis: Convert Turbo Pascal style real to double.

Declaration: `function Real2Double(r: real48) : double`

Visibility: default

Description: The `Real2Double` function converts a Turbo Pascal style real (6 bytes long) to a native Free Pascal double type. It can be used e.g. to read old binary TP files with FPC and convert them to Free Pascal binary files.

Note that the assignment operator has been overloaded so a `Real48` type can be assigned directly to a double or extended.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./refex/ex110.pp`

---

```

program Example110;

{ Program to demonstrate the Real2Double function. }

Var
  i : integer;
  R : Real48;
  D : Double;
  E : Extended;
  F : File of Real48;

begin
  Assign(F, 'reals.dat');
  Reset(f);
  For i:=1 to 10 do
    begin
      Read(F,R);
      D:=Real2Double(R);
    
```

---

```

    Writeln('Real ',i,' : ',D);
    D:=R;
    Writeln('Real (direct to double) ',i,' : ',D);
    E:=R;
    Writeln('Real (direct to Extended) ',i,' : ',E);
    end;
    Close(f);
end.

```

---

### 28.9.124 ReAllocMem

Synopsis: Re-allocate memory on the heap

Declaration: `function ReAllocMem(var p: pointer;Size: PtrInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReAllocMem` resizes the memory pointed to by `P` so it has size `Size`. The value of `P` may change during this operation. The contents of the memory pointed to by `P` (if any) will be copied to the new location, but may be truncated if the newly allocated memory block is smaller in size. If a larger block is allocated, only the used memory is initialized, extra memory will not be zeroed out.

Note that `P` may be nil, in that case the behaviour of `ReAllocMem` is equivalent to `Getmem`.

See also: `GetMem` ([1018](#)), `FreeMem` ([1016](#))

### 28.9.125 ReAllocMemory

Synopsis: Alias for `ReAllocMem` ([1046](#))

Declaration: `function ReAllocMemory(var p: pointer;Size: PtrInt) : pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReAllocMemory` is an alias for `ReAllocMem` ([1046](#)).

See also: `ReAllocMem` ([1046](#))

### 28.9.126 ReleaseExceptionObject

Synopsis: Decrease the reference count of the current exception object.

Declaration: `procedure ReleaseExceptionObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReleaseExceptionObject` decreases the reference count of the current exception object. This should be called whenever a reference to the exception object was obtained via the `AcquireExceptionObject` ([983](#)) call.

Calling this method is only valid within an `except` block.

Errors: If there is no current exception object, a run-time error 231 will occur.

See also: `AcquireExceptionObject` ([983](#))

### 28.9.127 Rename

Synopsis: Rename file on disk

Declaration:

```

procedure Rename(var f: File;const s: String)
  procedure Rename(var f: File;p: PChar)
  procedure Rename(var f: File;c: Char)
  procedure Rename(var t: Text;const s: String)
  procedure Rename(var t: Text;p: PChar)
  procedure Rename(var t: Text;c: Char)

```

Visibility: default

Description: Rename changes the name of the assigned file F to S. F must be assigned, but not opened.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{\$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{\$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: Erase ([1008](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex77.pp

**Program** Example77;

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Rename function. }
Var F : Text;

begin
  Assign (F,paramstr(1));
  Rename (F,paramstr(2));
end.

```

### 28.9.128 Reset

Synopsis: Open file for reading

Declaration:

```

procedure Reset(var f: File;l: LongInt)
  procedure Reset(var f: File)
  procedure Reset(var f: TypedFile)
  procedure Reset(var t: Text)

```

Visibility: default

Description: Reset opens a file F for reading. F can be any file type. If F is a text file, or refers to standard I/O (e.g. ") then it is opened read-only, otherwise it is opened using the mode specified in filemode. If F is an untyped file, the record size can be specified in the optional parameter L. A default value of 128 is used. File sharing is not taken into account when calling Reset.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{\$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{\$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: Rewrite ([1048](#)), Assign ([987](#)), Close ([994](#)), Append ([985](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex51.pp

---

```

Program Example51;

{ Program to demonstrate the Reset function. }

Function FileExists (Name : String) : boolean;

Var F : File;

begin
  {$i-}
  Assign (F,Name);
  Reset (F);
  {$I+}
  FileExists := (IoResult=0) and (Name<>' ');
  Close (f);
end;

begin
  If FileExists (Paramstr(1)) then
    Writeln ( 'File found')
  else
    Writeln ( 'File NOT found');
end.

```

---

### 28.9.129 ResumeThread

Synopsis: Resume a suspended thread.

Declaration: `function ResumeThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: ResumeThread causes a suspended thread (using SuspendThread (1064)) to resume it's execution. The thread is identified with it's handle or ID threadHandle.

The function returns zero if succesful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is systemm dependent.

See also: SuspendThread (1064), KillThread (1031)

### 28.9.130 Rewrite

Synopsis: Open file for writing

Declaration: `procedure Rewrite(var f: File; l: LongInt)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var f: File)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var f: TypedFile)`  
`procedure Rewrite(var t: Text)`

Visibility: default

Description: Rewrite opens a file F for writing. F can be any file type. If F is an untyped or typed file, then it is opened for reading and writing. If F is an untyped file, the record size can be specified in the optional parameter L. Default a value of 128 is used. if Rewrite finds a file with the same name as F, this file is truncated to length 0. If it doesn't find such a file, a new file is created. Contrary to Turbo Pascal, Free Pascal opens the file with mode fmoutput. If it should be opened in fminout

mode, an extra call to `Reset` (1047) is needed. File sharing is not taken into account when calling `Rewrite`.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{\$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{\$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Reset` (1047), `Assign` (987), `Close` (994), `Flush` (1015), `Append` (985)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex52.pp

---

**Program** Example52;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Rewrite function. }*

**Var** F : **File**;  
       I : **longint**;

**begin**

  Assign (F, 'Test.tmp');  
  *{ Create the file. Recordsize is 4 }*  
  **Rewrite** (F, **Sizeof**(I));  
  **For** I:=1 **to** 10 **do**  
   **BlockWrite** (F, I, 1);  
  close (f);  
  *{ F contains now a binary representation of*  
   *10 longints going from 1 to 10 }*

**end.**

---

### 28.9.131 rmdir

Synopsis: Remove directory when empty.

Declaration: `procedure rmdir(const s: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Rmdir` removes the directory S.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{\$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{\$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Chdir` (993), `Mkdir` (1035)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex53.pp

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ Program to demonstrate the MkDir and RmDir functions. }*

**Const** D : **String**[8] = 'TEST.DIR';

**Var** S : **String**;

**begin**

**Writeln** ('Making directory ', D);  
  **Mkdir** (D);  
  **Writeln** ('Changing directory to ', D);  
  **ChDir** (D);

---

```

GetDir (0,S);
Writeln ( 'Current Directory is : ',S);
WRriteln ( 'Going back ');
ChDir ( '.. ');
Writeln ( 'Removing directory ',D);
Rmdir (D);
end.

```

---

### 28.9.132 round

Synopsis: Round floating point value to nearest integer number.

Declaration: `function round(d: ValReal) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: Round rounds X to the closest integer, which may be bigger or smaller than X.

Errors: None.

See also: [Frac \(1016\)](#), [Int \(1029\)](#), [Trunc \(1069\)](#)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex54.pp

---

**Program** Example54;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Round function. }*

```

begin
  Writeln (Round(1234.56)); { Prints 1235 }
  Writeln (Round(-1234.56)); { Prints -1235 }
  Writeln (Round(12.3456)); { Prints 12 }
  Writeln (Round(-12.3456)); { Prints -12 }
end.

```

---

### 28.9.133 RTLEventCreate

Synopsis: Create a new RTL event

Declaration: `function RTLEventCreate : PRTLEvent`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLEventCreate` creates and initializes a new RTL event. RTL events are used to notify other threads that a certain condition is met, and to notify other threads of condition changes (conditional variables).

The function returns an initialized RTL event, which must be disposed of with `RTLEventdestroy` ([1050](#))

`RTLEvent` is used mainly for the `synchronize` method.

See also: `RTLEventDestroy` ([1050](#)), `RTLEventSet` ([943](#)), `RTLEventReSet` ([943](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1052](#))

### 28.9.134 RTLeventdestroy

Synopsis: Destroy a RTL Event

Declaration: `procedure RTLeventdestroy(state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventdestroy` destroys the RTL event State. After a call to `RTLeventdestroy`, the State RTL event may no longer be used.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1050](#)), `RTLEventReset` ([943](#)), `RTLEventSet` ([943](#))

### 28.9.135 RTLeventResetEvent

Synopsis: Reset an event

Declaration: `procedure RTLeventResetEvent(state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventSetEvent` notifies other threads which are listening, that the event has occurred.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1050](#)), `RTLEventDestroy` ([1050](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1051](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1052](#))

### 28.9.136 RTLeventSetEvent

Synopsis: Notify threads of the event.

Declaration: `procedure RTLeventSetEvent(state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventSetEvent` notifies other threads which are listening, that the event has occurred.

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1050](#)), `RTLeventResetEvent` ([1051](#)), `RTLEventDestroy` ([1050](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1052](#))

### 28.9.137 RTLeventStartWait

Synopsis: Prepare the event for waiting.

Declaration: `procedure RTLeventStartWait(state: PRTLEvent)`

Visibility: default

Description: `RTLeventResetEvent` signals that a thread is ready to start waiting on an event state. No event can be posted until a thread explicitly starts waiting on the event using `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1052](#)).

See also: `RTLEventCreate` ([1050](#)), `RTLEventDestroy` ([1050](#)), `RTLEventSetEvent` ([1051](#)), `RTLEventWaitFor` ([1052](#))



**28.9.138 RTLeventsync**

Synopsis: Obsolete. Don't use

Declaration: `procedure RTLeventsync(m: trtlmethod;p: TProcedure)`

Visibility: default

Description: RTLeventsync is obsolete, don't use it.

**28.9.139 RTLeventWaitFor**

Synopsis: Wait for an event.

Declaration: `procedure RTLeventWaitFor(state: PRTLEvent)`  
`procedure RTLeventWaitFor(state: PRTLEvent;timeout: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: RTLeventWaitFor suspends the thread till the event occurs. The event will occur when another thread calls RTLEventSetEvent (1051) on State.

By default, the thread will be suspended indefinitely. However, if TimeOut is specified, then the thread will resume after timeout milliseconds have elapsed.

See also: RTLEventCreate (1050), RTLEventDestroy (1050), RTLEventSetEvent (1051), RTLeventWaitFor (1052)

**28.9.140 RunError**

Synopsis: Generate a run-time error.

Declaration: `procedure RunError(w: Word)`  
`procedure RunError`

Visibility: default

Description: Runerror stops the execution of the program, and generates a run-time error ErrorCode.

Errors: None.

See also: Exit (1010), Halt (1021)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex55.pp

---

**Program** Example55;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the RunError function. }

begin
  { The program will stop and emit a run-error 106 }
  RunError (106);
end.
```

---

**28.9.141 Seek**

Synopsis: Set file position

Declaration: `procedure Seek(var f: File; Pos: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seek` sets the file-pointer for file `F` to record `Nr. Count`. The first record in a file has `Count=0`. `F` can be any file type, except `Text`. If `F` is an untyped file, with no record size specified in `Reset` (1047) or `Rewrite` (1048), 128 is assumed.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: `Eof` (1006), `SeekEof` (1053), `SeekEoln` (1054)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex56.pp`

**Program** `Example56;`

---

```

{ Program to demonstrate the Seek function. }

Var
  F : File;
  I, J : longint;

begin
  { Create a file and fill it with data }
  Assign (F, 'test.tmp');
  Rewrite(F); { Create file }
  Close(f);
  FileMode:=2;
  ReSet (F, Sizeof(i)); { Opened read/write }
  For I:=0 to 10 do
    BlockWrite (F, I, 1);
  { Go Back to the begining of the file }
  Seek(F, 0);
  For I:=0 to 10 do
    begin
      BlockRead (F, J, 1);
      If J<>I then
        WriteLn ('Error: expected ', i, ', got ', j);
    end;
  Close (f);
end.

```

---

**28.9.142 SeekEOF**

Synopsis: Set file position to end of file

Declaration: `function SeekEOF(var t: Text) : Boolean`  
`function SeekEOF : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SeekEof` returns `True` is the file-pointer is at the end of the file. It ignores all whitespace. Calling this function has the effect that the file-position is advanced until the first non-whitespace character or the end-of-file marker is reached. If the end-of-file marker is reached, `True` is returned. Otherwise, `False` is returned. If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard `Input` is assumed.

Errors: A run-time error is generated if the file F isn't opened.

See also: Eof ([1006](#)), SeekEoln ([1054](#)), Seek ([1052](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex57.pp

---

**Program** Example57;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SeekEof function. }
Var C : Char;

begin
  { this will print all characters from standard input except
    Whitespace characters. }
  While Not SeekEof do
    begin
      Read (C);
      Write (C);
    end;
end.
```

---

### 28.9.143 SeekEOLn

Synopsis: Set file position to end of line

Declaration: function SeekEOLn(var t: Text) : Boolean  
function SeekEOLn : Boolean

Visibility: default

Description: SeekEoln returns True is the file-pointer is at the end of the current line. It ignores all whitespace. Calling this function has the effect that the file-position is advanced until the first non-whitespace character or the end-of-line marker is reached. If the end-of-line marker is reached, True is returned. Otherwise, False is returned. The end-of-line marker is defined as #10, the LineFeed character. If the parameter F is omitted, standard Input is assumed.

Errors: A run-time error is generated if the file F isn't opened.

See also: Eof ([1006](#)), SeekEof ([1053](#)), Seek ([1052](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex58.pp

---

**Program** Example58;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SeekEoln function. }
Var
  C : Char;

begin
  { This will read the first line of standard output and print
    all characters except whitespace. }
  While not SeekEoln do
    Begin
      Read (c);
      Write (c);
    end;
end.
```

---

**28.9.144 Seg**

Synopsis: Return segment

Declaration: `function Seg(var X) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Seg` returns the segment of the address of a variable. This function is only supported for compatibility. In Free Pascal, it returns always 0, since Free Pascal is a 32 bit compiler, segments have no meaning.

Errors: None.

See also: `DSeg` ([1005](#)), `CSeg` ([1002](#)), `Ofs` ([1038](#)), `Ptr` ([1042](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex60.pp`

---

**Program** `Example60;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Seg function. }
Var
  W : Word;

begin
  W:=Seg(W); { W contains its own Segment}
end.
```

---

**28.9.145 Setjmp**

Synopsis: Save current execution point.

Declaration: `function Setjmp(var S: jmp_buf) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetJmp` fills `env` with the necessary data for a jump back to the point where it was called. It returns zero if called in this way. If the function returns nonzero, then it means that a call to `LongJmp` ([1034](#)) with `env` as an argument was made somewhere in the program.

Errors: None.

See also: `LongJmp` ([1034](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex79.pp`

---

**program** `example79;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the setjmp, longjmp functions }

procedure dojmp(var env : jmp_buf; value : longint);

begin
  value:=2;
  WriteLn ( 'Going to jump ! ');
  { This will return to the setjmp call,
    and return value instead of 0 }
  longjmp(env, value);
end;
```

---

```

var env : jmp_buf;

begin
  if setjmp(env)=0 then
    begin
      writeln ('Passed first time. ');
      dojmp(env,2);
    end
  else
    writeln ('Passed second time. ');
  end.

```

---

### 28.9.146 SetLength

Synopsis: Set length of a string.

Declaration: `procedure SetLength(var S: ShortString; len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetLength(var S: AnsiString; l: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetLength` sets the length of the string `S` to `Len`. `S` can be an `ansistring`, a short string or a `widestring`. For `ShortStrings`, `Len` can maximally be 255. For `AnsiStrings` it can have any value. For `AnsiString` strings, `SetLength { \em must }` be used to set the length of the string.

Errors: None.

See also: `Length` ([1032](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex85.pp`

---

**Program** `Example85;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the SetLength function. }*

**Var** `S : String;`

```

begin
  FillChar(S[1],100,#32);
  Setlength(S,100);
  Writeln (' ',S,' ');
end.

```

---

### 28.9.147 SetMemoryManager

Synopsis: Set a memory manager

Declaration: `procedure SetMemoryManager(const MemMgr: TMemoryManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMemoryManager` sets the current memory manager record to `MemMgr`.

For an example, see `\progrex`.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetMemoryManager` ([1019](#)), `IsMemoryManagerSet` ([1031](#))

**28.9.148 SetMemoryMutexManager**

Synopsis: Procedure to set the mutex manager.

Declaration: `procedure SetMemoryMutexManager(var MutexMgr: TMemoryMutexManager)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetMemoryMutexManager` sets the mutex manager used by the memory manager to `MutexMgr`.  
The current mutex manager is returned in `MutexMgr`

Errors: None.

See also: `TMemoryMutexManager` ([974](#)), `SetMemoryManager` ([1056](#))

**28.9.149 SetNoThreadManager**

Synopsis: Clear the threadmanager

Declaration: `procedure SetNoThreadManager`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetNoThreadManager` clears the thread manager by setting the thread manager to an empty thread manager record.

**28.9.150 SetString**

Synopsis: Set length of a string and copy buffer.

Declaration: `procedure SetString(var S: Shortstring; Buf: PChar; Len: SizeInt)`  
`procedure SetString(var S: AnsiString; Buf: PChar; Len: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetString` sets the length of the string `S` to `Len` and if `Buf` is non-nil, copies `Len` characters from `Buf` into `S`. `S` can be an ansistring, a short string or a widestring. For `ShortStrings`, `Len` can maximally be 255.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetLength` ([1056](#))

**28.9.151 SetTextBuf**

Synopsis: Set size of text file internal buffer

Declaration: `procedure SetTextBuf(var f: Text; var Buf)`  
`procedure SetTextBuf(var f: Text; var Buf; Size: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetTextBuf` assigns an I/O buffer to a text file. The new buffer is located at `Buf` and is `Size` bytes long. If `Size` is omitted, then `SizeOf(Buf)` is assumed. The standard buffer of any text file is 128 bytes long. For heavy I/O operations this may prove too slow. The `SetTextBuf` procedure allows to set a bigger buffer for the IO of the application, thus reducing the number of system calls, and thus reducing the load on the system resources. The maximum size of the newly assigned buffer is 65355 bytes.

**Remark:**

- Never assign a new buffer to an opened file. A new buffer can be assigned immediately after a call to Rewrite (1048)Reset (1047) or Append, but not after the file was read from/written to. This may cause loss of data. If a new buffer must be assigned after read/write operations have been performed, the file should be flushed first. This will ensure that the current buffer is emptied.
- Take care that the assigned buffer is always valid. If a local variable is assigned as a buffer, then after the program exits the local program block, the buffer will no longer be valid, and stack problems may occur.

Errors: No checking on Size is done.

See also: Assign (987), Reset (1047), Rewrite (1048), Append (985)

**Listing:** ./refex/ex61.pp

**Program** Example61;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SetTextBuf function. }*

**Var**

Fin, Fout : Text;  
Ch : Char;  
Bufin, Bufout : **Array**[1..10000] of byte;

**begin**

Assign (Fin, paramstr(1));  
**Reset** (Fin);  
Assign (Fout, paramstr(2));  
**Rewrite** (Fout);  
*{ This is harmless before IO has begun }*  
*{ Try this program again on a big file ,*  
*after commenting out the following 2*  
*lines and recompiling it. }*  
**SetTextBuf** (Fin, Bufin);  
**SetTextBuf** (Fout, Bufout);  
**While not eof**(Fin) **do**  
  **begin**  
    **Read** (Fin, ch);  
    **write** (Fout, ch);  
  **end**;  
  Close (Fin);  
  Close (Fout);

**end.**

### 28.9.152 SetTextLineEnding

Synopsis: Set the end-of-line character for the given text file.

Declaration: procedure SetTextLineEnding(var f: Text; Ending: String)

Visibility: default

Description: SetTextLineEnding sets the end-of-line character for the text file F to Ending. By default, this is the string indicated by DefaultTextLineBreakStyle (947).

Errors: None.

See also: DefaultTextLineBreakStyle (947), TTextLineBreakStyle (975)

**28.9.153 SetThreadManager**

Synopsis: Set the thread manager, optionally return the current thread manager.

Declaration: 

```
function SetThreadManager(const NewTM: TThreadManager;
                           var OldTM: TThreadManager) : Boolean
function SetThreadManager(const NewTM: TThreadManager) : Boolean
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SetThreadManager` sets the thread manager to `NewTM`. If `OldTM` is given, `SetThreadManager` uses it to return the previously used thread manager.

The function returns `True` if the threadmanager was set succesfully, `False` if an error occurred.

For more information about thread programming, see the programmer's guide.

Errors: If an error occurred cleaning up the previous manager, or an error occurred initializing the new manager, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetThreadManager` ([1020](#)), `TThreadManager` ([976](#))

**28.9.154 SetVariantManager**

Synopsis: Set the current variant manager.

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetVariantManager(const VarMgr: tvariantmanager)
```

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVariantManager` sets the variant manager to `varmgr`.

See also: `IsVariantManagerSet` ([1031](#)), `GetVariantManager` ([1020](#))

**28.9.155 sin**

Synopsis: Calculate sine of angle

Declaration: 

```
function sin(d: ValReal) : ValReal
```

Visibility: default

Description: `Sin` returns the sine of its argument `X`, where `X` is an angle in radians. If the absolute value of the argument is larger than  $\sqrt[63]{2}$ , then the result is undefined.

Errors: None.

See also: `Cos` ([1001](#)), `Pi` ([1040](#)), `Exp` ([1011](#)), `Ln` ([1033](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex62.pp`

**Program** `Example62;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Sin function. }*

**begin**

`WriteLn (Sin(Pi):0:1); { Prints 0.0 }`

`WriteLn (Sin(Pi/2):0:1); { Prints 1.0 }`

**end.**



**28.9.156 SizeOf**

Synopsis: Return size of a variable or type.

Declaration: `function SizeOf(X: TAnyType) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SizeOf` returns the size, in bytes, of any variable or type-identifier.

**Remark:** This isn't really a RTL function. Its result is calculated at compile-time, and hard-coded in the executable.

Errors: None.

See also: `Addr` ([984](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex63.pp`

---

**Program** `Example63;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SizeOf function . }
Var
  I : Longint;
  S : String [10];

begin
  Writeln (SizeOf(I));  { Prints 4 }
  Writeln (SizeOf(S));  { Prints 11 }
end.
```

---

**28.9.157 Space**

Synopsis: Return a string of spaces

Declaration: `function Space(b: Byte) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: `Space` returns a shortstring with length B, consisting of spaces.

See also: `StringOfChar` ([1063](#))

**28.9.158 Sptr**

Synopsis: Return current stack pointer

Declaration: `function Sptr : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sptr` returns the current stack pointer.

Errors: None.

See also: `SSeg` ([1062](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex64.pp`

---

**Program** Example64;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the SPtr function. }
Var
  P : Longint;

begin
  P:=Longint(Sptr); { P Contains now the current stack position. }
end.
```

---

### 28.9.159 sqr

Synopsis: Calculate the square of a value.

Declaration: function `sqr(l: LongInt) : LongInt`  
 function `sqr(l: Int64) : Int64`  
 function `sqr(l: QWord) : QWord`  
 function `sqr(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sqr` returns the square of its argument X.

Errors: None.

See also: `Sqrt` ([1061](#)), `Ln` ([1033](#)), `Exp` ([1011](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex65.pp

---

**Program** Example65;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Sqr function. }
Var i : Integer;

begin
  For i:=1 to 10 do
    writeln (Sqr(i):3);
end.
```

---

### 28.9.160 sqrt

Synopsis: Calculate the square root of a value

Declaration: function `sqrt(d: ValReal) : ValReal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Sqrt` returns the square root of its argument X, which must be positive.

Errors: If X is negative, then a run-time error is generated.

See also: `Sqr` ([1061](#)), `Ln` ([1033](#)), `Exp` ([1011](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex66.pp

---

```

Program Example66;

{ Program to demonstrate the Sqrt function. }

begin
  Writeln ( Sqrt(4):0:3); { Prints 2.000 }
  Writeln ( Sqrt(2):0:3); { Prints 1.414 }
end.

```

---

### 28.9.161 Sseg

Synopsis: Return stack segment register value.

Declaration: function Sseg : Word

Visibility: default

Description: SSeg returns the Stack Segment. This function is only supported for compatibility reasons, as SPtr returns the correct contents of the stackpointer.

Errors: None.

See also: SPtr ([1060](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex67.pp

---

```

Program Example67;

{ Program to demonstrate the SSeg function. }
Var W : Longint;

begin
  W:=SSeg;
end.

```

---

### 28.9.162 Str

Synopsis: Convert a numerical value to a string.

Declaration: procedure Str(var X: TNumericType;var S: String)

Visibility: default

Description: Str returns a string which represents the value of X. X can be any numerical type. The optional NumPlaces and Decimals specifiers control the formatting of the string.

Errors: None.

See also: Val ([1071](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex68.pp

---

```

Program Example68;

{ Program to demonstrate the Str function. }
Var S : String;

```

---

---

```

Function IntToStr (I : Longint) : String;

Var S : String;

begin
  Str (I,S);
  IntToStr:=S;
end;

begin
  S:='*'+IntToStr(-233)+'*';
  Writeln (S);
end.

```

---

### 28.9.163 StringOfChar

Synopsis: Return a string consisting of 1 character repeated N times.

Declaration: `function StringOfChar(c: Char;l: SizeInt) : AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: StringOfChar creates a new String of length l and fills it with the character c.

It is equivalent to the following calls:

```

SetLength(StringOfChar,l);
FillChar(Pointer(StringOfChar)^,Length(StringOfChar),c);

```

Errors: None.

See also: SetLength ([1056](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex97.pp

---

**Program** Example97;

*{ \$H+ }*

*{ Program to demonstrate the StringOfChar function. }*

**Var** S : **String**;

```

begin
  S:=StringOfChar(' ',40)+'Aligned at column 41.';
  Writeln(s);
end.

```

---

### 28.9.164 StringToPPChar

Synopsis: Split string in list of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function StringToPPChar(var S: AnsiString; ReserveEntries: Integer) : PPChar`  
`function StringToPPChar(S: PChar; ReserveEntries: Integer) : PPChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToPPChar` splits the string `S` in words, replacing any whitespace with zero characters. It returns a pointer to an array of `pchars` that point to the first letters of the words in `S`. This array is terminated by a `Nil` pointer.

The function does *not* add a zero character to the end of the string unless it ends on whitespace.

The function reserves memory on the heap to store the array of `PChar`; The caller is responsible for freeing this memory.

This function is only available on certain platforms.

Errors: None.

See also: `ArrayStringToPPchar` ([986](#))

### 28.9.165 `strlen`

Synopsis: Length of a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strlen(p: PChar) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the length of the null-terminated string `P`.

Errors: None.

### 28.9.166 `strpas`

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to a shortstring.

Declaration: `function strpas(p: PChar) : shortstring`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a null terminated string in `P` to a Pascal string, and returns this string. The string is truncated at 255 characters.

Errors: None.

### 28.9.167 `Succ`

Synopsis: Return next element of ordinal type.

Declaration: `function Succ(X: TOrdinal) : TOrdinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `Succ` returns the element that succeeds the element that was passed to it. If it is applied to the last value of the ordinal type, and the program was compiled with range checking on (`\var{\{$R+\}}`), then a run-time error will be generated.

for an example, see `Ord` ([1039](#)).

Errors: Run-time error 201 is generated when the result is out of range.

See also: `Ord` ([1039](#)), `Pred` ([1041](#)), `High` ([1022](#)), `Low` ([1034](#))

**28.9.168 SuspendThread**

Synopsis: Suspend a running thread.

Declaration: `function SuspendThread(threadHandle: TThreadID) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `SuspendThread` suspends a running thread. The thread is identified with its handle or ID `threadHandle`.

The function returns zero if successful. A nonzero return value indicates failure.

Errors: If a failure occurred, a nonzero result is returned. The meaning is system dependent.

See also: `ResumeThread` ([1048](#)), `KillThread` ([1031](#))

**28.9.169 Swap**

Synopsis: Swap high and low bytes/words of a variable

Declaration: `function swap(X: Word) : Word`  
`function Swap(X: Integer) : Integer`  
`function swap(X: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function Swap(X: Cardinal) : Cardinal`  
`function Swap(X: QWord) : QWord`  
`function swap(X: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Swap` swaps the high and low order bytes of `X` if `X` is of type `Word` or `Integer`, or swaps the high and low order words of `X` if `X` is of type `Longint` or `Cardinal`. The return type is the type of `X`

Errors: None.

See also: `Lo` ([1033](#)), `Hi` ([1022](#))

**Listing:** `./refex/ex69.pp`

---

**Program** `Example69;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Swap function. }
Var W : Word;
    L : Longint;

begin
  W:=$1234;
  W:=Swap(W);
  if W<>$3412 then
    writeln ('Error when swapping word !');
  L:=$12345678;
  L:=Swap(L);
  if L<>$56781234 then
    writeln ('Error when swapping Longint !');
end.
```

---

### 28.9.170 SysAllocMem

Synopsis: System memory manager: Allocate memory

Declaration: `function SysAllocMem(size: PtrInt) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFreeMemSize` is the system memory manager implementation for `AllocMem` (985)

See also: `AllocMem` (985)

### 28.9.171 SysAssert

Synopsis: Standard Assert failure implementation

Declaration: `procedure SysAssert(const Msg: ShortString; const FName: ShortString;  
LineNo: LongInt; ErrorAddr: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysAssert` is the standard implementation of the assertion failed code. It is the default value of the `AssertErrorProc` constant. It will print the assert message `Msg` together with the filename `FName` and linenumber `LineNo` to standard error output (`StdErr`) and will halt the program with exit code 227. The error address `ErrorAddr` is ignored.

See also: `AssertErrorProc` (945)

### 28.9.172 SysBackTraceStr

Synopsis: Format an address suitable for inclusion in a backtrace

Declaration: `function SysBackTraceStr(Addr: Pointer) : ShortString`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysBackTraceStr` will create a string representation of the address `Addr`, suitable for inclusion in a stack backtrace.

Errors: None.

### 28.9.173 SysFreemem

Synopsis: System memory manager free routine.

Declaration: `function SysFreemem(p: pointer) : PtrInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFreeem` is the system memory manager implementation for `FreeMem` (1016)

See also: `FreeMem` (1016)

### 28.9.174 SysFreememSize

Synopsis: System memory manager free routine.

Declaration: `function SysFreememSize(p: pointer;Size: PtrInt) : PtrInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFreememSize` is the system memory manager implementation for `FreeMem` (1016)

See also: `MemSize` (1035)

### 28.9.175 SysGetHeapStatus

Synopsis: System implementation of `GetHeapStatus` (1018)

Declaration: `procedure SysGetHeapStatus(var status: THeapStatus)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysGetHeapStatus` is the system implementation of the `GetHeapStatus` (1018) call.

See also: `GetHeapStatus` (1018)

### 28.9.176 SysGetmem

Synopsis: System memory manager memory allocator.

Declaration: `function SysGetmem(Size: PtrInt) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysGetmem` is the system memory manager implementation for `GetMem` (1018)

See also: `GetMem` (1018), `GetMemory` (1019)

### 28.9.177 SysInitExceptions

Synopsis: Initialize exceptions.

Declaration: `procedure SysInitExceptions`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInitExceptions` initializes the exception system. This procedure should never be called directly, it is taken care of by the RTL.

### 28.9.178 SysInitStdIO

Synopsis: Initialize standard input and output.

Declaration: `procedure SysInitStdIO`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysInitStdIO` initializes the standard input and output files: `Output` (981), `Input` (981) and `StdErr` (982). This routine is called by the initialization code of the system unit, there should be no need to call it directly.



### 28.9.179 SysMemSize

Synopsis: System memory manager: free size.

Declaration: `function SysMemSize(p: pointer) : PtrInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysFreeMemSize` is the system memory manager implementation for `MemSize` ([1035](#))

See also: `MemSize` ([1035](#))

### 28.9.180 SysReAllocMem

Synopsis: System memory manager: Reallocate memory

Declaration: `function SysReAllocMem(var p: pointer;size: PtrInt) : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysReAllocMem` is a help routine for the system memory manager implementation for `ReAllocMem` ([1046](#)).

See also: `ReAllocMem` ([1046](#))

### 28.9.181 SysResetFPU

Synopsis: Reset the floating point unit.

Declaration: `procedure SysResetFPU`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysResetFPU` resets the floating point unit. There should normally be no need to call this unit; the compiler itself takes care of this.

### 28.9.182 SysTryResizeMem

Synopsis: System memory manager: attempt to resize memory.

Declaration: `function SysTryResizeMem(var p: pointer;size: PtrInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SysTryResizeMem` is a help routine for the system memory manager implementation for `ReAllocMem` ([1046](#)), `SysReAllocMem` ([1067](#))

See also: `SysReAllocMem` ([1067](#)), `ReAllocMem` ([1046](#))

### 28.9.183 ThreadGetPriority

Synopsis: Return the priority of a thread.

Declaration: `function ThreadGetPriority(threadHandle: TThreadID) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadGetPriority` returns the priority of thread `TThreadID` to `Prio`. The returned priority is a value between -15 and 15.

Errors: None.

See also: [ThreadSetPriority \(1068\)](#)

### 28.9.184 ThreadSetPriority

Synopsis: Set the priority of a thread.

Declaration: `function ThreadSetPriority(threadHandle: TThreadID;Prio: LongInt)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadSetPriority` sets the priority of thread `TThreadID` to `Prio`. Priority is a value between -15 and 15.

Errors: None.

See also: [ThreadGetPriority \(1068\)](#)

### 28.9.185 ThreadSwitch

Synopsis: Signal possibility of thread switch

Declaration: `procedure ThreadSwitch`

Visibility: default

Description: `ThreadSwitch` signals the operating system that the thread should be suspended and that another thread should be executed.

This call is a hint only, and may be ignored.

See also: [SuspendThread \(1064\)](#), [ResumeThread \(1048\)](#), [KillThread \(1031\)](#)

### 28.9.186 trunc

Synopsis: Truncate a floating point value.

Declaration: `function trunc(d: ValReal) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `Trunc` returns the integer part of `X`, which is always smaller than (or equal to) `X` in absolute value.

Errors: None.

See also: [Frac \(1016\)](#), [Int \(1029\)](#), [Round \(1050\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex70.pp`

---

**Program** `Example70;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Trunc function. }*

```
begin
  Writeln (Trunc(123.456)); { Prints 123 }
  Writeln (Trunc(-123.456)); { Prints -123 }
  Writeln (Trunc(12.3456)); { Prints 12 }
  Writeln (Trunc(-12.3456)); { Prints -12 }
end.
```

---

**28.9.187 Truncate**

Synopsis: Truncate the file at position

Declaration: `procedure Truncate(var F: File)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Truncate` truncates the (opened) file `F` at the current file position.

Errors: Depending on the state of the `\var{\{$I\}}` switch, a runtime error can be generated if there is an error. In the `\var{\{$I-\}}` state, use `IOResult` to check for errors.

See also: [Append \(985\)](#), [Filepos \(1011\)](#), [Seek \(1052\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex71.pp`

---

**Program** `Example71;`

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Truncate function. }

Var F : File of longint;
      I,L : Longint;

begin
  Assign (F, 'test.tmp');
  Rewrite (F);
  For I:=1 to 10 Do
    Write (F,I);
  WriteLn ('Filesize before Truncate : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (f);
  Reset (F);
  Repeat
    Read (F,I);
  Until i=5;
  Truncate (F);
  WriteLn ('Filesize after Truncate : ',FileSize(F));
  Close (f);
end.
```

---

**28.9.188 UniqueString**

Synopsis: Make sure reference count of string is 1

Declaration: `procedure UniqueString(var S: AnsiString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `UniqueString` ensures that the `ansistring` `S` has reference count 1. It makes a copy of `S` if this is necessary, and returns the copy in `S`

Errors: None.

**28.9.189 upCase**

Synopsis: Convert a string to all uppercase.

**Declaration:** `function upCase(const s: shortstring) : shortstring`  
`function upCase(c: Char) : Char`  
`function upcase(const s: ansistring) : ansistring`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Upcase returns the uppercase version of its argument C. If its argument is a string, then the complete string is converted to uppercase. The type of the returned value is the same as the type of the argument.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** Lowercase ([1034](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex72.pp

---

**Program** Example72;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Upcase function. }

Var I : Longint;

begin
  For i:=ord('a') to ord('z') do
    write (upcase(chr(i)));
  Writeln;
  { This doesn't work in TP, but it does in Free Pascal }
  Writeln (Upcase('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz'));
end.
```

---

### 28.9.190 Val

**Synopsis:** Calculate numerical value of a string.

**Declaration:** `procedure Val(const S: String;var V;var Code: Word)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Val converts the value represented in the string S to a numerical value, and stores this value in the variable V, which can be of type Longint, Real and Byte. If the conversion isn't succesfull, then the parameter Code contains the index of the character in S which prevented the conversion. The string S is allowed to contain spaces in the beginning. The string S can contain a number in decimal, hexadecimal, binary or octal format, as described in the language reference.

**Errors:** If the conversion doesn't succeed, the value of Code indicates the position where the conversion went wrong.

**See also:** Str ([1062](#))

**Listing:** ./refex/ex74.pp

---

**Program** Example74;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the Val function. }
Var I, Code : Integer;

begin
  Val (ParamStr (1), I, Code);
```

---

```

If Code<>0 then
  Writeln ( 'Error at position ',code,' : ',Paramstr(1)[Code])
else
  Writeln ( 'Value : ',I);
end.

```

---

### 28.9.191 VarArrayRedim

Synopsis: Redimension a variant array

Declaration: `procedure VarArrayRedim(var A: Variant;HighBound: SizeInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `VarArrayRedim` re-sizes the first dimension of the variant array A, giving it a new high bound `HighBound`. Obviously, A must be a variant array for this function to work.

Errors:

### 28.9.192 WaitForThreadTerminate

Synopsis: Wait for a thread to terminate.

Declaration: `function WaitForThreadTerminate(threadHandle: TThreadID;  
TimeoutMs: LongInt) : DWord`

Visibility: default

Description: `WaitForThreadTerminate` waits for a thread to finish its execution. The thread is identified by its handle or ID `threadHandle`. If the thread does not exit within `TimeoutMs` milliseconds, the function will return with an error value.

The function returns the exit code of the thread.

See also: `EndThread` ([1006](#)), `KillThread` ([1031](#))

### 28.9.193 Write

Synopsis: Write variable to a text file

Declaration: `procedure Write(Args: Arguments)  
procedure Write(var F: Text;Args: Arguments)`

Visibility: default

Description: `Write` writes the contents of the variables V1, V2 etc. to the file F. F can be a typed file, or a Text file. If F is a typed file, then the variables V1, V2 etc. must be of the same type as the type in the declaration of F. Untyped files are not allowed. If the parameter F is omitted, standard output is assumed. If F is of type Text, then the necessary conversions are done such that the output of the variables is in human-readable format. This conversion is done for all numerical types. Strings are printed exactly as they are in memory, as well as PChar types. The format of the numerical conversions can be influenced through the following modifiers: `OutputVariable : NumChars [: Decimals ]` This will print the value of `OutputVariable` with a minimum of `NumChars` characters, from which `Decimals` are reserved for the decimals. If the number cannot be represented with `NumChars` characters, `NumChars` will be increased, until the representation fits. If the representation requires less than `NumChars` characters then the output is filled up with spaces, to

the left of the generated string, thus resulting in a right-aligned representation. If no formatting is specified, then the number is written using its natural length, with nothing in front of it if it's positive, and a minus sign if it's negative. Real numbers are, by default, written in scientific notation.

**Errors:** If an error occurs, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `\var{\{\$i\}}` switch.

See also: [WriteLn \(1072\)](#), [Read \(1044\)](#), [ReadLn \(1045\)](#), [Blockwrite \(991\)](#)

### 28.9.194 WriteLn

**Synopsis:** Write variable to a text file and append newline

**Declaration:** `procedure Writeln(Args: Arguments)`  
`procedure WriteLn(var F: Text;Args: Arguments)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WriteLn` does the same as `Write (1072)` for text files, and emits a Carriage Return - LineFeed character pair after that. If the parameter `F` is omitted, standard output is assumed. If no variables are specified, a Carriage Return - LineFeed character pair is emitted, resulting in a new line in the file `F`.

**Remark:** Under linux and unix, the Carriage Return character is omitted, as customary in Unix environments.

**Errors:** If an error occurs, a run-time error is generated. This behavior can be controlled with the `\var{\{\$i\}}` switch.

See also: [Write \(1072\)](#), [Read \(1044\)](#), [ReadLn \(1045\)](#), [Blockwrite \(991\)](#)

**Listing:** `./refex/ex75.pp`

---

**Program** `Example75;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the Write(In) function. }*

**Var**

`F : File of Longint;`  
`L : Longint;`

**begin**

`Write ( 'This is on the first line ! '); { No CR/LF pair! }`  
`Writeln ( 'And this too... ');`  
`Writeln ( 'But this is already on the second line... ');`  
`Assign (f, 'test.tmp');`  
`Rewrite (f);`  
`For L:=1 to 10 do`  
`write (F,L); { No writeln allowed here ! }`  
`Close (f);`

**end.**

---

## 28.10 TObject

### 28.10.1 Description

`TObject` is the parent root class for all classes in Object Pascal. If a class has no parent class explicitly declared, it is dependent on `TObject`. `TObject` introduces class methods that deal with the class' type information, and contains all necessary methods to create an instance at runtime, and to dispatch messages to the correct method (both string and integer messages).

**28.10.2 Method overview**

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1080</a>	AfterConstruction	Method called after the constructor was called.
<a href="#">1080</a>	BeforeDestruction	Method called before the destructor is called.
<a href="#">1077</a>	ClassInfo	Return a pointer to the type information for this class.
<a href="#">1077</a>	ClassName	Return the current class name.
<a href="#">1077</a>	ClassNameIs	Check whether the class name equals the given name.
<a href="#">1078</a>	ClassParent	Return the parent class.
<a href="#">1077</a>	ClassType	Return a "class of" pointer for the current class
<a href="#">1076</a>	CleanupInstance	Finalize the class instance.
<a href="#">1074</a>	Create	TObject Constructor
<a href="#">1075</a>	DefaultHandler	Default handler for integer message handlers.
<a href="#">1080</a>	DefaultHandlerStr	Default handler for string messages.
<a href="#">1074</a>	Destroy	TObject destructor.
<a href="#">1079</a>	Dispatch	Dispatch an integer message
<a href="#">1079</a>	DispatchStr	Dispatch a string message.
<a href="#">1080</a>	FieldAddress	Return the address of a field.
<a href="#">1076</a>	Free	Check for Nil and call destructor.
<a href="#">1075</a>	FreeInstance	Clean up instance and free the memory reserved for the instance.
<a href="#">1078</a>	InheritsFrom	Check whether class is an ancestor.
<a href="#">1076</a>	InitInstance	Initialize a new class instance.
<a href="#">1078</a>	InstanceSize	Return the size of an instance.
<a href="#">1079</a>	MethodAddress	Return the address of a method
<a href="#">1079</a>	MethodName	Return the name of a method.
<a href="#">1075</a>	newInstance	Allocate memory on the heap for a new instance
<a href="#">1075</a>	SafeCallException	Handle exception object
<a href="#">1078</a>	StringMessageTable	Return a pointer to the string message table.

**28.10.3 TObject.Create**

Synopsis: TObject Constructor

Declaration: constructor Create

Visibility: public

Description: Create creates a new instance of TObject. Currently it does nothing. It is also not virtual, so there is in principle no need to call it directly.

See also: TObject.Destroy ([1074](#))

**28.10.4 TObject.Destroy**

Synopsis: TObject destructor.

Declaration: destructor Destroy; Virtual

Visibility: public

Description: Destroy is the destructor of TObject. It will clean up the memory assigned to the instance. Descendent classes should override destroy if they want to do additional clean-up. No other destructor should be implemented.

It is bad programming practice to call Destroy directly. It is better to call the Free ([1076](#)) method, because that one will check first if Self is different from Nil.

To clean up an instance and reset the refence to the instance, it is best to use the `FreeAndNil` (1160) function.

See also: `TObject.Create` (1074), `TObject.Free` (1076)

### 28.10.5 TObject.newinstance

Synopsis: Allocate memory on the heap for a new instance

Declaration: `function newInstance : TObject; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `NewInstance` allocates memory on the heap for a new instance of the current class. If the memory was allocated, the class will be initialized by a call to `InitInstance` (1076). The function returns the newly initialized instance.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, a `Nil` pointer may be returned, or an exception may be raised.

See also: `TObject.Create` (1074), `TObject.InitInstance` (1076), `TObject.InstanceSize` (1078), `TObject.FreeInstance` (1075)

### 28.10.6 TObject.FreeInstance

Synopsis: Clean up instance and free the memory reserved for the instance.

Declaration: `procedure FreeInstance; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `FreeInstance` cleans up an instance of the current class, and releases the heap memory occupied by the class instance.

See also: `TObject.Destroy` (1074), `TObject.InitInstance` (1076), `TObject.NewInstance` (1075)

### 28.10.7 TObject.SafeCallException

Synopsis: Handle exception object

Declaration: `function SafeCallException(exceptobject: TObject;exceptaddr: pointer)  
: LongInt; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `SafeCallException` should be overridden to handle exceptions in a method marked with the `savecall` directive. The implementation in `TObject` simply returns zero.

### 28.10.8 TObject.DefaultHandler

Synopsis: Default handler for integer message handlers.

Declaration: `procedure DefaultHandler(var message); Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `DefaultHandler` is the default handler for messages. If a message has an unknown message ID (i.e. does not appear in the table with integer message handlers), then it will be passed to `DefaultHandler` by the `Dispatch` (1079) method.



Errors:

See also: `TObject.Dispatch` ([1079](#)), `TObject.DefaultHandlerStr` ([1080](#))

### 28.10.9 TObject.Free

Synopsis: Check for `Nil` and call destructor.

Declaration: `procedure Free`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `Free` will check the `Self` pointer and calls `Destroy` ([1074](#)) if it is different from `Nil`. This is a safer method than calling `Destroy` directly. If a reference to the object must be reset as well (a recommended technique), then the function `FreeAndNil` ([1160](#)) should be called.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Destroy` ([1074](#)), `#rtl.sysutils.freeandnil` ([1160](#))

### 28.10.10 TObject.InitInstance

Synopsis: Initialize a new class instance.

Declaration: `function InitInstance(instance: pointer) : TObject`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `InitInstance` initializes the memory pointer to by `Instance`. This means that the VMT is initialized, and the interface pointers are set up correctly. The function returns the newly initialized instance.

See also: `TObject.NewInstance` ([1075](#)), `TObject.Create` ([1074](#))

### 28.10.11 TObject.CleanupInstance

Synopsis: Finalize the class instance.

Declaration: `procedure CleanupInstance`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CleanUpinstance` finalizes the instance, i.e. takes care of all reference counted objects, by decreasing their reference count by 1, and freeing them if their count reaches zero.

Normally, `CleanupInstance` should never be called, it is called automatically when the object is freed with it's constructor.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.Destroy` ([1074](#)), `TObject.Free` ([1076](#)), `TObject.InitInstance` ([1076](#))

### 28.10.12 TObject.ClassType

Synopsis: Return a "class of" pointer for the current class

Declaration: `function ClassType : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassType` returns a `TClass` (971) class type reference for the current class.

See also: `TClass` (971), `TObject.ClassInfo` (1077), `TObject.ClassName` (1077)

### 28.10.13 TObject.ClassInfo

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the type information for this class.

Declaration: `function ClassInfo : pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassInfo` returns a pointer to the type information for this class. This pointer can be used in the various type information routines.

### 28.10.14 TObject.ClassName

Synopsis: Return the current class name.

Declaration: `function ClassName : shortstring`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassName` returns the class name for the current class, in all-uppercase letters. To check for the class name, use the `ClassNameIs` (1077) class method.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.ClassInfo` (1077), `TObject.ClassType` (1077), `TObject.ClassNameIs` (1077)

### 28.10.15 TObject.ClassNameIs

Synopsis: Check whether the class name equals the given name.

Declaration: `function ClassNameIs(const name: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassNameIs` checks whether `Name` equals the class name. It takes of case sensitivity, i.e. it converts both names to uppercase before comparing.

See also: `TObject.ClassInfo` (1077), `TObject.ClassType` (1077), `TObject.ClassName` (1077)

### 28.10.16 TObject.ClassParent

Synopsis: Return the parent class.

Declaration: `function ClassParent : TClass`

Visibility: public

Description: `ClassParent` returns the class of the parent class of the current class. This is always different from `Nil`, except for `TObject`.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.ClassInfo` ([1077](#)), `TObject.ClassType` ([1077](#)), `TObject.ClassName` ([1077](#))

### 28.10.17 TObject.InstanceSize

Synopsis: Return the size of an instance.

Declaration: `function InstanceSize : LongInt`

Visibility: public

Description: `InstanceSize` returns the number of bytes an instance takes in memory. This is Just the memory occupied by the class structure, and does not take into account any additional memory that might be allocated by the constructor of the class.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.InitInstance` ([1076](#)), `TObject.ClassName` ([1077](#)), `TObject.ClassInfo` ([1077](#)), `TObject.ClassType` ([1077](#))

### 28.10.18 TObject.InheritsFrom

Synopsis: Chck wether class is an ancestor.

Declaration: `function InheritsFrom(aclass: TClass) : Boolean`

Visibility: public

Description: `InheritsFrom` returns `True` if `AClass` is an ancestor class from the current class, and returns `false` if it is not.

Errors:

See also: `TObject.ClassName` ([1077](#)), `TObject.ClassInfo` ([1077](#)), `TObject.ClassType` ([1077](#)), `TClass` ([971](#))

### 28.10.19 TObject.StringMessageTable

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the string message table.

Declaration: `function StringMessageTable : pstringmessagetable`

Visibility: public

Description: `StringMessageTable` returns a pointer to the string message table, which can be used to look up methods for dispatching a string message. It is used by the `DispatchStr` ([1079](#)) method.

Errors: If there are no string message handlers, `nil` is returned.

See also: `TObject.DispatchStr` ([1079](#)), `TObject.Dispatch` ([1079](#))

### 28.10.20 TObject.Dispatch

Synopsis: Dispatch an integer message

Declaration: `procedure Dispatch(var message)`

Visibility: public

Description: `Dispatch` looks in the message handler table for a handler that handles message. The message is identified by the first dword (cardinal) in the message structure.

If no matching message handler is found, the message is passed to the `DefaultHandler` (1075) method, which can be overridden by descendent classes to add custom handling of messages.

See also: `TObject.DispatchStr` (1079), `TObject.DefaultHandler` (1075)

### 28.10.21 TObject.DispatchStr

Synopsis: Dispatch a string message.

Declaration: `procedure DispatchStr(var message)`

Visibility: public

Description: `DispatchStr` extracts the message identifier from `Message` and checks the message handler table to see if a handler for the message is found, and calls the handler, passing along the message.

If no handler is found, the default `DefaultHandlerStr` (1080) is called.

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.DefaultHandlerStr` (1080), `TObject.Dispatch` (1079), `TObject.DefaultHandler` (1075)

### 28.10.22 TObject.MethodAddress

Synopsis: Return the address of a method

Declaration: `function MethodAddress(const name: shortstring) : pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `MethodAddress` returns the address of a method, searching the method by its name. The `Name` parameter specifies which method should be taken. The search is conducted in a case-insensitive manner.

Errors: If no matching method is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TObject.MethodName` (1079), `TObject.FieldAddress` (1080)

### 28.10.23 TObject.MethodName

Synopsis: Return the name of a method.

Declaration: `function MethodName(address: pointer) : shortstring`

Visibility: public

Description: `MethodName` searches the VMT for a method with the specified address and returns the name of the method.

Errors: If no method with the matching address is found, an empty string is returned.

See also: `TObject.MethodAddress` (1079), `TObject.FieldAddress` (1080)

**28.10.24 TObject.FieldAddress**

Synopsis: Return the address of a field.

Declaration: `function FieldAddress(const name: shortstring) : pointer`

Visibility: public

Description: `FieldAddress` returns the address of the field with name `name`. The address is the address of the field in the current class instance.

Errors: If no field with the specified name is found, `Nil` is returned.

See also: `TObject.MethodAddress` ([1079](#)), `TObject.MethodName` ([1079](#))

**28.10.25 TObject.AfterConstruction**

Synopsis: Method called after the constructor was called.

Declaration: `procedure AfterConstruction; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `AfterConstruction` is a method called after the constructor was called. It does nothing in the implementation of `TObject` and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific behaviour that is executed after the constructor has finished executing. (for instance, call an event handler)

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.BeforeDestruction` ([1080](#)), `TObject.Create` ([1074](#))

**28.10.26 TObject.BeforeDestruction**

Synopsis: Method called before the destructor is called.

Declaration: `procedure BeforeDestruction; Virtual`

Visibility: public

Description: `BeforeDestruction` is a method called before the destructor is called. It does nothing in the implementation of `TObject` and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific behaviour that is executed before the destructor has finished executing. (for instance, call an event handler)

Errors: None.

See also: `TObject.AfterConstruction` ([1080](#)), `TObject.Destroy` ([1074](#)), `TObject.Free` ([1076](#))

**28.10.27 TObject.DefaultHandlerStr**

Synopsis: Default handler for string messages.

Declaration: `procedure DefaultHandlerStr(var message); Virtual`

Visibility: public

**Description:** `DefaultHandlerStr` is called for string messages which have no handler associated with them in the string message handler table. The implementation of `DefaultHandlerStr` in `TObject` does nothing and must be overridden by descendent classes to provide specific message handling behaviour.

**See also:** `TObject.DispatchStr` ([1079](#)), `TObject.Dispatch` ([1079](#)), `TObject.DefaultHandler` ([1075](#))

## Chapter 29

# Reference for unit 'sysutils'

### 29.1 Miscellaneous conversion routines

Functions for various conversions.

Table 29.1:

Name	Description
BCDToInt ( <a href="#">1115</a> )	Convert BCD number to integer
CompareMem ( <a href="#">1117</a> )	Compare two memory regions
FloatToStrF ( <a href="#">1148</a> )	Convert float to formatted string
FloatToStr ( <a href="#">1148</a> )	Convert float to string
FloatToText ( <a href="#">1150</a> )	Convert float to string
FormatFloat ( <a href="#">1159</a> )	Format a floating point value
GetDirs ( <a href="#">1162</a> )	Split string in list of directories
IntToHex ( <a href="#">1167</a> )	return hexadecimal representation of integer
IntToStr ( <a href="#">1168</a> )	return decumal representation of integer
StrToIntDef ( <a href="#">1196</a> )	Convert string to integer with default value
StrToInt ( <a href="#">1194</a> )	Convert string to integer
StrToFloat ( <a href="#">1193</a> )	Convert string to float
TextToFloat ( <a href="#">1198</a> )	Convert null-terminated string to float

### 29.2 Date/time routines

Functions for date and time handling.

### 29.3 FileName handling routines

Functions for file manipulation.

### 29.4 File input/output routines

Functions for reading/writing to file.

Table 29.2:

Name	Description
<a href="#">DateTimeToFileDate (1122)</a>	Convert DateTime type to file date
<a href="#">DateTimeToStr (1122)</a>	Construct string representation of DateTime
<a href="#">DateTimeToString (1123)</a>	Construct string representation of DateTime
<a href="#">DateTimeToSystemTime (1123)</a>	Convert DateTime to system time
<a href="#">DateTimeToTimeStamp (1124)</a>	Convert DateTime to timestamp
<a href="#">DateToStr (1125)</a>	Construct string representation of date
<a href="#">Date (1121)</a>	Get current date
<a href="#">DayOfWeek (1125)</a>	Get day of week
<a href="#">DecodeDate (1126)</a>	Decode DateTime to year month and day
<a href="#">DecodeTime (1126)</a>	Decode DateTime to hours, minutes and seconds
<a href="#">EncodeDate (1130)</a>	Encode year, day and month to DateTime
<a href="#">EncodeTime (1131)</a>	Encode hours, minutes and seconds to DateTime
<a href="#">FormatDateTime (1158)</a>	Return string representation of DateTime
<a href="#">IncMonth (1166)</a>	Add 1 to month
<a href="#">IsLeapYear (1169)</a>	Determine if year is leap year
<a href="#">MSecsToTimeStamp (1172)</a>	Convert nr of milliseconds to timestamp
<a href="#">Now (1173)</a>	Get current date and time
<a href="#">StrToDateTime (1192)</a>	Convert string to DateTime
<a href="#">StrToDate (1192)</a>	Convert string to date
<a href="#">StrToTime (1196)</a>	Convert string to time
<a href="#">SystemTimeToDateTime (1198)</a>	Convert system time to datetime
<a href="#">TimeStampToDateTime (1200)</a>	Convert time stamp to DateTime
<a href="#">TimeStampToMSecs (1200)</a>	Convert Timestamp to number of millicseconds
<a href="#">TimeToStr (1201)</a>	return string representation of Time
<a href="#">Time (1199)</a>	Get current tyme

## 29.5 PChar related functions

Most PChar functions are the same as their counterparts in the STRINGS unit. The following functions are the same :

1. [StrCat \(1179\)](#) : Concatenates two PChar strings.
2. [StrComp \(1180\)](#) : Compares two PChar strings.
3. [StrCopy \(1180\)](#) : Copies a PChar string.
4. [StrECopy \(1181\)](#) : Copies a PChar string and returns a pointer to the terminating null byte.
5. [StrEnd \(1182\)](#) : Returns a pointer to the terminating null byte.
6. [StrIComp \(1183\)](#) : Case insensitive compare of 2 PChar strings.
7. [StrLCat \(1184\)](#) : Appends at most L characters from one PChar to another PChar.
8. [StrLComp \(1184\)](#) : Case sensitive compare of at most L characters of 2 PChar strings.
9. [StrLCopy \(1185\)](#) : Copies at most L characters from one PChar to another.
10. [StrLen \(1186\)](#) : Returns the length (exclusive terminating null byte) of a PChar string.
11. [StrLIComp \(1187\)](#) : Case insensitive compare of at most L characters of 2 PChar strings.



Table 29.3:

Name	Description
AddDisk (1100)	Add disk to list of disk drives
ChangeFileExt (1117)	Change extension of file name
CreateDir (1120)	Create a directory
DeleteFile (1127)	Delete a file
DiskFree (1128)	Free space on disk
DiskSize (1129)	Total size of disk
ExpandFileName (1133)	Create full file name
ExpandUNCFileName (1134)	Create full UNC file name
ExtractFileDir (1134)	Extract directory part of filename
ExtractFileDrive (1135)	Extract drive part of filename
ExtractFileExt (1135)	Extract extension part of filename
ExtractFileName (1135)	Extract name part of filename
ExtractFilePath (1136)	Extract path part of filename
ExtractRelativePath (1136)	Construct relative path between two files
FileAge (1137)	Return file age
FileDateToDateTime (1138)	Convert file date to system date
FileExists (1139)	Determine whether a file exists on disk
FileGetAttr (1139)	Get attributes of file
FileGetDate (1141)	Get date of last file modification
FileSearch (1142)	Search for file in path
FileSetAttr (1144)	Get file attributes
FileSetDate (1144)	Get file dates
FindFirst (1145)	Start finding a file
FindNext (1146)	Find next file
GetCurrentDir (1161)	Return current working directory
RemoveDir (1175)	Remove a directory from disk
RenameFile (1175)	Rename a file on disk
SetCurrentDir (1177)	Set current working directory
SetDirSeparators (1177)	Set directory separator characters
FindClose (1145)	Stop searching a file
DoDirSeparators (1129)	Replace directory separator characters

12. StrLower (1187) : Converts a PChar to all lowercase letters.
13. StrMove (1188) : Moves one PChar to another.
14. StrNew (1188) : Makes a copy of a PChar on the heap, and returns a pointer to this copy.
15. StrPos (1190) : Returns the position of one PChar string in another?
16. StrRScan (1190) : returns a pointer to the last occurrence of on PChar string in another one.
17. StrScan (1190) : returns a pointer to the first occurrence of on PChar string in another one.
18. StrUpper (1197) : Converts a PChar to all uppercase letters.

The subsequent functions are different from their counterparts in **STRINGS**, although the same examples can be used.

Table 29.4:

Name	Description
FileCreate (1137)	Create a file and return handle
FileOpen (1141)	Open file and return handle
FileRead (1142)	Read from file
FileSeek (1143)	Set file position
FileTruncate (1144)	Truncate file length
FileWrite (1144)	Write to file
FileClose (1137)	Close file handle

## 29.6 Date and time formatting characters

Various date and time formatting routines accept a format string. to format the date and or time. The following characters can be used to control the date and time formatting:

**c** shortdateformat + ' ' + shorttimeformat

**d** day of month

**dd** day of month (leading zero)

**ddd** day of week (abbreviation)

**dddd** day of week (full)

**dddddd** shortdateformat

**ddddddd** longdateformat

**m** month

**mm** month (leading zero)

**mmm** month (abbreviation)

**mmmm** month (full)

**y** year (four digits)

**yy** year (two digits)

**yyyy** year (with century)

**h** hour

**hh** hour (leading zero)

**n** minute

**nn** minute (leading zero)

**s** second

**ss** second (leading zero)

**t** shorttimeformat

**tt** longtimeformat

**am/pm** use 12 hour clock and display am and pm accordingly

**a/p** use 12 hour clock and display a and p accordingly

**/** insert date separator

**:** insert time separator

**"xx"** literal text

**'xx'** literal text

## 29.7 Formatting strings

Functions for formatting strings.

Table 29.5:

Name	Description
AdjustLineBreaks ( <a href="#">1101</a> )	Convert line breaks to line breaks for system
FormatBuf ( <a href="#">1157</a> )	Format a buffer
Format ( <a href="#">1152</a> )	Format arguments in string
FmtStr ( <a href="#">1151</a> )	Format buffer
QuotedStr ( <a href="#">1174</a> )	Quote a string
StrFmt ( <a href="#">1182</a> )	Format arguments in a string
StrLFmt ( <a href="#">1186</a> )	Format maximum L characters in a string
TrimLeft ( <a href="#">1202</a> )	Remove whitespace at the left of a string
TrimRight ( <a href="#">1202</a> )	Remove whitespace at the right of a string
Trim ( <a href="#">1201</a> )	Remove whitespace at both ends of a string

## 29.8 String functions

Functions for handling strings.

## 29.9 Used units

## 29.10 Overview

This documentation describes the `sysutils` unit. The `sysutils` unit was started by Gertjan Schouten, and completed by Michael Van Canneyt. It aims to be compatible to the Delphi `sysutils` unit, but in contrast with the latter, it is designed to work on multiple platforms. It is implemented on all supported platforms.

## 29.11 Constants, types and variables

### 29.11.1 Constants

`ConfigExtension` : `String` = `' .cfg '`

Table 29.6:

Name	Description
<a href="#">AnsiCompareStr (1102)</a>	Compare two strings
<a href="#">AnsiCompareText (1103)</a>	Compare two strings, case insensitive
<a href="#">AnsiExtractQuotedStr (1104)</a>	Removes quotes from string
<a href="#">AnsiLastChar (1104)</a>	Get last character of string
<a href="#">AnsiLowerCase (1105)</a>	Convert string to all-lowercase
<a href="#">AnsiQuotedStr (1106)</a>	Quotes a string
<a href="#">AnsiStrComp (1107)</a>	Compare strings case-sensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrIComp (1107)</a>	Compare strings case-insensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrLComp (1109)</a>	Compare L characters of strings case sensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrLIComp (1109)</a>	Compare L characters of strings case insensitive
<a href="#">AnsiStrLastChar (1108)</a>	Get last character of string
<a href="#">AnsiStrLower (1110)</a>	Convert string to all-lowercase
<a href="#">AnsiStrUpper (1112)</a>	Convert string to all-uppercase
<a href="#">AnsiUpperCase (1113)</a>	Convert string to all-uppercase
<a href="#">AppendStr (1113)</a>	Append 2 strings
<a href="#">AssignStr (1114)</a>	Assign value of strings on heap
<a href="#">CompareStr (1118)</a>	Compare two strings case sensitive
<a href="#">CompareText (1119)</a>	Compare two strings case insensitive
<a href="#">DisposeStr (1129)</a>	Remove string from heap
<a href="#">IsValidIdent (1170)</a>	Is string a valid pascal identifier
<a href="#">LastDelimiter (1170)</a>	Last occurrence of character in a string
<a href="#">LeftStr (1171)</a>	Get first N characters of a string
<a href="#">LoadStr (1171)</a>	Load string from resources
<a href="#">LowerCase (1172)</a>	Convert string to all-lowercase
<a href="#">NewStr (1173)</a>	Allocate new string on heap
<a href="#">RightStr (1176)</a>	Get last N characters of a string
<a href="#">StrAlloc (1178)</a>	Allocate memory for string
<a href="#">StrBufSize (1178)</a>	Reserve memory for a string
<a href="#">StrDispose (1181)</a>	Remove string from heap
<a href="#">StrPas (1189)</a>	Convert PChar to pascal string
<a href="#">StrPCopy (1189)</a>	Copy pascal string
<a href="#">StrPLCopy (1189)</a>	Copy N bytes of pascal string
<a href="#">UpperCase (1205)</a>	Convert string to all-uppercase

`ConfigExtension` is the default extension used by the `GetAppConfigFile (1161)` call. It can be set to any valid extension for the current OS.

`CurrencyDecimals` : Byte = 2

`CurrencyDecimals` is the number of decimals to be used when formatting a currency. It is used by the float formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`CurrencyFormat` : Byte = 1

`CurrencyFormat` is the default format string for positive currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`CurrencyString` : String = '\$'

Table 29.7: Used units by unit 'sysutils'

Name	Page
errors	<a href="#">1082</a>
sysconst	<a href="#">1082</a>
Unix	<a href="#">1082</a>
Unixtype	<a href="#">1082</a>

`CurrencyString` is the currency symbol for the current locale. It is used by the float formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`DateDelta = 693594`

Days between 1/1/0001 and 12/31/1899

`DateSeparator : Char = '-'`

`DateSeparator` is the character used by various date/time conversion routines as the character that separates the day from the month and the month from the year in a date notation. It is used by the date formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`DecimalSeparator : Char = '.'`

`DecimalSeparator` is used to display the decimal symbol in floating point numbers or currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`DefaultTextLineBreakStyle : TTextLineBreakStyle = tlbsLF`

Default line break style for the current platform.

`DirSeparators : Set of Char = ['/', '\']`

`DirSeparators` is a set of characters which are known directory separator characters on all supported platforms. This set is used by the `SetDirSeparators` ([1177](#)) call to correct pathnames for the current platform.

`DriveDelim = DriveSeparator`

`DriveDelim` refers to the system unit's `DriveSeparator` constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

`EmptyStr : String = ''`

Empty String Constant

`EmptyWideStr : WideString = ''`

Empty wide string.

`faAnyFile = $0000003f`

Use this attribute in the FindFirst (1145) call to find all matching files.

`faArchive = $00000020`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file has the archive bit set. Used in TSearchRec (1097) and FindFirst (1145)

`faDirectory = $00000010`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is a directory. Used in TSearchRec (1097) and FindFirst (1145)

`faHidden = $00000002`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is read-only. Used in TSearchRec (1097) and FindFirst (1145)

`faReadOnly = $00000001`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is read-only. Used in TSearchRec (1097) and FindFirst (1145)

`faSysFile = $00000004`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file is a system file. Used in TSearchRec (1097) and FindFirst (1145)

`faVolumeId = $00000008`

Attribute of a file, meaning the file contains the volume ID. Used in TSearchRec (1097) and FindFirst (1145)

`filerecnamelength = 255`

`filerecnamelength` describes the length of the FileRec (1094) filename field.

`fmOpenRead = $0000`

`fmOpenRead` is used in the FileOpen (1141) call to open a file in read-only mode.

`fmOpenReadWrite = $0002`

`fmOpenReadWrite` is used in the FileOpen (1141) call to open a file in read-write mode.

`fmOpenWrite = $0001`

`fmOpenWrite` is used in the FileOpen (1141) call to open a file in write-only mode.

`fmShareCompat = $0000`

`fmOpenShareCompat` is used in the FileOpen (1141) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1089), `fmOpenRead` (1089) or `fmOpenWrite` (1089), to open a file in a sharing modus that is equivalent to sharing implemented in MS-DOS.

`fmShareDenyNone = $0040`

`fmOpenShareExclusive` is used in the `FileOpen` (1141) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1089), `fmOpenRead` (1089) or `fmOpenWrite` (1089), to open a file so other processes can read/write the file as well.

`fmShareDenyRead = $0030`

`fmOpenShareExclusive` is used in the `FileOpen` (1141) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1089), `fmOpenRead` (1089) or `fmOpenWrite` (1089), to open a file so other processes cannot read from it.

`fmShareDenyWrite = $0020`

`fmOpenShareExclusive` is used in the `FileOpen` (1141) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1089), `fmOpenRead` (1089) or `fmOpenWrite` (1089), to open a file exclusively.

`fmShareExclusive = $0010`

`fmOpenShareExclusive` is used in the `FileOpen` (1141) call OR-ed together with one of `fmOpenReadWrite` (1089), `fmOpenRead` (1089) or `fmOpenWrite` (1089), to open a file exclusively.

`fsFromBeginning = 0`

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1143) call that a seek operation should be started at the start of the file.

`fsFromCurrent = 1`

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1143) call that a seek operation should be started at the current position in the file.

`fsFromEnd = 2`

`fsFromBeginning` is used to indicate in the `FileSeek` (1143) call that a seek operation should be started at the last position in the file.

`HexDisplayPrefix : String = '$'`

`HexDisplayPrefix` is used by the formatting routines to indicate that the number which follows the prefix is in Hexadecimal notation.

`HoursPerDay = 24`

Number of hours in a day.

`LeadBytes : Set of Char = []`

`LeadBytes` contains the set of bytes that serve as lead byte in a MBCS string.

`LongDateFormat : String = 'dd' ' ' 'mmmm' ' ' 'yyyy'`

`LongDateFormat` contains a template to format a date in a long format. It is used by the date formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`LongDayNames` : `Array[1..7] of String` = ( 'Sunday', 'Monday', 'Tuesday', 'Wednesday', 'Thu.

`LongDayNames` is an array with the full names of days. It is used by the date formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`LongMonthNames` : `Array[1..12] of String` = ( 'January', 'February', 'March', 'April', 'May

`LongMonthNames` is an array with the full names of months. It is used by the date formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`LongTimeFormat` : `String` = 'hh:nn:ss'

`LongTimeFormat` contains a template to format a time in full notation. It is used by the time formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`MaxCurrency` : `Currency` = 922337203685477.0000

Maximum currency value

`MaxDateTime` : `TDateTime` = 2958465.99999

Maximum `TDateTime` value.

`MinCurrency` : `Currency` = -922337203685477.0000

Minimum Currency value

`MinDateTime` : `TDateTime` = -657434.0

Minimum `TDateTime` value.

`MinsPerDay` = `HoursPerDay` \* `MinsPerHour`

Number of minutes per day.

`MinsPerHour` = 60

Number of minutes per hour.

`MonthDays` : `Array[Boolean] of TDayTable` = ( ( 31,28,31,30,31,30,31,31,30,31,30,31 )

Array with number of days in the months for leap and non-leap years.

`MSecsPerDay` = `SecsPerDay` \* `MSecsPerSec`

Number of milliseconds per day

`MSecsPerSec` = 1000



Number of milliseconds per second

`NegCurrFormat : Byte = 5`

`CurrencyFormat` is the default format string for negative currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`NullStr : PString = @EmptyStr`

Pointer to an empty string

`PathDelim = DirectorySeparator`

`PathDelim` refers to the system unit's `DirectorySeparator` constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

`PathSep = PathSeparator`

`PathSep` refers to the system unit's `PathSeparator` constant, it is for Delphi compatibility only.

`SecsPerDay = MinsPerDay * SecsPerMin`

Number of seconds per day

`SecsPerMin = 60`

Number of seconds per minute

`ShortDateFormat : String = 'd/m/y'`

`ShortDateFormat` contains a template to format a date in a short format. It is used by the date formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`ShortDayNames : Array[1..7] of String = ('Sun', 'Mon', 'Tue', 'Wed', 'Thu', 'Fri', 'Sat')`

`ShortDayNames` is an array with the abbreviated names of days. It is used by the date formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`ShortMonthNames : Array[1..12] of String = ('Jan', 'Feb', 'Mar', 'Apr', 'May', 'Jun', 'Jul', 'Aug', 'Sep', 'Oct', 'Nov', 'Dec')`

`ShortMonthNames` is an array with the abbreviated names of months. It is used by the date formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`ShortTimeFormat : String = 'hh:nn'`

`ShortTimeFormat` contains a template to format a time in a short notation. It is used by the time formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

`SwitchChars = ['-']`

The characters in this set will be used by the `FindCmdLineSwitch` (1145) function to determine whether a command-line argument is a switch (an option) or a value. If the first character of an argument is in `SwitchChars`, it will be considered an option or switch.

```
SysConfigDir : String = ''
```

`SysConfigDir` is the default system configuration directory. It is set at application startup by the `sysutils` initialization routines.

This directory may be returned by the `GetAppConfigDir` (1160) call on some systems.

```
TextRecBufSize = 256
```

Buffer size of text file record.

```
TextRecNameLength = 256
```

Length of text file record filename field

```
ThousandSeparator : Char = ','
```

`ThousandSeparator` is used to separate groups of thousands in floating point numbers or currencies. It is used by the float formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

```
TimeAMString : String = 'AM'
```

`TimeAMString` is used to display the AM symbol in the time formatting routines. It is used by the time formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

```
TimePMString : String = 'PM'
```

`TimePMString` is used to display the PM symbol in the time formatting routines. It is used by the time formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

```
TimeSeparator : Char = ':'
```

`TimeSeparator` is used by the time formatting routines to separate the hours from the minutes and the minutes from the seconds. It is used by the time formatting routines. This constant is initialized by the initialization routines of the `SysUtils` unit.

```
TwoDigitYearCenturyWindow : Word = 50
```

Window to determine what century 2 digit years are in.

```
UnixDateDelta = 25569
```

Number of days between 1.1.1900 and 1.1.1970

### 29.11.2 Types

`EHeapException = EHeapMemoryError`

`EHeapMemoryError` is raised when an error occurs in the heap management routines.

`ExceptClass = Class of Exception`

`ExceptClass` is a `Exception` ([1214](#)) class reference.

```
FileRec = packed record
  Handle : THandle;
  Mode : LongInt;
  RecSize : SizeInt;
  _private : Array[1..3*SizeOf(SizeInt)+5*SizeOf(pointer)] of Byte;
  UserData : Array[1..16] of Byte;
  name : Array[0..filerecnamelength] of Char;
end
```

`FileRec` describes a untyped file. This record is made available so it can be used to implement drivers for other than the normal file system file records.

```
Int64Rec = packed record
end
```

`Int64Rec` can be used to extract the parts of a `Int64`: the high and low cardinal, or a zero-based array of 4 words, or a zero based array of 8 bytes. Note that the meaning of the High and Low parts are different on various CPUs.

```
LongRec = packed record
end
```

`LongRec` can be used to extract the parts of a long Integer: the high and low word, or the 4 separate bytes as a zero-based array of bytes. Note that the meaning of High and Low parts are different on various CPUs.

`PByteArray = ^TByteArray`

Generic pointer to `TByteArray` ([1095](#)). Use to access memory regions as a byte array.

`PDayTable = ^TDayTable`

Pointer to `TDayTable` type.

`PString = ^String`

Pointer to a `ansistring`

`PWordarray = ^TWordArray`

Generic pointer to TWordArray ([1099](#)). Use to access memory regions as a word array.

```
TByteArray = Array[0..32767] of Byte
```

TByteArray is a generic array definition, mostly for use as a base type of the PByteArray ([1094](#)) type.

```
TCaseTranslationTable = Array[0..255] of Char
```

TCaseTranslationTable is the type for a lookup table that can convert 255 ascii characters.

```
TDayTable = Array[1..12] of Word
```

Array of day names.

```
TextBuf = Array[0..TextRecBufSize-1] of Char
```

TextBuf is the type for the default buffer in TextRec ([1095](#))

```
TextRec = packed record
  Handle : THandle;
  Mode : LongInt;
  bufsize : SizeInt;
  LineEnd : TLineEndStr;
  bufpos : SizeInt;
  bufend : SizeInt;
  bufptr : ^TextBuf;
  openfunc : pointer;
  inoutfunc : pointer;
  flushfunc : pointer;
  closefunc : pointer;
  UserData : Array[1..16] of Byte;
  name : Array[0..textrecnamelength-1] of Char;
  buffer : TextBuf;
end
```

TextRec describes a text file. This record is made available so it can be used to implement drivers for other than the normal file system file records.

To implement a driver, an Assign procedure must be implemented, which fills in the various fields of the record. Most notably, the callback functions must be filled in appropriately. After this, the normal file operations will handle all necessary calls to the various callbacks.

```
TFilename = String
```

TFileName is used in the TSearchRec ([1097](#)) definition.

```
TFileRec = FileRec
```

Alias for FileRec ([1094](#)) for Delphi compatibility.

```
TFloatFormat = (ffGeneral, ffExponent, ffFixed, ffNumber, ffCurrency)
```

Table 29.8: Enumeration values for type TFloatFormat

Value	Explanation
ffCurrency	Monetary format.
ffExponent	Scientific format.
ffFixed	Fixed point format.
ffGeneral	General number format.
ffNumber	Fixed point format with thousand separator

TFloatFormat is used to determine how a float value should be formatted in the FloatToText (1150) function.

```
TFloatRec = record
  Exponent : Integer;
  Negative : Boolean;
  Digits : Array[0..18] of Char;
end
```

TFloatRec is used to describe a floating point value by the FloatToDecimal (1147) function.

```
TFloatValue = (fvExtended, fvCurrency, fvSingle, fvReal, fvDouble, fvComp)
```

Table 29.9: Enumeration values for type TFloatValue

Value	Explanation
fvComp	Comp value
fvCurrency	Currency value
fvDouble	Double value
fvExtended	Extended value
fvReal	Real value
fvSingle	Single value

TFloatValue determines which kind of value should be returned in the (untyped) buffer used by the TextToFloat (1198) function.

```
TGetAppNameEvent = function : String
```

This callback type is used by the OnGetApplicationName (1099) to return an alternative application name.

```
TGetTempDirEvent = function(Global: Boolean) : String
```

Function prototype for OnGetTempDir (1099) handler.

```
TGetTempFileEvent = function(const Dir: String;const Prefix: String)
                        : String
```

Function prototype for OnGetTempFile (1099) handler.

`THandle = System.THandle`

`THandle` refers to the definition of `THandle` in the system unit, and is provided for backward compatibility only.

`TIntegerSet = Set of`

`TIntegerSet` is a generic integer subrange set definition whose size fits in a single integer.

`TLineEndStr =`

`TLineEndStr` is used in the `TextRec` (1095) record to indicate the end-of-line sequence for a text file.

`TMbcsByteType = (mbSingleByte, mbLeadByte, mbTrailByte)`

Table 29.10: Enumeration values for type `TMbcsByteType`

Value	Explanation
<code>mbLeadByte</code>	Uses lead-byte
<code>mbSingleByte</code>	Single bytes
<code>mbTrailByte</code>	Uses trailing byte

Type of multi-byte character set.

`TProcedure = procedure`

`TProcedure` is a general definition of a procedural callback.

`TReplaceFlags = Set of (rfReplaceAll, rfIgnoreCase)`

`TReplaceFlags` determines the behaviour of the `StringReplace` (1183) function.

```
TSearchRec = record
  Time : LongInt;
  Size : Int64;
  Attr : LongInt;
  Name : TFilename;
  ExcludeAttr : LongInt;
  FindHandle : Pointer;
  Mode : TMode;
end
```

`TSearchRec` is a search handle description record. It is initialized by a call to `FindFirst` (1145) and can be used to do subsequent calls to `FindNext` (1146). It contains the result of these function calls. It must be used to close the search sequence with a call to `FindClose` (1145).

**Remark:** Not all fields of this record should be used. Some of the fields are for internal use only.

`TSysCharSet = Set of Char`

Generic set of characters type.

```
TSysLocale = record
end
```

TSysLocale describes the current locale. If Fareast or MBCS is True, then the current locale uses a Multi-Byte Character Set. If MiddleEast or RightToLeft is True then words and sentences are read from right to left.

```
TSystemTime = record
  Year : Word;
  Month : Word;
  Day : Word;
  Hour : Word;
  Minute : Word;
  Second : Word;
  MilliSecond : Word;
end
```

The System time structure contains the date/time in a human-understandable format.

```
TTerminateProc = function : Boolean
```

TTerminateProc is the procedural type which should be used when adding exit procedures.

```
TTextLineBreakStyle = (tlbsLF,tlbsCRLF,tlbsCR)
```

Table 29.11: Enumeration values for type TTextLineBreakStyle

Value	Explanation
tlbsCR	Carriage-return only
tlbsCRLF	Carriage-return and linefeed characters
tlbsLF	Linefeed only

TTextLineBreakStyle describes the style of linebreaks to be used in the AdjustLineBreaks (1101) function.

```
TTextRec = TextRec
```

Alias for TextRec (1095) for Delphi compatibility.

```
TTimeStamp = record
  Time : Integer;
  Date : Integer;
end
```

TTimeStamp contains a timestamp, with the date and time parts specified as separate TDateTime values.

```
TWordArray = Array[0..16383] of Word
```

TWordArray is a generic array definition, mostly for use as a base type of the PWordArray (1095) type.

```
WordRec = packed record
  Lo : Byte;
  Hi : Byte;
end
```

LongRec can be used to extract the parts of a word: the high and low byte. Note that the meaning of the High and Low parts are different on various CPUs.

### 29.11.3 Variables

```
LowerCaseTable : TCaseTranslationTable
```

LowerCaseTable is used by the LowerCase (1172) routine (and friends) to convert a string to all-lowercase characters. It is filled with the appropriate entries by the SysUtils unit initialization routines.

```
OnGetApplicationName : TGetAppNameEvent
```

By default, the configuration file routines GetAppConfigDir (1160) and GetAppConfigFile (1161) use a default application name to construct a directory or filename. This callback can be used to provide an alternative application name.

Since the result of this callback will be used to construct a filename, care should be taken that the returned name does not contain directory separator characters or characters that cannot appear in a filename.

```
OnGetTempDir : TGetTempDirEvent
```

OnGetTempDir can be used to provide custom behaviour for the GetTempDir (1164) function. Note that the returned name should have a trailing directory delimiter character.

```
OnGetTempFile : TGetTempFileEvent
```

OnGetTempDir can be used to provide custom behaviour for the GetTempFileName (1165) function. Note that the values for Prefix and Dir should be observed.

```
OnShowException : procedure(Msg: ShortString)
```

OnShowException is the callback that ShowException (1177) uses to display a message in a GUI application. For GUI applications, this variable should always be set. Note that no memory may be available when this callback is called, so the callback should already have all resources it needs, when the callback is set.

```
SysLocale : TSysLocale
```

SysLocale is initialized by the initialization code of the SysUtils unit. For an explanation of the fields, see TSysLocale (1098)



UpperCaseTable : TCaseTranslationTable

UpperCaseTable is used by the UpperCase (1205) routine (and friends) to convert a string to all-uppercase characters. It is filled with the appropriate entries by the SysUtils unit initialization routines.

## 29.12 Procedures and functions

### 29.12.1 Abort

Synopsis: Abort program execution.

Declaration: `procedure Abort`

Visibility: default

Description: Abort raises an EAbort (1209) exception.

See also: Abort (1100)

### 29.12.2 AddDisk

Synopsis: Add a disk to the list of known disks (Unix only)

Declaration: `procedure AddDisk(const path: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: On Linux both the DiskFree (1128) and DiskSize (1129) functions need a file on the specified drive, since is required for the statfs system call.

These filenames are set in drivestr[0..26], and the first 4 have been preset to :

**Disk 0** ' . ' default drive - hence current directory is used.

**Disk 1** ' /fd0/ . ' floppy drive 1.

**Disk 2** ' /fd1/ . ' floppy drive 2.

**Disk 3** ' / ' C: equivalent of DOS is the root partition.

Drives 4..26 can be set by your own applications with the AddDisk call.

The AddDisk call adds Path to the names of drive files, and returns the number of the disk that corresponds to this drive. If you add more than 21 drives, the count is wrapped to 4.

Errors: None.

See also: DiskFree (1128), DiskSize (1129)

### 29.12.3 AddTerminateProc

Synopsis: Add a procedure to the exit chain.

Declaration: `procedure AddTerminateProc(TermProc: TTerminateProc)`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `AddTerminateProc` adds `TermProc` to the list of exit procedures. When the program exits, the list of exit procedures is run over, and all procedures are called one by one, in the reverse order that they were added to the exit chain.

**Errors:** If no memory is available on the heap, an exception may be raised.

**See also:** `TTerminateProc` ([1098](#)), `CallTerminateProcs` ([1117](#))

### 29.12.4 AdjustLineBreaks

**Synopsis:** Convert possible line-endings to the currently valid line ending.

**Declaration:**

```
function AdjustLineBreaks(const S: String) : String
function AdjustLineBreaks(const S: String; Style: TTextLineBreakStyle)
    : String
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AdjustLineBreaks` will change all `#13` characters with `#13#10` on Windowsnt and dos. On linux, all `#13#10` character pairs are converted to `#10` and single `#13` characters also.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiCompareStr` ([1102](#)), `AnsiCompareText` ([1103](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex48.pp`

---

**Program** Example48;

*{ This program demonstrates the AdjustLineBreaks function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const**

S = 'This is a string '#13'with embedded'#10'linefeed and'+  
#13'CR characters';

**Begin**

WriteLn (AdjustLineBreaks(S));

**End.**

---

### 29.12.5 AnsiCompareFileName

**Synopsis:** Compare 2 filenames.

**Declaration:**

```
function AnsiCompareFileName(const S1: String; const S2: String)
    : SizeInt
```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiCompareFileName` compares 2 filenames `S1` and `S2`, and returns

< 0 if `S1 < S2`.

= 0 if `S1 = S2`.

> 0 if `S1 > S2`.

The function actually checks `FileNameCaseSensitive` and returns the result of `AnsiCompareStr` (1102) or `AnsiCompareText` (1103) depending on whether `FileNameCaseSensitive` is `True` or `False`

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareStr` (1102), `AnsiCompareText` (1103), `AnsiLowerCaseFileName` (1105)

### 29.12.6 AnsiCompareStr

Synopsis: Compare 2 ansistrings, case sensitive, ignoring accents characters.

Declaration: `function AnsiCompareStr(const S1: String;const S2: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiCompareStr` compares two strings and returns the following result:

< 0 if `S1<S2`.  
 0 if `S1=S2`.  
 > 0 if `S1>S2`.

The comparison takes into account Ansi characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `AnsiCompareText` (1103), the comparison is case sensitive.

Errors: None.

See also: `AdjustLineBreaks` (1101), `AnsiCompareText` (1103)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex49.pp`

**Program** Example49;

```
{ This program demonstrates the AnsiCompareStr function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : **String**);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=**AnsiCompareStr**(S1,S2);

**Write** ( ' ',S1,' is ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**WriteLn** ( ' ',S2,' ' );

**end**;

**Begin**

  Testit('One string','One smaller string');

  Testit('One string','one string');

  Testit('One string','One string');

---

```

    Testit('One string ', 'One tall string ');
End.

```

---

### 29.12.7 AnsiCompareText

Synopsis: Compare 2 ansistrings, case insensitive, ignoring accents characters.

Declaration: `function AnsiCompareText(const S1: String;const S2: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiCompareText` compares two strings and returns the following result:

```

<0if S1<S2.
0if S1=S2.
>0if S1>S2.

```

the comparison takes into account Ansi characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `AnsiCompareStr` ([1102](#)), the comparison is case insensitive.

Errors: None.

See also: `AdjustLineBreaks` ([1101](#)), `AnsiCompareText` ([1103](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex50.pp`

---

**Program** Example49;

```

{ This program demonstrates the AnsiCompareText function }
{$H+}

```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : **String**);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

    R:=**AnsiCompareText**(S1,S2);

**Write** ( '',S1,' is ');

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ')

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ')

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ');

**Writeln** ( '',S2,' ');

**end;**

**Begin**

    Testit('One string ', 'One smaller string ');

    Testit('One string ', 'one string ');

    Testit('One string ', 'One string ');

    Testit('One string ', 'One tall string ');

**End.**

---

### 29.12.8 AnsiExtractQuotedStr

Synopsis: Removes the first quoted string from a string.

Declaration: `function AnsiExtractQuotedStr(var Src: PChar; Quote: Char) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` returns the first quoted string in `Src`, and deletes the result from `Src`. The resulting string has with `Quote` characters removed from the beginning and end of the string (if they are present), and double `Quote` characters replaced by a single `Quote` characters. As such, it reverses the action of `AnsiQuotedStr` ([1106](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiQuotedStr` ([1106](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex51.pp`

---

**Program** `Example51;`

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiQuotedStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `S : AnsiString;`

**Begin**

`S := 'He said "Hello" and walked on';`

`S := AnsiQuotedStr(Pchar(S), '"');`

`WriteLn (S);`

`WriteLn (AnsiExtractQuotedStr(Pchar(S), '"');`

**End.**

---

### 29.12.9 AnsiLastChar

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the last character of a string.

Declaration: `function AnsiLastChar(const S: String) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: This function returns a pointer to the last character of `S`. Since multibyte characters are not yet supported, this is the same as `@S[Length(S)]`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiStrLastChar` ([1108](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex52.pp`

---

**Program** `Example52;`

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiLastChar function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `S : AnsiString;`

`L : Longint;`

---

```

Begin
  S:= 'This is an ansistring.';
  WriteLn ( 'Last character of S is : ',AnsiLastChar(S));
  L:= Longint(AnsiLastChar(S)) - Longint(@S[1])+1;
  WriteLn ( 'Length of S is : ',L);
End.

```

---

### 29.12.10 AnsiLowerCase

Synopsis: Return a lowercase version of a string.

Declaration: `function AnsiLowerCase(const s: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiLowerCase` converts the string `S` to lowercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** On linux, no language setting is taken in account yet.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiUpperCase` ([1113](#)), `AnsiStrLower` ([1110](#)), `AnsiStrUpper` ([1112](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex53.pp`

---

**Program** Example53;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiLowerCase function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

```

begin
  WriteLn (S, ' -> ',AnsiLowerCase(S))
end;

```

```

Begin
  Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');
  Testit('Some mixed STring');
  Testit('a lowercase string');
End.

```

---

### 29.12.11 AnsiLowerCaseFileName

Synopsis: Convert filename to lowercase.

Declaration: `function AnsiLowerCaseFileName(const s: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiLowerCaseFileName` simply returns the result of

```

  AnsiLowerCase(S);

```

See also: `AnsiLowerCase` ([1105](#)), `AnsiCompareFileName` ([1101](#)), `AnsiUpperCaseFileName` ([1113](#))

### 29.12.12 AnsiPos

Synopsis: Return Position of one anstring in another.

Declaration: `function AnsiPos(const substr: String;const s: String) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiPos` does the same as the standard `Pos` function.

See also: `AnsiStrPos` ([1111](#)), `AnsiStrScan` ([1112](#)), `AnsiStrRScan` ([1111](#))

### 29.12.13 AnsiQuotedStr

Synopsis: Return a quoted version of a string.

Declaration: `function AnsiQuotedStr(const S: String;Quote: Char) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiQuotedString` quotes the string `S` and returns the result. This means that it puts the `Quote` character at both the beginning and end of the string and replaces any occurrence of `Quote` in `S` with 2 `Quote` characters. The action of `AnsiQuotedString` can be reversed by `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` ([1104](#)).

For an example, see `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` ([1104](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` ([1104](#))

### 29.12.14 AnsiSameStr

Synopsis: Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case sensitive)

Declaration: `function AnsiSameStr(const s1: String;const s2: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameText` calls `AnsiCompareStr` ([1102](#)) with `S1` and `S2` as parameters and returns `True` if the result of that call is zero, or `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareStr` ([1102](#)), `SameText` ([1176](#)), `AnsiSameText` ([1106](#))

### 29.12.15 AnsiSameText

Synopsis: Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case insensitive)

Declaration: `function AnsiSameText(const s1: String;const s2: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameText` calls `AnsiCompareText` ([1103](#)) with `S1` and `S2` as parameters and returns `True` if the result of that call is zero, or `False` otherwise.

Errors:

See also: `AnsiCompareText` ([1103](#)), `SameText` ([1176](#)), `AnsiSameStr` ([1106](#))

**29.12.16 AnsiStrComp**

Synopsis: Compare two null-terminated strings. Case sensitive.

Declaration: `function AnsiStrComp(S1: PChar;S2: PChar) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStrComp` compares 2 `PChar` strings, and returns the following result:

<0 if `S1<S2`.

0 if `S1=S2`.

>0 if `S1>S2`.

The comparison of the two strings is case-sensitive. The function does not yet take internationalization settings into account.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` ([1103](#)), `AnsiCompareStr` ([1102](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex54.pp`

---

**Program** `Example54`;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrComp function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `TestIt` (`S1,S2 : Pchar`);

**Var** `R : Longint`;

**begin**

`R:=AnsiStrComp(S1,S2);`

**Write** ( ' ',S1, ' is ' );

**If** `R<0` **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** `R=0` **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**Writeln** ( ' ',S2, ' ' );

**end**;

**Begin**

`TestIt('One string','One smaller string');`

`TestIt('One string','one string');`

`TestIt('One string','One string');`

`TestIt('One string','One tall string');`

**End.**

---

**29.12.17 AnsiStrIComp**

Synopsis: Compare two null-terminated strings. Case insensitive.

Declaration: `function AnsiStrIComp(S1: PChar;S2: PChar) : Integer`



Visibility: default

Description: AnsiStrIComp compares 2 PChar strings, and returns the following result:

<0if S1<S2.  
 0if S1=S2.  
 >0if S1>S2.

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive. The function does not yet take internationalization settings into account.

Errors: None.

See also: AnsiCompareText ([1103](#)), AnsiCompareStr ([1102](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex55.pp

---

**Program** Example55;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrIComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

R:=AnsiStrIComp(S1,S2);

**Write** ( ' ',S1,' is ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**WriteLn** ( ' ',S2,' ' );

**end**;

**Begin**

Testit('One string','One smaller string');

Testit('One string','one string');

Testit('One string','One string');

Testit('One string','One tall string');

**End.**

---

### 29.12.18 AnsiStrLastChar

Synopsis: Return a pointer to the last character of a string.

Declaration: function AnsiStrLastChar(Str: PChar) : PChar

Visibility: default

Description: Return a pointer to the last character of the null-terminated string.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiCompareText \(1103\)](#), [AnsiCompareStr \(1102\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex56.pp

**Program** Example56;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLComp function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : Pchar; L : longint);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

R:=AnsiStrLComp(S1,S2,L);

**Write** ( 'First ',L,' characters of " ',S1,'" are ');

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ');

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ');

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ');

**Writeln** ( 'those of " ',S2,'" ');

**end**;

**Begin**

TestIt('One string','One smaller string',255);

TestIt('One string','One String',4);

TestIt('One string','1 string',0);

TestIt('One string','One string.',9);

**End.**

### 29.12.19 AnsiStrLComp

**Synopsis:** Compare a limited number of characters of 2 strings

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrLComp(S1: PChar;S2: PChar;MaxLen: cardinal) : Integer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** AnsiStrLComp functions the same as AnsiStrComp ([1107](#)), but compares at most MaxLen characters, if this is less than one of the lengths of the passed strings. If the first MaxLen characters in both strings are the same, then zero is returned.

**Errors:** None.

See also: [AnsiStrComp \(1107\)](#), [AnsiStrIComp \(1107\)](#), [AnsiStrLComp \(1109\)](#)

### 29.12.20 AnsiStrLIComp

**Synopsis:** Compares a given number of characters of a string, case insensitive.

**Declaration:** function AnsiStrLIComp(S1: PChar;S2: PChar;MaxLen: cardinal) : Integer

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `AnsiStrLIComp` compares the first `Maxlen` characters of 2 `PChar` strings, `S1` and `S2`, and returns the following result:

```
<0if S1<S2.
0if S1=S2.
>0if S1>S2.
```

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive. The function does not yet take internationalization settings into account.

**Errors:** None.

See also: `AnsiCompareText` ([1103](#)), `AnsiCompareStr` ([1102](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex57.pp`

---

**Program** `Example57`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLIComp function }
```

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `TestIt` (`S1,S2 : PChar`; `L : longint`);

**Var** `R : Longint`;

**begin**

```
  R:=AnsiStrLIComp(S1,S2,L);
```

```
  Write ( 'First ',L,' characters of "',S1,'" are ');
```

```
  If R<0 then
```

```
    write ( 'less than ');
```

```
  else If R=0 then
```

```
    Write ( 'equal to ');
```

```
  else
```

```
    Write ( 'larger than ');
```

```
  Writeln ( 'those of "',S2,'" ');
```

```
end;
```

**Begin**

```
  Testit('One string','One smaller string',255);
```

```
  Testit('ONE STRING','one String',4);
```

```
  Testit('One string','1 STRING',0);
```

```
  Testit('One STRING','one string.',9);
```

```
End.
```

---

### 29.12.21 AnsiStrLower

**Synopsis:** Convert a null-terminated string to all-lowercase characters.

**Declaration:** `function AnsiStrLower(Str: PChar) : PChar`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `AnsiStrLower` converts the `PChar Str` to lowercase characters and returns the resulting `pchar`.

Note that `Str` itself is modified, not a copy, as in the case of `AnsiLowerCase` ([1105](#)). It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** On unix, no language setting is taken in account yet.

Errors: None.

See also: [AnsiStrUpper \(1112\)](#), [AnsiLowerCase \(1105\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex59.pp

---

**Program** Example59;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrLower function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (S : PChar);

**begin**

**WriteLn** (S, ' -> ', AnsiStrLower(S))

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');

    Testit('Some mixed STring');

    Testit('a lowercase string');

**End.**

---

### 29.12.22 AnsiStrPos

Synopsis: Return position of one null-terminated substring in another

Declaration: function AnsiStrPos(str: PChar; substr: PChar) : PChar

Visibility: default

Description: AnsiStrPos returns a pointer to the first occurrence of SubStr in Str. If SubStr does not occur in Str then Nil is returned.

Errors: An access violation may occur if either Str or SubStr point to invalid memory.

See also: [AnsiPos \(1106\)](#), [AnsiStrScan \(1112\)](#), [AnsiStrRScan \(1111\)](#)

### 29.12.23 AnsiStrRScan

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: function AnsiStrRScan(Str: PChar; Chr: Char) : PChar

Visibility: default

Description: AnsiStrPos returns a pointer to the *last* occurrence of the character Chr in Str. If Chr does not occur in Str then Nil is returned.

Errors: An access violation may occur if Str points to invalid memory.

See also: [AnsiPos \(1106\)](#), [AnsiStrScan \(1112\)](#), [AnsiStrPos \(1111\)](#)

**29.12.24 AnsiStrScan**

Synopsis: Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function AnsiStrScan(Str: PChar;Chr: Char) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStrPos` returns a pointer to the *first* occurrence of the character `Chr` in `Str`. If `Chr` does not occur in `Str` then `Nil` is returned.

Errors: An access violation may occur if `Str` points to invalid memory.

See also: `AnsiPos` ([1106](#)), `AnsiStrScan` ([1112](#)), `AnsiStrPos` ([1111](#))

**29.12.25 AnsiStrUpper**

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to all-uppercase characters.

Declaration: `function AnsiStrUpper(Str: PChar) : PChar`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiStrUpper` converts the `PCharStr` to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. Note that `Str` itself is modified, not a copy, as in the case of `AnsiUpperCase` ([1113](#)). It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** On linux, no language setting is taken in account yet.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiUpperCase` ([1113](#)), `AnsiStrLower` ([1110](#)), `AnsiLowerCase` ([1105](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex60.pp`

---

**Program** Example60;

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiStrUpper function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (S : Pchar);

**begin**  
  **WriteLn** (S, ' -> ',AnsiStrUpper(S))  
**end**;

**Begin**  
  Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');  
  Testit('Some mixed STring');  
  Testit('a lowercase string');  
**End**.

---

**29.12.26 AnsiUpperCase**

Synopsis: Return an uppercase version of a string, taking into account special characters.

Declaration: `function AnsiUpperCase(const s: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiUpperCase` converts the string `S` to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** On linux, no language setting is taken in account yet.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiStrUpper` ([1112](#)), `AnsiStrLower` ([1110](#)), `AnsiLowerCase` ([1105](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex61.pp`

---

**Program** `Example60;`

*{ This program demonstrates the AnsiUpperCase function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Procedure** `Testit (S : String);`

**begin**

`WriteLn (S, ' -> ',AnsiUpperCase(S))`  
**end;**

**Begin**

`Testit('AN UPPERCASE STRING');`  
`Testit('Some mixed STring');`  
`Testit('a lowercase string');`  
**End.**

---

**29.12.27 AnsiUpperCaseFileName**

Synopsis: Convert filename to uppercase.

Declaration: `function AnsiUpperCaseFileName(const s: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `AnsiUpperCaseFileName` simply returns the result of

`AnsiUpperCase(S);`

See also: `AnsiUpperCase` ([1113](#)), `AnsiCompareFileName` ([1101](#)), `AnsiLowerCaseFileName` ([1105](#))

**29.12.28 AppendStr**

Synopsis: Append one anstring to another.

Declaration: `procedure AppendStr(var Dest: String;const S: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: AppendStr appends S to Dest.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only, since it is completely equivalent to `Dest := Dest + S`.

Errors: None.

See also: AssignStr (1114), NewStr (1173), DisposeStr (1129)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex62.pp

---

**Program** Example62;

*{ This program demonstrates the AppendStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S := 'This is an ';

AppendStr(S, 'AnsiString');

WriteLn ( 'S = ', S, ' ' );

**End.**

---

### 29.12.29 ApplicationName

Synopsis: Return a default application name

Declaration: function ApplicationName : String

Visibility: default

Description: ApplicationName returns the name of the current application. Standard this is equal to the result of ParamStr(0), but it can be customized by setting the OnGetApplicationName (1099) callback.

Errors: None.

See also: GetAppConfigDir (1160), OnGetApplicationName (1099), GetAppConfigFile (1161), ConfigExtension (1087)

### 29.12.30 AssignStr

Synopsis: Assigns an ansistring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: procedure AssignStr(var P: PString; const S: String)

Visibility: default

Description: AssignStr allocates S to P. The old value of P is disposed of.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only. AnsiStrings are managed on the heap and should be preferred to the mechanism of dynamically allocated strings.

Errors: None.

See also: NewStr (1173), AppendStr (1113), DisposeStr (1129)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex63.pp

---

**Program** Example63;

```
{ This program demonstrates the AssignStr function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** P : PString;

**Begin**

```
P:=NewStr('A first AnsiString');
WriteLn ('Before: P = "',P^,'"');
AssignStr(P,'A Second ansistring');
WriteLn ('After : P = "',P^,'"');
DisposeStr(P);
```

**End.**

---

### 29.12.31 BCDToInt

Synopsis: Convert a BCD coded integer to a normal integer.

Declaration: function BCDToInt(Value: Integer) : Integer

Visibility: default

Description: BCDToInt converts a BCD coded integer to a normal integer.

Errors: None.

See also: StrToInt ([1194](#)), IntToStr ([1168](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex64.pp

---

**Program** Example64;

```
{ This program demonstrates the BCDToInt function }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit ( L : longint);

**begin**

```
WriteLn (L, ' -> ',BCDToInt(L));
end;
```

**Begin**

```
Testit(10);
Testit(100);
Testit(1000);
```

**End.**

---

### 29.12.32 Beep

Synopsis: Sound the system bell.

Declaration: procedure Beep



Visibility: default

Description: Beep sounds the system bell, if one is available.

Errors: This routine may not be implemented on all platforms.

### 29.12.33 BoolToStr

Synopsis: Convert a boolean value to a string.

Declaration: `function BoolToStr(B: Boolean) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `BoolToStr` converts the boolean `B` to one of the strings 'TRUE' or 'FALSE'

Errors: None.

See also: `StrToBool` ([1191](#))

### 29.12.34 ByteToCharIndex

Synopsis: Convert a character index in Bytes to an Index in characters

Declaration: `function ByteToCharIndex(const S: String; Index: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ByteToCharIndex` returns the index (in characters) of the `Index`-th byte in `S`.

Errors: This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

See also: `CharToByteLen` ([1117](#)), `ByteToCharLen` ([1116](#))

### 29.12.35 ByteToCharLen

Synopsis: Convert a length in bytes to a length in characters.

Declaration: `function ByteToCharLen(const S: String; MaxLen: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ByteToCharLen` returns the number of bytes in `S`, but limits the result to `MaxLen`

Errors: This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

See also: `CharToByteLen` ([1117](#)), `ByteToCharIndex` ([1116](#))

### 29.12.36 ByteType

Synopsis: Return the type of byte in an ansistring for a multi-byte character set

Declaration: `function ByteType(const S: String; Index: Integer) : TmbcsByteType`

Visibility: default

Description: `ByteType` returns the type of byte in the ansistring `S` at (1-based) position `Index`.

Errors: No checking on the index is performed.

See also: `TmbcsByteType` ([1097](#)), `StrByteType` ([1179](#))

### 29.12.37 CallTerminateProcs

Synopsis: Call the exit chain procedures.

Declaration: `function CallTerminateProcs : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CallTerminateProcs` is run on program exit. It executes all terminate procedures that were added to the exit chain with `AddTerminateProc` ([1100](#)), and does this in reverse order.

Errors: If one of the exit procedure raises an exception, it is *not* caught, and the remaining exit procedures will not be executed.

See also: `TTerminateProc` ([1098](#)), `AddTerminateProc` ([1100](#))

### 29.12.38 ChangeFileExt

Synopsis: Change the extension of a filename.

Declaration: `function ChangeFileExt(const FileName: String;const Extension: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ChangeFileExt` changes the file extension in `FileName` to `Extension`. The extension `Extension` includes the starting `.` (dot). The previous extension of `FileName` are all characters after the last `.`, the `.` character included.

If `FileName` doesn't have an extension, `Extension` is just appended.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` ([1135](#)), `ExtractFilePath` ([1136](#)), `ExpandFileName` ([1133](#))

### 29.12.39 CharToByteLen

Synopsis: Convert a length in characters to a length in bytes.

Declaration: `function CharToByteLen(const S: String;MaxLen: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `CharToByteLen` returns the number of bytes in `S`, but limits the result to `MaxLen`

Errors: This function does not take into account MBCS yet.

See also: `ByteToCharLen` ([1116](#)), `ByteToCharIndex` ([1116](#))

### 29.12.40 CompareMem

Synopsis: Compare two memory areas.

Declaration: `function CompareMem(P1: Pointer;P2: Pointer;Length: cardinal) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CompareMem` compares, byte by byte, 2 memory areas pointed to by `P1` and `P2`, for a length of `L` bytes.

It returns the following values:

<0if at some position the byte at P1 is less than the byte at the same position at P2.

0if all L bytes are the same.

>0if at some position the byte at P1 is greater than the byte at the same position at P2.

Errors:

### 29.12.41 CompareMemRange

Synopsis: Compare 2 memory locations

Declaration: `function CompareMemRange(P1: Pointer;P2: Pointer;Length: cardinal)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareMemRange compares the 2 memory locations pointed to by P1 and P2 byte per byte. It stops comparing after Length bytes have been compared, or when it has encountered 2 different bytes. The result is then

>0if a byte in range P1 was found that is bigger than the corresponding byte in range P2.

0if all bytes in range P1 are the same as the corresponding bytes in range P2.

<0if a byte in range P1 was found that is less than the corresponding byte in range P2.

Errors: None.

See also: SameText ([1176](#))

### 29.12.42 CompareStr

Synopsis: Compare 2 anstrings case-sensitively, ignoring special characters.

Declaration: `function CompareStr(const S1: String;const S2: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: CompareStr compares two strings, S1 and S2, and returns the following result:

<0if S1<S2.

0if S1=S2.

>0if S1>S2.

The comparison of the two strings is case-sensitive. The function does not take internationalization settings into account, it simply compares ASCII values.

Errors: None.

See also: AnsiCompareText ([1103](#)), AnsiCompareStr ([1102](#)), CompareText ([1119](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex65.pp

---

**Program** Example65;

```
{ This program demonstrates the CompareStr function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestIt (S1,S2 : **String**);

**Var** R : Longint;

**begin**

  R:=CompareStr(S1,S2);

**Write** ( ' ',S1, ' is ' );

**If** R<0 **then**

**write** ( 'less than ' )

**else If** R=0 **then**

**Write** ( 'equal to ' )

**else**

**Write** ( 'larger than ' );

**Writeln** ( ' ',S2, ' ' );

**end**;

**Begin**

  TestIt('One string','One smaller string');

  TestIt('One string','one string');

  TestIt('One string','One string');

  TestIt('One string','One tall string');

**End.**

---

### 29.12.43 CompareText

Synopsis: Compare 2 ansistrings case insensitive.

Declaration: function CompareText(const S1: String;const S2: String) : Integer

Visibility: default

Description: CompareText compares two strings, S1 and S2, and returns the following result:

<0if S1<S2.

0if S1=S2.

>0if S1>S2.

The comparison of the two strings is case-insensitive. The function does not take internationalization settings into account, it simply compares ASCII values.

Errors: None.

See also: AnsiCompareText ([1103](#)), AnsiCompareStr ([1102](#)), CompareStr ([1118](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex66.pp

---

**Program** Example66;

```
{ This program demonstrates the CompareText function }
```

---

```

{$H+}

Uses sysutils;

Procedure TestIt (S1,S2 : String);

Var R : Longint;

begin
  R:=CompareText(S1,S2);
  Write ( '',S1,' is ');
  If R<0 then
    write ( 'less than ')
  else If R=0 then
    Write ( 'equal to ')
  else
    Write ( 'larger than ');
  Writeln ( '',S2,' ');
end;

Begin
  TestIt('One string','One smaller string');
  TestIt('One string','one string');
  TestIt('One string','One string');
  TestIt('One string','One tall string');
End.

```

---

#### 29.12.44 CreateDir

Synopsis: Create a new directory

Declaration: `function CreateDir(const NewDir: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `CreateDir` creates a new directory with name `NewDir`. If the directory doesn't contain an absolute path, then the directory is created below the current working directory.

The function returns `True` if the directory was successfully created, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case of an error, the function returns `False`.

See also: `RemoveDir` ([1175](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex26.pp`

---

**Program** Example26;

```

{ This program demonstrates the CreateDir and RemoveDir functions }
{ Run this program twice in the same directory }

```

**Uses** sysutils;

```

Begin
  If Not DirectoryExists('NewDir') then
    If Not CreateDir ('NewDir') Then
      Writeln ('Failed to create directory !')
    else

```

```

        Writeln ( 'Created "NewDir" directory ' )
    Else
        If Not RemoveDir ( 'NewDir' ) Then
            Writeln ( 'Failed to remove directory ! ' )
        else
            Writeln ( 'Removed "NewDir" directory ' );
End.

```

---

### 29.12.45 CurrToStr

Synopsis: Convert a currency value to a string.

Declaration: `function CurrToStr(Value: Currency) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `CurrToStr` will convert a currency value to a string with a maximum of 15 digits, and precision 2. Calling `CurrToStr` is equivalent to calling `FloatToStrF` ([1148](#)):

```
FloatToStrF(Value, ffNumber, 15, 2);
```

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStrF` ([1148](#)), `StrToCurr` ([1191](#))

### 29.12.46 Date

Synopsis: Return the current date.

Declaration: `function Date : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Date` returns the current date in `TDateTime` format.

Errors: None.

See also: `Time` ([1199](#)), `Now` ([1173](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** Example1;

```
{ This program demonstrates the Date function }
```

```
uses sysutils;
```

```
Var YY,MM,DD : Word;
```

```
Begin
```

```
    Writeln ( 'Date : ',Date );
```

```
    DeCodeDate ( Date,YY,MM,DD );
```

```
    Writeln ( format ( 'Date is (DD/MM/YY): %d/%d/%d ',[dd,mm,yy] ) );
```

```
End.
```

---

**29.12.47 DateTimeToFileDate**

Synopsis: Convert a TDateTime value to a file age (integer)

Declaration: `function DateTimeToFileDate(DateTime: TDateTime) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToFileDate` function converts a date/time indication in TDateTime format to a file-date function, such as returned for instance by the `FileAge` (1137) function.

Errors: None.

See also: `Time` (1199), `Date` (1121), `FileDateToDateTime` (1138), `DateTimeToSystemTime` (1123), `DateTimeToTimeStamp` (1124)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex2.pp

---

**Program** Example2;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToFileDate function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** ( 'FileTime of now would be: ', **DateTimeToFileDate** (**Now**));  
**End.**

---

**29.12.48 DateTimeToStr**

Synopsis: Converts a TDateTime value to a string using a predefined format.

Declaration: `function DateTimeToStr(DateTime: TDateTime) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToStr` returns a string representation of `DateTime` using the formatting specified in `ShortDateTimeFormat`. It corresponds to a call to `FormatDateTime('c', DateTime)` (see `formatchars` (1085)).

Errors: None.

See also: `FormatDateTime` (1158)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex3.pp

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** ( 'Today is : ', **DateTimeToStr** (**Now**));  
**WriteIn** ( 'Today is : ', **FormatDateTime** ('c', **Now**));  
**End.**

---

**29.12.49 DateTimeToString**

Synopsis: Converts a TDateTime value to a string with a given format.

Declaration: `procedure DateTimeToString(var Result: String; const FormatStr: String;  
const DateTime: TDateTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: DateTimeToString returns in Result a string representation of DateTime using the formatting specified in FormatStr. for a list of characters that can be used in the FormatStr formatting string, see formatchars (1085).

Errors: In case a wrong formatting character is found, an EConvertError is raised.

See also: FormatDateTime (1158), formatchars (1085)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex4.pp

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToString function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** today (Fmt : **string**);

**Var** S : AnsiString;

**begin**

**DateTimeToString** (S, Fmt, **Date**);

**WriteLn** (S);

**end**;

**Procedure** Now (Fmt : **string**);

**Var** S : AnsiString;

**begin**

**DateTimeToString** (S, Fmt, **Time**);

**WriteLn** (S);

**end**;

**Begin**

    Today ( ' "Today is " dddd dd mmmm y ' );

    Today ( ' "Today is " d mmm yy ' );

    Today ( ' "Today is " d/mmm/yy ' );

**Now** ( ' ' 'The time is ' 'am/pmh:n:s ' );

**Now** ( ' ' 'The time is ' 'hh:nn:ssam/pm ' );

**Now** ( ' ' 'The time is ' 'tt ' );

**End.**

---

**29.12.50 DateTimeToSystemTime**

Synopsis: Converts a TDateTime value to a systemtime structure.

Declaration: `procedure DateTimeToSystemTime(DateTime: TDateTime;  
var SystemTime: TSystemTime)`



Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToSystemTime` converts a date/time pair in `DateTime`, with `TDateTime` format to a system time `SystemTime`.

Errors: None.

See also: `DateTimeToFileDate` ([1122](#)), `SystemTimeToDateTime` ([1198](#)), `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1124](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex5.pp`

---

**Program** `Example5`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToSystemTime function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `ST` : `TSystemTime`;

**Begin**

`DateTimeToSystemTime (Now, ST);`

**With** `St` **do**

**begin**

`Writeln ( 'Today is ', year, '/', month, '/', Day );`

`Writeln ( 'The time is ', Hour, ': ', minute, ': ', Second, '.', MilliSecond );`

**end**;

**End.**

---

### 29.12.51 DateTimeToTimeStamp

Synopsis: Converts a `TDateTime` value to a `TimeStamp` structure.

Declaration: `function DateTimeToTimeStamp(DateTime: TDateTime) : TTimeStamp`

Visibility: default

Description: `DateTimeToSystemTime` converts a date/time pair in `DateTime`, with `TDateTime` format to a `TTimeStamp` format.

Errors: None.

See also: `DateTimeToFileDate` ([1122](#)), `SystemTimeToDateTime` ([1198](#)), `DateTimeToSystemTime` ([1123](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** `Example6`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateTimeToTimeStamp function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `TS` : `TTimeStamp`;

**Begin**

`TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp (Now);`

**With** `TS` **do**

**begin**

`Writeln ( 'Now is ', time, ' millisecond past midnight' );`

---

```

    WriteLn ( 'Today is ' , Date , ' days past 1/1/0001 ' );
end;
End.

```

---

### 29.12.52 DateToStr

Synopsis: Converts a TDateTime value to a date string with a predefined format.

Declaration: `function DateToStr(Date: TDateTime) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: DateToStr converts Date to a string representation. It uses ShortDateFormat as it's formatting string. It is hence completely equivalent to a `FormatDateTime( 'dddd', Date )`.

Errors: None.

See also: TimeToStr ([1201](#)), DateTimeToStr ([1122](#)), FormatDateTime ([1158](#)), StrToDate ([1192](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex7.pp

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ This program demonstrates the DateToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

```

    WriteLn ( Format ( 'Today is: %s' , [ DateToStr ( Date ) ] ) );
End.

```

---

### 29.12.53 DayOfWeek

Synopsis: Returns the day of the week.

Declaration: `function DayOfWeek(DateTime: TDateTime) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: DayOfWeek returns the day of the week from DateTime. Sunday is counted as day 1, Saturday is counted as day 7. The result of DayOfWeek can serve as an index to the LongDayNames constant array, to retrieve the name of the day.

Errors: None.

See also: Date ([1121](#)), DateToStr ([1125](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ This program demonstrates the DayOfWeek function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

```

    WriteLn ( 'Today ' 's day is ' , LongDayNames [ DayOfWeek ( Date ) ] );
End.

```

---

**29.12.54 DecodeDate**

Synopsis: Decode a TDateTime to a year,month,day triplet

Declaration: `procedure DecodeDate(Date: TDateTime;var Year: Word;var Month: Word;  
var Day: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: DecodeDate decodes the Year, Month and Day stored in Date, and returns them in the Year, Month and Day variables.

Errors: None.

See also: EncodeDate ([1130](#)), DecodeTime ([1126](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex9.pp

---

**Program** Example9;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeDate function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** YY,MM,DD : Word;

**Begin**

**DecodeDate** ( Date ,YY,MM,DD);

**WriteIn** ( **Format** ( 'Today is %d/%d/%d' ,[dd,mm,yy ] ));

**End.**

---

**29.12.55 DecodeDateFully**

Synopsis: Decode a date with additional date of the week.

Declaration: `function DecodeDateFully(const DateTime: TDateTime;var Year: Word;  
var Month: Word;var Day: Word;var DOW: Word)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: DecodeDateFully, like DecodeDate ([1126](#)), decodes DateTime in its parts and returns these in Year, Month, Day but in addition returns the day of the week in DOW.

Errors: None.

See also: EncodeDate ([1130](#)), TryEncodeDate ([1203](#)), DecodeDate ([1126](#))

**29.12.56 DecodeTime**

Synopsis: Decode a TDateTime to a hour,minute,second,millisecond quartet

Declaration: `procedure DecodeTime(Time: TDateTime;var Hour: Word;var Minute: Word;  
var Second: Word;var MilliSecond: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: DecodeDate decodes the hours, minutes, second and milliseconds stored in Time, and returns them in the Hour, Minute and Second and MilliSecond variables.

Errors: None.

See also: [EncodeTime \(1131\)](#), [DecodeDate \(1126\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

*{ This program demonstrates the DecodeTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** HH,MM,SS,MS: Word;

**Begin**

**DecodeTime**(Time,HH,MM,SS,MS);

**WriteLn** ( **format**( 'The time is %d:%d:%d.%d' ,[hh,mm,ss,ms]));

**End.**

---

### 29.12.57 DeleteFile

Synopsis: Delete a file from the filesystem.

Declaration: `function DeleteFile(const FileName: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: DeleteFile deletes file FileName from disk. The function returns True if the file was successfully removed, False otherwise.

Errors: On error, False is returned.

See also: [FileCreate \(1137\)](#), [FileExists \(1139\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex31.pp

---

**Program** Example31;

*{ This program demonstrates the DeleteFile function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var**

    Line : **String**;

    F,I : Longint;

**Begin**

    F:= FileCreate( 'test.txt' );

    Line:= 'Some string line.'#10;

**For** I:=1 **to** 10 **do**

        FileWrite (F,Line[1],**Length**(Line));

**FileClose**(F);

**DeleteFile**( 'test.txt' );

**End.**

---

### 29.12.58 DirectoryExists

Synopsis: Check whether a directory exists in the file system.

Declaration: `function DirectoryExists(const Directory: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `DirectoryExists` checks whether `Directory` exists in the filesystem and is actually a directory. If this is the case, the function returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned.

See also: `FileExists` ([1139](#))

### 29.12.59 DiskFree

Synopsis: Return the amount of free disk space

Declaration: `function DiskFree(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskFree` returns the free space (in bytes) on disk `Drive`. `Drive` is the number of the disk drive:

**0**for the current drive.

**1**for the first floppy drive.

**2**for the second floppy drive.

**3**for the first hard-disk partition.

**4-26**for all other drives and partitions.

**Remark:** Under linux, and Unix in general, the concept of disk is different than the dos one, since the filesystem is seen as one big directory tree. For this reason, the `DiskFree` and `DiskSize` ([1129](#)) functions must be mimicked using filenames that reside on the partitions. For more information, see `AddDisk` ([1100](#)).

Errors: On error, `-1` is returned.

See also: `DiskSize` ([1129](#)), `AddDisk` ([1100](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex27.pp`

---

**Program** `Example27`;

*{ This program demonstrates the DiskFree function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

`Write ('Size of current disk : ',DiskSize(0));`

`WriteLn (' (= ',DiskSize(0) div 1024,'k)');`

`Write ('Free space of current disk : ',Diskfree(0));`

`WriteLn (' (= ',Diskfree(0) div 1024,'k)');`

**End.**

---

### 29.12.60 DiskSize

Synopsis: Return the total amount of disk space.

Declaration: `function DiskSize(drive: Byte) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `DiskSize` returns the size (in bytes) of disk `Drive`. `Drive` is the number of the disk drive:

- 0** for the current drive.
- 1** for the first floppy drive.
- 2** for the second floppy drive.
- 3** for the first hard-disk partition.
- 4-26** for all other drives and partitions.

**Remark:** Under linux, and Unix in general, the concept of disk is different than the dos one, since the filesystem is seen as one big directory tree. For this reason, the `DiskFree` (1128) and `DiskSize` functions must be mimicked using filenames that reside on the partitions. For more information, see `AddDisk` (1100)

For an example, see `DiskFree` (1128).

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `DiskFree` (1128), `AddDisk` (1100)

### 29.12.61 DisposeStr

Synopsis: Dispose an anstring from the heap.

Declaration: `procedure DisposeStr(S: PString)`

Visibility: default

Description: `DisposeStr` removes the dynamically allocated string `S` from the heap, and releases the occupied memory.

This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only. `AnsiStrings` are managed on the heap and should be preferred to the mechanism of dynamically allocated strings.

For an example, see `DisposeStr` (1129).

Errors: None.

See also: `NewStr` (1173), `AppendStr` (1113), `AssignStr` (1114)

### 29.12.62 DoDirSeparators

Synopsis: Convert known directory separators to the current directory separator.

Declaration: `procedure DoDirSeparators(var FileName: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: This function replaces all known directory separators in `FileName` to the directory separator character for the current system. The list of known separators is specified in the `DirSeparators` (1088) constant.

Errors: None.

See also: ExtractFileName ([1135](#)), ExtractFilePath ([1136](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex32.pp

---

**Program** Example32;

```
{ This program demonstrates the DoDirSeparators function }
{$H+}
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (F : **String**);

**begin**

**WriteIn** ( 'Before : ',F);

    DoDirSeparators (F);

**WriteIn** ( 'After : ',F);

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit ( GetCurrentDir );

    Testit ( 'c:\pp\bin\win32' );

    Testit ( '/usr/lib/fpc' );

    Testit ( '\usr\lib\fpc' );

**End.**

---

### 29.12.63 EncodeDate

Synopsis: Encode a Year,Month,Day to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: function EncodeDate(Year: Word;Month: Word;Day: Word) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: EncodeDate encodes the Year, Month and Day variables to a date in TDateTime format. It does the opposite of the DecodeDate ([1126](#)) procedure.

The parameters must lie within valid ranges (boundaries included):

**Year** must be between 1 and 9999.

**Month** must be within the range 1-12.

**Day** must be between 1 and 31.

Errors: In case one of the parameters is out of its valid range, 0 is returned.

See also: EncodeTime ([1131](#)), DecodeDate ([1126](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

```
{ This program demonstrates the EncodeDate function }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** YY,MM,DD : Word;

**Begin**

```

DecodeDate ( Date,YY,MM,DD);
WriteLn ( 'Today is : ',FormatDateTime ( 'dd mmm yyyy',EnCodeDate(YY,Mm,Dd)));
End.

```

---

**29.12.64 EncodeTime**

Synopsis: Encode a Hour,Min,Sec,millisecond to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function EncodeTime(Hour: Word;Minute: Word;Second: Word; MilliSecond: Word) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: EncodeTime encodes the Hour, Minute, Second, MilliSecond variables to a TDateTime format result. It does the opposite of the DecodeTime (1126) procedure.

The parameters must have a valid range (boundaries included):

**Hour** must be between 0 and 23.

**Minute,second** must both be between 0 and 59.

**Millisecond** must be between 0 and 999.

Errors: In case one of the parameters is outside of it's valid range, 0 is returned.

See also: EncodeDate (1130), DecodeTime (1126)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex12.pp

---

**Program** Example12;

*{ This program demonstrates the EncodeTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** Hh,MM,SS,MS : Word;

**Begin**

```

DeCodeTime ( Time,Hh,MM,SS,MS);
WriteLn ( 'Present Time is : ',FormatDateTime( 'hh:mm:ss',EnCodeTime (HH,MM,SS,MS)));
End.

```

---

**29.12.65 ExceptAddr**

Synopsis: Current exception address.

Declaration: `function ExceptAddr : Pointer`

Visibility: default

Description: ExceptAddr returns the address from the currently treated exception object when an exception is raised, and the stack is unwound.

See also: ExceptObject (1132), ExceptionErrorMessage (1132), ShowException (1177)



**29.12.66 ExceptionErrorMessage**

Synopsis: Return a message describing the exception.

Declaration: `function ExceptionErrorMessage(ExceptObject: TObject;  
                                           ExceptAddr: Pointer; Buffer: PChar;  
                                           Size: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExceptionErrorMessage` creates a string that describes the exception object `ExceptObject` at address `ExceptAddr`. It can be used to display exception messages. The string will be stored in the memory pointed to by `Buffer`, and will at most have `Size` characters.

The routine checks whether `ExceptObject` is a `Exception` (1214) object or not, and adapts the output accordingly.

See also: `ExceptObject` (1132), `ExceptAddr` (1131), `ShowException` (1177)

**29.12.67 ExceptObject**

Synopsis: Current Exception object.

Declaration: `function ExceptObject : TObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExceptObject` returns the currently treated exception object when an exception is raised, and the stack is unwound.

Errors: If there is no exception, the function returns `Nil`

See also: `ExceptAddr` (1131), `ExceptionErrorMessage` (1132), `ShowException` (1177)

**29.12.68 ExcludeTrailingBackslash**

Synopsis: Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: `function ExcludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExcludeTrailingBackslash` is provided for backwards compatibility with Delphi. Use `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1132) instead.

See also: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1165), `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1132), `PathDelim` (1092), `IsPathDelimiter` (1169)

**29.12.69 ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter**

Synopsis: Strip trailing directory separator from a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: `function ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter` removes the trailing path delimiter character (`PathDelim` (1092)) from `Path` if it is present, and returns the result.

See also: `ExcludeTrailingBackslash` (1132), `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` (1165), `PathDelim` (1092), `IsPathDelimiter` (1169)

### 29.12.70 ExecuteProcess

Synopsis: Execute another process (program).

Declaration: `function ExecuteProcess(const Path: AnsiString;  
const ComLine: AnsiString) : Integer  
function ExecuteProcess(const Path: AnsiString;  
const ComLine: Array[] of AnsiString) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExecuteProcess` will execute the program in `Path`, passing it the arguments in `ComLine`. `ExecuteProcess` will then wait for the program to finish, and will return the exit code of the executed program. In case `ComLine` is a single string, it will be split out in an array of strings, taking into account common whitespace and quote rules.

Errors: In case the program could not be executed or an other error occurs, an `EOSError` ([1212](#)) exception will be raised.

See also: `EOSError` ([1212](#))

### 29.12.71 ExpandFileName

Synopsis: Expand a relative filename to an absolute filename.

Declaration: `function ExpandFileName(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExpandFileName` expands the filename to an absolute filename. It changes all directory separator characters to the one appropriate for the system first.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` ([1135](#)), `ExtractFilePath` ([1136](#)), `ExtractFileDir` ([1134](#)), `ExtractFileDrive` ([1135](#)), `ExtractFileExt` ([1135](#)), `ExtractRelativePath` ([1136](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex33.pp`

**Program** `Example33;`

*{ This program demonstrates the ExpandFileName function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Procedure** `Testit (F : String);`

**begin**

`WriteLn (F, ' expands to : ',ExpandFileName(F));  
end;`

**Begin**

`Testit ('ex33.pp');  
  Testit (ParamStr (0));  
  Testit ('/pp/bin/win32/ppc386');  
  Testit ('\\pp\\bin\\win32\\ppc386');  
  Testit ('.');`

**End.**

### 29.12.72 ExpandUNCFileName

Synopsis: Expand a relative filename to an absolute UNC filename.

Declaration: `function ExpandUNCFileName(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExpandUNCFileName` runs `ExpandFileName` (1133) on `FileName` and then attempts to replace the driveletter by the name of a shared disk.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1135), `ExtractFilePath` (1136), `ExtractFileDir` (1134), `ExtractFileDrive` (1135), `ExtractFileExt` (1135), `ExtractRelativePath` (1136)

### 29.12.73 ExtractFileDir

Synopsis: Extract the directory part of a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileDir(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileDir` returns only the directory part of `FileName`, not including a driveletter. The directory name has NO ending directory separator, in difference with `ExtractFilePath` (1136).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1135), `ExtractFilePath` (1136), `ExtractFileDir` (1134), `ExtractFileDrive` (1135), `ExtractFileExt` (1135), `ExtractRelativePath` (1136)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex34.pp

---

**Program** Example34;

*{ This program demonstrates the ExtractFileName function }*  
*{ \$H+ }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit(F : **String**);

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'FileName      : ', F);  
    **WriteLn** ( 'Has Name      : ', **ExtractFileName**(F));  
    **WriteLn** ( 'Has Path      : ', **ExtractFilePath**(F));  
    **WriteLn** ( 'Has Extension : ', **ExtractFileExt**(F));  
    **WriteLn** ( 'Has Directory : ', **ExtractFileDir**(F));  
    **WriteLn** ( 'Has Drive      : ', **ExtractFileDrive**(F));

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit ( **Paramstr**(0));  
    Testit ( '/usr/local/bin/mysqld' );  
    Testit ( 'c:\pp\bin\win32\ppc386.exe' );  
    Testit ( '/pp/bin/win32/ppc386.exe' );

**End.**

---

#### 29.12.74 ExtractFileDrive

Synopsis: Extract the drive part from a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileDrive(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileDrive` extracts the drive letter from a filename. Note that some operating systems do not support drive letters.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1134).

Errors:

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1135), `ExtractFilePath` (1136), `ExtractFileDir` (1134), `ExtractFileDrive` (1135), `ExtractFileExt` (1135), `ExtractRelativePath` (1136)

#### 29.12.75 ExtractFileExt

Synopsis: Return the extension from a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileExt(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileExt` returns the extension (including the `.` (dot) character) of `FileName`.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1134).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1135), `ExtractFilePath` (1136), `ExtractFileDir` (1134), `ExtractFileDrive` (1135), `ExtractFileExt` (1135), `ExtractRelativePath` (1136)

#### 29.12.76 ExtractFileName

Synopsis: Extract the filename part from a full path filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFileName(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFileName` returns the filename part from `FileName`. The filename consists of all characters after the last directory separator character (`'/'` or `'\'`) or drive letter.

The full filename can always be reconstructed by concatenating the result of `ExtractFilePath` (1136) and `ExtractFileName`.

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1134).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1135), `ExtractFilePath` (1136), `ExtractFileDir` (1134), `ExtractFileDrive` (1135), `ExtractFileExt` (1135), `ExtractRelativePath` (1136)

### 29.12.77 ExtractFilePath

Synopsis: Extract the path from a filename.

Declaration: `function ExtractFilePath(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractFilePath` returns the path part (including driveletter) from `FileName`. The path consists of all characters before the last directory separator character ('/' or '\'), including the directory separator itself. In case there is only a drive letter, that will be returned.

The full filename can always be reconstructed by concatenating the result of `ExtractFilePath` and `ExtractFileName` (1135).

For an example, see `ExtractFileDir` (1134).

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1135), `ExtractFilePath` (1136), `ExtractFileDir` (1134), `ExtractFileDrive` (1135), `ExtractFileExt` (1135), `ExtractRelativePath` (1136)

### 29.12.78 ExtractRelativepath

Synopsis: Extract a relative path from a filename, given a base directory.

Declaration: `function ExtractRelativepath(const BaseName: String;  
const DestName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `ExtractRelativePath` constructs a relative path to go from `BaseName` to `DestName`. If `DestName` is on another drive (Not on Linux) then the whole `Destname` is returned. *Note:* This function does not exist in the Delphi unit.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExtractFileName` (1135), `ExtractFilePath` (1136), `ExtractFileDir` (1134), `ExtractFileDrive` (1135), `ExtractFileExt` (1135)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex35.pp

**Program** Example35;

*{ This program demonstrates the ExtractRelativePath function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (FromDir, ToDir : **String**);

**begin**

**Write** ( 'From " ', FromDir, '" to " ', ToDir, '" via " ' );

**Writeln** ( ExtractRelativePath (FromDir, ToDir), ' " ' );

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit ( '/pp/src/compiler ', '/pp/bin/win32/ppc386' );

    Testit ( '/pp/bin/win32/ppc386 ', '/pp/src/compiler' );

    Testit ( 'e:/pp/bin/win32/ppc386 ', 'd:/pp/src/compiler' );

    Testit ( 'e:\pp\bin\win32\ppc386 ', 'd:\pp\src\compiler' );

**End.**

**29.12.79 FileAge**

Synopsis: Return the timestamp of a file.

Declaration: `function FileAge(const FileName: String) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileAge` returns the last modification time of file `FileName`. The `FileDate` format can be transformed to `TDateTime` format with the `FileDateToDateTime` (1138) function.

Errors: In case of errors, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileDateToDateTime` (1138), `FileExists` (1139), `FileGetAttr` (1139)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex36.pp`

---

**Program** `Example36`;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileAge function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var** `S` : `TDateTime`;  
       `fa` : `Longint`;

**Begin**

`fa := FileAge( 'ex36.pp' );`

**If** `Fa <> -1` **then**

**begin**

`S := FileDateToDateTime( fa );`

**WriteLn** ( 'I'm from ', `DateTimeToStr(S)` )

**end**;

**End.**

---

**29.12.80 FileClose**

Synopsis: Close a file handle.

Declaration: `procedure FileClose(Handle: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileClose` closes the file handle `Handle`. After this call, attempting to read or write from the handle will result in an error.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1137)

Errors: None.

See also: `FileCreate` (1137), `FileWrite` (1144), `FileOpen` (1141), `FileRead` (1142), `FileTruncate` (1144), `FileSeek` (1143)

**29.12.81 FileCreate**

Synopsis: Create a new file and return a handle to it.

Declaration: `function FileCreate(const FileName: String) : LongInt`

`function FileCreate(const FileName: String; Mode: Integer) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileCreate` creates a new file with name `FileName` on the disk and returns a file handle which can be used to read or write from the file with the `FileRead` (1142) and `FileWrite` (1144) functions. If a file with name `FileName` already existed on the disk, it is overwritten.

Errors: If an error occurs (e.g. disk full or non-existent path), the function returns -1.

See also: `FileClose` (1137), `FileWrite` (1144), `FileOpen` (1141), `FileRead` (1142), `FileTruncate` (1144), `FileSeek` (1143)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex37.pp

---

**Program** Example37;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileCreate function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** I,J,F : Longint;

**Begin**

  F:=FileCreate ( 'test.dat' );

**If** F=-1 **then**

**Halt** (1);

**For** I:=0 **to** 100 **do**

    FileWrite(F,I,SizeOf(i));

  FileClose(f);

  F:=FileOpen ( 'test.dat',fmOpenRead);

**For** I:=0 **to** 100 **do**

**begin**

      FileRead ( F,J,SizeOf(J));

**If** J<>I **then**

        WriteLn ( 'Mismatch at file position ',I)

**end**;

  FileSeek(F,0,fsFromBeginning);

  Randomize;

  Repeat

    FileSeek(F,Random(100)\*4,fsFromBeginning);

    FileRead ( F,J,SizeOf(J));

    WriteLn ( 'Random read : ',j);

**Until** J>80;

  FileClose(F);

  F:=FileOpen( 'test.dat',fmOpenWrite);

  I:=50\*SizeOf(Longint);

**If** FileTruncate(F,I) **then**

    WriteLn('Successfully truncated file to ',I,' bytes.');

  FileClose(F);

**End.**

---

### 29.12.82 FileDateToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a `FileDate` value to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: function FileDateToDateTime(Filedate: LongInt) : TDateTime

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileDateToDateTime` converts the date/time encoded in `filedate` to a `TDateTime` encoded form. It can be used to convert date/time values returned by the `FileAge` (1137) or `FindFirst` (1145)/`FindNext` (1146) functions to `TDateTime` form.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `DateTimeToFileDate` (1122)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex13.pp`

---

**Program** `Example13`;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileDateToDateTime function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Var**

`ThisAge` : `Longint`;

**Begin**

`Write` ( 'ex13.pp created on : ' );

`ThisAge` := `FileAge` ( 'ex13.pp' );

`WriteLn` ( `DateTimeToStr` ( `FileDateToDateTime` ( `ThisAge` ) ) );

**End.**

---

### 29.12.83 FileExists

**Synopsis:** Check whether a file exists in the filesystem.

**Declaration:** `function FileExists(const FileName: String) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `FileExists` returns `True` if a file with name `FileName` exists on the disk, `False` otherwise.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FileAge` (1137), `FileGetAttr` (1139), `FileSetAttr` (1144)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex38.pp`

---

**Program** `Example38`;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileExists function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

**If** `FileExists` ( `ParamStr` ( 0 ) ) **Then**

`WriteLn` ( 'All is well, I seem to exist.' );

**End.**

---

### 29.12.84 FileGetAttr

**Synopsis:** Return attributes of a file.

**Declaration:** `function FileGetAttr(const FileName: String) : LongInt`



Visibility: default

Description: `FileGetAttr` returns the attribute settings of file `FileName`. The attribute is a OR-ed combination of the following constants:

**faReadOnly**The file is read-only.

**faHidden**The file is hidden. (On unix, this means that the filename starts with a dot)

**faSysFile**The file is a system file (On unix, this means that the file is a character, block or FIFO file).

**faVolumeId**Volume Label. Not possible under unix.

**faDirectory**File is a directory.

**faArchive**file is an archive. Not possible on Unix

Errors: In case of error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileSetAttr` ([1144](#)), `FileAge` ([1137](#)), `FileGetDate` ([1141](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex40.pp`

---

**Program** `Example40`;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileGetAttr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `Testit (Name : String)`;

**Var** `F : Longint`;

**Begin**

`F := FileGetAttr (Name);`

`If F <> -1 then`

`begin`

`Writeln ( 'Testing : ', Name);`

`If (F and faReadOnly) <> 0 then`

`Writeln ( 'File is ReadOnly');`

`If (F and faHidden) <> 0 then`

`Writeln ( 'File is hidden');`

`If (F and faSysFile) <> 0 then`

`Writeln ( 'File is a system file');`

`If (F and faVolumeId) <> 0 then`

`Writeln ( 'File is a disk label');`

`If (F and faArchive) <> 0 then`

`Writeln ( 'File is artchive file');`

`If (F and faDirectory) <> 0 then`

`Writeln ( 'File is a directory');`

`end`

`else`

`Writeln ( 'Error reading attribites of ', Name);`

`end;`

**begin**

`testit ( 'ex40.pp');`

`testit ( ParamStr (0));`

`testit ( '.');`

`testit ( '/');`

**End.**

---

### 29.12.85 FileGetDate

Synopsis: Return the file time of an opened file.

Declaration: `function FileGetDate(Handle: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileGetdate` returns the filetime of the opened file with filehandle `Handle`. It is the same as `FileAge` (1137), with this difference that `FileAge` only needs the file name, while `FileGetDate` needs an open file handle.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileAge` (1137)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** `Example39;`

*{ This program demonstrates the FileGetDate function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `F,D : Longint;`

**Begin**

`F:= FileCreate( 'test.dat' );`

`D:= FileGetDate(F);`

`WriteIn ( 'File created on ',DateTimeToStr( FileDateToDateTime(D)));`

`FileClose(F);`

`DeleteFile( 'test.dat' );`

**End.**

---

### 29.12.86 FileIsReadOnly

Synopsis: Check whether a file is read-only.

Declaration: `function FileIsReadOnly(const FileName: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileIsReadOnly` checks whether `FileName` exists in the filesystem and is a read-only file. If this is the case, the function returns `True`, otherwise `False` is returned.

See also: `FileExists` (1139)

### 29.12.87 FileOpen

Synopsis: Open an existing file and return a filehandle

Declaration: `function FileOpen(const FileName: String;Mode: Integer) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileOpen` opens a file with name `FileName` with mode `Mode`. `Mode` can be one of the following constants:

**fmOpenRead**The file is opened for reading.

**fmOpenWrite**The file is opened for writing.

**fmOpenReadWrite**The file is opened for reading and writing.

If the file has been successfully opened, it can be read from or written to (depending on the Mode parameter) with the `FileRead` (1142) and `FileWrite` functions.

**Remark:** Remark that you cannot open a file if it doesn't exist yet, i.e. it will not be created for you. If you want to create a new file, or overwrite an old one, use the `FileCreate` (1137) function.

For an example, see `FileOpen` (1141)

Errors: On Error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileClose` (1137), `FileWrite` (1144), `FileCreate` (1137), `FileRead` (1142), `FileTruncate` (1144), `FileSeek` (1143)

### 29.12.88 FileRead

Synopsis: Read data from a filehandle in a buffer.

Declaration: `function FileRead(Handle: LongInt;var Buffer;Count: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileRead` reads Count bytes from file-handle Handle and stores them into Buffer. Buffer must be at least Count bytes long. No checking on this is performed, so be careful not to overwrite any memory. Handle must be the result of a `FileOpen` (1141) call.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1137)

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: `FileClose` (1137), `FileWrite` (1144), `FileCreate` (1137), `FileOpen` (1141), `FileTruncate` (1144), `FileSeek` (1143)

### 29.12.89 FileSearch

Synopsis: Search for a file in a path.

Declaration: `function FileSearch(const Name: String;const DirList: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileSearch` looks for the file Name in DirList, where dirlist is a list of directories, separated by semicolons or colons. It returns the full filename of the first match found.

Errors: On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: `ExpandFileName` (1133), `FindFirst` (1145)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex41.pp

---

**Program** Example41;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FileSearch function. }*

**Uses** Sysutils;

**Const**  
*{ \$ifdef unix }*

---

```

    FN = 'find';
    P = '.: / bin : / usr / bin';
  {$else}
    FN = 'find.exe';
    P = 'c:\dos;c:\windows;c:\windows\system;c:\windows\system32';
  {$endif}

begin
  Writeln ('find is in : ', FileSearch (FN,P));
end.

```

---

### 29.12.90 FileSeek

Synopsis: Set the current file position on a file handle.

Declaration: `function FileSeek(Handle: LongInt; FOffset: LongInt; Origin: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`function FileSeek(Handle: LongInt; FOffset: Int64; Origin: Int64) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: FileSeek sets the file pointer on position Offset, starting from Origin. Origin can be one of the following values:

**fsFromBeginning** Offset is relative to the first byte of the file. This position is zero-based. i.e. the first byte is at offset 0.

**fsFromCurrent** Offset is relative to the current position.

**fsFromEnd** Offset is relative to the end of the file. This means that Offset can only be zero or negative in this case.

If successful, the function returns the new file position, relative to the beginning of the file.

**Remark:** The abovementioned constants do not exist in Delphi.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned.

See also: FileClose ([1137](#)), FileWrite ([1144](#)), FileCreate ([1137](#)), FileOpen ([1141](#)), FileRead ([1142](#)), FileTruncate ([1144](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex42.pp

---

**Program** Example42;

*{ This program demonstrates the FileSetAttr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

```

  If FileSetAttr ('ex40.pp', faReadOnly or faHidden) = 0 then
    Writeln ('Successfully made file hidden and read-only.')
  else
    Writeln ('Couldn't make file hidden and read-only.');
```

**End.**

---

**29.12.91 FileSetAttr**

Synopsis: Set the attributes of a file.

Declaration: `function FileSetAttr(const Filename: String;Attr: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileSetAttr` sets the attributes of `FileName` to `Attr`. If the function was successful, 0 is returned, -1 otherwise. `Attr` can be set to an OR-ed combination of the pre-defined `faXXX` constants.

This function is not implemented on Unixes.

Errors: On error, -1 is returned (always on Unixes).

See also: `FileGetAttr` ([1139](#)), `FileGetDate` ([1141](#)), `FileSetDate` ([1144](#))

**29.12.92 FileSetDate**

Synopsis: Set the date of a file.

Declaration: `function FileSetDate(Handle: LongInt;Age: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileSetDate` sets the file date of the file with handle `Handle` to `Age`, where `Age` is a DOS date-and-time stamp value.

The function returns zero if successful. (not on unixes, where it is not implemented)

Errors: On Unix, -1 is always returned, since this is impossible to implement. On Windows and DOS, a negative error code is returned.

**29.12.93 FileTruncate**

Synopsis: Truncate an open file to a given size.

Declaration: `function FileTruncate(Handle: LongInt;Size: LongInt) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FileTruncate` truncates the file with handle `Handle` to `Size` bytes. The file must have been opened for writing prior to this call. The function returns `True` is successful, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `FileCreate` ([1137](#)).

Errors: On error, the function returns `False`.

See also: `FileClose` ([1137](#)), `FileWrite` ([1144](#)), `FileCreate` ([1137](#)), `FileOpen` ([1141](#)), `FileRead` ([1142](#)), `FileSeek` ([1143](#))

**29.12.94 FileWrite**

Synopsis: Write data from a buffer to a given filehandle.

Declaration: `function FileWrite(Handle: LongInt;const Buffer;Count: LongInt)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FileWrite` writes `Count` bytes from `Buffer` to the file with handle `Handle`. Prior to this call, the file must have been opened for writing. `Buffer` must be at least `Count` bytes large, or a memory access error may occur.

The function returns the number of bytes written, or -1 in case of an error.

For an example, see `FileCreate` (1137).

**Errors:** In case of error, -1 is returned.

**See also:** `FileClose` (1137), `FileCreate` (1137), `FileOpen` (1141), `FileRead` (1142), `FileTruncate` (1144), `FileSeek` (1143)

### 29.12.95 FindClose

**Synopsis:** Close a find handle

**Declaration:** `procedure FindClose(var F: TSearchRec)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindClose` ends a series of `FindFirst` (1145)/`FindNext` (1146) calls, and frees any memory used by these calls. It is *absolutely* necessary to do this call, or huge memory losses may occur.

For an example, see `FindFirst` (1145).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `FindFirst` (1145), `FindNext` (1146)

### 29.12.96 FindCmdLineSwitch

**Synopsis:** Check whether a certain switch is present on the command-line.

**Declaration:** `function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: String;  
                                   const Chars: TSysCharSet; IgnoreCase: Boolean)  
                                   : Boolean  
 function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: String; IgnoreCase: Boolean)  
                                   : Boolean  
 function FindCmdLineSwitch(const Switch: String) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `FindCmdLineSwitch` will check all command-line arguments for the presence of the option `Switch`. It will return `True` if it was found, `False` otherwise. Characters that appear in `Chars` (default is `SwitchChars` (1093)) are assumed to indicate an option (switch). If the parameter `IgnoreCase` is `True`, case will be ignored when looking for the switch. Default is to search case sensitive.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SwitchChars` (1093)

### 29.12.97 FindFirst

**Synopsis:** Start a file search and return a findhandle

**Declaration:** `function FindFirst(const Path: String; Attr: LongInt;  
                           var Rslt: TSearchRec) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindFirst` looks for files that match the name (possibly with wildcards) in `Path` and attributes `Attr`. It then fills up the `Rslt` record with data gathered about the file. It returns 0 if a file matching the specified criteria is found, a nonzero value (-1 on linux) otherwise.

The `Rslt` record can be fed to subsequent calls to `FindNext`, in order to find other files matching the specifications.

**Remark:** A `FindFirst` call must *always* be followed by a `FindClose` (1145) call with the same `Rslt` record. Failure to do so will result in memory loss.

**Errors:** On error the function returns -1 on linux, a nonzero error code on Windows.

See also: `FindClose` (1145), `FindNext` (1146)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex43.pp

---

**Program** Example43;

*{ This program demonstrates the FindFirst function }*

**Uses** SysUtils;

**Var** Info : TSearchRec;  
Count : Longint;

**Begin**

Count:=0;

**If** `FindFirst` ( '\*',faAnyFile **and** faDirectory ,Info)=0 **then**  
**begin**

**Repeat**

**Inc**(Count);

**With** Info **do**

**begin**

**If** (Attr **and** faDirectory) = faDirectory **then**

**Write** ( 'Dir : ' );

**WriteLn** (Name:40,Size:15);

**end**;

**Until** `FindNext`(info)<>0;

**end**;

**FindClose**(Info);

**WriteLn** ( 'Finished search. Found ',Count, ' matches' );

**End.**

---

### 29.12.98 FindNext

**Synopsis:** Find the next entry in a findhandle.

**Declaration:** function `FindNext`(var `Rslt`: TSearchRec) : LongInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FindNext` finds a next occurrence of a search sequence initiated by `FindFirst`. If another record matching the criteria in `Rslt` is found, 0 is returned, a nonzero constant is returned otherwise.

**Remark:** The last `FindNext` call must *always* be followed by a `FindClose` call with the same `Rslt` record. Failure to do so will result in memory loss.

For an example, see `FindFirst` (1145)

Errors: On error (no more file is found), a nonzero constant is returned.

See also: [FindFirst \(1145\)](#), [FindClose \(1145\)](#)

### 29.12.99 FloattoCurr

Synopsis: Convert a float to a Currency value.

Declaration: `function FloattoCurr(const Value: Extended) : Currency`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToCurr` converts the `Value` floating point value to a `Currency` value. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of currencies (determined by [MinCurrency \(1091\)](#) and [MaxCurrency \(1091\)](#)). If not, an [EConvertError \(1210\)](#) exception is raised.

Errors: If `Value` is out of range, an [EConvertError \(1210\)](#) exception is raised.

See also: [EConvertError \(1210\)](#), [TryFloatToCurr \(1204\)](#), [MinCurrency \(1091\)](#), [MaxCurrency \(1091\)](#)

### 29.12.100 FloatToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a float to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function FloatToDateTime(const Value: Extended) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToDateTime` converts the `Value` floating point value to a `TDateTime` value. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of dates (determined by [MinDateTime \(1091\)](#) and [MaxDateTime \(1091\)](#)). If not, an [EConvertError \(1210\)](#) exception is raised.

Errors: If `Value` is out of range, an [EConvertError \(1210\)](#) exception is raised.

See also: [EConvertError \(1210\)](#), [MinDateTime \(1091\)](#), [MaxDateTime \(1091\)](#)

### 29.12.101 FloatToDecimal

Synopsis: Convert a float value to a `TFloatRec` value.

Declaration: `procedure FloatToDecimal(var Result: TFloatRec; Value: Extended;  
Precision: Integer; Decimals: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToDecimal` converts the float `Value` to a float description in the `ResultTFloatRec (1096)` format. It will store `Precision` digits in the `Digits` field, of which at most `Decimal` decimals.

Errors: None.

See also: [TFloatRec \(1096\)](#)



**29.12.102 FloatToStr**

Synopsis: Convert a float value to a string using a fixed format.

Declaration: `function FloatToStr(Value: Extended) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToStr` converts the floating point variable `Value` to a string representation. It will choose the shortest possible notation of the two following formats:

**Fixed format** will represent the string in fixed notation,

**Decimal format** will represent the string in scientific notation.

More information on these formats can be found in `FloatToStrF` (1148). `FloatToStr` is completely equivalent to the following call:

```
FloatToStrF(Value, ffGeneral, 15, 0);
```

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStrF` (1148), `FormatFloat` (1159), `StrToFloat` (1193)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex67.pp`

---

**Program** Example67;

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStr function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** Testit (Value : Extended);

**begin**

**WriteIn** (Value, ' -> ', **FloatToStr**(Value));

**WriteIn** (-Value, ' -> ', **FloatToStr**(-Value));

**end**;

**Begin**

    Testit (0.0);

    Testit (1.1);

    Testit (1.1e-3);

    Testit (1.1e-20);

    Testit (1.1e-200);

    Testit (1.1e+3);

    Testit (1.1e+20);

    Testit (1.1e+200);

**End.**

---

**29.12.103 FloatToStrF**

Synopsis: Convert a float value to a string using a given format.

Declaration: `function FloatToStrF(Value: Extended; format: TFloatFormat;  
                                  Precision: Integer; Digits: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FloatToStrF` converts the floating point number value to a string representation, according to the settings of the parameters `Format`, `Precision` and `Digits`.

The meaning of the `Precision` and `Digits` parameter depends on the `Format` parameter. The format is controlled mainly by the `Format` parameter. It can have one of the following values:

**ffcurrency** Money format. Value is converted to a string using the global variables `CurrencyString`, `CurrencyFormat` and `NegCurrencyFormat`. The `Digits` parameter specifies the number of digits following the decimal point and should be in the range -1 to 18. If `Digits` equals -1, `CurrencyDecimals` is assumed. The `Precision` parameter is ignored.

**ffExponent** Scientific format. Value is converted to a string using scientific notation: 1 digit before the decimal point, possibly preceded by a minus sign if `Value` is negative. The number of digits after the decimal point is controlled by `Precision` and must lie in the range 0 to 15.

**ffFixed** Fixed point format. Value is converted to a string using fixed point notation. The result is composed of all digits of the integer part of `Value`, preceded by a minus sign if `Value` is negative. Following the integer part is `DecimalSeparator` and then the fractional part of `Value`, rounded off to `Digits` numbers. If the number is too large then the result will be in scientific notation.

**ffGeneral** General number format. The argument is converted to a string using `ffExponent` or `ffFixed` format, depending on which one gives the shortest string. There will be no trailing zeroes. If `Value` is less than 0.00001 or if the number of decimals left of the decimal point is larger than `Precision` then scientific notation is used, and `Digits` is the minimum number of digits in the exponent. Otherwise `Digits` is ignored.

**ffnumber** Is the same as `ffFixed`, except that thousand separators are inserted in the result string.

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStr` ([1148](#)), `FloatToText` ([1150](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex68.pp`

**Program** `Example68`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStrF function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Const Fmt : Array [TFloatFormat] of string[10] =
    ( 'general', 'exponent', 'fixed', 'number', 'Currency' );
```

```
Procedure Testit (Value : Extended);
```

```
Var I, J : longint;
    FF : TFloatFormat;
```

```
begin
```

```
  For I:=5 to 15 do
```

```
    For J:=1 to 4 do
```

```
      For FF:=ffgeneral to ffcurrency do
```

```
        begin
```

```
          Write (Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', ', Dig: ', J, ', ', fmt : ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');
```

```
          Writeln (FloatToStrF(Value, FF, I, J));
```

```
          Write (-Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', ', Dig: ', J, ', ', fmt : ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');
```

```
          Writeln (FloatToStrF(-Value, FF, I, J));
```

```
        end;
```

```
end;
```

**Begin**

```

Testit (1.1);
Testit (1.1E1);
Testit (1.1E-1);
Testit (1.1E5);
Testit (1.1E-5);
Testit (1.1E10);
Testit (1.1E-10);
Testit (1.1E15);
Testit (1.1E-15);
Testit (1.1E100);
Testit (1.1E-100);

```

**End.****29.12.104 FloatToText**

Synopsis: Return a string representation of a float, with a given format.

Declaration: `function FloatToText(Buffer: PChar;Value: Extended;format: TFloatFormat;  
Precision: Integer;Digits: Integer) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToText` converts the floating point variable `Value` to a string representation and stores it in `Buffer`. The conversion is governed by `format`, `Precisison` and `Digits`. more information on these parameters can be found in `FloatToStrF` (1148). `Buffer` should point to enough space to hold the result. No checking on this is performed.

The result is the number of characters that was copied in `Buffer`.

Errors: None.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1148), `FloatToStrF` (1148)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex69.pp`

**Program** Example68;

*{ This program demonstrates the FloatToStrF function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Const** Fmt : **Array** [TFloatFormat] **of** **string**[10] =  
( 'general', 'exponent', 'fixed', 'number', 'Currency' );

**Procedure** Testit (Value : Extended);

**Var** I,J : longint;  
FF : TFloatFormat;  
S : ShortString;

**begin**

**For** I:=5 **to** 15 **do**

**For** J:=1 **to** 4 **do**

**For** FF:=ffgeneral **to** ffcurrency **do**

**begin**

**Write** ( Value, '(Prec: ',I:2,', Dig: ',J,', fmt : ',Fmt[ff],') : ');

```

        SetLength(S, FloatToText (@S[1], Value, FF, I, J));
        Writeln (S);
        Write (-Value, '(Prec: ', I:2, ', Dig: ', J, ', fmt: ', Fmt[ff], ') : ');
        SetLength(S, FloatToText (@S[1], -Value, FF, I, J));
        Writeln (S);
    end;

Begin
    Testit (1.1);
    Testit (1.1E1);
    Testit (1.1E-1);
    Testit (1.1E5);
    Testit (1.1E-5);
    Testit (1.1E10);
    Testit (1.1E-10);
    Testit (1.1E15);
    Testit (1.1E-15);
    Testit (1.1E100);
    Testit (1.1E-100);
End.

```

---

### 29.12.105 FloatToTextFmt

Synopsis: Convert a float value to a string using a given mask.

Declaration: `function FloatToTextFmt(Buffer: PChar; Value: Extended; format: PChar)  
: Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `FloatToTextFmt` returns a textual representation of `Value` in the memory location pointed to by `Buffer`. it uses the formatting specification in `Format` to do this. The return value is the number of characters that were written in the buffer.

For a list of valid formatting characters, see `FormatFloat` ([1159](#))

Errors: No length checking is performed on the buffer. The buffer should point to enough memory to hold the complete string. If this is not the case, an access violation may occur.

See also: `FormatFloat` ([1159](#))

### 29.12.106 FmtStr

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments.

Declaration: `procedure FmtStr(var Res: String; const Fmt: String;  
const args: Array[] of const)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FmtStr` calls `Format` ([1152](#)) with `Fmt` and `Args` as arguments, and stores the result in `Res`. For more information on how the resulting string is composed, see `Format` ([1152](#)).

Errors: In case of error, a `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `Format` ([1152](#)), `FormatBuf` ([1157](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex70.pp

**Program** Example70;

```
{ This program demonstrates the FmtStr function }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** S : AnsiString;

**Begin**

S:= '';

**FmtStr** (S, 'For some nice examples of fomattting see %s. ', ['Format']);

**WriteLn** (S);

**End.**

### 29.12.107 ForceDirectories

**Synopsis:** Create a chain of directories

**Declaration:** function ForceDirectories(const Dir: String) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** ForceDirectories tries to create any missing directories in Dir till the whole path in Dir exists. It returns True if Dir already existed or was created succesfully. If it failed to create any of the parts, False is returned.

### 29.12.108 Format

**Synopsis:** Format a string with given arguments.

**Declaration:** function Format(const Fmt: String;const Args: Array[] of const) : String

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Format replaces all placeholders in Fmt with the arguments passed in Args and returns the resulting string. A placeholder looks as follows:

```
'%' [Index':' ] ['-'] [Width] ['.' Precision] ArgType
```

elements between single quotes must be typed as shown without the quotes, and elements between square brackets [ ] are optional. The meaning of the different elements is shown below:

**'%'** starts the placeholder. If you want to insert a literal % character, then you must insert two of them : %%.

**Index ':'** takes the Index-th element in the argument array as the element to insert.

**'-'** tells Format to left-align the inserted text. The default behaviour is to right-align inserted text. This can only take effect if the Width element is also specified.

**Width** the inserted string must have at least have Width characters. If not, the inserted string will be padded with spaces. By default, the string is left-padded, resulting in a right-aligned string. This behaviour can be changed by the '-' character.

**'.' Precision** Indicates the precision to be used when converting the argument. The exact meaning of this parameter depends on ArgType.

The `Index`, `Width` and `Precision` parameters can be replaced by `*`, in which case their value will be read from the next element in the `Args` array. This value must be an integer, or an `EConvertError` exception will be raised.

The argument type is determined from `ArgType`. It can have one of the following values (case insensitive):

**D**Decimal format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be an integer. The argument is converted to a decimal string,. If precision is specified, then the string will have at least `Precision` digits in it. If needed, the string is (left) padded with zeroes.

**E**Scientific format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a Floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using scientific notation, using `FloatToStrF` (1148), where the optional precision is used to specify the total number of decimals. (default a value of 15 is used). The exponent is formatted using maximally 3 digits.

In short, the `E` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF(Argument, ffExponent, Precision, 3)
```

**F**Fixed point format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string, using fixed notation (see `FloatToStrF` (1148)). `Precision` indicates the number of digits following the decimal point.

In short, the `F` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF(Argument, ffFixed, fixed, 9999, Precision)
```

**G**General number format. The next argument in the `Args` array should be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using fixed point notation or scientific notation, depending on which gives the shortest result. `Precision` is used to determine the number of digits after the decimal point.

In short, the `G` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF(Argument, ffGeneral, Precision, 3)
```

**M**Currency format. the next argument in the `var{Args}` array must be a floating point value. The argument is converted to a decimal string using currency notation. This means that fixed-point notation is used, but that the currency symbol is appended. If precision is specified, then then it overrides the `CurrencyDecimals` global variable used in the `FloatToStrF` (1148)

In short, the `M` specifier formats it's argument as follows:

```
FloatToStrF(Argument, ffCurrency, 9999, Precision)
```

**N**Number format. This is the same as fixed point format, except that thousand separators are inserted in the resulting string.

**P**Pointer format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be a pointer (typed or untyped). The pointer value is converted to a string of length 8, representing the hexadecimal value of the pointer.

**S**String format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be a string. The argument is simply copied to the result string. If `Precision` is specified, then only `Precision` characters are copied to the result string.

**X**hexadecimal format. The next argument in the `Args` array must be an integer. The argument is converted to a hexadecimal string with just enough characters to contain the value of the integer. If `Precision` is specified then the resulting hexadecimal representation will have at least `Precision` characters in it (with a maximum value of 32).

**Errors:** In case of error, an `EConversionError` exception is raised. Possible errors are:

- 1.Errors in the format specifiers.
- 2.The next argument is not of the type needed by a specifier.
- 3.The number of arguments is not sufficient for all format specifiers.

See also: FormatBuf ([1157](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex71.pp

**Program** example71;

*{ \$mode objfpc }*

*{ This program demonstrates the Format function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** P : Pointer;  
      fmt,S : **string**;

**Procedure** TestInteger;

**begin**

**Try**

```
    Fmt:='[%d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%%]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%10d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    fmt:='[%.4d]';S:=Format (fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%10.4d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10d]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4d]';S:=Format (fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.d]';S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
```

**except**

**On** E : Exception **do**

**begin**

**Writeln** ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);

**end**;

**end**;

**writeln** ('Press enter');

**readln**;

**end**;

**Procedure** TestHexaDecimal;

**begin**

**try**

```
    Fmt:='[%x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%10x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%10.4x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:10.4x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10x]';S:=Format (Fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%0:-10.4x]';S:=Format (fmt,[10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
    Fmt:='[%-*.x]';S:=Format (fmt,[4,5,10]);writeln(Fmt:12,'=>',s);
```

**except**

```

    On E : Exception do
        begin
            WriteLn ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
        end;
    end;
    writeLn ( 'Press enter ');
    readLn;
end;

```

**Procedure** TestPointer;

```

begin
    P:= Pointer(1234567);
    try
        Fmt:= '[0x%p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeLn (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[0x%10p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeLn (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[0x%10.4p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeLn (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[0x%0:p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeLn (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[0x%0:10p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeLn (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[0x%0:10.4p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeLn (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[0x%0:-10p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeLn (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[0x%0:-10.4p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[P]); writeLn (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '[%-*.p]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[4,5,P]); writeLn (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    except
        On E : Exception do
            begin
                WriteLn ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
            end;
        end;
        writeLn ( 'Press enter ');
        readLn;
    end;
end;

```

**Procedure** TestString;

```

begin
    try
        Fmt:= '[%s]'; S:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']); WriteLn (fmt:12, '=> ',s);
        fmt:= '[%0:s]'; s:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']); WriteLn (fmt:12, '=> ',s);
        fmt:= '[%0:18s]'; s:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']); WriteLn (fmt:12, '=> ',s);
        fmt:= '[%0:-18s]'; s:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']); WriteLn (fmt:12, '=> ',s);
        fmt:= '[%0:18.12s]'; s:=Format(fmt,['This is a string']); WriteLn (fmt:12, '=> ',s);
        fmt:= '[%-*.s]'; s:=Format(fmt,[18,12,'This is a string']); WriteLn (fmt:12, '=> ',s);
    except
        On E : Exception do
            begin
                WriteLn ( 'Exception caught : ',E.Message);
            end;
        end;
        writeLn ( 'Press enter ');
        readLn;
    end;
end;

```

**Procedure** TestExponential;

```

begin
    Try
        Fmt:= '[%e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeLn (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Try

```



```

Fmt:= '[%10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
Fmt:= '[%10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
Fmt:= '[%0:e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
Fmt:= '[%0:10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
Fmt:= '[%0:10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
Fmt:= '[%0:-10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
Fmt:= '[%0:-10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
Fmt:= '[%-*.e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[4,5,1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
except
  On E : Exception do
    begin
      Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
    end;
end;
writeln ('Press enter');
readln;
end;

```

**Procedure** TestNegativeExponential;

```

begin
  Try
    Fmt:= '[%e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:-10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:-10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%-*.e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[4,5,-1.234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
      end;
    end;
  writeln ('Press enter');
  readln;
end;

```

**Procedure** TestSmallExponential;

```

begin
  Try
    Fmt:= '[%e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:-10e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%0:-10.4e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    Fmt:= '[%-*.e]'; S:=Format (Fmt,[4,5,0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
  except
    On E : Exception do
      begin
        Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
      end;
    end;
  writeln ('Press enter');
  readln;
end;

```

---

```

        end;
    end;
    writeln ('Press enter');
    readln;
end;

Procedure TestSmallNegExponential;

begin
    Try
        Fmt:= '%e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%10e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%10.4e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:10e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:10.4e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:-10e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%0:-10.4e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
        Fmt:= '%-*.e'; S:=Format (Fmt,[4,5,-0.01234]); writeln (Fmt:12, ' => ',s);
    except
        On E : Exception do
            begin
                Writeln ('Exception caught : ',E.Message);
            end;
        end;
    writeln ('Press enter');
    readln;
end;

begin
    TestInteger;
    TestHexadecimal;
    TestPointer;
    TestExponential;
    TestNegativeExponential;
    TestSmallExponential;
    TestSmallNegExponential;
    teststring;
end.

```

---

### 29.12.109 FormatBuf

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments and store the result in a buffer.

Declaration: `function FormatBuf(var Buffer;BufLen: Cardinal;const Fmt;  
fmlen: Cardinal;const Args: Array[] of const)  
: Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatBuf` calls `Format` ([1152](#)) and stores the result in `Buf`.

See also: `Format` ([1152](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex72.pp`

---

**Program** `Example72;`

---

```

{ This program demonstrates the FormatBuf function }

Uses sysutils;

Var
  S : ShortString;

Const
  Fmt : ShortString = 'For some nice examples of fomatting see %s.';

Begin
  S:= '';
  SetLength(S, FormatBuf (S[1], 255, Fmt[1], Length(Fmt), ['Format']));
  WriteLn (S);
End.

```

---

### 29.12.110 FormatCurr

Synopsis: Format a currency

Declaration: `function FormatCurr(const Format: String; Value: Currency) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatCurr` formats the currency `Value` according to the formatting rule in `Format`, and returns the resulting string.

For an explanation of the formatting characters, see `FormatFloat` (1159).

See also: `FormatFloat` (1159), `FloatToText` (1150)

### 29.12.111 FormatDateTime

Synopsis: Return a string representation of a `TDateTime` value with a given format.

Declaration: `function FormatDateTime(FormatStr: String; DateTime: TDateTime) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatDateTime` formats the date and time encoded in `DateTime` according to the formatting given in `FormatStr`. The complete list of formatting characters can be found in `formatchars` (1085).

Errors: On error (such as an invalid character in the formatting string), and `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `DateTimeToStr` (1122), `DateToStr` (1125), `TimeToStr` (1201), `StrToDateTime` (1192)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex14.pp`

---

**Program** `Example14`;

```

{ This program demonstrates the FormatDateTime function }

Uses sysutils;

Var ThisMoment : TDateTime;

```

**Begin**

```

ThisMoment:=Now;
WriteLn ( 'Now : ',FormatDateTime( 'hh:nn ',ThisMoment));
WriteLn ( 'Now : ',FormatDateTime( 'DD MM YYYY',ThisMoment));
WriteLn ( 'Now : ',FormatDateTime( 'c',ThisMoment));
End.

```

---

**29.12.112 FormatFloat**

Synopsis: Format a float according to a certain mask.

Declaration: `function FormatFloat(const Format: String;Value: Extended) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `FormatFloat` formats the floating-point value given by `Value` using the format specifications in `Format`. The format specifier can give format specifications for positive, negative or zero values (separated by a semicolon).

If the format specifier is empty or the value needs more than 18 digits to be correctly represented, the result is formatted with a call to `FloatToStrF` (1148) with the `ffGeneral` format option.

The following format specifiers are supported:

- 0** is a digit place holder. If there is a corresponding digit in the value being formatted, then it replaces the 0. If not, the 0 is left as-is.
- #** is also a digit place holder. If there is a corresponding digit in the value being formatted, then it replaces the #. If not, it is removed. by a space.
- .** determines the location of the decimal point. Only the first '.' character is taken into account. If the value contains digits after the decimal point, then it is replaced by the value of the `DecimalSeparator` character.
- ,** determines the use of the thousand separator character in the output string. If the format string contains one or more ',' characters, then thousand separators will be used. The `ThousandSeparator` character is used.
- E+** determines the use of scientific notation. If 'E+' or 'E-' (or their lowercase counterparts) are present then scientific notation is used. The number of digits in the output string is determined by the number of 0 characters after the 'E+'
- ;** This character separates sections for positive, negative, and zero numbers in the format string.

Errors: If an error occurs, an exception is raised.

See also: `FloatToStr` (1148)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex89.pp`

---

**Program** `Example89;`

*{ This program demonstrates the FormatFloat function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Const**

```

NrFormat=9;
FormatStrings : Array[1..NrFormat] of string = (
    '0',
    '0',
    '0',
    '0',
    '0',
    '0',
    '0',
    '0',
    '0'
);

```

---

```

    '0',
    '0.00',
    '#.##',
    '#,##0.00',
    '#,##0.00;(#,##0.00)',
    '#,##0.00;;Zero',
    '0.000E+00',
    '#.###E-0');
NrValue = 5;
FormatValues : Array[1..NrValue] of Double =
    (1234, -1234, 0.5, 0, -0.5);

Width  = 12;
FWidth = 20;

Var
    I, J : Integer;
    S : String;

begin
    Write('Format': FWidth);
    For I:=1 to NrValue do
        Write(FormatValues[I]: Width:2);
    Writeln;
    For I:=1 to NrFormat do
        begin
            Write(FormatStrings[I]: FWidth);
            For J:=1 to NrValue do
                begin
                    S:=FormatFloat(FormatStrings[I], FormatValues[J]);
                    Write(S: Width);
                end;
            Writeln;
        end;
    End.

```

---

### 29.12.113 FreeAndNil

Synopsis: Free object if needed, and set object reference to Nil

Declaration: `procedure FreeAndNil(var obj)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FreeAndNil` will free the object in `Obj` and will set the reference in `Obj` to `Nil`. The reference is set to `Nil` first, so if an exception occurs in the destructor of the object, the reference will be `Nil` anyway.

Errors: Exceptions that occur during the destruction of `Obj` are not caught.

### 29.12.114 GetAppConfigDir

Synopsis: Return the appropriate directory for the application's configuration files.

Declaration: `function GetAppConfigDir(Global: Boolean) : String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `GetAppConfigDir` returns the name of a directory in which the application should store its configuration files on the current OS. If the parameter `Global` is `True` then the directory returned is a global directory, i.e. valid for all users on the system. If the parameter `Global` is false, then the directory is specific for the user who is executing the program. On systems that do not support multi-user environments, these two directories may be the same.

The directory which is returned is the name of the directory where the application is supposed to store files. This does not mean that the directory exists, or that the user can write in this directory (especially if `Global=True`). It just returns the name of the appropriate location.

On systems where the operating system provides a call to determine this location, this call will be used. On systems where there is no such call, an algorithm is used which reflects common practice on that system.

The application name is deduced from the binary name via the `ApplicationName` (1114) call, but can be configured by means of the `OnGetApplicationName` (1099) callback.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetAppConfigFile` (1161), `ApplicationName` (1114), `OnGetApplicationName` (1099), `CreateDir` (1120), `SysConfigDir` (1093)

### 29.12.115 `GetAppConfigFile`

**Synopsis:** Return an appropriate name for an application configuration file.

**Declaration:** `function GetAppConfigFile(Global: Boolean) : String`  
`function GetAppConfigFile(Global: Boolean;SubDir: Boolean) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `GetAppConfigFile` returns the name of a file in which the application can store its configuration parameters. The `Global` parameter determines whether it is a global configuration file (value `True`) or a personal configuration file (value `False`). The parameter `SubDir`, in case it is set to `True`, will insert the name of a directory before the filename. This can be used in case the application needs to store other data than configuration data in an application-specific directory. Default behaviour is to set this to `False`.

No assumptions should be made about the existence or writeability of this file, or the directory where the file should reside.

On systems where the operating system provides a call to determine the location of configuration files, this call will be used. On systems where there is no such call, an algorithm is used which reflects common practice on that system.

The application name is deduced from the binary name via the `ApplicationName` (1114) call, but can be configured by means of the `OnGetApplicationName` (1099) callback.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `GetAppConfigDir` (1160), `OnGetApplicationName` (1099), `ApplicationName` (1114), `CreateDir` (1120), `ConfigExtension` (1087), `SysConfigDir` (1093)

### 29.12.116 `GetCurrentDir`

**Synopsis:** Return the current working directory of the application.

**Declaration:** `function GetCurrentDir : String`

**Visibility:** default



**29.12.118 GetEnvironmentString**

Synopsis: Return an environment variable by index.

Declaration: `function GetEnvironmentString(Index: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnvironmentString` returns the `Index`-th environment variable. The index is 1 based, and is bounded from above by the result of `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1163).

For an example, `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1163).

Errors: If there is no environment, -1 may be returned.

See also: `GetEnvironmentVariable` (1163), `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1163)

**29.12.119 GetEnvironmentVariable**

Synopsis: Return the value of an environment variable.

Declaration: `function GetEnvironmentVariable(const EnvVar: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnvironmentVariable` returns the value of the `EnvVar` environment variable. If the specified variable does not exist or `EnvVar` is empty, an empty string is returned.

See also: `GetEnvironmentString` (1163), `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` (1163)

**29.12.120 GetEnvironmentVariableCount**

Synopsis: Return the number of variables in the environment.

Declaration: `function GetEnvironmentVariableCount : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnvironmentVariableCount` returns the number of variables in the environment. The number is 1 based, but the result may be zero if there are no environment variables.

Errors: If there is no environment, -1 may be returned.

See also: `GetEnvironmentString` (1163), `GetEnvironmentVariable` (1163)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex92.pp`

---

```
{ $h+ }
program example92;

{ This program demonstrates the
  GetEnvironmentVariableCount function }

uses sysutils;

Var
  I : Integer;

begin
  For I:=1 to GetEnvironmentVariableCount do
    Writeln(i:3, ' : ', GetEnvironmentString(i));
end.
```

---



**29.12.121 GetFileHandle**

Synopsis: Extract OS handle from an untyped file or text file.

Declaration: `function GetFileHandle(var f: File) : LongInt`  
`function GetFileHandle(var f: Text) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFileHandle` returns the operating system handle for the file descriptor `F`. It can be used in various file operations which are not directly supported by the pascal language.

**29.12.122 GetLastOSError**

Synopsis: Return the last code from the OS.

Declaration: `function GetLastOSError : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLastOSError` returns the error code from the last operating system call. It does not reset this code. In general, it should be called when an operating system call reported an error condition. In that case, `GetLastOSError` gives extended information about the error.

No assumptions should be made about the resetting of the error code by subsequent OS calls. This may be platform dependent.

See also: `RaiseLastOSError` ([1174](#))

**29.12.123 GetLocalTime**

Synopsis: Get the local time.

Declaration: `procedure GetLocalTime(var SystemTime: TSystemTime)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLocalTime` returns the system time in a `TSystemTime` ([1098](#)) format.

Errors: None.

See also: `Now` ([1173](#)), `Date` ([1121](#)), `Time` ([1199](#)), `TSystemTime` ([1098](#))

**29.12.124 GetTempDir**

Synopsis: Return name of system's temporary directory

Declaration: `function GetTempDir(Global: Boolean) : String`  
`function GetTempDir : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTempDir` returns the temporary directory of the system. If `Global` is `True` (the default value) it returns the system temporary directory, if it is `False` then a directory private to the user is returned. The returned name will end with a directory delimiter character.

These directories may be the same. No guarantee is made that this directory exists or is writeable by the user.

The `OnGetTempDir` ([1099](#)) handler may be set to provide custom handling of this routine: One could implement callbacks which take into consideration frameworks like KDE or GNOME, and return a different value from the default system implementation.

Errors: On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: [OnGetTempDir \(1099\)](#), [GetTempFileName \(1165\)](#)

### 29.12.125 GetTempFileName

Synopsis: Return the name of a temporary file.

Declaration: 

```
function GetTempFileName(const Dir: String;const Prefix: String)
                        : String
function GetTempFileName : String
```

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTempFileName` returns the name of a temporary file in directory `Dir`. The name of the file starts with `Prefix`.

If `Dir` is empty, the value returned by `GetTempDir` is used, and if `Prefix` is empty, 'TMP' is used.

The `OnGetTempFile (1099)` handler may be set to provide custom handling of this routine: One could implement callbacks which take into consideration frameworks like KDE or GNOME, and return a different value from the default system implementation.

Errors: On error, an empty string is returned.

See also: [GetTempDir \(1164\)](#), [OnGetTempFile \(1099\)](#)

### 29.12.126 IncludeTrailingBackslash

Synopsis: Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: 

```
function IncludeTrailingBackslash(const Path: String) : String
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IncludeTrailingBackslash` is provided for backwards compatibility with Delphi. Use `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter (1165)` instead.

See also: [IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter \(1165\)](#), [ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter \(1132\)](#), [PathDelim \(1092\)](#), [IsPathDelimiter \(1169\)](#)

### 29.12.127 IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter

Synopsis: Add trailing directory separator to a pathname, if needed.

Declaration: 

```
function IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter(const Path: String) : String
```

Visibility: default

Description: `IncludeTrailingPathDelimiter` adds a trailing path delimiter character ([PathDelim \(1092\)](#)) to `Path` if none is present yet, and returns the result. If `Path` is empty, nothing is added.

See also: [IncludeTrailingBackslash \(1165\)](#), [ExcludeTrailingPathDelimiter \(1132\)](#), [PathDelim \(1092\)](#), [IsPathDelimiter \(1169\)](#)

**29.12.128 IncMonth**

Synopsis: Increases the month in a `TDateTime` value with a given amount.

Declaration: `function IncMonth(const DateTime: TDateTime;NumberOfMonths: Integer) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `IncMonth` increases the month number in `DateTime` with `NumberOfMonths`. It wraps the result as to get a month between 1 and 12, and updates the year accordingly. `NumberOfMonths` can be negative, and can be larger than 12 (in absolute value).

Errors: None.

See also: [Date \(1121\)](#), [Time \(1199\)](#), [Now \(1173\)](#)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex15.pp`

---

**Program** `Example15;`

*{ This program demonstrates the IncMonth function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `ThisDay : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

```

  ThisDay:=Date;
  Writeln ( 'ThisDay : ',DateToStr ( ThisDay ));
  Writeln ( ' 6 months ago : ',DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , -6)));
  Writeln ( ' 6 months from now : ',DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 6)));
  Writeln ( '12 months ago : ',DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , -12)));
  Writeln ( '12 months from now : ',DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 12)));
  Writeln ( '18 months ago : ',DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , -18)));
  Writeln ( '18 months from now : ',DateToStr ( IncMonth ( ThisDay , 18)));
End.
```

---

**29.12.129 InterLockedDecrement**

Synopsis: Thread-safe integer decrement

Declaration: `function InterLockedDecrement(var Target: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InterLockedDecrement` decrements `Target` in a thread-safe way, and returns the new value of `Target`

See also: [InterlockedIncrement \(1167\)](#), [InterlockedExchange \(1166\)](#), [InterlockedExchangeAdd \(1167\)](#)

**29.12.130 InterLockedExchange**

Synopsis: Thread-safe exchange of 2 values.

Declaration: `function InterLockedExchange(var Target: LongInt;Source: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InterlockedDecrement` replaces `Target` with `Source` in a thread-safe way, and returns the old value of `Target`

See also: `InterlockedIncrement` ([1167](#)), `InterlockedDecrement` ([1166](#)), `InterlockedExchange` ([1166](#)), `InterlockedExchangeAdd` ([1167](#))

### 29.12.131 `InterLockedExchangeAdd`

Synopsis: Thread-safe exchange of 2 values

Declaration: `function InterLockedExchangeAdd(var Target: LongInt; Source: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InterlockedDecrement` adds to `Target` the value of `Source` in a thread-safe way, and returns the old value of `Target`

See also: `InterlockedIncrement` ([1167](#)), `InterlockedDecrement` ([1166](#)), `InterlockedExchange` ([1166](#))

### 29.12.132 `InterLockedIncrement`

Synopsis: Thread-safe integer increment.

Declaration: `function InterLockedIncrement(var Target: LongInt) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `InterlockedIncrement` increments `Target` in a thread-safe way, and returns the new value of `Target`

See also: `InterlockedDecrement` ([1166](#)), `InterlockedExchange` ([1166](#)), `InterlockedExchangeAdd` ([1167](#))

### 29.12.133 `IntToHex`

Synopsis: Convert an integer value to a hexadecimal string.

Declaration: `function IntToHex(Value: Integer; Digits: Integer) : String`  
`function IntToHex(Value: Int64; Digits: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `IntToHex` converts `Value` to a hexadecimal string representation. The result will contain at least `Digits` characters. If `Digits` is less than the needed number of characters, the string will NOT be truncated. If `Digits` is larger than the needed number of characters, the result is padded with zeroes.

Errors: None.

See also: `IntToStr` ([1168](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex73.pp`

---

```

Program Example73;

{ This program demonstrates the IntToHex function }

Uses sysutils;

Var I : longint;

Begin
  For I:=0 to 31 do
    begin
      WriteLn (IntToHex(1 shl I,8));
      WriteLn (IntToHex(15 shl I,8))
    end;
End.

```

---

### 29.12.134 IntToStr

**Synopsis:** Convert an integer value to a decimal string.

**Declaration:** function IntToStr(Value: Integer) : String  
 function IntToStr(Value: Int64) : String  
 function IntToStr(Value: QWord) : String

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** IntToStr converts Value to its string representation. The resulting string has only as much characters as needed to represent the value. If the value is negative a minus sign is prepended to the string.

**Errors:** None.

See also: IntToHex ([1167](#)), StrToInt ([1194](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex74.pp

---

```

Program Example74;

{ This program demonstrates the IntToStr function }

Uses sysutils;

Var I : longint;

Begin
  For I:=0 to 31 do
    begin
      WriteLn (IntToStr(1 shl I));
      WriteLn (IntToStr(15 shl I));
    end;
End.

```

---

### 29.12.135 IsDelimiter

**Synopsis:** Check whether a given string is a delimiter character.

**Declaration:** `function IsDelimiter(const Delimiters: String;const S: String;  
Index: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsDelimiter` checks whether the `Index`-th character in the string `S` is a delimiter character as passed in `Delimiters`. If `Index` is out of range, `False` is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `LastDelimiter` ([1170](#))

### 29.12.136 IsLeapYear

Synopsis: Determine whether a year is a leap year.

**Declaration:** `function IsLeapYear(Year: Word) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `IsLeapYear` returns `True` if `Year` is a leap year, `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `IncMonth` ([1166](#)), `Date` ([1121](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex16.pp`

---

**Program** Example16;

*{ This program demonstrates the IsLeapYear function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** YY,MM,dd : Word;

**Procedure** TestYear (Y : Word);

**begin**

**WriteLn** (Y, ' is leap year : ',IsLeapYear(Y));  
**end**;

**Begin**

**DeCodeDate** (Date ,YY,mm,dd );  
    TestYear(yy);  
    TestYear(2000);  
    TestYear(1900);  
    TestYear(1600);  
    TestYear(1992);  
    TestYear(1995);

**End.**

---

### 29.12.137 IsPathDelimiter

Synopsis: Is the character at the given position a pathdelimiter ?

**Declaration:** `function IsPathDelimiter(const Path: String;Index: Integer) : Boolean`



Errors:

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex88.pp

---

```

Program example88;

{ This program demonstrates the LastDelimiter function }

uses SysUtils;

begin
  WriteLn (LastDelimiter ( '\.:' , 'c:\filename.ext ' ));
end.

```

---

### 29.12.140 LeftStr

Synopsis: Return a number of characters starting at the left of a string.

Declaration: `function LeftStr(const S: String;Count: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `LeftStr` returns the `Count` leftmost characters of `S`. It is equivalent to a call to `Copy ( S , 1 , Count )`.

Errors: None.

See also: `RightStr` ([1176](#)), `TrimLeft` ([1202](#)), `TrimRight` ([1202](#)), `Trim` ([1201](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex76.pp

---

```

Program Example76;

{ This program demonstrates the LeftStr function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  WriteLn ( LeftStr ( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ' ,20));
  WriteLn ( LeftStr ( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ' ,15));
  WriteLn ( LeftStr ( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ' ,1));
  WriteLn ( LeftStr ( 'abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz ' ,200));
End.

```

---

### 29.12.141 LoadStr

Synopsis: Load a string from the resource tables.

Declaration: `function LoadStr(Ident: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: This function is not yet implemented. resources are not yet supported.

Errors:



**29.12.142 LowerCase**

Synopsis: Return a lowercase version of a string.

Declaration: `function LowerCase(const s: String) : String; Overload`

Visibility: default

Description: `LowerCase` returns the lowercase equivalent of `S`. Ansi characters are not taken into account, only ASCII codes below 127 are converted. It is completely equivalent to the lowercase function of the system unit, and is provided for compatibility only.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiLowerCase` ([1105](#)), `UpperCase` ([1205](#)), `AnsiUpperCase` ([1113](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex77.pp`

---

**Program** `Example77;`

`{ This program demonstrates the LowerCase function }`

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( LowerCase( 'THIS WILL COME out all LoWeRcAsE !' ));`  
**End.**

---

**29.12.143 MSecsToTimeStamp**

Synopsis: Convert a number of milliseconds to a `TDateTime` value.

Declaration: `function MSecsToTimeStamp(MSecs: Comp) : TTimeStamp`

Visibility: default

Description: `MSecsToTimeStamp` converts the given number of milliseconds to a `TTimeStamp` date/time notation.

Use `TTimeStamp` variables if you need to keep very precise track of time.

Errors: None.

See also: `TimeStampToMSecs` ([1200](#)), `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1124](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex17.pp`

---

**Program** `Example17;`

`{ This program demonstrates the MSecsToTimeStamp function }`

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `MS : Comp;`

`TS : TTimeStamp;`

`DT : TDateTime;`

**Begin**

`TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp(Now);`

`WriteLn ( 'Now in days since 1/1/0001 : ',TS.Date);`

`WriteLn ( 'Now in millisecs since midnight : ',TS.Time);`

---

```

MS:=TimeStampToMSecs(TS);
WriteLn ( 'Now in millisecs since 1/1/0001 : ',MS);
MS:=MS- 1000*3600*2;
TS:=MSecsToTimeStamp(MS);
DT:=TimeStampToDateTime(TS);
WriteLn ( 'Now minus 1 day : ',DateTimeToStr(DT));
End.

```

---

### 29.12.144 NewStr

Synopsis: Allocate a new ansistring on the heap.

Declaration: `function NewStr(const S: String) : PString`

Visibility: default

Description: `NewStr` assigns a new dynamic string on the heap, copies `S` into it, and returns a pointer to the newly assigned string.

This function is obsolete, and shouldn't be used any more. The `AnsiString` mechanism also allocates ansistrings on the heap, and should be preferred over this mechanism.

For an example, see `AssignStr` ([1114](#)).

Errors: If not enough memory is present, an `EOutOfMemory` exception will be raised.

See also: `AssignStr` ([1114](#)), `DisposeStr` ([1129](#))

### 29.12.145 Now

Synopsis: Returns the current date and time.

Declaration: `function Now : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `Now` returns the current date and time. It is equivalent to `Date+Time`.

Errors: None.

See also: `Date` ([1121](#)), `Time` ([1199](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex18.pp`

---

**Program** Example18;

*{ This program demonstrates the Now function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Now : ',**DateTimeToStr**(**Now**));

**End.**

---

**29.12.146 OutOfMemoryError**

Synopsis: Raise an EOutOfMemory exception

Declaration: `procedure OutOfMemoryError`

Visibility: default

Description: `OutOfMemoryError` raises an EOutOfMemory (1212) exception, with an exception object that has been allocated on the heap at program startup. The program should never create an EOutOfMemory (1212) exception, but always call this routine.

See also: EOutOfMemory (1212)

**29.12.147 QuotedStr**

Synopsis: Return a quotes version of a string.

Declaration: `function QuotedStr(const S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `QuotedStr` returns the string *S*, quoted with single quotes. This means that *S* is enclosed in single quotes, and every single quote in *S* is doubled. It is equivalent to a call to `AnsiQuotedStr(s, '"')`.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiQuotedStr` (1106), `AnsiExtractQuotedStr` (1104)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex78.pp`

---

**Program** `Example78;`

*{ This program demonstrates the QuotedStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `S : AnsiString;`

**Begin**

`S := 'He said ''Hello'' and walked on';`

`WriteLn (S);`

`WriteLn (' becomes');`

`WriteLn (QuotedStr(S));`

**End.**

---

**29.12.148 RaiseLastError**

Synopsis: Raise an exception with the last Operating System error code.

Declaration: `procedure RaiseLastError`

Visibility: default

Description: `RaiseLastError` raises an EOSErrors (1212) exception with the error code returned by `GetLastError`. If the Error code is nonzero, then the corresponding error message will be returned. If the error code is zero, a standard message will be returned.

Errors: This procedure may not be implemented on all platforms. If it is not, then a normal Exception (1214) will be raised.

See also: EOSError (1212), GetLastOSError (1164), Exception (1214)

### 29.12.149 RemoveDir

Synopsis: Remove a directory from the filesystem.

Declaration: `function RemoveDir(const Dir: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `RemoveDir` removes directory `Dir` from the disk. If the directory is not absolute, it is appended to the current working directory.

For an example, see `CreateDir` (1120).

Errors: In case of error (e.g. the directory isn't empty) the function returns `False`. If successful, `True` is returned.

### 29.12.150 RenameFile

Synopsis: Rename a file.

Declaration: `function RenameFile(const OldName: String; const NewName: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `RenameFile` renames a file from `OldName` to `NewName`. The function returns `True` if successful, `False` otherwise. *Remark:* you cannot rename across disks or partitions.

Errors: On Error, `False` is returned.

See also: `DeleteFile` (1127)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex44.pp`

---

**Program** Example44;

*{ This program demonstrates the RenameFile function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Var** F : Longint;  
S : **String**;

**Begin**

S := 'Some short file.';  
F := FileCreate ( 'test.dap' );  
FileWrite ( F, S[1], Length(S) );  
**FileClose**(F);  
**If** **RenameFile** ( 'test.dap', 'test.dat' ) **then**  
    **WriteLn** ( 'Successfully renamed files.' );

**End.**

---

### 29.12.151 RightStr

Synopsis: Return a number of characters from a string, starting at the end.

Declaration: `function RightStr(const S: String;Count: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `RightStr` returns the `Count` rightmost characters of `S`. It is equivalent to a call to `Copy(S, Length(S)+1-Count, Count)`.  
If `Count` is larger than the actual length of `S` only the real length will be used.

Errors: None.

See also: `LeftStr` ([1171](#)), `Trim` ([1201](#)), `TrimLeft` ([1202](#)), `TrimRight` ([1202](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex79.pp`

---

**Program** `Example79;`

*{ This program demonstrates the RightStr function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

**WriteLn** (`RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',20)`);

**WriteLn** (`RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',15)`);

**WriteLn** (`RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',1)`);

**WriteLn** (`RightStr('abcdefghijklmnopqrstuvwxyz',200)`);

**End.**

---

### 29.12.152 SameFileName

Synopsis: Are two filenames referring to the same file ?

Declaration: `function SameFileName(const S1: String;const S2: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameFileName` returns `True` if calling `AnsiCompareFileName` ([1101](#)) with arguments `S1` and `S2` returns 0, and returns `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `AnsiCompareFileName` ([1101](#))

### 29.12.153 SameText

Synopsis: Checks whether 2 strings are the same (case insensitive)

Declaration: `function SameText(const s1: String;const s2: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SameText` calls `CompareText` ([1119](#)) with `S1` and `S2` as parameters and returns `True` if the result of that call is zero, or `False` otherwise.

Errors: None.

See also: `CompareText` ([1119](#)), `AnsiSameText` ([1106](#)), `AnsiSameStr` ([1106](#))

### 29.12.154 SetCurrentDir

Synopsis: Set the current directory of the application.

Declaration: `function SetCurrentDir(const NewDir: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetCurrentDir` sets the current working directory of your program to `NewDir`. It returns `True` if the function was successful, `False` otherwise.

Errors: In case of error, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetCurrentDir` ([1161](#))

### 29.12.155 SetDirSeparators

Synopsis: Set the directory separators to the known directory separators.

Declaration: `function SetDirSeparators(const FileName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetDirSeparators` returns `FileName` with all possible `DirSeparators` replaced by `OSDirSeparator`.

Errors: None.

See also: `ExpandFileName` ([1133](#)), `ExtractFilePath` ([1136](#)), `ExtractFileDir` ([1134](#))

---

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex47.pp`

**Program** `Example47;`

*{ This program demonstrates the SetDirSeparators function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( SetDirSeparators ( '/pp\bin/win32\ppc386' ));`

**End.**

---

### 29.12.156 ShowException

Synopsis: Show the current exception to the user.

Declaration: `procedure ShowException(ExceptObject: TObject; ExceptAddr: Pointer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ShowException` shows a message stating that a `ExceptObject` was raised at address `ExceptAddr`. It uses `ExceptionErrorMessage` ([1132](#)) to create the message, and is aware of the fact whether the application is a console application or a GUI application. For a console application, the message is written to standard error output. For a GUI application, `OnShowException` ([1099](#)) is executed.

Errors: If, for a GUI application, `OnShowException` ([1099](#)) is not set, no message will be displayed to the user.

The exception message can be at most 255 characters long: It is possible that no memory can be allocated on the heap, so `ansistrings` are not available, so a `shortstring` is used to display the message.

See also: `ExceptObject` ([1132](#)), `ExceptAddr` ([1131](#)), `ExceptionErrorMessage` ([1132](#))

**29.12.157 Sleep**

Synopsis: Suspend execution of a program for a certain time.

Declaration: `procedure Sleep(milliseconds: Cardinal)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `Sleep` suspends the execution of the program for the specified number of milliseconds (`milliseconds`). After the specified period has expired, program execution resumes.

**Remark:** The indicated time is not exact, i.e. it is a minimum time. No guarantees are made as to the exact duration of the suspension.

**29.12.158 StrAlloc**

Synopsis: Allocate a null-terminated string on the heap.

Declaration: `function StrAlloc(Size: cardinal) : PChar`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `StrAlloc` reserves memory on the heap for a string with length `Len`, terminating `#0` included, and returns a pointer to it.

Additionally, `StrAlloc` allocates 4 extra bytes to store the size of the allocated memory. Therefore this function is NOT compatible with the `StrAlloc` (1178) function of the `Strings` unit.

For an example, see `StrBufSize` (1178).

Errors: None.

See also: `StrBufSize` (1178), `StrDispose` (1181), `StrAlloc` (1178)

**29.12.159 StrBufSize**

Synopsis: Return the size of a null-terminated string allocated on the heap.

Declaration: `function StrBufSize(Str: PChar) : SizeUInt`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `StrBufSize` returns the memory allocated for `Str`. This function ONLY gives the correct result if `Str` was allocated using `StrAlloc` (1178).

Errors: If no more memory is available, a runtime error occurs.

See also: `StrAlloc` (1178), `StrDispose` (1181)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** `Example46`;

```
{ This program demonstrates the StrBufSize function }
{$H+}
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Const S = 'Some nice string';
```

```
Var P : Pchar;
```

---

```

Begin
  P:= StrAlloc (Length(S)+1);
  StrPCopy(P,S);
  Write (P, ' has length ',length(S));
  Writeln ( ' and buffer size ',StrBufSize(P));
  StrDispose(P);
End.

```

---

### 29.12.160 StrByteType

Synopsis: Return the type of byte in a null-terminated string for a multi-byte character set

Declaration: function StrByteType(Str: PChar;Index: Cardinal) : TmbcsByteType

Visibility: default

Description: StrByteType returns the type of byte in the null-terminated string Str at (0-based) position Index.

Errors: No checking on the index is performed.

See also: TmbcsByteType ([1097](#)), ByteType ([1116](#))

### 29.12.161 strcat

Synopsis: Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings.

Declaration: function strcat(dest: pchar;source: pchar) : pchar

Visibility: default

Description: Attaches Source to Dest and returns Dest.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrLCat ([1184](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrCat function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar String.';

**Var** P2 : PChar;

**begin**

```

  P2:= StrAlloc ( StrLen(P1)*2+1);
  StrMove (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2=P1 }
  StrCat (P2,P1);                { Append P2 once more }
  Writeln ( 'P2 : ',P2);

```

**end.**

---



**29.12.162 StrCharLength**

Synopsis: Return the length of a null-terminated string in characters.

Declaration: `function StrCharLength(const Str: PChar) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrCharLength` returns the length of the null-terminated string `Str` (a widestring) in characters (not in bytes). It uses the `widestringmanager` to do this.

**29.12.163 strcmp**

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case sensitive.

Declaration: `function strcmp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings `S1` and `S2`. The result is

- A negative `Longint` when `S1<S2`.
- 0 when `S1=S2`.
- A positive `Longint` when `S1>S2`.

For an example, see `StrLComp` ([1184](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLComp` ([1184](#)), `StrIComp` ([1183](#)), `StrLComp` ([1187](#))

**29.12.164 strcpy**

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string

Declaration: `function strcpy(dest: pchar;source: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copy the null terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to `Dest`. `Dest` needs enough room to contain `Source`, i.e. `StrLen(Source)+1` bytes.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrPCopy` ([1189](#)), `StrLCopy` ([1185](#)), `StrECopy` ([1181](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex4.pp`

---

**Program** `Example4`;

**Uses** `strings`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrCopy function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.'`;

**var** `PP : PChar`;

**begin**

---

```

PP:= StrAlloc ( StrLen (P)+1);
STrCopy (PP,P);
If StrComp (PP,P)<>0 then
  Writeln ( 'Oh-oh problems ... ')
else
  Writeln ( 'All is well : PP=',PP);
end.

```

---

### 29.12.165 StrDispose

Synopsis: Dispose of a null-terminated string on the heap.

Declaration: `procedure StrDispose(Str: PChar)`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrDispose` frees any memory allocated for `Str`. This function will only function correctly if `Str` has been allocated using `StrAlloc` (1178) from the `SysUtils` unit.

For an example, see `StrBufSize` (1178).

Errors: If an invalid pointer is passed, or a pointer not allocated with `StrAlloc`, an error may occur.

See also: `StrBufSize` (1178), `StrAlloc` (1178), `StrDispose` (1181)

### 29.12.166 strecopy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, return a pointer to the end.

Declaration: `function strecopy(dest: pchar;source: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies the Null-terminated string in `Source` to `Dest`, and returns a pointer to the end (i.e. the terminating Null-character) of the copied string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: `StrLCopy` (1185), `StrCopy` (1180)

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex6.pp`

---

**Program** Example6;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrECopy function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';

**Var** PP : PChar;

**begin**

PP:= StrAlloc ( StrLen (P)+1);

If Longint(StrECopy(PP,P)) – Longint(PP)<>StrLen(P) then

Writeln('Something is wrong here !')

else

Writeln ( 'PP= ',PP);

**end.**

---

**29.12.167 strend**

**Synopsis:** Return a pointer to the end of a null-terminated string

```
Declaration: function strend(p: pchar) : pchar
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** Returns a pointer to the end of P. (i.e. to the terminating null-character).

Errors: None.

See also: StrLen ([1186](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex7.pp

---

**Program Example6:**

**Uses** strings;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the StrEnd function. }
```

```
Const P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';
```

**begin**

**If** Longint(**StrEnd**(P)) – Longint(P) <> **StrLen**(P) **then**

```
WriteLn('Something is wrong here !')
```

**else**

```
WriteIn ( 'All is well..' );
```

**end.**

### 29.12.168 StrFmt

**Synopsis:** Format a string with given arguments, store the result in a buffer.

```
Declaration: function StrFmt(Buffer: PChar;Fmt: PChar;const args: Array[] of const)
                : PChar
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StrFmt` will format `fmt` with `Args`, as the `Format` (1152) function does, and it will store the result in `Buffer`. The function returns `Buffer`. `Buffer` should point to enough space to contain the whole result.

**Errors:** for a list of errors, see [Format \(1152\)](#).

See also: [StrLFmt \(1186\)](#), [FmtStr \(1151\)](#), [Format \(1152\)](#), [FormatBuf \(1157\)](#)

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex80.pp

---

**Program** Example80;

```
{ This program demonstrates the StrFmt function }
```

**Uses** sysutils;

```
Var S : AnsiString;
```

## Begin

---

```

    SetLength(S,80);
    WriteLn (StrFmt (@S[1], 'For some nice examples of fomattng see %s.', ['Format']));
End.

```

---

### 29.12.169 stricmp

Synopsis: Compare 2 null-terminated strings, case insensitive.

Declaration: `function stricmp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp ([1184](#)), StrComp ([1180](#)), StrLComp ([1187](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

```

Const P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';
      P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

```

```

Var L : Longint;

```

```

begin

```

```

    Write ( 'P1 and P2 are ');
    If StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 then write ( 'NOT ');
    write ( 'equal. The first ');
    L:=1;
    While StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 do inc (L);
    dec(L);
    WriteLn (L, ' characters are the same.');
```

```

end.

```

---

### 29.12.170 StringReplace

Synopsis: Replace occurrences of one substring with another in a string.

Declaration: `function StringReplace(const S: String;const OldPattern: String;  
const NewPattern: String;Flags: TReplaceFlags)  
: String`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringReplace` searches the string `S` for occurrences of the string `OldPattern` and, if it is found, replaces it with `NewPattern`. It returns the resulting string. The behaviour of `StringReplace` can be tuned with `Flags`, which is of type `TReplaceFlags` (1097). Standard behaviour is to replace only the first occurrence of `OldPattern`, and to search case sensitively.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `TReplaceFlags` (1097)

### 29.12.171 `strlcat`

**Synopsis:** Concatenate 2 null-terminated strings, with length boundary.

**Declaration:** `function strlcat(dest: pchar;source: pchar;l: SizeInt) : pchar`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Adds `MaxLen` characters from `Source` to `Dest`, and adds a terminating null-character. Returns `Dest`.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `StrCat` (1179)

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex12.pp`

---

**Program** `Example12;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCat function. }*

**Const** `P1 : PChar = '1234567890';`

**Var** `P2 : PChar;`

**begin**

`P2:=StrAlloc ( StrLen(P1)*2+1);`

`P2^:=#0; { Zero length }`

`StrCat (P2,P1);`

`StrLCat (P2,P1,5);`

`Writeln ( 'P2 = ',P2);`

**end.**

---

### 29.12.172 `strlcomp`

**Synopsis:** Compare limited number of characters of 2 null-terminated strings

**Declaration:** `function strlcomp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar;l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Compares maximum `L` characters of the null-terminated strings `S1` and `S2`. The result is

- A negative `Longint` when `S1<S2`.
- 0 when `S1=S2`.
- A positive `Longint` when `S1>S2`.

Errors: None.

See also: StrComp ([1180](#)), StrIComp ([1183](#)), StrLComp ([1187](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex8.pp

---

**Program** Example8;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLComp function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is the first string.';  
           P2 : PChar = 'This is the second string.';

**Var** L : Longint;

**begin**

**Write** ( 'P1 and P2 are ');  
  **If** StrComp (P1,P2)<>0 **then write** ( 'NOT ');  
  **write** ( 'equal. The first ');  
  L:=1;  
  **While** StrLComp(P1,P2,L)=0 **do inc** (L);  
  **dec**(L);  
  **WriteLn** (L, ' characters are the same.');

**end.**

---

### 29.12.173 strlcopy

Synopsis: Copy a null-terminated string, limited in length.

Declaration: function strlcopy(dest: pchar;source: pchar;maxlen: SizeInt) : pchar

Visibility: default

Description: Copies MaxLen characters from Source to Dest, and makes Dest a null terminated string.

Errors: No length checking is performed.

See also: StrCopy ([1180](#)), StrECopy ([1181](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex5.pp

---

**Program** Example5;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLCopy function. }*

**Const** P : PChar = '123456789ABCDEF';

**var** PP : PChar;

**begin**

  PP:=StrAlloc(11);  
  **WriteLn** ( 'First 10 characters of P : ',StrLCopy (PP,P,10));  
**end.**

---

**29.12.174 strlen**

Synopsis: Length of a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strlen(p: pchar) : sizeint`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the length of the null-terminated string P.

Errors: None.

See also: `StrNew` ([1188](#))

**Listing:** `./stringex/ex1.pp`

---

**Program** `Example1;`

**Uses** `strings;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLen function. }*

**Const** `P : PChar = 'This is a constant pchar string';`

**begin**

`WriteLn ( 'P              : ',p);`

`WriteLn ( 'length(P) : ',StrLen(P));`

**end.**

---

**29.12.175 StrLFmt**

Synopsis: Format a string with given arguments, but with limited length.

Declaration: `function StrLFmt(Buffer: PChar;Maxlen: Cardinal;Fmt: PChar;  
                          const args: Array[] of const) : Pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrLFmt` will format `fmt` with `Args`, as the `Format` ([1152](#)) function does, and it will store maximally `Maxlen` characters of the result in `Buffer`. The function returns `Buffer`. `Buffer` should point to enough space to contain `MaxLen` characters.

Errors: for a list of errors, see `Format` ([1152](#)).

See also: `StrFmt` ([1182](#)), `FmtStr` ([1151](#)), `Format` ([1152](#)), `FormatBuf` ([1157](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex81.pp`

---

**Program** `Example80;`

*{ This program demonstrates the StrFmt function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `S : AnsiString;`

**Begin**

`SetLength(S,80);`

`WriteLn ( StrLFmt (@S[1],80,'For some nice examples of fomatting see %s.',['Format']));`

**End.**

---

**29.12.176 strlicomp**

Synopsis: Compare limited number of characters in 2 null-terminated strings, ignoring case.

Declaration: `function strlicomp(str1: pchar;str2: pchar;l: SizeInt) : SizeInt`

Visibility: default

Description: Compares maximum L characters of the null-terminated strings S1 and S2, ignoring case. The result is

- A negative Longint when S1<S2.
- 0 when S1=S2.
- A positive Longint when S1>S2.

For an example, see StrIComp (1183)

Errors: None.

See also: StrLComp (1184), StrComp (1180), StrIComp (1183)

**29.12.177 strlower**

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-lowercase.

Declaration: `function strlower(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts P to an all-lowercase string. Returns P.

Errors: None.

See also: StrUpper (1197)

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex14.pp

---

**Program** Example14;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrLower and StrUpper functions. }*

**Const**

P1 : PChar = 'THIS IS AN UPPERCASE PCHAR STRING';

P2 : PChar = 'this is a lowercase string';

**begin**

WriteLn ( 'Uppercase : ',StrUpper(P2));

StrLower (P1);

WriteLn ( 'Lowercase : ',P1);

**end.**

---



**29.12.178 strmove**

Synopsis: Move a null-terminated string to new location.

Declaration: `function strmove(dest: pchar;source: pchar;l: SizeInt) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies MaxLen characters from Source to Dest. No terminating null-character is copied. Returns Dest

Errors: None.

See also: StrLCopy ([1185](#)), StrCopy ([1180](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex10.pp

---

**Program** Example10;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrMove function. }*

**Const** P1 : PCHAR = 'This is a pchar string.';

**Var** P2 : Pchar;

**begin**

  P2:= StrAlloc (StrLen(P1)+1);

**StrMove** (P2,P1,StrLen(P1)+1); { P2:=P1 }

**WriteLn** ( 'P2 = ',P2);

**end.**

---

**29.12.179 strnew**

Synopsis: Allocate room for new null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strnew(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Copies P to the Heap, and returns a pointer to the copy.

Errors: Returns Nil if no memory was available for the copy.

See also: StrCopy ([1180](#)), StrDispose ([1181](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex16.pp

---

**Program** Example16;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrNew function. }*

**Const** P1 : PChar = 'This is a PChar string';

**var** P2 : PChar;

```

begin
  P2:=StrNew (P1);
  If P1=P2 then
    writeln ('This can''t be happening...')
  else
    writeln ('P2 : ',P2);
end.

```

---

### 29.12.180 StrPas

Synopsis: Convert a null-terminated string to an ansistring.

Declaration: function StrPas(Str: PChar) : String

Visibility: default

Description: Converts a null terminated string in Str to an Ansistring, and returns this string. This string is NOT truncated at 255 characters as is the

For an example, see StrPas ([1189](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: StrPas ([1189](#))

### 29.12.181 StrPCopy

Synopsis: Copy an ansistring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: function StrPCopy(Dest: PChar;Source: String) : PChar

Visibility: default

Description: StrPCopy Converts the Ansistring in Source to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to Dest. Dest needs enough room to contain the string Source, i.e. Length(Source)+1 bytes.

For an example, see StrPCopy ([1189](#)).

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether Dest points to enough memory to contain Source.

See also: StrPLCopy ([1189](#)), StrPCopy ([1189](#))

### 29.12.182 StrPLCopy

Synopsis: Copy a limited number of characters from an ansistring to a null-terminated string.

Declaration: function StrPLCopy(Dest: PChar;Source: String;MaxLen: SizeUInt) : PChar

Visibility: default

Description: StrPLCopy Converts maximally MaxLen characters of the Ansistring in Source to a Null-terminated string, and copies it to Dest. Dest needs enough room to contain the characters.

Errors: No checking is performed to see whether Dest points to enough memory to contain L characters of Source.

See also: StrPCopy ([1189](#))

**29.12.183 strpos**

Synopsis: Find position of one null-terminated substring in another.

Declaration: `function strpos(str1: pchar;str2: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of S2 in S1. If S2 does not occur in S1, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: StrScan ([1190](#)), StrRScan ([1190](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex15.pp

---

**Program** Example15;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrPos function . }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PChar string.';

      S : Pchar = 'is';

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Position of ''is'' in P : ',longint(**StrPos**(P,S))–Longint(P));

**end**.

---

**29.12.184 strrscan**

Synopsis: Find last occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strrscan(p: pchar;c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the last occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

For an example, see StrScan ([1190](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: StrScan ([1190](#)), StrPos ([1190](#))

**29.12.185 strscan**

Synopsis: Find first occurrence of a character in a null-terminated string.

Declaration: `function strscan(p: pchar;c: Char) : pchar`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns a pointer to the first occurrence of the character C in the null-terminated string P. If C does not occur, returns Nil.

Errors: None.

See also: StrRScan ([1190](#)), StrPos ([1190](#))

**Listing:** ./stringex/ex13.pp

---

**Program** Example13;

**Uses** strings;

*{ Program to demonstrate the StrScan and StrRScan functions. }*

**Const** P : PChar = 'This is a PCHAR string.';  
           S : Char = 's' ;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from first ''s'' : ', **StrScan**(P,s));

**WriteLn** ('P, starting from last ''s'' : ', **StrRScan**(P,s));

**end.**

---

### 29.12.186 StrToBool

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a boolean value

**Declaration:** function StrToBool(const S: String) : Boolean

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StrToBool will convert the string S to a boolean value. The string S can contain one of 'True', 'False' (case is ignored) or a numerical value. If it contains a numerical value, 0 is converted to False, all other values result in True. If the string S contains no valid boolean, then an EConvertError (1210) exception is raised.

**Errors:** On error, an EConvertError (1210) exception is raised.

**See also:** BoolToStr (1116)

### 29.12.187 StrToCurr

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a currency value

**Declaration:** function StrToCurr(const S: String) : Currency

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** StrToCurr converts a string to a currency value and returns the value. The string should contain a valid currency amount, without currency symbol. If the conversion fails, an EConvertError (1210) exception is raised.

**Errors:** On error, an EConvertError (1210) exception is raised.

**See also:** CurrToStr (1121), StrToCurrDef (1191)

### 29.12.188 StrToCurrDef

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a currency value, using a default value

**Declaration:** function StrToCurrDef(const S: String; Default: Currency) : Currency

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToCurrDef` converts a string to a currency value and returns the value. The string should contain a valid currency amount, without currency symbol. If the conversion fails, the fallback `Default` value is returned.

**Errors:** On error, the `Default` value is returned.

**See also:** `CurrToStr` ([1121](#)), `StrToCurr` ([1191](#))

### 29.12.189 StrToDate

**Synopsis:** Convert a date string to a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToDate(const S: String) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToDate` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date value. The Date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not* supported in Delphi)

The order of the digits (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the `ShortDateFormat` variable.

**Errors:** On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

**See also:** `StrToTime` ([1196](#)), `DateToStr` ([1125](#)), `TimeToStr` ([1201](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex19.pp`

---

**Program** Example19;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToDate function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestStr (S : String);

**begin**

**WriteIn** (S, ' : ', **DateToStr**(**StrToDate**(S)));  
**end**;

**Begin**

**WriteIn** ( 'ShortDateFormat ', ShortDateFormat );  
    **TestStr**(**DateTimeToStr**(**Date**));  
    **TestStr**( '05/05/1999' );  
    **TestStr**( '5/5' );  
    **TestStr**( '5' );  
**End**.

---

### 29.12.190 StrToDateTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a date/time string to a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToDateTime(const S: String) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToDateTime` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` date and time value. The Date must consist of 1 to three digits, separated by the `DateSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the day and month of the current year. If only one number is given, it is supposed to represent the day of the current month. (This is *not* supported in Delphi)

The order of the digits (y/m/d, m/d/y, d/m/y) is determined from the `ShortDateFormat` variable.

**Errors:** On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `StrToDate` ([1192](#)), `StrToTime` ([1196](#)), `DateTimeToStr` ([1122](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex20.pp

---

**Program** Example20;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToDateTime function }*

**Uses** sysutils;

**Procedure** TestStr (S : **String**);

**begin**

**WriteLn** (S, ' : ', **DateTimeToStr**(**StrToDateTime**(S)));  
**end**;

**Begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'ShortDateFormat ', ShortDateFormat );  
    TestStr(**DateTimeToStr**(**Now**));  
    TestStr('05-05-1999 15:50');  
    TestStr('5-5 13:30');  
    TestStr('5 1:30PM');  
**End.**

---

### 29.12.191 StrToFloat

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to a floating-point value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToFloat(const S: String) : Extended`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToFloat` converts the string `S` to a floating point value. `S` should contain a valid stroing representation of a floating point value (either in decimal or scientific notation). If the string contains a decimal value, then the decimal separator character can either be a '.' or the value of the `DecimalSeparator` variable.

**Errors:** If the string `S` doesn't contain a valid floating point string, then an exception will be raised.

See also: `TextToFloat` ([1198](#)), `FloatToStr` ([1148](#)), `FormatFloat` ([1159](#)), `StrToInt` ([1194](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex90.pp

---

**Program** Example90;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToFloat function }*  
*{ \$mode objfpc }*  
*{ \$h+ }*

---

```

Uses SysUtils;

Const
  NrValues = 5;
  TestStr : Array[1..NrValues] of string =
    ( '1,1', '-0,2', '1,2E-4', '0', '1E4' );

Procedure Testit;

Var
  I : Integer;
  E : Extended;

begin
  WriteIn('Using DecimalSeparator : ',DecimalSeparator);
  For I:=1 to NrValues do
    begin
      WriteIn('Converting : ',TestStr[I]);
      Try
        E:=StrToFloat(TestStr[I]);
        WriteIn('Converted value : ',E);
      except
        On E : Exception do
          WriteIn('Exception when converting : ',E.Message);
        end;
      end;
    end;

Begin
  DecimalSeparator:= ',';
  Testit;
  DecimalSeparator:= '.';
  Testit;
End.

```

---

### 29.12.192 StrToFloatDef

Synopsis: Convert a string to a float, with a default value.

Declaration: `function StrToFloatDef(const S: String;const Default: Extended) : Extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `StrToFloatDef` tries to convert the string `S` to a floating point value, and returns this value. If the conversion fails for some reason, the value `Default` is returned instead.

Errors: None. On error, the `Default` value is returned.

### 29.12.193 StrToInt

Synopsis: Convert a string to an integer value.

Declaration: `function StrToInt(const s: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StrToInt` will convert the string `S` to an integer. If the string contains invalid characters or has an invalid format, then an `EConvertError` is raised.

To be successfully converted, a string can contain a combination of numerical characters, possibly preceded by a minus sign (-). Spaces are not allowed.

**Errors:** In case of error, an `EConvertError` is raised.

See also: `IntToStr` ([1168](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1196](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex82.pp`

---

**Program** `Example82`;

```
{ $mode objfpc }

{ This program demonstrates the StrToInt function }

Uses sysutils;

Begin
  Writeln ( StrToInt ( '1234' ) );
  Writeln ( StrToInt ( '-1234' ) );
  Writeln ( StrToInt ( '0' ) );
  Try
    Writeln ( StrToInt ( '12345678901234567890' ) );
  except
    On E : EConvertError do
      Writeln ( 'Invalid number encountered' );
  end;
End.
```

---

### 29.12.194 `StrToInt64`

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to an `Int64` value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToInt64(const s: String) : Int64`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `StrToInt64` converts the string `S` to a `Int64` value, and returns this value. The string can only contain numerical characters, and optionally a minus sign as the first character. Whitespace is not allowed.

Hexadecimal values (starting with the `$` character) are supported.

**Errors:** On error, a `EConvertError` ([1210](#)) exception is raised.

See also: `TryStrToInt64` ([1205](#)), `StrToInt64Def` ([1195](#)), `StrToInt` ([1194](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1205](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1196](#))

### 29.12.195 `StrToInt64Def`

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to an `Int64` value, with a default value

**Declaration:** `function StrToInt64Def(const S: String; Default: Int64) : Int64`

**Visibility:** `default`



**Description:** `StrToInt64Def` tries to convert the string `S` to a `Int64` value, and returns this value. If the conversion fails for some reason, the value `Default` is returned instead.

**Errors:** None. On error, the `Default` value is returned.

**See also:** `StrToInt64` ([1195](#)), `TryStrToInt64` ([1205](#)), `StrToInt` ([1194](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1205](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1196](#))

### 29.12.196 StrToIntDef

**Synopsis:** Convert a string to an integer value, with a default value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToIntDef(const S: String;Default: Integer) : Integer`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToIntDef` will convert a string to an integer. If the string contains invalid characters or has an invalid format, then `Default` is returned.

To be successfully converted, a string can contain a combination of numerical characters, possibly preceded by a minus sign (-). Spaces are not allowed.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `IntToStr` ([1168](#)), `StrToInt` ([1194](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex83.pp`

---

**Program** `Example82;`

`{ $mode objfpc }`

`{ This program demonstrates the StrToInt function }`

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ( StrToIntDef ( '1234' , 0 ));`

`WriteLn ( StrToIntDef ( '-1234' , 0 ));`

`WriteLn ( StrToIntDef ( '0' , 0 ));`

`Try`

`WriteLn ( StrToIntDef ( '12345678901234567890' , 0 ));`

`except`

`On E : EConvertError do`

`WriteLn ( 'Invalid number encountered' );`

`end;`

`End.`

---

### 29.12.197 StrToTime

**Synopsis:** Convert a time string to a `TDateTime` value.

**Declaration:** `function StrToTime(const S: String) : TDateTime`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `StrToTime` converts the string `S` to a `TDateTime` time value. The time must consist of 1 to 4 digits, separated by the `TimeSeparator` character. If two numbers are given, they are supposed to form the hour and minutes.

Errors: On error (e.g. an invalid date or invalid character), an `EConvertError` exception is raised.

See also: `StrToDate` ([1192](#)), `StrToDateTime` ([1192](#)), `TimeToStr` ([1201](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex21.pp`

---

**Program** `Example21`;

*{ This program demonstrates the StrToTime function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Procedure** `TestStr (S : String)`;

**begin**  
     `WriteLn (S, ' : ', TimeToStr(StrToTime(S)))`;  
**end**;

**Begin**  
     `teststr (TimeToStr(Time))`;  
     `teststr ('12:00')`;  
     `teststr ('15:30')`;  
     `teststr ('3:30PM')`;  
**End.**

---

### 29.12.198 `strupper`

Synopsis: Convert null-terminated string to all-uppercase

Declaration: `function strupper(p: pchar) : pchar`

Visibility: `default`

Description: Converts `P` to an all-uppercase string. Returns `P`.

For an example, see `StrLower` ([1187](#))

Errors: None.

See also: `StrLower` ([1187](#))

### 29.12.199 `SysErrorMessage`

Synopsis: Format a system error message.

Declaration: `function SysErrorMessage(ErrorCode: Integer) : String`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `SysErrorMessage` returns a string that describes the operating system error code `ErrorCode`.

Errors: This routine may not be implemented on all platforms.

See also: `EOSError` ([1212](#))

**29.12.200 SystemTimeToDateTime**

Synopsis: Convert a system time to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function SystemTimeToDateTime(const SystemTime: TSystemTime) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `SystemTimeToDateTime` converts a `TSystemTime` record to a `TDateTime` style date/time indication.

Errors: None.

See also: `DateTimeToSystemTime` ([1123](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex22.pp`

---

**Program** `Example22;`

*{ This program demonstrates the SystemTimeToDateTime function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Var** `ST : TSystemTime;`

**Begin**

`DateTimeToSystemTime(Now, ST);`

**With** `St` **do**

**begin**

`WriteLn ('Today is ', year, '/', month, '/', Day);`

`WriteLn ('The time is ', Hour, ': ', minute, ': ', Second, '.', MilliSecond);`

**end;**

`WriteLn ('Converted : ', DateTimeToStr(SystemTimeToDateTime(ST)));`

**End.**

---

**29.12.201 TextToFloat**

Synopsis: Convert a buffer to a float value.

Declaration: `function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar; var Value: Extended) : Boolean`  
`function TextToFloat(Buffer: PChar; var Value; ValueType: TFloatValue)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TextToFloat` converts the string in `Buffer` to a floating point value. `Buffer` should contain a valid stroing representation of a floating point value (either in decimal or scientific notation). If the buffer contains a decimal value, then the decimal separator character can either be a '.' or the value of the `DecimalSeparator` variable.

The function returns `True` if the conversion was successful.

Errors: If there is an invalid character in the buffer, then the function returns `False`

See also: `StrToFloat` ([1193](#)), `FloatToStr` ([1148](#)), `FormatFloat` ([1159](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex91.pp`

---

**Program** Example91;

```
{ This program demonstrates the TextToFloat function }
{$mode objfpc}
{$h+ }
```

**Uses** SysUtils;

**Const**

```
NrValues = 5;
TestStr : Array[1..NrValues] of pchar =
    ( '1,1', '-0,2', '1,2E-4', '0', '1E4' );
```

**Procedure** Testit;

**Var**

```
I : Integer;
E : Extended;
```

**begin**

```
  WriteLn( 'Using DecimalSeparator : ', DecimalSeparator);
```

```
  For I:=1 to NrValues do
```

```
    begin
```

```
      WriteLn( 'Converting : ', TestStr[I]);
```

```
      If TextToFloat( TestStr[I], E) then
```

```
        WriteLn( 'Converted value : ', E)
```

```
      else
```

```
        WriteLn( 'Unable to convert value.');
```

```
      end;
```

```
end;
```

**Begin**

```
  DecimalSeparator:= ',';
```

```
  Testit;
```

```
  DecimalSeparator:= '.';
```

```
  Testit;
```

```
End.
```

---

## 29.12.202 Time

Synopsis: Returns the current time.

Declaration: function Time : TDateTime

Visibility: default

Description: Time returns the current time in TDateTime format. The date part of the TDateTimeValue is set to zero.

Errors: None.

See also: Now ([1173](#)), Date ([1121](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex23.pp

---

**Program** Example23;

---

```
{ This program demonstrates the Time function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  WriteLn ( 'The time is : ', TimeToStr(Time));
```

```
End.
```

---

### 29.12.203 TimeStampToDateTime

Synopsis: Convert a TimeStamp value to a TDateTime value.

Declaration: `function TimeStampToDateTime(const TimeStamp: TTimeStamp) : TDateTime`

Visibility: default

Description: `TimeStampToDateTime` converts `TimeStamp` to a `TDateTime` format variable. It is the inverse operation of `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1124](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: `DateTimeToTimeStamp` ([1124](#)), `TimeStampToMSecs` ([1200](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex24.pp`

---

**Program** Example24;

```
{ This program demonstrates the TimeStampToDateTime function }
```

```
Uses sysutils;
```

```
Var TS : TTimeStamp;
```

```
    DT : TDateTime;
```

```
Begin
```

```
  TS:=DateTimeToTimeStamp (Now);
```

```
  With TS do
```

```
    begin
```

```
      WriteLn ( 'Now is ', time, ' millisecond past midnight');
```

```
      WriteLn ( 'Today is ', Date, ' days past 1/1/0001');
```

```
    end;
```

```
  DT:=TimeStampToDateTime(TS);
```

```
  WriteLn ( 'Together this is : ', DateTimeToStr(DT));
```

```
End.
```

---

### 29.12.204 TimeStampToMSecs

Synopsis: Converts a timestamp to a number of milliseconds.

Declaration: `function TimeStampToMSecs(const TimeStamp: TTimeStamp) : comp`

Visibility: default

Description: `TimeStampToMSecs` converts `TimeStamp` to the number of seconds since 1/1/0001.

Use `TTimeStamp` variables if you need to keep very precise track of time.

For an example, see `MSecsToTimeStamp` ([1172](#)).

Errors: None.

See also: [MSecsToTimeStamp \(1172\)](#), [TimeStampToDateTime \(1200\)](#)

### 29.12.205 TimeToStr

Synopsis: Convert a `TDateTime` time to a string using a predefined format.

Declaration: `function TimeToStr(Time: TDateTime) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `TimeToStr` converts the time in `Time` to a string. It uses the `ShortTimeFormat` variable to see what formatting needs to be applied. It is therefor entirely equivalent to a `FormatDateTime('t', Time)` call.

Errors: None.

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex25.pp`

---

**Program** `Example25;`

`{ This program demonstrates the TimeToStr function }`

**Uses** `sysutils;`

**Begin**

`WriteLn ('The current time is : ', TimeToStr(Time));`

**End.**

---

### 29.12.206 Trim

Synopsis: Trim whitespace from the ends of a string.

Declaration: `function Trim(const S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Trim` strips blank characters (spaces) at the beginning and end of `S` and returns the resulting string. Only #32 characters are stripped.

If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: [TrimLeft \(1202\)](#), [TrimRight \(1202\)](#)

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex84.pp`

---

**Program** `Example84;`

`{ This program demonstrates the Trim function }`

**Uses** `sysutils;`

`{ $H+ }`

**Procedure** `Testit (S : String);`

```

begin
  WriteLn ( ' ', Trim(S), ' ');
end;

Begin
  Testit ( '  ha ha what gets lost ? ');
  Testit (#10#13'haha ');
  Testit ( '          ');
End.

```

---

### 29.12.207 TrimLeft

Synopsis: Trim whitespace from the beginning of a string.

Declaration: `function TrimLeft(const S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `TrimLeft` strips blank characters (spaces) at the beginning of `S` and returns the resulting string. Only #32 characters are stripped. If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: `Trim` ([1201](#)), `TrimRight` ([1202](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex85.pp`

---

**Program** `Example85;`

*{ This program demonstrates the TrimLeft function }*

**Uses** `sysutils;`  
`{ $H+ }`

**Procedure** `Testit (S : String);`

```

begin
  WriteLn ( ' ', TrimLeft(S), ' ');
end;

```

```

Begin
  Testit ( '  ha ha what gets lost ? ');
  Testit (#10#13'haha ');
  Testit ( '          ');
End.

```

---

### 29.12.208 TrimRight

Synopsis: Trim whitespace from the end of a string.

Declaration: `function TrimRight(const S: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `Trim` strips blank characters (spaces) at the end of `S` and returns the resulting string. Only #32 characters are stripped. If the string contains only spaces, an empty string is returned.

Errors: None.

See also: Trim ([1201](#)), TrimLeft ([1202](#))

**Listing:** ./sysutex/ex86.pp

---

**Program** Example86;

*{ This program demonstrates the TrimRight function }*

**Uses** sysutils;  
{ \$H+ }

**Procedure** Testit (S : **String**);

**begin**  
    **WriteLn** ( ' ', TrimRight(S), ' ' );  
**end**;

**Begin**  
    Testit ( ' ha ha what gets lost ? ' );  
    Testit (#10#13'haha ' );  
    Testit ( ' ' );  
**End.**

---

### 29.12.209 TryEncodeDate

Synopsis: Try to encode a date, and indicate success.

**Declaration:** function TryEncodeDate(Year: Word;Month: Word;Day: Word;  
                                    var Date: TDateTime) : Boolean

Visibility: default

**Description:** TryEncodeDate will check the validity of the Year, Month and Day arguments, and if they are all valid, then they will be encoded as a TDateTime value and returned in D. The function will return True in this case. If an invalid argument is passed, then False will be returned.

Errors: None. If an error occurs during the encoding, False is returned.

See also: EncodeDate ([1130](#)), DecodeDateFully ([1126](#)), DecodeDate ([1126](#)), TryEncodeTime ([1203](#))

### 29.12.210 TryEncodeTime

Synopsis: Try to encode a time, and indicate success.

**Declaration:** function TryEncodeTime(Hour: Word;Min: Word;Sec: Word;MSec: Word;  
                                    var Time: TDateTime) : Boolean

Visibility: default

**Description:** TryEncodeTime will check the validity of the Hour, Min, Sec and MSec arguments, and will encode them in a TDateTime value which is returned in T. If the arguments are valid, then True is returned, otherwise False is returned.

Errors: None. If an error occurs during the encoding, False is returned.

See also: EncodeTime ([1131](#)), DecodeTime ([1126](#)), TryEncodeDate ([1203](#))



**29.12.211 TryFloatToCurr**

Synopsis: Try to convert a float value to a currency value and report on success.

Declaration: `function TryFloatToCurr(const Value: Extended; var AResult: Currency)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryFloatToCurr` tries convert the `Value` floating point value to a `Currency` value. If successful, the function returns `True` and the resulting currency value is returned in `AResult`. It checks whether `Value` is in the valid range of currencies (determined by `MinCurrency` (1091) and `MaxCurrency` (1091)). If not, `False` is returned.

Errors: If `Value` is out of range, `False` is returned.

See also: `FloatToCurr` (1147), `MinCurrency` (1091), `MaxCurrency` (1091)

**29.12.212 TryStrToCurr**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a currency

Declaration: `function TryStrToCurr(const S: String; var Value: Currency) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `TryStrToCurr` converts the string `S` to a currency value and returns the value in `Value`. The function returns `True` if it was successful, `False` if not. This is contrary to `StrToCurr` (1191), which raises an exception when the conversion fails.

The function takes into account locale information.

See also: `StrToCurr` (1191), `TextToFloat` (1198)

**29.12.213 TryStrToDate**

Declaration: `function TryStrToDate(const S: String; out Value: TDateTime) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**29.12.214 TryStrToDateTime**

Declaration: `function TryStrToDateTime(const S: String; out Value: TDateTime)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

**29.12.215 TryStrToFloat**

Synopsis: Try to convert a string to a float.

Declaration: `function TryStrToFloat(const S: String; var Value: Single) : Boolean  
function TryStrToFloat(const S: String; var Value: Double) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `TryStrToFloat` tries to convert the string `S` to a floating point value, and stores the result in `Value`. It returns `True` if the operation was succesful, and `False` if it failed. This operation takes into account the system settings for floating point representations.

**Errors:** On error, `False` is returned.

**See also:** `StrToFloat` ([1193](#))

### 29.12.216 TryStrToInt

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to an integer, and report on success.

**Declaration:** `function TryStrToInt(const s: String;var i: Integer) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TryStrToInt` tries to convert the string `S` to an integer, and returns `True` if this was succesful. In that case the converted integer is returned in `I`. If the conversion failed, (an invalid string, or the value is out of range) then `False` is returned.

**Errors:** None. On error, `False` is returned.

**See also:** `StrToInt` ([1194](#)), `TryStrToInt64` ([1205](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1196](#)), `StrToInt64` ([1195](#)), `StrToInt64Def` ([1195](#))

### 29.12.217 TryStrToInt64

**Synopsis:** Try to convert a string to an int64 value, and report on success.

**Declaration:** `function TryStrToInt64(const s: String;var i: Int64) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `TryStrToInt64` tries to convert the string `S` to a `Int64` value, and returns this value in `I` if successful. If the conversion was succesful, the function result is `True`, or `False` otherwise. The string can only contain numerical characters, and optionally a minus sign as the first character. Whitespace is not allowed.

Hexadecimal values (starting with the `$` character) are supported.

**Errors:** None. On error, `False` is returned.

**See also:** `StrToInt64` ([1195](#)), `StrToInt64Def` ([1195](#)), `StrToInt` ([1194](#)), `TryStrToInt` ([1205](#)), `StrToIntDef` ([1196](#))

### 29.12.218 TryStrToTime

**Declaration:** `function TryStrToTime(const S: String;out Value: TDateTime) : Boolean`

**Visibility:** default

### 29.12.219 UpperCase

**Synopsis:** Return an uppercase version of a string.

**Declaration:** `function UpperCase(const s: String) : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `UpperCase` returns the uppercase equivalent of `S`. Ansi characters are not taken into account, only ASCII codes below 127 are converted. It is completely equivalent to the `UpCase` function of the system unit, and is provided for compatibility only.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `AnsiLowerCase` ([1105](#)), `LowerCase` ([1172](#)), `AnsiUpperCase` ([1113](#))

**Listing:** `./sysutex/ex87.pp`

---

**Program** `Example87`;

*{ This program demonstrates the UpperCase function }*

**Uses** `sysutils`;

**Begin**

`WriteLn (UpperCase('this will come OUT ALL uPpErCaSe !'));`  
**End.**

---

### 29.12.220 WideCompareStr

**Synopsis:** Compare two widestrings (case sensitive)

**Declaration:** `function WideCompareStr(const s1: WideString;const s2: WideString)  
: PtrInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WideCompareStr` compares two widestrings and returns the following result:

`< 0` if `S1<S2`.  
`0` if `S1=S2`.  
`> 0` if `S1>S2`.

The comparison takes into account wide characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `WideCompareText` ([1206](#)), the comparison is case sensitive.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `WideCompareText` ([1206](#)), `WideSameStr` ([1208](#)), `WideSameText` ([1208](#))

### 29.12.221 WideCompareText

**Synopsis:** Compare two widestrings (ignoring case).

**Declaration:** `function WideCompareText(const s1: WideString;const s2: WideString)  
: PtrInt`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `WideCompareStr` compares two widestrings and returns the following result:

`< 0` if `S1<S2`.  
`0` if `S1=S2`.  
`> 0` if `S1>S2`.

The comparison takes into account wide characters, i.e. it takes care of strange accented characters. Contrary to `WideCompareStr` (1206), the comparison is case insensitive.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideCompareStr` (1206), `WideSameStr` (1208), `WideSameText` (1208)

### 29.12.222 WideFmtStr

Synopsis: Widestring format

Declaration: `procedure WideFmtStr(var Res: WideString;const Fmt: WideString;  
const args: Array[] of const)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideFmtStr` formats `Args` according to the format string in `Fmt` and returns the resulting string in `Res`.

See also: `WideFormat` (1207), `WideFormatBuf` (1207), `Format` (1152)

### 29.12.223 WideFormat

Synopsis: Format a wide string.

Declaration: `function WideFormat(const Fmt: WideString;const Args: Array[] of const)  
: WideString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideFormat` does the same as `Format` (1152) but accepts as a formatting string a `WideString`. The resulting string is also a `WideString`.

For more information about the used formatting characters, see the `Format` (1152) string.

See also: `Format` (1152)

### 29.12.224 WideFormatBuf

Synopsis: Format widestring in a buffer.

Declaration: `function WideFormatBuf(var Buffer;BufLen: Cardinal;const Fmt;  
fmtLen: Cardinal;const Args: Array[] of const)  
: Cardinal`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideFormatBuf` calls simply `WideFormat` (1207) with `Fmt` (with length `FmtLen` bytes) and stores maximum `BufLen` bytes in the buffer `buf`. It returns the number of copied bytes.

See also: `WideFmtStr` (1207), `WideFormat` (1207), `Format` (1152), `FormatBuf` (1157)

**29.12.225 WideLowerCase**

Synopsis: Change a widestring to all-lowercase.

Declaration: `function WideLowerCase(const s: WideString) : WideString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideLowerCase` converts the string *S* to lowercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** On linux, no language setting is taken in account yet.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideUpperCase` ([1208](#))

**29.12.226 WideSameStr**

Synopsis: Check whether two widestrings are the same (case sensitive)

Declaration: `function WideSameStr(const s1: WideString;const s2: WideString)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideSameStr` returns `True` if `WideCompareStr` ([1206](#)) returns 0 (zero), i.e. when *S1* and *S2* are the same string (taking into account case).

See also: `WideSameText` ([1208](#)), `WideCompareStr` ([1206](#)), `WideCompareText` ([1206](#)), `AnsiSameStr` ([1106](#))

**29.12.227 WideSameText**

Synopsis: Check whether two widestrings are the same (ignoring case)

Declaration: `function WideSameText(const s1: WideString;const s2: WideString)  
: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideSameText` returns `True` if `WideCompareText` ([1206](#)) returns 0 (zero), i.e. when *S1* and *S2* are the same string (taking into account case).

See also: `WideSameStr` ([1208](#)), `WideCompareStr` ([1206](#)), `WideCompareText` ([1206](#)), `AnsiSameText` ([1106](#))

**29.12.228 WideUpperCase**

Synopsis: Change a widestring to all-lowercase.

Declaration: `function WideUpperCase(const s: WideString) : WideString`

Visibility: default

Description: `WideUpperCase` converts the string *S* to uppercase characters and returns the resulting string. It takes into account the operating system language settings when doing this, so special characters are converted correctly as well.

**Remark:** On linux, no language setting is taken in account yet.

Errors: None.

See also: `WideLowerCase` ([1208](#))

### 29.12.229 WrapText

Synopsis: Word-wrap a text.

Declaration: 

```
function WrapText(const Line: String;const BreakStr: String;  
                const BreakChars: TSysCharSet;MaxCol: Integer) : String  
function WrapText(const Line: String;MaxCol: Integer) : String
```

Visibility: default

Description: `WrapText` does a wordwrap at column `MaxCol` of the string in `Line`. It breaks the string only at characters which are in `BreakChars` (default whitespace and hyphen) and inserts then the string `BreakStr` (default the lineending character for the current OS).

See also: `StringReplace` ([1183](#))

## 29.13 EAbort

### 29.13.1 Description

`Abort` is raised by the `Abort` ([1100](#)) procedure. It is not displayed in GUI applications, and serves only to immediatly abort the current procedure, and return control to the main program loop.

## 29.14 EAbstractError

### 29.14.1 Description

`EAbstractError` is raised when an abstract error occurs, i.e. when an unimplemented abstract method is called.

## 29.15 EAccessViolation

### 29.15.1 Description

`EAccessViolation` is raised when the OS reports an Access Violation, i.e. when invalid memory is accessed.

## 29.16 EAssertionFailed

### 29.16.1 Description

`EAssertionFailed` is raised when an application that is compiled with assertions, encounters an invalid assertion.

## 29.17 EControlC

### 29.17.1 Description

`EControlC` is raised when the user has pressed CTRL-C in a console application.

## 29.18 EConvertError

### 29.18.1 Description

EConvertError is raised by the various conversion routines in the SysUtils unit. The message will contain more specific error information.

## 29.19 EDivByZero

### 29.19.1 Description

EDivByZero is used when the operating system or CPU signals a division by zero error.

## 29.20 EExternal

### 29.20.1 Description

EExternal is the base exception for all external exceptions, as reported by the CPU or operating system, as opposed to internal exceptions, which are raised by the program itself. The SysUtils unit converts all operating system errors to descendants of EExternal.

## 29.21 EExternalException

### 29.21.1 Description

EExternalException is raised when an external routine raises an exception.

## 29.22 EHeapMemoryError

### 29.22.1 Description

EHeapMemoryError is raised when an error occurs in heap (dynamically allocated) memory.

## 29.23 EInOutError

### 29.23.1 Description

EInOutError is raised when a IO routine of Free Pascal returns an error. The error is converted to an EInOutError only if the input/output checking feature of FPC is turned on. The error code of the input/output operation is returned in ErrorCode (??).

## 29.24 EIntError

### 29.24.1 Description

EIntError is used when the operating system or CPU signals an integer operation error, e.g., an overflow.

## **29.25 EIntfCastError**

### **29.25.1 Description**

`EIntfCastError` is raised when an invalid interface cast is encountered.

## **29.26 EIntOverflow**

### **29.26.1 Description**

`EIntOverflow` is used when the operating system or CPU signals a integer overflow error.

## **29.27 EInvalidCast**

### **29.27.1 Description**

`EInvalidCast` is raised when an invalid typecast error (using the `as` operator) is encountered.

## **29.28 EInvalidContainer**

### **29.28.1 Description**

`EInvalidContainer` is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## **29.29 EInvalidInsert**

### **29.29.1 Description**

`EInvalidInsert` is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## **29.30 EInvalidOp**

### **29.30.1 Description**

`EInvalidOp` is raised when an invalid operation is encountered.

## **29.31 EInvalidPointer**

### **29.31.1 Description**

`EInvalidPointer` is raised when an invalid heap pointer is used.



## 29.32 EMathError

### 29.32.1 Description

EMathError is used when the operating system or CPU signals a floating point overflow error.

## 29.33 ENoThreadSupport

### 29.33.1 Description

ENoThreadSupport is raised when some thread routines are invoked, and thread support was not enabled when the program was compiled.

## 29.34 EOSError

### 29.34.1 Description

EOSError is raised when some Operating System call fails. The ErrorCode (??) property contains the operating system error code.

## 29.35 EOutOfMemory

### 29.35.1 Description

EOutOfMemory occurs when memory can no longer be allocated on the heap. An instance of EOutOfMemory is allocated on the heap at program startup, so it is available when needed.

## 29.36 EOverflow

### 29.36.1 Description

EOverflow occurs when a float operation overflows. (i.e. result is too big to represent).

## 29.37 EPackageError

### 29.37.1 Description

EPackageError is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## 29.38 EPrivilege

### 29.38.1 Description

EPrivilege is raised when the OS reports that an invalid instruction was executed.

## **29.39 EPropReadOnly**

### **29.39.1 Description**

EPropReadOnly is raised when an attempt is made to write to a read-only property.

## **29.40 EPropWriteOnly**

### **29.40.1 Description**

EPropWriteOnly is raised when an attempt is made to read from a write-only property.

## **29.41 ERangeError**

### **29.41.1 Description**

ERangeError is raised by the Free Pascal runtime library if range checking is on, and a range check error occurs.

## **29.42 ESafecallException**

### **29.42.1 Description**

ESafecallException is not yet used by Free Pascal, and is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

## **29.43 EStackOverflow**

### **29.43.1 Description**

EStackOverflow occurs when the stack has grown too big (e.g. by infinite recursion).

## **29.44 EUnderflow**

### **29.44.1 Description**

EOverflow occurs when a float operation underflows (i.e. result is too small to represent).

## **29.45 EVariantError**

### **29.45.1 Description**

EVariantError is raised by the internal variant routines.

## 29.46 Exception

### 29.46.1 Description

`Exception` is the base class for all exception handling routines in the RTL and FCL. While it is possible to raise an exception with any class descending from `TObject`, it is recommended to use `Exception` as the basis of exception class objects: the `Exception` class introduces properties to associate a message and a help context with the exception being raised. What is more, the `SysUtils` unit sets the necessary hooks to catch and display unhandled exceptions: in such cases, the message displayed to the end user, will be the message stored in the exception class.

### 29.46.2 Method overview

Page	Property	Description
<a href="#">1214</a>	<code>Create</code>	Constructs a new exception object with a given message.
<a href="#">1214</a>	<code>CreateFmt</code>	Constructs a new exception object and formats a new message.
<a href="#">1215</a>	<code>CreateFmtHelp</code>	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message
<a href="#">1215</a>	<code>CreateHelp</code>	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context.
<a href="#">1215</a>	<code>CreateRes</code>	Constructs a new exception object and gets the message from a resource.
<a href="#">1215</a>	<code>CreateResFmt</code>	Constructs a new exception object and formats the message from a resource.
<a href="#">1216</a>	<code>CreateResFmtHelp</code>	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message from a resource
<a href="#">1216</a>	<code>CreateResHelp</code>	Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and gets the message from a resource

### 29.46.3 Property overview

Page	Property	Access	Description
<a href="#">1216</a>	<code>HelpContext</code>	rw	Help context associated with the exception.
<a href="#">1216</a>	<code>Message</code>	rw	Message associated with the exception.

### 29.46.4 `Exception.Create`

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object with a given message.

Declaration: `constructor Create(const msg: String)`

Visibility: `public`

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: `Exception.CreateFmt` ([1214](#)), `Exception.Message` ([1216](#))

### 29.46.5 `Exception.CreateFmt`

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and formats a new message.

Declaration: `constructor CreateFmt(const msg: String; const args: Array[] of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: [Exception.Create \(1214\)](#), [Exception.Message \(1216\)](#), [Format \(1152\)](#)

### 29.46.6 Exception.CreateRes

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and gets the message from a resource.

Declaration: `constructor CreateRes(ResString: PString)`

Visibility: `public`

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: [Exception.Create \(1214\)](#), [Exception.CreateFmt \(1214\)](#), [Exception.CreateResFmt \(1215\)](#), [Exception.Message \(1216\)](#)

### 29.46.7 Exception.CreateResFmt

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and formats the message from a resource.

Declaration: `constructor CreateResFmt(ResString: PString;  
const Args: Array[] of const)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateResFmt` does the same as `CreateFmt (1214)`, but fetches the message from the resource string `ResString`.

Errors: Construction may fail if there is not enough memory on the heap.

See also: [Exception.Create \(1214\)](#), [Exception.CreateFmt \(1214\)](#), [Exception.CreateRes \(1215\)](#), [Exception.Message \(1216\)](#)

### 29.46.8 Exception.CreateHelp

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context.

Declaration: `constructor CreateHelp(const Msg: String; AHelpContext: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateHelp` does the same as the `Create (1214)` constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext (1216)` property.

See also: [Exception.Create \(1214\)](#)

### 29.46.9 Exception.CreateFmtHelp

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message

Declaration: `constructor CreateFmtHelp(const Msg: String;  
const Args: Array[] of const;  
AHelpContext: Integer)`

Visibility: `public`

Description: `CreateFmtHelp` does the same as the `CreateFmt (1214)` constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext (1216)` property.

See also: [Exception.CreateFmt \(1214\)](#)

### 29.46.10 Exception.CreateResHelp

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and gets the message from a resource

Declaration: constructor `CreateResHelp(ResString: PString; AHelpContext: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateResHelp` does the same as the `CreateRes` (1215) constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext` (1216) property.

See also: `Exception.CreateRes` (1215)

### 29.46.11 Exception.CreateResFmtHelp

Synopsis: Constructs a new exception object and sets the help context and formats the message from a resource

Declaration: constructor `CreateResFmtHelp(ResString: PString;  
const Args: Array[] of const;  
AHelpContext: Integer)`

Visibility: public

Description: `CreateResFmtHelp` does the same as the `CreateResFmt` (1215) constructor, but additionally stores `AHelpContext` in the `HelpContext` (1216) property.

See also: `Exception.CreateResFmt` (1215)

### 29.46.12 Exception.HelpContext

Synopsis: Help context associated with the exception.

Declaration: Property `HelpContext` : LongInt

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `HelpContext` is the help context associated with the exception, and can be used to provide context-sensitive help when the exception error message is displayed. It should be set in the exception constructor.

See also: `Exception.CreateHelp` (1215), `Exception.Message` (1216)

### 29.46.13 Exception.Message

Synopsis: Message associated with the exception.

Declaration: Property `Message` : String

Visibility: public

Access: Read,Write

Description: `Message` provides additional information about the exception. It is shown to the user in e.g. the `ShowException` (1177) routine, and should be set in the constructor when the exception is raised.

See also: `Exception.Create` (1214), `Exception.HelpContext` (1216)

## **29.47 EZeroDivide**

### **29.47.1 Description**

EZeroDivide occurs when a float division by zero occurs.

## Chapter 30

# Reference for unit 'typinfo'

### 30.1 Auxiliary functions

Other typinfo related functions.

Table 30.1:

Name	Description
<a href="#">GetEnumName (1226)</a>	Get an enumerated type element name
<a href="#">GetEnumValue (1228)</a>	Get ordinal number of an enumerated tye, based on the name.
<a href="#">GetTypeData (1239)</a>	Skip type name and return a pointer to the type data
<a href="#">SetToString (1247)</a>	Convert a set to its string representation
<a href="#">StringToSet (1248)</a>	Convert a string representation of a set to a set

### 30.2 Getting or setting property values

Functions to set or set a property's value.

### 30.3 Examining published property information

Functions for retrieving or examining property information

### 30.4 Used units

### 30.5 Overview

The `TypeInfo` unit contains many routines which can be used for the querying of the Run-Time Type Information (RTTI) which is generated by the compiler for classes that are compiled under the `{ $M+ }` switch. This information can be used to retrieve or set property values for published properties for totally unknown classes. In particular, it can be used to stream classes. The `TPersistent` class in the `Classes` unit is compiled in the `{ $M+ }` state and serves as the base class for all classes that need to be streamed.

Table 30.2:

Name	Description
GetEnumProp (1227)	Return the value of an enumerated type property
GetFloatProp (1228)	Return the value of a float property
GetInt64Prop (1229)	Return the value of an Int64 property
GetMethodProp (1230)	Return the value of a procedural type property
GetObjectProp (1232)	Return the value of an object property
GetOrdProp (1233)	Return the value of an ordinal type property
GetPropValue (1237)	Return the value of a property as a variant
GetSetProp (1237)	Return the value of a set property
GetStrProp (1239)	Return the value of a string property
GetVariantProp (1240)	Return the value of a variant property
SetEnumProp (1243)	Set the value of an enumerated type property
SetFloatProp (1244)	Set the value of a float property
SetInt64Prop (1244)	Set the value of an Int64 property
SetMethodProp (1244)	Set the value of a procedural type property
SetObjectProp (1245)	Set the value of an object property
SetOrdProp (1245)	Set the value of an ordinal type property
SetPropValue (1246)	Set the value of a property through a variant
SetSetProp (1246)	Set the value of a set property
SetStrProp (1247)	Set the value of a string property
SetVariantProp (1248)	Set the value of a variant property

The unit should be compatible to the Delphi 5 unit with the same name. The only calls that are still missing are the Variant calls, since Free Pascal does not support the variant type yet.

The examples in this chapter use a `rttiobj` file, which contains an object that has a published property of all supported types. It also contains some auxiliary routines and definitions.

## 30.6 Constants, types and variables

### 30.6.1 Constants

```
BooleanIdents : Array[Boolean] of String = ('False', 'True' )
```

Names for boolean values

```
DotSep : String = '.'
```

Name separator character

```
OnGetPropValue : TGetPropValue = nil
```

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable reading of properties as a variant. If set, it is called by the `GetPropValue` (1237) function.

```
OnGetVariantprop : TGetVariantProp = nil
```

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable reading of variant properties. If set, it is called by the `GetVariantProp` (1240) function.



Table 30.3:

Name	Description
FindPropInfo ( <a href="#">1224</a> )	Getting property type information, With error checking.
GetPropInfo ( <a href="#">1234</a> )	Getting property type information, No error checking.
GetPropInfos ( <a href="#">1235</a> )	Find property information of a certain kind
GetObjectPropClass ( <a href="#">1233</a> )	Return the declared class of an object property
GetPropList ( <a href="#">1236</a> )	Get a list of all published properties
IsPublishedProp ( <a href="#">1240</a> )	Is a property published
IsStoredProp ( <a href="#">1241</a> )	Is a property stored
PropIsType ( <a href="#">1242</a> )	Is a property of a certain kind
PropType ( <a href="#">1242</a> )	Return the type of a property

Table 30.4: Used units by unit 'typinfo'

Name	Page
sysutils	<a href="#">1082</a>

```
OnSetPropValue : TSetPropValue = nil
```

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable writing of properties as a variant. If set, it is called by the SetPropValue ([1246](#)) function.

```
OnSetVariantprop : TSetVariantProp = nil
```

This callback is set by the variants unit to enable writing of variant properties. If set, it is called by the GetVariantProp ([1240](#)) function.

```
ptConst = 3
```

Constant used in acces method

```
ptField = 0
```

Property acces directly from field

```
ptStatic = 1
```

Property acces via static method

```
ptVirtual = 2
```

Property acces via virtual method

```
tkAny = [Low ( TTypeKind ) ..High ( TTypeKind ) ]
```

Any property type

```
tkMethods = [tkMethod]
```

Only method properties. (event handlers)

```
tkProperties = tkAny - tkMethods - [tkUnknown]
```

Real properties. (not methods)

```
tkString = tkSSString
```

Alias for the `tsSSString` enumeration value

### 30.6.2 Types

```
PPropInfo = ^TPropInfo
```

Pointer to `TPropInfo` (1223) record

```
PPropList = ^TPropList
```

Pointer to `TPropList` (1223)

```
PTypeInfo = ^PTypeInfo
```

Pointer to `PTypeInfo` (1221) pointer

```
PTypeData = ^TTypeData
```

Pointer to `TTypeData` (1224) record.

```
PTypeInfo = ^TTypeInfo
```

Pointer to `TTypeInfo` (1224) record

```
TFloatType = (ftSingle, ftDouble, ftExtended, ftComp, ftCurr)
```

Table 30.5: Enumeration values for type `TFloatType`

Value	Explanation
<code>ftComp</code>	Comp-type float
<code>ftCurr</code>	Currency-type float
<code>ftDouble</code>	Double-sized float
<code>ftExtended</code>	Extended-size float
<code>ftSingle</code>	Single-sized float

The size of a float type.

```
TGetPropValue = function(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                          PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant
```

The callback function must return the property with name `PropName` of instance `Instance`. If `PreferStrings` is true, it should favour converting the property to a string value. The function needs to return the variant with the property value.

```
TGetVariantProp = function(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo)
                    : Variant
```

The callback function must return the variant property with name `PropName` of instance `Instance`.

```
TIntfFlag = (ifHasGuid, ifDispInterface, ifDispatch)
```

Table 30.6: Enumeration values for type `TIntfFlag`

Value	Explanation
<code>ifDispatch</code>	Interface is a dispatch interface
<code>ifDispInterface</code>	Interface is a dual dispatch interface
<code>ifHasGuid</code>	Interface has GUID identifier

Type of interface.

```
TIntfFlags= Set of (ifDispatch, ifDispInterface, ifHasGuid)
```

Set of `TIntfFlag` ([1222](#)).

```
TIntfFlagsBase= Set of (ifDispatch, ifDispInterface, ifHasGuid)
```

Set of `TIntfFlag` ([1222](#)).

```
TMethodKind = (mkProcedure, mkFunction, mkConstructor, mkDestructor,
               mkClassProcedure, mkClassFunction)
```

Table 30.7: Enumeration values for type `TMethodKind`

Value	Explanation
<code>mkClassFunction</code>	Class function
<code>mkClassProcedure</code>	Class procedure
<code>mkConstructor</code>	Class constructor
<code>mkDestructor</code>	Class Desctructor
<code>mkFunction</code>	Function method
<code>mkProcedure</code>	Procedure method.

Method type description

```
TOrdType = (otSByte, otUByte, otSWord, otUWord, otSLong, otULong)
```

If the property is and ordinal type, then `TOrdType` determines the size and sign of the ordinal type:

```
TParamFlags= Set of (pfVar, pfConst, pfArray, pfAddress, pfReference, pfOut)
```

Table 30.8: Enumeration values for type TOrdType

Value	Explanation
otSByte	Signed byte
otSLong	Signed longint
otSWord	Signed word
otUByte	Unsigned byte
otULong	Unsigned longint (Cardinal)
otUWord	Unsigned word

The kind of parameter for a method

TProcInfoProc = procedure(PropInfo: PPropInfo) of object

Property info callback method

```
TPropData = packed record
  PropCount : Word;
  PropList : record
    _alignmentdummy : puint;
  end;
end
```

The TPropData record is not used, but is provided for completeness and compatibility with Delphi.

```
TPropInfo = packed record
  PropType : PTypeInfo;
  GetProc : Pointer;
  SetProc : Pointer;
  StoredProc : Pointer;
  Index : Integer;
  Default : LongInt;
  NameIndex : SmallInt;
  PropProcs : Byte;
  Name : ShortString;
end
```

The TPropInfo record describes one published property of a class. The property information of a class are stored as an array of TPropInfo records.

The Name field is stored not with 255 characters, but with just as many characters as required to store the name.

TPropList = Array[0..65535] of PPropInfo

Array of property information pointers

```
TSetPropValue = procedure(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
  const Value: Variant)
```

The callback function must set the property with name `PropName` of instance `Instance` to `Value`.

```
TSetVariantProp = procedure(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                           const Value: Variant)
```

The callback function must set the variant property with name `PropName` of instance to `Value`.

```
TTypeData = packed record
end
```

If the typeinfo kind is `tkClass`, then the property information follows the `UnitName` string, as an array of `TPropInfo` (1223) records.

```
TTypeInfo = record
  Kind : TTypeKind;
  Name : ShortString;
end
```

The `TypeInfo` function returns a pointer to a `TTypeInfo` record.

Note that the `Name` field is stored with as much bytes as needed to store the name, it is not padded to 255 characters. The type data immediately follows the `TTypeInfo` record as a `TTypeData` (1224) record.

```
TTypeKind = (tkUnknown, tkInteger, tkChar, tkEnumeration, tkFloat, tkSet,
             tkMethod, tkSString, tkLString, tkAString, tkWString, tkVariant,
             tkArray, tkRecord, tkInterface, tkClass, tkObject, tkWChar,
             tkBool, tkInt64, tkQWord, tkDynArray, tkInterfaceRaw)
```

Type of a property.

```
TTypeKinds= Set of (tkArray, tkAString, tkBool, tkChar, tkClass, tkDynArray,
                   tkEnumeration, tkFloat, tkInt64, tkInteger, tkInterface,
                   tkInterfaceRaw, tkLString, tkMethod, tkObject, tkQWord,
                   tkRecord, tkSet, tkSString, tkUnknown, tkVariant,
                   tkWChar, tkWString)
```

Set of `TTypeKind` (1224) enumeration.

```
Variant = Pointer
```

Dummy type. Do not use.

## 30.7 Procedures and functions

### 30.7.1 FindPropInfo

Synopsis: Return property information by property name.

```
Declaration: function FindPropInfo(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String)
                           : PPropInfo
function FindPropInfo(AClass: TClass; const PropName: String) : PPropInfo
```

Table 30.9: Enumeration values for type TTypeKind

Value	Explanation
tkArray	Array property.
tkAString	Ansistring property.
tkBool	Boolean property.
tkChar	Char property.
tkClass	Class property.
tkDynArray	Dynamical array property.
tkEnumeration	Enumeration type property.
tkFloat	Float property.
tkInt64	Int64 property.
tkInteger	Integer property.
tkInterface	Interface property.
tkInterfaceRaw	Raw interface property.
tkLString	Longstring property.
tkMethod	Method property.
tkObject	Object property.
tkQWord	QWord property.
tkRecord	Record property.
tkSet	Set property.
tkSString	Shortstring property.
tkUnknown	Unknown property type.
tkVariant	Variant property.
tkWChar	Widechar property.
tkWString	Widestring property.

Visibility: default

**Description:** FindPropInfo examines the published property information of a class and returns a pointer to the property information for property PropName. The class to be examined can be specified in one of two ways:

**A**Classa class pointer.

**I**nstancean instance of the class to be investigated.

If the property does not exist, a EPropertyError exception will be raised. The GetPropInfo (1234) function has the same function as the FindPropInfo function, but returns Nil if the property does not exist.

**Errors:** Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

**See also:** GetPropInfo (1234), GetPropList (1236), GetPropInfos (1235)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex14.pp

---

**Program** example13;

*{ This program demonstrates the FindPropInfo function }*

*{ \$mode objfpc }*

**uses**

rttiobj , typinfo , sysutils ;

---

```

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PT : PTypeData;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  I,J : Longint;
  PP : PPropList;
  prl : PPropInfo;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  PI:=FindPropInfo(O, 'BooleanField');
  WriteLn('FindPropInfo(Instance, BooleanField) : ', PI^.Name);
  PI:=FindPropInfo(O.ClassType, 'ByteField');
  WriteLn('FindPropInfo(Class, ByteField) : ', PI^.Name);
  Write('FindPropInfo(Class, NonExistingProp) : ');
  Try
    PI:=FindPropInfo(O, 'NonExistingProp');
  except
    On E: Exception do
      WriteLn('Caught exception "', E.ClassName, '" with message : ', E.Message);
    end;
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.2 GetEnumName

Synopsis: Return name of enumeration constant.

Declaration: `function GetEnumName(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; Value: Integer) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnumName` scans the type information for the enumeration type described by `TypeInfo` and returns the name of the enumeration constant for the element with ordinal value equal to `Value`.

If `Value` is out of range, the first element of the enumeration type is returned. The result is lower-cased, but this may change in the future.

This can be used in combination with `GetOrdProp` to stream a property of an enumerated type.

Errors: No check is done to determine whether `TypeInfo` really points to the type information for an enumerated type.

See also: `GetOrdProp` ([1233](#)), `GetEnumValue` ([1228](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex9.pp

---

```

program example9;

{ This program demonstrates the GetEnumName, GetEnumValue functions }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;

```

**Synopsis:** Return the value of an enumeration type property.

Visibility: default

**Errors:** No check is done to determine whether `PropInfo` really points to the property information for an enumerated type. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex2.pp

1227



---

```

    WriteLn ( 'Set ( propinfo , meSecond ) : ' , GetEnumName( TI , Ord(O.MyEnumField) ) );
    O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.4 GetEnumValue

Synopsis: Get ordinal value for enumerated type by name

Declaration: `function GetEnumValue(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo; const Name: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetEnumValue` scans the type information for the enumeration type described by `TypeInfo` and returns the ordinal value for the element in the enumerated type that has identifier `Name`. The identifier is searched in a case-insensitive manner.

This can be used to set the value of enumerated properties from a stream.

For an example, see `GetEnumName` (1226).

Errors: If `Name` is not found in the list of enumerated values, then -1 is returned. No check is done whether `TypeInfo` points to the type information for an enumerated type.

See also: `GetEnumName` (1226), `SetOrdProp` (1245)

### 30.7.5 GetFloatProp

Synopsis: Return value of floating point property

Declaration: `function GetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Extended`  
`function GetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String)`  
`: Extended`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFloatProp` returns the value of the float property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for the object `Instance`. All float types are converted to extended.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid float property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetFloatProp` (1244), `GetOrdProp` (1233), `GetStrProp` (1239), `GetInt64Prop` (1229), `GetMethodProp` (1230), `GetSetProp` (1237), `GetObjectProp` (1232), `GetEnumProp` (1227)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex4.pp

---

```

program example4;

{ This program demonstrates the GetFloatProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj , typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

```

```

begin
  O:= TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln('Real property : ');
  PI:= GetPropInfo(O, 'RealField');
  Writeln('Value           : ', O.RealField);
  Writeln('Get (name)       : ', GetFloatProp(O, 'RealField'));
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)      : ', GetFloatProp(O, PI));
  SetFloatProp(O, 'RealField', system.Pi);
  Writeln('Set (name, pi)      : ', O.RealField);
  SetFloatProp(O, PI, exp(1));
  Writeln('Set (propinfo, e) : ', O.RealField);
  Writeln('Extended property : ');
  PI:= GetPropInfo(O, 'ExtendedField');
  Writeln('Value           : ', O.ExtendedField);
  Writeln('Get (name)       : ', GetFloatProp(O, 'ExtendedField'));
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)   : ', GetFloatProp(O, PI));
  SetFloatProp(O, 'ExtendedField', system.Pi);
  Writeln('Set (name, pi)   : ', O.ExtendedField);
  SetFloatProp(O, PI, exp(1));
  Writeln('Set (propinfo, e) : ', O.ExtendedField);
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.6 GetInt64Prop

Synopsis: return value of an Int64 property

Declaration: `function GetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Int64`  
`function GetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String) : Int64`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Publishing of Int64 properties is not yet supported by Free Pascal. This function is provided for Delphi compatibility only at the moment.

GetInt64Prop returns the value of the property of type Int64 that is described by PropInfo or with name Propname for the object Instance.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid Int64 property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception

See also: SetInt64Prop ([1244](#)), GetOrdProp ([1233](#)), GetStrProp ([1239](#)), GetFloatProp ([1228](#)), GetMethodProp ([1230](#)), GetSetProp ([1237](#)), GetObjectProp ([1232](#)), GetEnumProp ([1227](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex15.pp

---

```

program example15;

{ This program demonstrates the GetInt64Prop function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;

```

```

    PI : PPropInfo;

begin
    O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
    Writeln('Int64 property : ');
    PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'Int64Field');
    Writeln('Value          : ',O.Int64Field);
    Writeln('Get (name)       : ',GetInt64Prop(O, 'Int64Field'));
    Writeln('Get (propinfo)      : ',GetInt64Prop(O, PI));
    SetInt64Prop(O, 'Int64Field',12345);
    Writeln('Set (name,12345)     : ',O.Int64Field);
    SetInt64Prop(O, PI,54321);
    Writeln('Set (propinfo,54321) : ',O.Int64Field);
    O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.7 GetMethodProp

Synopsis: Return value of a method property

Declaration: `function GetMethodProp(Instance: TObject;PropInfo: PPropInfo) : TMethod`  
`function GetMethodProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String)`  
`: TMethod`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetMethodProp` returns the method the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `Propname` for object `Instance`. The return type `TMethod` is defined in the `SysUtils` unit as:

```

TMethod = packed record
    Code, Data: Pointer;
end;

```

Data points to the instance of the class with the method `Code`.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetMethodProp` (1244), `GetOrdProp` (1233), `GetStrProp` (1239), `GetFloatProp` (1228), `GetInt64Prop` (1229), `GetSetProp` (1237), `GetObjectProp` (1232), `GetEnumProp` (1227)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex6.pp`

---

```

program example6;

{ This program demonstrates the GetMethodProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo, sysutils;

```

#### Type

```

TNotifyObject = Class(TObject)
    Procedure Notification1(Sender : TObject);
    Procedure Notification2(Sender : TObject);

```

```

    end;

Procedure TNotifyObject.Notification1(Sender : TObject);

begin
    Write('Received notification 1 of object with class: ');
    Writeln(Sender.ClassName);
end;

Procedure TNotifyObject.Notification2(Sender : TObject);

begin
    Write('Received notification 2 of object with class: ');
    Writeln(Sender.ClassName);
end;

Var
    O : TMyTestObject;
    PI : PPropInfo;
    NO : TNotifyObject;
    M : TMethod;

Procedure PrintMethod (Const M : TMethod);

begin
    If (M.Data=Pointer(NO)) Then
        If (M.Code=Pointer(@TNotifyObject.Notification1)) then
            Writeln('Notification1')
        else If (M.Code=Pointer(@TNotifyObject.Notification2)) then
            Writeln('Notification2')
        else
            begin
                Write('Unknown method adress (data: ');
                Write(hexStr(Longint(M.data),8));
                Writeln(' ,code: ',hexstr(Longint(M.Code),8),')');
            end;
end;

begin
    O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
    NO:=TNotifyObject.Create;
    O.NotifyEvent:=@NO.Notification1;
    PI:=GetPropInfo(O,'NotifyEvent');
    Writeln('Method property : ');
    Write('Notifying : ');
    O.Notify;
    Write('Get (name) : ');
    M:=GetMethodProp(O,'NotifyEvent');
    PrintMethod(M);
    Write('Notifying : ');
    O.Notify;
    Write('Get (propinfo) : ');
    M:=GetMethodProp(O,PI);
    PrintMethod(M);
    M:=TMethod(@NO.Notification2);
    SetMethodProp(O,'NotifyEvent',M);
    Write('Set (name, Notification2) : ');

```

---

```

M:=GetMethodProp(O,PI);
PrintMethod(M);
Write('Notifying                               : ');
O.Notify;
Write('Set (propinfo,Notification1) : ');
M:=TMethod(@NO.Notification1);
SetMethodProp(O,PI,M);
M:=GetMethodProp(O,PI);
PrintMethod(M);
Write('Notifying                               : ');
O.Notify;
O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.8 GetObjectProp

Synopsis: Return value of an object-type property.

Declaration: `function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String) : TObject`  
`function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String; MinClass: TClass) : TObject`  
`function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject;PropInfo: PPropInfo) : TObject`  
`function GetObjectProp(Instance: TObject;PropInfo: PPropInfo; MinClass: TClass) : TObject`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetObjectProp` returns the object which the property described by `PropInfo` with name `Propname` points to for object `Instance`.

If `MinClass` is specified, then if the object is not descendent of class `MinClass`, then `Nil` is returned.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid method property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetMethodProp` ([1244](#)), `GetOrdProp` ([1233](#)), `GetStrProp` ([1239](#)), `GetFloatProp` ([1228](#)), `GetInt64Prop` ([1229](#)), `GetSetProp` ([1237](#)), `GetObjectProp` ([1232](#)), `GetEnumProp` ([1227](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex5.pp`

---

```

program example5;

{ This program demonstrates the GetObjectProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  NO1, NO2 : TNamedObject;

begin

```

---

```

O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
NO1:=TNamedObject.Create;
NO1.ObjectName:= 'First named object';
NO2:=TNamedObject.Create;
NO2.ObjectName:= 'Second named object';
O.ObjField:=NO1;
WriteLn('Object property : ');
PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'ObjField');
Write('Property class      : ');
WriteLn(GetObjectPropClass(O, 'ObjField').ClassName);
Write('Value                : ');
WriteLn((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
Write('Get (name)           : ');
WriteLn((GetObjectProp(O, 'ObjField') as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
Write('Get (propinfo)        : ');
WriteLn((GetObjectProp(O, PI, TObject) as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
SetObjectProp(O, 'ObjField', NO2);
Write('Set (name, NO2)        : ');
WriteLn((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
SetObjectProp(O, PI, NO1);
Write('Set (propinfo, NO1) : ');
WriteLn((O.ObjField as TNamedObject).ObjectName);
O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.9 GetObjectPropClass

Synopsis: Return class of property.

Declaration: `function GetObjectPropClass(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String) : TClass`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetObjectPropClass` returns the declared class of the property with name `PropName`. This may not be the actual class of the property value.

For an example, see `GetObjectProp` ([1232](#)).

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetMethodProp` ([1244](#)), `GetOrdProp` ([1233](#)), `GetStrProp` ([1239](#)), `GetFloatProp` ([1228](#)), `GetInt64Prop` ([1229](#))

### 30.7.10 GetOrdProp

Synopsis: Get the value of an ordinal property

Declaration: `function GetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Int64`  
`function GetOrdProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String) : Int64`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetOrdProp` returns the value of the ordinal property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for the object `Instance`. The value is returned as a longint, which should be typecasted to the needed type.

Ordinal properties that can be retrieved include:

**Integers and subranges of integers**The value of the integer will be returned.

**Enumerated types and subranges of enumerated types**The ordinal value of the enumerated type will be returned.

**Sets**If the base type of the set has less than 31 possible values. If a bit is set in the return value, then the corresponding element of the base ordinal class of the set type must be included in the set.

**Errors:** No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid ordinal property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: SetOrdProp (1245), GetStrProp (1239), GetFloatProp (1228), GetInt64Prop (1229), GetMethodProp (1230), GetSetProp (1237), GetObjectProp (1232), GetEnumProp (1227)

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex1.pp

---

```

program example1;

{ This program demonstrates the GetOrdProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln('Boolean property      : ');
  Writeln('Value                  : ',O.BooleanField);
  Writeln('Ord(Value)                   : ',Ord(O.BooleanField));
  Writeln('Get (name)                   : ',GetOrdProp(O,'BooleanField'));
  PI:=GetPropInfo(O,'BooleanField');
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)               : ',GetOrdProp(O,PI));
  SetOrdProp(O,'BooleanField',Ord(False));
  Writeln('Set (name,false)             : ',O.BooleanField);
  SetOrdProp(O,PI,Ord(True));
  Writeln('Set (propinfo,true)         : ',O.BooleanField);
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.11 GetPropInfo

**Synopsis:** Return property type information, by property name.

**Declaration:**

```

function GetPropInfo(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo;const PropName: String)
    : PPropInfo;
function GetPropInfo(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo;const PropName: String;
    AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo;
function GetPropInfo(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String;
    AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo;
function GetPropInfo(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String)
    : PPropInfo;
function GetPropInfo(AClass: TClass;const PropName: String;

```

```

        AKinds: TTypeKinds) : PPropInfo
function GetPropInfo(AClass: TClass;const PropName: String) : PPropInfo

```

Visibility: default

**Description:** GetPropInfo returns a pointer to the TPropInfo record for a the PropName property of a class. The class to examine can be specified in one of three ways:

**Instance**An instance of the class.

**AClass**A class pointer to the class.

**TypeInfo**A pointer to the type information of the class.

In each of these three ways, if AKinds is specified, if the property has TypeKind which is not included in AKinds, Nil will be returned.

For an example, see most of the other functions.

**Errors:** If the property PropName does not exist, Nil is returned.

See also: GetPropInfos ([1235](#)), GetPropList ([1236](#))

### 30.7.12 GetPropInfos

**Synopsis:** Return a list of published properties.

**Declaration:** procedure GetPropInfos(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo;PropList: PPropList)

Visibility: default

**Description:** GetPropInfos stores pointers to the property information of all published properties of a class with class info TypeInfo in the list pointed to by Proplist. The PropList pointer must point to a memory location that contains enough space to hold all properties of the class and its parent classes.

**Errors:** No checks are done to see whether PropList points to a memory area that is big enough to hold all pointers.

See also: GetPropInfo ([1234](#)), GetPropList ([1236](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex12.pp

---

**Program** example12;

*{ This program demonstrates the GetPropInfos function }*

**uses**

rttiobj , typinfo;

**Var**

O : TMyTestObject;

PT : PTypeData;

PI : PTypeInfo;

I ,J : Longint;

PP : PPropList;

pri : PPropInfo;

**begin**

O:=TMyTestObject.Create;



---

```

PI:=O. ClassInfo;
PT:=GetTypeData(PI);
WriteLn('Property Count : ',PT^.PropCount);
GetMem (PP,PT^.PropCount*SizeOf(Pointer));
GetPropInfos(PI,PP);
For I:=0 to PT^.PropCount-1 do
  begin
    With PP^[i]^ do
      begin
        Write('Property ',i+1:3,' : ',name:30);
        writeln('  Type: ',TypeNames[typinfo.PropType(O,Name)]);
      end;
    end;
  FreeMem(PP);
O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.13 GetPropList

Synopsis: Return a list of a certain type of published properties.

Declaration: function GetPropList(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo;TypeKinds: TTypeKinds;  
                                   PropList: PPropList;Sorted: Boolean) : LongInt  
 function GetPropList(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo;out PropList: PPropList)  
                           : SizeInt

Visibility: default

Description: GetPropList stores pointers to property information of the class with class info TypeInfo for properties of kind TypeKinds in the list pointed to by PropList. PropList must contain enough space to hold all properties.

The function returns the number of pointers that matched the criteria and were stored in PropList.

Errors: No checks are done to see whether PropList points to a memory area that is big enough to hold all pointers.

See also: GetPropInfos ([1235](#)), GetPropInfo ([1234](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex13.pp

---

**Program** example13;

*{ This program demonstrates the GetPropList function }*

**uses**

rttiobj, typinfo;

**Var**

O : TMyTestObject;

PT : PTypeData;

PI : PTypeInfo;

I, J : Longint;

PP : PPropList;

pri : PPropInfo;

**begin**

---

```

O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
PI:=O.ClassInfo;
PT:=GetTypeData(PI);
WriteLn('Total property Count : ',PT^.PropCount);
GetMem (PP,PT^.PropCount*SizeOf(Pointer));
J:=GetPropList(PI,OrdinalTypes,PP);
WriteLn('Ordinal property Count : ',J);
For I:=0 to J-1 do
begin
  With PP^[I]^ do
  begin
    Write('Property ',I+1:3,' : ',name:30);
    writeln(' Type: ',TypeNames[typinfo.PropType(O,Name)]);
  end;
end;
FreeMem(PP);
O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.14 GetPropValue

Synopsis: Get property value as a string.

Declaration: `function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String) : Variant`  
`function GetPropValue(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String;`  
`PreferStrings: Boolean) : Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing Variant support, GetPropValue is not yet implemented. The declaration is provided for compatibility with Delphi.

Errors:

### 30.7.15 GetSetProp

Synopsis: Return the value of a set property.

Declaration: `function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String) : String`  
`function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String;`  
`Brackets: Boolean) : String`  
`function GetSetProp(Instance: TObject;const PropInfo: PPropInfo;`  
`Brackets: Boolean) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: GetSetProp returns the contents of a set property as a string. The property to be returned can be specified by it's name in PropName or by its property information in PropInfo.

The returned set is a string representation of the elements in the set as returned by SetToString ([1247](#)). The Brackets option can be used to enclose the string representation in square brackets.

Errors: No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid ordinal property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: SetSetProp ([1246](#)), GetStrProp ([1239](#)), GetFloatProp ([1228](#)), GetInt64Prop ([1229](#)), GetMethodProp ([1230](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex7.pp

---

```

program example7;

{ This program demonstrates the GetSetProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj , typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

Function SetAsString (ASet : TMyEnums) : String;

Var
  i : TmyEnum;

begin
  result := '';
  For i := mefirst to methird do
    If i in ASet then
      begin
        If (Result <> '') then
          Result := Result + ', ';
          Result := Result + MyEnumNames[i];
        end;
      end;

end;

Var
  S : TMyEnums;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  O.SetField := [mefirst, meSecond, meThird];
  Writeln ('Set property      : ');
  Writeln ('Value                               : ', SetAsString(O.SetField));
  Writeln ('Ord(Value)                             : ', Longint(O.SetField));
  Writeln ('Get (name)                               : ', GetSetProp(O, 'SetField'));
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'SetField');
  Writeln ('Get (propinfo)                           : ', GetSetProp(O, PI, false));
  S := [meFirst, meThird];
  SetOrdProp(O, 'SetField', Integer(S));
  Write ('Set (name, [mefirst, methird]) : ');
  Writeln (SetAsString(O.SetField));
  S := [meSecond];
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, Integer(S));
  Write ('Set (propinfo, [meSecond]) : ');
  Writeln (SetAsString(O.SetField));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.16 GetStrProp

Synopsis: Return the value of a string property.

Declaration: `function GetStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Ansistring`  
`function GetStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String) : String`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetStrProp` returns the value of the string property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for object `Instance`.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid string property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `SetStrProp` (1247), `GetOrdProp` (1233), `GetFloatProp` (1228), `GetInt64Prop` (1229), `GetMethodProp` (1230)

Listing: `./typinfex/ex3.pp`

---

```

program example3;

{ This program demonstrates the GetStrProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  PI := GetPropInfo(O, 'AnsiStringField');
  Writeln('String property : ');
  Writeln('Value           : ', O.AnsiStringField);
  Writeln('Get (name)         : ', GetStrProp(O, 'AnsiStringField'));
  Writeln('Get (propinfo)       : ', GetStrProp(O, PI));
  SetStrProp(O, 'AnsiStringField', 'First');
  Writeln('Set (name, ''First'') : ', O.AnsiStringField);
  SetStrProp(O, PI, 'Second');
  Writeln('Set (propinfo, ''Second'') : ', O.AnsiStringField);
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.17 GetTypeData

Synopsis: Return a pointer to type data, based on type information.

Declaration: `function GetTypeData(TypeInfo: PTypeInfo) : PTypeData`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetTypeData` returns a pointer to the `TTypeData` record that follows after the `TTypeInfo` record pointed to by `TypeInfo`. It essentially skips the `Kind` and `Name` fields in the `TTypeInfo` record.

Errors: None.

### 30.7.18 GetVariantProp

Synopsis: Return the value of a variant property.

Declaration: `function GetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Variant`  
`function GetVariantProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String)`  
`: Variant`

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing Variant support, the GetVariantProp function is not yet implemented. Provided for Delphi compatibility only.

Errors:

See also: SetVariantProp ([1248](#))

### 30.7.19 IsPublishedProp

Synopsis: Check whether a published property exists.

Declaration: `function IsPublishedProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String)`  
`: Boolean`  
`function IsPublishedProp(AClass: TClass; const PropName: String)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: IsPublishedProp returns true if a class has a published property with name PropName. The class can be specified in one of two ways:

**AClass** A class pointer to the class.

**Instance** An instance of the class.

Errors: No checks are done to ensure Instance or AClass are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: IsStoredProp ([1241](#)), PropIsType ([1242](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex10.pp

---

```

program example10;

{ This program demonstrates the IsPublishedProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  WriteLn( 'Property tests      : ');
  Write( 'IsPublishedProp(O, BooleanField)      : ');
  WriteLn(IsPublishedProp(O, 'BooleanField'));
  Write( 'IsPublishedProp(Class, BooleanField) : ');

```

---

```

WriteIn (IsPublishedProp (O.ClassType, 'BooleanField'));
Write ( 'IsPublishedProp (O, SomeField)      : ');
WriteIn (IsPublishedProp (O, 'SomeField'));
Write ( 'IsPublishedProp (Class, SomeField)   : ');
WriteIn (IsPublishedProp (O.ClassType, 'SomeField'));
O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.20 IsStoredProp

Synopsis: Check whether a property is stored.

Declaration: `function IsStoredProp (Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo) : Boolean`  
`function IsStoredProp (Instance: TObject; const PropName: String)`  
`: Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `IsStoredProp` returns `True` if the `Stored` modifier evaluates to `True` for the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` for object `Instance`. It returns `False` otherwise. If the function returns `True`, this indicates that the property should be written when streaming the object `Instance`.

If there was no stored modifier in the declaration of the property, `True` will be returned.

Errors: No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid property of `Instance`. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `IsPublishedProp` ([1240](#)), `PropIsType` ([1242](#))

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex11.pp`

---

```

program example11;

{ This program demonstrates the IsStoredProp function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  WriteIn ('Stored tests      : ');
  Write ('IsStoredProp (O, StoredIntegerConstFalse) : ');
  WriteIn (IsStoredProp (O, 'StoredIntegerConstFalse'));
  Write ('IsStoredProp (O, StoredIntegerConstTrue)  : ');
  WriteIn (IsStoredProp (O, 'StoredIntegerConstTrue'));
  Write ('IsStoredProp (O, StoredIntegerMethod)     : ');
  WriteIn (IsStoredProp (O, 'StoredIntegerMethod'));
  Write ('IsStoredProp (O, StoredIntegerVirtualMethod) : ');
  WriteIn (IsStoredProp (O, 'StoredIntegerVirtualMethod'));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.21 PropIsType

Synopsis: Check the type of a published property.

Declaration: `function PropIsType(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String;  
TypeKind: TTypeKind) : Boolean`  
`function PropIsType(AClass: TClass;const PropName: String;  
TypeKind: TTypeKind) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `PropIsType` returns `True` if the property with name `PropName` has type `TypeKind`. It returns `False` otherwise. The class to be examined can be specified in one of two ways:

**AClass**A class pointer.

**Instance**An instance of the class.

Errors: No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `AClass` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `IsPublishedProp` (1240), `IsStoredProp` (1241), `PropType` (1242)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex16.pp`

---

```
program example16;

{ This program demonstrates the PropIsType function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;

begin
  O:= TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln('Property tests      : ');
  Write('PropIsType(O, BooleanField, tkBool)      : ');
  Writeln(PropIsType(O, 'BooleanField', tkBool));
  Write('PropIsType(Class, BooleanField, tkBool) : ');
  Writeln(PropIsType(O.ClassType, 'BooleanField', tkBool));
  Write('PropIsType(O, ByteField, tkString)      : ');
  Writeln(PropIsType(O, 'ByteField', tkString));
  Write('PropIsType(Class, ByteField, tkString) : ');
  Writeln(PropIsType(O.ClassType, 'ByteField', tkString));
  O.Free;
end.
```

---

### 30.7.22 PropType

Synopsis: Return the type of a property

Declaration: `function PropType(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String) : TTypeKind`  
`function PropType(AClass: TClass;const PropName: String) : TTypeKind`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `PropType` returns the type of the property `PropName` for a class. The class to be examined can be specified in one of 2 ways:

**AClass** A class pointer.

**Instance** An instance of the class.

**Errors:** No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `AClass` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `IsPublishedProp` (1240), `IsStoredProp` (1241), `PropIsType` (1242)

**Listing:** `./typinfex/ex17.pp`

---

```

program example17;

{ This program demonstrates the PropType function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;

begin
  O := TMyTestObject.Create;
  Writeln ('Property tests      : ');
  Write ('PropType(O, BooleanField)      : ');
  Writeln (TypeNames[PropType(O, 'BooleanField')]);
  Write ('PropType(Class, BooleanField) : ');
  Writeln (TypeNames[PropType(O.ClassType, 'BooleanField')]);
  Write ('PropType(O, ByteField)      : ');
  Writeln (TypeNames[PropType(O, 'ByteField')]);
  Write ('PropType(Class, ByteField)    : ');
  Writeln (TypeNames[PropType(O.ClassType, 'ByteField')]);
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.23 SetEnumProp

**Synopsis:** Set value of an enumerated-type property

**Declaration:**

```

procedure SetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                      const Value: String)
procedure SetEnumProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      const Value: String)

```

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetEnumProp` sets the property described by `PropInfo` or with name `PropName` to `Value`. `Value` must be a string with the name of the enumerate value, i.e. it can be used as an argument to `GetEnumValue` (1228).

For an example, see `GetEnumProp` (1227).

**Errors:** No checks are done to ensure `Instance` or `PropInfo` are valid pointers. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.



See also: [GetEnumProp \(1227\)](#), [SetStrProp \(1247\)](#), [SetFloatProp \(1244\)](#), [SetInt64Prop \(1244\)](#), [SetMethodProp \(1244\)](#)

### 30.7.24 SetFloatProp

Synopsis: Set value of a float property.

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                      Value: Extended)
procedure SetFloatProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      Value: Extended)
```

Visibility: default

Description: SetFloatProp assigns Value to the property described by PropInfo or with name Propname for the object Instance.

For an example, see [GetFloatProp \(1228\)](#).

Errors: No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid float property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: [GetFloatProp \(1228\)](#), [SetOrdProp \(1245\)](#), [SetStrProp \(1247\)](#), [SetInt64Prop \(1244\)](#), [SetMethodProp \(1244\)](#)

### 30.7.25 SetInt64Prop

Synopsis: Set value of a Int64 property

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      const Value: Int64)
procedure SetInt64Prop(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                      const Value: Int64)
```

Visibility: default

Description: SetInt64Prop assigns Value to the property of type Int64 that is described by PropInfo or with name Propname for the object Instance.

For an example, see [GetInt64Prop \(1229\)](#).

Errors: No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid Int64 property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: [GetInt64Prop \(1229\)](#), [GetMethodProp \(1230\)](#), [SetOrdProp \(1245\)](#), [SetStrProp \(1247\)](#), [SetFloatProp \(1244\)](#)

### 30.7.26 SetMethodProp

Synopsis: Set the value of a method property

Declaration: 

```
procedure SetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                      const Value: TMethod)
procedure SetMethodProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                      const Value: TMethod)
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** SetMethodProp assigns Value to the method the property described by PropInfo or with name Propname for object Instance.

The type TMethod of the Value parameter is defined in the SysUtils unit as:

```
TMethod = packed record
    Code, Data: Pointer;
end;
```

Data should point to the instance of the class with the method Code.

For an example, see GetMethodProp (1230).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid method property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: GetMethodProp (1230), SetOrdProp (1245), SetStrProp (1247), SetFloatProp (1244), SetInt64Prop (1244)

### 30.7.27 SetObjectProp

**Synopsis:** Set the value of an object-type property.

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetObjectProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String;
    Value: TObject)
procedure SetObjectProp(Instance: TObject;PropInfo: PPropInfo;
    Value: TObject)
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** SetObjectProp assigns Value to the the object property described by PropInfo or with name Propname for the object Instance.

For an example, see GetObjectProp (1232).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid method property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: GetObjectProp (1232), SetOrdProp (1245), SetStrProp (1247), SetFloatProp (1244), SetInt64Prop (1244), SetMethodProp (1244)

### 30.7.28 SetOrdProp

**Synopsis:** Set value of an ordinal property

**Declaration:**

```
procedure SetOrdProp(Instance: TObject;PropInfo: PPropInfo;Value: Int64)
procedure SetOrdProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String;
    Value: Int64)
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** SetOrdProp assigns Value to the the ordinal property described by PropInfo or with name Propname for the object Instance.

Ordinal properties that can be set include:

**Integers and subranges of integers**The actual value of the integer must be passed.

**Enumerated types and subranges of enumerated types**The ordinal value of the enumerated type must be passed.

**Subrange types**of integers or enumerated types. Here the ordinal value must be passed.

**Sets**If the base type of the set has less than 31 possible values. For each possible value; the corresponding bit of `Value` must be set.

For an example, see `GetOrdProp` ([1233](#)).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. No range checking is performed. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetOrdProp` ([1233](#)), `SetStrProp` ([1247](#)), `SetFloatProp` ([1244](#)), `SetInt64Prop` ([1244](#)), `SetMethodProp` ([1244](#))

### 30.7.29 SetPropValue

**Synopsis:** Set property value as variant

**Declaration:** `procedure SetPropValue(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;  
const Value: Variant)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** Due to missing Variant support, this function is not yet implemented; it is provided for Delphi compatibility only.

**Errors:**

### 30.7.30 SetSetProp

**Synopsis:** Set value of set-typed property.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;  
const Value: String)  
procedure SetSetProp(Instance: TObject; const PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: String)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** `SetSetProp` sets the property specified by `PropInfo` or `PropName` for object `Instance` to `Value`. `Value` is a string which contains a comma-separated list of values, each value being a string-representation of the enumerated value that should be included in the set. The value should be accepted by the `StringToSet` ([1248](#)) function.

The value can be formed using the `SetToString` ([1247](#)) function.

For an example, see `GetSetProp` ([1237](#)).

**Errors:** No checking is done whether `Instance` is non-nil, or whether `PropInfo` describes a valid ordinal property of `Instance`. No range checking is performed. Specifying an invalid property name in `PropName` will result in an `EPropertyError` exception.

See also: `GetSetProp` ([1237](#)), `SetOrdProp` ([1245](#)), `SetStrProp` ([1247](#)), `SetFloatProp` ([1244](#)), `SetInt64Prop` ([1244](#)), `SetMethodProp` ([1244](#)), `SetToString` ([1247](#)), `StringToSet` ([1248](#))

### 30.7.31 SetStrProp

Synopsis: Set value of a string property

```

Declaration: procedure SetStrProp(Instance: TObject; const PropName: String;
                                const Value: AnsiString)
              procedure SetStrProp(Instance: TObject; PropInfo: PPropInfo;
                                const Value: Ansistring)

```

Visibility: default

Description: SetStrProp assigns Value to the string property described by PropInfo or with name Propname for object Instance.

For an example, see GetStrProp ([1239](#))

Errors: No checking is done whether Instance is non-nil, or whether PropInfo describes a valid string property of Instance. Specifying an invalid property name in PropName will result in an EPropertyError exception.

See also: GetStrProp ([1239](#)), SetOrdProp ([1245](#)), SetFloatProp ([1244](#)), SetInt64Prop ([1244](#)), SetMethodProp ([1244](#))

### 30.7.32 SetToString

Synopsis: Convert set to a string description

```

Declaration: function SetToString(PropInfo: PPropInfo; Value: Integer;
                                Brackets: Boolean) : String
              function SetToString(PropInfo: PPropInfo; Value: Integer) : String

```

Visibility: default

Description: SetToString takes an integer representation of a set (as received e.g. by GetOrdProp) and turns it into a string representing the elements in the set, based on the type information found in the PropInfo property information. By default, the string representation is not surrounded by square brackets. Setting the Brackets parameter to True will surround the string representation with brackets.

The function returns the string representation of the set.

Errors: No checking is done to see whether PropInfo points to valid property information.

See also: GetEnumName ([1226](#)), GetEnumValue ([1228](#)), StringToSet ([1248](#))

**Listing:** ./typinfex/ex18.pp

---

```

program example18;

{ This program demonstrates the SetToString function }

{$mode objfpc}

uses rttiobj, typinfo;

Var
  O : TMyTestObject;
  PI : PPropInfo;
  I : longint;

```

---

```

begin
  O:=TMyTestObject.Create;
  PI:=GetPropInfo(O, 'SetField');
  O.SetField :=[ mefirst ,meSecond, meThird];
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Set property to string : ');
  Writeln('Value  : ',SetToString(PI,I,False));
  O.SetField :=[ mefirst ,meSecond];
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ',SetToString(PI,I,True));
  I:=StringToSet(PI, 'mefirst');
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, I);
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ',SetToString(PI,I,False));
  I:=StringToSet(PI, '[mesecond, methird]');
  SetOrdProp(O, PI, I);
  I:=GetOrdProp(O, PI);
  Writeln('Value  : ',SetToString(PI,I,True));
  O.Free;
end.

```

---

### 30.7.33 SetVariantProp

Synopsis: Set value of a variant property

Declaration: `procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject;const PropName: String;  
const Value: Variant)  
procedure SetVariantProp(Instance: TObject;PropInfo: PPropInfo;  
const Value: Variant)`

Visibility: default

Description: Due to missing Variant support, this function is not yet implemented. Provided for Delphi compatibility only.

Errors:

### 30.7.34 StringToSet

Synopsis: Convert string description to a set.

Declaration: `function StringToSet(PropInfo: PPropInfo;const Value: String) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `StringToSet` converts the string representation of a set in `Value` to a integer representation of the set, using the property information found in `PropInfo`. This property information should point to the property information of a set property. The function returns the integer representation of the set. (i.e, the set value, typecast to an integer)

The string representation can be surrounded with square brackets, and must consist of the names of the elements of the base type of the set. The base type of the set should be an enumerated type. The elements should be separated by commas, and may be surrounded by spaces. each of the names will be fed to the `GetEnumValue` ([1228](#)) function.

For an example, see `SetToString` ([1247](#)).

**Errors:** No checking is done to see whether `PropInfo` points to valid property information. If a wrong name is given for an enumerated value, then an `EPropertyError` will be raised.

See also: `GetEnumName` ([1226](#)), `GetEnumValue` ([1228](#)), `SetToString` ([1247](#))

## **30.8 EPropertyError**

### **30.8.1 Description**

Exception raised in case of an error in one of the functions.

# Chapter 31

## Reference for unit 'Unix'

### 31.1 Used units

Table 31.1: Used units by unit 'Unix'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">70</a>
unixtype	<a href="#">1284</a>

### 31.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 31.2.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX` = `UnixType.ARG_MAX`

Maximum number of arguments to a program.

`fs_ext` = `$137d`

File system type (StatFS ([1280](#))): (ext) Extended

`fs_ext2` = `$ef53`

File system type (StatFS ([1280](#))): (ext2) Second extended

`fs_iso` = `$9660`

File system type (StatFS ([1280](#))): ISO 9660

`fs_minix` = `$137f`

File system type (StatFS ([1280](#))): Minix

`fs_minix_30` = `$138f`

File system type (StatFS (1280)): Minix 3.0

`fs_minix_v2` = \$2468

File system type (StatFS (1280)): Minix V2

`fs_msdos` = \$4d44

File system type (StatFS (1280)): MSDOS (FAT)

`fs_nfs` = \$6969

File system type (StatFS (1280)): NFS

`fs_old_ext2` = \$ef51

File system type (StatFS (1280)): (ext2) Old second extended

`fs_proc` = \$9fa0

File system type (StatFS (1280)): PROC fs

`fs_xia` = \$012FD16D

File system type (StatFS (1280)): XIA

`IOctl_TCGETS` = \$5401

IOCTL call number: get Terminal Control settings

`LOCK_EX` = 2

`FpFLock` (1271) Exclusive lock

`LOCK_NB` = 4

`FpFLock` (1271) Non-blocking operation

`LOCK_SH` = 1

`FpFLock` (1271) Shared lock

`LOCK_UN` = 8

`FpFLock` (1271) unlock

`MAP_DENYWRITE` = \$800

`FpMMap` (1250) option: Ignored.

`MAP_EXECUTABLE` = \$1000



FpMMap (1250) option: Ignored.

MAP\_FIXED = \$10

FpMMap (1250) map type: Interpret addr exactly

MAP\_GROWSDOWN = \$100

FpMMap (1250) option: Memory grows downward (like a stack)

MAP\_LOCKED = \$2000

FpMMap (1250) option: lock the pages in memory.

MAP\_NORESERVE = \$4000

FpMMap (1250) option: Do not reserve swap pages for this memory.

MAP\_SHARED = \$1

FpMMap (1250) map type: Share changes

MAP\_TYPE = \$f

FpMMap (1250) map type: Bitmask for type of mapping

NAME\_MAX = UnixType.NAME\_MAX

Maximum filename length.

Open\_Accmode = 3

Bitmask to determine access mode in open flags.

Open\_Append = 2 shl 9

File open mode: Append to file

Open\_Creat = 1 shl 6

File open mode: Create if file does not yet exist.

Open\_Direct = 4 shl 12

File open mode: Minimize caching effects

Open\_Directory = 2 shl 15

File open mode: File must be directory.

Open\_Excl = 2 shl 6

File open mode: Open exclusively

`Open_LargeFile = 1 shl 15`

File open mode: Open for 64-bit I/O

`Open_NDelay = Open_NonBlock`

File open mode: Alias for `Open_NonBlock` ([1253](#))

`Open_NoCtty = 4 shl 6`

File open mode: No TTY control.

`Open_NoFollow = 4 shl 15`

File open mode: Fail if file is symbolic link.

`Open_NonBlock = 4 shl 9`

File open mode: Open in non-blocking mode

`Open_RdOnly = 0`

File open mode: Read only

`Open_RdWr = 2`

File open mode: Read/Write

`Open_Sync = 1 shl 12`

File open mode: Write to disc at once

`Open_Trunc = 1 shl 9`

File open mode: Truncate file to length 0

`Open_WrOnly = 1`

File open mode: Write only

`PATH_MAX = UnixType.PATH_MAX`

Maximum pathname length.

`PROT_EXEC = $4`

`FpMMap` ([1250](#)) memory access: page can be executed

`PROT_NONE = $0`

FpMMap (1250) memory access: page can not be accessed

PROT\_READ = \$1

FpMMap (1250) memory access: page can be read

PROT\_WRITE = \$2

FpMMap (1250) memory access: page can be written

P\_IN = 1

Input file descriptor of pipe pair.

P\_OUT = 2

Output file descriptor of pipe pair.

SIG\_MAXSIG = UnixType.SIG\_MAXSIG

Maximum system signal number.

STAT\_IFBLK = \$6000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Block device

STAT\_IFCHR = \$2000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Character device

STAT\_IFDIR = \$4000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Directory

STAT\_IFIFO = \$1000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: FIFO

STAT\_IFLNK = \$a000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Link

STAT\_IFMT = \$f000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: File type bit mask

STAT\_IFREG = \$8000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Regular file

STAT\_IFSOCK = \$c000

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Socket

STAT\_IRGRP = STAT\_IROTH shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Group read permission

STAT\_IROTH = \$4

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Other read permission

STAT\_IRUSR = STAT\_IROTH shl 6

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Owner read permission

STAT\_IRWXG = STAT\_IRWXO shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Group permission bits mask

STAT\_IRWXO = \$7

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Other permission bits mask

STAT\_IRWXU = STAT\_IRWXO shl 6

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Owner permission bits mask

STAT\_ISGID = \$0400

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: GID bit set

STAT\_ISUID = \$0800

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: UID bit set

STAT\_ISVTX = \$0200

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Sticky bit set

STAT\_IWGRP = STAT\_IWOTH shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Group write permission

STAT\_IWOTH = \$2

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Other write permission

STAT\_IWUSR = STAT\_IWOTH shl 6

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Owner write permission

STAT\_IXGRP = STAT\_IXOTH shl 3

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Others execute permission

```
STAT_IXOTH = $1
```

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Others execute permission

```
STAT_IXUSR = STAT_IXOTH shl 6
```

File (#rtl.baseunix.stat (97) record) mode: Others execute permission

```
SYS_NMLN = UnixType.SYS_NMLN
```

Max system name length.

```
Wait_Any = -1
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (150): Wait on any process

```
Wait_Clone = $800000000
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (150): Wait on clone processes only.

```
Wait_MyPGRP = 0
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (150): Wait processes from current process group

```
Wait_NoHang = 1
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (150): Do not wait

```
Wait_UnTraced = 2
```

#rtl.baseunix.fpWaitPID (150): Also report stopped but untraced processes

### 31.2.2 Types

```
cchar = UnixType.cchar
```

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.cchar (1285)

```
cDouble = UnixType.cDouble
```

Double precision real format.

```
cFloat = UnixType.cFloat
```

Floating-point real format

```
cInt = UnixType.cInt
```

C type: integer (natural size)

`cInt16 = UnixType.cInt16`

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

`cInt32 = UnixType.cInt32`

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

`cInt64 = UnixType.cInt64`

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

`cInt8 = UnixType.cInt8`

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

`clDouble = UnixType.clDouble`

Long double precision real format (Extended)

`clock_t = UnixType.clock_t`

Clock ticks type

`cLong = UnixType.cLong`

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

`cshort = UnixType.cshort`

C type: short signed integer (half sized)

`cuchar = UnixType.cuchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.cuchar` ([1286](#))

`cUInt = UnixType.cUInt`

C type: unsigned integer (natural size)

`cUInt16 = UnixType.cUInt16`

C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cUInt32 = UnixType.cUInt32`

C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cUInt64 = UnixType.cUInt64`

C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cUInt8 = UnixType.cUInt8`

C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuLong = UnixType.cuLong`

C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)

`cunsigned = UnixType.cunsigned`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.cunsigned` ([1287](#))

`cushort = UnixType.cushort`

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

`dev_t = UnixType.dev_t`

Device descriptor type.

`gid_t = UnixType.gid_t`

Group ID type.

`ino_t = UnixType.ino_t`

Inode type.

`mode_t = UnixType.mode_t`

Inode mode type.

`nlink_t = UnixType.nlink_t`

Number of links type.

`off_t = UnixType.off_t`

Offset type.

`pcchar = UnixType.pcchar`

Alias for `#rtl.UnixType.pcchar` ([1288](#))

`pcDouble = UnixType.pcDouble`

Pointer to `cdouble` ([89](#)) type.

`pcFloat = UnixType.pcFloat`

Pointer to cfloat (89) type.

```
pcInt = UnixType.pcInt
```

Pointer to cInt (1257) type.

```
pcldouble = UnixType.pclDouble
```

Pointer to cldouble (89) type.

```
pClock = UnixType.pClock
```

Pointer to TClock (1261) type.

```
pcLong = UnixType.pcLong
```

Pointer to cLong (1257) type.

```
pcshort = UnixType.pcsShort
```

Pointer to cShort (1257) type.

```
pcuchar = UnixType.pcuchar
```

Alias for #rtl.UnixType.pcuchar (1288)

```
pcUInt = UnixType.pcUInt
```

Pointer to cUInt (1257) type.

```
pculong = UnixType.pculong
```

Pointer to cuLong (1258) type.

```
pcunsigned = UnixType.pcunsigned
```

Alias for #rtl.unixtype.pcunsigned (1289)

```
pcushort = UnixType.pcushort
```

Pointer to cuShort (1258) type.

```
pDev = UnixType.pDev
```

Pointer to TDev (1261) type.

```
pGid = UnixType.pGid
```

Pointer to TGid (1262) type.

```
pid_t = UnixType.pid_t
```



Process ID type.

`pIno = UnixType.pIno`

Pointer to TIno (1262) type.

`pMode = UnixType.pMode`

Pointer to TMode (1262) type.

`pnLink = UnixType.pnLink`

Pointer to TnLink (1262) type.

`pOff = UnixType.pOff`

Pointer to TOff (1262) type.

`pPid = UnixType.pPid`

Pointer to TPid (1262) type.

`pSize = UnixType.pSize`

Pointer to TSize (1262) type.

`pSocklen = UnixType.pSocklen`

Pointer to TSockLen (1262) type.

`psSize = UnixType.psSize`

Pointer to TsSize (1262) type

`pthread_cond_t = UnixType.pthread_cond_t`

Thread conditional variable type.

`pthread_mutex_t = UnixType.pthread_mutex_t`

Thread mutex type.

`pthread_t = UnixType.pthread_t`

Posix thread type.

`pTime = UnixType.pTime`

Pointer to TTime (1263) type.

`ptimespec = UnixType.ptimespec`

Pointer to timespec (1262) type.

```
ptimeval = UnixType.ptimeval
```

Pointer to timeval (1262) type.

```
ptime_t = UnixType.ptime_t
```

Pointer to time\_t (1262) type.

```
pUId = UnixType.pUId
```

Pointer to TUid (1263) type.

```
size_t = UnixType.size_t
```

Size specification type.

```
socklen_t = UnixType.socklen_t
```

Socket address length type.

```
ssize_t = UnixType.ssize_t
```

Small size type.

```
TClock = UnixType.TClock
```

Alias for clock\_t (1257) type.

```
TDev = UnixType.TDev
```

Alias for dev\_t (1258) type.

```
TFSearchOption = (NoCurrentDirectory, CurrentDirectoryFirst,  
                  CurrentDirectoryLast)
```

Table 31.2: Enumeration values for type TFSearchOption

Value	Explanation
CurrentDirectoryFirst	Search the current directory first, before all directories in the search path.
CurrentDirectoryLast	Search the current directory last, after all directories in the search path
NoCurrentDirectory	Do not search the current directory unless it is specified in the search path.

Describes the search strategy used by FSearch (1273)

```
TGid = UnixType.TGid
```

Alias for `gid_t` (1258) type.

```
timespec = UnixType.timespec
```

Short time specification type.

```
timeval = UnixType.timeval
```

Time specification type.

```
time_t = UnixType.time_t
```

Time span type

```
TIno = UnixType.TIno
```

Alias for `ino_t` (1258) type.

```
TMode = UnixType.TMode
```

Alias for `mode_t` (1258) type.

```
TnLink = UnixType.TnLink
```

Alias for `nlink_t` (1258) type.

```
TOff = UnixType.TOff
```

Alias for `off_t` (1258) type.

```
TPid = UnixType.TPid
```

Alias for `pid_t` (1260) type.

```
Tpipe = baseunix.tfildes
```

Array describing a pipe pair of file descriptors.

```
TSize = UnixType.TSize
```

Alias for `size_t` (1261) type

```
TSocklen = UnixType.TSocklen
```

Alias for `socklen_t` (1261) type.

```
TsSize = UnixType.TsSize
```

Alias for `ssize_t` (1261) type

```
tstatfs = UnixType.TStatFs
```

Record describing a file system in the `baseunix.fpstatfs` (1250) call.

`TTime = UnixType.TTime`

Alias for `TTime` (1263) type.

`Ttimespec = UnixType.Ttimespec`

Alias for `TimeSpec` (1262) type.

`TTimeVal = UnixType.TTimeVal`

Alias for `timeval` (1262) type.

`TUid = UnixType.TUid`

Alias for `uid_t` (1263) type.

`uid_t = UnixType.uid_t`

User ID type

### 31.2.3 Variables

`tzdaylight : Boolean`

Indicates whether daylight savings time is active.

`tzname : Array[Boolean] of pchar`

Timezone name.

`Tzseconds : LongInt = 0`

Timezone offset in seconds

## 31.3 Procedures and functions

### 31.3.1 AssignPipe

Synopsis: Create a set of pipe file handlers

Declaration: `function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: cInt; var pipe_out: cInt) : cInt`  
`function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: text; var pipe_out: text) : cInt`  
`function AssignPipe(var pipe_in: file; var pipe_out: file) : cInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** AssignPipe creates a pipe, i.e. two file objects, one for input, one for output. What is written to Pipe\_out, can be read from Pipe\_in.

This call is overloaded. The in and out pipe can take three forms: an typed or untyped file, a text file or a file descriptor.

If a text file is passed then reading and writing from/to the pipe can be done through the usual Readln(Pipe\_in,...) and Writeln(Pipe\_out,...) procedures.

The function returns True if everything went succesfully, False otherwise.

**Errors:** In case the function fails and returns False, extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (115) function:

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

See also: POpen (1277), #rtl.baseunix.FpMkFifo (123)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex36.pp

---

**Program** Example36;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignPipe function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** pipi, pipo : Text;  
s : String;

```
begin
  Writeln ( 'Assigning Pipes.' );
  If assignpipe(pipi, pipo) <> 0 then
    Writeln('Error assigning pipes !', fpgeterrno);
  Writeln ( 'Writing to pipe, and flushing.' );
  Writeln ( pipo, 'This is a textstring' ); close(pipo);
  Writeln ( 'Reading from pipe.' );
  While not eof(pipi) do
    begin
      Readln ( pipi, s );
      Writeln ( 'Read from pipe : ', s );
    end;
  close ( pipi );
  writeln ( 'Closed pipes.' );
  writeln
end.
```

---

### 31.3.2 AssignStream

**Synopsis:** Assign stream for in and output to a program

**Declaration:**

```
function AssignStream(var StreamIn: text; var Streamout: text;
  const Prog: ansiString;
  const args: Array[] of ansistring) : cInt
function AssignStream(var StreamIn: text; var Streamout: text;
  var streamerr: text; const Prog: ansiString;
  const args: Array[] of ansistring) : cInt
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** AssignStream creates a 2 or 3 pipes, i.e. two (or three) file objects, one for input, one for output, (and one for standard error) the other ends of these pipes are connected to standard input and output (and standard error) of Prog. Prog is the name of a program (including path) with options, which will be executed.

What is written to StreamOut, will go to the standard input of Prog. Whatever is written by Prog to its standard output can be read from StreamIn. Whatever is written by Prog to its standard error read from StreamErr, if present.

Reading and writing happens through the usual Readln(StreamIn, ...) and Writeln(StreamOut, ...) procedures.

**Remark:** You should *not* use Reset or Rewrite on a file opened with POpen. This will close the file before re-opening it again, thereby closing the connection with the program.

The function returns the process ID of the spawned process, or -1 in case of error.

**Errors:** Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (115) function.

**sys\_enfile** Too many file descriptors for this process.

**sys\_enfile** The system file table is full.

Other errors include the ones by the fork and exec programs

See also: AssignPipe (1263), POpen (1277)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex38.pp

**Program** Example38;

*{ Program to demonstrate the AssignStream function. }*

**Uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**Var** Si, So : Text;  
S : String;  
i : longint;

**begin**

if not (paramstr(1) = '-son') then

begin

Writeln('Calling son');

Assignstream(Si, So, './ex38 -son');

if fpgeterrno <> 0 then

begin

writeln('AssignStream failed!');

halt(1);

end;

Writeln('Speaking to son');

For i:=1 to 10 do

begin

writeln(so, 'Hello son!');

if ioreult <> 0 then writeln('Can't speak to son...');

end;

For i:=1 to 3 do writeln(so, 'Hello chap!');

close(so);

while not eof(Si) do

begin

---

```

    readln ( si,s);
    writeln ( 'Father: Son said : ',S);
    end;
    Writeln ( 'Stopped conversation ');
    Close ( Si);
    Writeln ( 'Put down phone ');
    end
Else
begin
    Writeln ( 'This is the son ');
    While not eof (input) do
        begin
            readln ( s);
            if pos ( 'Hello son ! ',S)<>0 then
                Writeln ( 'Hello Dad ! ')
            else
                writeln ( 'Who are you ? ');
            end;
        close (output);
    end
end.

```

---

### 31.3.3 FpExecL

Synopsis: Execute process (using argument list, environment)

Declaration: `function FpExecL(const PathName: AnsiString;  
const S: Array[] of AnsiString) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExecL` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. `S` is an array of command options. The executable in `PathName` must be an absolute pathname. The current process' environment is passed to the program. On success, `FpExecL` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function:

**sys\_eaccessFile** is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpexecve` (109), `FpExecv` (1268), `FpExecvp` (1269), `FpExecle` (1267), `FpExeclp` (1268), `#rtl.baseunix.FpFork` (112)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex77.pp`

---

**Program** Example77;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FExecL function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
 FExecL ( '/bin/ls', ['-l'] );

**end.**

---

### 31.3.4 FpExecLE

Synopsis: Execute process (using argument list, environment)

Declaration: `function FpExecLE(const PathName: AnsiString;  
                               const S: Array[] of AnsiString; MyEnv: ppchar) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: FpExecLE replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in PathName. S is an array of command options. The executable in PathName must be an absolute pathname. The environment in MyEnv is passed to the program. On success, FpExecLE does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (115) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: #rtl.baseunix.fpexecve (109), FpExecv (1268), FpExecvp (1269), FpExecl (1266), FpExeclp (1268), #rtl.baseunix.FpFork (112)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex11.pp

---

**Program** Example11;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execl function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is NOT looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
*{ envp is defined in the system unit. }*  
 Execl ( '/bin/ls -l', envp );

**end.**

---



### 31.3.5 FpExecLP

Synopsis: Execute process (using argument list, environment; search path)

Declaration: `function FpExecLP(const PathName: AnsiString;  
const S: Array[] of AnsiString) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: FpExecLP replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in PathName. S is an array of command options. The executable in PathName is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, FpExecLP does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (115) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel, or to split command line.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: #rtl.baseunix.fpexecve (109), FpExecv (1268), FpExecvp (1269), FpExecle (1267), FpExecl (1266), #rtl.baseunix.FpFork (112)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex76.pp

---

**Program** Example76;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FpExeclp function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**begin**

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*  
*{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }*  
*{ envp is defined in the system unit. }*  
 FpExeclp ( 'ls', [ '-l' ] );

**end.**

---

### 31.3.6 FpExecV

Synopsis: Execute process

Declaration: `function FpExecV(const PathName: AnsiString; args: ppchar) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: FpExecV replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in PathName. It gives the program the options in args. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, FpExecV does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpexecve` (109), `FpExecvp` (1269), `FpExecle` (1267), `FpExecl` (1266), `FpExeclp` (1268), `#rtl.baseunix.FpFork` (112)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Execv function . }*

**Uses** Unix , strings ;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = '/bin/lS ' ;  
Arg1 : Pchar = '-l ' ;

**Var** PP : PPchar ;

**begin**

GetMem (PP,3\*SizeOf(Pchar));  
PP[0]:=Arg0;  
PP[1]:=Arg1;  
PP[3]:=Nil;  
*{ Execute '/bin/lS -l ', with current environment }*  
fpExecv ('/bin/lS ',pp);

**end.**

---

### 31.3.7 FpExecVP

Synopsis: Execute process, search path

Declaration: `function FpExecVP(const PathName: AnsiString;args: ppchar) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpExecVP` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. The executable in path is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. It gives the program the options in `args`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be nil. The current environment is passed to the program. On success, `execvp` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm** The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: [#rtl.baseunix.fpxexecve \(109\)](#), [FpExecv \(1268\)](#), [FpExecle \(1267\)](#), [FpExecl \(1266\)](#), [FpExeclp \(1268\)](#), [#rtl.baseunix.FpFork \(112\)](#)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex79.pp

**Program** Example79;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the FpExecVP function. }
```

**Uses** Unix , strings ;

```
Const Arg0 : PChar = 'Is';
        Arg1 : Pchar = '—l';
```

```
Var PP : PPchar;
```

```

begin
  GetMem (PP, 3*SizeOf(Pchar));
  PP[0]:=Arg0;
  PP[1]:=Arg1;
  PP[2]:=Nil;
  { Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }
  { 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }
  fpExecvp ('ls',pp);
end.

```

### 31.3.8 FpExecVPE

**Synopsis:** Execute process, search path using environment

```
Declaration: function FpExecVPE(const PathName: AnsiString;args: ppchar;env: ppchar)
                : cInt
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `FpExecVP` replaces the currently running program with the program, specified in `PathName`. The executable in `path` is searched in the path, if it isn't an absolute filename. It gives the program the options in `args`. This is a pointer to an array of pointers to null-terminated strings. The last pointer in this array should be `nil`. The environment in `Env` is passed to the program. On success, `execvp` does not return.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (115) function:

**sys\_eaccess**File is not a regular file, or has no execute permission. A component of the path has no search permission.

**sys\_eperm**The file system is mounted *noexec*.

**sys\_e2big**Argument list too big.

**sys\_enoexec**The magic number in the file is incorrect.

**sys\_enoent**The file does not exist.

**sys\_enomem**Not enough memory for kernel.

**sys\_enotdir**A component of the path is not a directory.

**sys\_eloop**The path contains a circular reference (via symlinks).

See also: #rtl.baseunix.fpexecve (109), FpExecv (1268), FpExecle (1267), FpExecl (1266), FpExeclp (1268), #rtl.baseunix.FpFork (112)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex79.pp

---

**Program** Example79;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FpExecVP function. }*

**Uses** Unix, strings;

**Const** Arg0 : PChar = 'ls';  
Arg1 : Pchar = '-l';

**Var** PP : PPchar;

**begin**

GetMem (PP, 3 \* SizeOf (Pchar));

PP[0] := Arg0;

PP[1] := Arg1;

PP[2] := Nil;

*{ Execute 'ls -l', with current environment. }*

*{ 'ls' is looked for in PATH environment variable. }*

fpExecvp ('ls', pp);

**end.**

---

### 31.3.9 fpFlock

Synopsis: Lock a file (advisory lock)

**Declaration:** function fpFlock(fd: cInt; mode: cInt) : cInt  
function fpFlock(var T: text; mode: cInt) : cInt  
function fpFlock(var F: File; mode: cInt) : cInt

Visibility: default

**Description:** FpFlock implements file locking. it sets or removes a lock on the file F. F can be of type Text or File, or it can be a linux filedescriptor (a longint) Mode can be one of the following constants :

**LOCK\_SH**sets a shared lock.

**LOCK\_EX**sets an exclusive lock.

**LOCK\_UN**unlocks the file.

**LOCK\_NB**This can be OR-ed together with the other. If this is done the application doesn't block when locking.

The function returns zero if successful, a nonzero return value indicates an error.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function:

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpFcntl` (111), `FSync` (1274)

### 31.3.10 `fpgettimeofday`

Synopsis: Return kernel time of day in GMT

Declaration: `function fpgettimeofday(tp: ptimeval;tzp: ptimezone) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpGetTimeOfDay` returns the number of seconds since 00:00, January 1 1970, GMT in a `timeval` record. This time NOT corrected any way, not taking into account timezones, daylight savings time and so on.

It is simply a wrapper to the kernel system call.

Errors: None.

### 31.3.11 `fpSystem`

Synopsis: Execute and feed command to system shell

Declaration: `function fpSystem(const Command: AnsiString) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Shell` invokes the bash shell (`/bin/sh`), and feeds it the command `Command` (using the `-c` option). The function then waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command, or 127 if it could not complete the `FpFork` (112) or `FpExecve` (109) calls.

Errors: Errors are reported in `LinuxError`.

See also: `POpen` (1277), `Shell` (1279), `#rtl.baseunix.FpFork` (112), `#rtl.baseunix.fpexecve` (109)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex80.pp`

---

```

program example56;

uses Unix;

{ Program to demonstrate the Shell function }

Var S : Longint;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Output of ls -l *.pp' );
  S:=fpSystem ( 'ls -l *.pp' );
  Writeln ( 'Command exited wwith status : ',S);
end.

```

---

### 31.3.12 FSearch

Synopsis: Search for file in search path.

Declaration: `function FSearch(const path: AnsiString;dirlist: Ansistring;  
CurrentDirStrategy: TFSearchOption) : AnsiString  
function FSearch(const path: AnsiString;dirlist: AnsiString)  
: AnsiString`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSearch` searches in `DirList`, a colon separated list of directories, for a file named `Path`. It then returns a path to the found file.

The `CurrentDirStrategy` determines how the current directory is treated when searching:

**NoCurrentDirectory** Do not search the current directory unless it is specified in the search path.

**CurrentDirectoryFirst** Search the current directory first, before all directories in the search path.

**CurrentDirectoryLast** Search the current directory last, after all directories in the search path

It is mainly provided to mimic DOS search path behaviour. Default behaviour is to search the current directory first.

Errors: An empty string if no such file was found.

See also: `#rtl.unixutil.FNMatch` ([1299](#))

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex46.pp`

---

**Program** `Example46;`

`{ Program to demonstrate the FSearch function. }`

**Uses** `BaseUnix , Unix , Strings;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Is is in : ',FSearch ( 'Is ',strpas (fpGetenv ( 'PATH' ) ) ) );`  
**end.**

---

### 31.3.13 fStatFS

Synopsis: Retrieve filesystem information from a file descriptor.

Declaration: `function fStatFS(Fd: cInt;var Info: tstatfs) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fStatFS` returns in `Info` information about the filesystem on which the file with file descriptor `fd` resides. `Info` is of type `TStatFS` ([1294](#)).

The function returns zero if the call was succesful, a nonzero value is returned if the call failed.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([115](#)) function:

**sys\_enotdir** A component of `Path` is not a directory.

**sys\_einval** Invalid character in `Path`.

**sys\_enoent** `Path` does not exist.

**sys\_eaccess** Search permission is denied for component in `Path`.

**sys\_eLOOP** A circular symbolic link was encountered in Path.

**sys\_eIO** An error occurred while reading from the filesystem.

See also: StatFS ([1280](#)), #rtl.baseunix.FpLStat ([122](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex91.pp

---

**program** Example30;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FSStat function. }*

**uses** BaseUnix, Unix, UnixType;

**var** s : **string**;

fd : cint;

info : tstatfs;

**begin**

**writeln** ( 'Info about current partition : ' );

  s := ' . ';

**while** s <> 'q' **do**

**begin**

      Fd := fpOpen(S, O\_RDONLY);

**if** ( fd >= 0 ) **then**

**begin**

**if** fstatfs ( fd, info ) <> 0 **then**

**begin**

**writeln** ( 'Fstat failed. Errno : ', fpgeterrno );

**halt** ( 1 );

**end**;

          FpClose( fd );

**writeln**;

**writeln** ( 'Result of fsstat on file ' ''', s, ' ' ' ' );

**writeln** ( 'fstype : ', info.fstype );

**writeln** ( 'bsize : ', info.bsize );

**writeln** ( 'bfree : ', info.bfree );

**writeln** ( 'bavail : ', info.bavail );

**writeln** ( 'files : ', info.files );

**writeln** ( 'ffree : ', info.ffree );

          { \$ifdef FreeBSD }

**writeln** ( 'fsid : ', info.fsid [ 0 ] );

          { \$else }

**writeln** ( 'fsid : ', info.fsid [ 0 ] );

**writeln** ( 'Namelen : ', info.namelen );

          { \$endif }

**write** ( 'Type name of file to do fsstat. (q quits) : ' );

**readln** ( s )

**end**;

**end**;

**end**.

---

### 31.3.14 fsync

Synopsis: Synchronize file's kernel data with disk.

Declaration: function fsync( fd: cInt ) : cInt

Visibility: default

Description: `Fsync` synchronizes the kernel data for file `fd` (the cache) with the disk. The call will not return till all file data was written to disk.

If the call was succesfull, 0 is returned. On failure, a nonzero value is returned.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function:

See also: `FpFLock` (1271)

### 31.3.15 GetDomainName

Synopsis: Return current domain name

Declaration: `function GetDomainName : String`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the domain name of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if the domain is not set.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetHostName` (1275)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex39.pp`

---

**Program** `Example39;`

`{ Program to demonstrate the GetDomainName function. }`

**Uses** `Unix;`

**begin**

`WriteLn ( 'Domain name of this machine is : ',GetDomainName);`

`end.`

---

### 31.3.16 GetHostName

Synopsis: Return host name

Declaration: `function GetHostName : String`

Visibility: default

Description: Get the hostname of the machine on which the process is running. An empty string is returned if hostname is not set.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetDomainName` (1275)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex40.pp`



---

**Program** Example40;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetHostName function. }*

**Uses** unix;

**begin**

**WriteLn** ( 'Name of this machine is : ',GetHostName);  
**end.**

---

### 31.3.17 GetLocalTimezone

**Synopsis:** Return local timzeone information

**Declaration:** `procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: cInt;var leap_correct: cInt;  
                                          var leap_hit: cInt)  
          procedure GetLocalTimezone(timer: cInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetLocalTimezone returns the local timezone information. It also initializes the TZSeconds variable, which is used to correct the epoch time to local time.

There should never be any need to call this function directly. It is called by the initialization routines of the Linux unit.

See also: GetTimezoneFile ([1276](#)), ReadTimezoneFile ([1278](#))

### 31.3.18 GetTimezoneFile

**Synopsis:** Return name of timezone information file

**Declaration:** `function GetTimezoneFile : String`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** GetTimezoneFile returns the location of the current timezone file. The location of file is determined as follows:

- 1.If /etc/timezone exists, it is read, and the contents of this file is returned. This should work on Debian systems.
- 2.If /usr/lib/zoneinfo/localtime exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on SuSE systems)
- 3.If /etc/localtime exists, then it is returned. (this file is a symlink to the timezone file on RedHat systems)

**Errors:** If no file was found, an empty string is returned.

See also: ReadTimezoneFile ([1278](#))

### 31.3.19 PClose

Synopsis: Close file opened with POpen (1277)

Declaration: `function PClose(var F: file) : cInt`  
`function PClose(var F: text) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: PClose closes a file opened with POpen (1277). It waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command.

For an example, see POpen (1277)

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (115) function.

See also: POpen (1277)

### 31.3.20 POpen

Synopsis: Pipe file to standard input/output of program

Declaration: `function POpen(var F: text;const Prog: String;rw: Char) : cInt`  
`function POpen(var F: file;const Prog: String;rw: Char) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: POpen runs the command specified in Prog, and redirects the standard in or output of the command to the other end of the pipe F. The parameter rw indicates the direction of the pipe. If it is set to 'W', then F can be used to write data, which will then be read by the command from stdin. If it is set to 'R', then the standard output of the command can be read from F. F should be reset or rewritten prior to using it. F can be of type Text or File. A file opened with POpen can be closed with Close, but also with PClose (1277). The result is the same, but PClose returns the exit status of the command Prog.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the FpGetErrno (115) function. Errors are essentially those of the Execve, Dup and AssignPipe commands.

See also: AssignPipe (1263), PClose (1277)

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex37.pp

---

**Program** Example37;

*{ Program to demonstrate the Popen function. }*

**uses** BaseUnix, Unix;

**var** f : text;  
i : longint;

**begin**

```
writeln ('Creating a shell script to which echoes its arguments');
writeln ('and input back to stdout');
assign (f, 'test21a');
rewrite (f);
writeln (f, '#!/bin/sh');
writeln (f, 'echo this is the child speaking.... ');
writeln (f, 'echo got arguments \" $* \"');
writeln (f, 'cat');
```

---

```

writeln (f, 'exit 2 ');
writeln (f);
close (f);
fpchmod ('test21a', &755);
popen (f, './test21a arg1 arg2', 'W');
if fpgeterrno <> 0 then
    writeln ('error from POpen : errno : ', fpgeterrno);
for i:=1 to 10 do
    writeln (f, 'This is written to the pipe, and should appear on stdout. ');
Flush(f);
Writeln ('The script exited with status : ', PClose (f));
writeln;
writeln ('Press <return> to remove shell script. ');
readln;
assign (f, 'test21a ');
erase (f)
end.

```

---

### 31.3.21 ReadTimezoneFile

Synopsis: Read the timezone file and initialize time routines

Declaration: `procedure ReadTimezoneFile(fn: String)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadTimezoneFile` reads the timezone file `fn` and initializes the local time routines based on the information found there.

There should be no need to call this function. The initialization routines of the linux unit call this routine at unit startup.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetTimezoneFile` ([1276](#)), `GetLocalTimezone` ([1276](#))

### 31.3.22 SeekDir

Synopsis: Seek to position in directory

Declaration: `procedure SeekDir(p: pDir; loc: cLong)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SeekDir` sets the directory pointer to the `loc`-th entry in the directory structure pointed to by `p`.

For an example, see `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` ([128](#)).

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([115](#)) function:

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpCloseDir` ([106](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.fpReadDir` ([132](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` ([128](#)), `TellDir` ([1282](#))

### 31.3.23 SelectText

Synopsis: Wait for event on text file.

Declaration: `function SelectText(var T: Text;TimeOut: ptimeval) : cInt`  
`function SelectText(var T: Text;TimeOut: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `SelectText` executes the `FpSelect` (134) call on a file of type `Text`. You can specify a timeout in `TimeOut`. The `SelectText` call determines itself whether it should check for read or write, depending on how the file was opened : With `Reset` it is checked for reading, with `Rewrite` and `Append` it is checked for writing.

Errors: See `#rtl.baseunix.FpSelect` (134). `SYS_EBADF` can also mean that the file wasn't opened.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpSelect` (134)

### 31.3.24 Shell

Synopsis: Execute and feed command to system shell

Declaration: `function Shell(const Command: String) : cInt`  
`function Shell(const Command: AnsiString) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `Shell` invokes the bash shell (`/bin/sh`), and feeds it the command `Command` (using the `-c` option). The function then waits for the command to complete, and then returns the exit status of the command, or 127 if it could not complete the `FpFork` (112) or `FpExecve` (109) calls.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` (115) function:

See also: `POpen` (1277), `FpSystem` (1272), `#rtl.baseunix.FpFork` (112), `#rtl.baseunix.fpexecve` (109)

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex56.pp`

---

```

program example56;

uses Unix;

{ Program to demonstrate the Shell function }

Var S : Longint;

begin
  WriteLn ( 'Output of ls -l *.pp' );
  S:= Shell ( 'ls -l *.pp' );
  WriteLn ( 'Command exited with status : ',S);
end.

```

---

### 31.3.25 SigRaise

Synopsis: Raise a signal (send to current process)

Declaration: `procedure SigRaise(sig: Integer)`

Visibility: default

Description: `SigRaise` sends a `Sig` signal to the current process.

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpKill` ([119](#)), `#rtl.baseunix.FmPid` ([117](#))

**Listing:** `./unixex/ex65.pp`

---

**Program** `example64`;

*{ Program to demonstrate the SigRaise function. }*

**uses** `Unix, BaseUnix`;

**Var**

`oa, na : PSigActionRec`;

**Procedure** `DoSig(sig : Longint); cdecl`;

**begin**

`writeln('Receiving signal: ', sig);`

**end**;

**begin**

`new(na);`

`new(oa);`

`na^.sa_handler := TSigaction(@DoSig);`

`fillchar(na^.Sa_Mask, sizeof(na^.Sa_Mask), #0);`

`na^.Sa_Flags := 0;`

*{ \$ifdef Linux }*

*// this member is linux only, and afaik even there arcane*

`na^.Sa_Restorer := Nil;`

*{ \$endif }*

**if** `fpSigAction(SigUsr1, na, oa) <> 0` **then**

**begin**

`writeln('Error: ', fpgeterrno);`

`halt(1);`

**end**;

`Writeln('Sending USR1 (', sigusr1, ') signal to self.');`

`SigRaise(sigusr1);`

**end.**

---

### 31.3.26 StatFS

Synopsis: Retrieve filesystem information from a path.

Declaration: `function StatFS(Path: pchar; var Info: tstatfs) : cInt`  
`function StatFS(Path: ansistring; var Info: tstatfs) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `StatFS` returns in `Info` information about the filesystem on which the file `Path` resides. `Info` is of type `TStatFS` ([1294](#)).

The function returns zero if the call was succesful, a nonzero value is returned if the call failed.

Errors: Extended error information is returned by the `FpGetErrno` ([115](#)) function:

`sys_enotdir` A component of `Path` is not a directory.

**sys\_einval**Invalid character in Path.

**sys\_enoent**Path does not exist.

**sys\_eaccess**Search permission is denied for component inPath.

**sys\_eloop**A circular symbolic link was encountered in Path.

**sys\_eio**An error occurred while reading from the filesystem.

See also: #rtl.baseunix.FpStat ([142](#)), #rtl.baseunix.FpLStat ([122](#))

**Listing:** ./unixex/ex91.pp

---

**program** Example30;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FSStat function. }*

**uses** BaseUnix, Unix, UnixType;

**var** s : **string**;

fd : cint;

info : tstatfs;

**begin**

**writeln** ( 'Info about current partition : ' );

  s:= '.';

**while** s<>'q' **do**

**begin**

      Fd:=fpOpen(S,O\_RDONLY);

**if** (fd>=0) **then**

**begin**

**if** fstatfs (fd,info)<>0 **then**

**begin**

**writeln** ( 'Fstat failed. Errno : ',fpgeterrno);

**halt** (1);

**end**;

          FpClose(fd);

**writeln**;

**writeln** ( 'Result of fsstat on file '''s, '''. ' );

**writeln** ( 'fstype : ',info.fstype);

**writeln** ( 'bsize : ',info.bsize);

**writeln** ( 'bfree : ',info.bfree);

**writeln** ( 'bavail : ',info.bavail);

**writeln** ( 'files : ',info.files);

**writeln** ( 'ffree : ',info.ffree);

          { \$ifdef FreeBSD }

**writeln** ( 'fsid : ',info.fsid[0]);

          { \$else }

**writeln** ( 'fsid : ',info.fsid[0]);

**writeln** ( 'Namelen : ',info.namelen);

          { \$endif }

**write** ( 'Type name of file to do fsstat. (q quits) : ' );

**readln** (s)

**end**;

**end**;

**end**.

---

### 31.3.27 TellDir

Synopsis: Return current location in a directory

Declaration: `function TellDir(p: pDir) : cLong`

Visibility: default

Description: `TellDir` returns the current location in the directory structure pointed to by `p`. It returns -1 on failure.

For an example, see `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` (128).

Errors:

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpCloseDir` (106), `#rtl.baseunix.fpReadDir` (132), `#rtl.baseunix.fpOpenDir` (128), `SeekDir` (1278)

### 31.3.28 WaitProcess

Synopsis: Wait for process to terminate.

Declaration: `function WaitProcess(Pid: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `WaitProcess` waits for process `PID` to exit. `WaitProcess` is equivalent to the `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (150) call:

```
FpWaitPid(PID,@result,0)
```

Handles of Signal interrupts (`errno=EINTR`), and returns the Exitcode of Process `PID` ( $\geq 0$ ) or - Status if it was terminated

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (150), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (152), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (152), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (151), `WIFSTOPPED` (1282), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (151), `W_EXITCODE` (1283), `W_STOPCODE` (1283), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (151)

### 31.3.29 WIFSTOPPED

Synopsis: Check whether the process is currently stopped.

Declaration: `function WIFSTOPPED(Status: Integer) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `WIFSTOPPED` checks `Status` and returns `true` if the process is currently stopped. This is only possible if `WUNTRACED` was specified in the options of `FpWaitPID` (150).

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (150), `WaitProcess` (1282), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (152), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (152), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (151), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (151), `W_EXITCODE` (1283), `W_STOPCODE` (1283), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (151)

### 31.3.30 W\_EXITCODE

Synopsis: Construct an exit status based on an return code and signal.

Declaration: `function W_EXITCODE(ReturnCode: Integer;Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `W_EXITCODE` combines `ReturnCode` and `Signal` to a status code fit for `WaitPid`.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (150), `WaitProcess` (1282), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (152), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (152), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (151), `WIFSTOPPED` (1282), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (151), `W_EXITCODE` (1283), `W_STOPCODE` (1283), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (151)

### 31.3.31 W\_STOPCODE

Synopsis: Construct an exit status based on a signal.

Declaration: `function W_STOPCODE(Signal: Integer) : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `W_STOPCODE` constructs an exit status based on `Signal`, which will cause `WIFSIGNALED` (151) to return `True`

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.FpWaitPID` (150), `WaitProcess` (1282), `#rtl.baseunix.WTERMSIG` (152), `#rtl.baseunix.WSTOPSIG` (152), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFEXITED` (151), `WIFSTOPPED` (1282), `#rtl.baseunix.WIFSIGNALED` (151), `W_EXITCODE` (1283), `#rtl.baseunix.WEXITSTATUS` (151)



# Chapter 32

## Reference for unit 'unixtype'

### 32.1 Overview

The `unixtype` unit contains the definitions of basic unix types. It was initially implemented by Marco van de Voort.

When porting to a new unix platform, this unit should be adapted to the sizes and conventions of the platform to which the compiler is ported.

### 32.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 32.2.1 Constants

`ARG_MAX = 131072`

Max number of command-line arguments.

`NAME_MAX = 255`

Max length (in bytes) of filename

`PATH_MAX = 4095`

Max length (in bytes) of pathname

`Prio_PGrp = 1`

`rtl.unix.fpGetPriority (1284)` option: Get process group priority.

`Prio_Process = 0`

`#rtl.unix.fpGetPriority (1250)` option: Get process priority.

`Prio_User = 2`

`#rtl.unix.fpGetPriority (1250)` option: Get user priority.

`SIG_MAXSIG = 128`

Maximum signal number.

`SYS_NMLN = 65`

Max system namelength

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ADAPTIVE_NP = 3`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_DEFAULT = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_NORMAL`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_ERRORCHECK_NP = 2`

Mutex options: double lock returns an error code.

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_FAST_NP = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_ADAPTIVE_NP`

Mutex options: Fast mutex

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_NORMAL = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_TIMED_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE = _PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE_NP`

Mutex options:

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_RECURSIVE_NP = 1`

Mutex options: recursive mutex

`_PTHREAD_MUTEX_TIMED_NP = 0`

Mutex options: ?

### 32.2.2 Types

`cchar = ShortInt`

C type: 8-bit signed integer

`cDouble = Double`

Double precision real format.

`cFloat = Single`

Floating-point real format

`cInt = LongInt`

C type: integer (natural size)

`cInt16 = SmallInt`

C type: 16 bits sized, signed integer.

`cInt32 = LongInt`

C type: 32 bits sized, signed integer.

`cInt64 = Int64`

C type: 64 bits sized, signed integer.

`cInt8 = ShortInt`

C type: 8 bits sized, signed integer.

`clDouble = Extended`

Long double precision real format (Extended)

`clock_t = cuLong`

Clock ticks type

`cLong = LongInt`

C type: long signed integer (double sized)

`clonglong = Int64`

C type: 64-bit (double long) signed integer.

`cshort = SmallInt`

C type: short signed integer (half sized)

`cuchar = Byte`

C type: 8-bit unsigned integer

`cUInt` = `Cardinal`

C type: unsigned integer (natural size)

`cUInt16` = `Word`

C type: 16 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cUInt32` = `cardinal`

C type: 32 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cUInt64` = `qword`

C type: 64 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cUInt8` = `Byte`

C type: 8 bits sized, unsigned integer.

`cuLong` = `Cardinal`

C type: long unsigned integer (double sized)

`culonglong` = `qword`

C type: 64-bit (double long) unsigned integer.

`cunsigned` = `cUInt`

Alias for `#rtl.unixtype.cuint` ([1287](#))

`cushort` = `Word`

C type: short unsigned integer (half sized)

`dev_t` = `cUInt64`

Device descriptor type.

`gid_t` = `cUInt32`

Group ID type.

`ino_t` = `cLong`

Inode type.

`kDev_t` = `cushort`

Kernel device type

`mode_t = cUInt32`

Inode mode type.

`nlink_t = cUInt32`

Number of links type.

`off_t = cInt`

Offset type.

`pcchar = ^cchar`

Pointer to `#rtl.UnixType.cchar` (1285)

`pcDouble = ^cDouble`

Pointer to `cdouble` (1286) type.

`pcFloat = ^cFloat`

Pointer to `cfloat` (1286) type.

`pcInt = ^cInt`

Pointer to `cInt` (1286) type.

`pclDouble = ^clDouble`

Pointer to `cldouble` (1286) type.

`pClock = ^clock_t`

Pointer to `TClock` (1292) type.

`pcLong = ^cLong`

Pointer to `cLong` (1286) type.

`pcshort = ^cshort`

Pointer to `cShort` (1286) type.

`pcuchar = ^cuchar`

Pointer to `#rtl.UnixType.cuchar` (1286)

`pcUInt = ^cUInt`

Pointer to `cUInt` (1287) type.

`pculong = ^cuLong`

Pointer to `cuLong` (1287) type.

`pcunsigned = ^cunsigned`

Pointer to `#rtl.unixtype.cunsigned` (1287)

`pcushort = ^cushort`

Pointer to `cuShort` (1287) type.

`pDev = ^dev_t`

Pointer to `TDev` (1293) type.

`pGid = ^gid_t`

Pointer to `TGid` (1293) type.

`pid_t = cInt32`

Process ID type.

`pIno = ^ino_t`

Pointer to `TIno` (1293) type.

`pkDev = ^kDev_t`

Pointer to `TkDev` (1293) type.

`pMode = ^mode_t`

Pointer to `TMode` (1293) type.

`pnLink = ^nlink_t`

Pointer to `TnLink` (1293) type.

`pOff = ^off_t`

Pointer to `TOff` (1293) type.

`pPid = ^pid_t`

Pointer to `TPid` (1293) type.

`pSize = ^size_t`

Pointer to `TSize` (1294) type.

```
pSize_t = pSize
```

Pointer to size\_t (1284) type.

```
pSockLen = ^socklen_t
```

Pointer to TSockLen (1294) type.

```
pSSize = ^ssize_t
```

Pointer to TsSize (1294) type

```
PStatFS = ^TStatfs
```

Pointer to TStatFS (1294) type.

```
pthread_attr_t = record
  __detachstate : cInt;
  __schedpolicy : cInt;
  __schedparam : sched_param;
  __inheritsched : cInt;
  __scope : cInt;
  __guardsize : size_t;
  __stackaddr_set : cInt;
  __stackaddr : pointer;
  __stacksize : size_t;
end
```

pthread\_attr\_t describes the thread attributes. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime. Use the appropriate functions to set the thread attributes.

```
pthread_condattr_t = record
  __dummy : cInt;
end
```

pthread\_condattr\_t describes the attributes of a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_cond_t = record
  __c_lock : _pthread_fastlock;
  __c_waiting : pointer;
  __padding : Array[0..48-1-sizeof(_pthread_fastlock)-sizeof(pointer)-sizeof(clonglong)];
  __align : clonglong;
end
```

pthread\_cond\_t describes a thread conditional variable. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_key_t = cUInt
```

Thread local storage key (opaque)

```
pthread_mutexattr_t = record
  __mutexkind : cInt;
end
```

`pthread_mutexattr_t` describes the attributes of a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_mutex_t = record
  __m_reserved : cInt;
  __m_count : cInt;
  __m_owner : pointer;
  __m_kind : cInt;
  __m_lock : _pthread_fastlock;
end
```

`_pthread_mutex_t` describes a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_rwlockattr_t = record
  __lockkind : cInt;
  __pshared : cInt;
end
```

`pthread_rwlockattr_t` describes the attributes of a lock. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_rwlock_t = record
  __rw_readers : cInt;
  __rw_writer : pointer;
  __rw_read_waiting : pointer;
  __rw_write_waiting : pointer;
  __rw_kind : cInt;
  __rw_pshared : cInt;
end
```

`pthread_rwlock_t` describes a lock. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
pthread_t = cuLong
```

Thread description record

```
pTime = ^time_t
```

Pointer to TTime ([1294](#)) type.

```
ptimespec = ^timespec
```



Pointer to timespec (1293) record.

```
ptimeval = ^timeval
```

Pointer to timeval (1293) record.

```
ptime_t = ^time_t
```

Pointer to time\_t (1293) type.

```
pUId = ^uid_t
```

Pointer to TUid (1294) type.

```
pwchar_t = ^wchar_t
```

Pointer to wchar\_t (1284) type.

```
sched_param = record  
  __sched_priority : cInt;  
end
```

Scheduling parameter description record.

```
sem_t = record  
  __sem_lock : _pthread_fastlock;  
  __sem_value : cInt;  
  __sem_waiting : pointer;  
end
```

`sem_t` describes a thread semaphore. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

```
size_t = cUInt32
```

Size specification type.

```
socklen_t = cUInt32
```

Socket address length type.

```
ssize_t = cInt32
```

Small size type.

```
TClock = clock_t
```

Alias for clock\_t (1286) type.

TDev = dev\_t

Alias for dev\_t (1287) type.

TGid = gid\_t

Alias for gid\_t (1287) type.

```
timespec = packed record
  tv_sec : time_t;
  tv_nsec : cLong;
end
```

Record specifying time interval.

```
timeval = packed record
  tv_sec : cLong;
  tv_usec : cLong;
end
```

Time specification type.

time\_t = cLong

Time span type

TIno = ino\_t

Alias for ino\_t (1287) type.

TkDev = kDev\_t

Alias for kDev\_t (1287) type.

TMode = mode\_t

Alias for mode\_t (1288) type.

TnLink = nlink\_t

Alias for nlink\_t (1288) type.

TOff = off\_t

Alias for off\_t (1288) type.

TPid = pid\_t

Alias for pid\_t (1289) type.

TSize = size\_t

Alias for size\_t (1292) type

TSockLen = socklen\_t

Alias for socklen\_t (1292) type.

TSSize = ssize\_t

Alias for ssize\_t (1292) type

```
TStatfs = packed record
  fstype : cInt;
  bsize : cInt;
  blocks : cLong;
  bfree : cLong;
  bavail : cLong;
  files : cLong;
  ffree : cLong;
  fsid : Array[0..1] of cInt;
  namelen : cLong;
  spare : Array[0..5] of cLong;
end
```

Record describing a file system in the baseunix.fpstatfs (1284) call.

TTime = time\_t

Alias for TTime (1294) type.

TTimeSpec = timespec

Alias for TimeSpec (1293) type.

TTimeVal = timeval

Alias for TimeVal (1293) record.

TUId = uid\_t

Alias for uid\_t (1294) type.

uid\_t = cUInt32

User ID type

wchar\_t = wchar

Wide character type.

```
wint_t = cInt32
```

Wide character size type.

```
_pthread_fastlock = record  
  __status : cLong;  
  __spinlock : cInt;  
end
```

`_pthread_fastlock` describes a thread mutex. It should be considered an opaque record, the names of the fields can change anytime.

## Chapter 33

# Reference for unit 'unixutil'

### 33.1 Overview

The UnixUtil unit contains some of the routines that were present in the old Linux unit, but which do not really belong in the unix ([1250](#)) or baseunix ([70](#)) units.

Most of the functions described here have cross-platform counterparts in the SysUtils ([1082](#)) unit. It is therefore recommended to use that unit.

### 33.2 Constants, types and variables

#### 33.2.1 Types

ComStr =

Command-line string type.

DirStr =

Filename directory part string type.

ExtStr =

Filename extension part string type.

NameStr =

Filename name part string type.

PathStr =

Filename full path string type.

#### 33.2.2 Variables

Tzseconds : LongInt

Seconds west of GMT

## 33.3 Procedures and functions

### 33.3.1 ArrayStringToPPchar

Synopsis: Convert an array of string to an array of null-terminated strings

Declaration: `function ArrayStringToPPchar(const S: Array[] of AnsiString;  
reserveentries: LongInt) : ppchar`

Visibility: default

Description: `ArrayStringToPPchar` creates an array of null-terminated strings that point to strings which are the same as the strings in the array `S`. The function returns a pointer to this array. The array and the strings it contains must be disposed of after being used, because it they are allocated on the heap.

The `ReserveEntries` parameter tells `ArrayStringToPPchar` to allocate room at the end of the array for another `ReserveEntries` entries.

Errors: If not enough memory is available, an error may occur.

See also: `StringToPPChar` ([1302](#))

### 33.3.2 Basename

Synopsis: Return basename of a file

Declaration: `function Basename(const path: PathStr;const suf: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the filename part of `Path`, stripping off `Suf` if it exists. The filename part is the whole name if `Path` contains no slash, or the part of `Path` after the last slash. The last character of the result is not a slash, unless the directory is the root directory.

Errors: None.

See also: `DirName` ([1298](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex48.pp`

---

**Program** `Example48;`

*{ Program to demonstrate the BaseName function. }*

**Uses** `Unix, UnixUtil;`

**Var** `S : String;`

**begin**

`S:=FExpand(Paramstr(0));`

`Writeln ('This program is called : ',Basename(S,' '));`

**end.**

---

### 33.3.3 Dirname

Synopsis: Extract directory part from filename

Declaration: `function Dirname(const path: PathStr) : PathStr`

Visibility: default

Description: Returns the directory part of `Path`. The directory is the part of `Path` before the last slash, or empty if there is no slash. The last character of the result is not a slash, unless the directory is the root directory.

Errors: None.

See also: `BaseName` ([1297](#))

**Listing:** ./unutilx/ex47.pp

---

**Program** Example47;

*{ Program to demonstrate the DirName function. }*

**Uses** Unix, UnixUtil;

**Var** S : **String**;

**begin**

  S:=FExpand(**Paramstr**(0));

**WriteLn** ( 'This program is in directory : ',Dirname(S));

**end.**

---

### 33.3.4 EpochToLocal

Synopsis: Convert epoch time to local time

Declaration: `procedure EpochToLocal(epoch: LongInt; var year: Word; var month: Word; var day: Word; var hour: Word; var minute: Word; var second: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: Converts the epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00 , January 1, 1970, corrected for your time zone ) to local date and time.

This function takes into account the timzone settings of your system.

Errors: None

See also: `LocalToEpoch` ([1301](#))

**Listing:** ./unutilx/ex3.pp

---

**Program** Example3;

*{ Program to demonstrate the EpochToLocal function. }*

**Uses** Unix, UnixUtil;

**Var** Year, month, day, hour, minute, seconds : **Word**;

---

```

begin
  EpochToLocal ( GetEpochTime , Year , month , day , hour , minute , seconds );
  Writeln ( ' Current date : ', Day:2 , '/' , Month:2 , '/' , Year:4 );
  Writeln ( ' Current time : ', Hour:2 , ':' , minute:2 , ':' , seconds:2 );
end.

```

---

### 33.3.5 FNMatch

Synopsis: Check whether filename matches wildcard specification

Declaration: `function FNMatch(const Pattern: String;const Name: String) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `FNMatch` returns `True` if the filename in `Name` matches the wildcard pattern in `Pattern`, `False` otherwise.

`Pattern` can contain the wildcards `*` (match zero or more arbitrary characters) or `?` (match a single character).

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.unix.FSearch` ([1273](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex69.pp`

---

**Program** Example69;

*{ Program to demonstrate the FNMatch function. }*

**Uses** unixutil;

**Procedure** TestMatch(Pattern ,Name : String);

```

begin
  Write ( ' " ', Name, ' " ');
  If FNMatch ( Pattern ,Name) then
    Write ( ' matches ')
  else
    Write ( ' does not match ');
  Writeln( ' " ', Pattern, ' " ');
end;

begin
  TestMatch( ' * ', ' FileName ');
  TestMatch( ' .* ', ' FileName ');
  TestMatch( ' *a* ', ' FileName ');
  TestMatch( ' ?ile* ', ' FileName ');
  TestMatch( ' ?? ', ' FileName ');
  TestMatch( ' .? ', ' FileName ');
  TestMatch( ' ?a* ', ' FileName ');
  TestMatch( ' ???me? ', ' FileName ');
end.

```

---



### 33.3.6 FSplit

Synopsis: Split filename into path, name and extension

Declaration: `procedure FSplit(const Path: PathStr; var Dir: DirStr; var Name: NameStr;  
var Ext: ExtStr)`

Visibility: default

Description: `FSplit` splits a full file name into 3 parts : A Path, a Name and an extension (in `ext`). The extension is taken to be all letters after the last dot (.).

Errors: None.

See also: `#rtl.unix.FSearch` ([1273](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex67.pp`

---

**Program** `Example67;`

`uses UnixUtil;`

`{ Program to demonstrate the FSplit function. }`

`var`

`Path, Name, Ext : string;`

`begin`

`FSplit(ParamStr(1), Path, Name, Ext);`

`WriteLn('Split ', ParamStr(1), ' in:');`

`WriteLn('Path : ', Path);`

`WriteLn('Name : ', Name);`

`WriteLn('Extension : ', Ext);`

`end.`

---

### 33.3.7 GetFS

Synopsis: Return file selector

Declaration: `function GetFS(var T: Text) : LongInt`  
`function GetFS(var F: File) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetFS` returns the file selector that the kernel provided for your file. In principle you don't need this file selector. Only for some calls it is needed, such as the `#rtl.baseunix.fpSelect` ([134](#)) call or so.

Errors: In case the file was not opened, then -1 is returned.

See also: `#rtl.baseunix.fpSelect` ([134](#))

**Listing:** `./unutilx/ex34.pp`

---

**Program** `Example33;`

`{ Program to demonstrate the SelectText function. }`

`Uses Unix;`

---

```

Var tv : TimeVal;

begin
  Writeln ( 'Press the <ENTER> to continue the program.' );
  { Wait until File descriptor 0 (=Input) changes }
  SelectText ( Input, nil );
  { Get rid of <ENTER> in buffer }
  readln;
  Writeln ( 'Press <ENTER> key in less than 2 seconds...' );
  tv.tv_sec:=2;
  tv.tv_sec:=0;
  if SelectText ( Input, @tv)>0 then
    Writeln ( 'Thank you !' )
  else
    Writeln ( 'Too late !' );
end.

```

---

### 33.3.8 GregorianToJulian

Synopsis: Converts a gregorian date to a julian date

Declaration: `function GregorianToJulian(Year: LongInt;Month: LongInt;Day: LongInt)  
: LongInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `GregorianToJulian` takes a gregorian date and converts it to a Julian day.

Errors: None.

See also: `JulianToGregorian` ([1301](#))

### 33.3.9 JulianToGregorian

Synopsis: Converts a julian date to a gregorian date

Declaration: `procedure JulianToGregorian(JulianDN: LongInt;var Year: Word;  
var Month: Word;var Day: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `JulianToGregorian` takes a julian day and converts it to a gregorian date. (Start of the Julian Date count is from 0 at 12 noon 1 JAN -4712 (4713 BC),)

Errors: None.

See also: `GregorianToJulian` ([1301](#))

### 33.3.10 LocalToEpoch

Synopsis: Convert local time to epoch (unix) time

Declaration: `function LocalToEpoch(year: Word;month: Word;day: Word;hour: Word;  
minute: Word;second: Word) : LongInt`

Visibility: default

**Description:** Converts the Local time to epoch time (=Number of seconds since 00:00:00 , January 1, 1970 ).

Errors: None

See also: EpochToLocal ([1298](#))

**Listing:** ./unutilex/ex4.pp

**Program Example4:**

```
{ Program to demonstrate the LocalToEpoch function. }
```

**Uses** UnixUtil;

```
Var year , month , day , hour , minute , second : Word;
```

**begin**

```
Write ( 'Year      : ' ); readln (Year);
```

```
Write ( 'Month' : ' '); readln (Month);
```

```
Write ( 'Day      : ' ); readIn ( Day );
```

```
Write ( 'Hour' : ' '); readIn ( Hour );
```

```
Write ( 'Minute   : ' ); readln ( Minute );
```

```
Write ( 'Seonds  : ' ); readln ( Second );
```

**Write** ( 'This is : ' );

**Write** ( LocalToEpoch (year , month , day , hour , minute , second ) );

```
WriteIn ( ' seconds past 00:00 1/1/1980 ' );
```

**end.**

### 33.3.11 StringToPPChar

### Synopsis: Split string in list of null-terminated strings

```
Declaration: function StringToPPChar(S: PChar; ReserveEntries: Integer) : ppchar
            function StringToPPChar(var S: String; ReserveEntries: Integer) : ppchar
            function StringToPPChar(var S: AnsiString; ReserveEntries: Integer)
                : ppchar
```

Visibility: default

**Description:** `StringToPPChar` splits the string `S` in words, replacing any whitespace with zero characters. It returns a pointer to an array of `pchars` that point to the first letters of the words in `S`. This array is terminated by a `Nil` pointer.

The function does *not* add a zero character to the end of the string unless it ends on whitespace.

The function reserves memory on the heap to store the array of `PChar`; The caller is responsible for freeing this memory.

This function can be called to create arguments for the various Exec calls.

Errors: None.

See also: [ArrayStringToPPchar \(1297\)](#), [#rtl.baseunix.FpExecve \(109\)](#)

**Listing:** ./unutilx/ex70.pp

**Program** Example70;

```
{ Program to demonstrate the StringToPPchar function. }
```

---

**Uses** UnixUtil;

**Var** S : **String**;  
    P : PPChar;  
    I : longint;

**begin**  
    *// remark whitespace at end.*  
    S:= 'This is a string with words. ';  
    P:=StringToPPChar(S,0);  
    I:=0;  
    **While** P[i]<>Nil **do**  
        **begin**  
            **Writeln**( 'Word ',i, ' : ',P[i] );  
            **Inc**(I);  
        **end**;  
    **FreeMem**(P, i\***SizeOf**(Pchar));  
**end**.

---

## Chapter 34

# Reference for unit 'Video'

### 34.1 Examples utility unit

The examples in this section make use of the unit `vidutil`, which contains the `TextOut` function. This function writes a text to the screen at a given location. It looks as follows:

### 34.2 Writing a custom video driver

Writing a custom video driver is not difficult, and generally means implementing a couple of functions, which should be registered with the `SetVideoDriver` ([1321](#)) function. The various functions that can be implemented are located in the `TVideoDriver` ([1311](#)) record:

```
TVideoDriver = Record
  InitDriver      : Procedure;
  DoneDriver      : Procedure;
  UpdateScreen    : Procedure (Force : Boolean);
  ClearScreen     : Procedure;
  SetVideoMode    : Function (Const Mode : TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  GetVideoModeCount : Function : Word;
  GetVideoModeData : Function (Index : Word; Var Data : TVideoMode) : Boolean;
  SetCursorPos    : procedure (NewCursorX, NewCursorY: Word);
  GetCursorType   : function : Word;
  SetCursorType   : procedure (NewType: Word);
  GetCapabilities : Function : Word;
end;
```

Not all of these functions must be implemented. In fact, the only absolutely necessary function to write a functioning driver is the `UpdateScreen` function. The general calls in the `Video` unit will check which functionality is implemented by the driver.

The functionality of these calls is the same as the functionality of the calls in the `video` unit, so the expected behaviour can be found in the previous section. Some of the calls, however, need some additional remarks.

**InitDriver** Called by `InitVideo`, this function should initialize any data structures needed for the functionality of the driver, maybe do some screen initializations. The function is guaranteed to be called only once; It can only be called again after a call to `DoneVideo`. The variables

ScreenWidth and ScreenHeight should be initialized correctly after a call to this function, as the InitVideo call will initialize the VideoBuf and OldVideoBuf arrays based on their values.

**DoneDriver** This should clean up any structures that have been initialized in the InitDriver function. It should possibly also restore the screen as it was before the driver was initialized. The VideoBuf and OldVideoBuf arrays will be disposed of by the general DoneVideo call.

**UpdateScreen** This is the only required function of the driver. It should update the screen based on the VideoBuf array's contents. It can optimize this process by comparing the values with values in the OldVideoBuf array. After updating the screen, the UpdateScreen procedure should update the OldVideoBuf by itself. If the Force parameter is True, the whole screen should be updated, not just the changed values.

**ClearScreen** If there is a faster way to clear the screen than to write spaces in all character cells, then it can be implemented here. If the driver does not implement this function, then the general routines will write spaces in all video cells, and will call UpdateScreen(True).

**SetVideoMode** Should set the desired video mode, if available. It should return True if the mode was set, False if not.

**GetVideoModeCount** Should return the number of supported video modes. If no modes are supported, this function should not be implemented; the general routines will return 1. (for the current mode)

**GetVideoModeData** Should return the data for the Index-th mode; Index is zero based. The function should return true if the data was returned correctly, false if Index contains an invalid index. If this is not implemented, then the general routine will return the current video mode when Index equals 0.

**GetCapabilities** If this function is not implemented, zero (i.e. no capabilities) will be returned by the general function.

The following unit shows how to override a video driver, with a driver that writes debug information to a file. The unit can be used in any of the demonstration programs, by simply including it in the uses clause. Setting DetailedVideoLogging to True will create a more detailed log (but will also slow down functioning)

### 34.3 Overview

The Video unit implements a screen access layer which is system independent. It can be used to write on the screen in a system-independent way, which should be optimal on all platforms for which the unit is implemented.

The working of the Video is simple: After calling InitVideo (1318), the array VideoBuf contains a representation of the video screen of size ScreenWidth\*ScreenHeight, going from left to right and top to bottom when walking the array elements: VideoBuf[0] contains the character and color code of the top-left character on the screen. VideoBuf[ScreenWidth] contains the data for the character in the first column of the second row on the screen, and so on.

To write to the 'screen', the text to be written should be written to the VideoBuf array. Calling UpdateScreen (1322) will then cp the text to the screen in the most optimal way. (an example can be found further on).

The color attribute is a combination of the foreground and background color, plus the blink bit. The bits describe the various color combinations:

**bits 0-3** The foreground color. Can be set using all color constants.

**bits 4-6** The background color. Can be set using a subset of the color constants.

**bit 7** The blinking bit. If this bit is set, the character will appear blinking.

Each possible color has a constant associated with it, see the constants section for a list of constants.

The foreground and background color can be combined to a color attribute with the following code:

```
Attr:=ForegroundColor + (BackgroundColor shl 4);
```

The color attribute can be logically or-ed with the blink attribute to produce a blinking character:

```
Attr:=Attr or blink;
```

But not all drivers may support this.

The contents of the `VideoBuf` array may be modified: This is 'writing' to the screen. As soon as everything that needs to be written in the array is in the `VideoBuf` array, calling `UpdateScreen` will copy the contents of the array screen to the screen, in a manner that is as efficient as possible.

The updating of the screen can be prohibited to optimize performance; To this end, the `LockScreenUpdate` (1319) function can be used: This will increment an internal counter. As long as the counter differs from zero, calling `UpdateScreen` (1322) will not do anything. The counter can be lowered with `UnlockScreenUpdate` (1322). When it reaches zero, the next call to `UpdateScreen` (1322) will actually update the screen. This is useful when having nested procedures that do a lot of screen writing.

The video unit also presents an interface for custom screen drivers, thus it is possible to override the default screen driver with a custom screen driver, see the `SetVideoDriver` (1321) call. The current video driver can be retrieved using the `GetVideoDriver` (1316) call.

**Remark:** The video unit should *not* be used together with the CRT unit. Doing so will result in very strange behaviour, possibly program crashes.

## 34.4 Constants, types and variables

### 34.4.1 Constants

`Black = 0`

Black color attribute

`Blink = 128`

Blink attribute

`Blue = 1`

Blue color attribute

`Brown = 6`

Brown color attribute

`cpBlink = $0002`

Video driver supports blink attribute

`cpChangeCursor = $0020`

Video driver supports changing cursor shape.

`cpChangeFont = $0008`

Video driver supports changing screen font.

`cpChangeMode = $0010`

Video driver supports changing mode

`cpColor = $0004`

Video driver supports color

`cpUnderLine = $0001`

Video driver supports underline attribute

`crBlock = 2`

Block cursor

`crHalfBlock = 3`

Half block cursor

`crHidden = 0`

Hide cursor

`crUnderLine = 1`

Underline cursor

`Cyan = 3`

Cyan color attribute

`DarkGray = 8`

Dark gray color attribute

`errOk = 0`

No error



`ErrorCode : LongInt = ErrOK`

Error code returned by the last operation.

`ErrorHandler : TErrorHandler = @DefaultErrorHandler`

The `ErrorHandler` variable can be set to a custom-error handling function. It is set by default to the `DefaultErrorHandler` (1313) function.

`ErrorInfo : Pointer = nil`

Pointer to extended error information.

`errVioBase = 1000`

Base value for video errors

`errVioInit = errVioBase + 1`

Video driver initialization error.

`errVioNoSuchMode = errVioBase + 3`

Invalid video mode

`errVioNotSupported = errVioBase + 2`

Unsupported video function

`FVMaxWidth = 132`

Maximum screen buffer width.

`Green = 2`

Green color attribute

`LightBlue = 9`

Light Blue color attribute

`LightCyan = 11`

Light cyan color attribute

`LightGray = 7`

Light gray color attribute

`LightGreen = 10`

Light green color attribute

LightMagenta = 13

Light magenta color attribute

LightRed = 12

Light red color attribute

LowAscii : Boolean = true

Only use low ascii characters

Magenta = 5

Magenta color attribute

NoExtendedFrame : Boolean = false

Disable transformation of control characters on unix terminals

Red = 4

Red color attribute

ScreenHeight : Word = 0

Current screen height

ScreenWidth : Word = 0

Current screen Width

vioOK = 0

No errors occurred

White = 15

White color attribute

Yellow = 14

Yellow color attribute

### 34.4.2 Types

`PVideoBuf` = `^TVideoBuf`

Pointer type to `TVideoBuf` ([1310](#))

`PVideoCell` = `^TVideoCell`

Pointer type to `TVideoCell` ([1310](#))

`PVideoMode` = `^TVideoMode`

Pointer to `TVideoMode` ([1311](#)) record.

```
TErrorHandler = function(Code: LongInt; Info: Pointer)
                  : TErrorHandlerReturnValue
```

The `TErrorHandler` function is used to register an own error handling function. It should be used when installing a custom error handling function, and must return one of the above values.

`Code` should contain the error code for the error condition, and the `Info` parameter may contain any data type specific to the error code passed to the function.

```
TErrorHandlerReturnValue = (errRetry, errAbort, errContinue)
```

Table 34.1: Enumeration values for type `TErrorHandlerReturnValue`

Value	Explanation
<code>errAbort</code>	abort and return error code
<code>errContinue</code>	abort without returning an errorcode.
<code>errRetry</code>	retry the operation

Type used to report and respond to error conditions

```
TVideoBuf = Array[0..32759] of TVideoCell
```

The `TVideoBuf` type represents the screen.

```
TVideoCell = Word
```

`TVideoCell` describes one character on the screen. One of the bytes contains the color attribute with which the character is drawn on the screen, and the other byte contains the ASCII code of the character to be drawn. The exact position of the different bytes in the record is operating system specific. On most little-endian systems, the high byte represents the color attribute, while the low-byte represents the ASCII code of the character to be drawn.

```
TVideoDriver = record
  InitDriver : procedure;
  DoneDriver : procedure;
  UpdateScreen : procedure(Force: Boolean);
  ClearScreen : procedure;
```

```

SetVideoMode : function(const Mode: TVideoMode) : Boolean;
GetVideoModeCount : function : Word;
GetVideoModeData : function(Index: Word;var Data: TVideoMode) : Boolean;
SetCursorPos : procedure(NewCursorX: Word;NewCursorY: Word);
GetCursorType : function : Word;
SetCursorType : procedure(NewType: Word);
GetCapabilities : function : Word;
end

```

TVideoDriver record can be used to install a custom video driver, with the SetVideoDriver ([1321](#)) call.

An explanation of all fields can be found there.

```

TVideoMode = record
  Col : Word;
  Row : Word;
  Color : Boolean;
end

```

The TVideoMode record describes a videomode. Its fields are self-explaining: Col ,Row describe the number of columns and rows on the screen for this mode. Color is True if this mode supports colors, or False if not.

```

TVideoModeSelector = function(const VideoMode: TVideoMode;
                               Params: LongInt) : Boolean

```

Video mode selection callback prototype.

### 34.4.3 Variables

```
CursorLines : Byte
```

CursorLines is a bitmask which determines which cursor lines are visible and which are not. Each set bit corresponds to a cursorline being shown.

This variable is not supported on all platforms, so it should be used sparingly.

```
CursorX : Word
```

Current horizontal position in the screen where items will be written.

```
CursorY : Word
```

Current vertical position in the screen where items will be written.

```
OldVideoBuf : PVideoBuf
```

The OldVideoBuf contains the state of the video screen after the last screen update. The UpdateScreen ([1322](#)) function uses this array to decide which characters on screen should be updated, and which not.

Note that the OldVideoBuf array may be ignored by some drivers, so it should not be used. The Array is in the interface section of the video unit mainly so drivers that need it can make use of it.

ScreenColor : Boolean

ScreenColor indicates whether the current screen supports colors.

VideoBuf : PVideoBuf

VideoBuf forms the heart of the Video unit: This variable represents the physical screen. Writing to this array and calling UpdateScreen (1322) will write the actual characters to the screen.

VideoBufSize : LongInt

Current size of the video buffer pointed to by VideoBuf (1312)

## 34.5 Procedures and functions

### 34.5.1 ClearScreen

Synopsis: Clear the video screen.

Declaration: procedure ClearScreen

Visibility: default

Description: ClearScreen clears the entire screen, and calls UpdateScreen (1322) after that. This is done by writing spaces to all character cells of the video buffer in the default color (lightgray on black, color attribute \07).

Errors: None.

See also: InitVideo (1318), UpdateScreen (1322)

**Listing:** ./videoex/ex3.pp

---

```

program testvideo;

uses video, keyboard, vidutil;

{$ifndef cpu86}
{$error This example only works on intel 80x86 machines}
{$endif}

Var
  i : longint;
  k : TKeyEvent;

begin
  InitVideo;
  InitKeyboard;
  For i:=1 to 10 do
    TextOut(i,i, 'Press any key to clear screen');
    UpdateScreen(false);
    K:=GetKeyEvent;
    ClearScreen;
    TextOut(1,1, 'Cleared screen. Press any key to end');
    UpdateScreen(true);
    K:=GetKeyEvent;

```

---

```

    DoneKeyBoard;
    DoneVideo;
end.
```

---

### 34.5.2 DefaultErrorHandler

Synopsis: Default error handling routine.

Declaration: `function DefaultErrorHandler(AErrorCode: LongInt; AErrorInfo: Pointer)  
: TErrorHandlerReturnValue`

Visibility: default

Description: `DefaultErrorHandler` is the default error handler used by the video driver. It simply sets the error code `AErrorCode` and `AErrorInfo` in the global variables `ErrorCode` and `ErrorInfo` and returns `errContinue`.

Errors: None.

### 34.5.3 DoneVideo

Synopsis: Disable video driver.

Declaration: `procedure DoneVideo`

Visibility: default

Description: `DoneVideo` disables the Video driver if the video driver is active. If the videodriver was already disabled or not yet initialized, it does nothing. Disabling the driver means it will clean up any allocated resources, possibly restore the screen in the state it was before `InitVideo` was called. Particularly, the `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` arrays are no longer valid after a call to `DoneVideo`.

The `DoneVideo` should always be called if `InitVideo` was called. Failing to do so may leave the screen in an unusable state after the program exits.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: Normally none. If the driver reports an error, this is done through the `ErrorCode` variable.

See also: `InitVideo` ([1318](#))

### 34.5.4 GetCapabilities

Synopsis: Get current driver capabilities.

Declaration: `function GetCapabilities : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCapabilities` returns the capabilities of the current driver. It is an or-ed combination of the following constants:

**cpUnderLine**Video driver supports underline attribute

**cpBlink**Video driver supports blink attribute

**cpColor**Video driver supports color

**cpChangeFont**Video driver supports changing screen font.

**cpChangeMode** Video driver supports changing mode

**cpChangeCursor** Video driver supports changing cursor shape.

Note that the video driver should not yet be initialized to use this function. It is a property of the driver.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetCursorType` ([1314](#)), `GetVideoDriver` ([1316](#))

**Listing:** ./videoex/ex4.pp

---

**Program** Example4;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetCapabilities function. }*

**Uses** video;

**Var**

W: Word;

**Procedure** TestCap(Cap: Word; Msg : **String**);

**begin**

**Write**(Msg, ' : ');

**If** (W **and** Cap=Cap) **then**

**WriteLn**( 'Yes' )

**else**

**WriteLn**( 'No' );

**end**;

**begin**

  W:=GetCapabilities;

**WriteLn**( 'Video driver supports following functionality' );

  TestCap(cpUnderLine, 'Underlined characters');

  TestCap(cpBlink, 'Blinking characters');

  TestCap(cpColor, 'Color characters');

  TestCap(cpChangeFont, 'Changing font');

  TestCap(cpChangeMode, 'Changing video mode');

  TestCap(cpChangeCursor, 'Changing cursor shape');

**end**.

---

### 34.5.5 GetCursorType

Synopsis: Get screen cursor type

Declaration: `function GetCursorType : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetCursorType` returns the current cursor type. It is one of the following values:

**crHidden** Hide cursor

**crUnderLine** Underline cursor

**crBlock** Block cursor

**crHalfBlock** Half block cursor

Note that not all drivers support all types of cursors.

Errors: None.

See also: [SetCursorType \(1320\)](#), [GetCapabilities \(1313\)](#)

**Listing:** ./videoex/ex5.pp

---

**Program** Example5;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetCursorType function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Const**

CursorTypes : **Array**[crHidden..crHalfBlock] **of string** =  
     ('Hidden', 'UnderLine', 'Block', 'HalfBlock');

**begin**

    InitVideo;  
 InitKeyboard;  
 TextOut(1,1, 'Cursor type: '+CursorTypes[GetCursorType]);  
 TextOut(1,2, 'Press any key to exit.');

    UpdateScreen(False);  
 GetKeyEvent;  
 DoneKeyboard;  
 DoneVideo;

**end.**

---

### 34.5.6 GetLockScreenCount

Synopsis: Get the screen lock update count.

Declaration: `function GetLockScreenCount : Integer`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetLockScreenCount` returns the current lock level. When the lock level is zero, a call to `UpdateScreen (1322)` will actually update the screen.

Errors: None.

See also: [LockScreenUpdate \(1319\)](#), [UnlockScreenUpdate \(1322\)](#), [UpdateScreen \(1322\)](#)

**Listing:** ./videoex/ex6.pp

---

**Program** Example6;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetLockScreenCount function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Var**

    I : Longint;  
 S : **String**;

**begin**

    InitVideo;



---

```

InitKeyboard;
TextOut(1,1,'Press key till new text appears. ');
UpdateScreen(False);
Randomize;
For I:=0 to Random(10)+1 do
  LockScreenUpdate;
I:=0;
While GetLockScreenCount<>0 do
  begin
    Inc(I);
    Str(I,S);
    UnlockScreenUpdate;
    GetKeyEvent;
    TextOut(1,1,'UnLockScreenUpdate had to be called '+S+' times');
    UpdateScreen(False);
  end;
TextOut(1,2,'Press any key to end. ');
UpdateScreen(False);
GetKeyEvent;
DoneKeyboard;
DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

### 34.5.7 GetVideoDriver

Synopsis: Get a copy of the current video driver.

Declaration: `procedure GetVideoDriver(var Driver: TVideoDriver)`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoMode` returns the settings of the currently active video mode. The `row`, `col` fields indicate the dimensions of the current video mode, and `Color` is true if the current video supports colors.

Errors: None.

See also: `SetVideoMode` ([1321](#)), `GetVideoModeData` ([1318](#))

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex7.pp`

---

**Program** Example7;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetVideoMode function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Var**

M : TVideoMode;  
S : **String**;

**begin**

InitVideo;  
InitKeyboard;  
GetVideoMode(M);  
**if** M.Color **then**  
  TextOut(1,1,'Current mode has color')  
**else**

```

    TextOut(1,1,'Current mode does not have color');
    Str(M.Row,S);
    TextOut(1,2,'Number of rows    : '+S);
    Str(M.Col,S);
    TextOut(1,3,'Number of columns : '+S);
    Textout(1,4,'Press any key to exit. ');
    UpdateScreen(False);
    GetKeyEvent;
    DoneKeyboard;
    DoneVideo;
end.

```

---

### 34.5.8 GetVideoMode

Synopsis: Return current video mode

Declaration: `procedure GetVideoMode(var Mode: TVideoMode)`

Visibility: default

Description: Return current video mode

### 34.5.9 GetVideoModeCount

Synopsis: Get the number of video modes supported by the driver.

Declaration: `function GetVideoModeCount : Word`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoModeCount` returns the number of video modes that the current driver supports. If the driver does not support switching of modes, then 1 is returned.

This function can be used in conjunction with the `GetVideoModeData` (1318) function to retrieve data for the supported video modes.

Errors: None.

See also: `GetVideoModeData` (1318), `GetVideoMode` (1317)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex8.pp`

---

**Program** Example8;

*{ Program to demonstrate the GetVideoModeCount function. }*

**Uses** video, keyboard, vidutil;

**Procedure** DumpMode (M : TVideoMode; Index : Integer);

**Var**

S : String;

**begin**

Str(Index:2,S);

inc(Index);

TextOut(1,Index,'Data for mode '+S+' : ');

if M.Color then

---

```

    TextOut(19,Index,'  color,')
  else
    TextOut(19,Index,'No color,');
  Str(M.Row:3,S);
  TextOut(28,Index,S+' rows');
  Str(M.Col:3,S);
  TextOut(36,index,S+' columns');
end;

Var
  i,Count : Integer;
  m : TVideoMode;

begin
  InitVideo;
  InitKeyboard;
  Count:=GetVideoModeCount;
  For I:=1 to Count do
    begin
      GetVideoModeData(I-1,M);
      DumpMode(M,I-1);
    end;
    TextOut(1,Count+1,'Press any key to exit');
    UpdateScreen(False);
    GetKeyEvent;
    DoneKeyboard;
    DoneVideo;
  end.

```

---

### 34.5.10 GetVideoModeData

Synopsis: Get the specifications for a video mode

Declaration: `function GetVideoModeData(Index: Word;var Data: TVideoMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `GetVideoModeData` returns the characteristics of the `Index`-th video mode in `Data`. `Index` is zero based, and has a maximum value of `GetVideoModeCount-1`. If the current driver does not support setting of modes (`GetVideoModeCount=1`) and `Index` is zero, the current mode is returned.

The function returns `True` if the mode data was retrieved succesfully, `False` otherwise.

For an example, see `GetVideoModeCount` ([1317](#)).

Errors: In case `Index` has a wrong value, `False` is returned.

See also: `GetVideoModeCount` ([1317](#)), `SetVideoMode` ([1321](#)), `GetVideoMode` ([1317](#))

### 34.5.11 InitVideo

Synopsis: Initialize video driver.

Declaration: `procedure InitVideo`

Visibility: default

**Description:** `InitVideo` Initializes the video subsystem. If the video system was already initialized, it does nothing. After the driver has been initialized, the `VideoBuf` and `OldVideoBuf` pointers are initialized, based on the `ScreenWidth` and `ScreenHeight` variables. When this is done, the screen is cleared.

For an example, see most other functions.

**Errors:** if the driver fails to initialize, the `ErrorCode` variable is set.

**See also:** `DoneVideo` (1313)

### 34.5.12 LockScreenUpdate

**Synopsis:** Prevent further screen updates.

**Declaration:** `procedure LockScreenUpdate`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `LockScreenUpdate` increments the screen update lock count with one. As long as the screen update lock count is not zero, `UpdateScreen` (1322) will not actually update the screen.

This function can be used to optimize screen updating: If a lot of writing on the screen needs to be done (by possibly unknown functions), calling `LockScreenUpdate` before the drawing, and `UnlockScreenUpdate` (1322) after the drawing, followed by a `UpdateScreen` (1322) call, all writing will be shown on screen at once.

For an example, see `GetLockScreenCount` (1315).

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `UpdateScreen` (1322), `UnlockScreenUpdate` (1322), `GetLockScreenCount` (1315)

### 34.5.13 SetCursorPos

**Synopsis:** Set write cursor position.

**Declaration:** `procedure SetCursorPos(NewCursorX: Word;NewCursorY: Word)`

**Visibility:** `default`

**Description:** `SetCursorPos` positions the cursor on the given position: Column `NewCursorX` and row `NewCursorY`. The origin of the screen is the upper left corner, and has coordinates ( 0 , 0 ).

The current position is stored in the `CursorX` and `CursorY` variables.

**Errors:** None.

**See also:** `SetCursorType` (1320)

**Listing:** `./videoex/ex2.pp`

---

```

program example2;

uses video , keyboard ;

{$ifndef cpu86}
{$error This example only works on intel 80x86 machines}
{$endif}

Var
```

---

```

P,PP,D : Integer;
K: TKeyEvent;

Procedure PutSquare (P : Integer; C : Char);

begin
  VideoBuf^[P]:=Ord(C)+($07 shl 8);
  VideoBuf^[P+ScreenWidth]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
  VideoBuf^[P+1]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
  VideoBuf^[P+ScreenWidth+1]:=Ord(c)+($07 shl 8);
end;

begin
  InitVideo;
  InitKeyBoard;
  P:=0;
  PP:=-1;
  Repeat
    If PP<>-1 then
      PutSquare(PP, ' ');
      PutSquare(P, '#');
      SetCursorPos(P Mod ScreenWidth,P div ScreenWidth);
      UpdateScreen(False);
      PP:=P;
    Repeat
      D:=0;
      K:=TranslateKeyEvent(GetKeyEvent);
      Case GetKeyEventCode(K) of
        kbdLeft : If (P Mod ScreenWidth)<>0 then
          D:=-1;
        kbdUp : If P>=ScreenWidth then
          D:=-ScreenWidth;
        kbdRight : If ((P+2) Mod ScreenWidth)<>0 then
          D:=1;
        kbdDown : if (P<(VideoBufSize div 2)-(ScreenWidth*2)) then
          D:=ScreenWidth;
      end;
      Until (D<>0) or (GetKeyEventChar(K)='q');
      P:=P+D;
    until GetKeyEventChar(K)='q';
    DoneKeyBoard;
    DoneVideo;
  end.

```

---

### 34.5.14 SetCursorType

Synopsis: Set cursor type

Declaration: `procedure SetCursorType(NewType: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: SetCursorType sets the cursor to the type specified in NewType.

**crHidden**Hide cursor

**crUnderLine**Underline cursor

**crBlock**Block cursor

**crHalfBlock**Half block cursor

Errors: None.

See also: `SetCursorPos` ([1319](#))

### 34.5.15 SetVideoDriver

Synopsis: Install a new video driver.

Declaration: `function SetVideoDriver(const Driver: TVideoDriver) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVideoDriver` sets the videodriver to be used to `Driver`. If the current videodriver is initialized (after a call to `InitVideo`) then it does nothing and returns `False`.

A new driver can only be installed if the previous driver was not yet activated (i.e. before a call to `InitVideo` ([1318](#))) or after it was deactivated (i.e after a call to `DoneVideo`).

For more information about installing a videodriver, see `viddriver` ([1304](#)).

For an example, see the section on writing a custom video driver.

Errors: If the current driver is initialized, then `False` is returned.

See also: `viddriver` ([1304](#))

### 34.5.16 SetVideoMode

Synopsis: Set current video mode.

Declaration: `function SetVideoMode(const Mode: TVideoMode) : Boolean`

Visibility: default

Description: `SetVideoMode` sets the video mode to the mode specified in `Mode`:

If the call was succesful, then the screen will have `Col` columns and `Row` rows, and will be displaying in color if `Color` is `True`.

The function returns `True` if the mode was set succesfully, `False` otherwise.

Note that the video mode may not always be set. E.g. a console on Linux or a telnet session cannot always set the mode. It is important to check the error value returned by this function if it was not succesful.

The mode can be set when the video driver has not yet been initialized (i.e. before `InitVideo` ([1318](#)) was called) In that case, the video mode will be stored, and after the driver was initialized, an attempt will be made to set the requested mode. Changing the video driver before the call to `InitVideo` will clear the stored video mode.

To know which modes are valid, use the `GetVideoModeCount` ([1317](#)) and `GetVideoModeData` ([1318](#)) functions. To retrieve the current video mode, use the `GetVideoMode` ([1317](#)) procedure.

Errors: If the specified mode cannot be set, then `errVioNoSuchMode` may be set in `ErrorCode`

See also: `GetVideoModeCount` ([1317](#)), `GetVideoModeData` ([1318](#)), `GetVideoMode` ([1317](#))

### 34.5.17 UnlockScreenUpdate

Synopsis: Unlock screen update.

Declaration: `procedure UnlockScreenUpdate`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `UnlockScreenUpdate` decrements the screen update lock count with one if it is larger than zero.

When the lock count reaches zero, the `UpdateScreen` (1322) will actually update the screen. No screen update will be performed as long as the screen update lock count is nonzero. This mechanism can be used to increase screen performance in case a lot of writing is done.

It is important to make sure that each call to `LockScreenUpdate` (1319) is matched by exactly one call to `UnlockScreenUpdate`

For an example, see `GetLockScreenCount` (1315).

Errors: None.

See also: `LockScreenUpdate` (1319), `GetLockScreenCount` (1315), `UpdateScreen` (1322)

### 34.5.18 UpdateScreen

Synopsis: Update physical screen with internal screen image.

Declaration: `procedure UpdateScreen(Force: Boolean)`

Visibility: `default`

Description: `UpdateScreen` synchronizes the actual screen with the contents of the `VideoBuf` internal buffer.

The parameter `Force` specifies whether the whole screen has to be redrawn (`Force=True`) or only parts that have changed since the last update of the screen.

The `Video` unit keeps an internal copy of the screen as it last wrote it to the screen (in the `OldVideoBuf` array). The current contents of `VideoBuf` are examined to see what locations on the screen need to be updated. On slow terminals (e.g. a linux telnet session) this mechanism can speed up the screen redraw considerably.

For an example, see most other functions.

Errors: None.

See also: `ClearScreen` (1312)

# Chapter 35

## Reference for unit 'x86'

### 35.1 Used units

Table 35.1: Used units by unit 'x86'

Name	Page
BaseUnix	<a href="#">70</a>

### 35.2 Overview

The x86 unit contains some of the routines that were present in the 1.0.X Linux unit, and which were Intel (PC) architecture specific.

These calls have been preserved for compatibility, but should be considered deprecated: they are not portable and may not even work on future linux versions.

### 35.3 Procedures and functions

#### 35.3.1 fplOperm

Synopsis: Set permission on IO ports

Declaration: `function fplOperm(From: Cardinal; Num: Cardinal; Value: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `fplOperm` sets permissions on `Num` ports starting with port `From` to `Value`. The function returns zero if the call was successful, a nonzero value otherwise.

Note:

- This works ONLY as root.
- Only the first 0x03ff ports can be set.
- When doing a `FpFork` ([112](#)), the permissions are reset. When doing a `FpExecVE` ([109](#)) they are kept.

Errors: Extended error information can be retrieved with `FpGetErrno` ([115](#))



### 35.3.2 fpIoPL

Synopsis: Set I/O privilege level

Declaration: `function fpIoPL(Level: cInt) : cInt`

Visibility: default

Description: `FpIoPL` sets the I/O privilege level. It is intended for completeness only, one should normally not use it.

### 35.3.3 ReadPort

Synopsis: Read data from a PC port

Declaration: `procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: Byte)`  
`procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure ReadPort(Port: LongInt; var Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `ReadPort` reads one Byte, Word or Longint from port `Port` into `Value`.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (1323) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (1323), `ReadPortB` (1324), `ReadPortW` (1325), `ReadPortL` (1325), `WritePort` (1325), `WritePortB` (1326), `WritePortL` (1326), `WritePortW` (1326)

### 35.3.4 ReadPortB

Synopsis: Read bytes from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortB(Port: LongInt) : Byte`  
`procedure ReadPortB(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortB` reads `Count` bytes from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` bytes.

The functional form of `ReadPortB` reads 1 byte from port `B` and returns the byte that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (1323) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (1323), `ReadPort` (1324), `ReadPortW` (1325), `ReadPortL` (1325), `WritePort` (1325), `WritePortB` (1326), `WritePortL` (1326), `WritePortW` (1326)

### 35.3.5 ReadPortL

Synopsis: Read longints from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortL(Port: LongInt) : LongInt`  
`procedure ReadPortL(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortL` reads `Count` longints from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` Longints.

The functional form of `ReadPortL` reads 1 longint from port `B` and returns the longint that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (1323) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (1323), `ReadPort` (1324), `ReadPortW` (1325), `ReadPortB` (1324), `WritePort` (1325), `WritePortB` (1326), `WritePortL` (1326), `WritePortW` (1326)

### 35.3.6 ReadPortW

Synopsis: Read Words from a PC port

Declaration: `function ReadPortW(Port: LongInt) : Word`  
`procedure ReadPortW(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

Visibility: default

Description: The procedural form of `ReadPortW` reads `Count` words from port `Port` and stores them in `Buf`. There must be enough memory allocated at `Buf` to store `Count` words.

The functional form of `ReadPortW` reads 1 word from port `B` and returns the word that was read.

Note that you need permission to read a port. This permission can be set by the root user with the `FpIOPerm` (1323) call.

Errors: In case of an error (not enough permissions read this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: `FpIOPerm` (1323), `ReadPort` (1324), `ReadPortB` (1324), `ReadPortL` (1325), `WritePort` (1325), `WritePortB` (1326), `WritePortL` (1326), `WritePortW` (1326)

### 35.3.7 WritePort

Synopsis: Write data to PC port

Declaration: `procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: Byte)`  
`procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure WritePort(Port: LongInt; Value: Word)`

Visibility: default

Description: `WritePort` writes `Value` – 1 byte, `Word` or longint – to port `Port`.

**Remark:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the `FpIOPerm` (1323) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(1323\)](#), [WritePortB \(1326\)](#), [WritePortL \(1326\)](#), [WritePortW \(1326\)](#), [ReadPortB \(1324\)](#), [ReadPortL \(1325\)](#), [ReadPortW \(1325\)](#)

### 35.3.8 WritePortB

**Synopsis:** Write byte to PC port

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortB(Port: LongInt; Value: Byte)`  
`procedure WritePortB(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the [FpIOPerm \(1323\)](#) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(1323\)](#), [WritePort \(1325\)](#), [WritePortL \(1326\)](#), [WritePortW \(1326\)](#), [ReadPortB \(1324\)](#), [ReadPortL \(1325\)](#), [ReadPortW \(1325\)](#)

### 35.3.9 WritePortL

**Synopsis:** Write longint to PC port.

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortL(Port: LongInt; Value: LongInt)`  
`procedure WritePortL(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the [FpIOPerm \(1323\)](#) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

See also: [FpIOPerm \(1323\)](#), [WritePort \(1325\)](#), [WritePortB \(1326\)](#), [WritePortW \(1326\)](#), [ReadPortB \(1324\)](#), [ReadPortL \(1325\)](#), [ReadPortW \(1325\)](#)

### 35.3.10 WritePortW

**Synopsis:** Write Word to PC port

**Declaration:** `procedure WritePortW(Port: LongInt; Value: Word)`  
`procedure WritePortW(Port: LongInt; var Buf; Count: LongInt)`

**Visibility:** default

**Description:** The first form of `WritePortB` writes 1 byte to port `Port`. The second form writes `Count` bytes from `Buf` to port `Port`.

**Remark:** You need permission to write to a port. This permission can be set with root permission with the `FpIOPerm` (1323) call.

**Errors:** In case of an error (not enough permissions to write to this port), runtime 216 (*Access Violation*) will occur.

**See also:** `FpIOPerm` (1323), `WritePort` (1325), `WritePortL` (1326), `WritePortB` (1326), `ReadPortB` (1324), `ReadPortL` (1325), `ReadPortW` (1325)